



# HISTORY OF THE WORLD MAP BY MAP









# HISTORY

OF THE WORLD

# MAP BY MAP







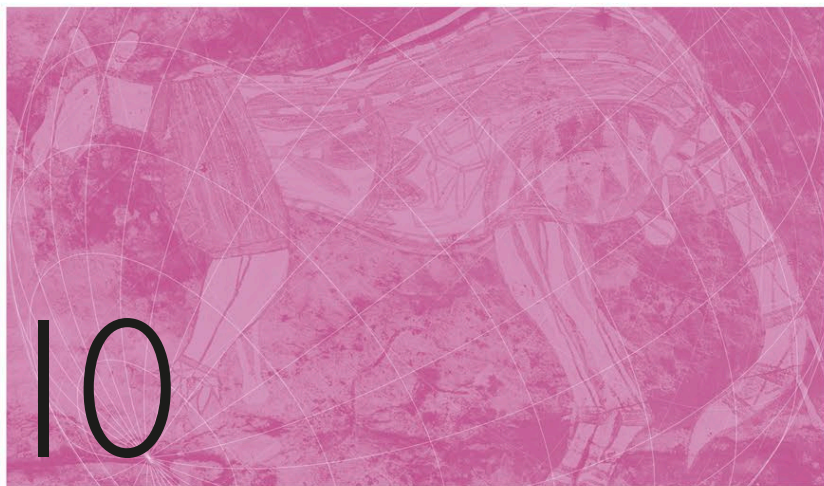


Smithsonian

# HISTORY OF THE WORLD MAP BY MAP

FOREWORD BY  
**PETER SNOW**





## PREHISTORY 7 MYA–3000 BCE

- |    |                       |    |                        |
|----|-----------------------|----|------------------------|
| 12 | From apes to farmers  | 22 | The first farmers      |
| 14 | The first humans      | 24 | Origins of agriculture |
| 16 | Out of Africa         | 26 | Villages to towns      |
| 18 | The first Australians |    |                        |
| 20 | Peopling the Americas |    |                        |



## THE ANCIENT WORLD 3000 BCE–500 CE

- |    |                              |    |                                |
|----|------------------------------|----|--------------------------------|
| 30 | The first civilizations      | 62 | The Classical Age              |
| 32 | The first cities             | 64 | Etruscans and the rise of Rome |
| 34 | Egypt of the pharaohs        | 66 | Rome builds its power base     |
| 36 | The first writing            | 68 | Roman Empire at its height     |
| 38 | Minoans and Mycenaeans       | 70 | The roots of Indian history    |
| 40 | Bronze Age China             | 72 | Mauryan India                  |
| 42 | Bronze Age collapse          | 74 | China's first emperor          |
| 44 | The ancient Levant           | 76 | Terracotta army                |
| 46 | The Iron Age                 | 78 | Ancient American civilizations |
| 48 | Assyria and Babylonia        | 80 | Age of migrations              |
| 50 | Rise of the Persian Empire   | 82 | Han Dynasty                    |
| 52 | First cities in the Americas | 84 | The spread of Buddhism         |
| 54 | The Phoenicians              | 86 | The rise of Christianity       |
| 56 | The Greek city-states        |    |                                |
| 58 | Greece and Persia at war     |    |                                |
| 60 | Alexander the Great          |    |                                |

# CONTENTS



Penguin  
Random  
House

### DK LONDON

**Lead Senior Editor** Rob Houston  
**Senior Editors** Peter Frances, Janet Mohun  
**Editors** Suhel Ahmed, Polly Boyd, Claire Gell, Martyn Page, Tia Sarkar, Kaiya Shang, Kate Taylor  
**US Editors** Kayla Dugger, Jennette ElNaggar  
**Project Management** Briony Corbett  
**Managing Editor** Angeles Gavira Guerrero  
**Associate Publisher** Liz Wheeler  
**Publishing Director** Jonathan Metcalf  
**Senior Art Editors** Duncan Turner, Ina Stradins  
**Project Art Editors** Steve Woosnam-Savage, Francis Wong  
**Designer** Ala Uddin  
**Jacket Design Development Manager** Sophia MTT  
**Jacket Designer** Surabhi Wadhwa  
**Producer (Pre-production)** Jacqueline Street-Elkayam  
**Producer** Jude Crozier  
**Managing Art Editor** Michael Duffy  
**Art Director** Karen Self  
**Design Director** Phil Ormerod  
**Cartographers** Simon Mumford, Ed Merritt, Martin Darlison, Helen Stirling

### DK INDIA

**Senior Editor** Dharini Ganesh  
**Editor** Priyanjali Narain  
**Assistant Editors** Aashirwad Jain, Shambhavi Thatte  
**Picture Researcher** Deepak Negi  
**Picture Research Manager** Taiyaba Khatoon  
**Jackets Editorial Coordinator** Priyanka Sharma  
**Managing Editor** Rohan Sinha  
**Managing Jackets Editor** Saloni Singh  
**Pre-production Manager** Balwant Singh  
**Senior Cartographer** Subhashree Bharati  
**Cartographer** Reetu Pandey  
**Cartography Manager** Suresh Kumar  
**Senior Art Editor** Vaibhav Rastogi  
**Project Art Editor** Sanjay Chauhan, Pooja Pipil  
**Art Editors** Anjali Sachar, Sonali Sharma, Sonakshi Singh  
**Assistant Art Editor** Mridushmita Bose  
**Managing Art Editor** Sudakshina Basu  
**Jacket Designer** Suhita Dharamjit  
**Senior DTP Designers** Harish Aggarwal, Vishal Bhatia  
**DTP Designers** Ashok Kumar, Nityanand Kumar  
**Production Manager** Pankaj Sharma

### COBALT ID

**Designer** Darren Bland  
**Art Director** Paul Reid  
**Editorial Director** Marek Walisiewicz



## MIDDLE AGES 500–1450 CE

- |     |                          |     |                                 |
|-----|--------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|
| 90  | The Middle Ages          | 120 | Rise of the Ottomans            |
| 92  | The Byzantine Empire     | 122 | The Reconquista                 |
| 94  | The ascent of Islam      | 124 | Medieval East Asia              |
| 96  | Rule of the caliphs      | 126 | Tang and Song China             |
| 98  | The Vikings              | 128 | Medieval Korea and Japan        |
| 100 | The Normans              | 130 | The Mongol conquests            |
| 102 | The Silk Road            | 132 | Yuan China to the early Ming    |
| 104 | Medieval renaissance     | 134 | Temple states of Southeast Asia |
| 106 | The Crusades             | 136 | African peoples and empires     |
| 108 | The inheritors of Rome   | 138 | Mansa Musa                      |
| 110 | The Hundred Years' War   | 140 | The Polynesians                 |
| 112 | Medieval European trade  | 142 | North American cultures         |
| 114 | The Black Death          | 144 | Aztec and Inca empires          |
| 116 | The emperor and the pope |     |                                 |
| 118 | The Holy Roman Empire    |     |                                 |



## THE EARLY MODERN WORLD 1450–1700

- |     |                                   |     |                                  |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------|
| 148 | The early modern world            | 178 | China from the Ming to the Qing  |
| 150 | Voyages of exploration            | 180 | Japan unifies under the Tokugawa |
| 152 | Spanish conquests in the Americas | 182 | The Scientific Revolution        |
| 154 | The Spanish in America            | 184 | The Dutch golden age             |
| 156 | The colonization of North America |     |                                  |
| 158 | The age of exchange               |     |                                  |
| 160 | The Renaissance                   |     |                                  |
| 162 | The colonial spice trade          |     |                                  |
| 164 | Printing                          |     |                                  |
| 166 | The Reformation                   |     |                                  |
| 168 | The Thirty Years' War             |     |                                  |
| 170 | British civil wars                |     |                                  |
| 172 | Reign of the Ottomans             |     |                                  |
| 174 | East meets West                   |     |                                  |
| 176 | Mughal India                      |     |                                  |

First American Edition, 2018  
Published in the United States by DK Publishing  
345 Hudson Street, New York, New York 10014

Copyright © 2018 Dorling Kindersley Limited  
DK, a Division of Penguin Random House LLC  
18 19 20 21 22 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
001–278615–Oct/2018

All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under the copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.  
ISBN 978-1-4654-7585-5  
Printed in Malaysia

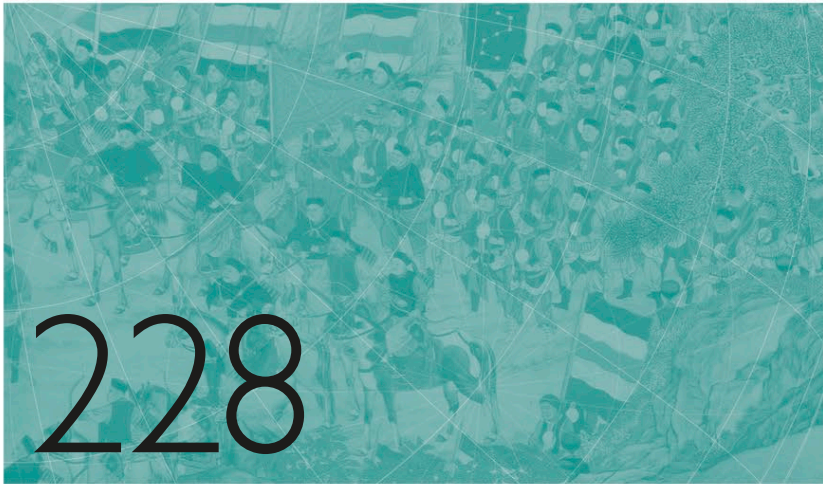
A WORLD OF IDEAS:  
**SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW**  
[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)





**REVOLUTION AND INDUSTRY** 1700–1850

- |     |                              |     |                                |
|-----|------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| 188 | The age of revolution        | 216 | Romanticism and nationalism    |
| 190 | Battle for North America     | 218 | The revolutions of 1848        |
| 192 | The Seven Years' War         | 220 | New Zealand and Australia      |
| 194 | The Agricultural Revolution  | 222 | The abolition of slavery       |
| 196 | The Atlantic slave trade     | 224 | Rise of British power in India |
| 198 | The American Revolution      | 226 | The Opium Wars                 |
| 200 | South American independence  |     |                                |
| 202 | The Enlightenment            |     |                                |
| 204 | The fate of Native Americans |     |                                |
| 206 | The French Revolution        |     |                                |
| 208 | Napoleon advances            |     |                                |
| 210 | Napoleon's downfall          |     |                                |
| 212 | The Industrial Revolution    |     |                                |
| 214 | Industrial Britain           |     |                                |



**PROGRESS AND EMPIRE** 1850–1914

- |     |                              |     |                           |
|-----|------------------------------|-----|---------------------------|
| 230 | Cities and industry          | 260 | Expansion of the US       |
| 232 | Industrialized Europe        | 262 | Independent Latin America |
| 234 | Socialism and anarchism      | 264 | Germany and Italy unified |
| 236 | Transport and communications | 266 | Balkan wars               |
| 238 | Mass migrations              | 268 | The eve of World War      |
| 240 | The age of imperialism       |     |                           |
| 242 | The new imperialism          |     |                           |
| 244 | Resistance and the Raj       |     |                           |
| 246 | Russian Empire expands       |     |                           |
| 248 | Africa colonized             |     |                           |
| 250 | Foreign powers in China      |     |                           |
| 252 | Decline of Qing China        |     |                           |
| 254 | Japan transformed            |     |                           |
| 256 | The Civil War                |     |                           |
| 258 | Science and innovation       |     |                           |

**CONTRIBUTORS**

**PREHISTORY**

David Summers, Derek Harvey

**THE ANCIENT WORLD**

Peter Chrisp, Jeremy Harwood, Phil Wilkinson

**THE MIDDLE AGES, THE EARLY MODERN WORLD**

Philip Parker

**REVOLUTION AND INDUSTRY**

Joel Levy

**PROGRESS AND EMPIRE**

Kay Celtel

**THE MODERN WORLD**

Simon Adams, R. G. Grant, Sally Regan

**CONSULTANTS**

**PREHISTORY**

Dr. Rebecca Wragg-Sykes Palaeolithic archaeologist and author, chercheur bénévole PACEA laboratory, Université de Bordeaux

**THE ANCIENT WORLD**

Prof. Neville Morley Professor of Classics and Ancient History, University of Exeter

Prof. Karen Radner Alexander von Humboldt Professor of the Ancient History of the Near and Middle East, University of Munich

**THE MIDDLE AGES**

Dr. Roger Collins Honorary Fellow in the School of History, Classics and Archaeology, University of Edinburgh

**THE EARLY MODERN WORLD, REVOLUTION AND INDUSTRY**

Dr. Glyn Redford FRHistS, Honorary Fellow, *The Historical Association*

**PROGRESS AND EMPIRE, THE MODERN WORLD**

Prof. Richard Overy FBA, FRHistS, Professor of History, University of Exeter

**CHINA, KOREA, AND JAPAN**

Jennifer Bond Researcher, SOAS, University of London

**INDIA**

Prof. David Arnold Professor of Asian and Global History, Warwick University

**PRECOLUMBIAN AMERICAS**

Dr. Elizabeth Baquedano Honorary Senior Lecturer, Institute of Archaeology, University College London

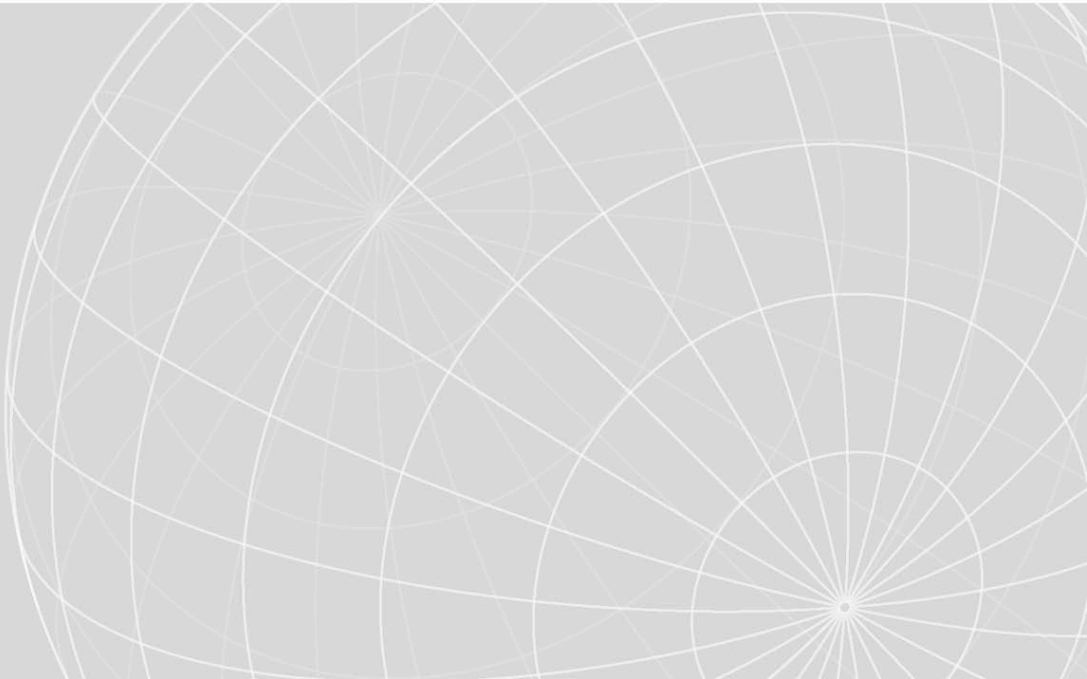


THE MODERN WORLD 1914–PRESENT

272	The modern world	304	Japan defeated	330	US interventions in Latin America	348	Timeline
274	World War I	306	Hiroshima and Nagasaki	332	Israel and the Middle East	426	Index
276	The trenches	308	Partition of India	334	Economic boom and environmental cost	439	Acknowledgments
278	The wider war	310	The founding of communist China	336	The collapse of communism		
280	The Russian Revolution	312	Superpowers	338	War in Yugoslavia		
282	Political extremism	314	The Cold War	340	Globalization		
284	Aftermath of the Great War	316	Korean War	342	Iran and the Gulf Wars		
286	The Great Depression	318	Decolonization of Southeast Asia	344	The communication revolution		
288	China and nationalism	320	European unity	346	Population and energy		
290	Soviet Union under Stalin	322	Decolonization of Africa				
292	The Spanish Civil War	324	Rockets and the space race				
294	World War II	326	Civil rights and student revolt				
296	Axis powers advance	328	The Vietnam Wars				
298	Occupied Europe						
300	The war in the Pacific						
302	Germany defeated						

SMITHSONIAN

Established in 1846, the Smithsonian—the world’s largest museum and research complex—includes 19 museums and galleries and the National Zoological Park. The total number of artifacts, works of art, and specimens in the Smithsonian’s collections is estimated at 154 million, the bulk of which is contained in the National Museum of Natural History, which holds more than 126 million specimens and objects. The Smithsonian is a renowned research center, dedicated to public education, national service, and scholarship in the arts, sciences, and natural history.





# FOREWORD

This book tells the story of life on Earth in more meticulous detail and with more arresting pictures than I've ever seen before. I believe that in this digital age, maps are more important than ever. People are losing sight of the need for them in a world where our knowledge is reduced to the distance between two zip codes. For me, a journey—certainly the contemplation of a journey—is a voyage across a map. But this beautiful book offers the added dimension of a state-of-the-art journey through time. These maps display the story of the world in delightfully accessible form. They demonstrate in a spectacular way how there is no substitute for the printed page, for the entrancing spread of color across paper that we can touch and

feel. The maps are large; the colors are bold. Text boxes spring out from places whose history matters. Clear and easily readable graphics reveal the ups and downs of empires, cultures, wars and other events both human and natural that have shaped our world from the beginning.

To me, history without maps would be unintelligible. A country's history is shaped by its geography—by its mountains and valleys, its rivers, its climate, its access to the sea, and its raw materials and harvests just as much as it is shaped by its population, its industry, its relations with its neighbors and its takeover by invaders from abroad. This book is more than a historical atlas: it describes the





▽ Documenting the world

Pages from the *Catalan Atlas*, drawn and written in 1375, show Europe, north Africa, and Asia. Over time, the maps of cartographers pass into the hands of historians and continue to feed our knowledge of how and why the geography and politics of the world have changed.

geography of history but adds revealing pictures as well. For me, the history of World War I is admirably summed up by the map that describes the buildup to it on pages 268–269 and the following maps and accounts of the fighting, including the telling picture of the trenches.

I've been using maps to tell stories all my life as a television journalist and historian. The stories of the European Union and the collapse of communism were my constant companions when recounting the events of the last half century. That part of recent history only makes sense if it is also described by maps like those on pages 320–321 and 336–337. I have spent many hours as a journalist

making maps with graphics artists at the BBC and ITN to illustrate the story of wars in the Middle East and Vietnam. Far better ones are now displayed for us in this book on pages 328–29 and 332–33. No historian can do justice to the story of the rise and fall of the great empires like that of the French Emperor Napoleon without maps like those on pages 208–211.

For its depth of learning and its variety of ways of giving us a picture of the history of our planet, this magnificent account—map by map—is second to none.

**PETER SNOW** British broadcaster and historian











# PREHISTORY

BEFORE WRITTEN RECORDS BEGAN AROUND 3000 BCE, THE STORY OF HUMANS WAS RECORDED FOR MILLIONS OF YEARS BY THE FOSSILS AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL TRACES OUR ANCESTORS LEFT BEHIND.





△ **Lucy**  
Shown here are the fossilized remains of the apelike Lucy—a member of the genus *Australopithecus* from east Africa from over 3 MYA. The fossil is sufficiently complete to suggest that Lucy walked upright on two legs.

# FROM APES TO FARMERS

The history of humankind is rooted in a part of the animal kingdom that includes monkeys, apes, and other primates. It took millions of years of evolution—over countless generations—for apelike ancestors to become modern *Homo sapiens*.

Scientific evidence links all humans to apes. Specifically, chimpanzees are our closest nonhuman relatives, and DNA—the ultimate bloodline indicator—suggests that we separated from a common ancestor some 6.5 million years ago (MYA). Indeed, humans are apes—albeit in an upright, naked form.

Monkeys, apes, and humans are primates that have a large brain, grasping digits, forward-facing eyes, and nails instead of claws. Fossilized remains of animals that lived in the distant past provide tantalizing evidence of just how apes became modern humans. Skeletons turn into fossils when they become mineralized into rock—a process that usually takes at least 10,000 years. Fossilized remains are usually fragmentary, but an expertise in anatomy helps scientists use the fossil record to reconstruct extinct species. Fossils can also be dated so scientists can build up a chronology of evolutionary change. For example, African fossils of a primate called *Proconsul*, dated to 21–14 MYA, resembled a monkey. But it lacked a tail—a feature more typical of apes—suggesting that *Proconsul* could have been the earliest known member of the ape family.

## Hominids and hominins

Modern great apes (gorillas, orangutans, and chimpanzees), humans, and their prehistoric relatives are united in a biological family called hominids. As well

*“We can see the focus, the center of evolution, for modern humans in Africa.”*

CHRIS STRINGER, BRITISH ANTHROPOLOGIST

as lacking a tail, they have bigger brains than their monkey ancestors. This meant that many prehistoric hominids doubtless used tools to forage for food—just as chimpanzees do today. Great apes also became bigger than monkeys, and many spent more time on the ground. One group evolved to walk on two legs, which freed grasping hands for other tasks.

This group—called hominins—includes humans and their immediate ancestors and dates back at least 6.2–6.0 million years to the species *Orrorin tugenensis*—a very early bipedal hominin found in Kenya.

## The first humans

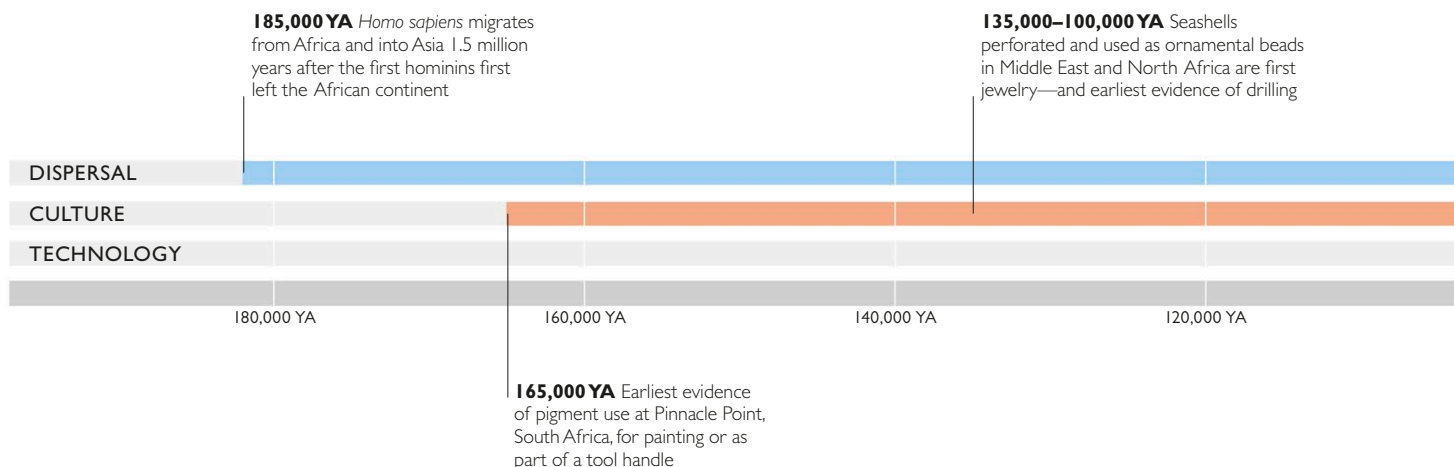
Not all hominins were direct ancestors of living people, but at least one branch of the genus *Australopithecus* might have been. Belonging to the genus *Homo*, the first humans were fully bipedal, with arched feet that no longer had opposable grasping toes and an S-shaped spine centered above a wide pelvis. Such adaptations helped them run quickly on open ground. The earliest species—*Homo habilis*, from 2.4 MYA—may have



△ **Flint and stone**  
For nearly 2 million years, human technology was represented by stone flake tools and hand axes. These were made by hitting flint or other workable rock with stone to produce sharp cutting edges.

## THE RISE OF MODERN HUMANS

Even before the emergence of modern humans (*Homo sapiens*) almost 300,000 YA, hominins had developed the traits that would make them a dominating force on the planet. From just under 1 MYA, hominins were controlling fire—for cooking, and later to help with manufacturing processes. But with *Homo sapiens* came a more complex culture. Archaeological evidence indicates that these modern humans dispersed widely from their center of origin in Africa before 200,000 YA.







#### ◁ Close cousins

Neanderthals—the closest extinct human species to modern humans, *Homo sapiens*—had larger skulls with more prominent eyebrows. *Homo sapiens* and Neanderthals were sufficiently similar to interbreed where they coexisted.

remained in Africa, but we know that later other *Homo* species dispersed widely across Eurasia.

#### The rise of *Homo sapiens*

Only one species of human—*Homo sapiens*—came to dominate the world after emerging from Africa about a quarter of a million years ago. Remarkably, brain capacity doubled between *Homo habilis* and *Homo sapiens*. Bigger brainpower meant that humans could skillfully manipulate the environment and resources around them—ultimately leading to the emergence of complex cultures and technologies.

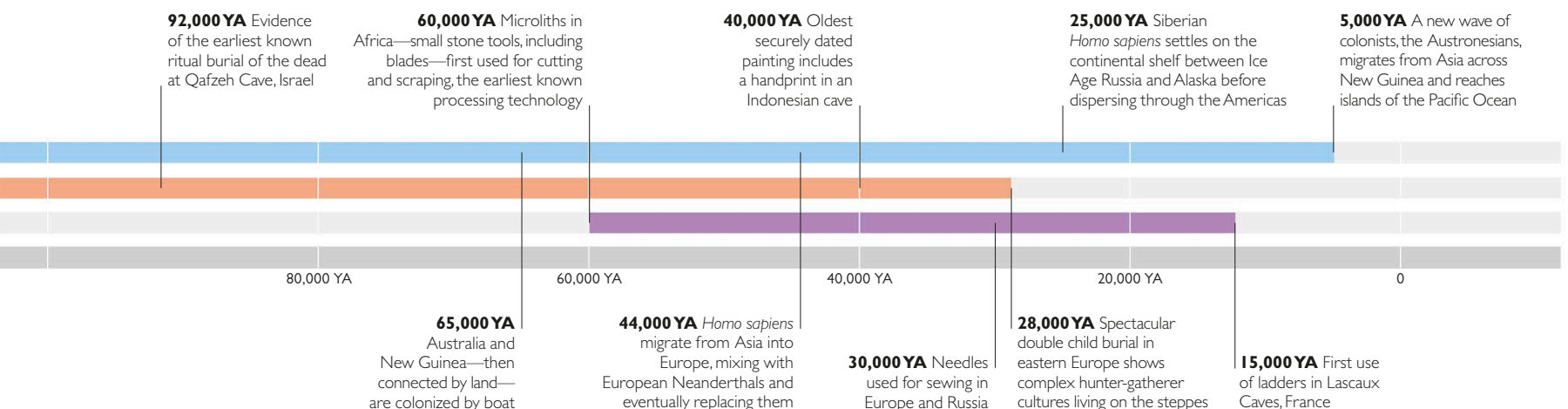
For much of its time, *Homo sapiens* coexisted with other human species. In Ice-Age Eurasia, chunky-bodied Neanderthals (*Homo neanderthalensis*) successfully lived in a range of environmental conditions, developing their own advanced cultures. But the world's climate became especially unsuitable, and only *Homo sapiens* prevailed. They spread farther—reaching Australia by 65,000 YA and South America possibly by 18,500 YA. Evidently, *Homo sapiens* had the social structures to succeed in ways that their competitors could not. The first modern humans were efficient hunter-gatherers, inventing new technologies that helped them



acquire more food and travel farther. This meant that they thrived in many different places, from the frozen Arctic to the hot tropics. Then, within the last 20,000 years, all around the world, modern humans began to abandon their nomadic ways in favor of fixed settlements, turning their skills to farming the land, supporting bigger societies, and—ultimately—planting the seeds of civilization itself.

#### △ Early artists

These depictions of Ice Age animals on the walls of the Lascaux Caves in southern France are about 17,000 years old. Similar paintings nearby show that prehistoric humans had developed a degree of creative expression as early as 30,000 years ago.





# THE FIRST HUMANS

The human story began in Africa 7 or 6 million years ago. Through the fossil record of this vast continent, we can draw a complex family tree of human relatives of which our species, *Homo sapiens*, is the last to survive.

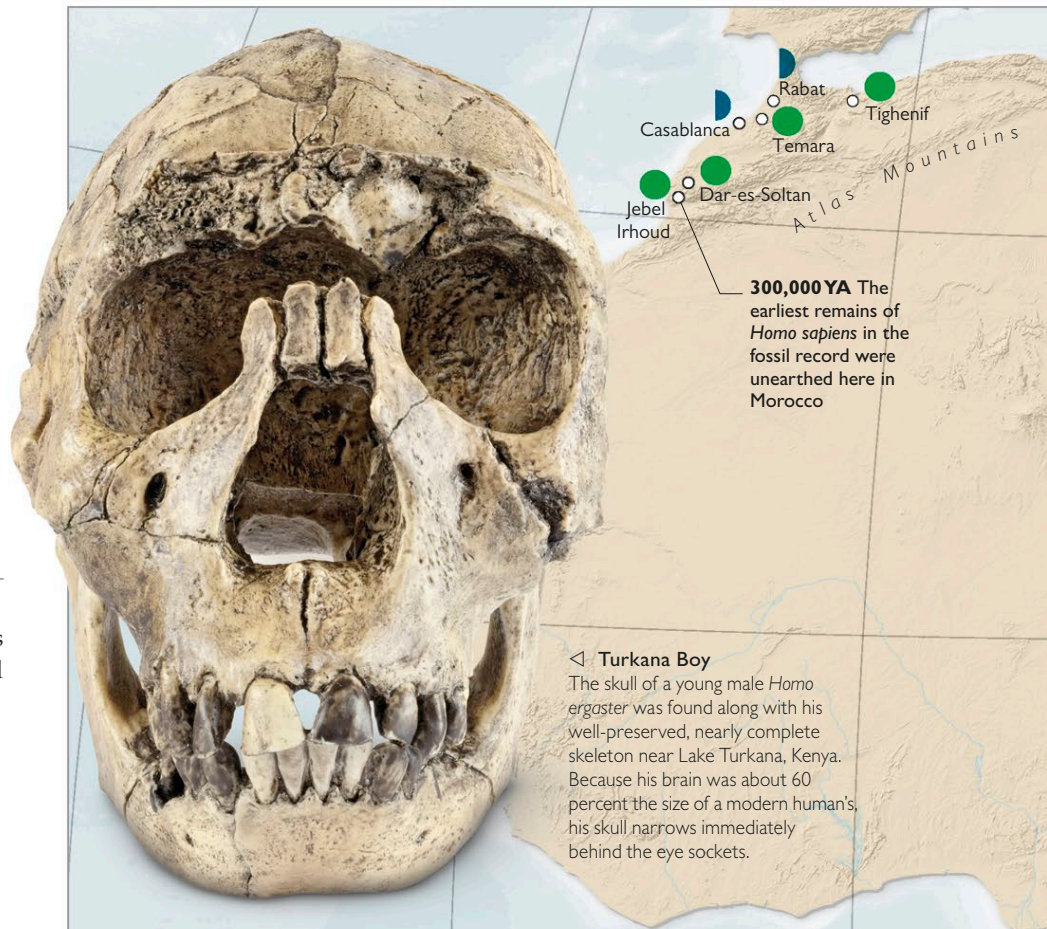
We have fossil evidence for the existence of about 20 different species of African “hominin”—members of the human lineage that diverged from that of chimpanzees 7–10 million years ago. Each has been assigned to a biological group or “genus,” but the relationships between the groups and species are still debated. Only certain hominins were the ancestors of modern humans; others, such as the *Paranthropus* species, may represent evolutionary dead ends.

Human evolution was not an inevitable, linear progression from apes. Some of our ancestors developed adaptations—in different combinations—that would ultimately mark out modern humans. Perhaps most notably, a larger brain enabled complex thought and behavior, including the development of stone-tool technologies, while walking on two legs became the main form of locomotion.

The earliest fossils assigned to our species—dated to around 300,000 years ago—were found in Morocco, but other early specimens have been found widely dispersed across Africa. This has led scientists to believe that the evolution of modern humans probably happened on a continental scale.

*“I think Africa was the cradle, the crucible that created us as Homo sapiens.”*

PALEOANTHROPOLOGIST DONALD JOHANSON, 2006



## ◀ Turkana Boy

The skull of a young male *Homo ergaster* was found along with his well-preserved, nearly complete skeleton near Lake Turkana, Kenya. Because his brain was about 60 percent the size of a modern human's, his skull narrows immediately behind the eye sockets.

## I THE FIRST HUMANLIKE APES 7–5.5 MYA

The sparse record of the earliest hominins—*Sahelanthropus* and *Orrorin*—shows that although they had shorter faces and smaller teeth, they had brains no larger than those of chimpanzees. The sole *Sahelanthropus* skull was discovered in Chad, far removed from other hominin sites in eastern and southern Africa. Fossils of both *Orrorin* and *Ardipithecus kadabba* are thought to exhibit features linked to developing two-legged locomotion.



Sahelanthropus skull

▲ Sahelanthropus

▼ Orrorin

■ Ardipithecus

## EARLY HOMININ MIGRATION

Archaeological evidence from Asia and Europe suggests that by about 2 million years ago, hominins had begun to leave Africa for the first time—long before *Homo sapiens* began to disperse (see pp.16–17). Experts once assumed that the migration corresponded with the appearance of *Homo ergaster*, but older species might have been the pioneers—a 1.7-million-year-old fossil found in Dmanisi, Georgia, resembles the earlier *Homo habilis*. The earliest known hominin fossils from Southeast Asia are of *Homo erectus*—an Asian variant of *Homo ergaster*, found on the island of Java and dating to 1.8 million years ago. Stone tools from the Nihewan Basin, China, date to 1.6 million years ago. Two sites in Spain's Sierra de Atapuerca show that hominins had reached western Europe by 1.2 million years ago.

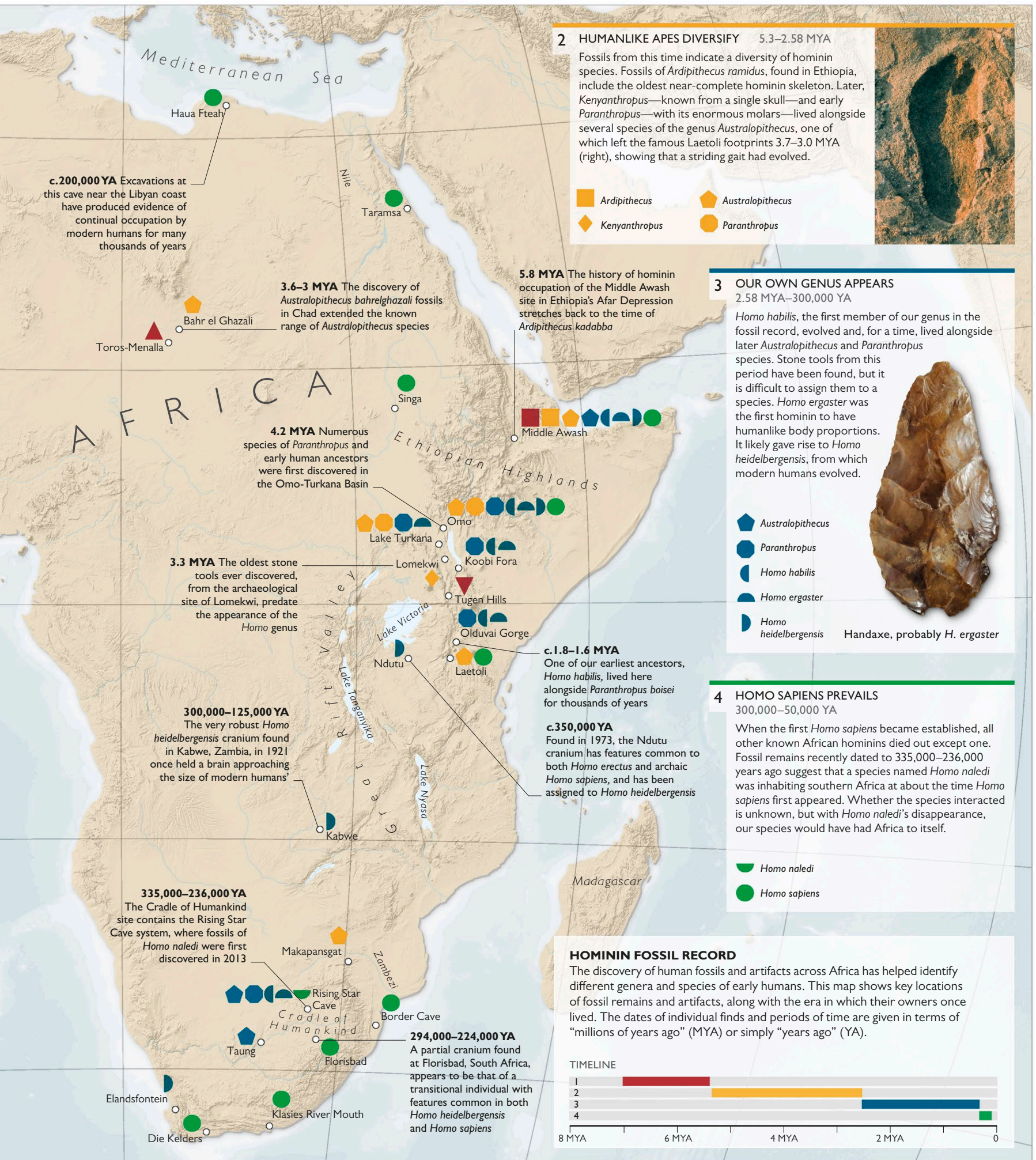
### KEY

➔ Likely route

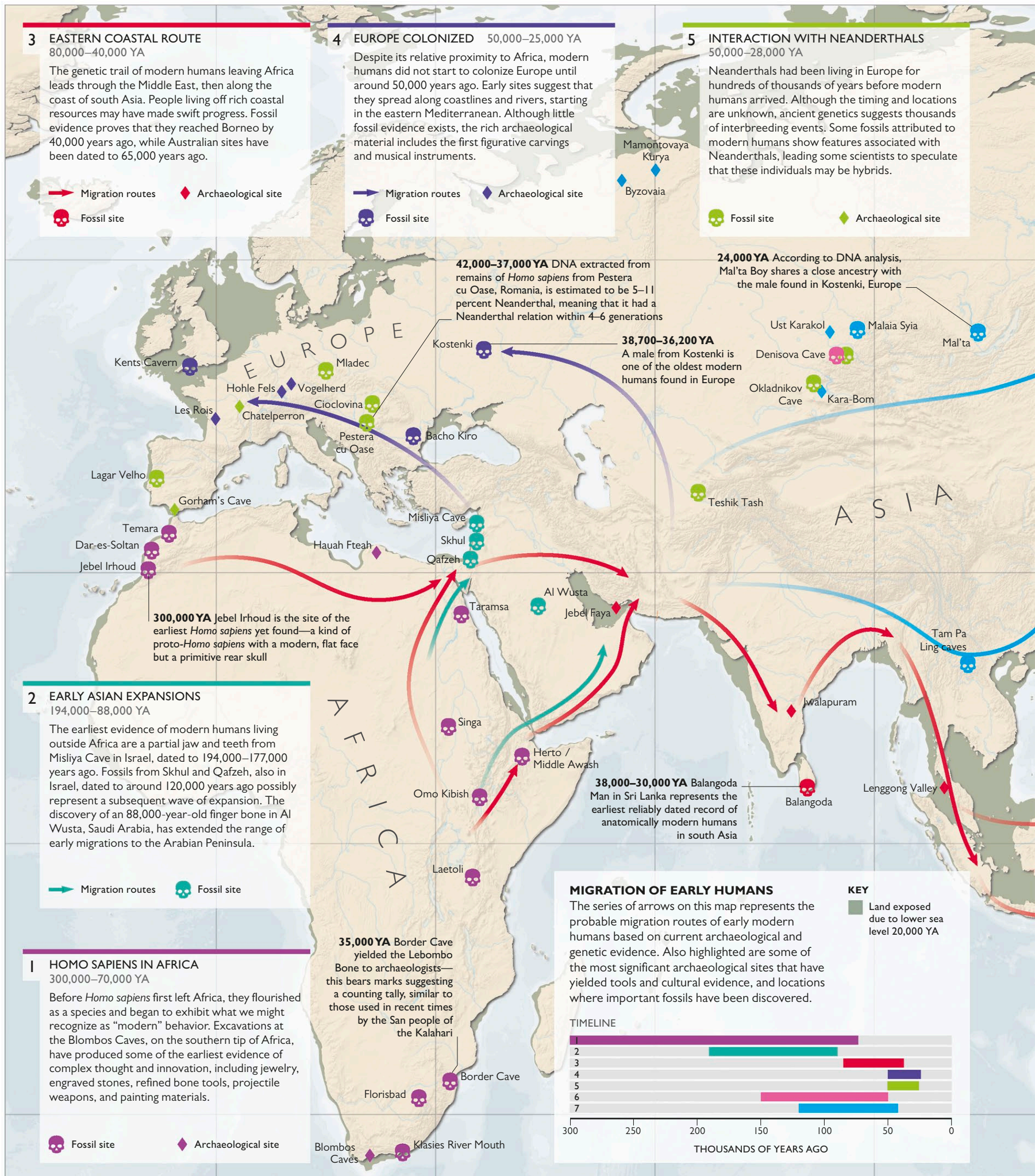
○ Sites of fossil finds















# OUT OF AFRICA

The modern human, *Homo sapiens*, is a truly global species, inhabiting every continent. Our colonization of the planet started before 177,000 years ago, when groups began dispersing from their African homeland. By 40,000 years ago, our species lived in northern Europe and central and east Asia, and had crossed the sea to Australia.

Ancient hominins had moved from Africa into Asia and Europe well over a million years before our species first appeared (see p.14). But the details of how *Homo sapiens* relates to these earlier species are still emerging gradually with every fossil and archaeological discovery from the period. Genetic and archaeological evidence now overwhelmingly favors the Recent African Origin model, also known as the “Out-of-Africa” theory, which proposes that *Homo sapiens* evolved in Africa and later spread across the Old World, replacing all other hominin species.

*Homo sapiens* first left Africa some time after 200,000 years ago, and some groups appear to have reached east Asia by at least 80,000

years ago and perhaps as early as 120,000 years ago. Either via the Horn of Africa or the Sinai Peninsula, the first migrants traveled east along Asia’s southern coastline and either north into China or eastward across Southeast Asia. Subsequent groups headed through central and eastern Asia and finally northwest into Europe.

As they moved into new territories, *Homo sapiens*’ progress may have been hindered, particularly in Europe, by their encounters with other hominins, including Neanderthals and Denisovans. Little is yet known of the Denisovans, but the Neanderthal was the first fossil hominin discovered and is now known from thousands of specimens. Evidence of interaction with both species lives on in our genes.

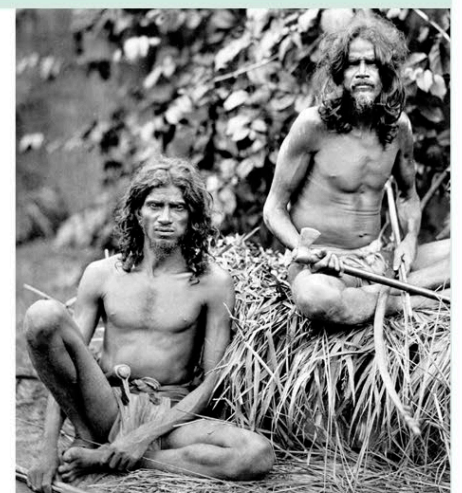
*“I, too, am convinced that our ancestors came from Africa.”*

KENYAN PALEOANTHROPOLOGIST RICHARD LEAKEY, 2005

## THE STORY IN OUR GENES EVIDENCE IN HUMAN DNA

By comparing the genetic makeup of living people from all over the world, scientists are able to analyze the evolutionary relationships between different populations. This has enabled them to confirm our African origins and describe how and when our species spread around the world. Genetic material (DNA) has also been extracted from the fossils of some extinct species. Analysis of the DNA of Neanderthals and Denisovans has revealed that they both interbred with *Homo sapiens* and contributed some of their genes to modern human populations.

The Veddha people of Sri Lanka DNA analysis has been used to show that these are the earliest native inhabitants of Sri Lanka.





# THE FIRST AUSTRALIANS

More than 60,000 years ago, hardy, resourceful people arrived in Australia after crossing the seas from Asia. They became Aboriginal Australians and went on to establish a unique way of life with a distinct culture.

During the last ice age, Australia, New Guinea, and Tasmania were joined in a single landmass (see p.17), which was colonized by a seafaring people who crossed the seas from Asia on bamboo vessels. These people were the first Australians. Their journey through the continent followed coastlines and river valleys. Archaeological evidence suggests that by 30,000 years ago, they had spread far and wide, from Tasmania in the south to the Swan River in the west and northward into New Guinea.



△ **Ancient art**  
Discovered in western Australia in 1891, the ancient Bradshaw rock paintings show human figures engaged in display or hunting.

**Indigenous Australians**  
Australia’s indigenous peoples were seminomadic; instead of developing agricultural societies, they moved with the seasons. They lived in small family groups but were connected through extensive social networks. Already adept at hunting and gathering, they developed new technologies such as boomerangs, fish traps, and stone axes shaped by grinding.

Over time, the groups became culturally diverse. In the far north, people of the Torres Strait—between Australia and New Guinea—became distinct from the Australian Aborigines. Aboriginal life became centered on relationships between people and the natural world, or “Country,” which included animals, plants, and rocks. These links, which have lasted into modern life, are formalized in the “Dreaming”: oral histories of creation combined with moral codes, some of which are reflected in art.



## THE COLONIZATION OF AUSTRALIA

The earliest known archaeological sites in Australia are 65,000 years old—a date that conforms with genetic evidence for the origins of indigenous Australians. Fossils of humans and their animal prey, as well as artifacts from the time, indicate that populations were centered around coastlines and the Murray–Darling river basins.

**KEY**  
◆ Archaeological site pre-30,000 YA



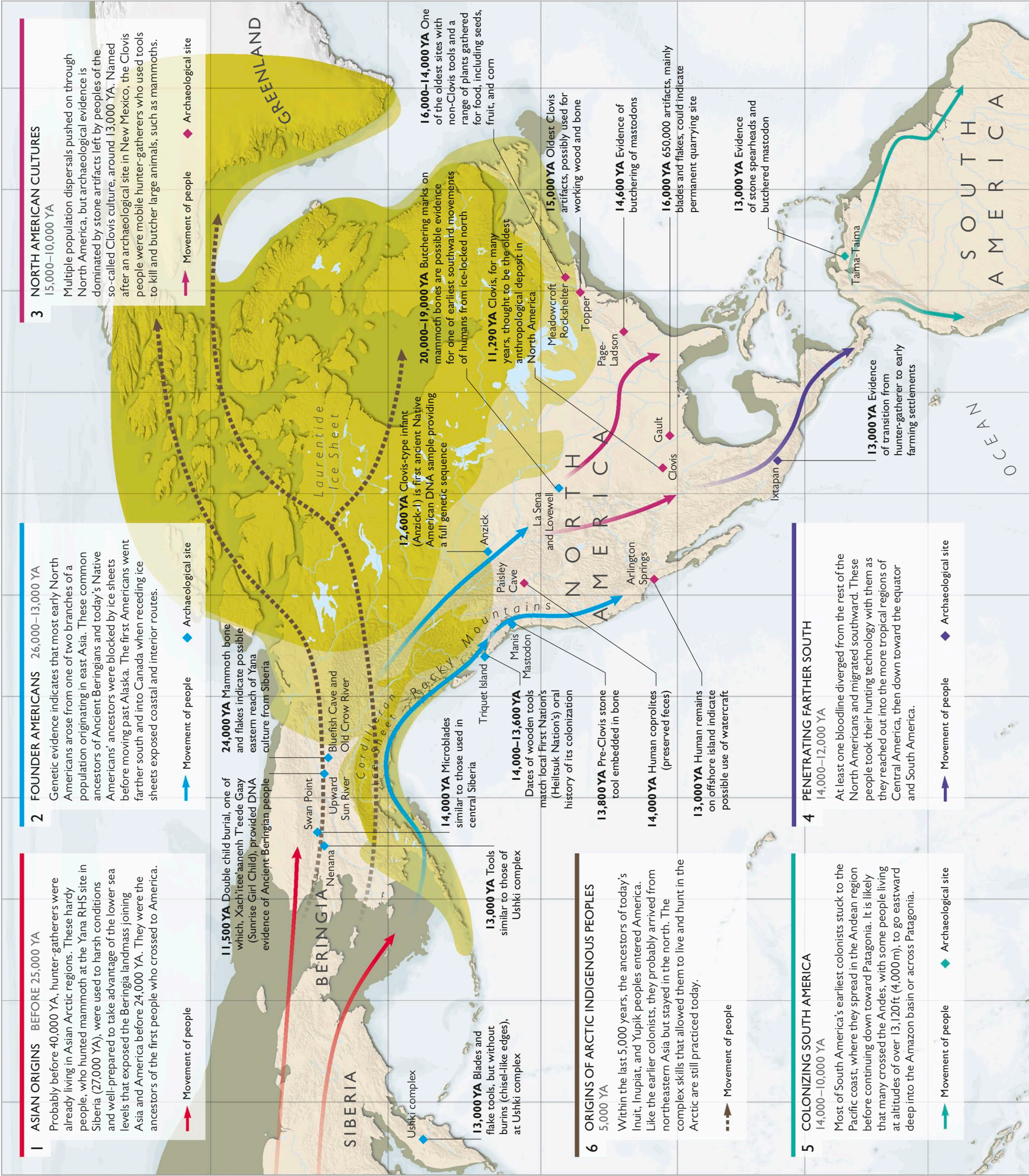


**Part of the landscape**

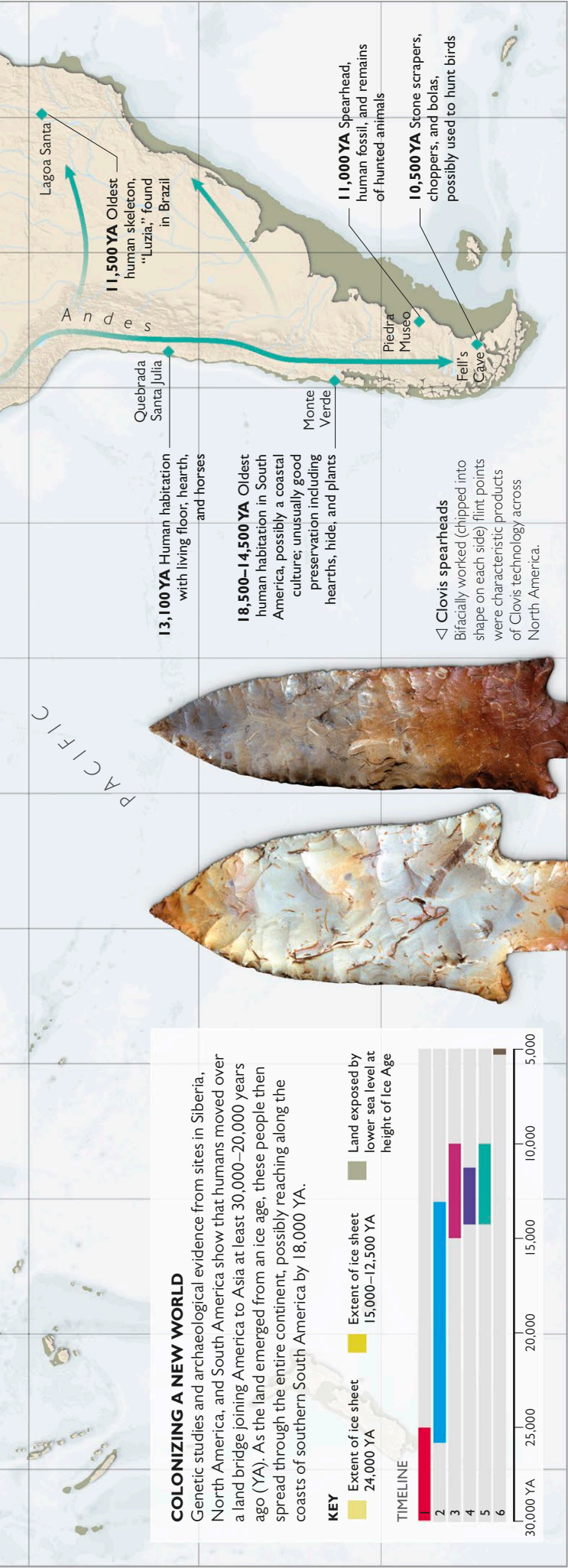
The Jawoyn people of northern Australia have been producing spectacular rock art for more than 30,000 years. Their paintings often feature marsupials and are predominantly red and white.











# PEOPLING THE AMERICAS

By the time Columbus set foot in the Americas in 1492, the continents had been peopled for thousands of years. The real discoverers of these new worlds had come from Siberia. They conquered ice and snow and trekked enormous distances to colonize a landmass of prairieland, desert, rainforest, and mountains.

Some 24,000 years ago, the world was locked in an ice age, when an Arctic ice sheet covered much of the northern world. With so much water frozen in glaciers, ocean levels were low enough to expose a connection of land, known as Beringia, between Asia and North America. This meant that people could walk across from one continent to the other, until their way became blocked as ice sheets closed in on them. There, America's founding peoples were isolated for thousands of years, until warmer times melted the ice and opened up corridors to the south, possibly as early as 20,000 YA.

DNA evidence from archaeological sites and the DNA of Native Americans alive today shows that two distinct populations split from the founding group that had entered the new lands across Beringia.

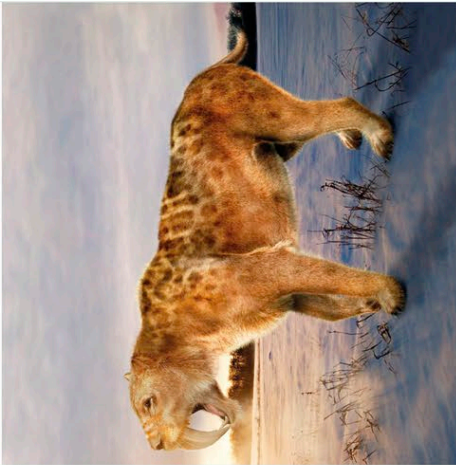
Only one of these went on to settle the Americas—the ancestors of Native Americans. The other population—known as the Ancient Beringians—may have been isolated on or outside Beringia until after the glacial melt, as evidence of their DNA is distinct from that of any past or present Native Americans. Genetics show that between 17,500 and 14,600 YA, the group that had entered America branched again into two new lineages, northern and southern. People who continued farther followed routes along the Pacific coast and far into the interior. Some became separated over vast distances but remained genetically similar, suggesting that they moved rapidly. Within a few thousand years, they had established themselves in Central America, and just centuries after that had entered Patagonia.

*"They made prehistory, those latter-day Asians who, by jumping continents, became the first Americans. Theirs was a colonization the likes and scale of which ... would never be repeated."*

DAVID J. MELTZER, FIRST PEOPLES IN A NEW WORLD: COLONIZING ICE AGE AMERICA, 2009

## THE CLOVIS STONE AGE HUNTERS

The hunter-gatherer Clovis people were once viewed as the first Americans, but archaeological sites predating the Clovis period show this is not the case. However, the Clovis became a widespread influence. They used bifacial stone points and blades to hunt many of North America's large mammals, such as bison, mammoths, and sabertooth cats. In addition to the changing climate and habitats of these species, hunters were possibly one of the main factors that led to their extinction.



Extinct sabertooth cat





△ **Innovative tools**  
Wooden tools called adzes had blades made from stone that were sufficiently strong to fell trees, open up land for pasture, or dig hard ground.

# THE FIRST FARMERS

Working the land to grow food was an entirely new way of life for prehistoric humans. It turned them from nomads into farmers—and created settlements with permanent buildings, larger societies, and the potential to develop more elaborate technology and culture.

The earliest humans mostly lived in small nomadic bands and went wherever food was plentiful. They tracked the migrations of large animals as they hunted for meat, just as they followed the seasonal bounties of fruit and seeds. They built—and rebuilt—simple camps, carrying a few lightweight belongings with them.

This hunter-gatherer existence supported humans through the last ice age, but about 12,000 years ago, a rise in Earth's temperature opened up a world of alternative possibilities. One species of human—*Homo sapiens*—successfully emerged into this warmer world. By this time, these modern humans had spread far beyond their African ancestral home into Asia, Australasia, and America. And independently, all over the world, they had begun creating permanent farming settlements.

## Settling down

Permanent camps with stronger houses made sense in places where the land was especially fertile—such as on floodplains of rivers. Settlers could support more hungry mouths by hunting, fishing, and gathering plant food around a local foraging ground that was rich in resources. This was just a small step from farming, as

### ▷ Early farming villages

This settlement at Mehrgarh in modern Pakistan dates from 7000 BCE. It had mud-brick houses and granaries to store surplus cultivated cereal grain.



it was more convenient to nurture or transplant food plants closer to home or plant their seeds and tubers (some recent evidence suggests people had started to do this as early as 23,000 years ago)—while the most amenable wild animals were confined to pens. These first farms produced more food to feed more people, so settlements could grow bigger and even produce a surplus to help with leaner times. Valuable food stores—defended from competing camps—became another reason to stay in one place.

## Domestication

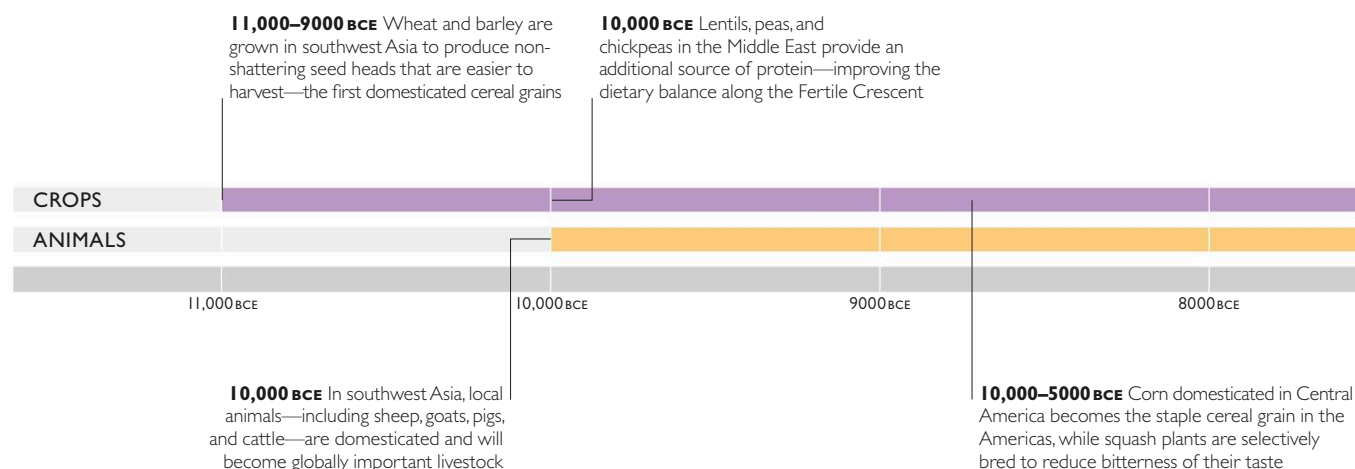
By about 10,000 BCE, agriculture had emerged in Eurasia, New Guinea, and America, with farmers relying on local plants and animals as favored sources of food. They learned that some species were more useful than others, and so these became staple parts of their diets.

In the fertile floodplains of Mesopotamia (modern Iraq), local wild wheat and barley became the cereal grains of choice, while goats and sheep provided meat. East Asia's main cereal grain was rice, and in Central America, farmers

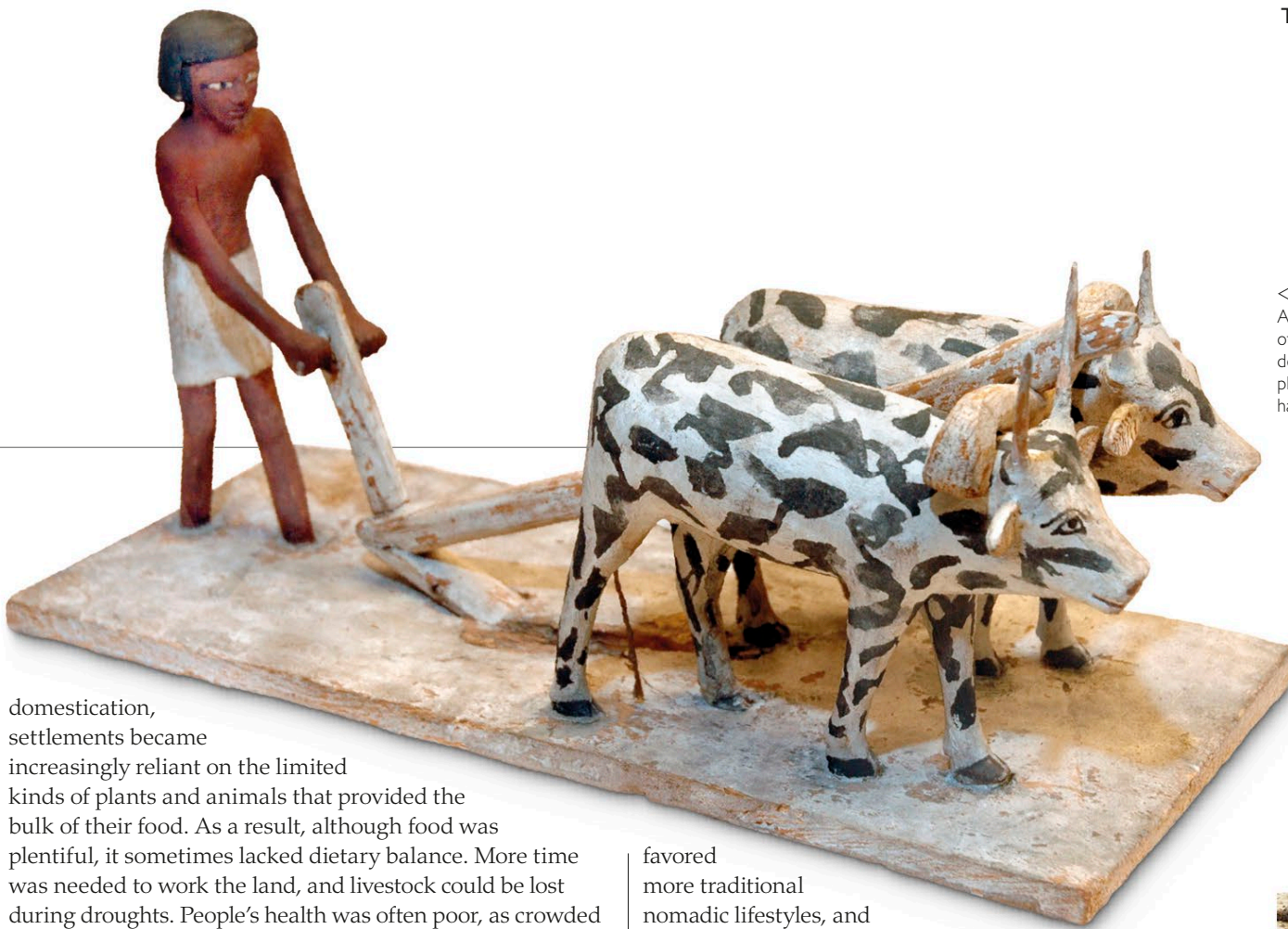
cultivated corn. In all cases, the first farmers selected the most manageable and high-yielding plants and animals. Over time and generations, their choices would change the traits of wild species, as crops and livestock passed on their characteristics to form the domesticated varieties we use today. With

## SETTLED LIVING

As modern humans dispersed around the world, they relied on local plants and animals for sustenance. Nomadic societies gave way to settled communities as people planted the first crops or corralled the first livestock. Domestication of wild species began from about 12,000 years ago. The first farmers used the most edible species that were easiest to harvest, growing their food in abundance, providing enough to support larger populations, and ultimately outcompeting hunter-gatherers.







#### ◀ Working the land

A wooden model, from 2000 BCE, of a man plowing the land with oxen, depicts the earliest kind of scratch plow, which cut a furrow through hard ground ready for sowing seeds.

domestication, settlements became increasingly reliant on the limited kinds of plants and animals that provided the bulk of their food. As a result, although food was plentiful, it sometimes lacked dietary balance. More time was needed to work the land, and livestock could be lost during droughts. People's health was often poor, as crowded settlements encouraged the spread of infectious disease among humans, as well as their livestock.

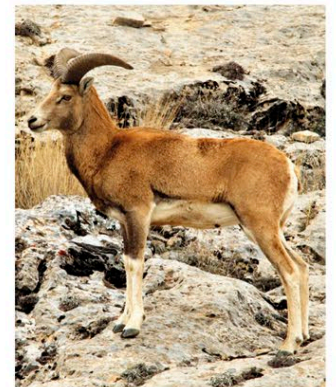
Ultimately, agriculture's success, or otherwise, was a trade-off between these risks and benefits. In some parts of the world—such as the Australian interior—conditions

avored more traditional nomadic lifestyles, and here humans largely remained hunter-gatherers. As farmers gained a better understanding of the needs of their crops and livestock, they developed ways of overcoming risks and increasing productivity. They learned how to use animal dung as fertilizer or to irrigate the land by diverting rivers—curtailing effects of seasonal drought. In Egypt, for example, the waters of the Nile were used for large-scale irrigation of farmland, helping to lengthen growing seasons.

Over time, food productivity became material wealth: more food not only fed more people but facilitated trade, too. At the same time, larger settlements could support people with different skills, such as craftsmen and merchants. It meant that the agricultural revolution would have far-reaching consequences for the history of humankind—including the emergence of industrial towns and cities.

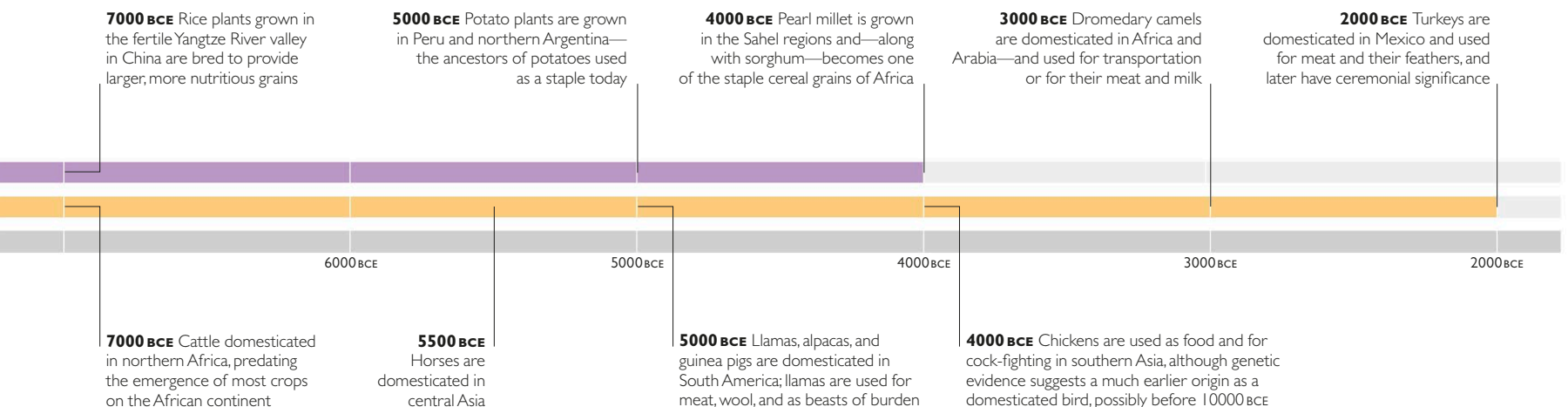
*“Farming was the precondition for the development of ... civilizations in Egypt, Mesopotamia, the Indus Valley, China, the Americas, and Africa.”*

GRAEME BARKER, BRITISH ARCHAEOLOGIST, FROM *AGRICULTURAL REVOLUTION IN PREHISTORY*, 2006



#### △ Feral ancestor

The Armenian mouflon from southwestern Asia is the possible ancestor of the domesticated sheep, which was one of the earliest animal species to be tamed, at around 10,000 BCE.





# ORIGINS OF AGRICULTURE

When hunter-gatherers abandoned their nomadic life and became the first farmers, they were doing more than feeding their families. They were kick-starting an agricultural revolution that would have enormous implications for the future of humanity.

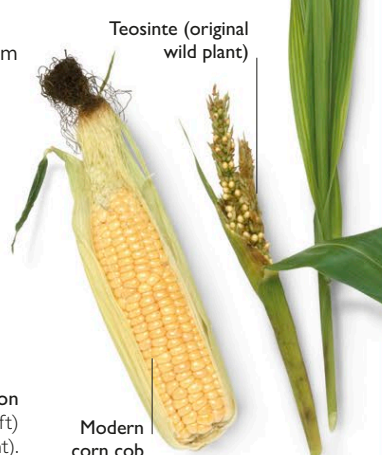
Evidence for agriculture's origins comes from archaeology and from DNA of crops or livestock and their wild counterparts. No one knows exactly why people started to work the land. Perhaps they transplanted wild crops closer to home for convenience or saw the potential of germinating seeds. Whatever happened, as climates warmed in the wake of the Ice Age and populations swelled, people around the world—entirely independently—became tied to farming. It brought a stable source of nourishment and sometimes, when yields were good, a surplus to sustain people through leaner times. Tending crops or corralling livestock demanded that communities stayed in one place long enough to reap the harvest. Other reasons for staying in one location would have been that the new farming tools were too heavy to carry from place to place and any food surplus had to be stored. While agrarian settlements grew to become the seeds of civilization, their communities spread, taking their skills, plants, and livestock with them.

*"... Almost all of us are farmers or else are fed by farmers."*

JARED DIAMOND, FROM *GUNS, GERMS, AND STEEL*, 1997

## DOMESTICATION REVOLUTION WILD SPECIES TO CROPS AND LIVESTOCK

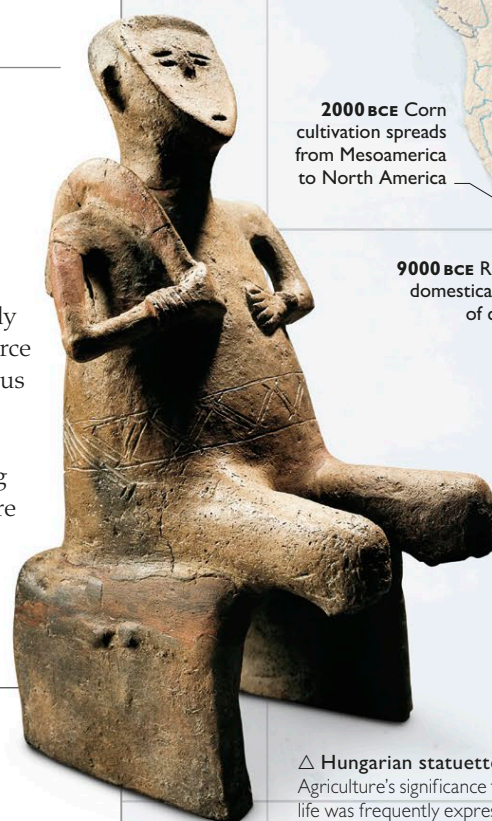
The crops and livestock that humankind uses today descended from wild species that had rather different characteristics. Farmers chose to breed from individuals that served them best, such as by selecting ones that provided better yields or were more easily managed. This so-called artificial selection, applied over many generations and sometimes across centuries, gave rise to domesticated forms of plants and animals.



## 5 DIFFERENT KINDS OF CROPS AND LIVESTOCK: AMERICA 10,000–2000 BCE

Across the Old World, similar kinds of crops and livestock were being used in separate centers of agriculture. But the early colonizers of the Americas found entirely new plants, such as squashes and corn. The variety of these plants increased as people from different regions exchanged their produce. The only large animals suitable for domestication in the Americas, llamas and alpacas, were both found in the Andes.

- ◆ Archaeological site
- ◆ Corn and millet
- ◆ Peanut
- ◆ Squash and sunflower
- ◆ Squash and avocado
- ◆ Potato
- ◆ Turkey
- ◆ Llama and alpaca



△ Hungarian statuette  
Agriculture's significance to community life was frequently expressed in art, such as this 5th-millennium sickle-clasping idol from central Europe.

2000 BCE Corn cultivation spreads from Mesoamerica to North America

5000 BCE Evidence of squash domestication

9000 BCE Rapid domestication of corn

2000 BCE Earliest domestication of turkeys by Mayans

6000 BCE Earliest domestication of llamas by Incas

## ADVENT OF AGRICULTURE

Agriculture arose independently in different parts of the world before diffusing into adjacent regions. Each area developed its own specific crops, dependent on the region's climate, and some produce went on to become globally important as communities expanded across the world.

### KEY

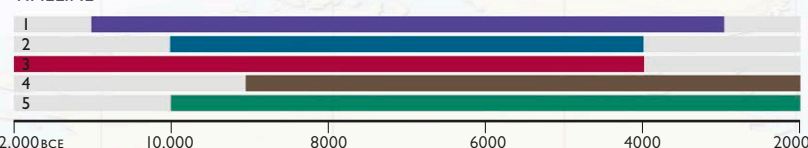
- Main independent centers of domestication
- Secondary centers

- ◆ Cereal grains
- ◆ Legumes
- ◆ Fruits and vegetables
- ◆ Livestock
- ◆ Tubers and roots

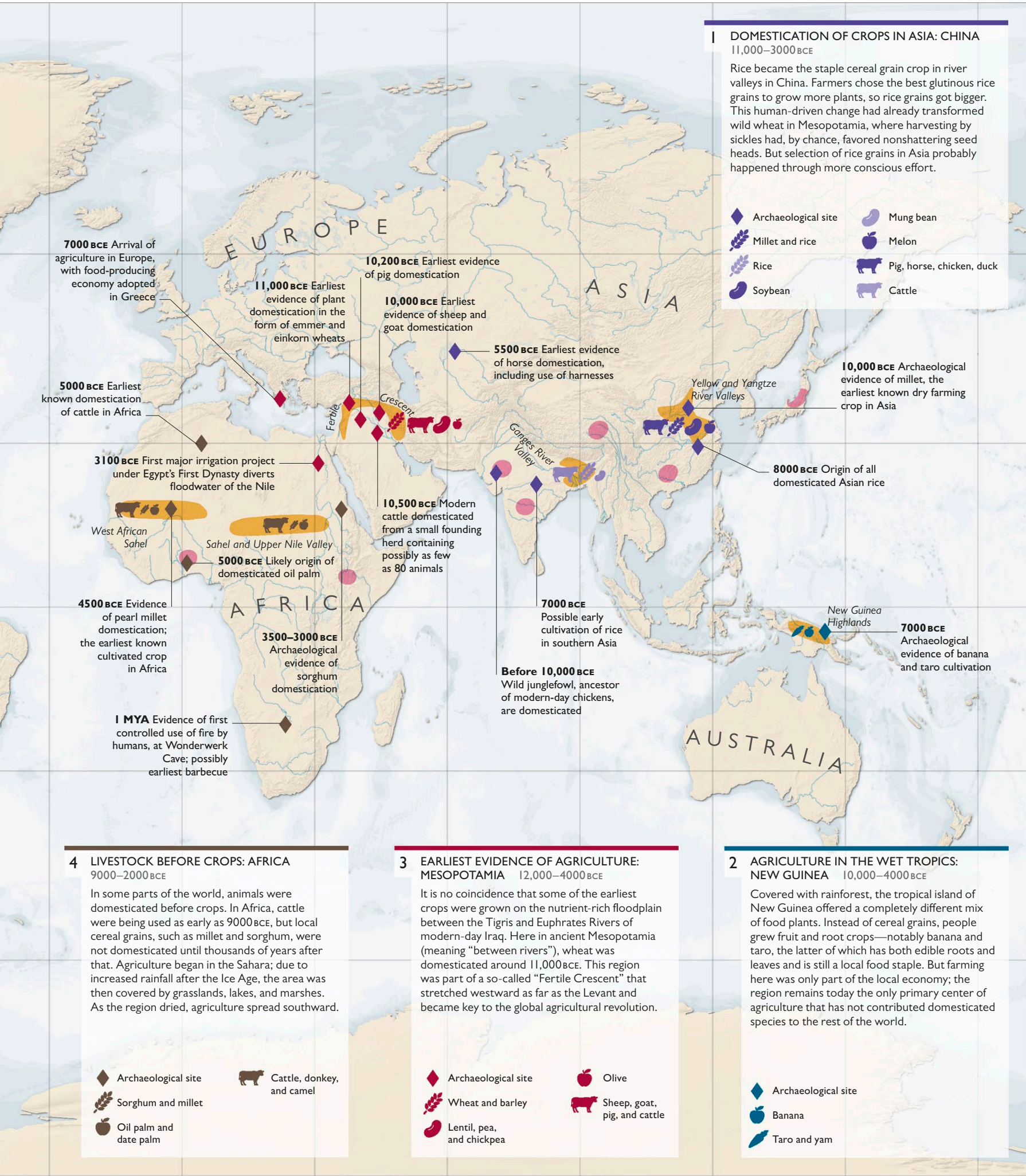
### SIZE KEY

- ◆ Globally important produce
- ◆ Mainly regional produce

### TIMELINE









# VILLAGES TO TOWNS

As nomadic hunter-gatherers began farming, for the first time in history human populations became anchored to fixed points on a map of civilization. Settlements grew in size and complexity; the first villages became the first towns.

Just as agriculture turned humans into a more sedentary species, so the settlements they made drove the attributes of modern human society: material accumulation, industry, and trade. This happened in places around the world, but nowhere is the evidence for it clearer than in southwest Asia. Here, the first farmers produced enough food on fertile soils to support denser populations. Although life was labor-intensive, and there was a greater risk of disease from overcrowding and malnutrition, there were benefits of living together in one place over a long period. People could concentrate on producing a surplus and perfect skills to make their lives easier. Clay was baked into bricks for making stronger houses or fashioned into large storage vessels. As towns grew, they were sometimes fortified with surrounding walls. Shells from the Mediterranean showed wide trade links developing, while copper gradually supplanted flint for better tools. As society itself divided into craftspeople, merchants, and their leaders, these first local industries brought material wealth that formed the basis of the first exchange economies.

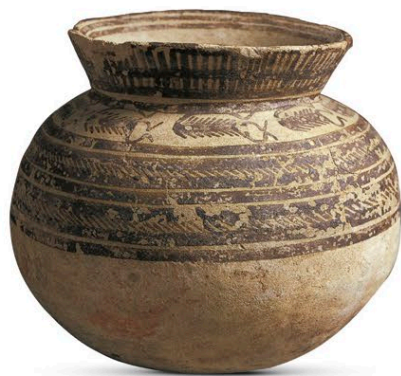
*“... it made sense for men to band together ... for ... management of the environment.”*

J.M. ROBERTS, FROM *HISTORY OF THE WORLD*, 1990

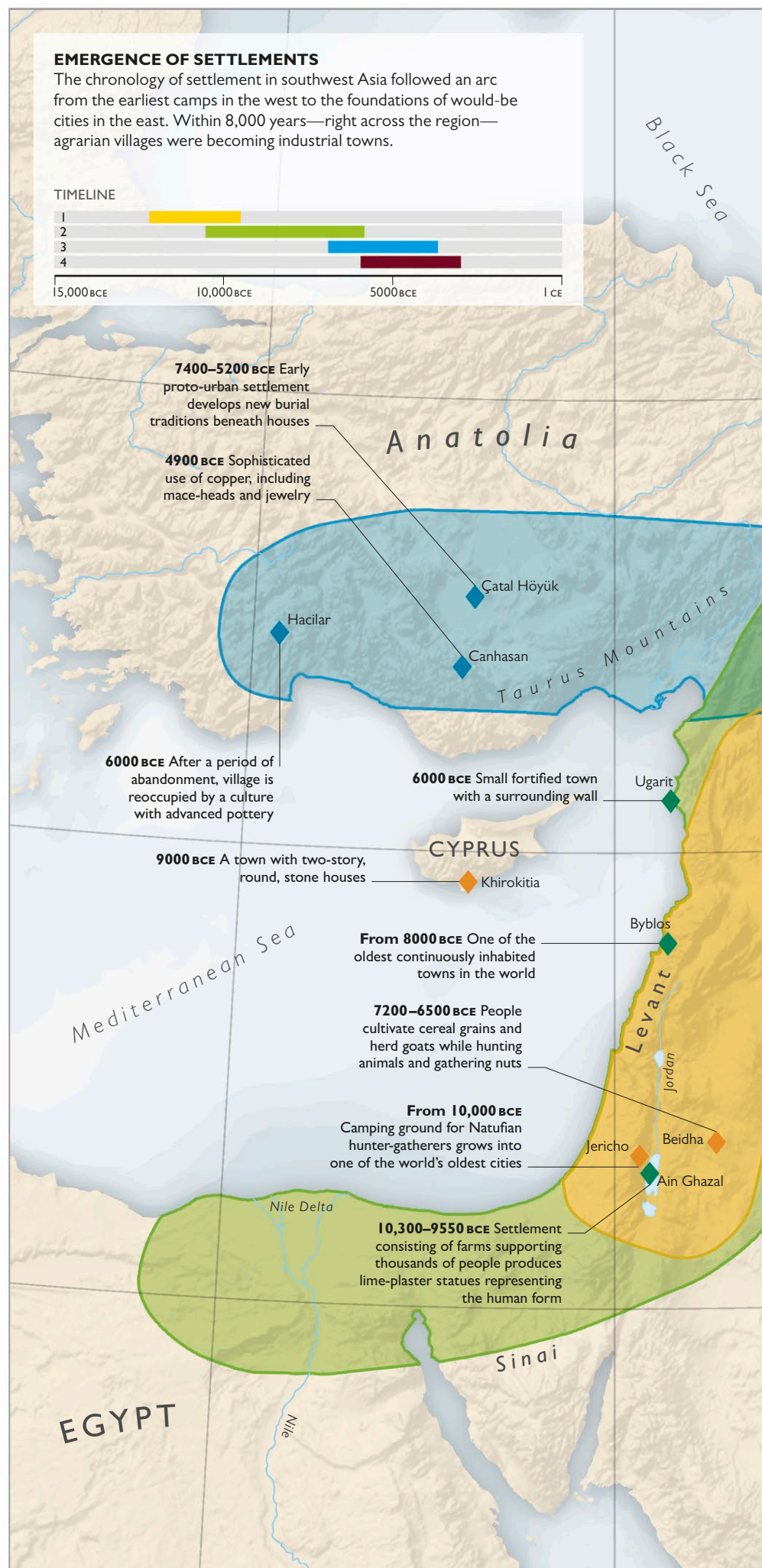
## POTTERY IN THE STONE AGE

### HARNESSING THE POTENTIAL OF CLAY

Fired clay had been used to make figurines and pots before 20,000 YA. It later became important in constructing dwellings. Wet clay was used to reinforce brushwood walls. Solid bricks gave protection from the elements and enemies, while creative clay technology was used to fashion more decorative pots.



**Halaf vase**  
Mesopotamian pottery was decorated with geometric designs as early as 6000 BCE.





- TRANSITION FROM NOMADS TO SETTLEMENTS 12,500–9000 BCE

The Natufian people, descended from nomads of the Levant and Sinai, made the earliest settlements in southwest Asia, from about 12,500 BCE. At first, these were probably nothing more than seasonal hunting camps, although evidence for these is scant because nomads had few material possessions. Their descendants stockpiled food that demanded permanent storage.

■ Spread of settlements

Archaeological site

## 2 FIRST AGRARIAN SETTLEMENTS

Farmers emerged from early settlers who exploited wild cereal grains, such as rye, which was cultivated as early as 11,050 BCE. At first, settlers rallied together to protect wild food plants from grazing animals, but, over time, plants were moved or seeds sown closer to home. Houses became more permanent, as mud brick replaced perishable brushwood as building material.

■ Spread of settlements

◆ Archaeological site

### 3 SPREAD OF MATERIAL CULTURE 7000–4000 BCE

More food supported bigger settlements as villages proliferated over a wider region, from Anatolia in the west to the Zagros Mountains in the east. Çatal Höyük, a rich archaeological site, might have supported up to 10,000 people. Although it lacked social hierarchy, it had a thriving industry in pottery and obsidian tools, and may have traded for seashells and flints from Syria.


- Spread of settlements

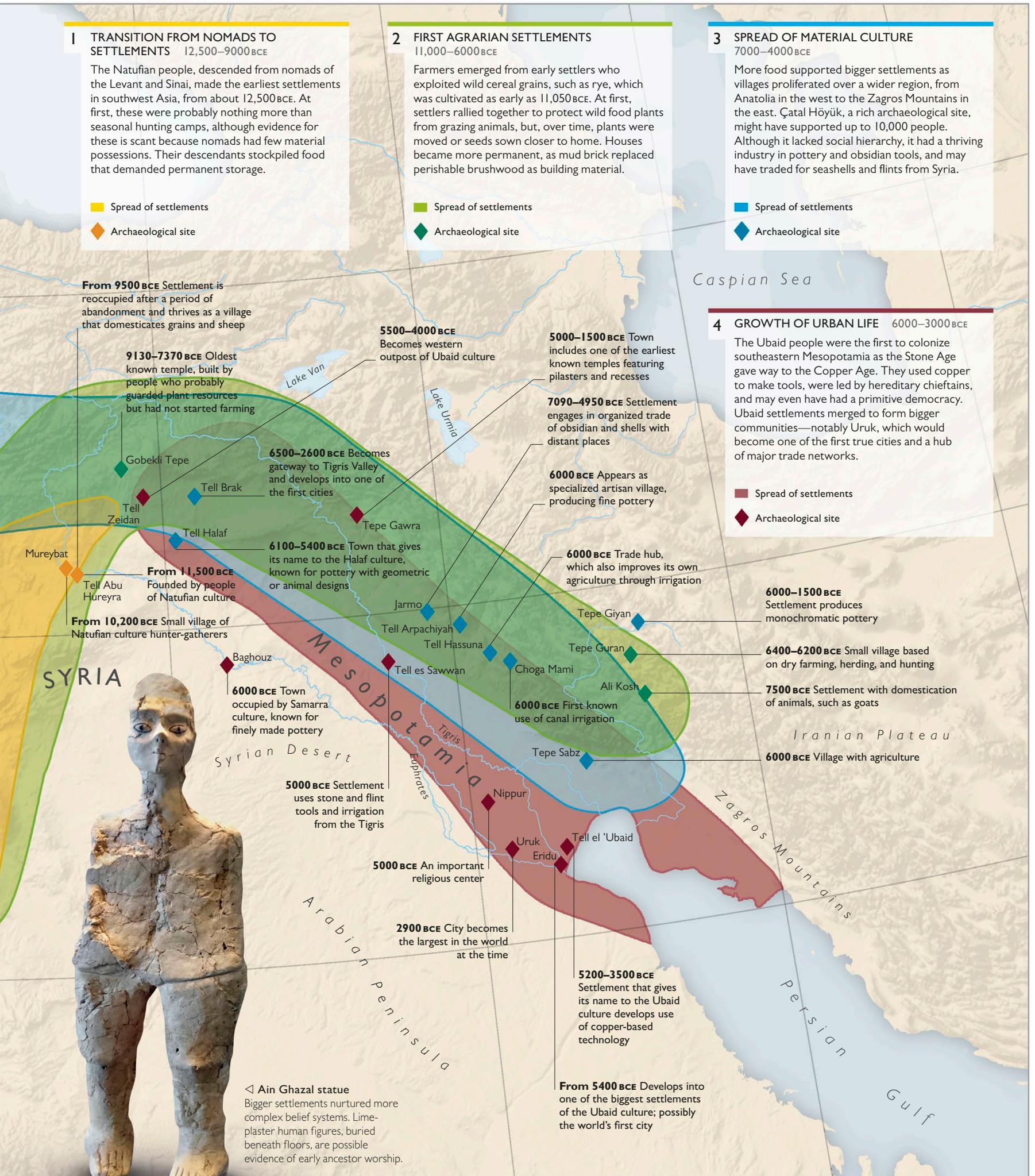
Archaeological site

#### 4 GROWTH OF URBAN LIFE 6000–3000 BCE

The Ubaid people were the first to colonize southeastern Mesopotamia as the Stone Age gave way to the Copper Age. They used copper to make tools, were led by hereditary chieftains, and may even have had a primitive democracy. Ubaid settlements merged to form bigger communities—notably Uruk, which would become one of the first true cities and a hub of major trade networks.

■ Spread of settlements

 Archaeological site











# THE ANCIENT WORLD

ANCIENT HISTORY STRETCHES FROM WHEN THE FIRST CITIES DEVELOPED AROUND 3000 BCE TO THE FALL OF POWERS SUCH AS THE ROMAN EMPIRE AND HAN CHINA IN THE FIRST CENTURIES CE.





**△ Ram in the thicket**  
A fine example of Sumerian craftsmanship, this elaborately crafted statuette of a wild goat searching for food comes from the city-state of Ur in ancient Mesopotamia.

# THE FIRST CIVILIZATIONS

Fertile soil, warm climate, and an ample supply of water, along with agriculture and a stone-working technology, allowed the first urban civilizations to develop. The earliest is thought to have flourished in Mesopotamia (modern-day Iraq) around 3500 BCE.

Of all the factors that helped civilizations grow, water was perhaps the most important. The earliest known civilization was born in Sumer, in southern Mesopotamia, in the fertile region between the rivers Tigris and Euphrates. The Sumerians were drawn to the area they settled in because of the abundance of fresh water the rivers provided.

A thriving trading center of the Sumerian civilization, Uruk is generally considered to be the world’s first city. It boasted 6 miles of defensive walls and a population that numbered between 40,000 and 80,000 at the height of its glory in 2800 BCE. Other Sumerian city-states that contributed significantly to the civilization included Eridu, Ur, Nippur, Lagash, and Kish. Probably the most important Sumerian invention was the wheel, followed by the development of cuneiform writing.

**The first pyramids**  
Just as the Sumerians depended on the rivers Tigris and Euphrates, the Egyptian civilization could not have come into existence without the Nile. The water from the Nile flooded the plains for 6 months annually, leaving behind a nutrient-rich layer of thick, black silt. This meant that the early Egyptians could cultivate crops, including grains, and fruit and vegetables.

*“This is the wall of Uruk, which no city on Earth can equal.”*

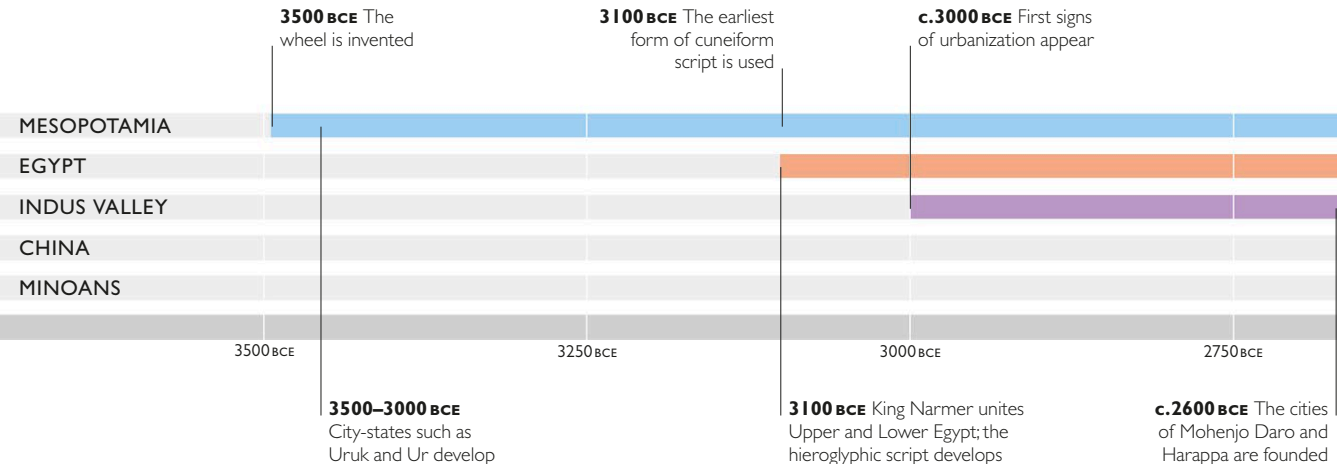
EPIC OF GILGAMESH, c. 2000 BCE



**△ Architectural wonder**  
Giza’s pyramids were the tombs of three Old Kingdom pharaohs. From left to right, the three large pyramids seen here are the tombs of Menkaure, Khafre, and Khufu.

Around 3400 BCE, two Egyptian kingdoms flourished—Upper Egypt in the Nile Valley and Lower Egypt to the north. Some 300 years later, King Narmer unified the two kingdoms, establishing Memphis as the capital of united Egypt. It was near Memphis, at Saqqara, that the Egyptians built their first pyramid around 2611 BCE. The step pyramid was designed by Imhotep—one of King Djoser’s most trusted advisors—as a tomb to house the corpse of his royal master. More than 130 pyramids followed. The most significant of these was the Great Pyramid, constructed at Giza for Khufu, who reigned from 2589 to 2566 BCE. Two more pyramids were erected on the same site for the pharaohs Khafre and Menkaure, Khufu’s successors. Although completely unrelated, pyramid-shaped

**ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS**  
City-based civilization is thought to have originated in Mesopotamia (the area between the rivers Euphrates and Tigris), followed by Egypt’s Nile Valley. Civilizations grew independently in the fertile basins of the Yellow River in China and the Indus Valley in today’s Pakistan and India. In each case, a great river created the conditions for intensive, efficient agriculture. Early cities also grew in Peru, for reasons not yet fully understood. In Europe, the Minoans built highly developed urban settlements centered on grand palaces.







#### ▷ Ritual vessel

This Chinese bronze food bowl, or *gui*, was probably made between 1300 and 1050 BCE. It was used in Shang religious rituals.

structures were also constructed in what is now Peru by the Norte Chico civilization, builders of the first cities in Americas, sometime before 3000 BCE.

### Civilizations of the east

Rivers played an equally important part in the development of civilizations in the Indus Valley (in the northwestern part of south Asia) and northern China. The Indus Valley people are known today as Harappans after Harappa—one of their greatest cities, along with Mohenjo Daro. The Harappans prospered from 3300 to 1900 BCE. Until recently, the Harappans were thought to have been overrun by Aryan invaders from the north, but a more modern theory suggests that tectonic shifts that affected the rivers on which they relied were the cause of the Indus Valley collapse. Yet another theory suggests that the drying up of local rivers led to the culture's decline.

A Chinese civilization flourished along the Huang He, or Yellow River, in the north. As with the Egyptian and Harappan civilizations, here, too, seasonal floods enriched the soil. This encouraged the development of farming, while the river itself provided a useful trade route. By 2000 BCE, bronze-working, silk-weaving, and pottery were being practiced.

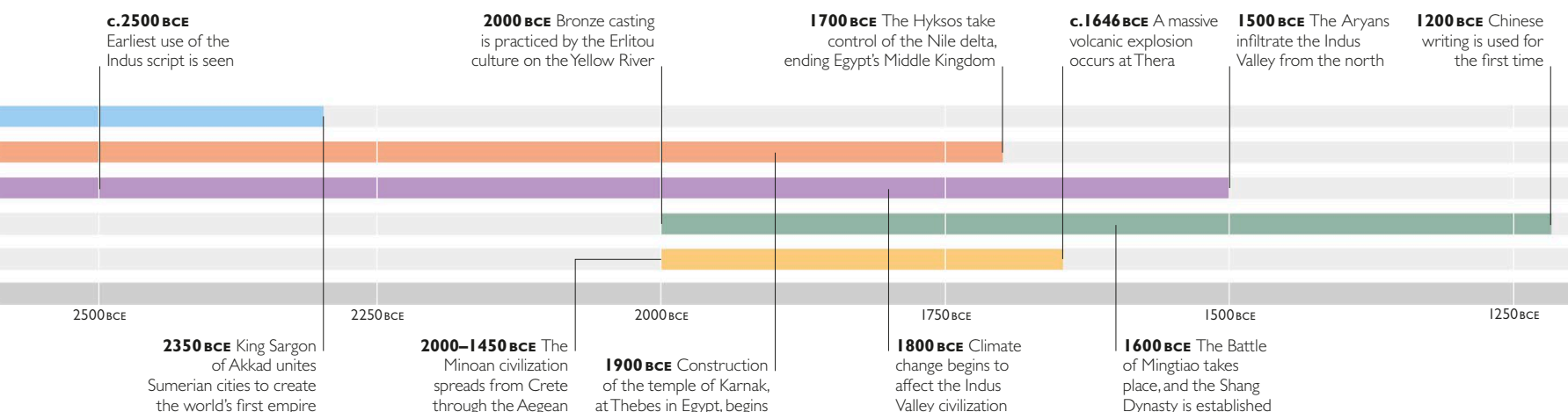
### The mysterious Minoans

Around the same time that the Chinese civilization was developing, another influential civilization was emerging on the

Mediterranean island of Crete. Its people are known as the Minoans, so named by the British archaeologist Sir Arthur Evans to honor Minos, a legendary ruler who may or may not have existed. The Minoans were a great maritime trading power, exporting timber, pottery, and textiles. Trade brought wealth, and they built many palaces—Knossos being the most impressive. The Minoan civilization declined in the late 15th century BCE. Some historians attribute this to a volcanic explosion on the island of Thera (modern-day Santorini), while others argue that it was the result of an invasion by the Mycenaeans from mainland Greece.

#### ▽ Artistic expression

This colorful fresco, depicting a Minoan funeral ritual honoring a dead nobleman, decorates a sarcophagus dating from the 14th century BCE.





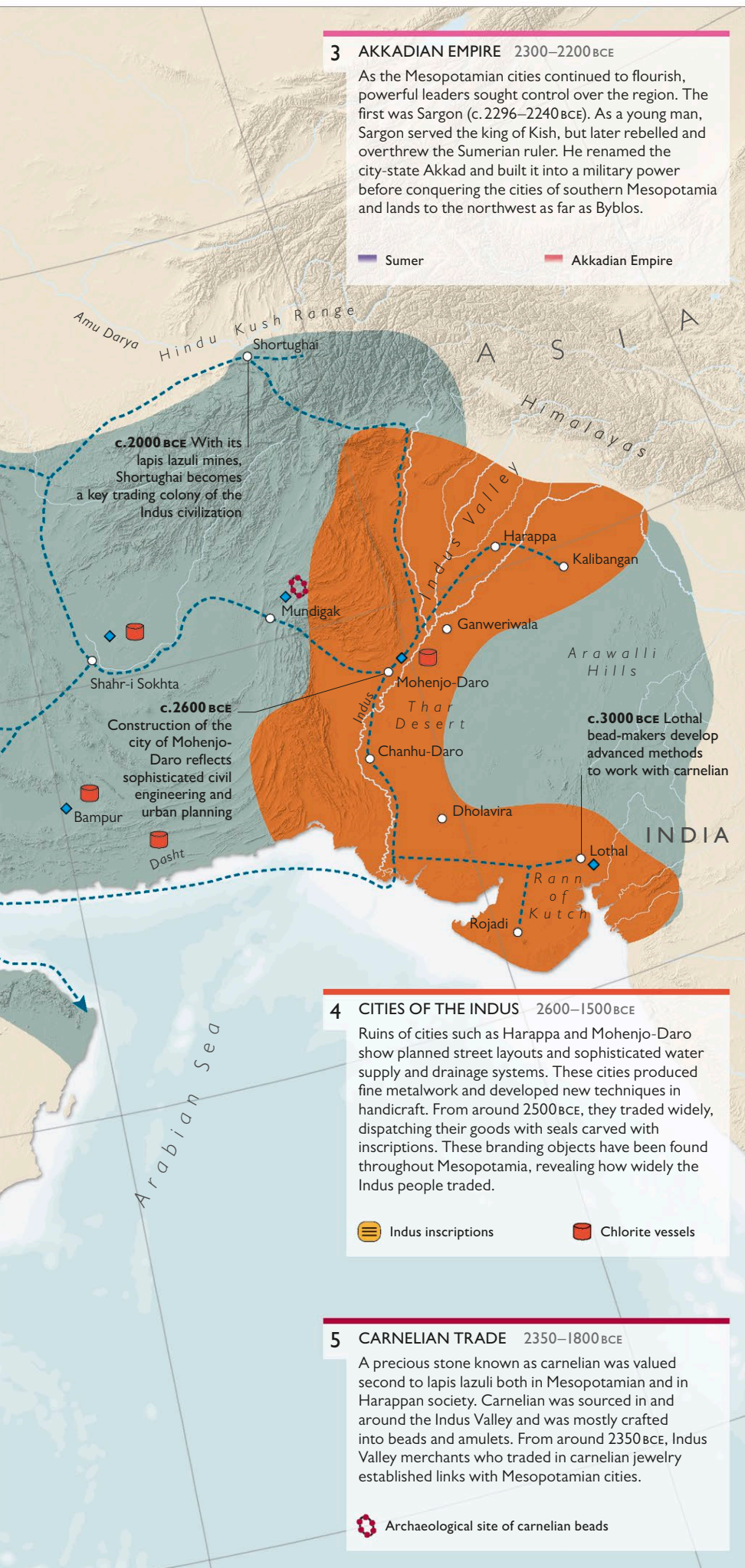




### 3 AKKADIAN EMPIRE 2300–2200 BCE

As the Mesopotamian cities continued to flourish, powerful leaders sought control over the region. The first was Sargon (c. 2296–2240 BCE). As a young man, Sargon served the king of Kish, but later rebelled and overthrew the Sumerian ruler. He renamed the city-state Akkad and built it into a military power before conquering the cities of southern Mesopotamia and lands to the northwest as far as Byblos.

■ Sumer ■ Akkadian Empire



### 4 CITIES OF THE INDUS 2600–1500 BCE

Ruins of cities such as Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro show planned street layouts and sophisticated water supply and drainage systems. These cities produced fine metalwork and developed new techniques in handicraft. From around 2500 BCE, they traded widely, dispatching their goods with seals carved with inscriptions. These branding objects have been found throughout Mesopotamia, revealing how widely the Indus people traded.

■ Indus inscriptions

■ Chlorite vessels

### 5 CARNELIAN TRADE 2350–1800 BCE

A precious stone known as carnelian was valued second to lapis lazuli both in Mesopotamian and in Harappan society. Carnelian was sourced in and around the Indus Valley and was mostly crafted into beads and amulets. From around 2350 BCE, Indus Valley merchants who traded in carnelian jewelry established links with Mesopotamian cities.

■ Archaeological site of carnelian beads

# THE FIRST CITIES

The first known cities developed along fertile river plains in Mesopotamia (modern Iraq), Egypt, and the Indus Valley. They became thriving trading centers with an organized social structure, and flourished in the fields of art, craft, and architecture.

By 3000 BCE, agricultural advances led to food surpluses in some parts of the world, namely the river valleys of the Nile in Egypt, the Indus, and the Tigris and Euphrates in Mesopotamia, allowing the communities living in these regions to branch out into a range of craftwork—from metalworking to masonry. This gave rise to the first markets, which channeled wealth into these sites, and in doing

*“The Mesopotamians viewed their city-states as earthly copies of a divine model and order.”*

J. SPIELVOGEL, FROM *WESTERN CIVILIZATION VOL. 1*, 2014

so formed the nucleus of the world’s first cities. These urban centers mostly grew on the riverbanks, in close proximity to fertile farmland and sources of clay for brick-making. The rivers served as vital routes for transporting raw material such as timber, precious stones, and metals into the cities. Trade goods also moved over land, in particular across the Levant and the Iranian Plateau, linking the cities of all three regions. Most notably, carnelian beads and seals (branding marks on documents accompanying goods) from the Indus Valley have been found widely in Mesopotamia. Many Mesopotamian cities grew into powerful city-states, some of which eventually became the capitals of some of the earliest known empires.

### STANDARD OF UR

MESOPOTAMIAN ARTIFACT, 2600–2400 BCE

Excavated from the royal tombs of Ur in the 1920s, the Standard of Ur is a tapered box decorated with scenes. The original purpose of the artifact remains a mystery, but the images on the two side panels, dubbed the “War Side” and the “Peace Side,” form a narrative that offers a vivid insight into the different aspects of life in the ancient city. The scenes also include the earliest known image of wheels used for transportation.





# EGYPT OF THE PHARAOHS

Egypt was among the most enduring civilizations in the ancient world. With its succession of powerful rulers, unique religion and art, and trading networks, the culture exerted its influence in the Nile Valley and beyond for more than 3,000 years.

From c. 2700 to 1085 BCE, Egypt's kings, or pharaohs, ruled the Nile Valley for three long, separate periods, named by historians the Old, Middle, and New Kingdoms.

Egypt's ancient civilization grew along the banks of the River Nile, which was the main artery for travel and trade. The river was also rich in fish and flooded annually, covering the banks with fertile mud, making for a highly productive agricultural region. While Egypt's pharaohs ruled over this riverside zone, their influence spread much farther afield, mainly through land and sea trading expeditions, which became more widespread in the Middle and New Kingdom eras. The Egyptians developed their own system of writing, and the pharaohs bolstered their wealth by employing scribes to record goods traded and to ensure taxes were collected.

The Egyptian people worshipped multiple gods and also regarded the pharaohs as deities, which lent spiritual weight to the ruling power. The strength of the pharaohs' authority is evident in the impressive burial sites built during the ancient era, including the pyramids of the Old Kingdom and the colossal temples and tombs of the later kingdoms.

*"The All-Lord himself made me great. He gave to me the land while I was in the egg."*

RAMESSES II, PHARAOH OF THE NEW KINGDOM,  
1279–1213 BCE

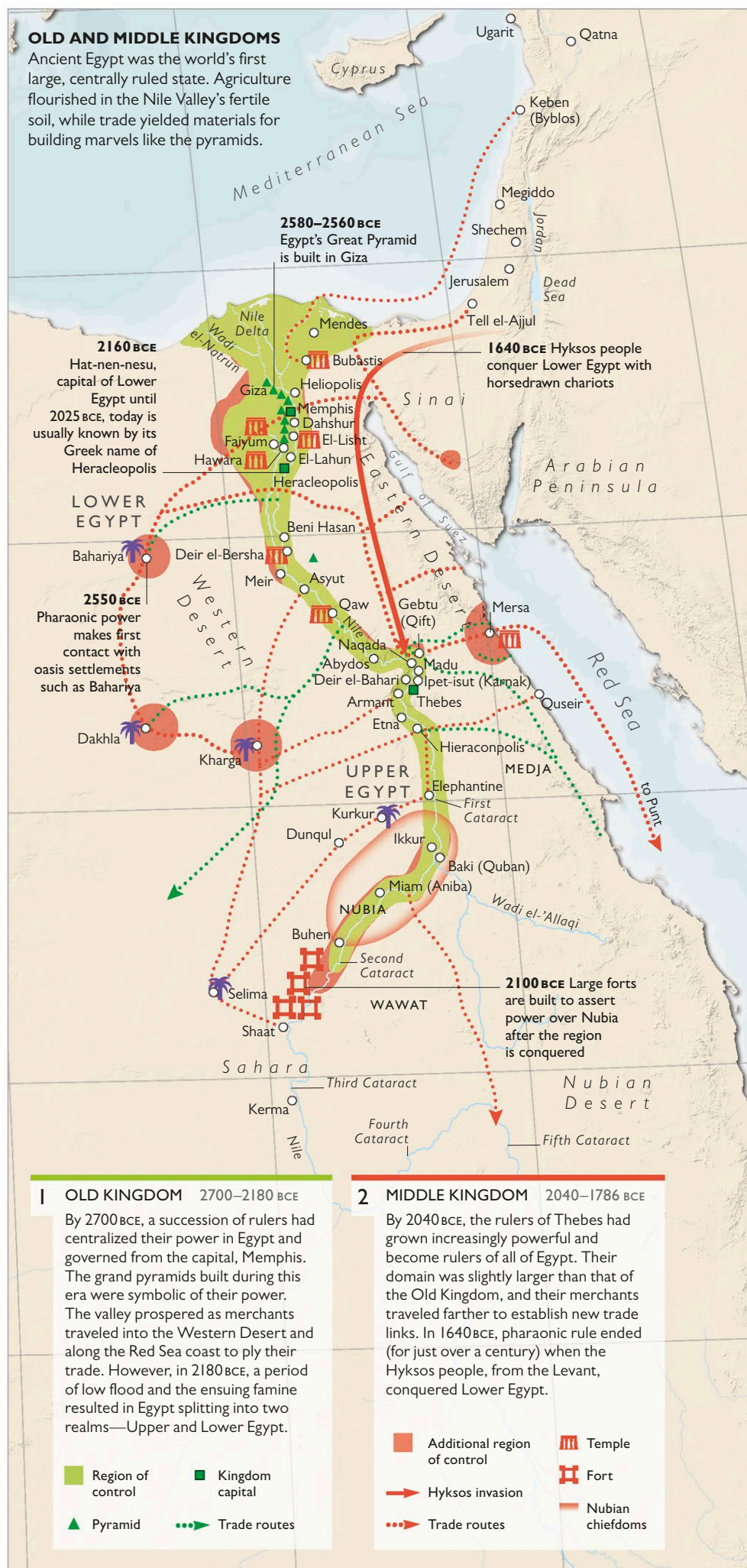
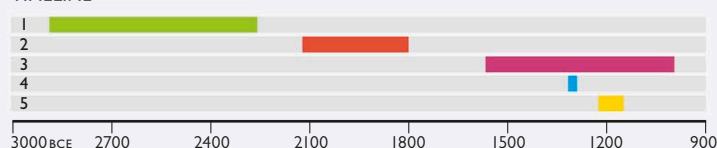
## REGION UNDER EGYPTIAN CONTROL

The maps show the boundaries of the Old, Middle, and New Kingdoms of Ancient Egypt and include the trade routes that linked the sites of oases, cities, the great temples, forts, and pyramids.

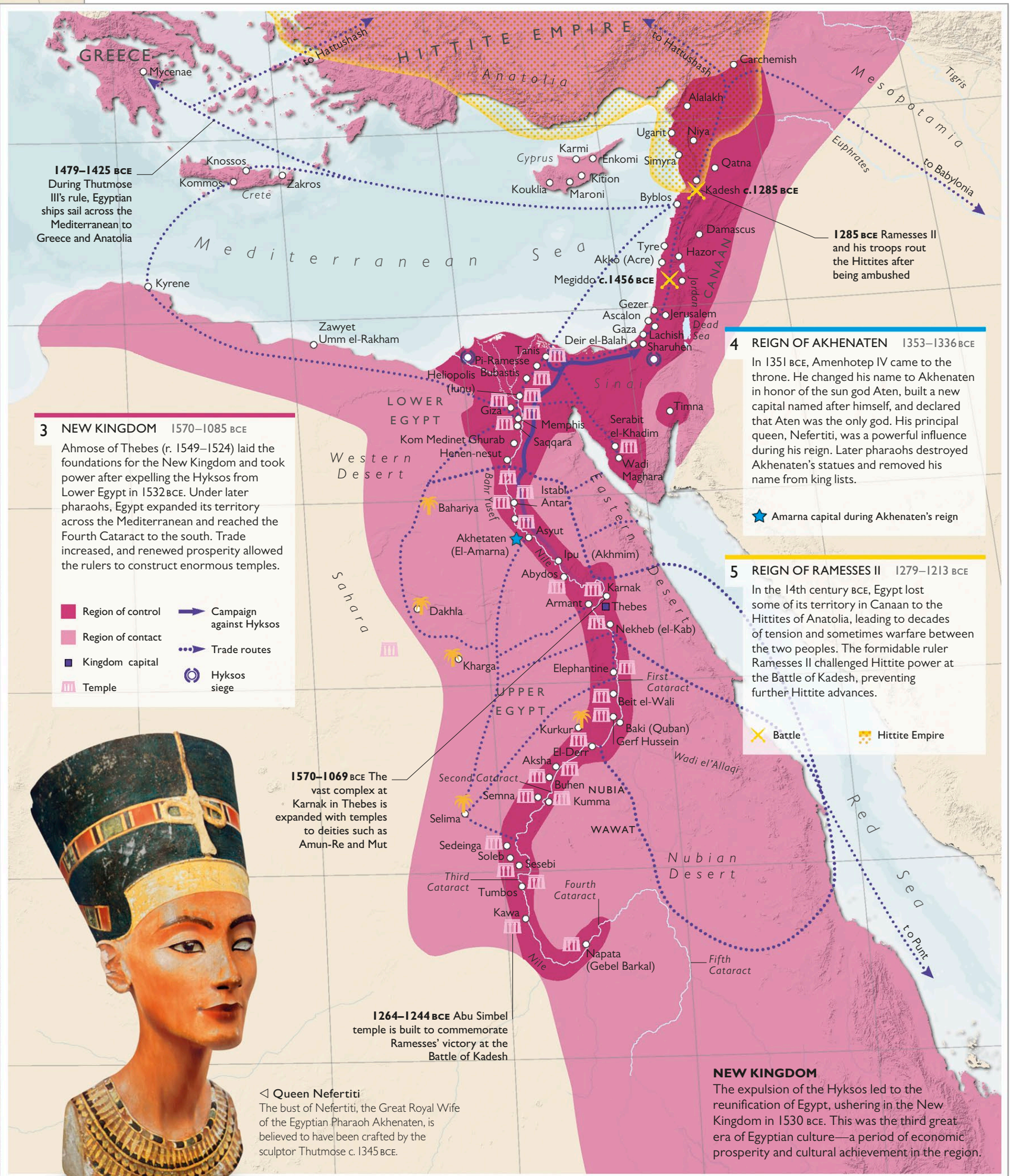
### KEY

🌴 🌴 Oasis

### TIMELINE

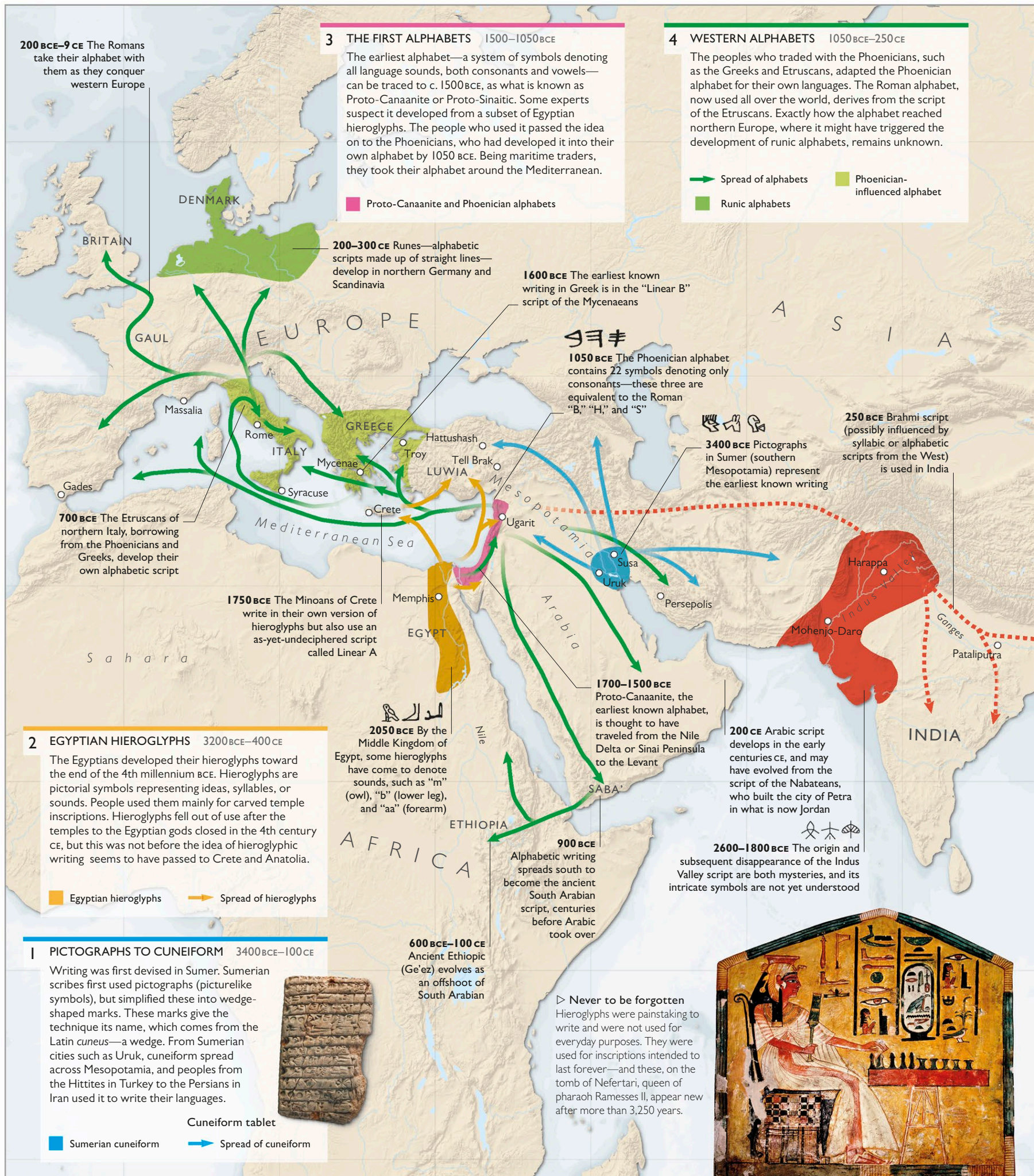






◀ **Queen Nefertiti**  
The bust of Nefertiti, the Great Royal Wife of the Egyptian Pharaoh Akhenaten, is believed to have been crafted by the sculptor Thutmose c. 1345 BCE.



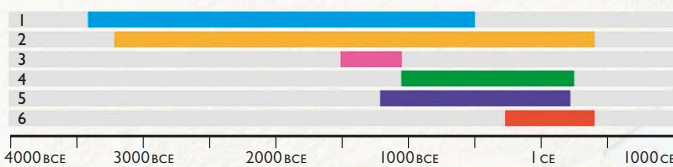




## OLD WORLD ORIGINS

Writing was invented independently in at least two places in the Old World—Mesopotamia and China. Egyptian and Indus Valley writing may represent another two instances of separate invention, or writing might have spread there from Mesopotamia.

## TIMELINE



**1200 BCE** The earliest known Chinese writing is inscribed on “oracle bones” by fortune tellers

**1–500 CE** Korean scribes try different methods of adapting Chinese characters to write their language

KOREA

JAPAN

Nara

**650–800 CE** Japanese scholars create scripts based on both classical and adapted Chinese characters

## 5 CHINESE CHARACTERS 1200 BCE–220 CE

From the late Shang Dynasty (1200–1050 BCE), various scripts evolved in China. They were all logographic, meaning the complex symbols, called characters, denoted words or morphemes (the smallest unit of language that conveys meaning) rather than sounds. By the Han Dynasty (206 BCE–220 CE), certain standard scripts had developed, one of which is the unsimplified script still in use outside the People's Republic.

Chinese script

Spread of Chinese script

## 6 INDIAN SCRIPTS 268 BCE–400 CE

South Asia has a profusion of syllabic scripts, all descended from Brahmi, which dates back at least to Ashoka's rule (268–232 BCE) but whose origins are obscure. Brahmi may have developed indigenously or been adapted from alphabets, such as Aramaic, from western Asia. What is certain is that Indian writing has no known link with the mysterious and undeciphered script of the long-lost Indus Valley civilization.

Indus Valley script

Possible influence on Brahmi from the West

## THE FIRST WRITING

Writing developed first in c. 3400 BCE in western Asia, but also independently in China, Mesoamerica, and possibly the Indus Valley. From the start, symbols represented spoken language in different ways—either as words and ideas, the language's sounds, or a mixture of both.

By the 4th millennium BCE, cities had developed in Egypt, China, the Indus Valley, and Mesopotamia. The societies that built these cities traded on a large scale and had complex, organized religions. Both of these developments encouraged literacy—for writing accounts and goods traded or for recording calendars and sacred lore.

The earliest writing—in Mesopotamia—began as pictures scratched on damp clay tablets that were then baked in the sun to create a permanent document. Slowly, these evolved into “cuneiform” symbols made of wedges. Many surviving cuneiform tablets list goods or contain tax records, although there are also religious and literary works written with the technique. Around the same time, the Egyptians developed their hieroglyphs and later, the Chinese evolved their written characters, both of which were used for religious purposes initially. Alphabetic scripts, which originated in Sinai or the Levant, caught on widely as the Phoenicians disseminated their version. Alphabets needed only 20–30 symbols, as opposed to the hundreds used in syllabic scripts or the thousands in Chinese.

*“Do not answer back against your father.”*

FROM THE SUMERIAN INSTRUCTIONS  
OF SHURUPPAK—PERHAPS THE WORLD'S  
EARLIEST SURVIVING LITERATURE, c. 2600 BCE

## MESOAMERICAN SCRIPTS

WRITING OF THE OLMECS, ZAPOTECAS, AND MAYA

Civilizations in Mesoamerica invented their own writing systems, but they did not spread beyond the region. Inscriptions date back to the mysterious Cascajal Block, possibly carved by Olmecs around 800 BCE. The Zapotecs used a pictographic script from at least 400 BCE and were followed by the Maya, whose intricate symbols, or glyphs (right), combined logograms (denoting ideas) and syllabic script. Maya glyphs came into use c. 300 BCE and remained current until the Spanish conquest (see pp. 152–153).





## 6 MYCENAEAN TRADE 1450–1100 BCE

A wealth of finds from Mycenaean settlements and graves indicates the kind of items traded by the people of the Greek Bronze Age. Raw materials such as copper and tin crossed the region by land and sea and were used in ornate Mycenaean metalwork. Archaeologists have also found numerous pottery storage jars, which were used to transport wine and oil.

- Mycenaean import routes
- Mycenaean export routes
- Major routes within Mycenaean heartland

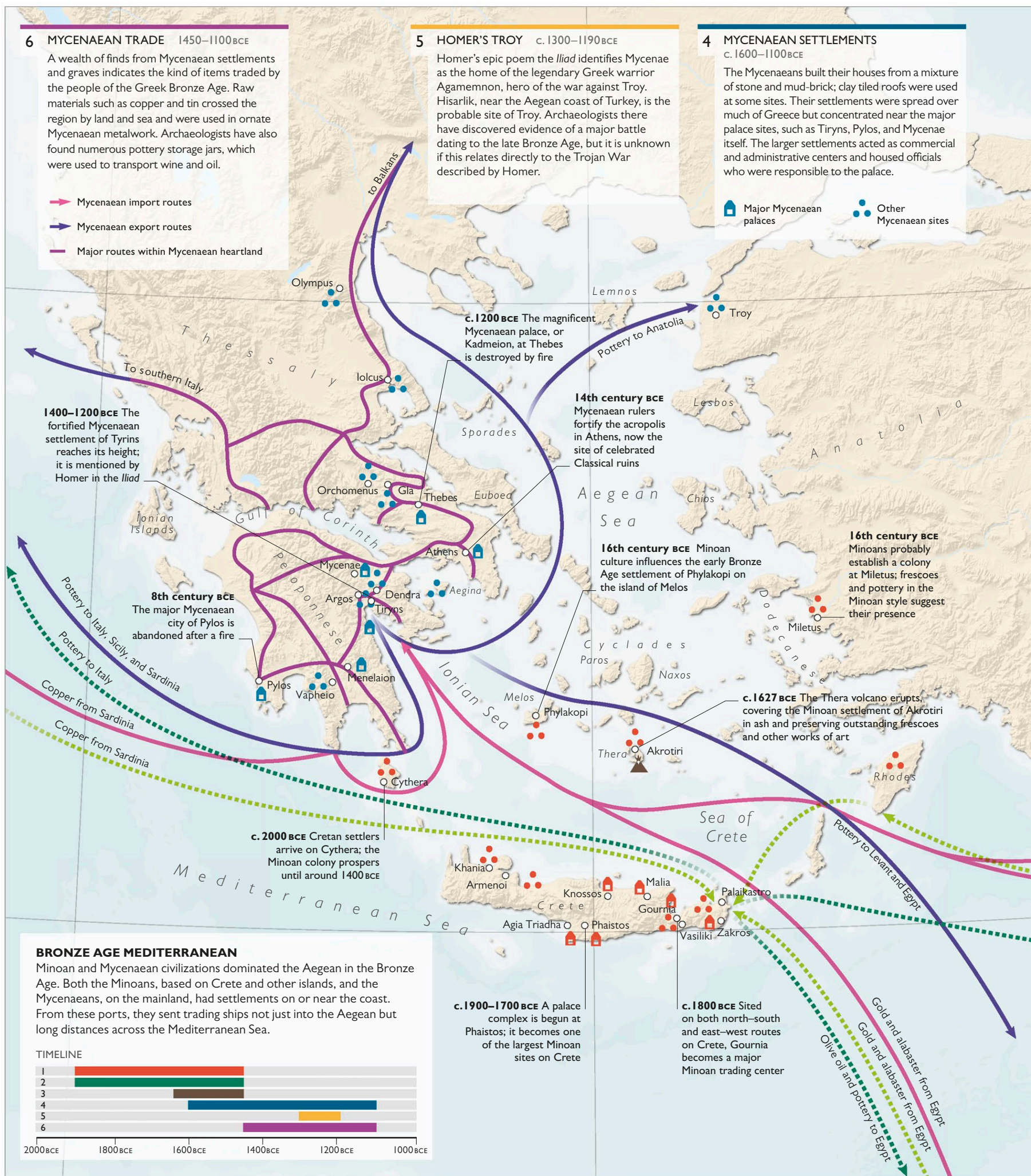
## 5 HOMER'S TROY c. 1300–1190 BCE

Homer's epic poem the *Iliad* identifies Mycenae as the home of the legendary Greek warrior Agamemnon, hero of the war against Troy. Hisarlik, near the Aegean coast of Turkey, is the probable site of Troy. Archaeologists there have discovered evidence of a major battle dating to the late Bronze Age, but it is unknown if this relates directly to the Trojan War described by Homer.

## 4 MYCENAEAN SETTLEMENTS c. 1600–1100 BCE

The Mycenaeans built their houses from a mixture of stone and mud-brick; clay tiled roofs were used at some sites. Their settlements were spread over much of Greece but concentrated near the major palace sites, such as Tiryns, Pylos, and Mycenae itself. The larger settlements acted as commercial and administrative centers and housed officials who were responsible to the palace.

- Major Mycenaean palaces
- Other Mycenaean sites





# MINOANS AND MYCENAEANS

During the Bronze Age, first the Minoan and then the Mycenaean cultures dominated Greece and the Aegean. These peoples developed a range of skills—such as metalworking, architecture, and literacy—that laid the foundations for the later Classical civilization of Greece.

The Minoan culture—considered by some to be the first European civilization—flourished on Crete in the 2nd millennium BCE. Many mysteries still surround the Minoans; scholars have been unable to decipher their writing, so do not know their exact dates, or even what they called themselves—the word “Minoan” is a modern term of convenience. But they are known to have been highly influential in trading across the Mediterranean, leaving inscriptions at several places on the Greek mainland, as well as on some islands in the Aegean. Minoan civilization was centered on several large, elegantly decorated Cretan palaces that were not fortified, suggesting they were a peaceful people.

From the mid-15th century BCE, the Mycenaeans—based on mainland Greece—became the dominant power. They were a trading people, exchanging goods with mainland Italy, Sicily, and Sardinia. They also wielded military power, as seen by their fortified palaces, and impressive weaponry and armor. Their script, known as Linear B (probably derived from Cretan Linear A) has been deciphered and was used to write an early form of Greek.

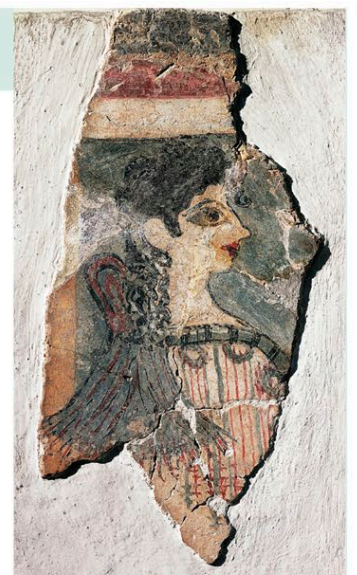
The Mycenaeans created several independent states in mainland Greece with settlements on many of the islands. Each state centered on a palace, and most were capable of major engineering projects, such as stone fortifications, harbors, dams, and roads. Disputes between the states may have contributed to the decline of the Mycenaean civilization after about 1100 BCE.

## KNOSSOS EUROPE'S OLDEST CITY

At its height, Minoan Knossos was a large city of 10,000–100,000 people. At its heart was the palace complex, which had 1,300 rooms covering some 6 acres (2.4 hectares). As well as large, beautifully decorated residential or ceremonial rooms, there were many rooms set aside for storage. These rooms contained hundreds of large jars for oil, grain, or other foods. Grain mills also formed part of the palace complex.

### Fresco fragment

The walls of the palace at Knossos were decorated with images of animals, mythological creatures, and people.



Black  
Sea

▷ **Bull's head vessel**  
This ceremonial vessel from c. 1400 BCE was found at the Palace of Knossos. The Minoans venerated the bull, considering it a symbol of man's dominion over nature.

### 3 THE DECLINE OF MINOAN CIVILIZATION c. 1640–1450 BCE

The reason for the decline of Minoan culture is unknown, but it may be connected to the eruption of the volcano on Thera in the middle of the 2nd millennium BCE. This destroyed the Minoan settlement of Akrotiri and may have disrupted the Minoan economy, allowing the Mycenaeans to take Minoan trade routes and settlements, becoming the dominant power in the area.

Volcanic eruption

### 2 MINOAN TRADE AND EXPANSION c. 1900–1450 BCE

The Minoans traded widely, visiting other Greek islands and settling on Rhodes, Thera (modern Santorini), Melos, and Cythera. They traded with Cyprus, Egypt, and Syria (importing metals such as copper, tin, and gold, as well as ivory), and their influence spread as far as the Levant. The palace site of Zakros was probably a center for trade.

Ivory, tin from Syria

Copper to Crete

Copper to Mycenae

Olive oil and cloth to Tyre

Minoan import routes

Minoan export routes

### 1 MINOAN PALACES c. 1900–1450 BCE

These complex buildings, the largest of which was at Knossos, seem to have combined the roles of palace, administrative center, warehouse, and shrine. Constructed of several stories supported by wooden tapering columns, they were adorned with wall paintings. Some rooms, decorated with bulls' horns and featuring altarlike structures, almost certainly had some ceremonial use.



Minoan major palaces



Other Minoan sites



# BRONZE AGE CHINA

Chinese culture began to take on its distinctive form in the Bronze Age, from about 1600 BCE onward, with the development of writing during the Shang Dynasty and its successor, the Zhou. Politically, China was still a collection of separate states, with one or more of the states taking a leading role at different times.

Most historians date the Bronze Age in China to c. 2000–c. 770 BCE, although the widespread use of bronze continued for centuries. The period coincides with the beginnings of literacy in China and with the rule of two influential dynasties, the Shang (c. 1600–1027 BCE) and the Zhou (1046–256 BCE).

The Shang controlled much of northern China, creating a feudal system with a core state and a number of vassal states. Its rulers cemented their power using rituals such as ancestor worship and divination using “oracle bones” (bones incised with written messages). The Shang moved their capital city several times, the last and largest being at Anyang, where

archaeologists have uncovered a royal tomb containing bronze artifacts and oracle bones. They extended their influence through trade with northern and central Chinese neighbors, and with people of the steppes to the west.

Around the 11th century BCE, Ji Chang of the Zhou—a people from the Shang’s western border—led a rebellion, and the Shang were conquered. The Zhou developed systems of coinage, and writing evolved into something closer to the modern Chinese script. Two of the most influential philosophers of all time, Confucius and Laozi, were active under the Zhou Dynasty.

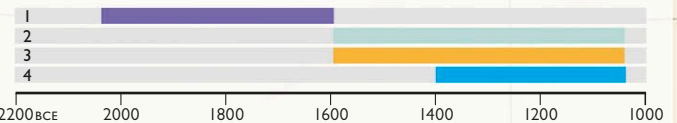
## SHANG CHINA

Before the Shang, the Yellow River valley was occupied by sophisticated cultures for centuries. The region became the Shang’s heartland, where they made vassals of a number of local states.

### KEY

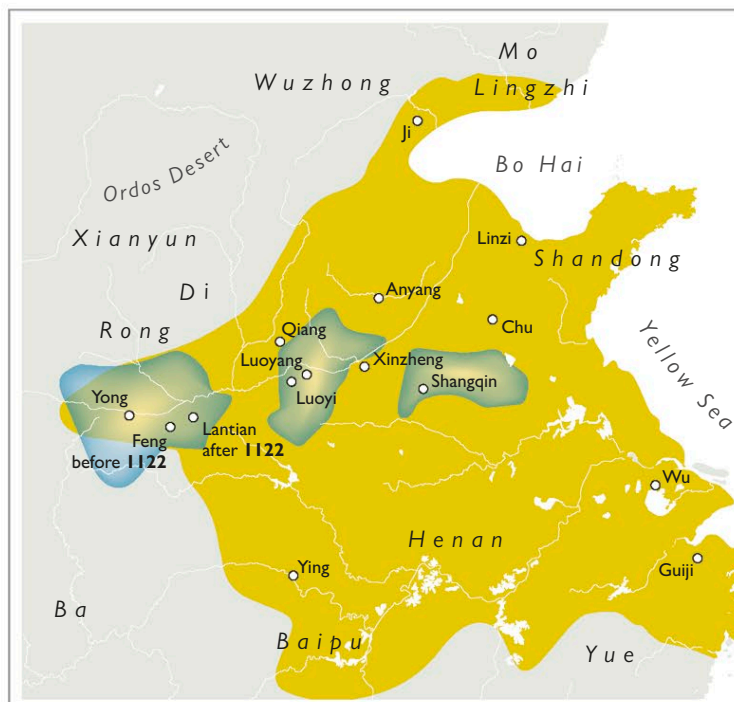
● Shang city    ●●● Trade route    ➞ Main Shang campaign

### TIMELINE



### Shang bronze work

This owl-shaped vessel exemplifies the exquisite patterns with which Shang metalworkers decorated their products; these included tableware, such as food and drinking vessels.



## ZHOU CHINA

Zhou began as a vassal state in the far west of the Shang Empire. Toward the end of the Shang period, the Zhou challenged their overlords, moving eastward and establishing strongholds along the Yellow River before removing the Shang rulers by 1046 BCE. By 1000 BCE, their influence was felt across most of China, including the Shang’s neighboring peoples, the Baipu, and encompassed the whole area to which urban civilization had spread.

### KEY

■ Distribution of urban civilization by c. 1000 BCE  
 ■ Zhou strongholds  
 ○ Zhou capitals

## 2nd millennium BCE

A western trade route links China with central Asia; it is a forerunner of the Silk Road between eastern and western Asia

## BEFORE THE SHANG c. 2070–1600 BCE

A series of neolithic cultures predate the Shang in China—archaeologists have, for example, revealed the remains of the Longshan culture in the Yellow River valley and the Yueshi culture in the Shandong region. Other sites, such as Erlitou with its impressive buildings, tombs, and paved roads, point to more sophisticated cultures, such as the Xia Dynasty (who are thought to have existed from 2070 BCE).

★ Possible Xia capital  
 ■ Longshan culture, c. 3000–2000 BCE  
 ■ Yueshi culture, c. 1900–1500 BCE



**3 SHANG CRAFTS AND FORTIFICATIONS**

c. 1600–1050 BCE

Archaeologists have uncovered large Shang fortifications made of rammed earth. These structures suggest that the region was strategically important for the Shang; Erligang may have been an early Shang capital. Other finds there include the workshops of potters, bone workers (who made items from bone), and bronze workers. Shang cast bronzes are among the most impressive of early Chinese objects.

★ Early Shang capital

■ Major Shang bronze artifact finds

**4 SHANG MILITARY POWER** c. 1400–1046 BCE

The Shang rulers were faced with competition for power in both the east and northwest of their Yellow River heartlands. They had a small standing force equipped with chariots and archers based at Yin (modern Anyang), their capital from c. 1400 BCE. They supplemented this with thousands of additional troops and weapons supplied by vassal rulers. A Shang king could therefore assemble an army of perhaps 13,000 men, armed with weapons such as dagger-axes, that could usually subdue hostile states or rebels.

★ Shang capital

**11th century BCE** The Shang struggle for territory against the Dongyi people; this weakens the Shang, contributing to their fall to the Zhou Dynasty

**c. 11th century BCE** Settlements along the Yangtze River come under Shang influence; the river is a major artery for trade

**c. 1600 BCE** The city of Sanxingdui is founded; trapezoidal in shape, it has thick enclosing walls

**To 4th century BCE** The Wu people lived to the southeast of the main area of Shang power, and Wu later became an important state under the Zhou

**2 SHANG TERRITORIES** c. 1600–1050 BCE

From about 1600 BCE, the Shang moved southward from their heartlands in the Yellow River valley to control a large part of northern China. They forced some areas to become vassal states, granting these territories to family members, ministers, or tribal leaders. In return, the vassal rulers had to help defend the empire from nearby hostile states, pay taxes, and provide laborers to work on royal agricultural lands.

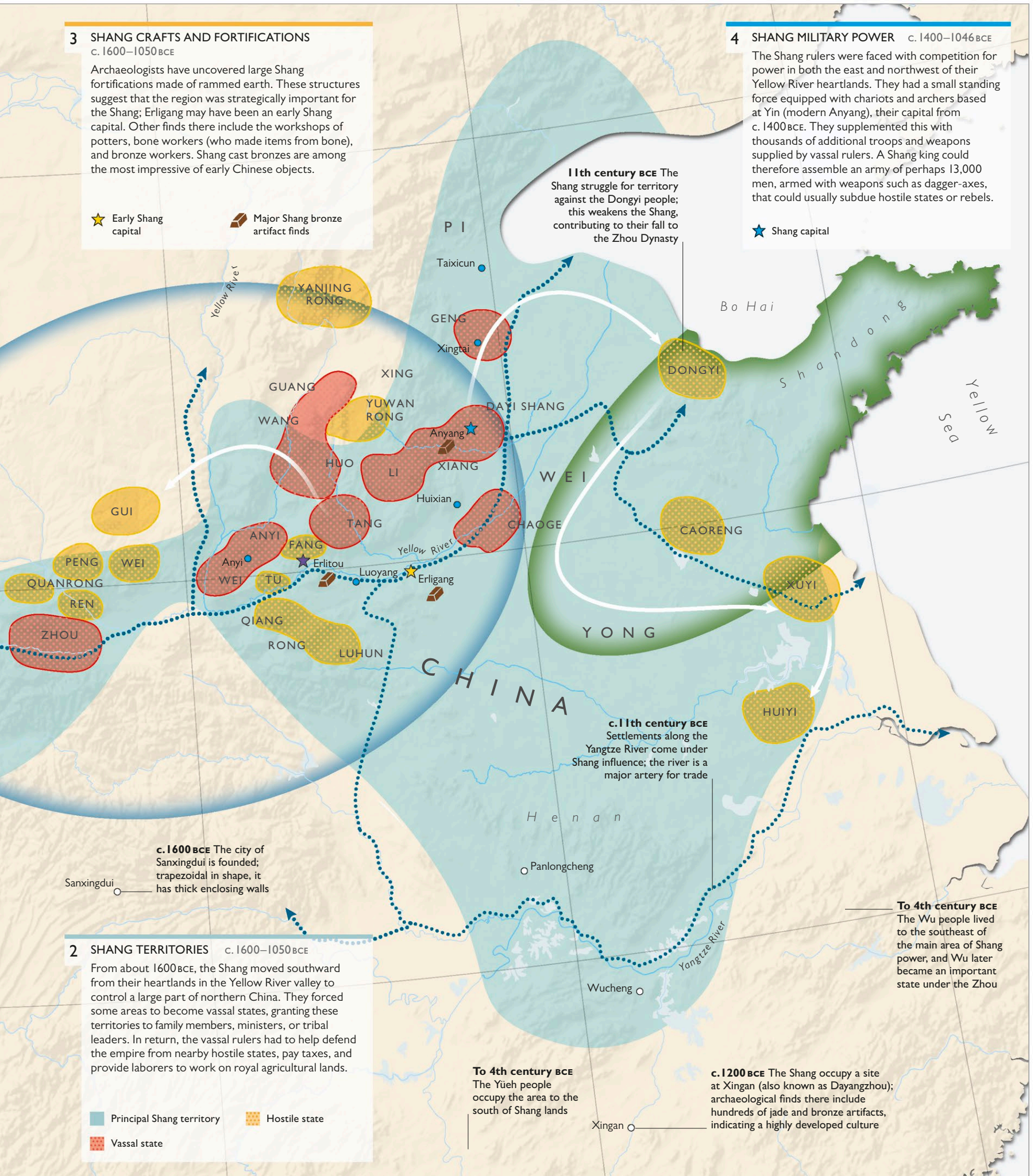
■ Principal Shang territory

■ Hostile state

■ Vassal state

**To 4th century BCE** The Yueh people occupy the area to the south of Shang lands

**c. 1200 BCE** The Shang occupy a site at Xingan (also known as Dayangzhou); archaeological finds there include hundreds of jade and bronze artifacts, indicating a highly developed culture





# BRONZE AGE COLLAPSE

Between 1225 and 1175 BCE, several Bronze Age societies of the eastern Mediterranean collapsed. Citadels across the region were sacked by unknown enemies, and the Hittite Empire and Mycenaean kingdoms were destroyed.



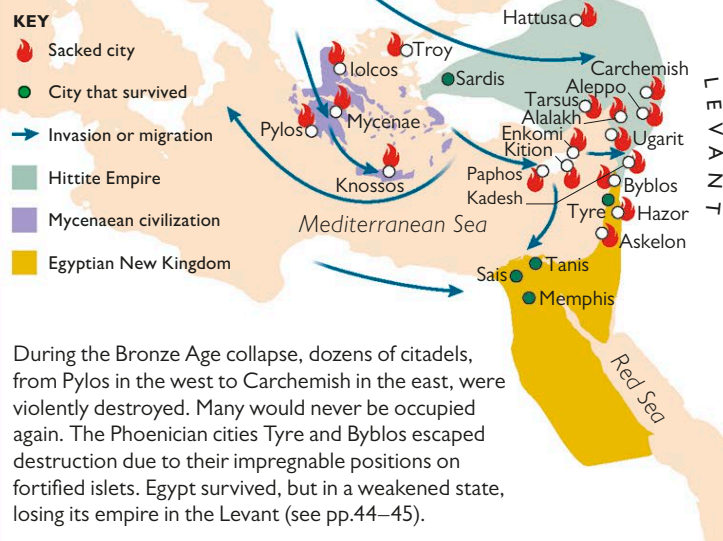
**△ Last writing**  
This fire-blackened tablet is one of the last documents of the Mycenaean civilization. It is written in an early Greek script called Linear B.

The first victim was the Hittite Empire, whose capital, Hattusa, was sacked around 1200 BCE. Meanwhile, in Greece, the Mycenaeans, fearing attack from the sea, were fortifying their palaces. Despite all preparations, the palaces were destroyed by fire. Egypt was also attacked, by a coalition from the Aegean they referred to as the “Sea Peoples.” Pharaoh Ramesses III describes defeating the invaders in the 1170s. Driven out of Egypt, the Sea Peoples went on to conquer and settle the coast of the Levant.

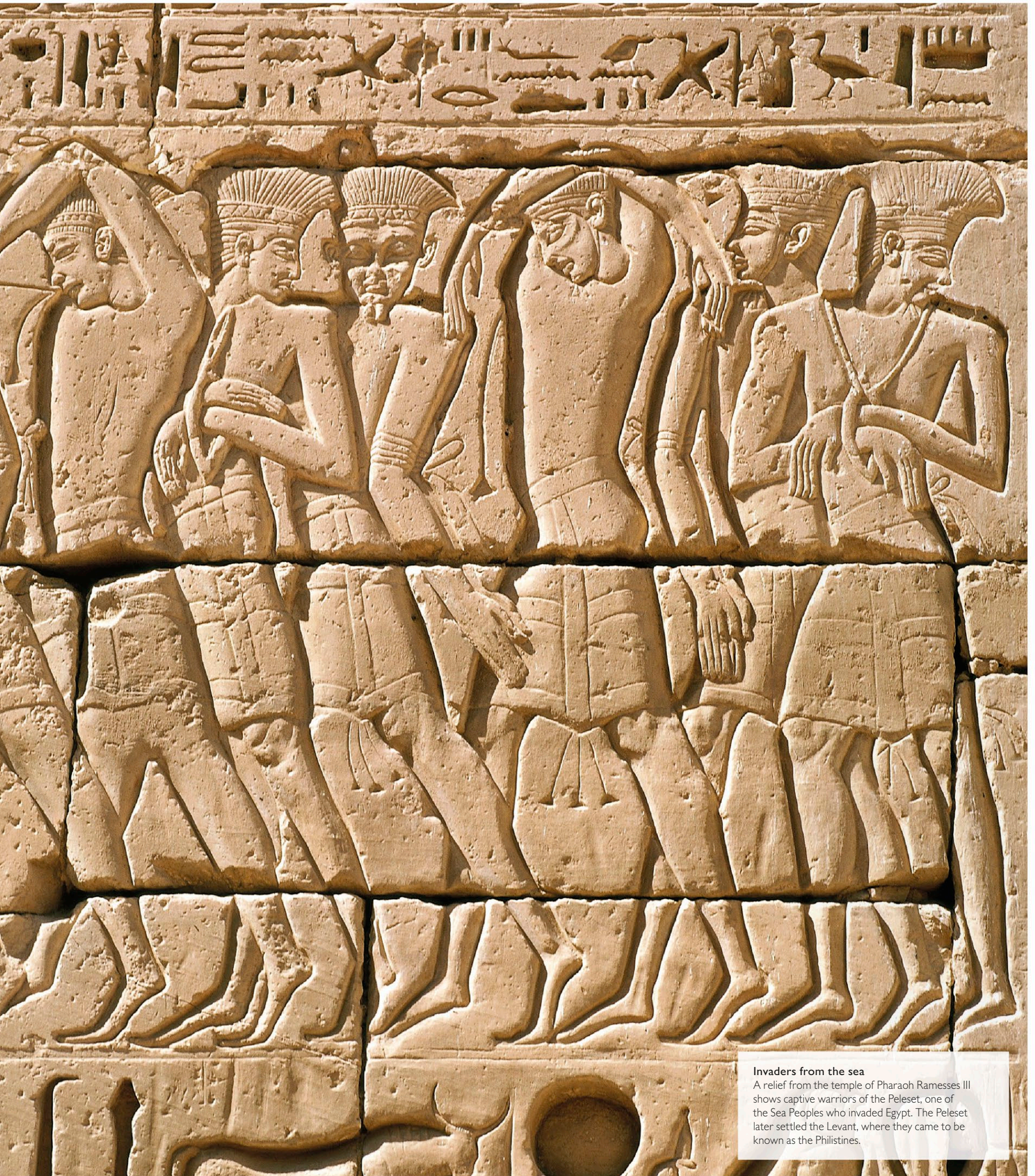
The cause of the collapse remains unclear. It is unlikely that the Sea Peoples were solely responsible. There is evidence that climate change was the underlying cause of a cascade of disintegration. The period was

exceptionally dry, and drought could have led to famine, weakening the palace economies and making them vulnerable to attack. Other factors that might have contributed to the collapse include earthquakes and internal rebellions. As cities fell, their populations were displaced and began to migrate, in turn unsettling other kingdoms. After the collapse, trade in bronze, which had previously been conducted on a large scale, was disrupted, and people turned increasingly to iron.

## THE FALL OF BRONZE AGE CITIES





**Invaders from the sea**

A relief from the temple of Pharaoh Ramesses III shows captive warriors of the Peleset, one of the Sea Peoples who invaded Egypt. The Peleset later settled the Levant, where they came to be known as the Philistines.



# THE ANCIENT LEVANT

The Levant is the fertile land to the east of the Mediterranean, called Canaan in the Hebrew Bible. It was dominated by powerful neighbors, but the resistance to Rome of one group of its people—the Jews—resulted in their expulsion, accelerating their diaspora across Asia and Europe.

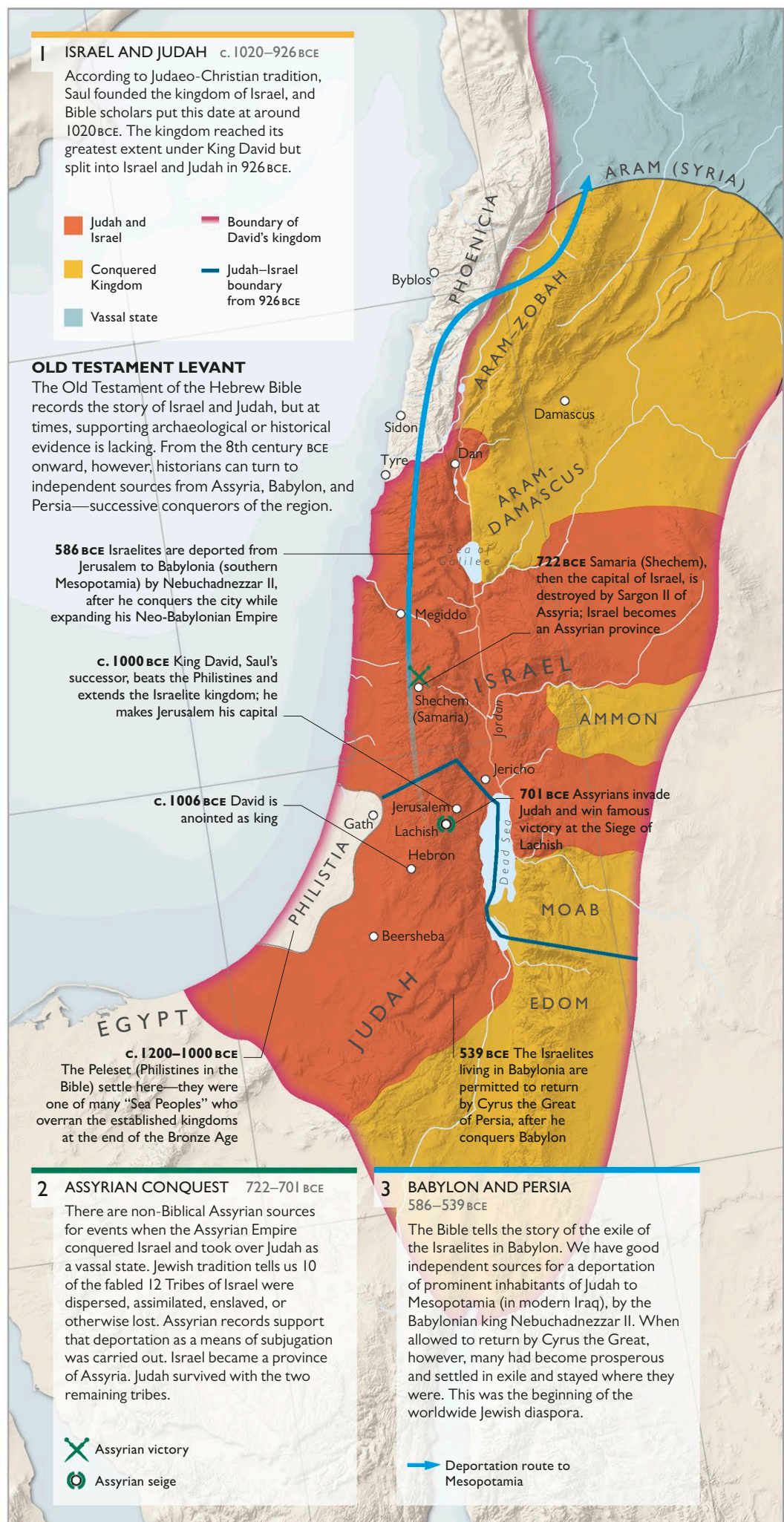
The Levant was fought over by the great powers of the Bronze Age (see pp.42–43), including Egypt, the Hittites, and the old Assyrian state. It was full of rich and important cities such as Megiddo and Jericho when the biblical kingdom of Israel came into existence in around 1020 BCE. However, the region had been in decline for centuries, and its powerful neighbors were weak. On the coast, ports grew into city-states that became known as “Phoenician” in the Greek world (see pp.54–57). Phoenicians went on to form a network of trading colonies that eventually controlled most of the Mediterranean. Settlers on the coast to the south of the Phoenicians became known as Philistines. Meanwhile, Israel split into two kingdoms named Israel and Judah and spent centuries under the domination of first Assyria, then Babylon, then Persia.

By the time of the New Testament of the Bible, the former Hebrew kingdoms had become the Roman vassal state of Judea, and the teachings of Jesus Christ were spreading through the Roman Empire (see pp.86–87). Rebellions against Rome, including the Great Jewish Revolt (66–74 CE) and the Bar Kokhba Revolt (132–135 CE) then led to the destruction of Jerusalem, the dispersion of the Jewish people (now named Jews after Judah), and the merging of Judea with its neighbors to make a new Roman province called Syria Palaestina, after the Philistines.

## MASADA

LAST BASTION OF JEWISH REVOLT

Herod the Great built a fortified palace at this spectacular mountaintop fortress in the desert, and it was here that the Zealots of the Great Jewish Revolt took their last stand against the Romans. After the Roman armies laid siege to Masada for 6 months, Jewish historians record that they built a siege ramp and set fire to the inner defensive walls. The 900 Jews inside reportedly killed themselves to avoid slavery.





### ROMAN RULE AND REVOLT

In the time of the biblical New Testament, the central parts of Israel and Judah had become the Roman province of Judea. Revolts against Rome by the people—now known as Jews—resulted in their expulsion and resettlement in Egypt, Babylonia, and throughout the Roman Empire.



#### △ Message on a coin

This sestertius of Emperor Vespasian shows one Jew sitting and another Jew with his hands tied, reminding all Judean citizens who carried it of their subservience to Rome.

#### 4 ROMAN RULE 63 BCE–66 CE

Judea was conquered by Rome. Until then, it was a kingdom that won its independence from the Hellenistic (Greek) Seleucid Empire, set up by Alexander the Great, which crumbled in 110 BCE. The Romans set up Judea as a client state. Herod the Great assumed the throne as Rome's vassal in 40 BCE and proceeded to extend his kingdom.

- Frontier of Roman Empire and client states
- Kingdom of Herod
- Roman province of Judea

**64 BCE** Roman Judea included regions such as Samaria and Galilee (both were within the ancient kingdom of Israel and later independent Judea)

**66–69 CE** Jewish revolt suppressed by army of Roman Emperor Vespasian

**70 CE** After breaking the siege of Jerusalem, the army of Roman Emperor Titus destroys and loots the Jewish temple; Titus establishes the Roman province of Judea

**135 CE** Bar Kokhba Revolt is crushed; Jerusalem is destroyed, and Jews banished

**71–74 CE** Diehard Jewish rebels, pursued by Roman leaders Bassus and Silva, take refuge in the rock fortress of Masada and commit mass suicide rather than submit to Rome

**40 BCE–4 BCE**  
The kingdom of Herod the Great, although he is a vassal of Rome, extends beyond Roman Judea

#### 6 SYRIA PALESTINA 132–135 CE

The Bar Kokhba Revolt, 70 years after the Masada incident, was crushed even more severely. Jerusalem was destroyed and the Jewish people banished, accelerating their dispersal both through the Roman Empire and to established centers in Mesopotamia. Judea was renamed and merged with Roman Syria by the victorious Roman Emperor Hadrian to form Syria Palaestina.

Bar Kokhba Revolt

#### 5 JEWISH REVOLT 66–74 CE

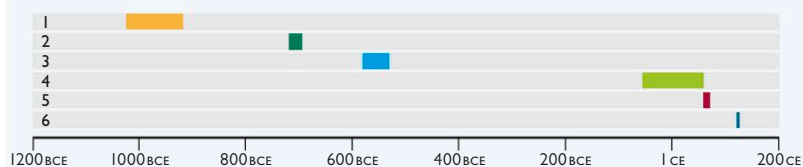
A series of Jewish revolts against Rome resulted in the dispersal of the Jewish people. The first involved the destruction and looting of the temple of Jerusalem, remembered in Rome as a relief on the Arch of Titus, showing Roman soldiers carrying off a menorah. The event is mourned by Jewish people on the saddest day in their calendar—the fast day, Tisha B'Av.

- Army of Vespasian
- Army of Titus
- Army of Bassus and Silva
- ⊙ Siege
- ✕ Jewish victory
- Area of major revolt 66 CE
- Area of revolt 69 CE

### THE LEVANT

The narrow strip of land beside the eastern Mediterranean features in the Old Testament and the New Testament of the Hebrew Bible but also in the records of powerful neighbors, such as Egyptians, Assyrians, Persians, and Romans.

#### TIMELINE



*"I protest openly that I do not go over to the Romans as a deserter of the Jews, but as a minister from thee."*

FLAVIUS JOSEPHUS, JEWISH-ROMAN HISTORIAN, IN *THE JEWISH WAR*



# THE IRON AGE

When Bronze Age people learned how to smelt iron, they sparked off a technological revolution. Exactly where and why they first turned from bronze to iron is a mystery. The most likely explanation is that when supplies of tin and copper, the two constituents of bronze, ran short, necessity became the mother of invention.

## ▽ Ruling the underworld

A relief cut into the rocks of a temple in Hattusa—the ancient capital of the Hittites, in modern Turkey—depicts 12 deities of the underworld. The Hittites worshipped more than 1,000 deities.

Until recently, archaeological evidence suggested that ironworking first started in central Anatolia, Turkey, some time between 2000 and 1300 BCE, with the Hittites—an ancient Anatolian people—being credited with pioneering the new technology of iron smelting (heating iron ore to extract the metal). It was believed that the Hittites began to forge iron artifacts as early as the 18th century BCE and



## ▷ Signs of iron in Europe

Dating from 750–450 BCE, this iron dagger was found in one of the thousand graves discovered at Hallstatt (modern Austria), the hub of central Europe's first Iron Age culture.



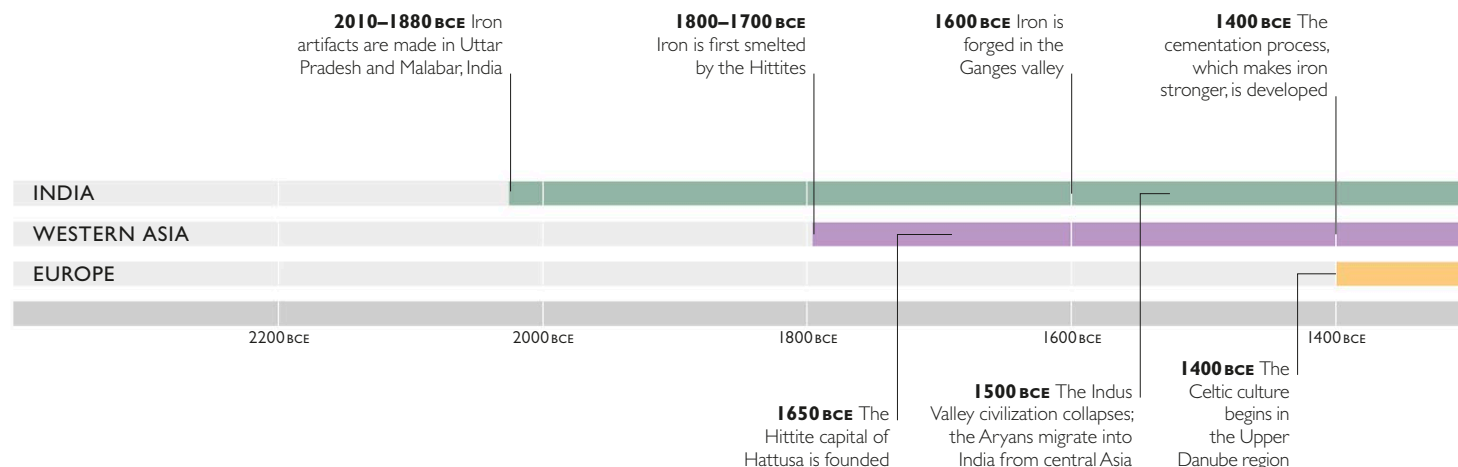
that their iron weapons—including swords, battleaxes, spear points, and arrowheads—gave them a massive military advantage over their neighbors. Following the collapse of their empire, their knowledge spread through the Middle East and from there to Greece and the Aegean region, eventually reaching central and western Europe. Modern archaeological research, however, has challenged this picture. It is now thought that Indian metalsmiths may have discovered how to forge iron at roughly the same time as the Hittites, or even earlier.

## Early ironsmiths

Archaeological excavations of megalithic burial sites in Uttar Pradesh in northern India and Malabar in the south have uncovered iron artifacts dating from 2012 BCE and 1882 BCE. Other excavations in the Ganges valley have uncovered iron artifacts dating from around the same time that the Hittites were forging their first iron implements, while iron daggers found at sites in Hyderabad in southern India are thought to date from 2400–2000 BCE. In Europe, ironworking began with the Greeks, possibly as early as 1050 BCE. A few hundred years later, the Celts (the collective name for a variety of tribes in

## THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IRON AGE

The Iron Age began almost 4,000 years ago, starting independently in central Anatolia (in modern Turkey) and India. Later, the knowledge of iron smelting and forging spread into central Europe via Greece and then through the rest of the continent. Iron, which was more widely available than the tin and copper needed to make bronze, replaced bronze for use in almost all utilitarian objects, from weapons to plows to utensils.







#### ◁ The versatile Celts

The Celts were skilled at working various metals, not just iron. Discovered in a peat bog near Gundestrup, Denmark, in 1891, this cauldron was made from silver between the 2nd and 1st centuries BCE.

Europe) became masters of the craft.

The oldest archaeological evidence demonstrating their skill at forging iron and other metals comes from Hallstatt, near Salzburg in Austria. Tomb excavations there, which started as early as the mid-19th century, uncovered a rich treasury of grave goods, including iron swords dating from around 700 BCE. Why the culture centered around Hallstatt collapsed is uncertain.

The Hallstatt culture was replaced by the La Tène culture, which appeared in the mid-5th century BCE. Excavations have revealed more than 2,500 iron swords with decorated scabbards, as well as other metalwork items. The La Tène culture was artistically prolific. Its influence spread through much of western Europe as the Celtic tribes expanded out of their original homelands.

#### Worldwide usage

In Africa, knowledge of iron smelting seems to have developed at much the same time as it was spreading through western Europe. Some historians put this down to the Phoenicians, who carried their knowledge of iron

smelting to their north African colonies, notably Carthage. The majority view now is that it was more likely a local development. Whatever the truth, there is no disputing the fact that African iron-making was extremely varied, with many distinct local technologies evolving over the centuries.

There is clear evidence of iron smelting in Ethiopia, the region of the Great Lakes, Tanzania, Ghana, Mali, and central Nigeria around the Niger and Benue Rivers, where the Nok culture emerged. In some respects, African metalsmiths were ahead of Europe. In east Africa, for instance, they were producing steel as early as 500 BCE.

#### From bronze to iron

Wherever and whenever the transition from the Bronze Age to the Iron Age happened, it brought with it significant changes to everyday life, from the way ancient peoples cultivated their crops to how they fought their wars. Some civilizations, however, missed out on the Iron Age altogether. In Central and South America, for example, various civilizations, most notably the Incas, were skillful metalworkers in gold, silver, copper, and bronze, but they simply never made the transition to iron.

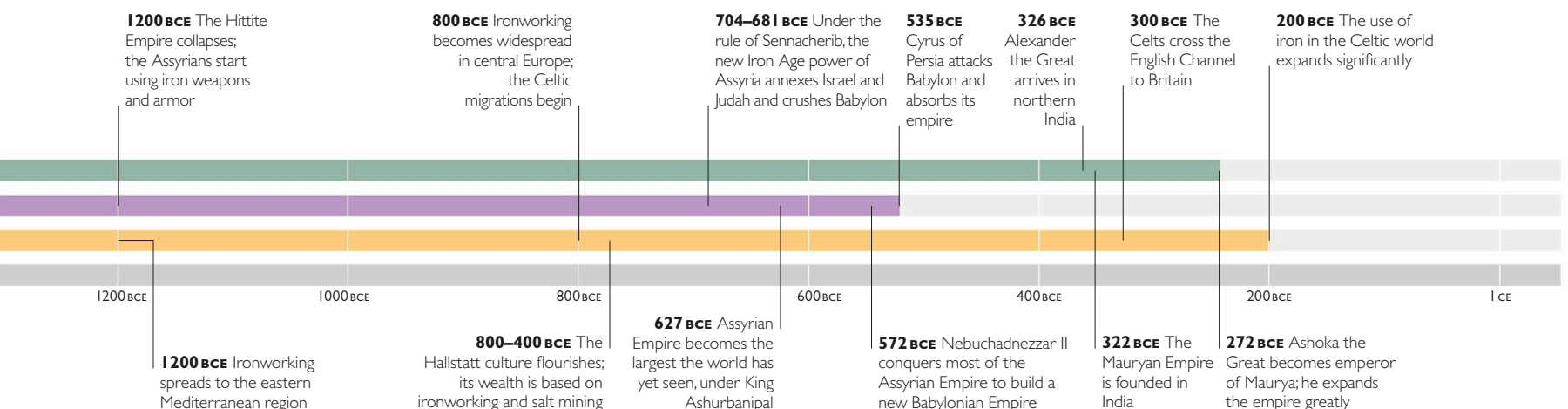
#### ▽ Traditional metalworking

Iron has been smelted and forged in Africa for three millennia. This 19th-century engraving shows small-scale ironworking near Lake Mobutu in east Africa.



*"[The Celts] are quick of mind and with good natural ability for learning."*

DIDORUS SICULUS, GREEK HISTORIAN





# ASSYRIA AND BABYLONIA

The Iron Age in the Middle East was an age of empire. The Assyrians, based in what is now northern Iraq, created the blueprint for a new type of extensive state that employed direct and indirect rule to place a range of peoples and territories under the control of one sovereign.

After 1200 BCE, in the aftermath of the migrations at the end of the late Bronze Age (see pp.42–43), small-scale local states replaced large regional powers such as the Hittite state and the New Kingdom of Egypt. The kingdom of Assyria, protected by the Tigris River and the Taurus and Zagros Mountains, survived the upheaval despite losing peripheral territories to Aramaean clans. From 900 BCE, it started to grow again at the expense of these smaller neighbors.

Besides incorporating territories and putting them under eunuch governors loyal only to the king, the Assyrian Empire greatly favored indirect rule. From the eastern Mediterranean to what is now Iran, client rulers swore sacred oaths to accept the sovereignty of the god Ashur and his human representative, the Assyrian king, in return for local power. The empire was held together by these bonds of mutual obligation and by an innovative relay postal system—for the first time, information traveled much faster than if carried by a single messenger. The succeeding Babylonian Empire adopted much of this blueprint but replaced Ashur with its own god, Marduk, and dispensed with eunuch governors.

*“The god Ashur is king, and Ashurbanipal is [his] representative, the creation of his hands.”*

CORONATION HYMN OF ASHURBANIPAL OF ASSYRIA

## BABYLONIAN LAW JUSTICE CARVED IN STONE

King Hammurabi of Babylon (r.1792–1750 BCE) compiled a set of 282 rulings, which were recorded on stone steles set up in temples across his realm. These laws were to “prevent the strong oppressing the weak” and specified fines and punishments to suit specific social contexts. More than 1,000 years later, in the days of the Assyrian and Babylonian Empires, Hammurabi was still revered as a model ruler.

### Stele of Hammurabi

The king receives authority, symbolized by a measuring tape and a ruler, from the god Shamash, the patron of justice.



## 2 BABYLON, CITY OF THE GOD MARDUK 1782 BCE–500 CE

The ancient city first came to prominence as the capital of the kingdom of King Hammurabi. Home to the god Marduk's temple, Babylon was later closely associated with the kingship over all of Babylonia (southern Mesopotamia). In the first millennium BCE, the title of King of Babylon was coveted by every ruler who sought to control that region, including the Assyrian and later the Persian and Seleucid kings.

★ Babylon

## 1 ASHUR, CITY OF THE GOD ASHUR 2000–614 BCE

This city was the site of the god Ashur's only temple. An influential city-state in the early 2nd millennium BCE, it was integrated into the northern Mesopotamian kingdom forged by Shamshi-Adad (c. 1813–1781 BCE). He was reviled as an unlawful conqueror, but 500 years later, when Ashur was the heart of an expanding kingdom, the Assyrians claimed Shamshi-Adad as an ancestor of their royal house.

★ Ashur

### From c.900 BCE

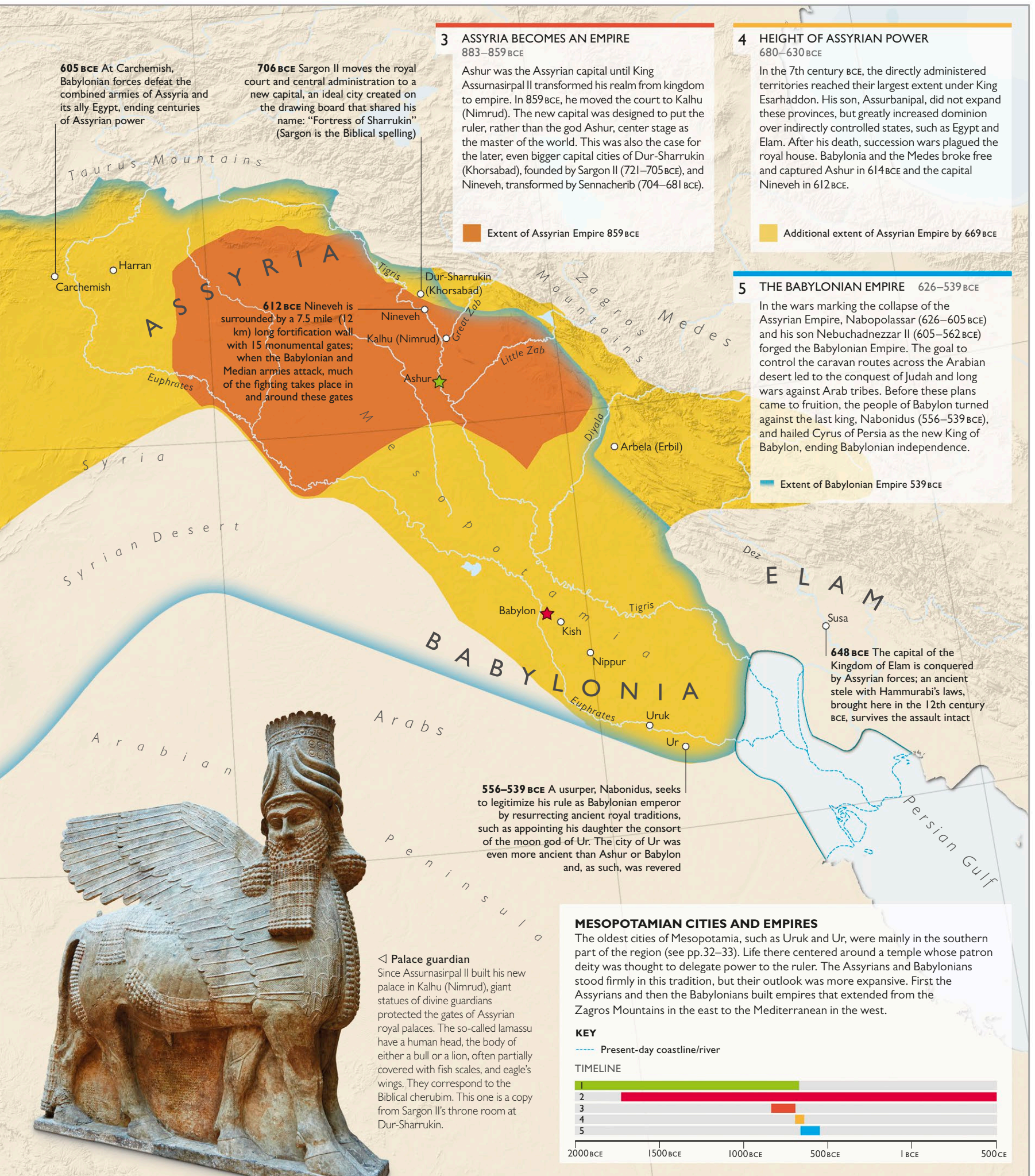
The port of Tyre is a key link in the trade between the Middle Eastern empires and the Mediterranean, controlling the shipping routes from Cyprus to southern Spain



671 BCE Assyrian king Esarhaddon captures Memphis and rules Egypt through native princes

586 BCE When Nebuchadnezzar II conquers Jerusalem, the temple of Yahweh is destroyed and the people taken to Babylonia







#### 4 THE CAMPAIGNS OF DARIUS I 516–513 BCE

In 516 BCE, Darius I began a military campaign in central Asia that took him through Bactria and Gandhara. From here, he conquered the lands by the Indus River and engaged the Greek explorer Scylax of Caryanda to survey the Indian Ocean. Darius fought campaigns to stamp out a series of revolts across the empire, most notably in Babylonia and in Scythia (in Eastern Europe), where he asserted Persian dominance, before beginning his attempted conquest of Greece.

➔ Major campaigns of Darius I

#### 3 THE EMPIRE UNDER DARIUS I 522–486 BCE

Darius ascended to the throne in 522 BCE and carried out many reforms. He introduced a new monetary system, adopted Aramaic as the administrative language, and organized the empire into provinces under governors (satraps). Darius built canals and roads (including the famous royal road linking Susa to Assyria and Anatolia); he erected monuments and temples; and he built royal palaces in the cities of Susa and Persepolis.

— Persian Royal Road from Sardis to Susa

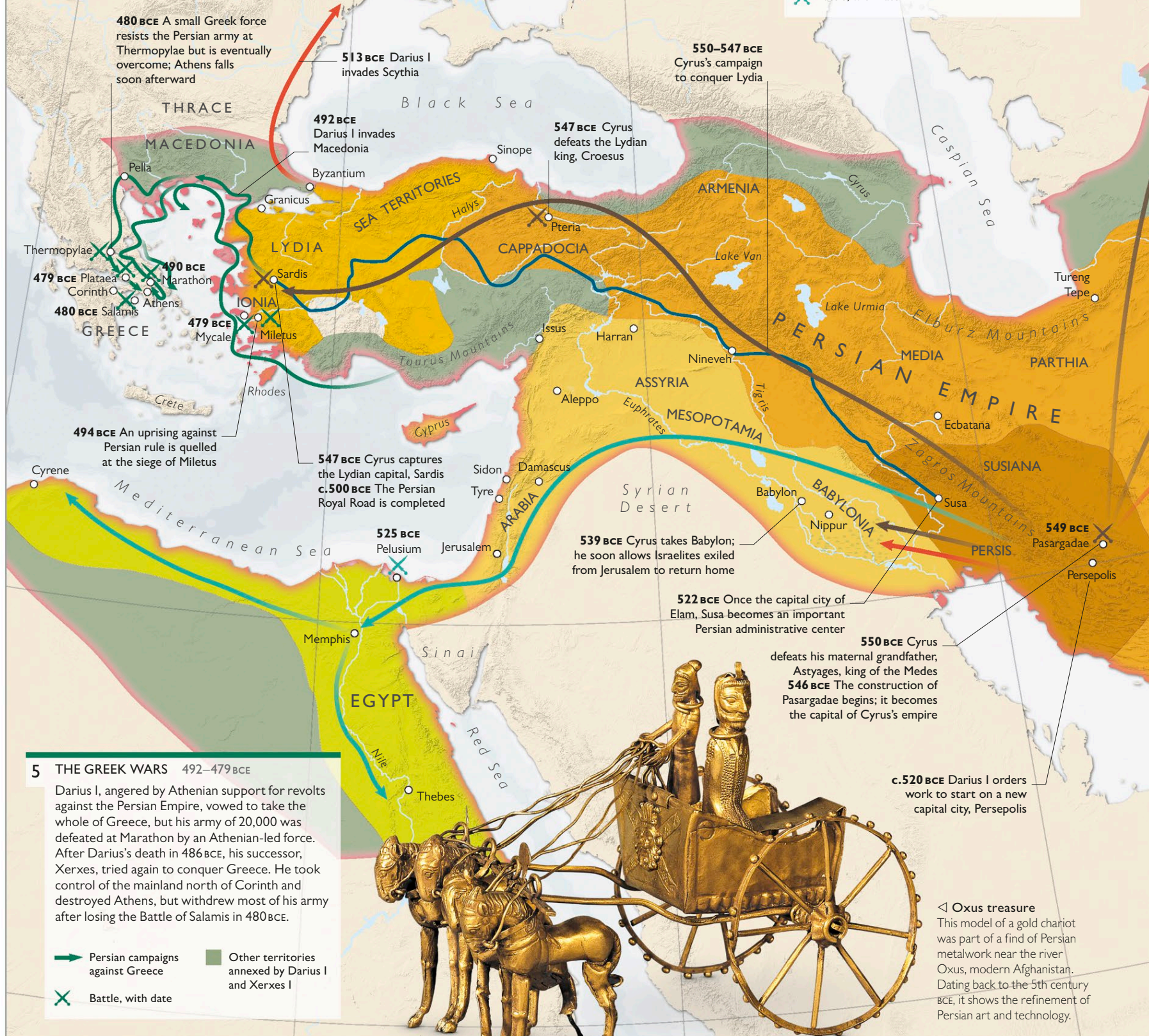
#### 2 CAMBYSES II AND THE CONQUEST OF EGYPT 529–522 BCE

The conquest of Egypt became the goal of Cyrus's successor, Cambyses II. To do so, he made alliances with Arabian leaders and gained the support of the Greeks, who had formerly been allies of Egypt. Cambyses defeated Egypt at Pelusium in 525 BCE; however, his troops were unable to cross the desert to Sudan, so he failed to make conquests farther south.

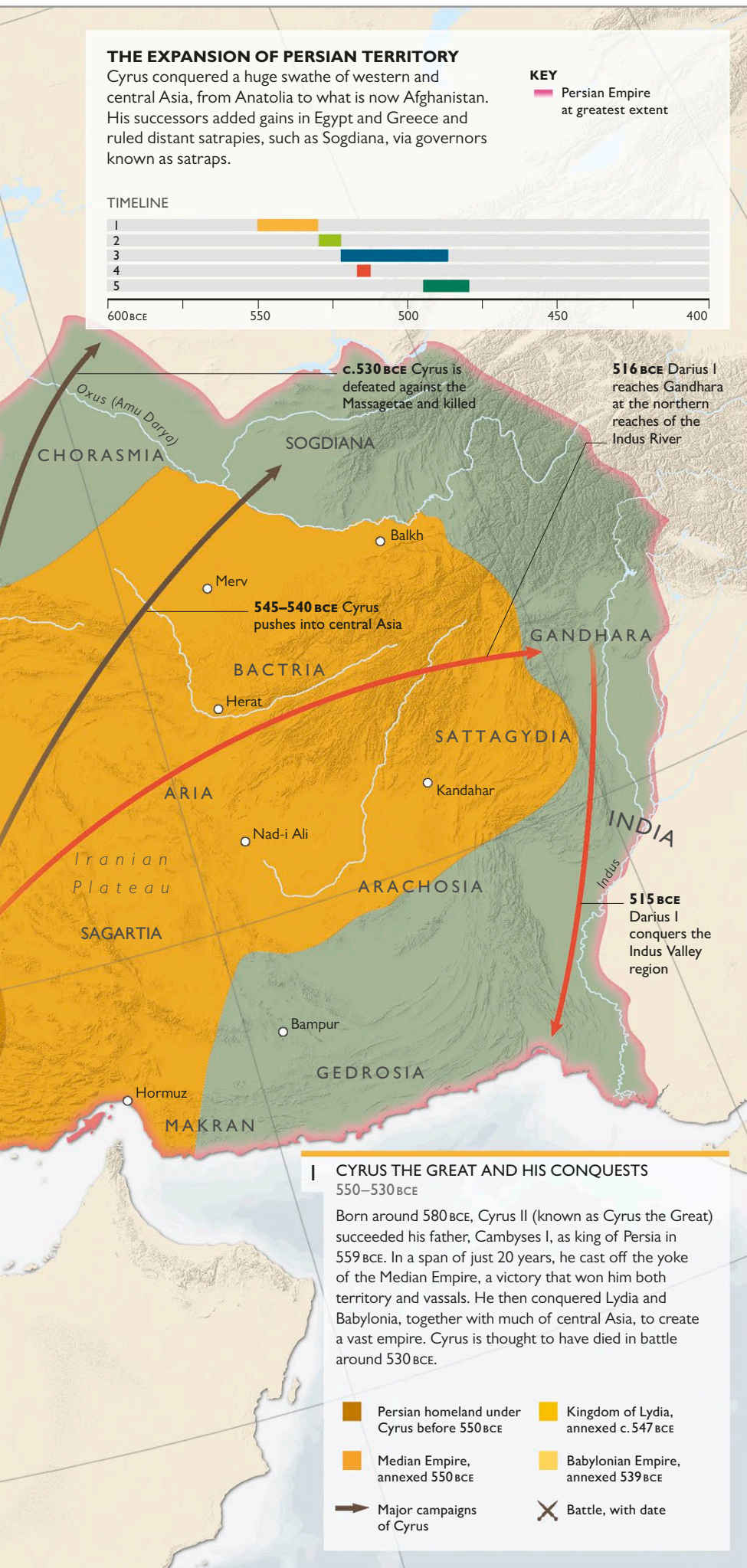
■ Kingdom of Egypt, annexed 525 BCE

➔ Major campaigns of Cambyses II

✕ Battle, with date







# RISE OF THE PERSIAN EMPIRE

The Persian Empire was enormous, stretching from Europe to India, and lasted from the military victories of its founder, Cyrus the Great, in the mid-6th century BCE until it was conquered by Alexander the Great some 200 years later.

In 612 BCE, the Assyrian city of Nineveh was destroyed by an alliance of the Assyrians' former subject peoples, including the Babylonians and Medes. The Medes and Persians were Indo-European peoples originally from central Asia, who occupied respectively the area southwest of the Caspian Sea and lands north of the Persian Gulf. To start, the Medes were the dominant power, but c. 550 BCE, the Persians—under a series of dynamic kings—began a series of conquests that created the largest empire the world had seen to date.

*"Brevity is the soul of command. Too much talk suggests desperation on the part of the leader."*

ATTRIBUTED TO CYRUS IN CYROPEDEA, c. 370 BCE

The Persians were tolerant conquerors—Cyrus the Great respected the beliefs and customs of the people he ruled and famously freed the Israelites who had been taken captive in Babylon. The Persians invested in organization, appointing local governors known as satraps to rule each province, and built roads and canals to enable troops and traders to move with ease. This organization, and their ability to deploy their armies quickly, enabled them to maintain their vast territories. The Persian Empire was still a major power when it was conquered by Alexander the Great in the 4th century BCE.

## PASARGADAЕ THE FIRST PERSIAN CAPITAL

Around 546 BCE, Cyrus the Great began to build the first Persian dynastic capital at Pasargadae, near the modern city of Shiraz. Its royal remains—which include the palace, audience hall, gatehouse, and the tomb of Cyrus himself—are some of the most impressive of the Persian Empire and show the influence of the peoples that Cyrus conquered. Later, Cambyses II founded another capital at Susa, and Darius built a third at Persepolis.

**Protective winged spirit**  
This 5th-century BCE relief decorated a door in the ancient city of Pasargadae.





# FIRST CITIES IN THE AMERICAS

The first city-based cultures in the Americas emerged from around 3500 BCE in coastal Peru, predating the first cities in southern Mexico and North America by about two millennia. All early American urban cultures built grand sites of worship and engaged extensively in trade.

From around 5000 BCE, agricultural practices started replacing the hunter-gatherer lifestyle in the Americas, giving rise to the first settlements.

The Norte Chico culture in the Supe Valley region of coastal Peru emerged as the earliest known urban civilization on the continent, around 4000 BCE. The civilization included more than 30 large settlements, and it established its first major city around 3500 BCE. It thrived for more than 2,000 years. Early civilizations in other regions of

the Americas include the Olmecs of southern Mexico and the Adena and Hopewell Mound Builder cultures of the upper Mississippi and Ohio valleys.

Unique cultures evolved in all these ancient communities, each defined by its arts, crafts, and religious practices, though they all built large-scale earthworks—platforms, pyramids, or mounds—mainly for ceremonial purposes. The towns and cities also traded, using rivers and other routes along coastal plains to transport goods.

## CARAL

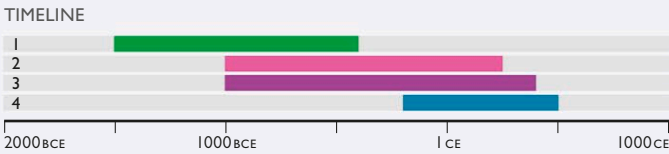
THE AMERICAS' FIRST URBAN CIVILIZATION

A substantial city by 2600 BCE, Caral was part of Peru's Norte Chico civilization. Other Norte Chico cities may be even older. Like many later pre-Columbian cities, Caral featured monumental architecture, such as platform mounds and plazas. These remains of a sunken plaza in Caral, 130 ft (40 m) across, were discovered in the late 1990s. The plaza is thought to have been used for communal acts of worship.



**EARLY CIVILIZATIONS IN AMERICA**

From about 1500 BCE, farming cultures flourished in central America, and the Olmecs built their first cities. In North America, the Adena culture was among the first Mound Builders to emerge from about 1000 BCE, followed 800 years later by the Hopewells.





### 3 ADENA CULTURE 1000 BCE–400 CE

The Adena peoples became seasonal settlers in the Ohio River Valley once they introduced farming to their hunting and fishing lifestyle. Each social group comprised about 100 people, made up of between 4 and 6 clans. Using only digging sticks and baskets, the Adena created impressive earthworks, which were sacred ritual sites or where the elites were buried. The Adena traded in raw materials such as barite, marine shells, and copper, used to make tools and ornaments.

- Adena area of influence
- Burial mound sites

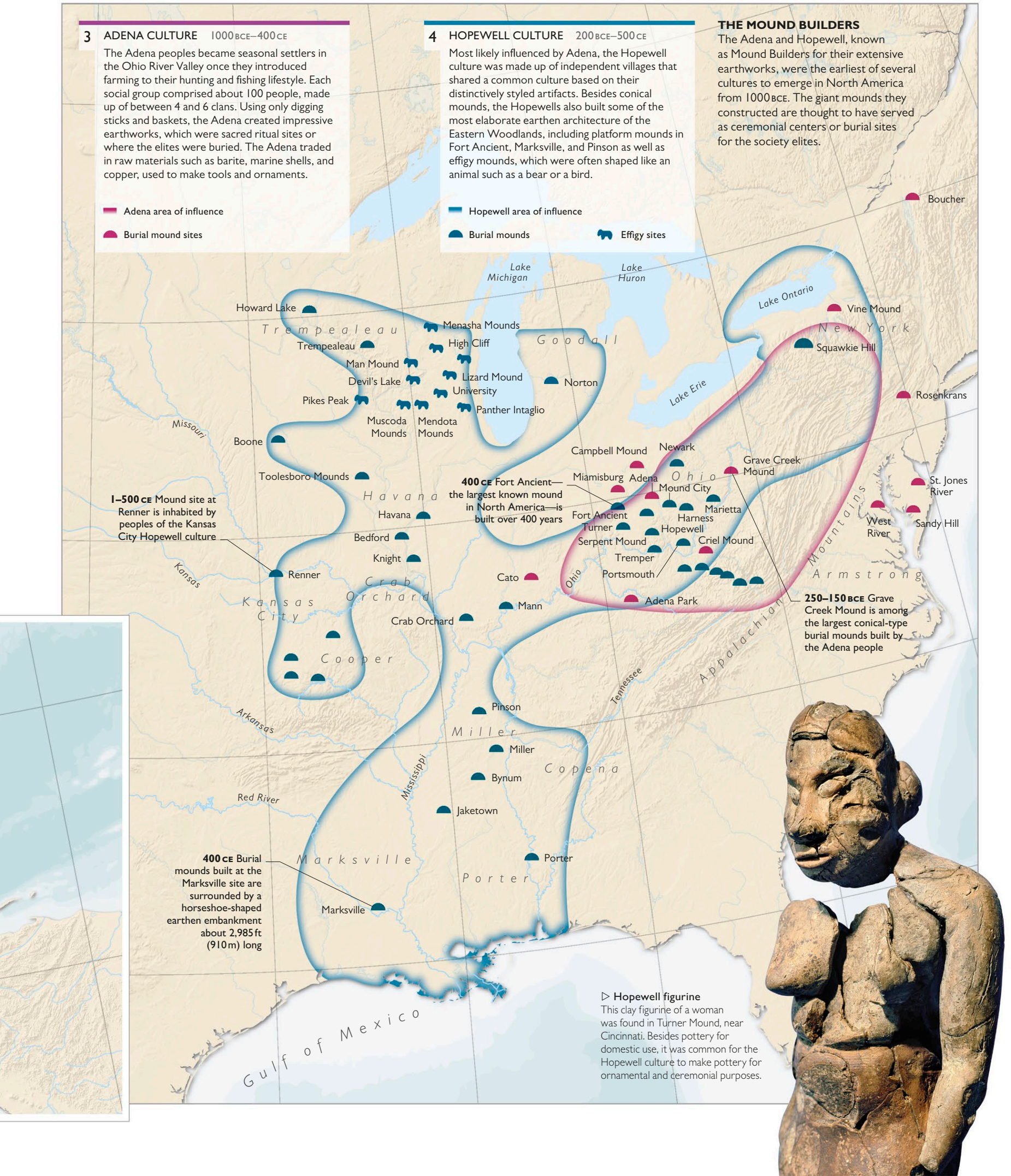
### 4 HOPEWELL CULTURE 200 BCE–500 CE

Most likely influenced by Adena, the Hopewell culture was made up of independent villages that shared a common culture based on their distinctively styled artifacts. Besides conical mounds, the Hopewells also built some of the most elaborate earthen architecture of the Eastern Woodlands, including platform mounds in Fort Ancient, Marksville, and Pinson as well as effigy mounds, which were often shaped like an animal such as a bear or a bird.

- Hopewell area of influence
- Burial mounds
- Effigy sites

### THE MOUND BUILDERS

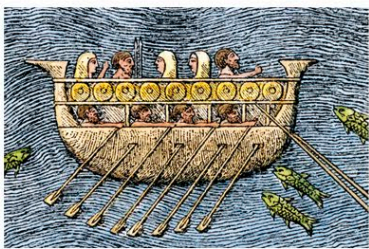
The Adena and Hopewell, known as Mound Builders for their extensive earthworks, were the earliest of several cultures to emerge in North America from 1000 BCE. The giant mounds they constructed are thought to have served as ceremonial centers or burial sites for the society elites.





# THE PHOENICIANS

In the 1st millennium BCE, the Phoenicians were the leading seafaring merchants of the Mediterranean. Expert craftworkers, they specialized in luxury goods, including carved ivory, metalwork, and textiles.



## △ Phoenician warship

This Phoenician warship is a bireme, propelled by two rows of oars. Although the bireme was later improved by the ancient Greeks, it may have been invented by the Phoenicians. A row of shields protects the upper deck.

The Phoenicians lived in port cities in what is now Lebanon. Among these, the most significant were Byblos, Tyre, and Sidon, each ruled by a king. It was the Greeks who named these people “Phoenicians” after their most expensive product, a nonfading purple (*phoinix* in Greek) dye derived from the murex sea snail.

The mountains of Lebanon were covered in cedar forests, which supplied the Phoenicians

with long, straight timber. They used the cedar to build their ships and also exported it to Egypt, Greece, and Mesopotamia, which were all short on good timber. Their cities were also centers of craft production, producing purple textiles, glassware, engraved bronze bowls, and wooden furniture decorated with ivory panels. The craftworkers were influenced by Egyptian art, which the Phoenicians spread across the eastern Mediterranean and Mesopotamia. Alongside their own products, they traded in tin and silver from Spain, copper from Cyprus, Arabian incense, African ivory, Egyptian papyrus, Indian spices, and silk from Persian merchants.

## Colonies and exploration

From the 10th century BCE, the Phoenicians founded colonies, as trading stations, across the Mediterranean. One such colony, Carthage (in North Africa), later became the center of a great empire. Searching for new markets, the Phoenicians became the greatest navigators of the ancient world. Beyond the Mediterranean, they explored the Atlantic coast of Europe and, around 600 BCE, circumnavigated the whole of Africa. Their lasting legacy is their alphabet, which had just 22 letters. Adapted by the Greeks, the Phoenician alphabet formed the basis of all western writing systems.



## ▷ Cultural influences

This Phoenician ivory carving shows a human-headed winged animal, Mesopotamian in origin, wearing an Egyptian royal headdress.





**Cedar for the royalty**

Assyrian kings imported cedar from Lebanon to build their palaces. A frieze from the palace of King Sargon II (722–705 BCE) shows Phoenicians bringing cedar logs, towing them alongside their ships.



Until Alexander the Great and his father united Greece in 338 BCE, the land was composed of hundreds of city-states, of varying sizes. Many were rivals, none more so than Athens and Sparta.

- Athenian homeland
- Spartan homeland
- Greek city-state

Age Group	Number of People
1	750
2	450
3	350
4	400

**338 BCE** Philip II of Macedonia (Alexander's father) leaves his capital of Aegae and sweeps through Greece, defeats Athens and Thebes, and attempts to unify Greece under the League of Corinth

The Peloponnesian War spelled an end to stability and a blow to prosperity in Greece. From this point on, power ebbed and flowed between city-states and leagues. The constant fighting began to open an opportunity for an outside power—Greek-speaking Macedonia to the north—to expand and take control of the region.

- Macedonian capital

All Greek cities looked toward certain common places of “Panhellenic” significance throughout the Greek, or Hellenic, world. These included Mount Olympus, the seat of the gods; Delphi, where an oracle spoke for all Greeks; and venues of Panhellenic festivals, such as Olympia.

- Panhellenic site

**431–404 BCE** Control of the narrow strait of the Hellespont—the route to Athens' ally, Byzantium, and the Black Sea—is key in the Peloponnesian War

**454 BCE** Athenian general Pericles moves the Delian League treasury from Delos to Athens, ostensibly to protect it from Persian attack, but uses league funds to build the Parthenon

**478 BCE** The tiny island of Delos is chosen as the seat of the treasury of the league led by Athens, giving its name to the Delian League

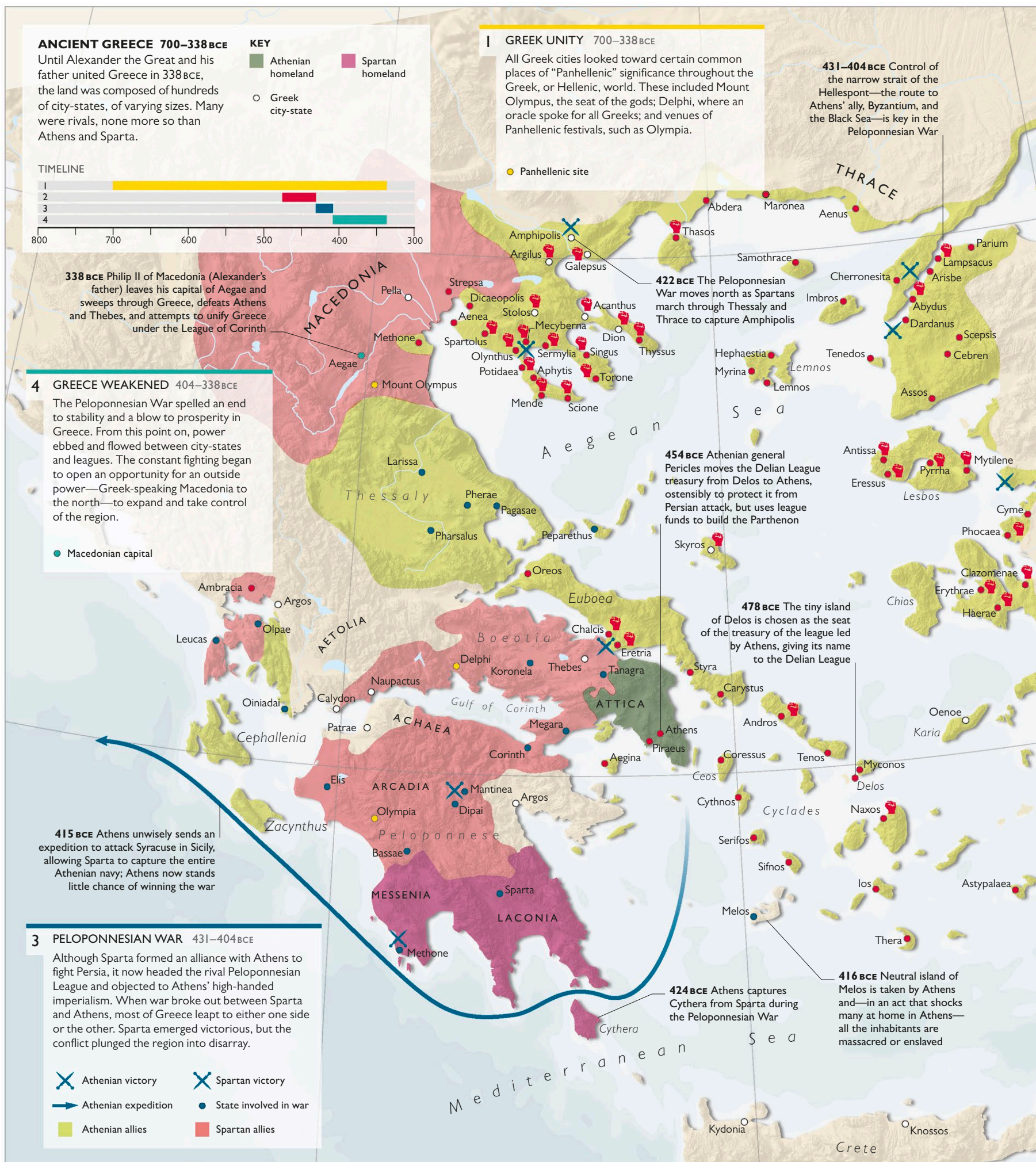
**415 BCE** Athens unwisely sends an expedition to attack Syracuse in Sicily, allowing Sparta to capture the entire Athenian navy; Athens now stands little chance of winning the war

Although Sparta formed an alliance with Athens to fight Persia, it now headed the rival Peloponnesian League and objected to Athens' high-handed imperialism. When war broke out between Sparta and Athens, most of Greece leapt to either one side or the other. Sparta emerged victorious, but the conflict plunged the region into disarray.

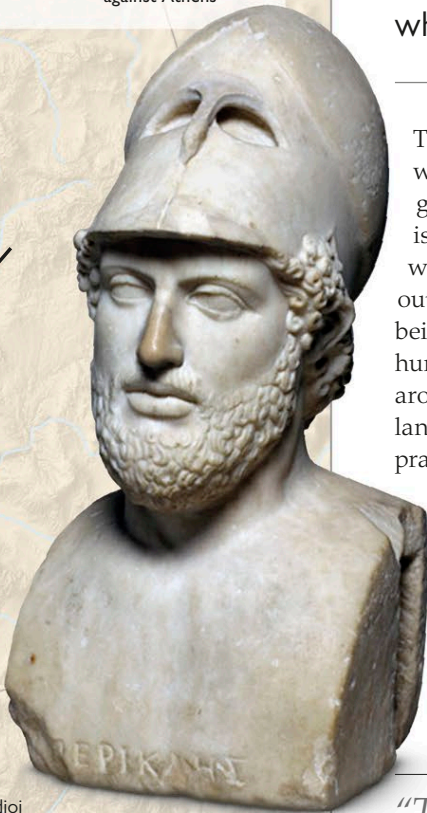
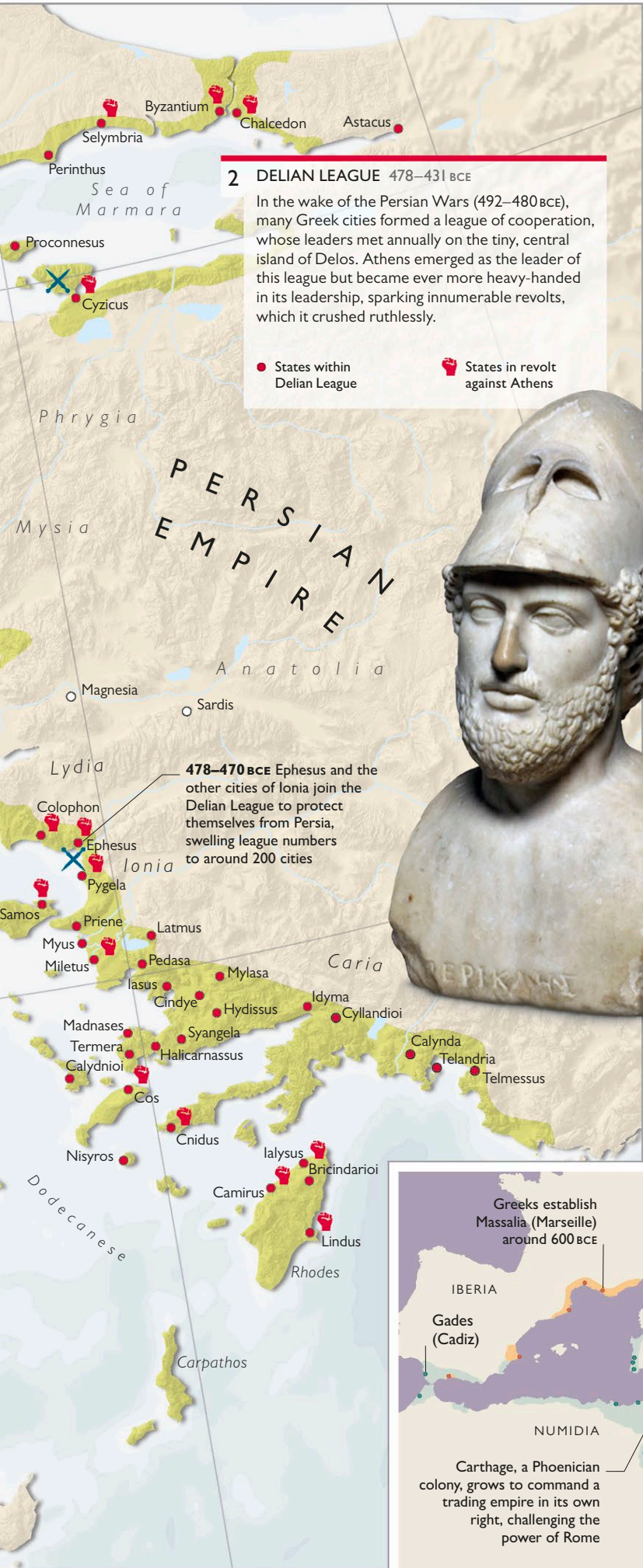
- ✕ Athenian victory
- ➡ Athenian expedition
- Athenian allies
- ✕ Spartan victory
- State involved in war
- Spartan allies

**424 BCE** Athens captures Cythera from Sparta during the Peloponnesian War

**416 BCE** Neutral island of Melos is taken by Athens and—in an act that shocks many at home in Athens—all the inhabitants are massacred or enslaved







# THE GREEK CITY-STATES

In a seminal period for Western civilization, the Greek people spread through the Mediterranean, exporting their culture as they went. But they were never unified politically. Leagues of independent city-states became close-knit only when faced with a common threat.

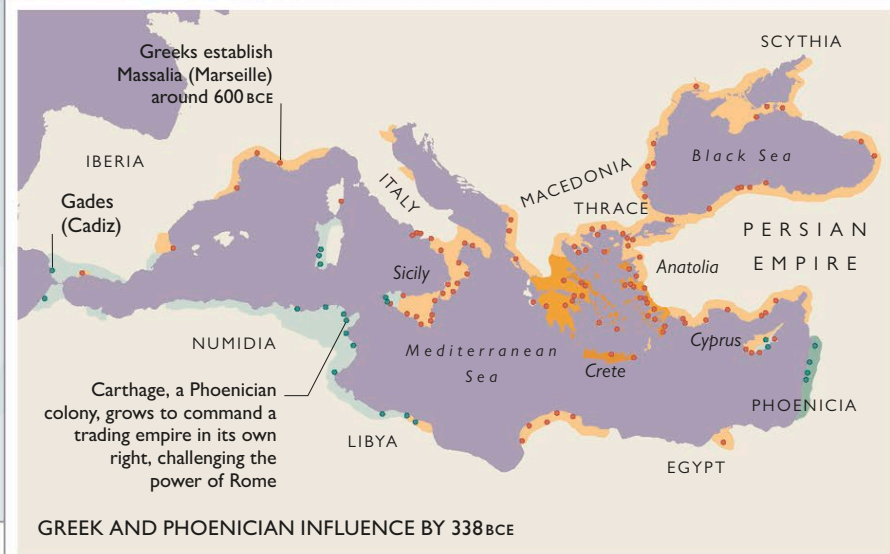
The cornerstone of Greek civilization was the *polis*, or city-state. These self-governing communities, frequently isolated by Greece’s rugged terrain, were based on walled cities with outlying villages and farmland. Despite being fiercely independent, these hundreds of city-states, scattered around the Mediterranean, had language, religion, and many cultural practices in common. Even remote colonies strove to express their identity with the building of temples and theaters and the

output of fine ceramics. The Greek world was also more or less united at times in loose confederations, never more so than when the need arose to repulse the invading Persian Empire (see pp.58–59). The major alliance that arose in the aftermath of the Persian Wars, the Delian League, became dominated by Athens—to the annoyance not only of many other league members but also of other leagues—principally that headed by Sparta. Athens’ ruthless leadership of what had effectively become its empire sucked it into conflict with Sparta at a time when they were both great nations. By the end of the war, they were weakened and depleted, leaving a power vacuum for others to fill.

◀ **Bust of Pericles**  
The so-called “first citizen of Athens,” Pericles led Athens during the Peloponnesian War. Although a strong proponent of democracy at home, he made many enemies abroad.

*“The strong exact what they can, and the weak suffer what they must.”*

THUCYDIDES, HISTORY OF THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR, 400 BCE





**7 BATTLE OF PLATAEA 479 BCE**

The two opposing armies met at Plataea, Boeotia, in August 479 BCE. The Greeks, as at Marathon 11 years earlier, employed superior military tactics to overcome a much larger Persian force. On the very same day, the Persian fleet in Anatolia suffered a heavy defeat at Mycale. The two defeats ended Xerxes' ambitions to overrun Greece.



Battle

**6 BATTLE OF SALAMIS 480 BCE**

In September 480 BCE, the Greeks once more faced a much larger enemy force at Salamis. The Athenian general Themistocles employed a bold tactic: he lured the Persian fleet into the narrow straits and then launched an all-out assault from all sides. His victory forced the remaining Persian ships to retreat to Anatolia.



Battle

**5 BATTLE OF THERMOPYLAE 480 BCE**

Although outnumbered by Persian forces, the Greeks held the narrow pass at Thermopylae for 3 days as Spartan King Leonidas mounted a last-ditch defense with a small force of Spartans and other Greek soldiers. Ultimately, the Persians took control of the pass, but Leonidas's glorious defeat instilled belief into the Greeks that they were capable of prevailing against the Persians.



Battle



**492 BCE** A storm drives Mardonius's fleet onto rocks off Mount Athos, wrecking most of the ships and killing 20,000 men

**491 BCE** Mardonius's fleet reaches Thassos, where the people submit to Persian rule

**492 BCE** Mardonius's army annexes Macedonia—previously a vassal state of the Persian Empire

**Jul 480 BCE** Persian fleet inflicts heavy losses on the Greek allied fleet at the Battle of Artemision

**Aug 480 BCE** Following the Persian victory at Thermopylae, the state of Boeotia falls

**Jun 479 BCE** Spartan forces break the Persian line and kill Persian general Mardonius

**Sep 480 BCE** Helped by its position in the narrow straits of Salamis, the Greek navy defeats the much larger Persian fleet

**< Fallen warrior**

This detail is from a statue of a fallen Greek warrior, exhibited on the East Pediment of the Temple of Aphaia, Aegina, Greece, c. 500–480 BCE.

**Oct 480 BCE** The Persian army sacks Athens and burns the city

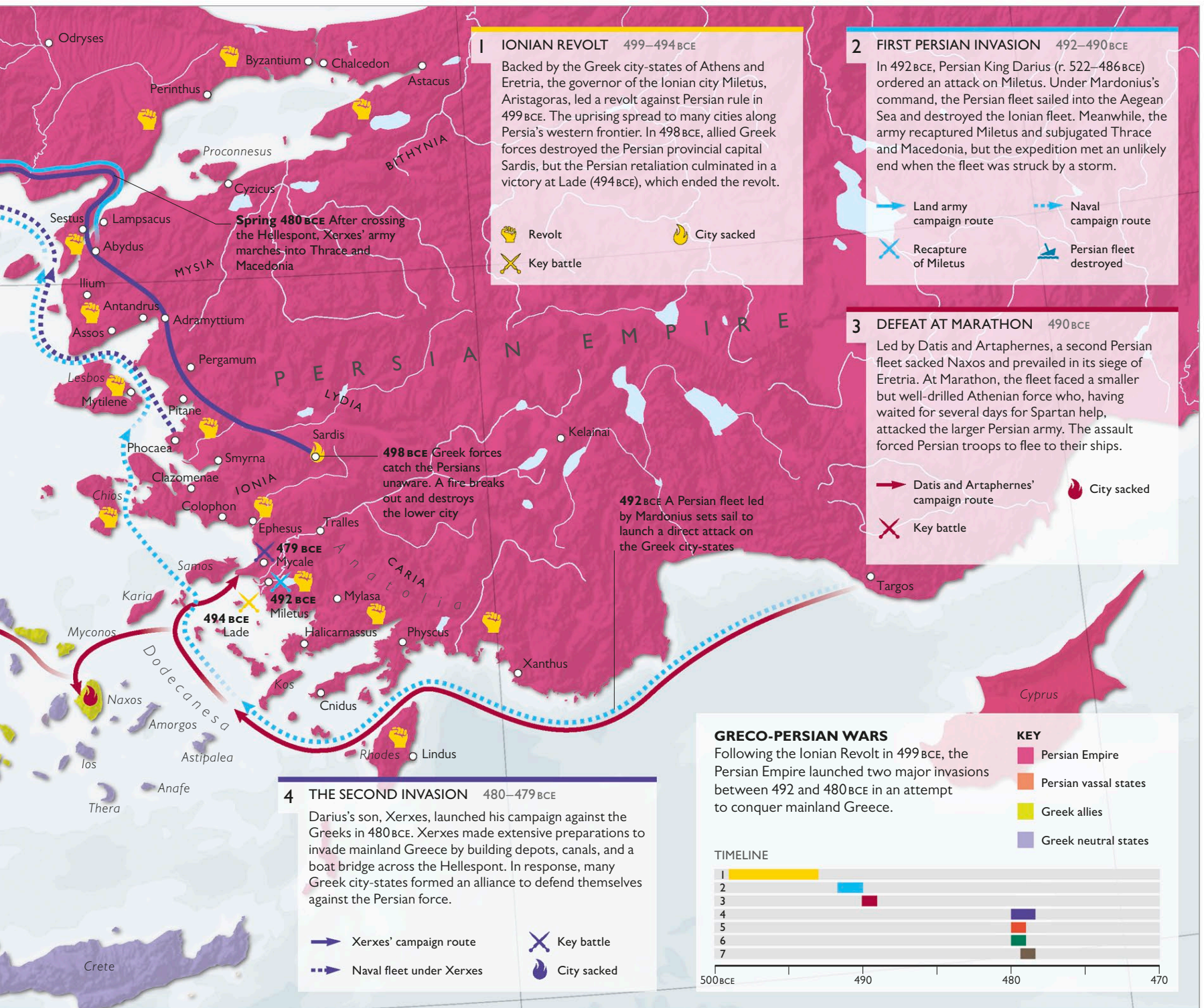
# GREECE AND PERSIA AT WAR

Following a series of revolts in its western provinces, the vast Persian Empire pushed westward in 492 BCE in an attempt to conquer the Greek city-states and colonies around the Aegean Sea. This led to a destructive series of wars in which their superior military tactics and some timely good fortune helped the Greeks halt the much larger Persian forces.

By about 550 BCE, the Persian Empire had expanded westward, moving into Anatolia, where its armies had defeated the powerful king of Lydia, Croesus, and conquered numerous Ionian cities, which until then had been colonies of Greece. In 499 BCE, however, the Ionian Greeks in the city of Miletus rebelled against Persian rule, triggering uprisings not only in Ionia but also in cities across the Persian western frontier.

The Persian military response precipitated the first wave of hostilities, in which the Persian forces took 5 years to crush the Ionian rebellion, finally recapturing Miletus in 494 BCE. Then, in retaliation for the support the Greek city-states of Athens and Eretria had given to the Ionian cities during their revolt, Persia's King Darius (r. 522–486 BCE) launched a military invasion of Greece in 492 BCE. The attack was two-pronged: a land and naval campaign directed at Thrace and Macedonia, headed by the Persian general Mardonius,





and a second led by Datis and Artaphernes. The missions brought many Greek cities under Persian control and also turned Macedonia into a client kingdom. But, the Persian armies were eventually forced to withdraw, as a storm wrecked Mardonius's fleet off the coast of Mount Athos. The second Persian army suffered a loss against the smaller but more tactically astute Athenian army at the Battle of Marathon in 490 BCE.

Ten years later, Xerxes I (r. 486–465 BCE), Darius's son and successor, restarted hostilities against Athens, having spent several years planning his campaign. Once more, the Persian forces outnumbered their Greek counterparts, in part because Athens could not always persuade other Greek states (in particular, the militaristic city of Sparta) to join them in battle. Nevertheless, the Persians were unable to exploit this advantage, and the Greek city-states ensured their independence with victories at Salamis and Plataea.

## DARIUS I 550–486 BCE

Darius I was the third Persian king of the Achaemenid Empire, during whose reign the empire reached its peak. His administrative skill combined with his strong and intelligent leadership earned him the title of Darius the Great. He also built the magnificent city of Persepolis and left behind inscriptions telling the story of his successes.

**Great King Darius**  
The king sits on his throne in a bas-relief exhibited in Persepolis, c. 500 BCE.





# ALEXANDER THE GREAT

The young king of Macedonia, Alexander III, ascended to the throne in 336 BCE following his father's death, inheriting a highly efficient army. Within 10 years, he conquered the vast Persian Empire, creating a realm that stretched from Greece to the River Indus. Although the empire fell soon after his death, it left a lasting cultural mark throughout the region.

On his succession to the Macedonian throne in 359 BCE, King Philip II (r. 359–336 BCE) transformed his army into the world's most effective fighting machine—based on the heavy infantry phalanx armed with long pikes. During his reign, his armies mounted efficient sieges to gain control of Thessaly, Illyria, and Thrace, and asserted control over the Greek mainland despite Greek hostility. However, just as Philip was preparing to invade Persia in 336 BCE, he was assassinated by one of his bodyguards.

## Alexander becomes king

Philip's 21-year-old son, Alexander III, immediately claimed the throne and wielded his military force to suppress the revolts that had erupted in Greece and the Balkans following Philip's death. Thereafter, Alexander set out to realize his late father's ambitions, leading an army of 30,000 soldiers and a 5,000-strong cavalry on a masterfully drilled military campaign to conquer the Persian Empire. Alexander swept through the Persian territories of Anatolia, Syria, and Egypt without losing a single battle. He then marched east to the Persian homeland, waging a tireless campaign, and by 327 BCE

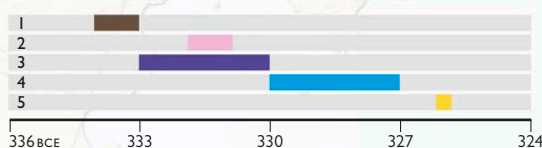
### THE CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

From 336 to 323 BCE, the young Macedonian king Alexander III conquered many foreign lands and founded a unified empire under the combined rule of Macedonian and local officials.

#### KEY

- Kingdom of Macedonia
- Dependent regions
- Alexander's empire
- Persian Royal Road
- Major battle
- Macedonian capital

#### TIMELINE



### I CONQUEST OF ANATOLIA 334–333 BCE

Alexander confronted the Persian army for the first time at the Granicus River (in modern Kocabaş, Turkey) in the early summer of 334 BCE. The Persian army's plan to kill Alexander backfired because of its inability to hold its front line against the Macedonian cavalry. By spring 333 BCE, 30 cities in Anatolia had surrendered to Alexander.

→ Alexander's route through Anatolia

**Spring 333 BCE** Alexander cuts the legendary Gordian Knot—a sign that he would conquer the rest of Asia

**Summer 334 BCE** Alexander defeats a Persian force augmented by Greek mercenaries

**Winter 331 BCE** Oracle of Ammon proclaims Alexander the legitimate pharaoh of Egypt

**Summer 334 BCE** Alexander takes Halicarnassus after a siege. He appoints the local queen, Ada of Caria, to rule on his behalf

### 2 LIBERATOR OF EGYPT 332–331 BCE

In 331 BCE, Alexander reached Egypt, where the Persian satrap surrendered peacefully. Alexander was seen as a liberator who had freed the country from Persian rule and was proclaimed son of the Egyptian god Amun. He also founded the city of Alexandria, later the capital of the Greek kingdom of Egypt.

→ Alexander's route through Egypt

**Spring 332 BCE** Siege of Tyre results in both sides suffering a high number of casualties

**331 BCE** Macedonian army transports military equipment along the Persian Royal Road during the conquest of Persia

◀ **The Alexander Sarcophagus**  
Stone sarcophagus adorned with bas-relief carvings of Alexander the Great in battle. Housed in the Royal Necropolis of Sidon, Lebanon.





crushed the Achaemenid Dynasty—rulers of the first Persian Empire. Alexander forged an empire that stretched from Greece to the River Indus and introduced Greek culture to the vast realm. In addition, he was an astute diplomat and encouraged the mixing of cultures, adopting Persian customs in an attempt to unify his empire and establish trade routes between Asia and Europe.

Alexander set his sights on invading India next, but his weary troops refused to fight on, forcing their king to lead them home. Alexander survived a perilous journey across the Makran desert, but in 323 BCE—at the age of 32—he died in Babylon of a fever, exhaustion, or possibly from being poisoned. A tussle for power ensued after his death and led to the breakup of his vast empire.

*“... the end and object of conquest is to avoid doing the same thing as the conquered.”*

ALEXANDER III, FROM *LIVES* BY PLUTARCH, c. 100 CE



#### THE EMPIRE FRAGMENTS

Following Alexander's death, his generals and associates, known as the Diadochi, disputed the succession, which led to the division of the empire. The Seleucids, descendants of Alexander's general Seleucus I Nicator, ruled the lands from Thrace to Persia. The Greek Ptolemaic kings claimed Egypt, while the dynasty of General Antigonus I Monophthalmus—the Antigonids—took sovereignty over Macedonia and parts of Greece.

#### KEY

Antigonid Kingdom	Greco-Bactrian Kingdom
Kingdom of Pergamum	Hellenized non-Greek Kingdom
Ptolemaic Empire	Seleucid Empire
Independent Greek states	

### 3 FIGHT AGAINST PERSIA 333–330 BCE

Alexander's first direct engagement with Persian king Darius III had occurred at the Battle of Issus (333 BCE), where he emerged victorious and forced Darius to flee the battlefield. Alexander went on to capture Persepolis—the Persian ceremonial capital. A weak Persian Empire was all but wiped out when King Darius was killed by his satrap, Bessos, who then met his own fate at the hands of Alexander.

→ Alexander's route through Persia

### 4 HELLENISM 330–327 BCE

After the fall of the Persian Empire, Alexander conquered the remaining northeastern provinces between 330 and 327 BCE. Throughout his conquests, Alexander founded many cities. These were planned along classical lines and featured the works of Greek artists to ensure that both the Greek language and the Hellenistic culture of his homeland spread across his empire.

→ Alexander's route through Persian provinces

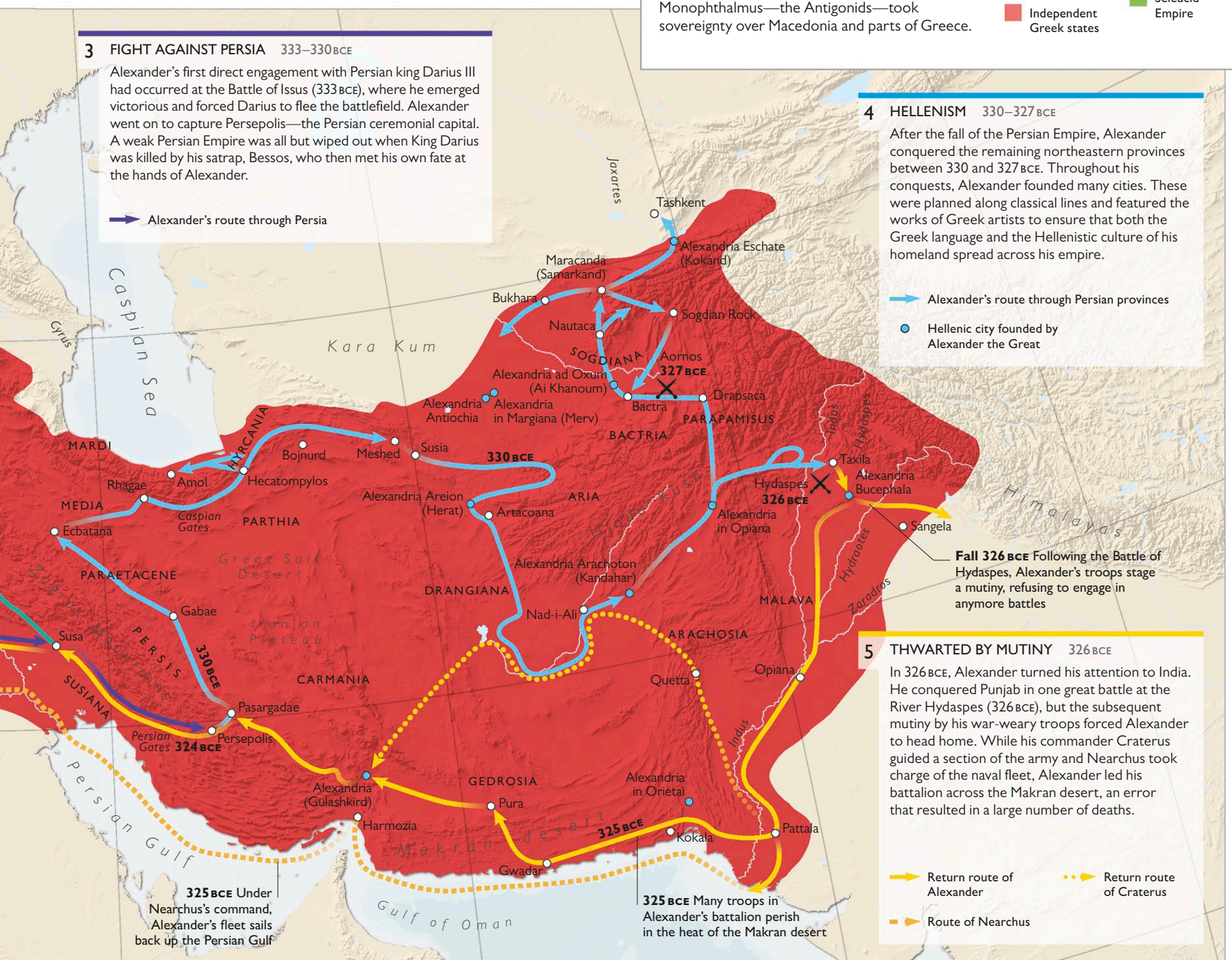
● Hellenic city founded by Alexander the Great

### 5 THWARTED BY MUTINY 326 BCE

In 326 BCE, Alexander turned his attention to India. He conquered Punjab in one great battle at the River Hydaspes (326 BCE), but the subsequent mutiny by his war-weary troops forced Alexander to head home. While his commander Craterus guided a section of the army and Nearchus took charge of the naval fleet, Alexander led his battalion across the Makran desert, an error that resulted in a large number of deaths.

→ Return route of Alexander  
→ Route of Nearchus

→ Return route of Craterus







#### △ Iconic design

This bronze helmet from the 6th century BCE was first worn by soldiers of the city-state Corinth but later gained popularity throughout Greece.

# THE CLASSICAL AGE

Conventionally, the term “classical civilization” has been used to define the two different but related cultures that developed in the Mediterranean world from about 800 BCE to 400 CE. The first of these emerged in and around Greece, and the second rose in Rome, from where it spread across the entire European world.

The immense contribution of Greece to western civilization is universally recognized. Although Athens has traditionally been given the greatest credit for this advance, modern historians believe that there is far more to the story.

### Rise of the city-states

It was during the Archaic Period (800–479 BCE) of Greek history that the seeds of Greek civilization were sown. It was an age of experimentation and intellectual ferment. City-states such as Athens, Sparta, Corinth, Argos, Eleusis, Thebes, Miletus, and Syracuse emerged. The population expanded, and by classical times, it is estimated that there were more than 1,000 communities scattered across the Greek world.

Art and architecture flourished, and cities along the coast of Anatolia (modern-day Turkey) became important centers of early philosophical and other intellectual developments. The great plays of Sophocles, Euripides, Aeschylus, and Aristophanes were first staged at the Theater of Dionysus Eleutheros on the southern slopes of Athens' Acropolis. Herodotus and Thucydides were the first great historians. Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle revolutionized philosophy, all three founding their own philosophical schools. Other notable figures of the time included the statesmen Solon and Pericles, the generals

Alcibiades and Themistocles, the poets Pindar and Sappho, the sculptor Phidias, and the physician Hippocrates—the father of modern medicine.

Success in war cemented these achievements. The defeat of the invading Persians at the town of Marathon in 490 BCE and at the island of Salamis 10 years later are regarded as pivotal moments in world history. Had the Persians emerged victorious, it is likely that the Greek achievements, which form the building blocks on which modern Western civilization is founded, would have been stifled at birth.



#### △ Greek art

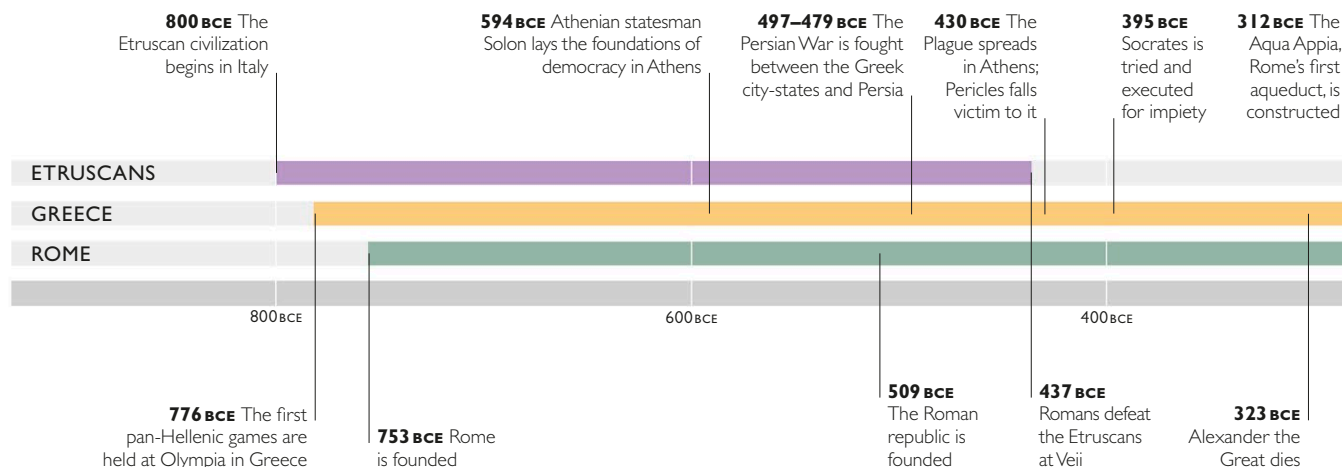
The Greeks used vases for storage and at occasions such as weddings. The painting on this vase, which dates from 530 BCE, depicts the hero Hercules.

### Spread of Greek influence

Greek city-states lost most of their power following the conquest of Greece by Philip II of Macedon in 338 BCE; however, Greek culture did not come to an end. Rather, it was spread across the eastern Mediterranean and far into Asia by the Macedonians. While the vast empire created by Alexander the Great (the son of Philip II) did not survive his death in 323 BCE—his generals divided it among themselves—what survived was the notion of “Greekness,” which permeated every aspect of daily life. Almost everyone in the former empire spoke a form of colloquial Greek. The rulers encouraged the growth of learning in the empire. In Egypt, under the Macedonian general Ptolemy I, the university at Alexandria became home to the mathematicians Euclid, Eratosthenes,

## POWERFUL CIVILIZATIONS

Various civilizations rose and fell in the Mediterranean region during the so-called Classical period of world history. However, the Greek and Roman civilizations emerged as the most dynamic during this era. The Etruscan civilization is also included in this timeline because of its close links with the early days of Rome. The city of Rome itself has a long history but played a relatively minor part until the Romans expanded their influence in the 3rd century BCE.







#### Public works

The Aqua Appia was the first aqueduct built to supply Rome with drinking water. It dropped only 33 ft (10m) in height along its length of 10 miles (16km). Commissioned in 312 BCE, it was an early sign of the skill and ambition of Roman infrastructure projects.

and Archimedes, along with the inventors Heron and Ktesibios. The great library there came to be a wonder of the ancient Mediterranean world.

### Rise and fall of Rome

Rome arose from a small trading settlement on the banks of the River Tiber. Initially, it came under the influence of the powerful Etruscan civilization to its north. The last Etruscan king, Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, was driven out by the Romans in 509 BCE, after which Rome became a republic, ruled by a senate and two consuls, elected annually.

It was war that made the republic great. Its increasing dominance in Italy brought it into conflict with its Mediterranean rival city Carthage. The defeat of the Carthaginians ensured Roman dominance of the western Mediterranean. The successful wars that the Romans fought against the Macedonians and others in the east gave Rome control over the entire Mediterranean region.

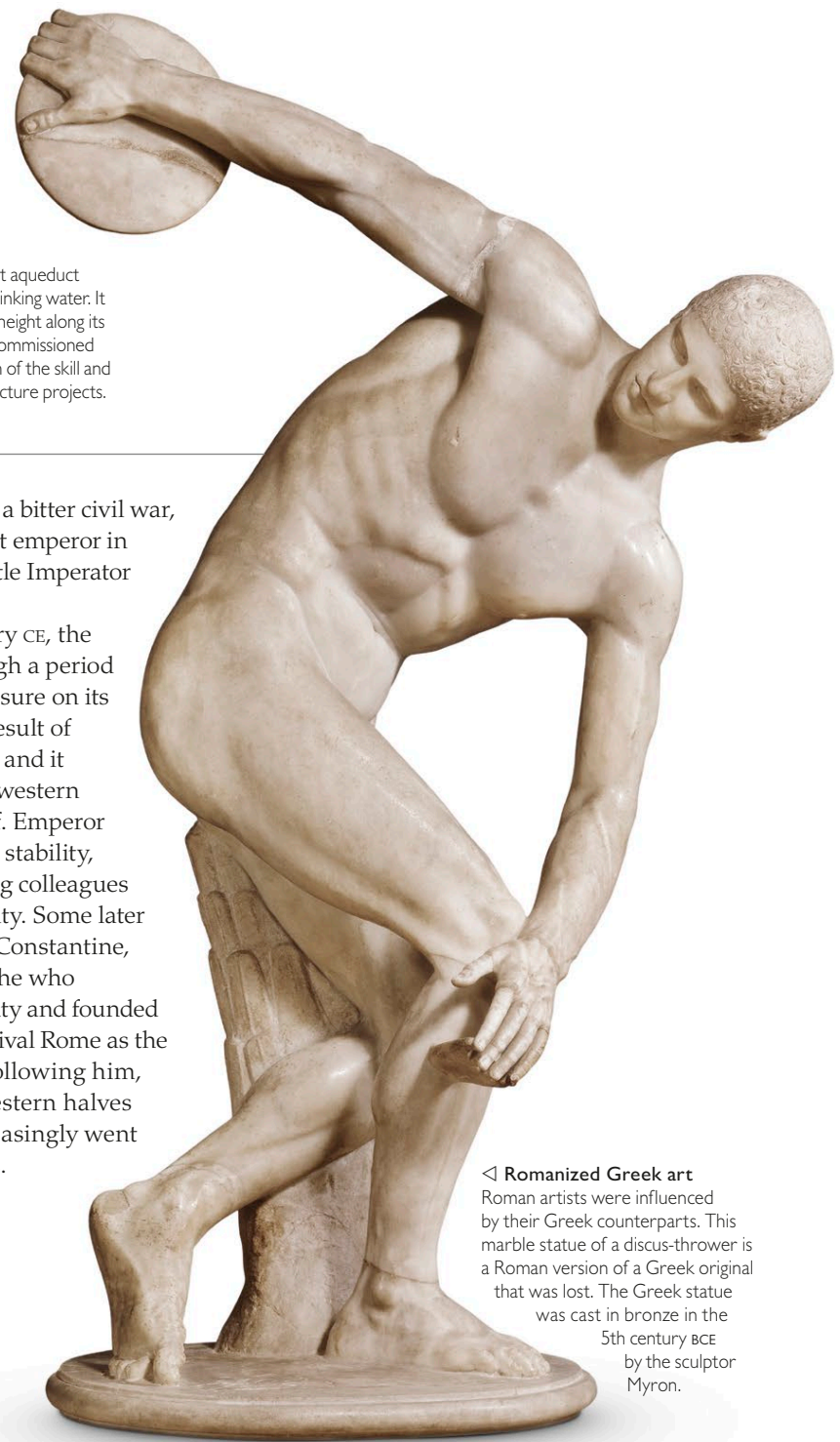
In the 1st century BCE, Rome was still a republic, with powerful senators such as Julius Caesar. Whether he would have made himself emperor had he not been assassinated must remain speculation. It was Octavian, his adopted great-

nephew, who, after a bitter civil war, became Rome's first emperor in 31 BCE, taking the title Imperator Caesar Augustus.

In the 3rd century CE, the empire went through a period of crisis due to pressure on its frontiers and as a result of political instability, and it was divided into a western and an eastern half. Emperor Diocletian restored stability, partly by appointing colleagues to share his authority. Some later emperors, notably Constantine, ruled alone. It was he who legalized Christianity and founded Constantinople to rival Rome as the imperial capital. Following him, the eastern and western halves of the empire increasingly went their separate ways.

*"Freedom is the sure possession of those alone who have the courage to defend it."*

PERICLES, ATHENIAN STATESMAN, 495–429 BCE



#### Romanized Greek art

Roman artists were influenced by their Greek counterparts. This marble statue of a discus-thrower is a Roman version of a Greek original that was lost. The Greek statue was cast in bronze in the 5th century BCE by the sculptor Myron.

**146 BCE** Carthage is destroyed by Rome

**146 BCE** Greece comes under Roman rule

**31 BCE** Octavian becomes Emperor Augustus of Rome

**79 CE** Mount Vesuvius erupts, causing the Roman city Pompeii to become entombed

**285 CE** Emperor Diocletian splits the Roman Empire in two

**410 CE** Rome is attacked and sacked by Visigoths

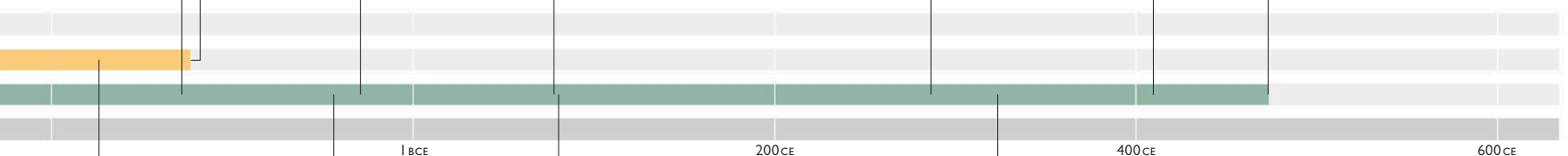
**476 CE** The Western Roman Empire falls

**155 BCE** Athens sends delegates of its three great schools of philosophy to Rome

**44 BCE** Julius Caesar is assassinated

**80 CE** The Colosseum is built in Rome

**313 CE** Emperor Constantine I legalizes Christianity







## ETRUSCAN ART

### TOMB DECORATIONS

The Etruscans developed art in various forms, including realist figurative sculpture in bronze and terracotta, engraved gems, vase paintings, and frescoes (right). Much of this art was strongly influenced by the Greeks. Most of the best surviving examples of frescoes and terracotta sculptures are from tombs, especially those found in Tarquinia, Italy.



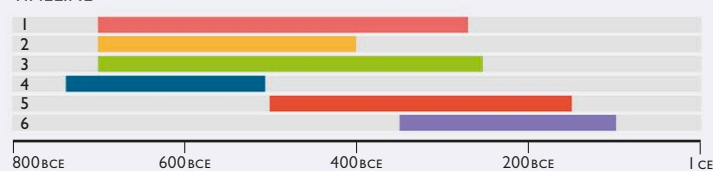
## SHIFTING POWER IN ITALY, 500–200 BCE

In 500 BCE, the Italian peninsula was home to many different tribes, as well as colonies founded by the Carthaginians of north Africa and the Greeks. By the end of the 2nd century BCE, Rome was the dominant presence in Italy and was continuing to expand.

### KEY

- Italic-speaking peoples
- Italic-speaking peoples and Etruscans
- Carthaginians

### TIMELINE





# ETRUSCANS AND THE RISE OF ROME

By about 800 BCE, the dominant people in northern Italy were the Etruscans—people who lived in city-states and spoke a unique, non-Indo-European language. One of the cities they ruled was Rome, which began to grow into a major power from 500 BCE, annexing its neighbors and founding colonies throughout Italy.

The Etruscan civilization most probably grew out of an interaction between migrants from the eastern Mediterranean and the Villanovans, iron-age people who lived between the Padus (Po) River valley and the site of Rome.

The Etruscans flourished in this part of northern Italy, which they called Etruria, and in the area of Campania, around modern Naples. They built cities, developed distinctive styles of art—especially mural painting and sculpture—and formed trading alliances.

Rome was originally a settlement in Latium. Central Italy was home to a number of Italic peoples—the Umbri, Sabini, and others—who spoke Indo-European languages. Up until 509 BCE, Rome was ruled by kings of Etruscan origin. Rome then became a republic, governed by two annually elected magistrates, known as consuls. The Roman Republic expanded its territory, first into Latium, then into Etruria and the south. It did this through military victories over the Sabini and Aequi peoples of central Italy and by defeating Veii, an Etruscan city northwest of Rome. The Romans consolidated their position by founding colonies that gave them dominance over much of Italy. By the early 3rd century BCE, Rome had nearly 300,000 citizens, distributed across the Italian peninsula. Roman culture was influenced by its contact with both the Etruscans and the Greeks.



**△ The Capitoline Wolf**  
This statue shows the legendary founders of Rome being nursed by a she-wolf. The bronze wolf may date back to Etruscan times; the twins are a Renaissance addition.

## 4 THE FOUNDING OF ROME 753–509 BCE

Legend tells that Rome was founded in 753 BCE by the twins Romulus and Remus. Archaeological evidence suggests that its origins lie in a number of prehistoric villages near the Tiber, which expanded and eventually joined to form the city. The original local inhabitants merged with the Etruscans to produce a powerful city that formed a republic in 509 BCE and began to expand its territory soon afterward.

--- Roman territory when Republic established

## 5 CITIZEN COLONIES 500–150 BCE

To consolidate its control of conquered territory and to secure strategic locations, Rome planted colonies across Italy. These colonies generally had about 300 Roman citizens and their families, each of whom was allocated a plot of land confiscated from the defeated locals. These colonies were often set up at existing cities, as a kind of garrison, rather than being independent cities.

● Roman colonies ○ Other settlements

## ITALY IN 240 BCE

Rome's colonies stretched from Ariminum (Rimini) in the north to Brundisium (Brindisi) in the south: their dates of foundation, BCE, are shown here in bold type. A network of roads built by the Romans spread their influence over much of Italy.

## 6 LATIN COLONIES 350–100 BCE

Not all colonists retained their rights as full Roman citizens; some were given the same status as the inhabitants of Latium who had earlier been conquered by Rome. The people of these "Latin" colonies had legal rights under Roman law but no right to vote in elections or stand for office. Most of Rome's *socii* (allies by treaty) were granted neither full citizenship nor Latin rights, which eventually led to an uprising.

■ Roman citizens, 240 BCE  
■ Latin colonies, 240 BCE  
■ Allies (*socii*) of Rome, 240 BCE  
— Roman road

**3rd century BCE** The Greek settlement of Brundisium (modern Brindisi) is conquered by the Romans

**4th century BCE** The colony at Ostia is of vital importance, guarding the mouth of the Tiber River

**468 BCE** Rome takes the city of Antium (modern Anzio) from the Italic Volsci people

**3rd century BCE** The Romans capture the Greek colony of Paestum after their war with King Pyrrhus, ruler of Epirus on mainland Greece

**340 BCE** The Romans fight a coalition of their neighbors—the Latini, Campani, Volsci, and others—at the Battle of Mount Vesuvius



# ROME BUILDS ITS POWER BASE

As the Roman Republic expanded in the 3rd century BCE, it came into conflict with the well-established Carthaginian civilization. Rome's victory in the three ensuing Punic Wars gave it hegemony over the western Mediterranean, and further Roman victories in Greece pushed Roman power eastward as well.

In the early 3rd century BCE, Rome's power was confined mainly to its colonies in Italy. In 264 BCE, it began to expand its influence, first and foremost by fighting a series of wars with Carthage, then the most powerful city in the western Mediterranean.

Carthage had been founded by the seafaring Phoenician civilization (*Punicus* in Latin, hence Punic Wars), which had thrived in the eastern Mediterranean from around 1500 BCE. Carthage was not a formal empire but the preeminent city in a league of cities that defended one another and maintained trading networks. Located on the coast of what is modern Tunisia,

it built up formidable sea power, with a fleet of around 350 ships by the year 256 BCE. To defeat Carthage and its allies, Rome not only had to fight skilled Carthaginian generals in land battles but had to build and equip its own navy. Roman victories against Carthage brought it many provinces: Sicilia (Sicily), Corsica, and Sardinia after the first Punic War (264–241 BCE); two Spanish provinces after the second (218–201 BCE); and the province of Africa (northern Tunisia), on the site of Carthage itself, in the third (149–146 BCE). Further victories in Greece gave Rome the dominant position in the Mediterranean that it would hold until the 5th century CE.

*"I have come not to make war on the Italians, but to aid the Italians against Rome."*

HANNIBAL AT THE BATTLE OF LACUS TRASIMENUS, 217 BCE

## THE ROMANS IN GREECE

Greece was disrupted by political tensions because the most powerful cities, such as Corinth and Athens, wanted independence from the main powers in the region—the Macedonians and the Seleucid Empire of Persia. This gave Rome the chance to move into the area. After a number of military victories, beginning with the Battle of Corinth in 146 BCE, Rome was to gain many Greek cities and later set up provinces, which they called Macedonia, Achaia, and Epirus.

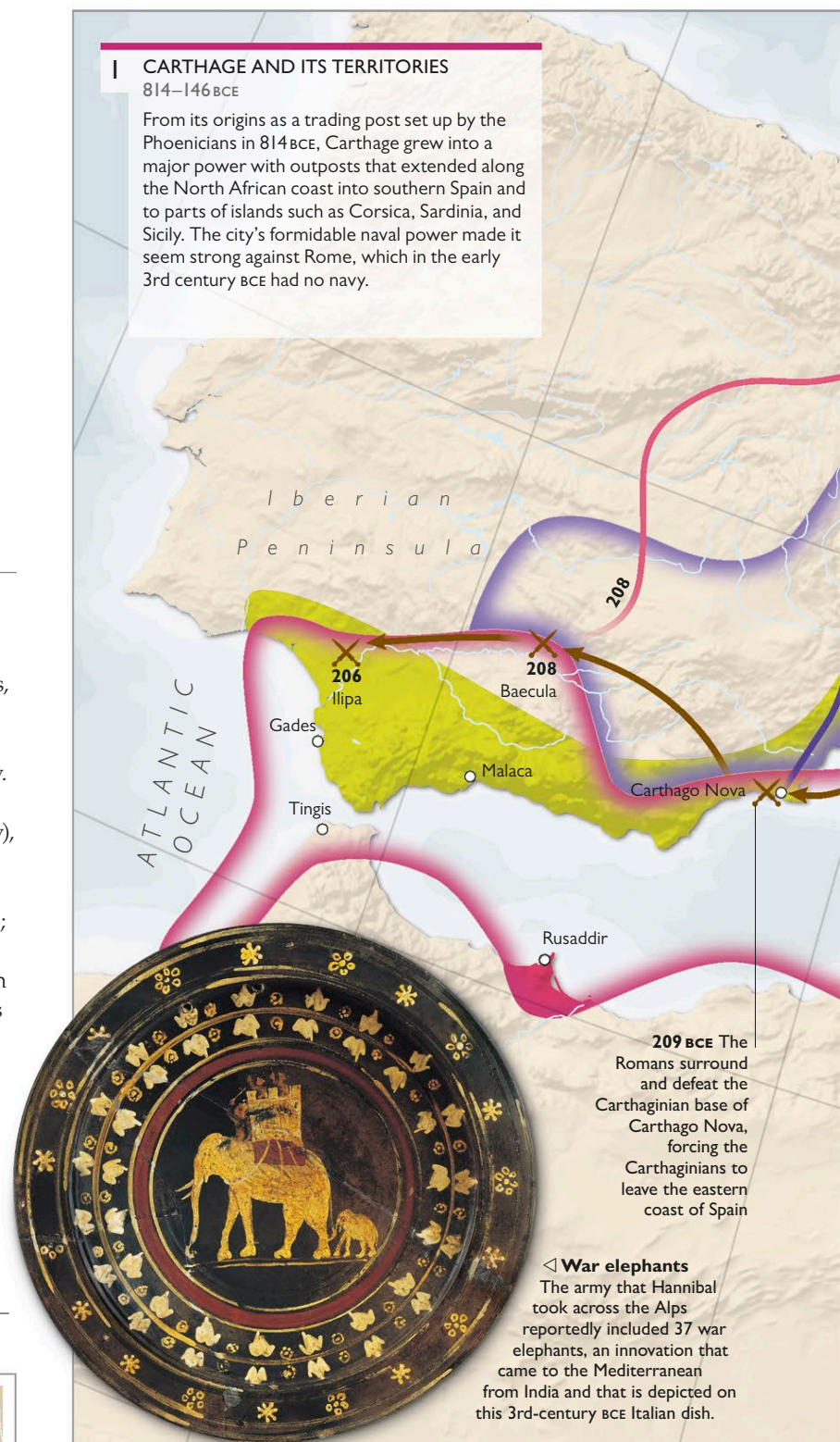


ROMAN PROVINCES IN GREECE c. 100 BCE

## CARTHAGE AND ITS TERRITORIES

814–146 BCE

From its origins as a trading post set up by the Phoenicians in 814 BCE, Carthage grew into a major power with outposts that extended along the North African coast into southern Spain and to parts of islands such as Corsica, Sardinia, and Sicily. The city's formidable naval power made it seem strong against Rome, which in the early 3rd century BCE had no navy.



**209 BCE** The Romans surround and defeat the Carthaginian base of Carthage Nova, forcing the Carthaginians to leave the eastern coast of Spain

### War elephants

The army that Hannibal took across the Alps reportedly included 37 war elephants, an innovation that came to the Mediterranean from India and that is depicted on this 3rd-century BCE Italian dish.

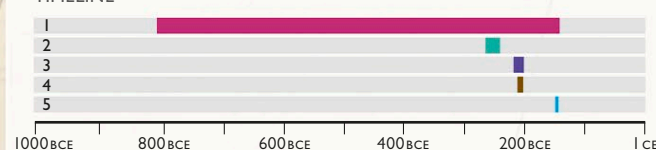
## THE PUNIC WARS

This series of three wars took place over more than a century and involved the Carthaginians in long, grueling marches through difficult territory. Both sides lost many soldiers, but Carthage was eventually weakened by the power of Rome.

### KEY

- Carthaginian territory 264 BCE
- Carthaginian territory 200 BCE
- Roman territory 264 BCE
- Roman gains by 241 BCE
- Roman gains by 202 BCE

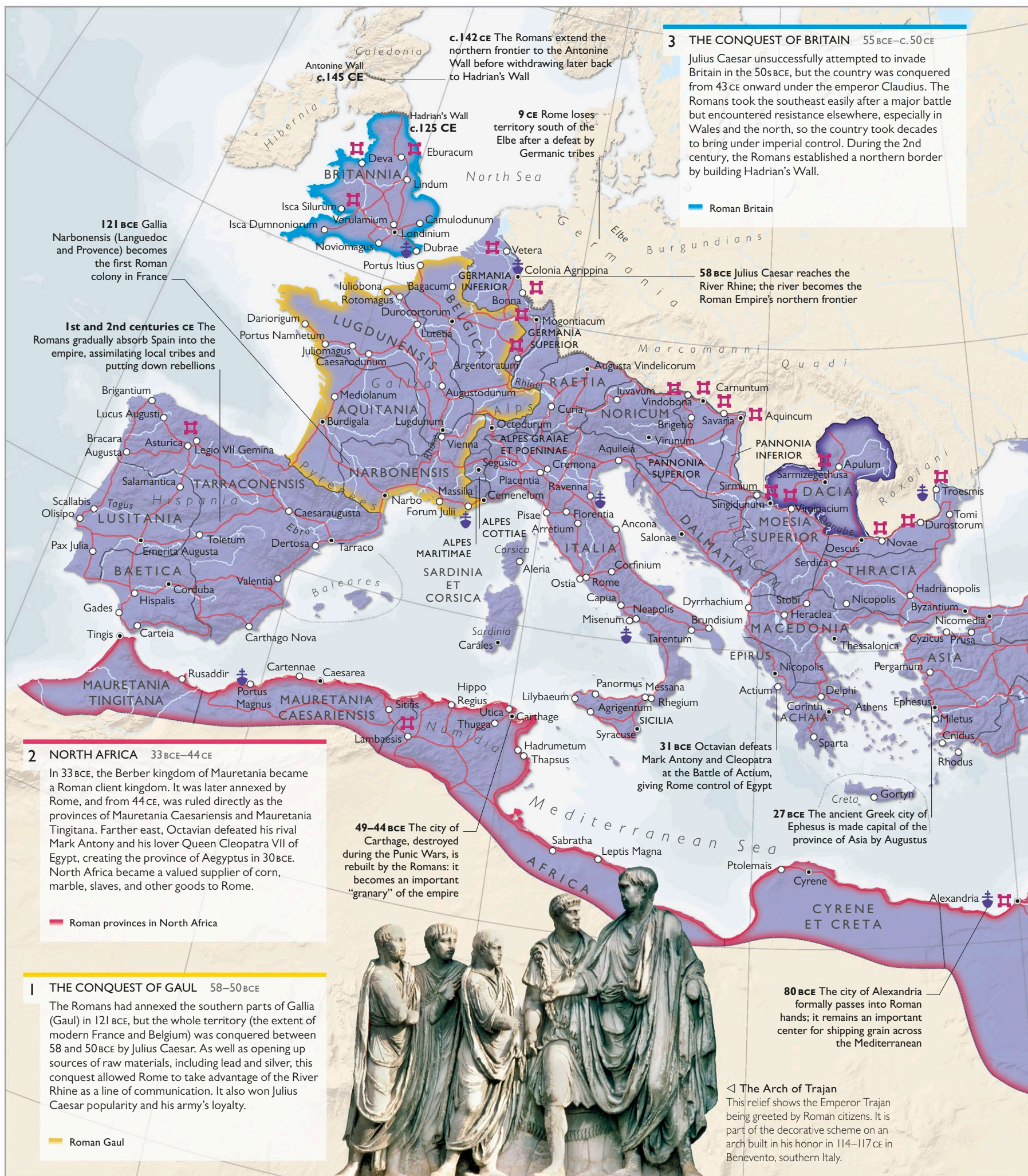
### TIMELINE















# ROMAN EMPIRE AT ITS HEIGHT

Rome's territories expanded steadily during the period of the Republic. By the time of the accession of the first emperor, Augustus, in 27 BCE, Rome controlled all of the Mediterranean. By 120 CE, the empire's borders were settled, and it entered the period of its greatest stability.

The Roman Republic grew by military conquest and by establishing client kingdoms that accepted Roman domination in return for stability and good trading relations. The first emperor, Augustus, adopted a policy of not expanding Roman boundaries, which was followed by many later emperors, with exceptions such as Trajan, who added substantial but short-lived provinces in the east.

Guarding this huge empire was the job of an army of some 300,000 men, mostly based in camps along the empire's boundaries. The Roman navy protected shipping on the Mediterranean that carried the trade on which the city depended—everything from raw materials and slaves to foods such as grain and olive oil. Relations with the provinces were usually harmonious: the Roman way of life proved very attractive, helped to stimulate further trade, and encouraged people of conquered territories to become "Romanized" and accept imperial rule. The resulting balance of military power and economic prosperity kept the area relatively stable and peaceful in the first 200 years of the empire.

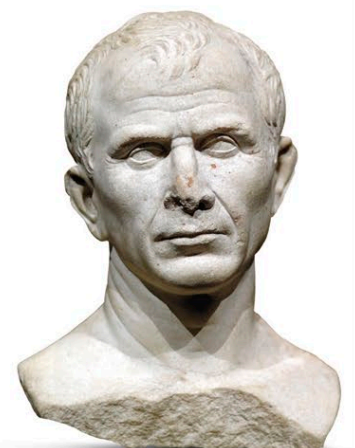
*"You cheer my heart, who build as if Rome would be eternal."*

AUGUSTUS CAESAR

## FROM REPUBLIC TO EMPIRE POWER STRUGGLES IN ROME

When Julius Caesar seized power as a dictator in 49 BCE, it set Rome on a path from republic to empire. After Julius Caesar's assassination in 44 BCE, Mark Antony, Lepidus, and Octavian ruled the Republic as a triumvirate, but they vied for power, and a series of disputes and civil wars ensued. Octavian ousted Lepidus in a political maneuver and then defeated Antony in battle, becoming the first emperor, under the name Augustus Caesar, in 27 BCE.

**Bust of Julius Caesar**  
Julius Caesar was a powerful military leader and politician. His actions helped bring about the end of the Republic.





# THE ROOTS OF INDIAN HISTORY

In the 2nd millennium BCE, after the decline of the Indus Valley civilization, a people calling themselves *Arya* (noble ones) migrated from the Iranian plateau into northwest India. They spoke Sanskrit, an Indo-European language.

What is known of this time in the Indian subcontinent comes mostly from the Indo-Aryans' sacred texts—the four *Vedas* (from the Sanskrit word for knowledge)—composed and passed on orally. Mostly liturgical texts, used while offering sacrifices to deities such as Indra, the god of war, the *Vedas* also provide evidence of social structures.



## △ Delicate pottery

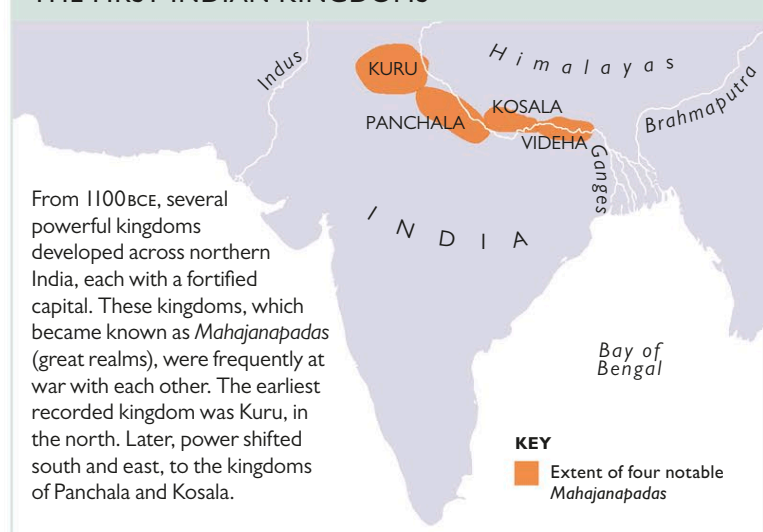
From 1000 to 600 BCE, distinctive painted grayware pottery, decorated with simple lines or geometric designs, spread across northern India. It was so thin and delicate that it must have been a luxury or ritual item.

This period is called the Vedic Age. The early *Rig Veda*, composed from 1500 BCE onward, shows the Indo-Aryans as nomadic pastoralists—chariot-riding tribal warriors raiding each other for cattle. From around 1100 BCE, they moved east to the Ganges plain, where they became settled farmers.

Many villages appeared, where people grew rice, wheat, and barley. Later, several large towns, fortified with ditches and embankments, developed. Marking the beginning of India's caste system, social classes appeared:

the priestly *brahmins*, who composed and memorized the *Vedas*; the *kshatriyas*, or noble warriors; the *vaishyas*, or traders; and the *shudras*, or servants. The society changed from a tribal system, where assemblies of chieftains chose a king, or *raja*, to hereditary kingship. New kings received their legitimacy from sacrificial rituals overseen by the *brahmins*, which imbued each new king with divine power.

## THE FIRST INDIAN KINGDOMS





**Epic war**

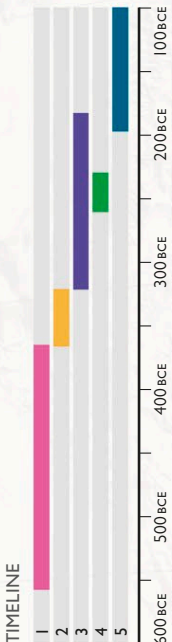
A war for the throne of Kuru is the subject of the later Hindu epic, the *Mahabharata*. This scene shows the warrior Karna (center) using a magical weapon to kill Ghatotkacha, who is half-human and half-demon.





THE NANDA AND MAURYAN EMPIRES

The Mauryan Empire was preceded by the Nanda Empire, which ruled in the 4th century BCE. The core of both was the Ganges River plain, which was the seat of earlier powers, such as Magadha. The map shows how populations were displaced at the end of the period.



5 INVASIONS FROM THE NORTH 2ND CENTURY BCE

In the 2nd century BCE, the powerful Chinese Han Dynasty (see pp.82–83) expanded its boundaries. This put pressure on peoples in areas such as Gansu; they moved south, in turn displacing local Scythian populations. The result was the movement of people across the Indus, deep into areas such as Saurashtra, which helped to undermine already weakening Mauryan power.

- Displaced Northern Shaka people (mid to late 2nd century BCE)
- Movement of central Asian populations (c. 165–100 BCE)
- Displaced Shaka people (110–100 BCE)

4 EDICTS OF ASHOKA c. 260–232 BCE

The Mauryan emperor Ashoka converted to Buddhism after seeing the carnage that accompanied the conquest of Kalinga in 261 BCE. Ashoka set up pillars and had rocks inscribed with his edicts—announcements of his conversion to Buddhism and commitment to Buddhist teachings. The edicts cover subjects ranging from religious tolerance and justice to kindness to animals.

- Ashokan pillar edicts
- Ashokan rock edicts

317 BCE Taxila is taken over by the Mauryans; it becomes a center of arts, crafts, and learning and the capital of the Mauryan Empire's northern province

c.563 BCE or 480 BCE The Buddha is born in Lumbini, according to Buddhist tradition

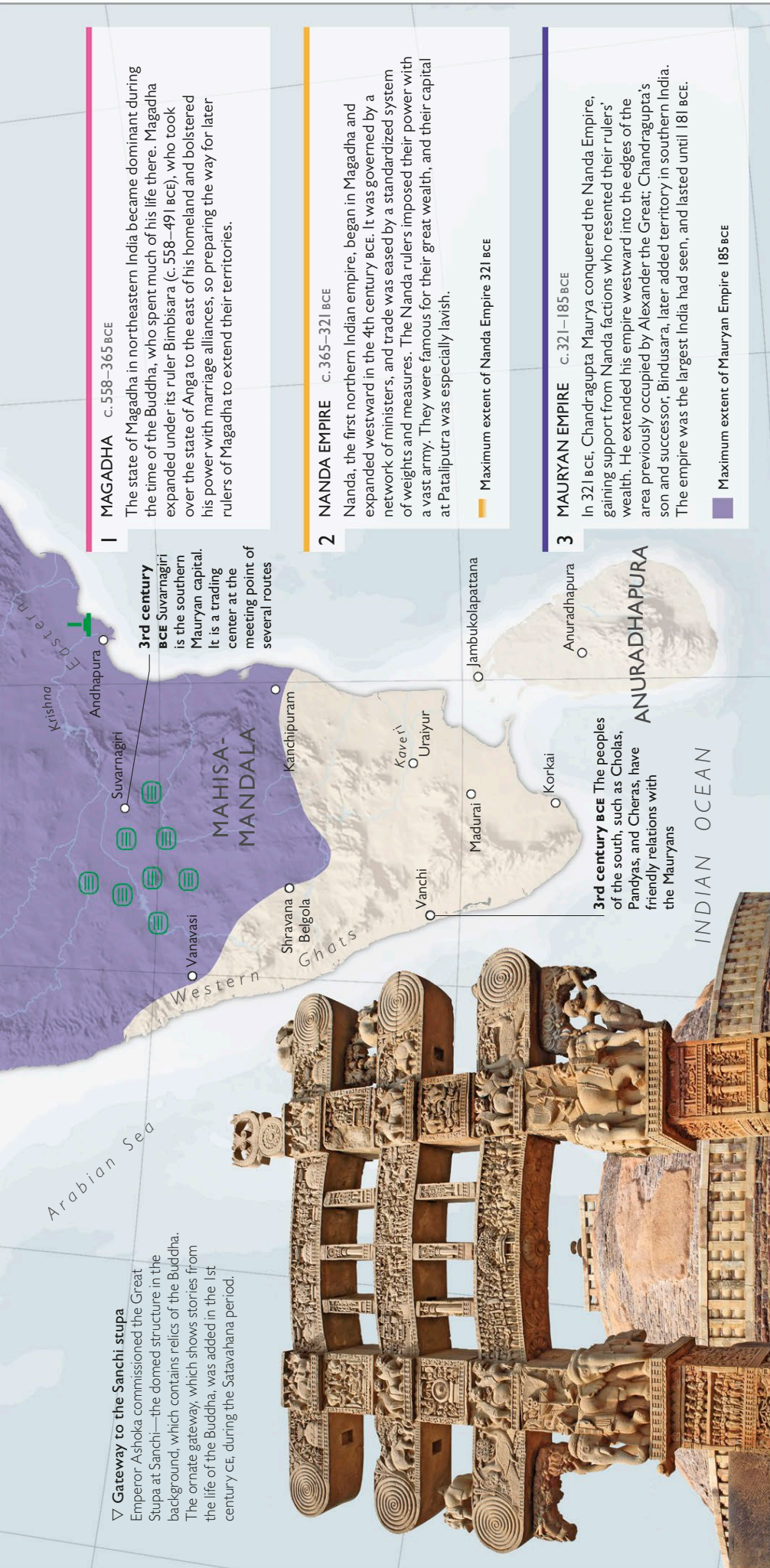
4th century BCE The kingdom of Avanti, with its capital at Ujjayini, is annexed by Chandragupta Maurya

c.250 BCE Samath, where the Buddha preached his first sermon, is visited by the Mauryan emperor Ashoka

3rd century BCE Tosali is probably the capital of the eastern province of the Mauryan Empire

c.261 BCE Kalinga is taken by Ashoka; he becomes a Buddhist after witnessing the death of thousands in the fighting there



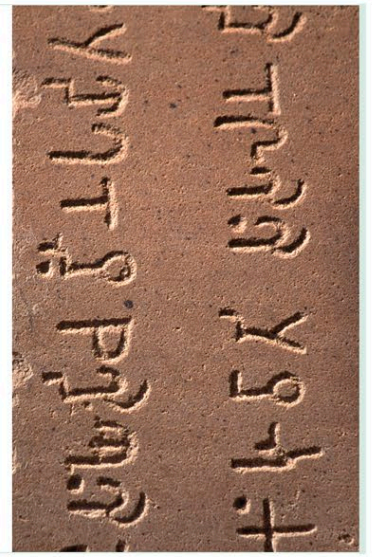


# MAURYAN INDIA

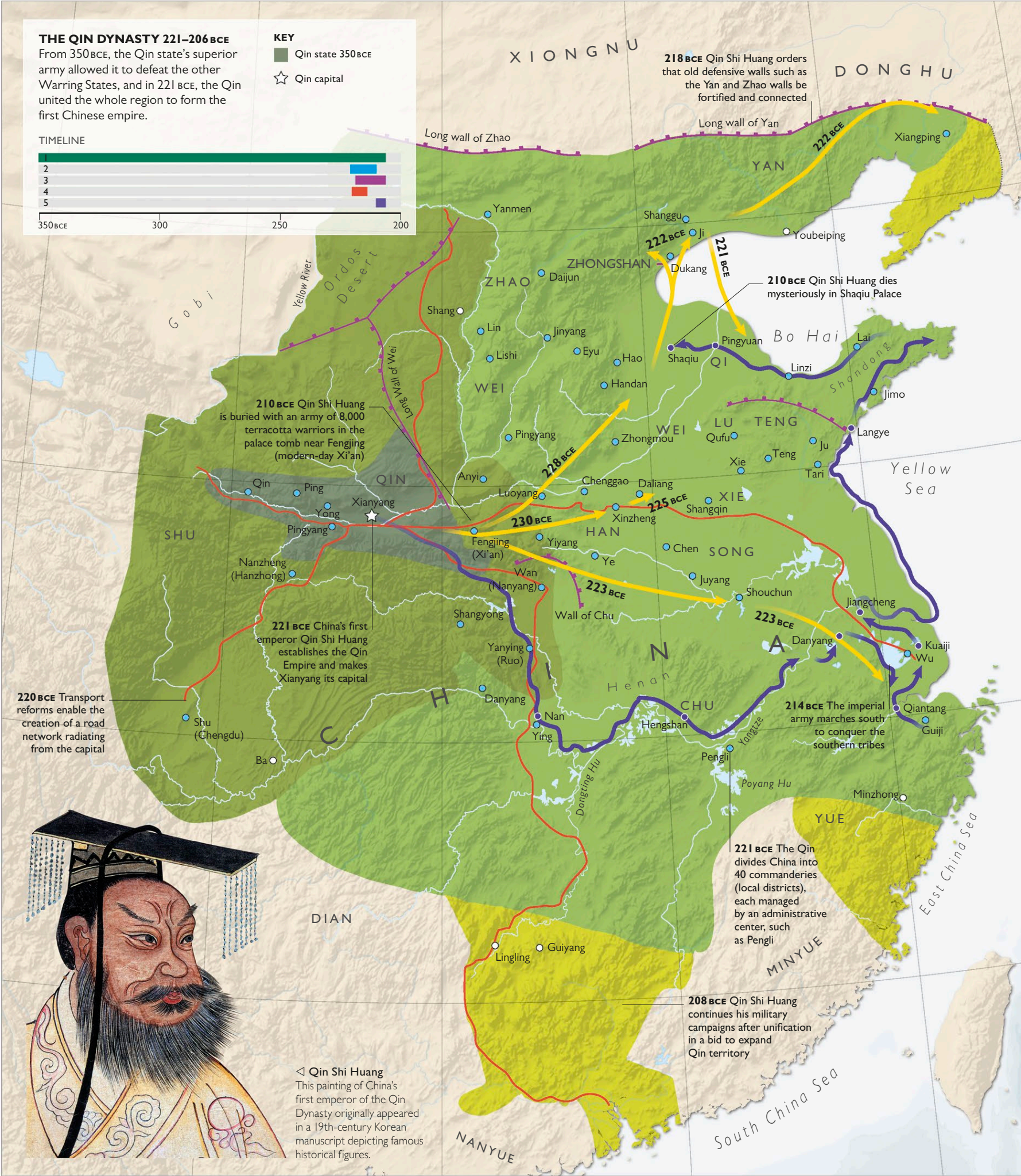
India's largest ancient empire was founded by Chandragupta Maurya in c. 321 BCE. The Mauryan emperors—particularly the great Ashoka—worked to unite India for the first time, to increase prosperity through agriculture and trade, and to promote nonviolence through Jainism and, especially, through the Buddhist faith.

India was a patchwork of independent states until the 6th century BCE, when one state, Magadha, began to take over its neighbors, creating an empire on the plain of the Ganges River. Magadha formed the basis of a larger empire that emerged under the Nanda Dynasty in the mid-4th century. However, India's great Mauryan Empire came into being when Chandragupta Maurya filled a vacuum in the northwest caused by the death of Alexander the Great. He formed an army, marched on Magadha, defeated its king, and was made emperor. At the end of his life, he converted to Jainism, encouraging social awareness and nonviolence.

The Mauryans came to rule all of India except the far southern tip. They maintained power using a system of provincial governors and a well-organized civil service. Traders were taxed, and the government collected tolls from roads and river crossings. Ashoka, who ruled as emperor c. 268–232 BCE, eventually renounced war and became a committed Buddhist, building and repairing stupas, sponsoring Buddhist missionaries, and passing laws in line with the compassionate tenets of the faith. Mauryan rule lasted until the 180s BCE, when the last emperor was assassinated.









**1 QIN EXPANSIONISM 350–206 BCE**

Originally a small state on the western borders, Qin defeated neighboring states during the Warring States period and took control of a large swathe of western and southern China. Victory over the Han state in 230 BCE gave Qin the impetus to conquer the remaining states within a decade. In 221 BCE, Qin leader Ying Zheng took the title of Qin Shi Huang (The First Emperor) and ruled from Xianyang.

- Route of Qin campaign
- Qin conquests by unification 221 BCE
- Qin expansion by 288 BCE
- Qin conquests to 206 BCE

**2 REIGN OF QIN SHI HUANG 221–210 BCE**

Qin Shi Huang introduced a series of reforms to strengthen the unity of China. These included the abolition of feudalism (to eliminate the traditional local and family loyalties that could threaten central power) and the establishment of a new system of administrative districts. He unified China economically by standardizing weights and measures across the realm.

- Administrative center

**3 FORTIFYING DEFENSIVE WALLS 218–206 BCE**

Faced with the threat of attacks from nomadic people in the north and west, Qin Shi Huang mobilized a labor force numbering thousands to construct a unified fortification out of the defensive walls, built by several Chinese rulers during the Warring States period. The Great Wall would become the Qin Dynasty's most famous legacy.

- Early sections of the Great Wall

**4 QIN TRANSPORT NETWORKS 220–214 BCE**

Another major construction to begin during Qin Shi Huang's reign was a complex road system to allow easier travel between cities and encourage trade nationwide. The emperor also ordered the construction of a major canal linking the Xiang and the Li Jiang Rivers to ferry supplies to the army.

- Imperial roads

**5 THE FALL OF QIN 210–206 BCE**

In 210 BCE, Qin Shi Huang died while on a tour of eastern China. The people were told that he was making the trip to inspect the empire, but it was in fact a quest to find an elixir of immortality. Civil disorder erupted following the emperor's death and ended with the Qin Dynasty collapsing in 206 BCE.

- Qin Shi Huang's tour
- Town visited during Qin Shi Huang's tour

# CHINA'S FIRST EMPEROR

After a period in which numerous Chinese states fought for supremacy, it was the Qin state that eventually triumphed and unified China in 221 BCE. The Qin emperor, Qin Shi Huang, established a strict and highly centralized form of rule—a system that would become the model for China's future governance.

Between the 11th and 8th centuries BCE, China was made up of a mosaic of city-states loyal to the Zhou Dynasty, which employed a form of feudalism to rule the land. However, following the Warring States period (475–221 BCE), in which the Qin state triumphed over the Zhou Dynasty and six other rival states, the Qin leader, Ying Zheng, unified China under his leadership.

As the Qin's first emperor, Ying Zheng took the name Qin Shi Huang and replaced the old kinship-based government with an efficient

bureaucratic system. He proved a formidable ruler with a clear vision for the realm, establishing a ruthless penal code to enforce his despotic rule. He actively suppressed philosophies—by the burning of books—that he felt either criticized or challenged his authority. His untimely death in 210 BCE, however, preceded the swift decline and end of his dynasty in 206 BCE. Although the Qin Empire lasted only 15 years, it had set up institutions that paved the way for Liu Bang to form the more enduring Han Dynasty (see pp.82–83).

*"I am Emperor, my descendants will be numerous ... my line will not end."*

EMPEROR QIN SHI HUANG

**THE WARRING STATES PERIOD**

China was a patchwork of states, each ruled by high-ranking nobles who swore allegiance to the Zhou kings. But as the Zhou's authority waned, the stronger states saw their opportunity and fought one another to gain control of China. In what historians call the Warring States period (475–221 BCE), six major states—Chu, Han, Yan, Qi, Qin, and Zhao—fought one another for dominance over the region.

**KEY**

— State boundary

— Wall

■ Imperial state





# TERRACOTTA ARMY

In 1974, farmers digging wells in Xi'an, China, unearthed the first of four vast pits containing an army of terracotta figures. About 7,000 life-size warriors, 150 cavalry horses, 130 chariots, and 520 chariot horses were found.



## △ Warrior's face

The warriors' heads were made in molds, with features such as facial hair added by hand modeling. No two faces are the same.

The army had been buried in 210 BCE to protect Qin Shi Huang, the First Emperor of China (see pp.74–75), who lies in his tomb under a vast artificial mountain. According to Sima Qian, a historian from the early Han Dynasty (see pp.82–83), the tomb was built by 700,000 men and held a model of China, with its palaces. The tomb has still not been excavated, partly because of the archaeological challenge it presents but also because of the awe in which the First Emperor is still held by the Chinese.

## Ruling from the afterlife

The First Emperor had planned to continue ruling from his tomb for

eternity, so he was buried with everything he might need. He was accompanied by terracotta civil servants and entertainers—acrobats, wrestlers, and musicians. The army was there to protect him in the afterlife from the vengeful ghosts of all the men he had killed while on Earth. Nearby pits held suits of armor made of stone plates, as well as 40,000 bronze weapons whose blades remained razor sharp. They had been plated with chromium oxide to protect them from corrosion, a technique only reinvented in the 20th century.

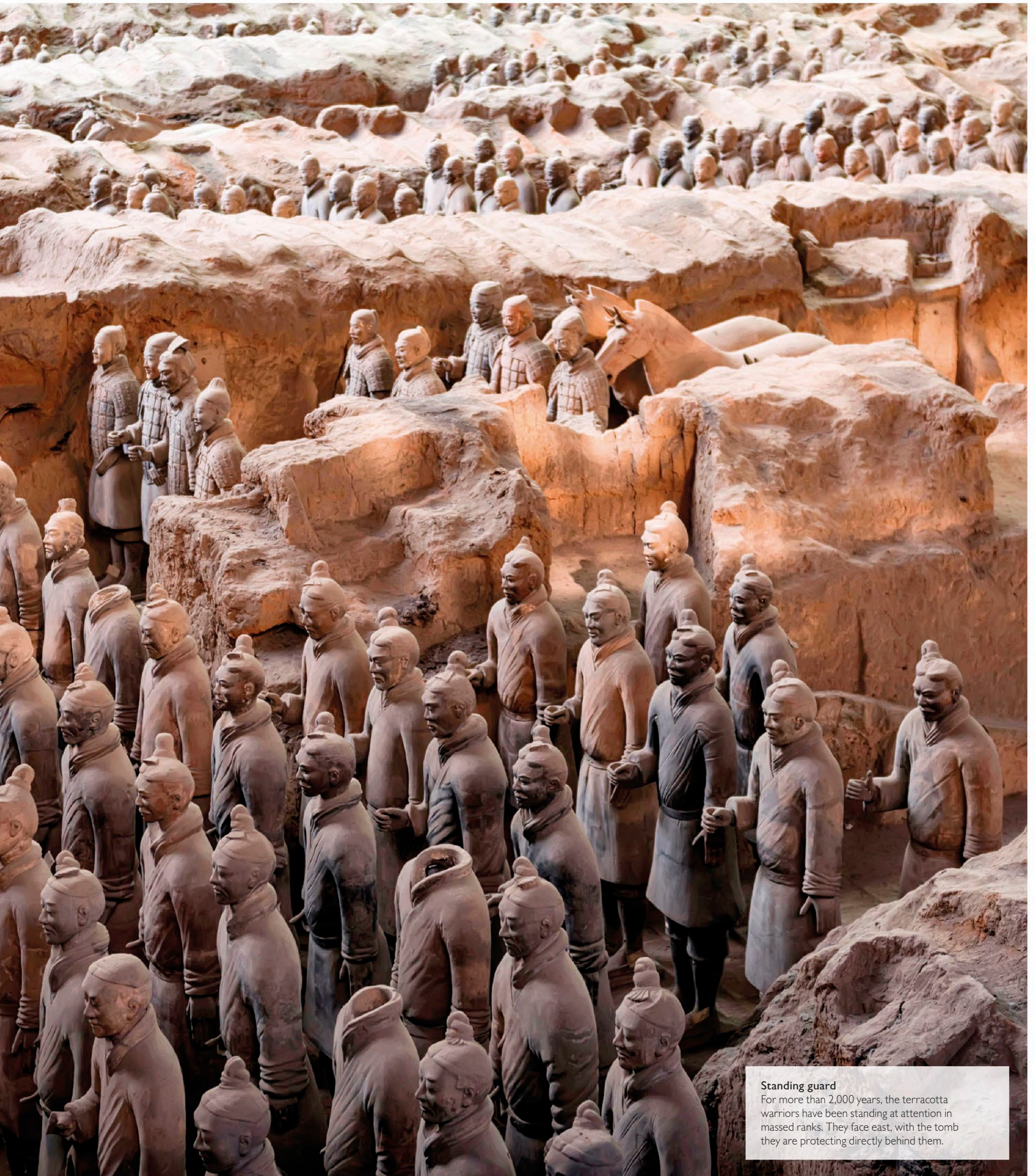
Before the First Emperor, there had been no tradition of life-size, realistic statues in China. A theory suggests a Greek inspiration, but the style of the terracotta army remained distinctively Chinese.

## ▽ Eternal transportation

This half life-size scale model of a chariot pulled by horses is made of bronze. It provided the emperor transportation for tours of his kingdom in the afterlife.

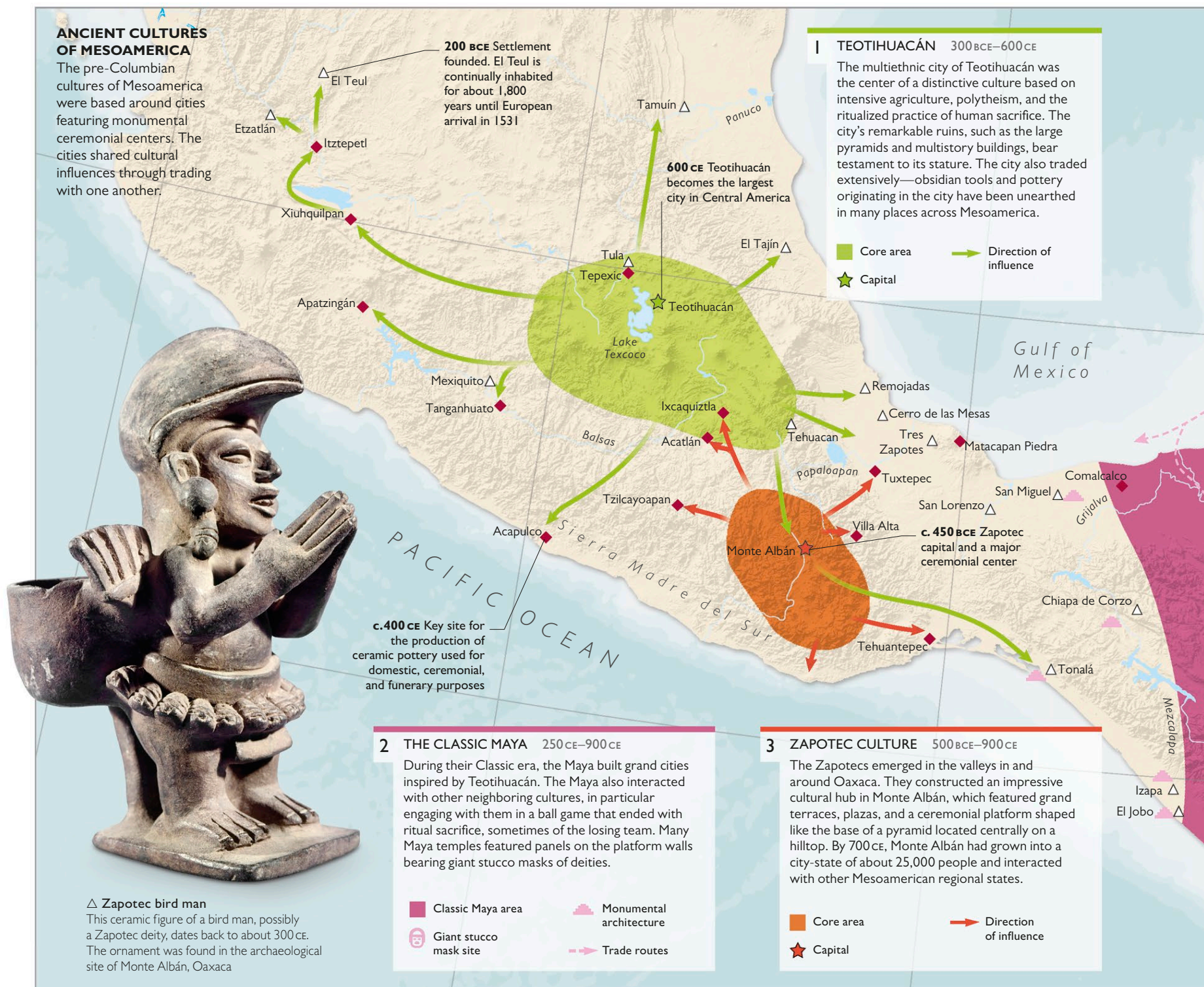




**Standing guard**

For more than 2,000 years, the terracotta warriors have been standing at attention in massed ranks. They face east, with the tomb they are protecting directly behind them.





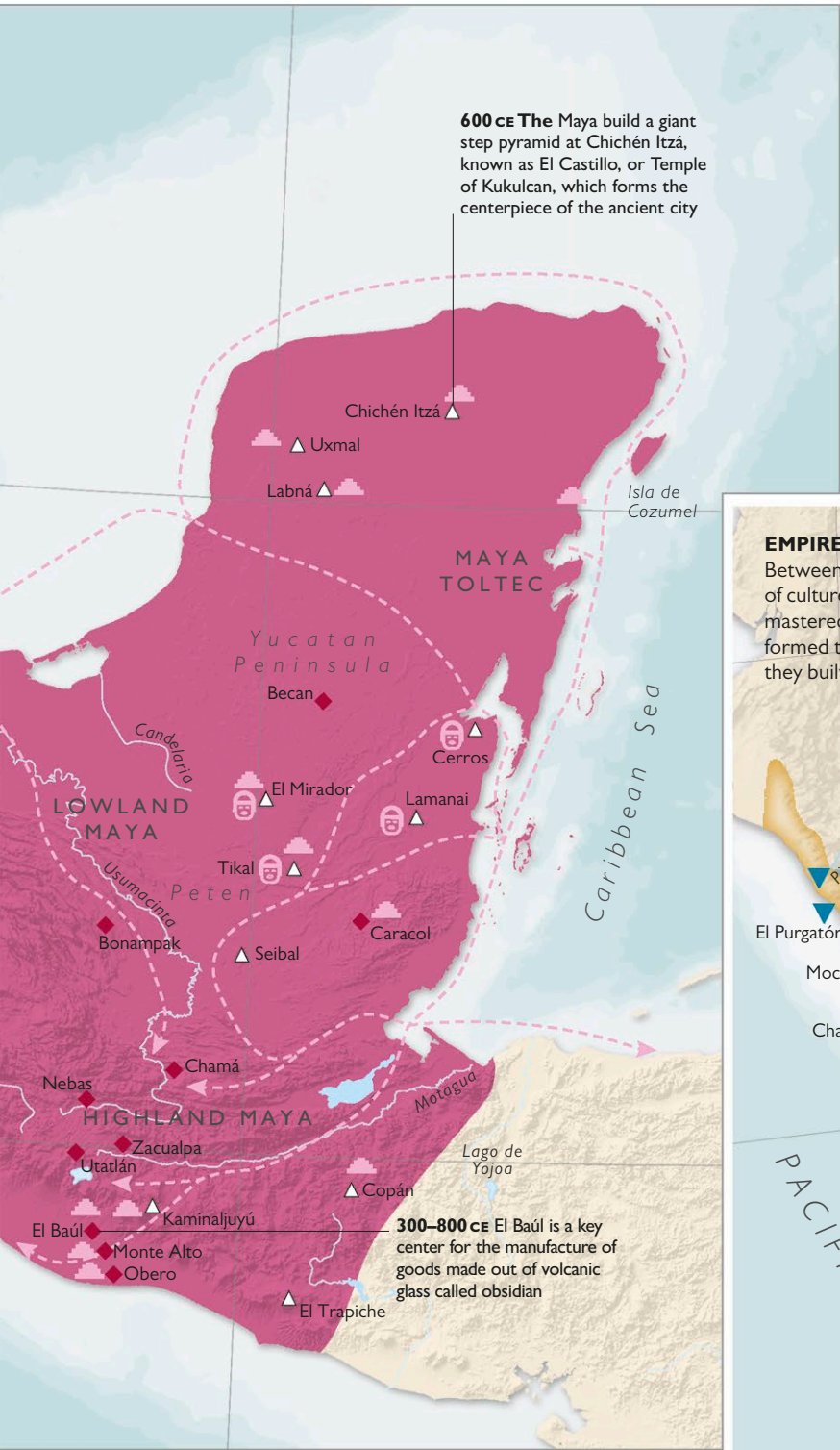
# ANCIENT AMERICAN CIVILIZATIONS

In the period 250–900 CE, increased agricultural productivity in Mesoamerica, led to the rise of the great cities of Teotihuacán and Monte Albán. The cities influenced the Maya city-states to the east, ushering in a time of prosperity known as the Classic Maya period. Meanwhile, the mastery of irrigation techniques allowed a succession of empires to rule the Andean region of South America.

Teotihuacán and Monte Albán (the Zapotec capital) were Mesoamerica's two most powerful trading centers in the early Classic era. Teotihuacán traded with the first Classic Maya cities to form in the highlands, and its influence reached other similar independent Maya states that were emerging in the Yucatan Peninsula at this time. The Maya culture would reach its high point during the Classic period, evident in the architecture, the widespread use of written inscriptions, and the complex Maya calendar.

All three cultures based their cities around ceremonial zones, often with pyramidal temples that served as sites of rituals, including human sacrifice. They also built recreational ball courts and sculpted stelae to glorify their rulers.





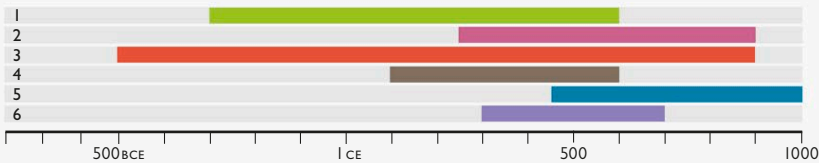
In northern Peru, the agriculture-based Moche civilization emerged from about 100 CE. Most probably, the Moche started as a group of autonomous states that came together through sharing a common culture. However, around 600 CE, the Moche civilization collapsed—possibly as a result of climate change—and was superseded by the Tiahuanaco and Huari cultures. These latter civilizations expanded more widely along the northern coast of the Andes. Among the most impressive achievements of the Huari Empire was its construction of a network of roads linking the provincial cities to the capital Huari. The Huari drew inspiration from Tiahuanaco-Huari mythology to develop a new art style, which influenced the regional architecture and pottery.

PRE-COLUMBIAN AMERICA

The ancient cultures of Central America were made up of large city-states, which traded with one another. The civilizations on the Andean coast of South America, meanwhile, built large empires through conquests.

- KEY**
- Irrigated river valley
  - Major settlements
  - Other archaeological sites

TIMELINE

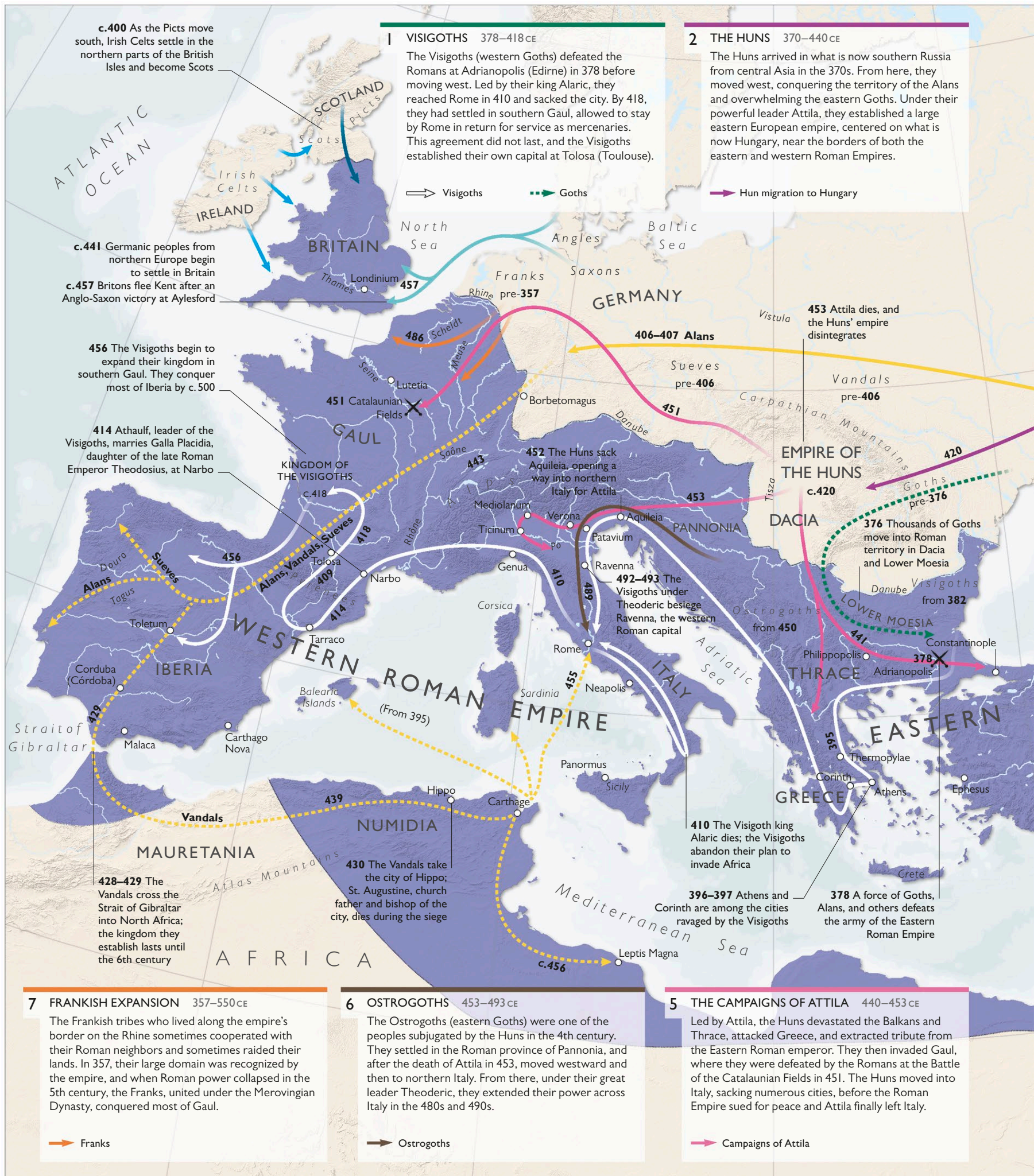


EMPIRES OF THE ANDEAN COAST

Between 100 and 1000 CE, a succession of cultures—starting with the Moche—mastered irrigation techniques, which formed the foundation of the empires they built along the Andean coast.









## 3 THE GREAT MIGRATION 406 CE

In the winter of 406, a vast group of nomadic peoples—Alans, Vandals, and Sueves—migrated westward and crossed the Rhine into Roman territory. From here, they moved through Gaul and into the Iberian Peninsula, where the Alans and Sueves settled. The Vandals moved on farther, crossing the Strait of Gibraltar into North Africa in 429.

Alans, Vandals, and Sueves Alans

c.370 The Huns make their first appearance in the west, having arrived from central Asia

370 After reaching the Volga across the steppes, the Huns start their rapid movement westward

## ▷ Visigothic brooch

This bronze and garnet brooch, found in southwest Spain, dates from the 6th century. The eagle shape was adapted by the Visigoths from the Roman imperial insignia.



## 4 MIGRATIONS TO BRITAIN c.400–460 CE

By the early 5th century, Rome had withdrawn its troops from Britain in order to fight invaders elsewhere. In 410, Emperor Honorius instructed the cities of Britain to “look to your own defenses,” marking the end of Roman rule in the province. Abandoned by Rome, Britain was invaded and settled by Picts, Irish Celts, and Angles and Saxons from northern Europe.

Irish Picts Angles and Saxons

## MIGRATIONS OF PEOPLES 300–500 CE

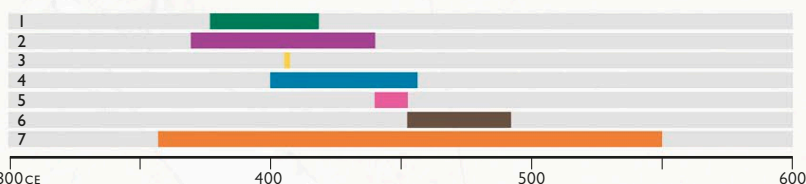
The 4th and 5th centuries saw long-distance population movements across western Asia and Europe. These changes weakened the power of the Roman Empire, destroyed major cities such as Rome, and paved the way for the western empire's disintegration at the end of the 5th century.

## KEY

Extent of Roman Empire c.390

Major battle

## TIMELINE



## AGE OF MIGRATIONS

The decline of the Roman Empire was accelerated in the 4th and 5th centuries by invasions of nomadic peoples from the east. This caused a cascade of movement, with new peoples settling in Europe and North Africa and changing the balance of power.

From the late 4th century onward, a series of peoples moved into lands previously governed by the Romans. Many of these newcomers, such as the Alans and the Huns, originated in central Asia, but others, such as the Franks, were people from near the empire's borders. The invaders came for different reasons. The nomadic Huns came to plunder, moving quickly across the landscape and taking whatever they could. Others, facing problems such as famine or displacement due to invasion at home, were desperate to find somewhere new to settle. For example, the Visigoths (western Goths), who had previously been settled in the Danubian Plain near the Black Sea, made agreements with Rome, gaining land in return for supplying mercenaries to the empire's armies.

By the time the invasions began, Roman power was already in decline. There were many reasons for this—famine, unemployment, inflation, and corruption all played their part. So did the empire's size, which made it hard to govern and led to its division into eastern and western halves in 285 CE. The invasions weakened it further, and the leaders of the mercenary forces were well placed to take over parts of the empire in the 5th century after Rome itself fell.

*“Attila was a man born into the world to shake the nations, the scourge of all lands.”*

JORDANES, GOTHIC HISTORIAN, c. 551

## THE DIVIDED EMPIRE

## EASTERN AND WESTERN REALMS

Troubled by enemies to the north and east, and riven by internal strife, Diocletian decided that the empire was too large to rule as one realm. He split it in two in 285, ruling the eastern part himself, with the west governed by Maximian. There were subsequent periods of unification, but the east–west administration system survived for centuries, until the western empire was dissolved in 480.

3rd-century bust of Emperor Diocletian





# HAN DYNASTY

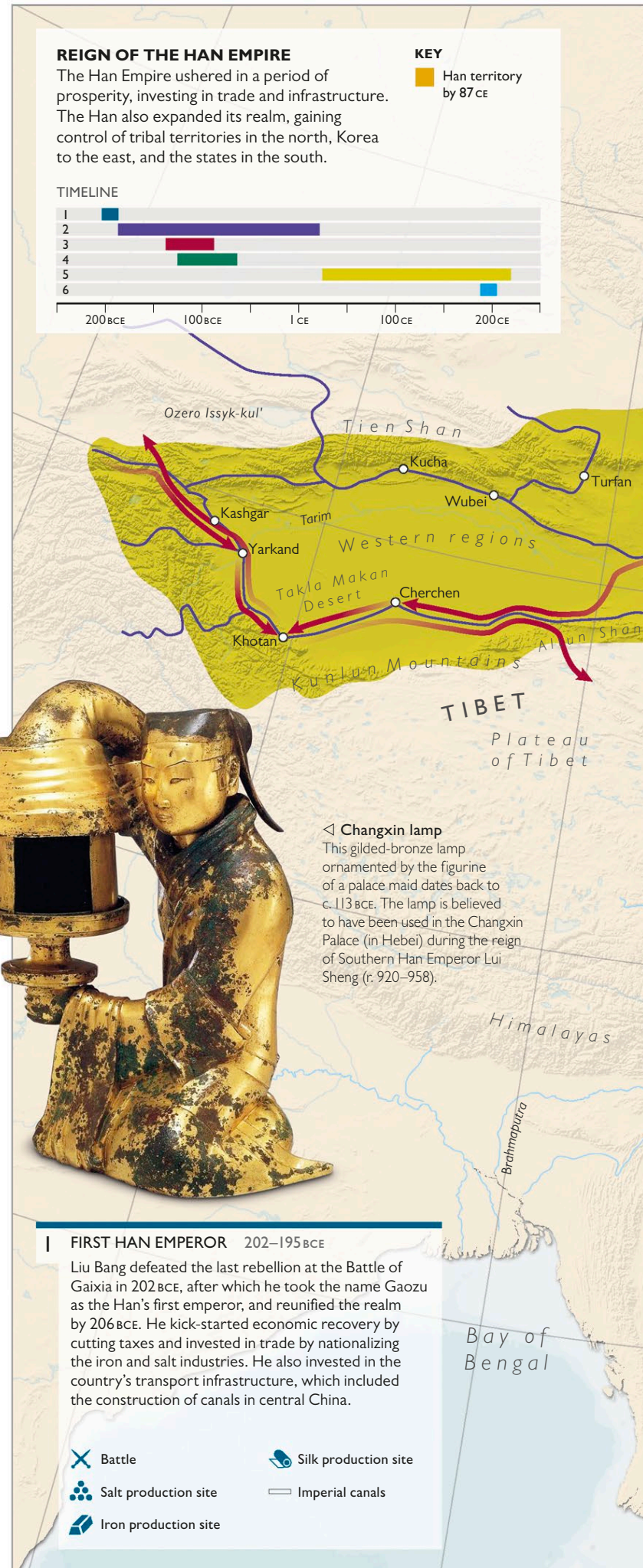
Rebel leader Liu Bang reunified China in 206 BCE and founded the Han Empire. He instated a highly effective centralized government based on the system introduced by Qin Shi Huang's former Qin Empire. At the height of the Han's 400-year rule, China was the dominant cultural, political, and economic force in Asia.

The Han era (206 BCE–220 CE) is considered a golden age in Chinese history, during which the realm flourished in the areas of commerce, technology, arts, and politics. Through its conquests, the dynasty also brought a huge swathe of central Asia under its rule, creating an empire that at its height was comparable in size and wealth to its Roman counterpart. To consolidate its power, the Han fortified the Great Wall and set up military garrisons to protect its outposts. These measures allowed the empire to open the Silk Road—a major trade artery—in 130 BCE (see pp.102–103) and establish

lucrative commercial links with the wider world, exporting luxury goods such as silk and lacquerwork. Under the Han, technology advanced, the coinage was standardized, Chinese calligraphy evolved into an art, and technological innovations culminated in the invention of cast iron tools, silk-weaving looms, and paper. However, despite the Han's military achievements, the steppe peoples, in particular the Xiongnu, remained a constant threat. In tandem with peasant rebellions in the 2nd century, they played a pivotal role in eroding the empire's authority and bringing about its eventual downfall.

*"Where will I find brave men to guard the four corners of my land?"*

EMPEROR GAOZU, FROM SONG OF THE GREAT WIND, 195 BCE





6 THE YELLOW TURBAN REBELLION 184–205 CE

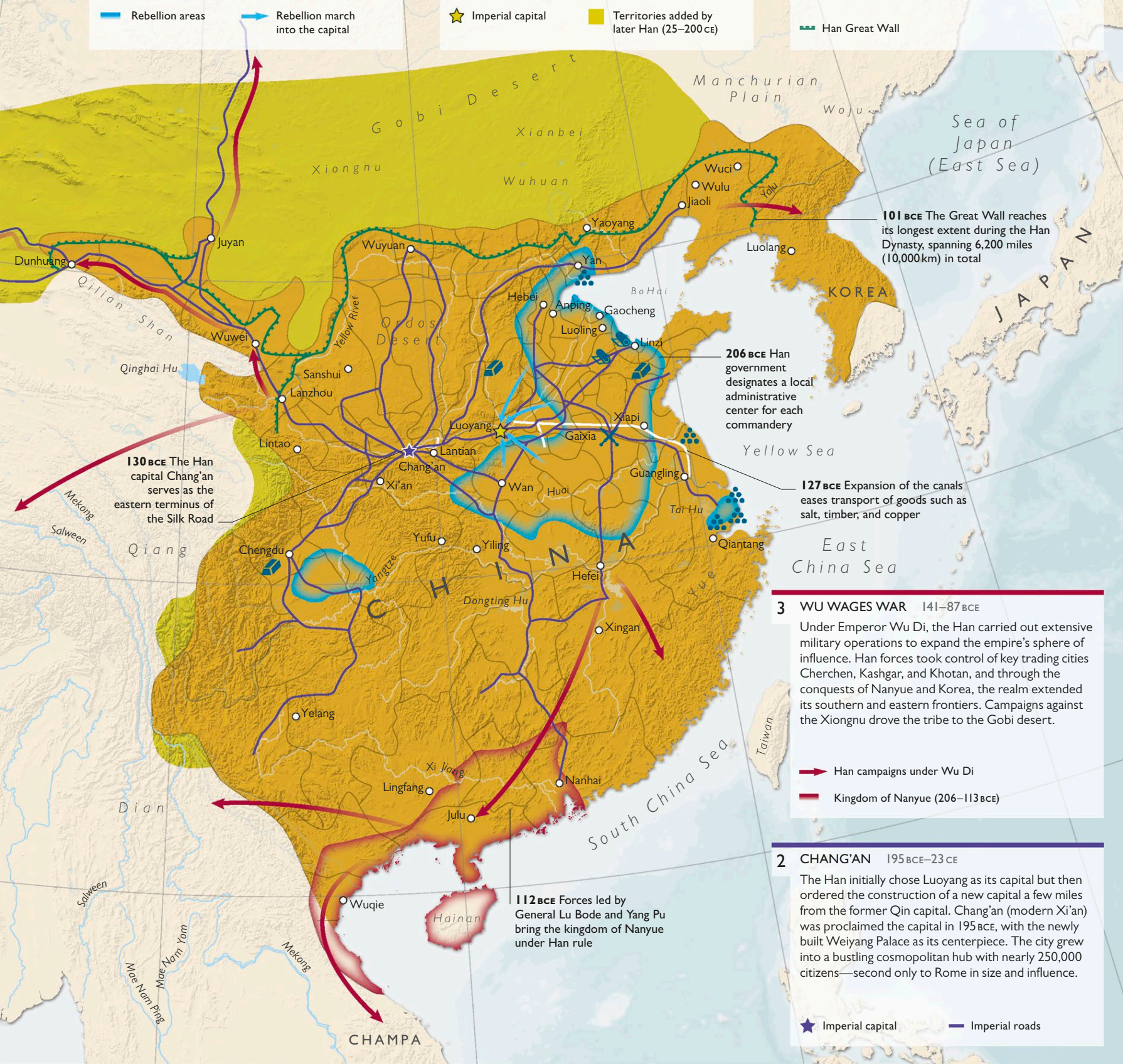
The Han resumed its military activity against the northern tribes. The cost of war in tandem with a drought in 184 CE inflicted poverty and famine upon the realm. Large-scale peasant revolts ensued throughout eastern and central China and led to the rise of the Yellow Turbans—a rebel movement founded on a Taoist sect. The rebellion lasted 20 years and eroded Han authority.

5 THE LATER HAN 25–220 CE

In 9 CE, former palace official Wang Mang usurped the throne and proclaimed the Xin Dynasty. Wang Mang's reign proved unpopular and prompted peasant rebels to besiege the capital in 23 CE. Thereafter, power returned to the Han lineage, and Luoyang was named the new imperial capital. By forming alliances with the various northern tribes, the later Han gained control of territories to the north and west.

4 EXTENDING THE GREAT WALL 133–57 BCE

Despite the Han's military successes, tribes such as the Xiongnu, Xianbei, and Wuhuan remained a constant threat, which prompted the government to extend the Great Wall right across China's northern border. The extension not only provided a defense against northern tribes but also allowed the Han to open a safe passage westward and establish profitable trade links with the outside world, giving rise to the famous Silk Road (see pp. 102–103).





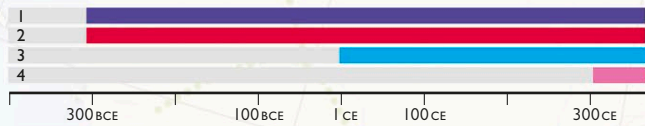
### THE SPREAD OF BUDDHISM TO 400 CE

The earliest strands of Buddhism spread from what is now the border of India and Nepal. The later Mahayana school spread from Kashmir via trade routes into reach China, Korea, and eventually Japan.

#### KEY

- Buddhist heartland
- Spread of Buddhism
- ⦿ Major Buddhist center/monastery
- Spread of Mahayana Buddhism
- ⚓ Buddhist rock-carved temple
- ⋯ Trade routes

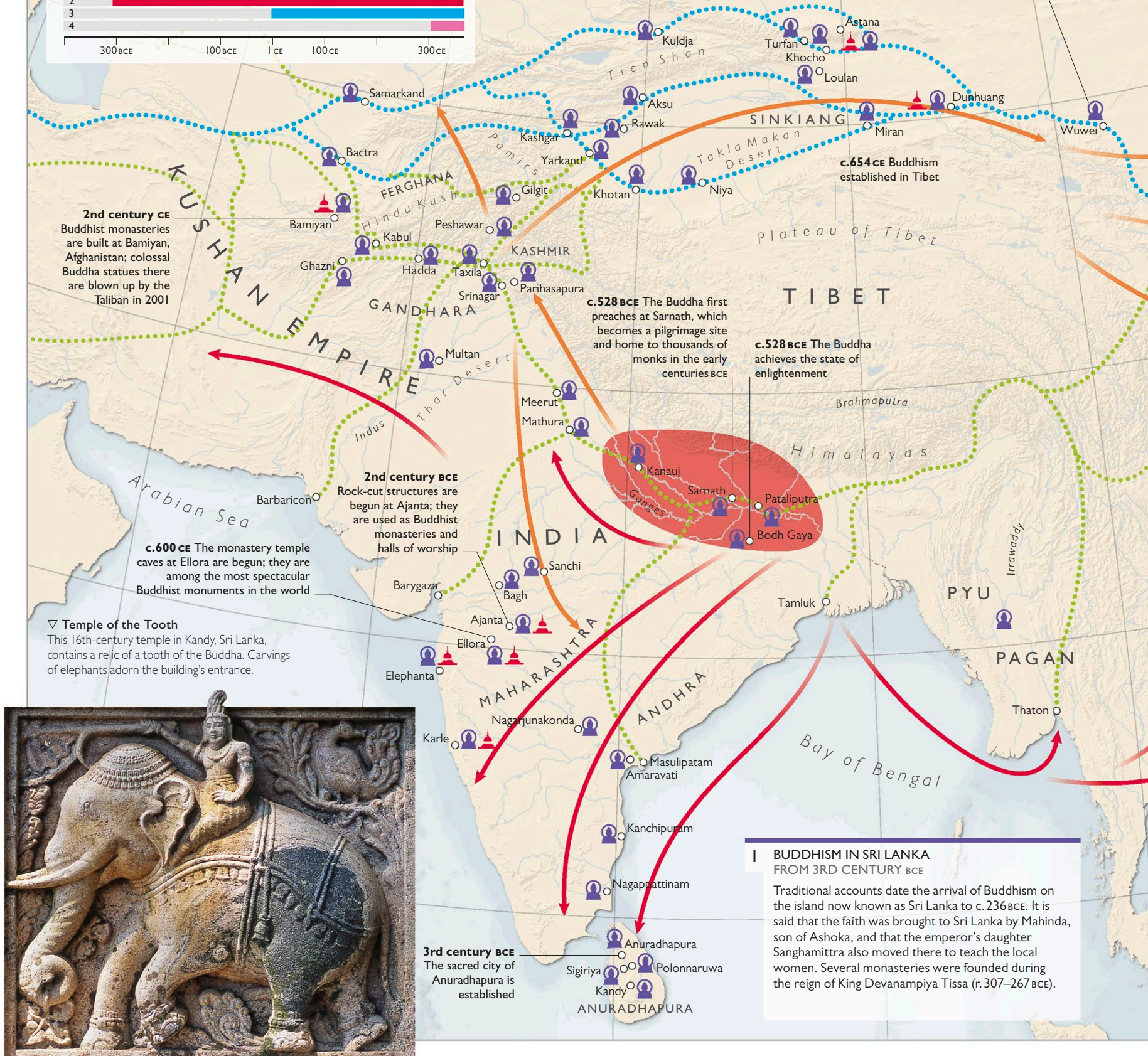
#### TIMELINE



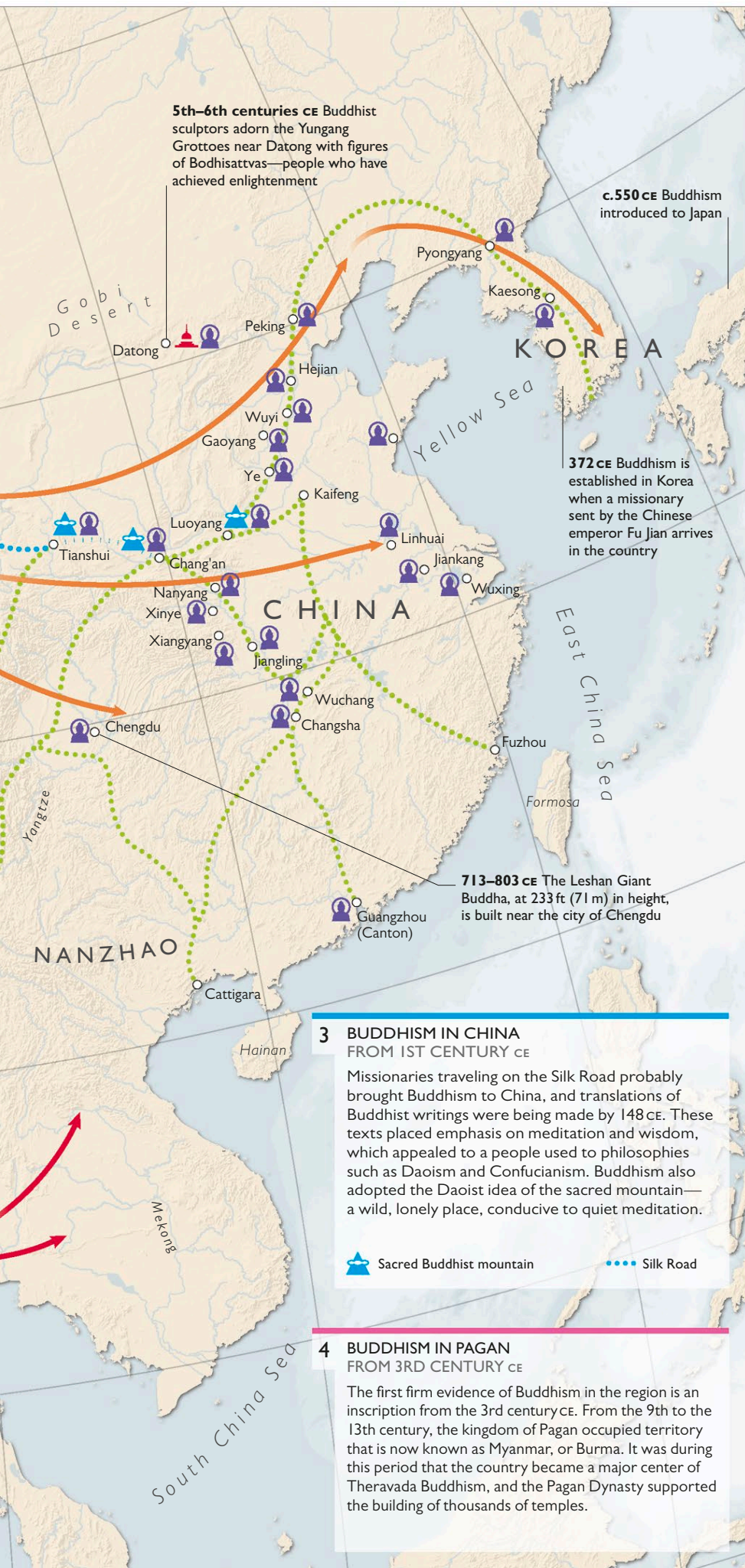
### 2 BUDDHISM IN KASHMIR FROM 3RD CENTURY BCE

Buddhism had arrived in Kashmir by the time of India's Mauryan Empire in 321 BCE (see pp.72–73). Kashmir became a center for the faith under Mauryan emperor Ashoka (r.268–232 BCE). The area was well connected with the rest of the empire, and from there Buddhism spread outward, finding routes to central Asia, Tibet, and China.

**1st century CE** The trading settlement of Wuwei on the Silk Road is a stopping point for Buddhist monks on the way into China; many temples and grottoes are built here





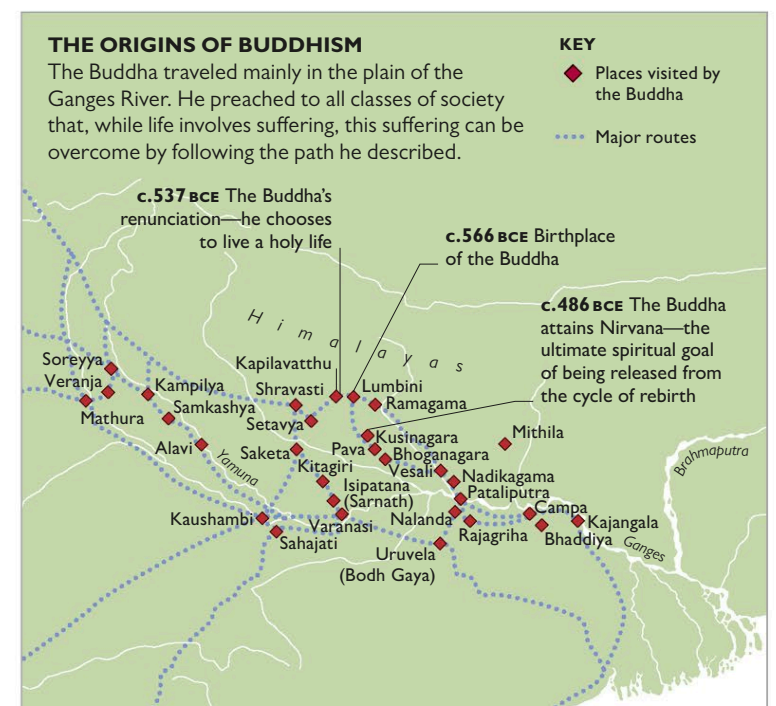


# THE SPREAD OF BUDDHISM

From its origins in northern India and Nepal, Buddhism spread through Asia from the 5th century BCE to the 3rd century CE. It won the support of powerful figures, such as the Mauryan emperor Ashoka, which ensured that it took root across the continent.

Buddhism is based on the teachings of Siddhartha Gautama, known as the Buddha (the enlightened one). The Buddha is said to have been born in Lumbini, but his life dates are widely disputed (he may have died in 420–380 BCE). He did not write his teachings down, so initially his ideas were spread by word of mouth, and there were disagreements between his disciples over the exact meaning of his teachings. This led to a number of different early “schools” of Buddhism that spread around India, and across the sea to Sri Lanka and Myanmar, in the centuries after the Buddha died.

One of the earliest schools, which still survives today, is Theravada Buddhism, which emphasizes the individual route to enlightenment. It developed in Sri Lanka, where its sacred writings, the Pali Canon, were compiled in the 1st century BCE. From here, Theravada spread to what is now Myanmar, Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand. The other major branch of Buddhism, Mahayana Buddhism, stressed the importance of helping others to reach enlightenment. It became especially strong in Kashmir and spread across India in the 3rd century BCE. By the 1st century CE, the faith had been adopted by the Kushan emperor Kanishka in central Asia and was being carried along the Silk Road to China.





# THE RISE OF CHRISTIANITY

Christianity spread across the Roman Empire and some neighboring areas in the first centuries CE. Its adherents were persecuted until the early 4th century, when the religion gained official recognition, having gradually found more favor among the elite.

Most notable among the missionaries who spread the Christian message in the 1st century CE were Peter, who according to tradition founded the church at Rome, and Paul, a Jewish convert who made a series of missionary journeys in Asia Minor, Greece, the Aegean, and Italy. They initially addressed Jewish communities but soon won a wider audience. Christian ideas appealed to the poor, but also shared concerns with classical philosophy. Some pagan scholars attacked it, but others recognized its moral value, and by the 2nd century CE, Christian writers were offering a robust intellectual defense.

The excellent communications and administrative framework of the empire gave the Christian faith arteries along which it spread and a template for church organization. By the end of the 1st century, there were churches all over the eastern Mediterranean and in Rome, and the following century saw churches founded across the whole Mediterranean and beyond. Some emperors saw Christianity as a threat and persecuted believers, but Constantine gave the religion official approval in 313 CE, rooting it strongly in the empire.

*"We multiply whenever we are mown down by you; the blood of Christians is seed."*

TERTULLIAN (THEOLOGIAN) FROM *APOLOGETICUS*, 197 CE

## THE EARLY CHURCH IN ROME

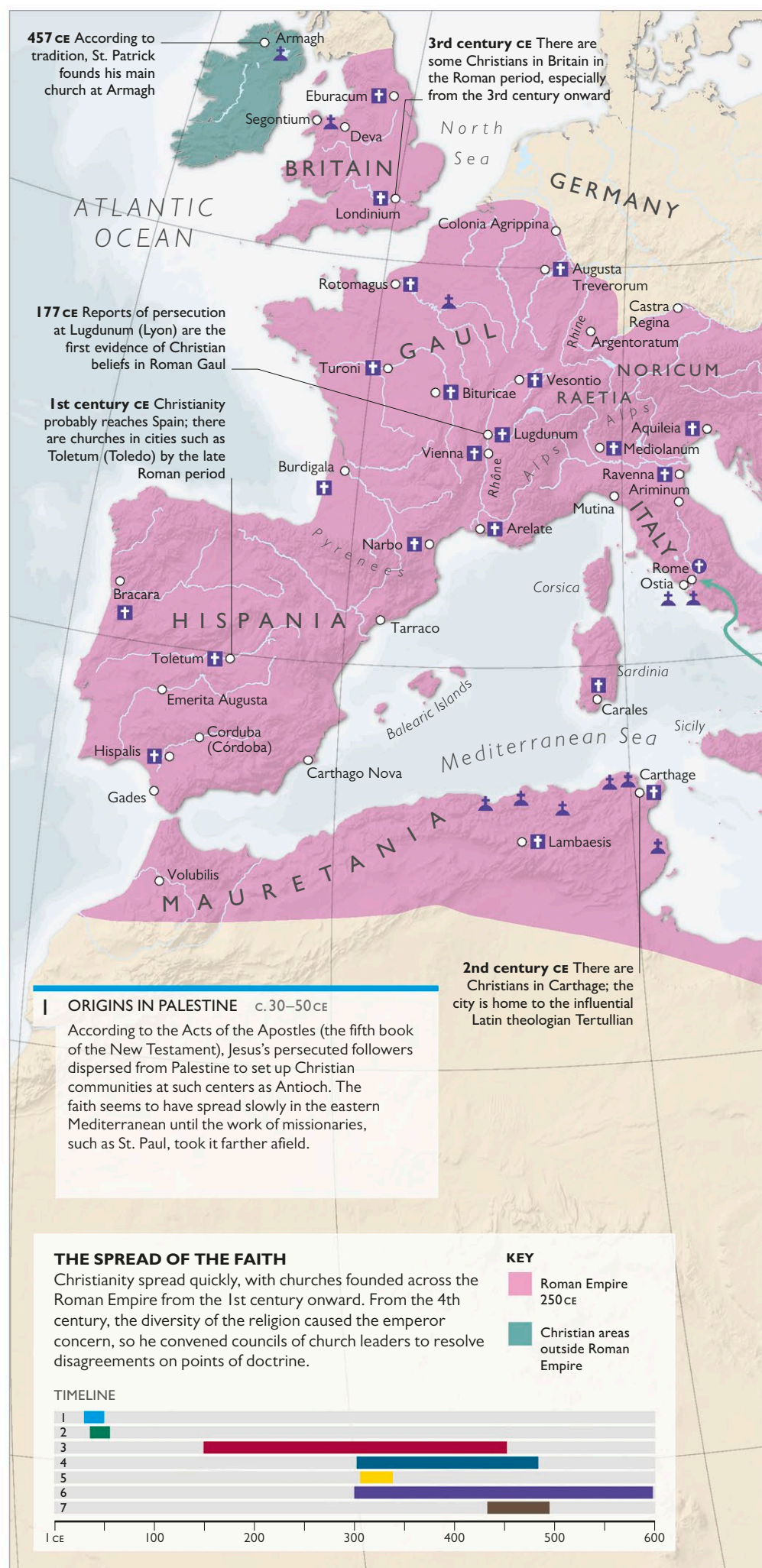
### WORSHIP IN THE SEAT OF EMPIRE

The Saints Paul and Peter probably arrived in Rome around 50 CE and were martyred, most likely under the emperor Nero, in c. 64 CE. There were bishops in Rome by the late 1st century but, at that time, a church was often a room in a private home, since Christians were widely persecuted. By the early 4th century, their faith was more widely accepted, and more churches were built.



Catacombs of Rome

Christians favored burial over cremation. They decorated the city catacombs where they placed their dead with frescoes.





**7 IRELAND 430–492 CE**

St. Patrick, a Romano-British missionary, is said to have been the first person to bring Christianity to Ireland, probably in the early 5th century; according to tradition, he became the first bishop of Armagh. There were certainly Christians in Ireland by 430 CE, because in this year the pope in Rome sent Paulinus to preach to the people there “believing in Christ.”

**6 CHURCH ORGANIZATION c. 300–600 CE**

The early church was organized in a similar way to the Roman Empire, with its leaders based in main cities. Patriarchs were the most senior bishops, followed by archbishops. Five patriarchs claimed primacy, but it was the bishopric of Rome that gradually established authority over the churches in the western empire, although it never gained authority in the east.

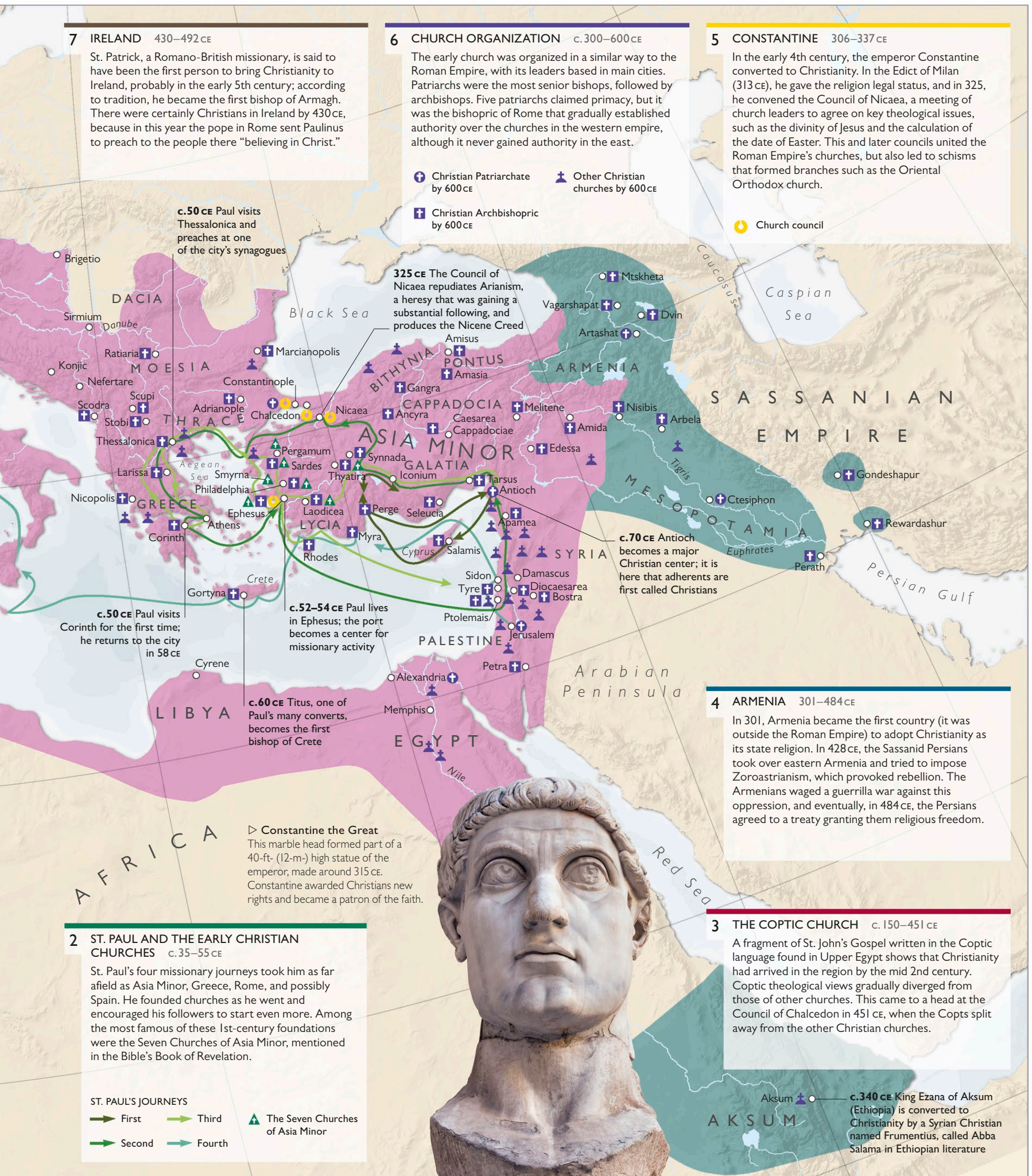
- ✚ Christian Patriarchate by 600 CE
- ✚ Christian Archbishopric by 600 CE

- ✚ Other Christian churches by 600 CE

**5 CONSTANTINE 306–337 CE**

In the early 4th century, the emperor Constantine converted to Christianity. In the Edict of Milan (313 CE), he gave the religion legal status, and in 325, he convened the Council of Nicaea, a meeting of church leaders to agree on key theological issues, such as the divinity of Jesus and the calculation of the date of Easter. This and later councils united the Roman Empire's churches, but also led to schisms that formed branches such as the Oriental Orthodox church.

- ☉ Church council



**325 CE** The Council of Nicaea repudiates Arianism, a heresy that was gaining a substantial following, and produces the Nicene Creed

**c. 70 CE** Antioch becomes a major Christian center; it is here that adherents are first called Christians

**4 ARMENIA 301–484 CE**

In 301, Armenia became the first country (it was outside the Roman Empire) to adopt Christianity as its state religion. In 428 CE, the Sassanid Persians took over eastern Armenia and tried to impose Zoroastrianism, which provoked rebellion. The Armenians waged a guerrilla war against this oppression, and eventually, in 484 CE, the Persians agreed to a treaty granting them religious freedom.

**3 THE COPTIC CHURCH c. 150–451 CE**

A fragment of St. John's Gospel written in the Coptic language found in Upper Egypt shows that Christianity had arrived in the region by the mid 2nd century. Coptic theological views gradually diverged from those of other churches. This came to a head at the Council of Chalcedon in 451 CE, when the Copts split away from the other Christian churches.

**2 ST. PAUL AND THE EARLY CHRISTIAN CHURCHES c. 35–55 CE**

St. Paul's four missionary journeys took him as far afield as Asia Minor, Greece, Rome, and possibly Spain. He founded churches as he went and encouraged his followers to start even more. Among the most famous of these 1st-century foundations were the Seven Churches of Asia Minor, mentioned in the Bible's Book of Revelation.

**ST. PAUL'S JOURNEYS**

- ➡ First
- ➡ Second
- ➡ Third
- ➡ Fourth

- ✚ The Seven Churches of Asia Minor

▷ **Constantine the Great**  
This marble head formed part of a 40-ft- (12-m-) high statue of the emperor, made around 315 CE. Constantine awarded Christians new rights and became a patron of the faith.

**c. 340 CE** King Ezana of Aksum (Ethiopia) is converted to Christianity by a Syrian Christian named Frumentius, called Abba Salama in Ethiopian literature









# MIDDLE AGES

IN MEDIEVAL TIMES, 500–1450 CE, THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH KEPT THE STATUS QUO IN EUROPE, WHILE PARTS OF ASIA AND THE AMERICAS REACHED NEW CULTURAL AND TECHNOLOGICAL HEIGHTS.





#### △ Golden mask

This “Mask of the Winged Eyes” from the Sicán culture, at its height in coastal northern Peru around 900–1100, demonstrates pre-Inca mastery of gold working.

# THE MIDDLE AGES

The Roman Empire’s collapse by the 5th century was followed by a millennium in which Europe became an economic and political backwater, eclipsed by a technologically advanced China and by a powerful Islamic empire.

By the 6th century, large empires that had dominated the classical world fell to attacks by neighboring peoples. In western Europe, the invaders had begun to build their own states, which retained elements of Roman law and administration but with the infusion of a Christian culture. A form of government known as vassalage developed, in which nobles held lands from their sovereigns in exchange for military service, while the lower orders held theirs in return for their labor, a system known as feudalism. None of the Germanic successors to Rome succeeded in uniting its former territories. The empire of the Carolingian ruler Charlemagne (r. 768–814) came closest, but it fell apart after his death. Islamic armies from North Africa overwhelmed Visigothic Spain in 711.

In Central America, the Maya city-states had collapsed by 900. In the same region, the Aztec Empire emerged in the 14th century, paralleled in South America with the rapid growth of the Inca state in the mid-15th century. In India, Hun invaders had destroyed the Gupta Empire by 606. Stability was only partially restored in the early 13th century by a sultanate based in Delhi.

#### Islam and the Crusades

Islam first appeared in Arabia in the early 7th century and spread rapidly, creating a vast empire that extended from Spain to

central Asia. Its rulers—the Umayyad and, later, the Abbasid caliphs—presided over a prosperous and culturally vibrant realm, but the difficulties of ruling such a vast area proved impossible to overcome. By the 10th century, it had begun to break apart into competing emirates and rival caliphates. Into this fragmented sphere arrived the first European military expedition outside the continent for centuries.



#### △ Moorish marvel

The ornate Court of the Lions, built c. 1370 by the Nasrid Sultan Muhammad V at the Alhambra palace in Granada, is typical of the sophistication of late Islamic Spain.

#### Europe in the Middle Ages

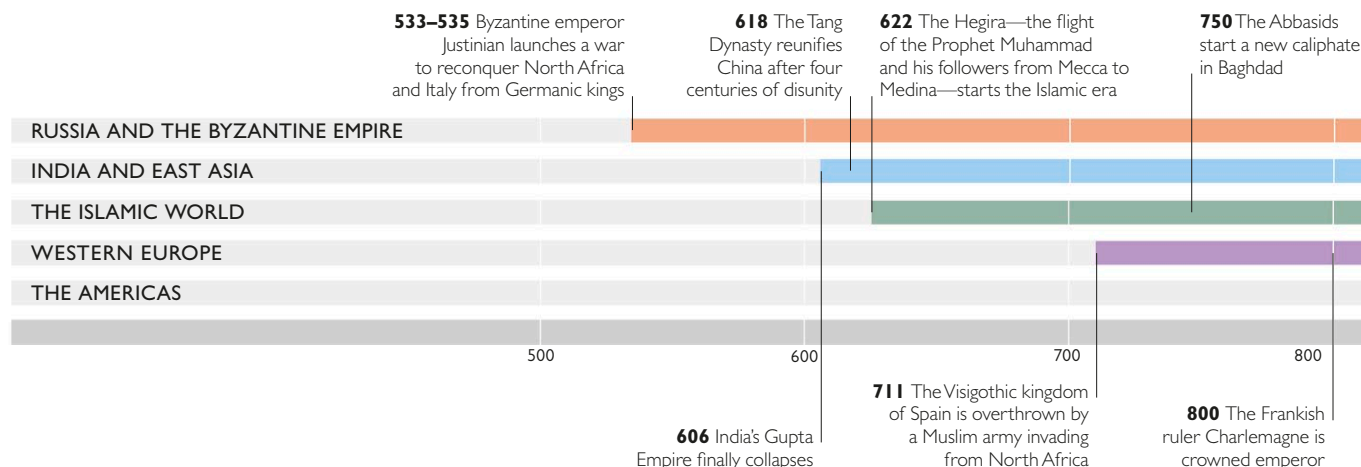
The Crusades were campaigns to gain control of the holy city of Jerusalem from the Muslims. The Crusaders succeeded in establishing Christian-controlled states in Palestine between 1096 and 1291, but fell to a series of resurgent Islamic powers, including the Mamluks in Egypt and the Seljuk Turks.

The Papacy, which had inspired the crusaders, remained a potent political as well as spiritual force in Europe, and engaged in a long struggle for recognition of its primacy over secular rulers. This led it into a conflict with the Holy Roman Emperors—the German-based rivals to their claim (see pp. 116–119).

Europe had been buffeted by further invasions: by the Vikings, who preyed on northwestern Europe’s coastlines for two centuries from around 800; by the

#### TURBULENT TIMES

The early Middle Ages—from the 6th to the 10th centuries—was a time of turbulence, as the collapse of the major civilizations of the classical world was followed by the emergence of new powers, such as the Franks in western Europe, the Islamic empire in the Middle East, and the Tang Dynasty in China. The 13th and 14th centuries saw renewed instability, as the Mongols created a vast Eurasian empire and a plague pandemic killed an estimated 25 million people in Europe.







#### ◁ The dance of death

The 15th-century frieze *Danse Macabre* by German artist Bernt Notke shows the heightened European preoccupation with mortality at the time of the Black Death, when death seemed to strike the rich and poor indiscriminately.

Magyars, who established themselves on the Hungarian plain around 900; and by the Mongols, able horseback archers, who descended on eastern Europe in the 1240s.

### Rise of the Mongols

The Mongols also conquered China, which had been united by the Sui Dynasty in 589 and then prospered under the Tang Dynasty from 618 and the Song Dynasty from 960.

At the eastern end of the Silk Road, which transmitted wealth and new ideas between east Asia and the Middle East, China pioneered the use of gunpowder, printing, and the marine compass but never succeeded in taming the Mongols, who also attacked Southeast Asia, destroying the kingdom of Pagan in modern Myanmar and threatening the Cambodian state of Angkor. Their armies tried to invade Japan, too, but were twice driven back by storms. Japan continued to be ruled by the shoguns—dynasties of military strongmen backed by clans of samurai warriors whose military ethos dominated the state.

### European revival

Despite a global pandemic of plague and Mongol intrusion on its eastern fringe, Europe survived and prospered. The plague, or Black Death, killed more than one-third of the continent's population. However, it also improved the lot of the peasantry, whose labor was now a scarcer commodity, thus undermining the roots of feudalism.

New ideas now began to emerge in Europe. In Italy, a revived interest in classical art and ideas gave birth to the rich cultural movement of the Renaissance (see pp.160–161).

Italian merchants pioneered methods of banking, and the maritime empires of Venice and Genoa spread across the eastern Mediterranean. By 1450, Europe's ambitions and horizons were beginning to expand again.

#### ▽ Mongols defeated

This 19th-century engraving by Japanese artist Kuniyoshi Utagawa shows the Japanese monk Nichiren summoning storms that destroyed Mongol fleets in 1274 and 1281.



*"And believing it to be the end of the world, no one wept for the dead, for all expected to die."*

CHRONICLER AGNOLO DI TURA ON THE BLACK DEATH IN ITALY, 1348

**862** The people of Novgorod invite the Swedish Viking Rurik to rule them

**988** Prince Vladimir of Kiev converts to Christianity

**1099** Armies of the First Crusade capture Jerusalem

**1204** Constantinople is captured by the Fourth Crusade

**1258** Mongol armies sack Baghdad

**1279** Kublai Khan completes the Mongol conquest of China

**1348** The Black Death devastates most of Europe

**1453** Constantinople is taken by the Ottoman Turkish Sultan Mehmed II

**869** Last dated inscription made at the Maya city-state of Tikal, which disappears shortly thereafter

**1000** City of Tiwanaku, which ruled over a large empire in South America, is abandoned

**1076** Pope Gregory VII excommunicates German Emperor Henry IV as part of a power struggle known as the Investiture Controversy

**1206** The Delhi sultanate is established in India

**1337** The Hundred Years' War between England and France begins

**1429** The Aztecs establish the Triple Alliance with other states in the Valley of Mexico, which forms the basis of their empire

**1438** Pachacuti begins a series of conquests that establishes the Inca Empire



# THE BYZANTINE EMPIRE

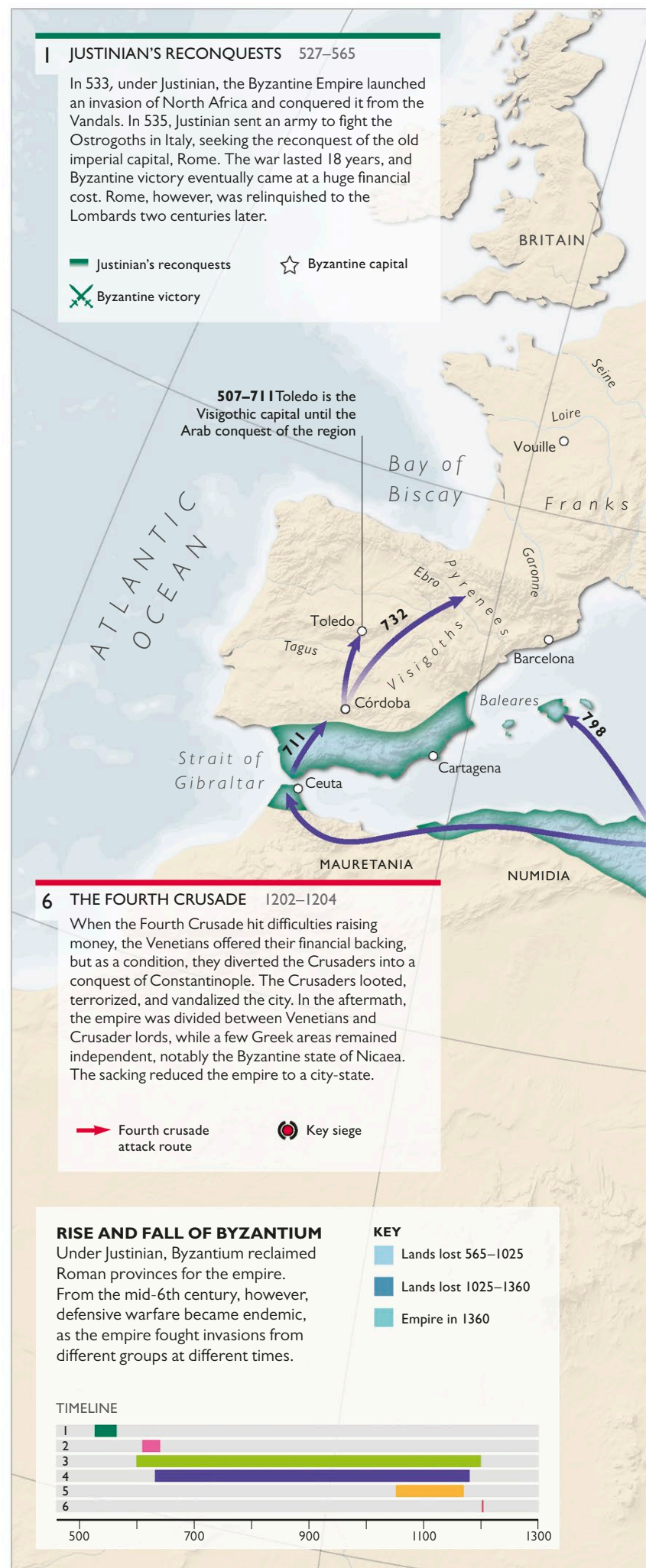
In 330, Roman Emperor Constantine moved the capital from Rome to the former Greek colony of Byzantium, which later became Constantinople. In 395, the Empire split in two, and in 476 the western half collapsed. The Eastern Roman Empire, however, endured for another 1,000 years, helped by the might of Constantinople.

After the last western Roman emperor was deposed in 476, the Eastern Roman Empire (called Byzantine by historians) continued as the sole entity of Roman sovereignty—though predominantly Greek-speaking (unlike its fallen Latin-speaking western counterpart).

By 554, Emperor Justinian I (r. 527–565) had reconquered large parts of the western Mediterranean coast, including Rome itself, which the empire held for two more centuries. To mark his achievements, Justinian ordered the construction of the church of Hagia Sophia, which would later become the center of the Eastern Orthodox Church while also inspiring a new wave of architecture, in particular across the Islamic world. However, in the 7th century, Byzantium lost North Africa and its Middle Eastern territories to the

rising power of Islam, and much of the Balkans fell to invaders led by the Slavs. Although the Byzantine Empire rallied under the Macedonian Dynasty (867–1056), regaining lost territory, its split from the Church of Rome (1054) and the resulting threat it posed to the Pope's authority led the Venetians to divert the army of the Fourth Crusade to the sacking of the Byzantine capital instead, permanently weakening the empire.

Nevertheless, throughout much of its 1,000-year existence, the Byzantine Empire buffered Europe from newly emerging forces to the east, and its thriving capital exerted great influence upon the fields of art, literature, science, and philosophy—both as an intellectual hub and as custodian of Ancient Greek texts, thereby helping to shape modern European civilization.





**2 DEFENDING AGAINST PERSIA 610–641**

Byzantine emperor Heraclius (r. 610–641) came to power in the midst of an invasion of the empire by the Sassanid Persians. The Sassanids had already seized control of Egypt and the Levant and attempted a siege of Constantinople. In 627, Heraclius launched a counterattack into the Persian capital, Ctesiphon, and surrounded the city, eventually forcing a peace deal that subdued the Sassanid threat.

→ Persian invasions  
★ Persian capital  
→ Heraclius's counterinvasion

**3 NOMADIC RAIDS 600–1200**

In the 10th century, seminomadic peoples, such as the Slavs, Avars, and Bulgars, invaded the Balkans—the region between the Greek Peloponnese and the Danube River. In 1014, Byzantine emperor Basil II (r. 976–1025) destroyed the Bulgarian Kingdom and annexed the territory—a feat for which he earned the nickname “Bulgar-Slayer.” However, revolts against Byzantine rule in 1185 led to a loss of the Balkans and undermined the Byzantine Empire.

→ Nomadic raids  
✕ Byzantine victory

**4 ISLAMIC INVASION 629–1180**

Under the leadership of the first caliphs, Arab Muslim armies invaded both Sassanid Persia and the Byzantine Empire. At the Battle of Yarmuk in 636, the Byzantine army suffered a huge loss. In the aftermath, first Syria and Palestine and then Egypt were conquered by Arab armies and fell under the influence of Islam. Under the rule of the Macedonian Dynasty (867–1056), the Byzantine Empire managed to recapture territories lost to Muslim conquests in the 7th century.

→ Muslim invasions  
✕ Byzantine defeat





# THE ASCENT OF ISLAM

Beginning with a series of revelations received by the prophet Muhammad around 610 CE, the new faith of Islam rapidly gained followers in Arabia. Within a century, armies fighting under its banner had conquered a vast swathe of territory from Persia to Spain.

Muhammad was born around 570 into an influential merchant family in Mecca. From the age of 40, he experienced a series of divine revelations, and from around 613, he began to preach that there was only one God, Allah. His condemnation of polytheism and idol worship was unpopular, and he was forced to flee to the town of Yathrib (Medina). His message of monotheism began to attract followers, and he soon built up an army that captured Mecca.

Under Muhammad's successors, known as caliphs, Muslim forces defeated the Byzantine and Persian Empires, which had been severely weakened by a war between them that lasted from 602 to 628. The Byzantine Empire lost Syria, Palestine (including the holy city of Jerusalem), and Egypt to the Muslims, but the Sassanian Persian Empire was conquered in its entirety, bringing the fledgling Islamic state new provinces from Iraq to the borders of India.

The Umayyad caliphs, a dynasty that ruled the Islamic empire from 661 from their capital at Damascus, established a complex administration that made use of the experience of Greek-speaking officials in the former Byzantine provinces. They encouraged the integration into the empire of peoples beyond Arabia; and as ever more people converted to the faith, Islamic armies pushed westward, conquering the remainder of North Africa and much of Spain by 711. Briefly, in the mid-8th century, all this territory was united under the authority of a single ruler, guided by a faith whose tenets had by now found written form in a sacred book, the Qur'an.

## THE DIVISION OF ISLAM 634–661 CE SUNNI AND SHIA



The question of who should hold political and religious authority within Islam after the death of Muhammad proved incredibly divisive. Many felt the succession should pass through the family of Ali, the son-in-law of Muhammad, and these formed the Shia (the party of Ali), while others, who rejected this view and adhered to the Umayyads in Damascus and their successors, became the Sunni. This division in Islam has persisted until the present day.

### Calligraphic succession

In this 18th-century Turkish artwork, the red writing indicates Allah; the central name in blue is Ali, first Imam of the Shia; the green writing gives the name of the prophet Muhammad.

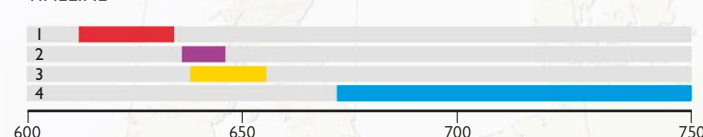
## THE GROWTH OF THE ISLAMIC WORLD 610–750

Muslim armies occupied much of the Middle East and North Africa within a decade of their emergence from Arabia, and over the next century advanced to northern Spain and the edge of central Asia. The map shows the date each city was captured or surrendered.

### KEY

- ➔ Muslim raid, with date
- ★ New city founded by Muslims
- 🏰 Muslim fortress
- 🇧🇾 Byzantine Empire c. 610
- 🇮🇷 Sassanian Empire c. 610
- 🇸🇦 Muslim lands by 632
- 🇸🇦 Muslim lands by 656
- 🇸🇦 Muslim lands by 756

### TIMELINE





## 1 MUHAMMAD, THE HEGIRA, AND THE CONQUEST OF ARABIA 610–632

Many of Muhammad's clan, the Quraysh, saw his rejection of the traditional Arab worship of many gods as a threat to their authority. In 622, he had to flee to Medina—an exodus known as the Hegira, which marks the traditional beginning of the Muslim era. A military as well as a religious leader, Muhammad made alliances and raised an army that took Mecca in 630. By the time of his death in 632 CE, he had conquered most of Arabia.

✕ Battle or capture



751 The Abbasid Caliphate (succeeding the Umayyads) defeats the Tang Chinese at the Talas River, consolidating their hold on Transoxiana for the next 400 years

642 Yazdegerd III is defeated at Nehavend, leading to the rapid Muslim conquest of the rest of Persia

661 Ali is assassinated while at prayer, leading to a schism between Sunni and Shia Muslims; Muawiya becomes the first Umayyad caliph, ruling from Damascus

## 2 UMAR AND THE CONQUEST OF SYRIA AND EGYPT 634–644

Under the second caliph, Umar (who had been a companion of Muhammad), Muslim armies achieved astonishing successes against the Byzantine army, which had been weakened by its long war with Persia. First Damascus, the chief city of Syria, fell to the Muslims, and then they seized Jerusalem. They went on to subdue the Byzantine province of Egypt, where religious divisions among the Christian population undermined opposition to the Muslims.

✕ Battle or capture

## 3 THE CONQUEST OF PERSIA AND KHURASAN 636–656

The Sassanian rulers of Persia had almost captured the Byzantine capital of Constantinople by 626, but the effort exhausted their resources. After a Muslim army defeated them in Mesopotamia in 636, the Persians lost their western provinces. The Persian shah Yazdegerd III became a fugitive, and his domains were absorbed into the growing Islamic empire. Within 5 years, much of Khurasan (Khorasan), in central Asia, had been added to the empire, too.

✕ Battle or capture

## 4 LATE UMAYYAD CONQUESTS 670–750

The Muslims' expansion west of Egypt was slow until they built a base at Kairouan (in modern Tunisia) in 670. From this stronghold, they captured the remainder of the Byzantine Empire in north Africa, taking its capital Carthage in 698. In 711, an Arab-Berber army crossed into the Christian Visigothic kingdom of Spain and, within 20 years, had conquered almost all of it. In central Asia, Muslim armies won Transoxiana. In 750, the Umayyads were overthrown by the Abbasid Dynasty, who took control of the caliphate.

✕ Battle or capture



# THE RULE OF THE CALIPHS

The Umayyads, who had ruled over the Islamic world from 661, fell in 749–750. Their empire was inherited by a new dynasty, the Abbasids, but its integrity was soon challenged as local rulers broke away, leaving the Abbasids with control over little more than Baghdad.

The Umayyad Caliphate (see pp.94–95) collapsed after a brief civil war in 749–750, which was partly caused by their discrimination against non-Arab Muslims. The Abbasids, a dynasty descended from the uncle of Muhammad, rose to power and—from its base in Baghdad—was able to restore stability. However, controlling the vast Muslim empire eventually proved an impossible task. A series of civil wars between 809 and 833 weakened the caliphate, and numerous local dynasties broke away: Spain had already been lost to a branch of the Umayyads in 756 and Ifriqiya (the area around Tunisia) became independent under the Aghlabids from 800. In Egypt, the Tulunids threw off central control in 868, and the Fatimids later grew strong there. The Buwayhids firmly established themselves in Iran from 926, and the Ghaznavids occupied eastern territories from about 977.

As the new dynasties emerged, Abbasid rule withered away until the caliph was a mere cypher, ruling a small sliver of land in Mesopotamia. Even this was swept away by a Mongol invasion in 1258, which sacked Baghdad and put an end to the caliphate.

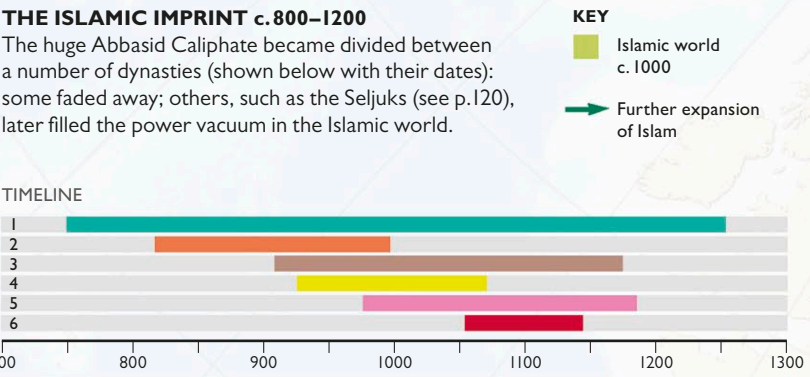
*“Don’t be satisfied with stories. How things have gone with others. Unfold your own myth.”*

RUMI, 13TH-CENTURY ISLAMIC SCHOLAR AND POET

## THE GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM SCIENCE AND CULTURE UNDER THE ABBASIDS

Scholars of all types congregated in the Abbasid capital of Baghdad. Accessible from both Europe and Asia, the city became a place to exchange ideas, many of which had reemerged from the translation of classical works by Arab scholars. Abbasid caliphs, including Harun al-Rashid and his son al-Ma'mun, directly encouraged learning and scholarship in Baghdad by establishing a House of Wisdom.

**Games of the Golden Age**  
Having reached Baghdad from India via Persia, chess became popular in the Muslim world, as shown in this 9th-century illustration.



**1 THE ABBASIDS 750–1258**

The Abbasids came to power after a civil war that engulfed the last of the Umayyads. Al-Mansur, the second Abbasid, established the new city of Baghdad (designed in circular form), which became a cultural and mercantile center. By the 10th century, Abbasid power had declined, and they were reduced to seeking the protection of other groups, such as the Buwayhids and Hamdanids, to ensure their survival. The last caliph, al-Musta'sim, was killed when the Mongols sacked Baghdad in 1258.

**2 THE SAMANIDS 819–999**

The Samanids were former Abbasid governors in eastern Iran, who gradually asserted their independence and in 900 captured Bukhara in Khorasan, which became their capital. Their empire prospered economically and culturally, with its artistic production including fine pottery and the *Shahnameh*, the Persian national epic, written by the poet Ferdowsi around 977. Pressure on their eastern borders undermined the Samanids, and in 999 the Turkic Qarakhanids took Bukhara, bringing their empire to an end.



## 6 THE ALMORAVIDS 1056–1147

A confederation of Berber tribes, the Almoravids were at the center of an 11th-century religious revival aimed at purifying Islam. They combined religious fervor with conquest, taking Morocco and founding the city of Marrakech in 1062. Asked by the Islamic kingdoms in Spain to help them resist Christian reconquest (see pp.122–123), the Almoravids crossed into Iberia, where they came to dominate in the south under their leader Yusuf Ibn Tashfin. By 1145, however, they were being forced out of Spain and challenged in north Africa by another revivalist movement, the Almohads, who captured Marrakech in 1147.

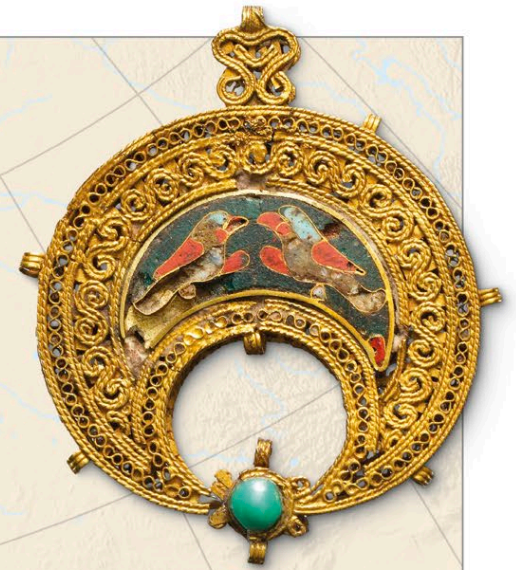
 Almoravid territory c. 1100

## 5 THE GHAZNAVIDS 977–1186

The Ghaznavids, a dynasty of Turkic origin, established themselves in Ghazni, in Khorasan, from 977, and gradually expanded until they took over the western portion of the former Samanid Empire by 1005. They then conquered the eastern portion of the Buwayhid Empire before a disastrous defeat by the Seljuks at Dandanaqan in 1040 reduced them to a small area of eastern Khorasan, where they ruled until 1186.

 Ghaznavid territory c. 1028

 **Battle**



**△ 11th-century Fatimid pendant**  
The Fatimids controlled gold mines in Nubia (present-day Sudan) and crafted the metal into jewelry with fine filigree work.

### 3 THE FATIMIDS 909–1171

The Fatimids were a Shia dynasty named after Fatima, the daughter of Muhammad, from whom they claimed descent. They established themselves in Tunisia in 909 and claimed the title of caliph in the following year, placing themselves in competition with the Abbasids for the leadership of the Islamic world. Sixty years later, they conquered Egypt and expanded as far as Syria before being driven back by the Seljuks. They were reduced to the status of puppet rulers controlled by a series of military commanders.

Extent of Fatimid Caliphate c. 1000

## 4 THE BUWAYHIDS 926–1055

The Buwayhid (or Buyid) dynasty originated among the Daylamites, a group of recent converts to Islam in northern Iran. They took advantage of the withdrawal of Abbasid troops in 926 to expand and build power in Iran, expanding north and west, taking Baghdad in 945. They made Baghdad their capital and reduced the resident Abbasid caliphs to puppet rulers. By the late 10th century, Buwayhid power had faded, and their last ruler was deposed by the Seljuks in 1055.

 Buwayhid territory c. 1028



# THE VIKINGS

At the end of the 8th century CE, the Vikings, a warrior-people from Scandinavia, burst forth from their homelands and for the next two centuries spread across Europe and the Atlantic as raiders, traders, and settlers.

Scandinavia in the 8th century was divided into small territories ruled by warlords. Instability grew as these chiefs fought to unite regions and a growing population put pressure on resources. Attracted by the wealth of trading centers and monasteries in northwest Europe, young men took up raiding and became known as Vikings. What followed was an amazing expansion enabled by fast and maneuverable Viking longships, used for raiding, and sturdier ocean-going knorrs, used for longer trading voyages. Vikings from Norway and Denmark exploited

*“They overran the entire kingdom and destroyed all the monasteries to which they came.”*

ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, 869

weaknesses in France, Britain, and Ireland to strike their victims unaware, seizing plunder and exacting tribute. In the 9th century, the Vikings in these areas turned from raids to conquest, carving out territories that in some cases they ruled for centuries. Their search for land also took them across unexplored waters to Iceland, Greenland, and finally the coast of North America around 1000.

In the East, Swedish Vikings, in the role of traders, penetrated the navigable rivers of what is now Russia and Ukraine to dominate trade with Constantinople and the Arabs and to exact tribute from Slavic tribes. These Varangians (as the eastern Vikings were called) founded Kievan Rus', the first Russian state.

## LEIF ERIKSON VIKING EXPLORER

Son of Erik the Red—founder of Viking Greenland—Leif Erikson is the star of sagas telling of the exploration of the lands we now know as North America. Other than the archaeological site of L'Anse aux Meadows in Newfoundland, it is difficult to know exactly where Vikings such as Erikson and his crew went, but they must have reached forested lands south of the tundra-clad Labrador Coast (which they knew as Markland) since they were desperate for timber.

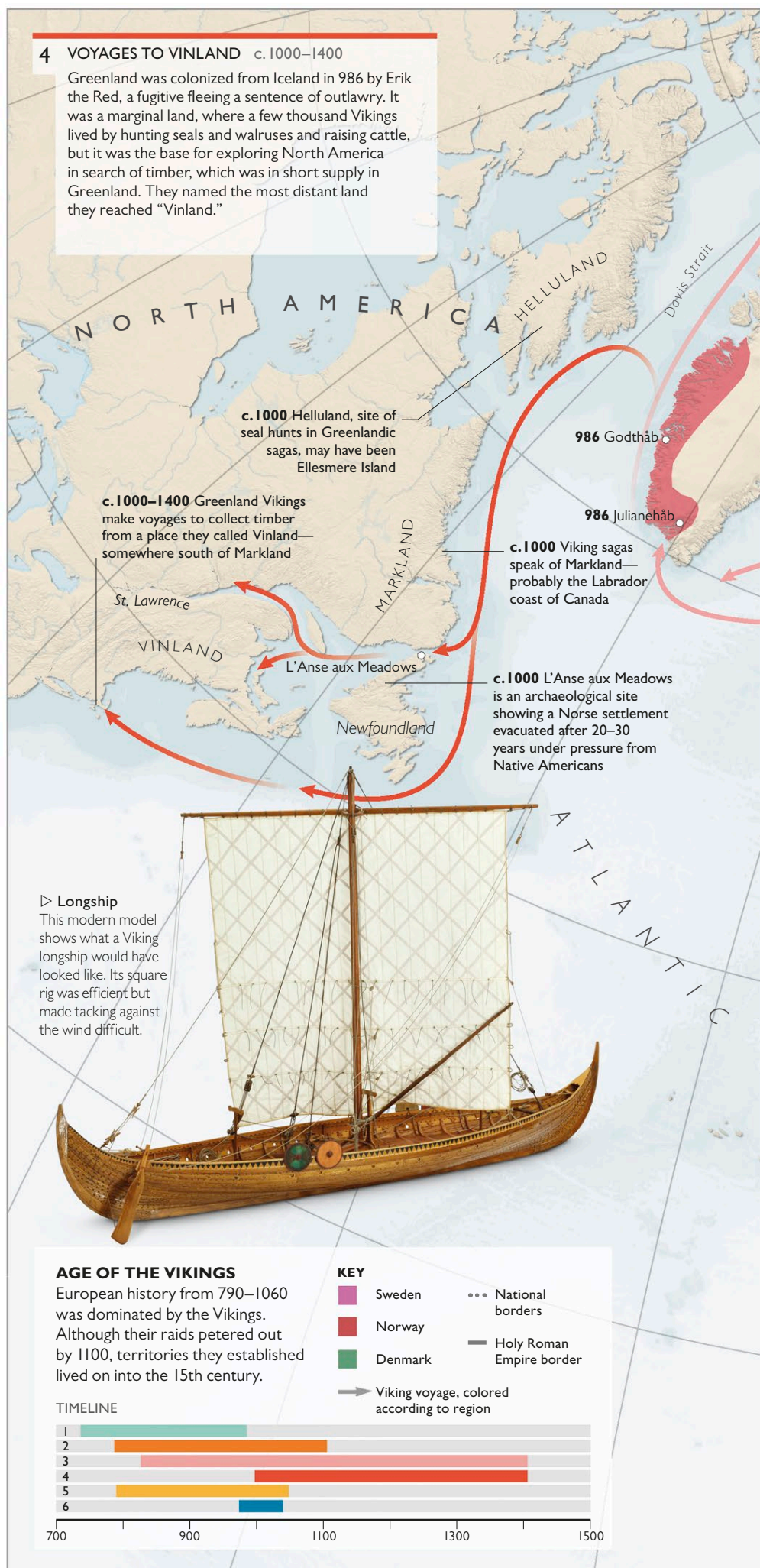
### Commemoration

A modern monument in Iceland recognizes Erikson, the first European known to have reached the Americas.



## 4 VOYAGES TO VINLAND c. 1000–1400

Greenland was colonized from Iceland in 986 by Erik the Red, a fugitive fleeing a sentence of outlawry. It was a marginal land, where a few thousand Vikings lived by hunting seals and walrus and raising cattle, but it was the base for exploring North America in search of timber, which was in short supply in Greenland. They named the most distant land they reached “Vinland.”





### 3 THE NORTH ATLANTIC 825–1408

The Vikings were explorers, crossing oceans in search of lands to settle. From the north coast of Scotland, it was a short hop to the Faroes, which were settled around 800. Viking ships ranged westward, sighting Iceland in the 830s and settling it in the 870s. There, they established a republic with the world's oldest parliament, the Althing—independent until the 1240s.

North Atlantic settlements

### 2 THE BRITISH ISLES 793–1103

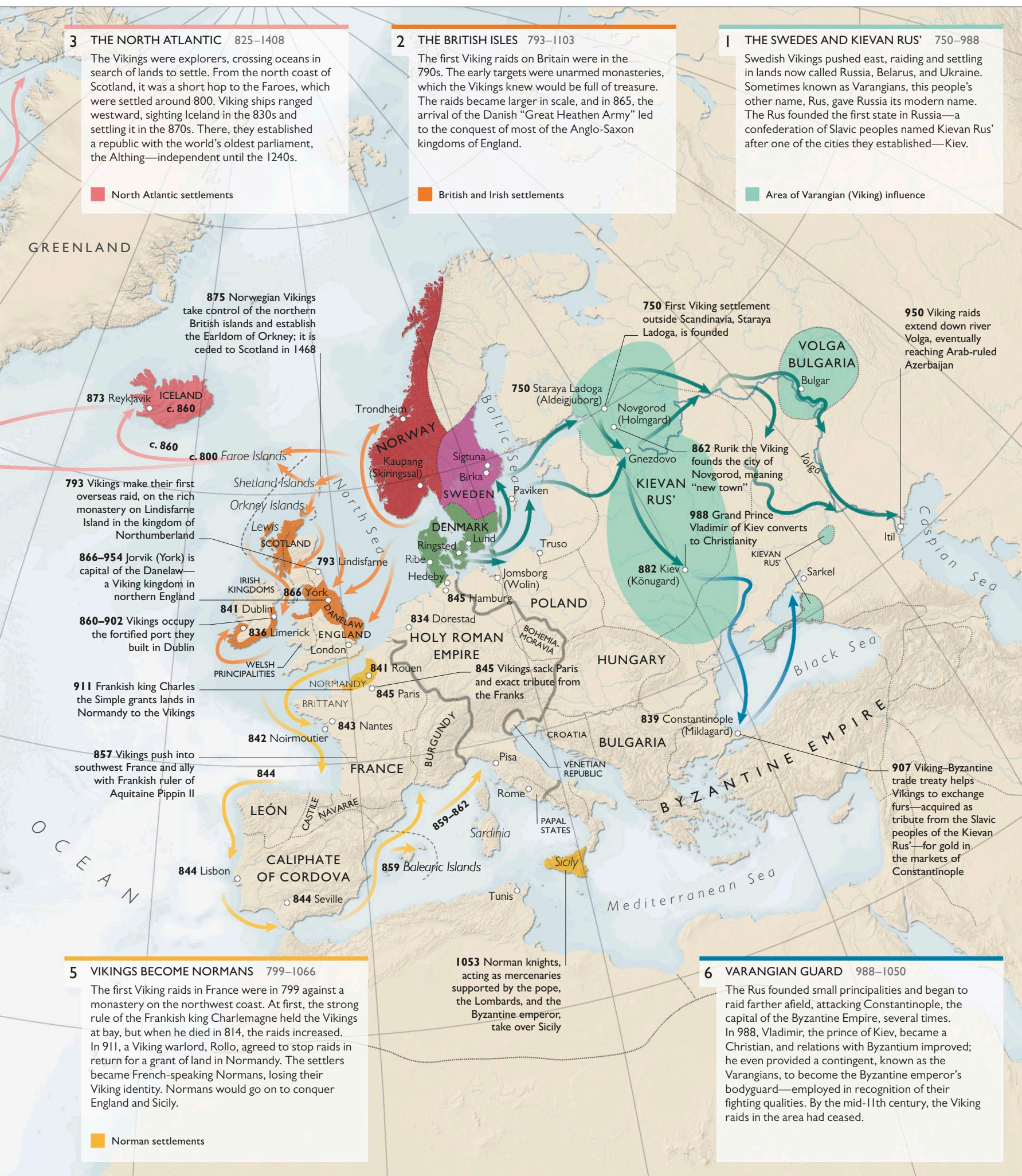
The first Viking raids on Britain were in the 790s. The early targets were unarmed monasteries, which the Vikings knew would be full of treasure. The raids became larger in scale, and in 865, the arrival of the Danish “Great Heathen Army” led to the conquest of most of the Anglo-Saxon kingdoms of England.

British and Irish settlements

### 1 THE SWEDES AND KIEVAN RUS’ 750–988

Swedish Vikings pushed east, raiding and settling in lands now called Russia, Belarus, and Ukraine. Sometimes known as Varangians, this people’s other name, Rus, gave Russia its modern name. The Rus founded the first state in Russia—a confederation of Slavic peoples named Kievan Rus’ after one of the cities they established—Kiev.

Area of Varangian (Viking) influence



### 5 VIKINGS BECOME NORMANS 799–1066

The first Viking raids in France were in 799 against a monastery on the northwest coast. At first, the strong rule of the Frankish king Charlemagne held the Vikings at bay, but when he died in 814, the raids increased. In 911, a Viking warlord, Rollo, agreed to stop raids in return for a grant of land in Normandy. The settlers became French-speaking Normans, losing their Viking identity. Normans would go on to conquer England and Sicily.

Norman settlements

1053 Norman knights, acting as mercenaries supported by the pope, the Lombards, and the Byzantine emperor, take over Sicily

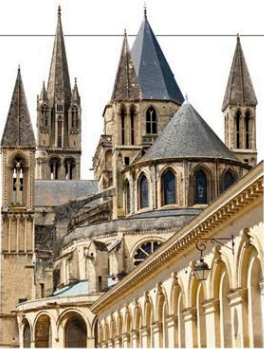
### 6 VARANGIAN GUARD 988–1050

The Rus founded small principalities and began to raid farther afield, attacking Constantinople, the capital of the Byzantine Empire, several times. In 988, Vladimir, the prince of Kiev, became a Christian, and relations with Byzantium improved; he even provided a contingent, known as the Varangians, to become the Byzantine emperor’s bodyguard—employed in recognition of their fighting qualities. By the mid-11th century, the Viking raids in the area had ceased.



# THE NORMANS

Originally a band of Viking raiders, the Normans acquired land in northern France, where they established a duchy. They then spread more widely, and by the mid-11th century had conquered England, Sicily, and much of southern Italy.



**Norman abbey**  
With its arched Romanesque nave, the Saint-Étienne Abbey in Caen, France, is a fine example of Norman architecture.

In 911, as marauding Viking armies overwhelmed northern France, the Frankish king Charles the Simple made a pact with a group of Norwegian Vikings led by Rollo. In exchange for land, Rollo agreed to keep other Vikings away. He only partly held to his agreement, slowly expanding his holdings in what became known as Normandy (the land of the Northmen). By the time he bequeathed Normandy to his son William Longsword in 927, a mixed culture had emerged: part-French, part-Scandinavian, and increasingly Christianized. In 1066,

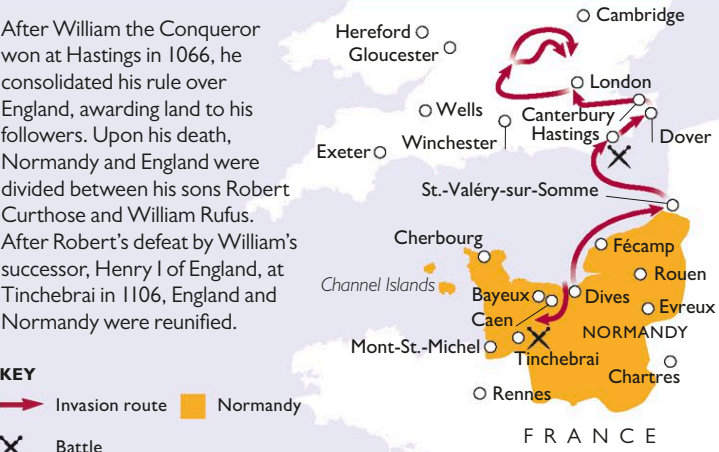
William the Conqueror, the great-great-grandson of Rollo, invaded England to assert a claim to its throne. His success marked the beginning of an Anglo-Norman Dynasty whose descendants still rule.

### Setting down roots

Elsewhere, ambitious Normans took military service with feuding local autocratic rulers in southern Italy from the early 11th century. Later, led by ruthless warriors such as the de Haubevilles and Robert and Roger Guiscard, they carved out their own fiefdom in southern Italy. In 1060, Roger Guiscard invaded Sicily, conquering much of it within a decade and establishing a kingdom where a hybrid Arab-Norman culture flourished until its conquest by the German Hohenstaufens in 1194.

### THE NORMAN CONQUEST

After William the Conqueror won at Hastings in 1066, he consolidated his rule over England, awarding land to his followers. Upon his death, Normandy and England were divided between his sons Robert Curthose and William Rufus. After Robert's defeat by William's successor, Henry I of England, at Tinchebrai in 1106, England and Normandy were reunified.

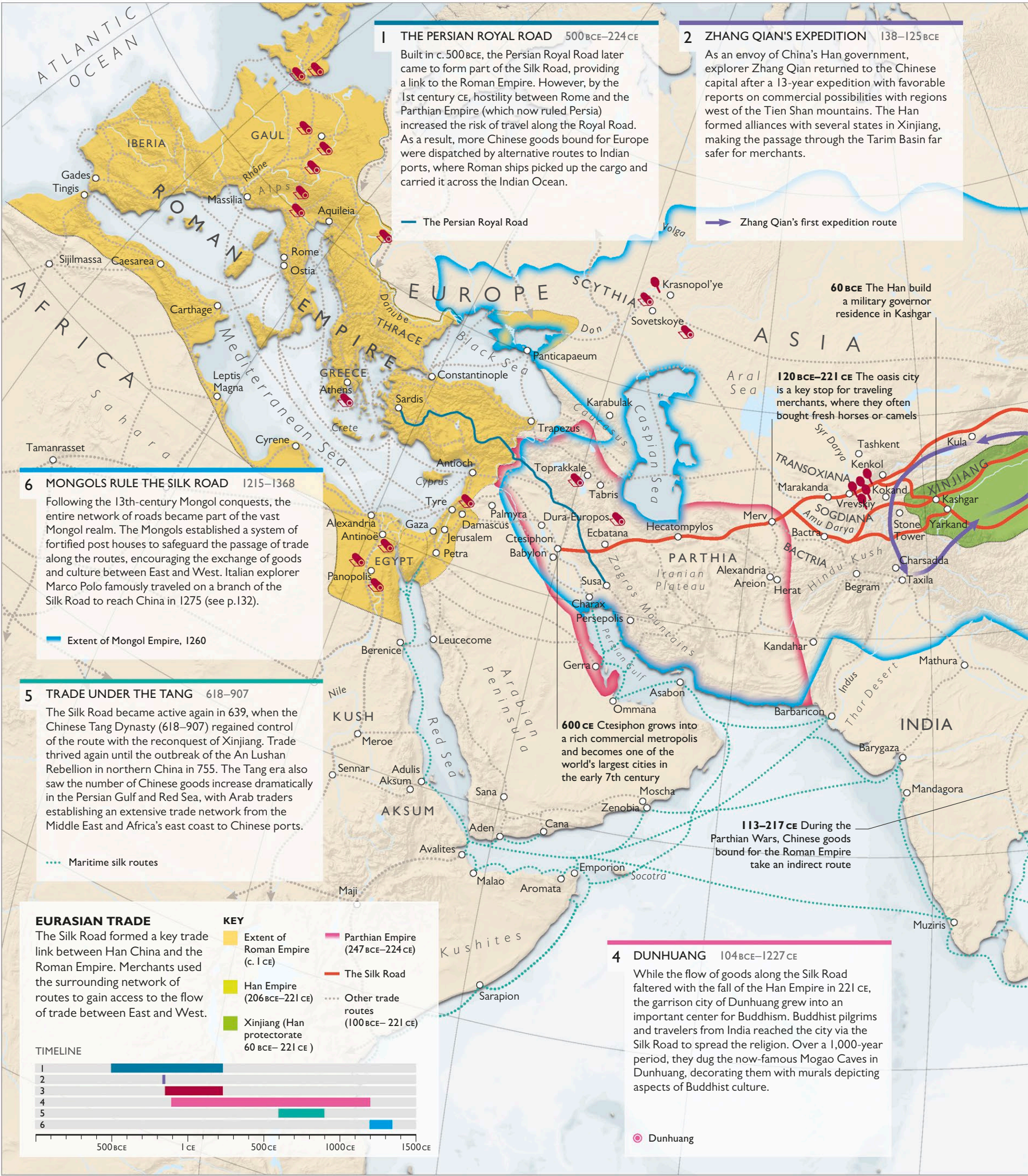




**Tapestry of war**

In this scene from the Bayeux Tapestry, woven to commemorate the Norman victory over the English at Hastings in 1066, William the Conqueror (right) removes his helmet to show his followers that the rumor that he had been killed was false.







# THE SILK ROAD

The extension of Han control in China in the 2nd century BCE made communication with the rest of the world easier and safer. The network of roads linking East and West operated for 1,500 years and became famous for the luxurious Chinese silk that traveled along them.

The origin of the Silk Road can be traced back to the Han Empire's conquest of the Tarim Basin around 120 BCE, when its armies banished various tribal groups from the region. This allowed the empire to open a safe passage for trade that stretched from the Chinese capital Chang'an (Xi'an) to a wealth of cities in central Asia and beyond.

The Han engaged in vibrant trading with India, Persia, and the Roman Empire, where Chinese silk was highly coveted by the ruling class. Besides the luxury goods that traveled along the route, including silk, spices, precious stones, and ornaments, the Silk Road was also a conduit for the dissemination of religion, philosophy, technology, language, science, and even disease.

Trade along the route faltered following the collapse of the Han in 221 CE but revived in the Tang era (618–907) when China partially recovered its central Asian provinces. Trade fell again in the 8th century after the Tibetans and Uighurs took control of Xinjiang, but 500 years later the route experienced a major resurgence following the Mongol conquests (see pp.130–131). The importance of the Silk Road fell again after the Mongol Empire's decline in the 14th century, and in the 16th century it was replaced by maritime trading routes.

*"The Seres (Chinese) are famous for the woollen substance obtained from their forests."*

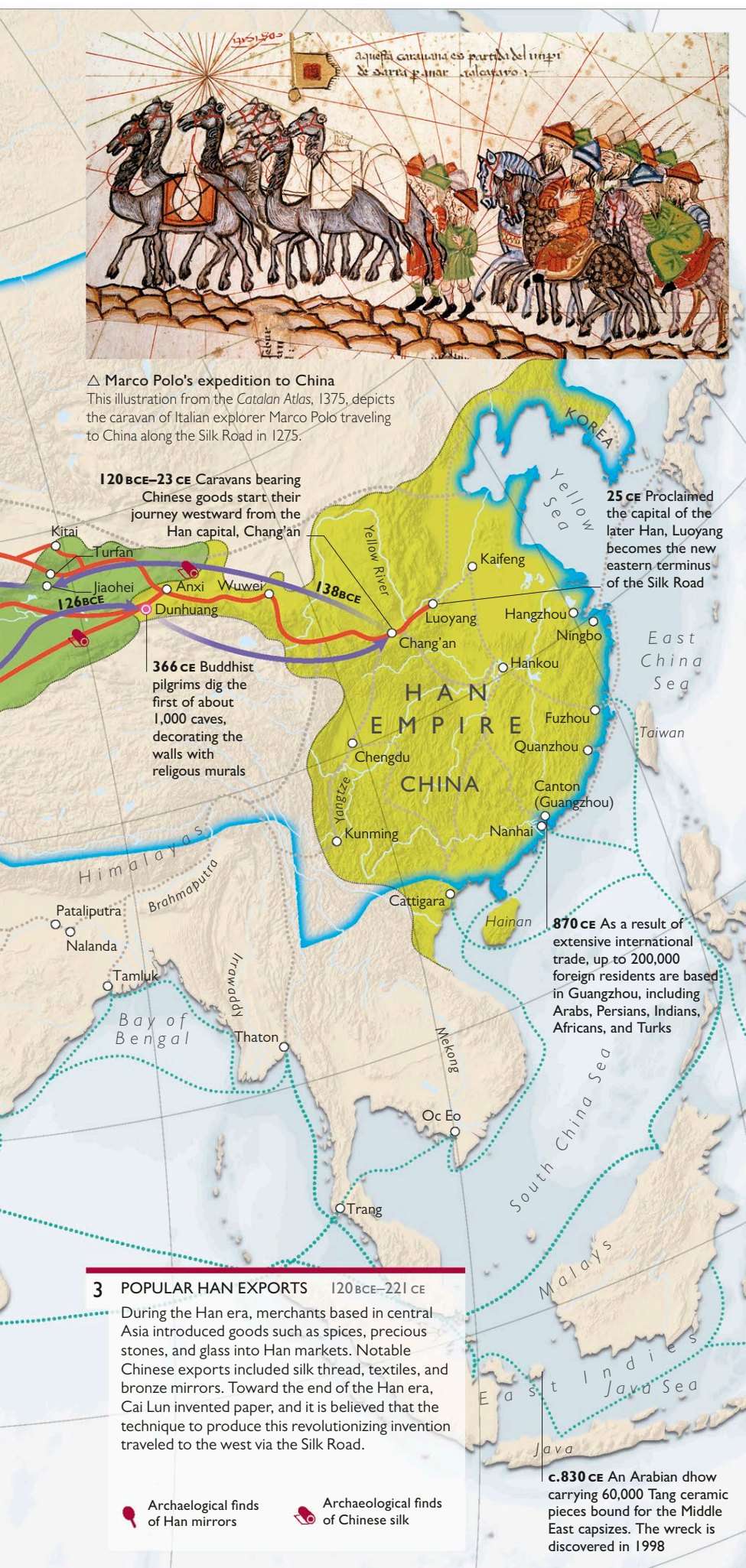
PLINY THE ELDER, FROM *NATURALIS HISTORIA*, 79 CE

## CHINESE SILK UNIQUE CHINESE EXPORT

Once China introduced silk to the West in the 1st century BCE, the material became popular among elites in the Roman Empire. The silk-making process was unknown in the West until around 550 CE, when Byzantine Emperor Justinian I persuaded two monks to smuggle silkworms from China inside their bamboo canes.

### Silk-making in China

This is a section of a larger 12th-century silk painting that depicts court ladies preparing silk.





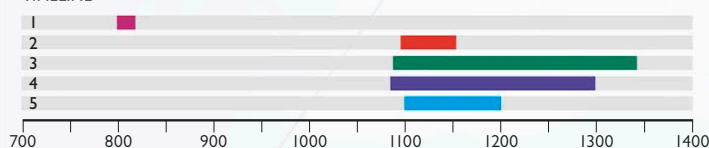
## 12TH-CENTURY RENAISSANCE IN EUROPE

The 12th century saw the establishment of universities and of new monastic orders and the translation of important scientific manuscripts from Arabic into European languages.

## KEY

Frontiers | 1200

## TIMELINE



## | CHARLEMAGNE'S RENAISSANCE 800-814

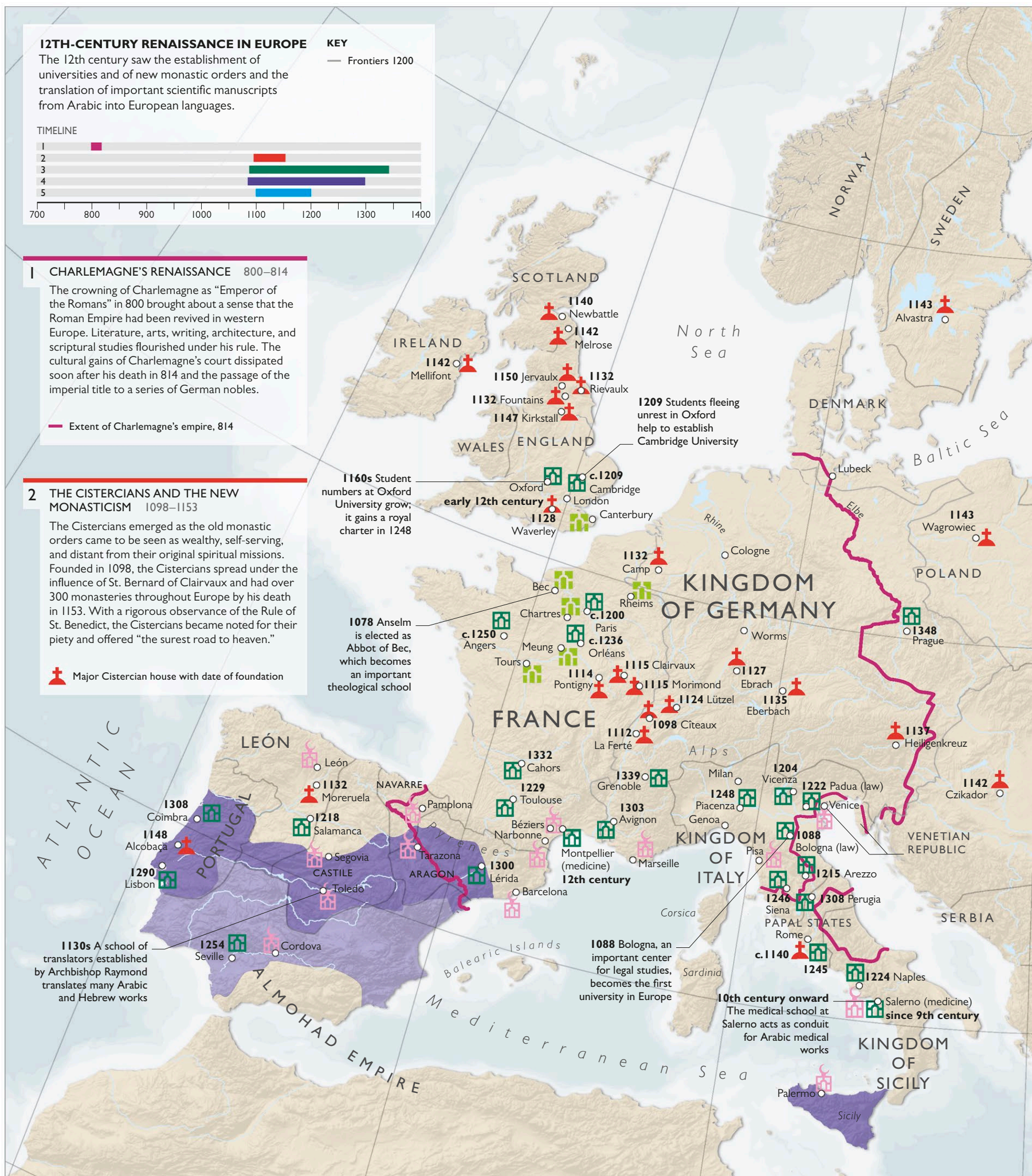
The crowning of Charlemagne as “Emperor of the Romans” in 800 brought about a sense that the Roman Empire had been revived in western Europe. Literature, arts, writing, architecture, and scriptural studies flourished under his rule. The cultural gains of Charlemagne’s court dissipated soon after his death in 814 and the passage of the imperial title to a series of German nobles.

- Extent of Charlemagne's empire, 814

## 2 THE CISTERCIANS AND THE NEW MONASTICISM 1098–1153

The Cistercians emerged as the old monastic orders came to be seen as wealthy, self-serving, and distant from their original spiritual missions. Founded in 1098, the Cistercians spread under the influence of St. Bernard of Clairvaux and had over 300 monasteries throughout Europe by his death in 1153. With a rigorous observance of the Rule of St. Benedict, the Cistercians became noted for their piety and offered “the surest road to heaven.”

 Major Cistercian house with date of foundation







△ Students attending their lessons  
This carving of students at the University of Bologna dates from around 1412 and adorns the tomb of the great teacher and legal thinker Bartolomeo da Saliceto.

## 5 DEVELOPMENTS IN LITERATURE AND SONG 1100–1200

The 12th century saw an upsurge in literature in the vernacular (local languages), many of them epic poems such as the German sagas the *Nibelungenlied* and Wolfram von Eschenbach's *Parzival*. In southern France troubadours, traveling performer-poets, spread *chansons de geste* ("songs of deeds," tales of romance, heroic deeds, and courtly love), such as the *Chanson de Roland*, which recounted episodes from Charlemagne's campaigns against the Muslims in northern Spain in the 770s.

## 4 INFLUENCE OF ARAB SCHOLARSHIP 1085–1300

Many scientific and philosophical works by Greek scholars had survived only in the Islamic world, often translated into Arabic and added to by Muslim writers. In the 12th century, these filtered into Europe, through areas such as Sicily and parts of Spain such as Toledo that had recently been conquered from Muslim powers. Manuscripts of many works by Aristotle, Ptolemy, and Euclid were then translated into Latin and helped fuel the 12th-century revival in scholarship.



Center of contact with Arab scholarship

Muslim lands reconquered by Christians 1030–1200

Muslim lands reconquered by Christians 1200–1300

## 3 THE NEW UNIVERSITIES 1088–1348

In the 12th century, scholars such as Abelard (at Paris) and Anselm of Aosta (at Bec) taught classes in theology and logic that attracted large numbers of students. Their schools developed into *studia generalia*, or universities, which offered a wider range of courses. Bologna University was among the first of these institutions.



University with date of foundation



Other important theological school

# MEDIEVAL RENAISSANCE

The 12th century saw the intellectual, spiritual, and cultural life of Europe undergo a renewal. This encompassed the revival of monasteries, the foundation of schools and universities, the development of new architectural forms, and the acquisition of knowledge through translations from Greek and Arabic manuscripts.

After the fall of the Roman Empire in the West in the 5th century, much classical knowledge was lost, and most remaining manuscripts were confined to monasteries. Although there were local cultural revivals in France under Charlemagne (r. 768–814), in England under Alfred the Great (r. 871–899), and in Germany under Otto I (r. 962–973), they did not long survive the deaths of their royal patrons. However, in the late 11th century, a new movement began, in part stimulated by a desire for a return to purer forms of religious observance and in part by the needs of increasingly complex royal bureaucracies. New monastic movements, such as the

Cistercians, gave impetus to a revival of spirituality, and schools grew up around cathedrals and abbeys that welcomed lay students and clergy alike. They taught a curriculum that focused on logic, grammar, and rhetoric but also encouraged debate and academic disputation. The largest centers, such as Paris and Bologna, attracted students from all over western Europe and developed into universities. Scholars there enjoyed access to works that had been unknown in Europe since the fall of Rome, as well as original Arabic works and translations of classical authors that came via the former Islamic territories in Sicily and Spain.

*"By doubting we come to examine, and by examining we reach the truth."*

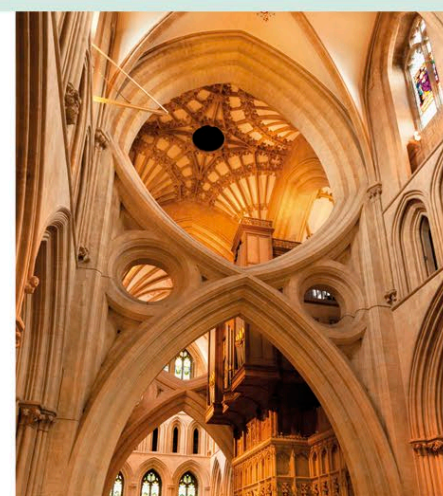
PETER ABELARD, FRENCH THEOLOGIAN, 1079–1142

## GOTHIC ARCHITECTURE A NEW LANGUAGE OF CONSTRUCTION

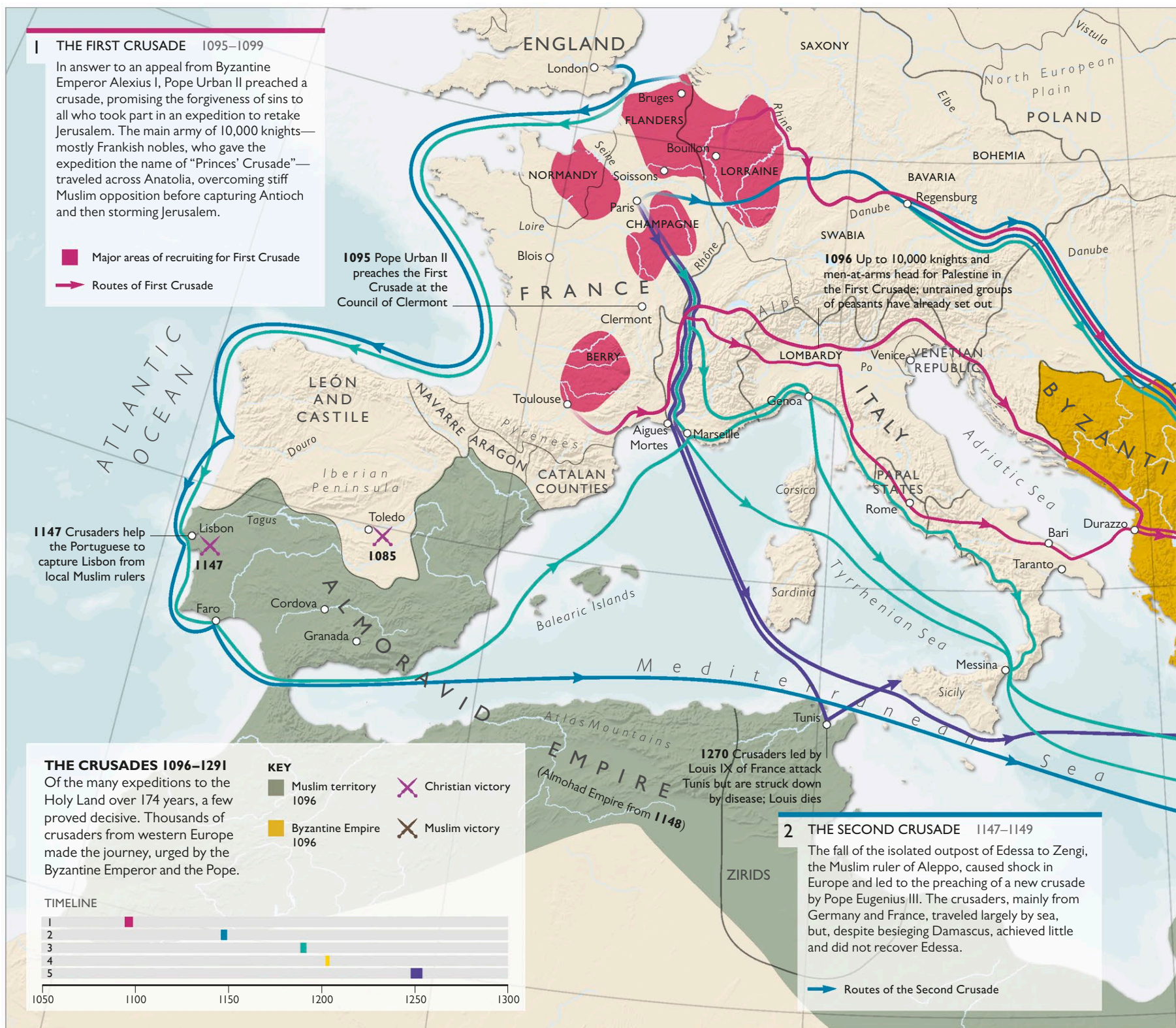
In the early 12th century, a new architectural style replaced the solid masses and round arches typical of the previous Romanesque tradition. Known as Gothic, its pointed arches, ribbed buttresses, and soaring vaults allowed for higher ceilings and the penetration of more light into buildings (with windows often glazed in decorative stained glass). The style became the predominant one for large churches and cathedrals in western Europe for the next 300 years.

Wells Cathedral

This 12th-century English cathedral is one of the earliest examples of architecture that is wholly Gothic in style.







# THE CRUSADES

Beginning in 1095, a series of military expeditions set out from Christian Europe to capture Jerusalem and the Holy Land, which had been part of the Islamic Caliphate since the mid-7th century. These Crusades established states in the area, but once Muslim rulers had overcome their previous disunity, they expelled the crusaders, capturing their last important stronghold in 1291.

Jerusalem fell into Muslim hands in 639, when the Caliphate took the provinces of the Byzantine Empire in Palestine and Syria. In the 11th century, a new Muslim group—the Seljuk Turks—gained more Byzantine territory and threatened the rights of Christian pilgrims to visit Jerusalem. In response to an appeal from the Byzantine emperor, the Pope called for a crusade—an armed expedition—to liberate the Holy City. Thousands of knights responded and marched to Palestine, where they captured many Muslim-controlled cities, including Jerusalem itself. The crusaders established states in Palestine, but their numbers were few, and Muslim counterattacks resulted in the fall of Edessa in 1144, a disaster that sparked the Second Crusade. The Third Crusade was inspired by the loss of



**3 THE THIRD CRUSADE 1189–1192**

In 1187, Saladin, the Muslim ruler of Egypt, captured Jerusalem, prompting the calling of a further crusade. A crusader army led by King Richard the Lionheart of England and King Philip Augustus of France succeeded in checking Saladin's advance and took the important cities of Jaffa and Acre, but was unable to recover Jerusalem—which had been the goal of the expedition.

→ Routes of Third Crusade

**4 THE FOURTH CRUSADE 1202–1204**

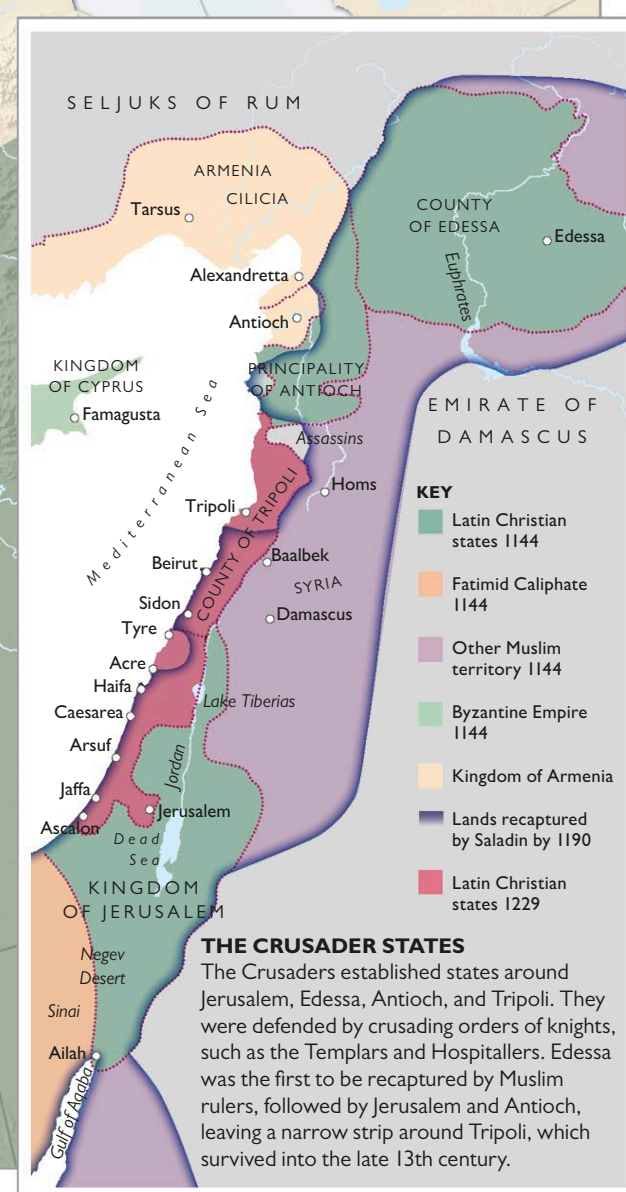
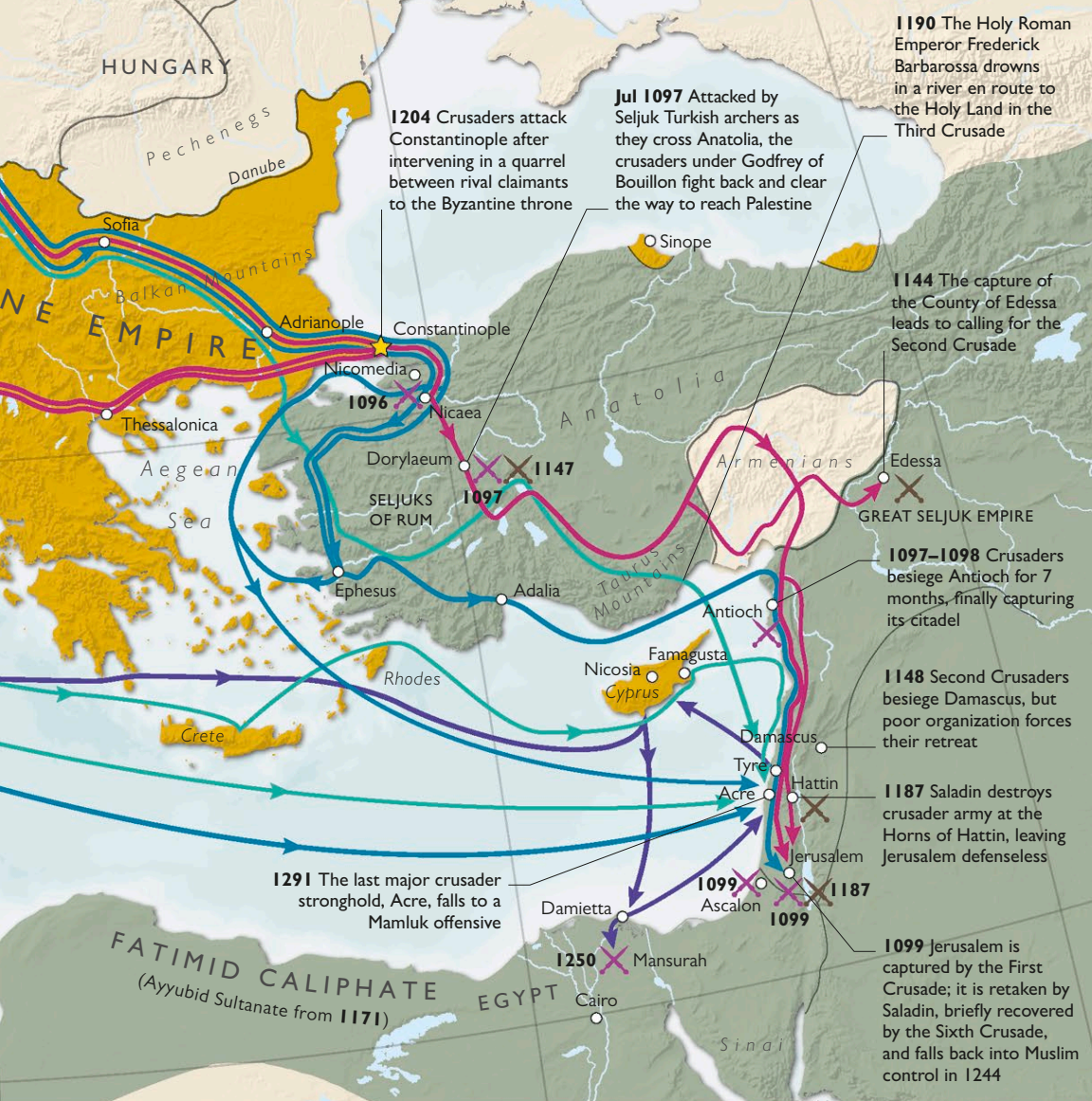
Called by Pope Innocent III, the crusade originally set out to reconquer Jerusalem, but its army was diverted by Alexios Angelos, an exiled Byzantine prince who promised the crusaders a great reward if they helped him recover his throne. Instead, the crusaders sacked Constantinople (the capital of the Christian-controlled Byzantine Empire), divided the empire among their leaders, and never reached Jerusalem.

★ Capital of Byzantine Empire

**5 THE SEVENTH CRUSADE 1248–1254**

Led by King Louis IX of France, the crusade set out to destroy the Ayyubid Dynasty in Egypt and Syria, then recapture Jerusalem (which the Muslims had retaken in 1244). Louis captured Damietta in 1249, but the crusade became bogged down in a siege of Mansurah, in which many crusaders died. Louis was captured and was ransomed, the price of his return being Damietta, leaving the crusade a total failure.

→ Routes of the Seventh Crusade



Jerusalem to Saladin in 1187; while it halted the Muslim advance, it did not recover the Holy City. With no coherent strategy to secure the crusader states, several subsequent crusades were launched to address immediate crises. Jerusalem was eventually recovered in 1229 in the Sixth Crusade, but later expeditions were largely ineffective and aimed at Muslim-controlled regions outside Palestine, such as Egypt in 1249 and Tunis in 1270. The area under crusader control gradually shrank until campaigns by the Ayyubids and Mamluks retook the last of the Crusader castles, ending with the fall of Acre.

▷ **The departure for the Second Crusade**

This 12th-century fresco from a Templar chapel in southwest France shows knights leaving for the Holy Land. Most would be away for years in Palestine, and some would settle there.







**△ Roman elite**  
This late 4th-century ivory diptych portrays the Roman general Stilicho and his wife and son. Regent for Emperor Honorius, the part-Vandal Stilicho was one of the Western Empire's most powerful men.

# THE INHERITORS OF ROME

The Western Roman Empire's fall was followed by the rise of several kingdoms of Germanic invaders in former Roman provinces. While the level of continuity with Roman life varied, within 200 years, some of their systems harked back, at least in part, to Rome.

Pressure grew on the Roman frontiers along the Rhine and the Danube Rivers from the 3rd century, as Germanic invaders migrated westward. In 406, helped partly by problems within the empire, large numbers of Vandals, Alans, and Sueves flooded across the Rhine and fanned out through Gaul and Spain. As the empire's grip on these provinces contracted, its ability to raise taxes to support the army diminished, accelerating the process by which the newcomers had to be accommodated rather than expelled. Other encroachments followed. After some reshaping of the invading ethnic groups, the Western Roman Empire was left with a presence of Visigoths, Ostrogoths, Burgundians, and Franks. The Roman hold on the western provinces had slipped away, not as a result of a single defeat, but through simple lack of resources to defend them.

**New kingdoms**  
By 418, a Visigothic kingdom had been established at Toulouse, which expanded to include much of southwestern France and Spain. This displaced the Vandals, who, in

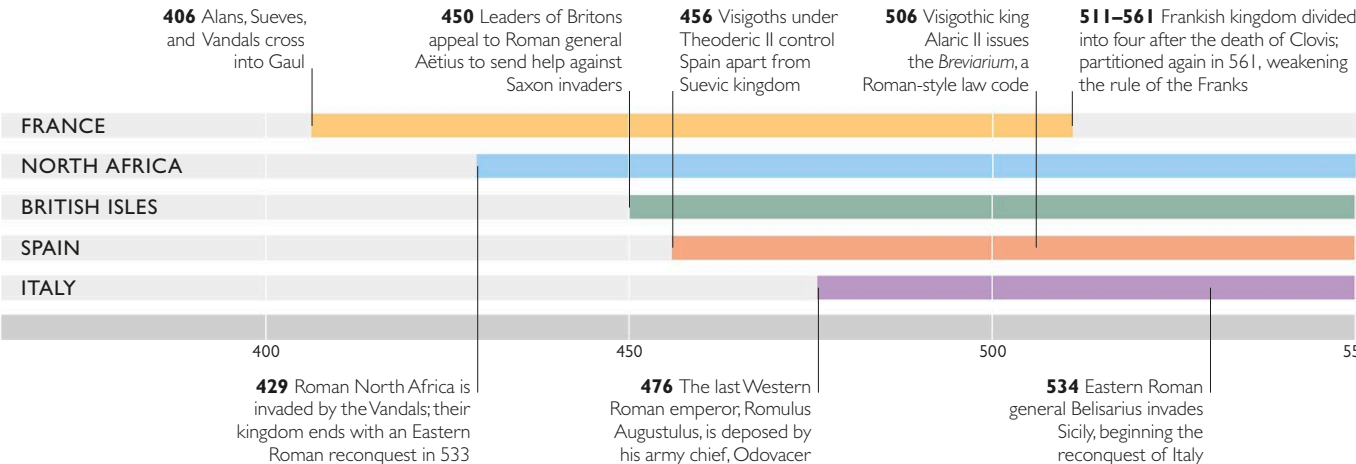
**▷ Fortune for the church**  
This jeweled cross is part of a cache of votive objects donated by the Visigothic kings of Spain to a church in the 7th century. After the conversion of King Reccared to Catholicism in 589, the Church became a key player in the consolidation of royal power in Spain.

429, crossed over into North Africa, where they founded their own kingdom (see pp.92–93). Northern France fell out of imperial control in the mid-5th century, as Frankish tribes pushed westward, and finally, in 476, Italy succumbed to an advance led by Odovacer, who was, in turn, supplanted by Ostrogoths under Theoderic the Great in 493. The Roman province of Britain, which had broken away from the empire in 411, suffered complete political collapse as Angles and Saxons mounted invasions across the North Sea.

**Europe after Rome**  
The disappearance of the security that the Roman Empire had guaranteed had profound consequences. Trade declined, the economy collapsed in many areas, and long-distance communication became more difficult. Urban settlements contracted, disappearing almost entirely in England. Even Rome, which once had a population of more than half a million, shrank to only around 30,000 inhabitants by the 7th century. The new rulers adopted some elements of Roman life. As chieftains of war-bands, they were ill-equipped to rule large, static populations and, in Italy in particular, many of the former senatorial elite took service with their new masters. Statesmen such as Cassiodorus served under Theoderic and attempted to reconcile Ostrogoths and Romans. Gaul retained a centralized administration with tax-levying powers,



**THE NEW ORDER**  
The early 5th century saw Germanic invaders breach the Rhine frontier of the Roman Empire. This was followed by a rapid collapse of imperial control over its western provinces. The Franks established a kingdom in northern France and expanded through the south and east, while the Visigoths overran Spain and the Vandals occupied Roman North Africa. In these areas, the new Germanic rulers gradually established administrations. England, however, remained divided among smaller kingdoms.







#### ◁ Holy ruins

These are the remains of the 12th-century Benedictine priory on Lindisfarne Island, off the northeast coast of Northumbria, England. It was built on the site of an earlier abbey destroyed by the first Viking raid on England in 793.

#### ▷ Anglo-Saxon helmet

This reconstruction of a helmet found in an early 7th-century ship burial at Sutton Hoo, East Anglia, England, shows the great skill of Anglo-Saxon metalworkers.

while in Spain, the Visigoths combined the interests of Romans and Goths, issuing law codes that legislated differently for the two groups. In Britain, however, the prolonged military struggle between the invading Anglo-Saxons and indigenous Britons meant that not even fragments of the old Roman administration survived.

In 533–534, the emperor of the surviving Eastern Roman (Byzantine) Empire, Justinian, launched a military campaign to recover Rome's western provinces and destroyed the Vandal kingdom of North Africa. His campaign in Italy led to a 20-year war that ended with the fall of the Ostrogothic kingdom in 553. It also left the peninsula ravaged, unable to yield any taxes and ripe for a new invasion by the Lombards, who conquered much of the peninsula in 568–572, confining the Byzantines to a series of scattered enclaves.

#### Recovery and consolidation

Elsewhere, however, despite several civil wars, the 7th century saw a process of consolidation. In England, larger kingdoms emerged, most notably Northumbria in the north, Mercia and East Anglia in central England, and Wessex and

Kent in the south. All of these converted to Christianity in the century following a mission in 597 sent by Pope Gregory I and led by one of his monks, Augustine. Lombard Italy stabilized after the invasion period, when Lombard king Agilulf (r. 590–616) made peace with the Franks following a series of invasions. In 643, King Rothari issued a law code setting down the customary law of the Lombards in written form for the first time.

By 700, Visigothic Spain, Frankish Gaul, and Lombard Italy had achieved relative stability. There, and in still-fragmented Anglo-Saxon England, the persistence of Latin as a means of formal written communication and the spread of the Christian Church provided living reminders of continuity with the late Roman world. If the invaders who settled in the Roman Empire discarded some of what they found there, they also inherited much from their Roman predecessors.

*"This King Rothari collected ... the laws of the Lombards ... and he directed this code to be called the Edict."*

PAUL THE DEACON, FROM *HISTORY OF THE LOMBARDS*, c. 790

**568** Lombard invasion of Italy begins

**664** Dispute between Celtic Christians in Anglo-Saxon kingdoms and those from Rome settled by Synod of Whitby

**698** Muslim Arab army captures Carthage

**597** Sent by Pope Gregory I to convert the English, Augustine arrives in Canterbury

**633** Penda of Mercia defeats and kills King Edwin of Mercia to begin a 160-year Mercian supremacy among the English kingdoms

**711** Arab Muslim army crosses from North Africa and conquers the Visigothic Kingdom

**774** Lombard kingdom comes to an end after invasion by Frankish-Carolingian ruler Charlemagne



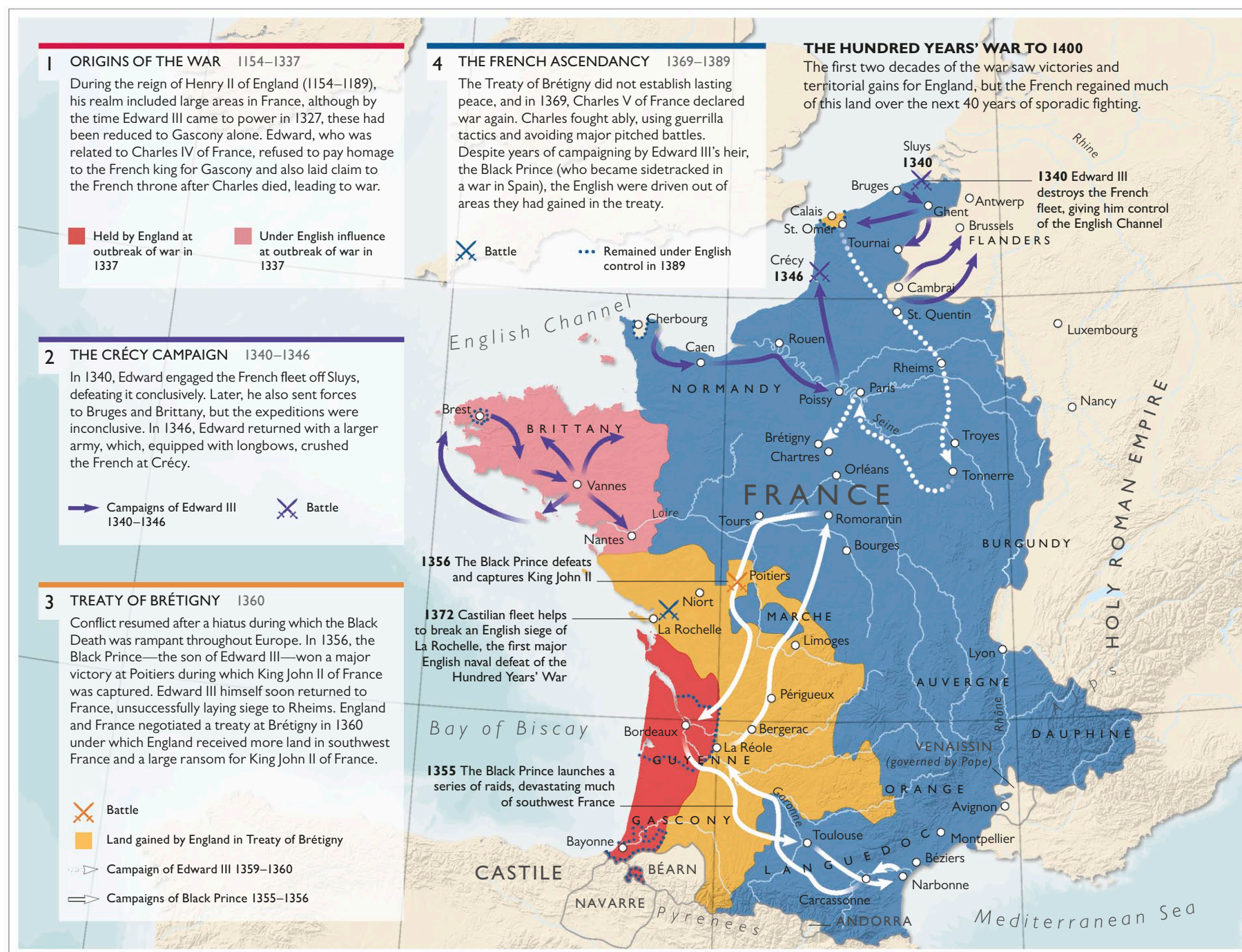


# THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR

A conflict between the kings of England and of France over the English rulers' claim to the French throne began in 1337 and lasted for 116 years. While at times the English managed to conquer large parts of France, by the end of the conflict in 1453, they retained only the port town of Calais.

Edward III of England had a claim to the French throne through his mother, the sister of Charles IV of France. When Charles died without an heir, Edward laid claim to the French throne against his rival, Philip. This, combined with Edward's earlier refusal to pay homage to the French monarch for land he held, led to war. The conflict fell into three phases. In the initial phase (1337–1360) under Edward III, the English won significant victories. This phase came to an end with the Treaty of Brétigny, which left England with enlarged holdings in France. In the second phase

(1369–1389), the English initially made large gains but were pushed back. This phase ended in a truce, with England retaining only Calais and small areas around Brest, Bordeaux, and Bayonne. In the early 1400s, France was in a state of virtual civil war between supporters of the Duke of Burgundy and the Armagnacs. Taking advantage of this disruption, Henry V of England resumed war with France in 1415. At first, English forces took huge areas. However, inspired by Joan of Arc, the French fought back, and by the end of the war, England held only Calais.





## 5 THE AGINCOURT CAMPAIGN 1415–1420

In 1415, Henry V of England resumed the war, sailing to France and besieging Harfleur. At Agincourt, he won a victory in which the French knights were decimated by English and Welsh longbowmen. Henry swept through northern France and by the Treaty of Troyes (1420) was recognized as heir to the French throne.

→ Campaign of Henry V 1415    ✕ Battle

**Oct 1415**  
Henry V defeats the French army; a large proportion of the French nobility is killed

**May 1430** Joan of Arc is captured by the Burgundians

## THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR AFTER 1400

The English came close to conquering France between 1415 and 1429, taking advantage of French disunity, but the leadership of Joan of Arc revived France's resistance.

## 6 ENGLISH CONSOLIDATION 1420–1429

The 1420s began with setbacks for the English, including the death of Henry V from dysentery on campaign in 1422. Even so, the English, led by the Duke of Bedford, consolidated their hold on northern France, helped by a Burgundian alliance occupying all the territory between the Seine and the Loire. Finally, in 1428 the Earl of Salisbury struck at the strategic town of Orléans.

→ Campaign of Henry V 1421–1422

→ Campaign of Earl of Salisbury 1428

■ Possessions of House of Burgundy 1429

■ Held by England or Burgundy 1429

## 7 JOAN OF ARC 1429–1431

In 1429, the English besieged Orléans, one of the last French strongholds. The arrival of a peasant girl, Joan of Arc, who claimed to have received divine messages that France should resist, inspired the French (under Charles VII) to fight back and recapture much of the north. Joan was captured by the Burgundians and burned at the stake, but English dominance of France was broken.

→ Campaign of Joan of Arc 1429

✕ Battle

## 8 THE END OF THE WAR 1435–1453

In 1435, the Burgundians broke off their alliance with the English, who then lost control of Paris. During the 1440s, most of the rest of northern France was reconquered by Charles VII until the English held only the area around Bordeaux. A final defeat at Castillon led to Bordeaux's fall to the French and the end of the war.

✕ Battle

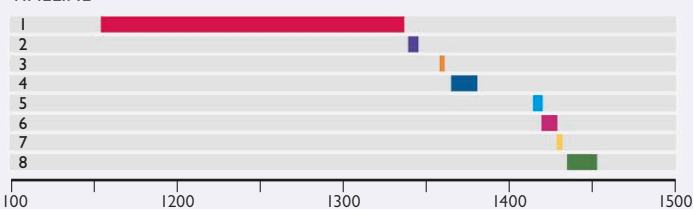
## CONFLICT OVER THE FRENCH THRONE

In the 14th and 15th centuries, the English kings attempted to assert their claim to the French throne in a series of intermittent campaigns. Although treaties in 1360 and 1420 awarded them large parts of France, ultimately they lost all but Calais.

### KEY

■ French territory

### TIMELINE



△ The Battle of Crécy

This illustration from a 15th-century chronicle depicts action at the Battle of Crécy, in which the English longbow proved its superiority over the crossbow, which was slower to load and had a shorter range.



## 5 THE VENETIAN EMPIRE 850–1500

Venice first became a trading power in the mid-9th century and soon afterward established bases on the Adriatic. By the 14th century, the Venetians had surpassed their longtime rivals in Genoa and gained land in the Aegean from the Byzantine Empire. But rivalry from Spanish, Dutch, and Portuguese merchants helped cause the collapse of their empire by the 16th century.

■ Venetian possession 1400  
 .... Principal Venetian trade route

## 4 JEWS IN MEDIEVAL EUROPE 1100–1492

By the 12th century, there were large Jewish communities (around 100,000) in Germany and France. Jewish merchants gained a high profile from moneylending and, combined with their status as religious outsiders, this made them vulnerable to prejudice. Jews suffered legal restrictions and massacres (especially during the Crusades and the Black Death), and by 1492, were expelled entirely from England, France, and Spain.

 Region with significant Jewish population 1200
  Expulsion of Jewish population, with date

## 6 THE GENOESE EMPIRE 950–1409

The port of Genoa began its rise to prominence as a maritime power around 950, and became the center of a trade network that encompassed North Africa and the western Mediterranean. Defeat by Venice in the War of Chioggia dented Genoese aspirations, and in the early 15th century, the city fell under the sway of the Visconti of Milan.

■ Genoese possession 1400

## 7 THE HANSEATIC LEAGUE 1265–1669

In 1265, a group of towns agreed to meet annually to discuss common business. They soon grew into the Hanseatic League, containing up to 200 towns. The League grew powerful enough to enforce its will on states. The Thirty Years' War, and increased Dutch competition, broke the group's dominance, and its council last met in 1669.

- Principal members of the Hanseatic League
- \*\*\*\* Principal Hanseatic trade route

## 3 BANKING 1100-1500

In the early 12th century, Italian merchants began to finance their ventures through bills of exchange. Banks specializing in providing this credit emerged, such as the Peruzzi and then, most prominently, the Medici from 1397. By the late 15th century, the Medici had been eclipsed by competitors who had grown rich on lending to the Austrian Habsburgs.

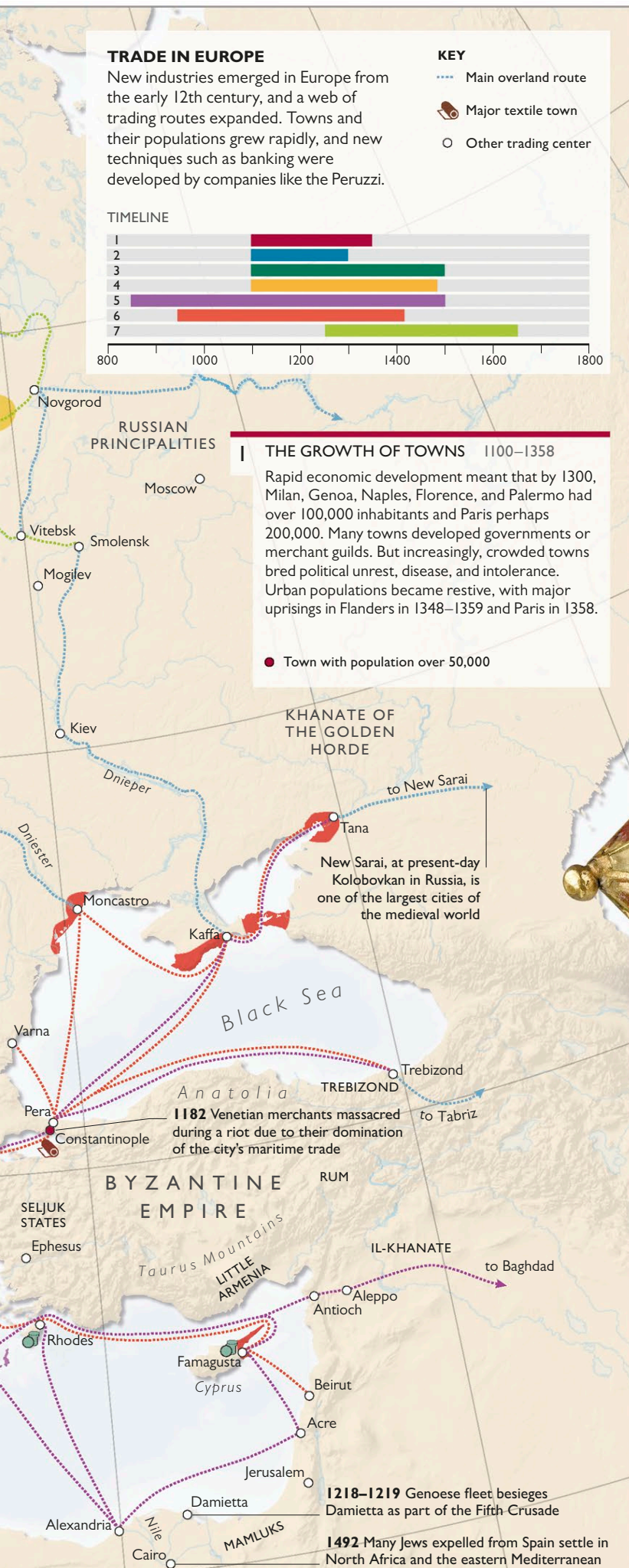
Branch or agency of the Peruzzi company

## 2 FAIRS AND LOCAL TRADE 1100-1300

During the 12th century, large trading fairs were established in Germany and France to cater to the growing number of long-distance merchants. The greatest of all were the six held annually at four locations in the County of Champagne; the weight system used at Troyes was accepted as a universal standard in Europe.

 Important fair





# MEDIEVAL EUROPEAN TRADE

From the 12th century, Europe experienced a period of economic and population growth. Guilds and town councils threatened royal monopolies of power, and merchants pioneered new methods of banking. Yet not all shared the fruits of this prosperity, and Jewish communities suffered increasing persecutions.

Europe saw a renewed flourishing of urban life in the 12th century. New towns were built under royal patronage in England and France, and others expanded significantly in size. Fairs sprang up, where merchants traveled from across the continent to acquire goods and hawk their wares. Cities became more important, too, as many places acquired

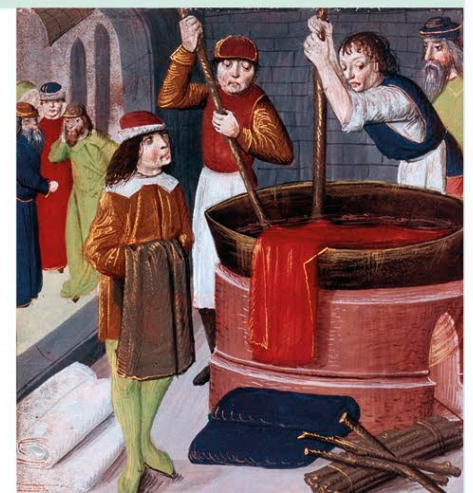
their own councils that were not always amenable to royal persuasion, while in Italy a network of independent city-states developed. The area became a fertile ground for innovation in finance, including the establishment of the first investment banks. The wealth generated by their merchants enabled Genoa and Venice to establish maritime empires in the Mediterranean and become international powers in their own right. Similarly, in northern Europe, the Hanseatic League—a federation of trading cities—developed after 1265 and dominated trade in the Baltic and North Seas for two centuries. Jewish communities, however, were expelled from much of western and southern Europe. They had previously played a central role in providing moneylending services, but by 1500, main centers of Jewish life on the continent had shifted to eastern Europe, Italy, and the lands under Muslim control.



△ Jewish wedding ring  
This ornate ring comes from Colmar, in northeastern France, which had a thriving Jewish community by the 13th century.

## CLOTH TRADE THE FIRST GREAT EUROPEAN INDUSTRY

Cloth was the first commodity in medieval Europe whose production grew into a great industry. The main centers were in Flanders, England, and Italy, which all had access to important sources of wool. The spinning, weaving, fulling (cleansing the cloth and making it thicker), and dyeing processes provided employment to large numbers of artisans and incomes for merchants. Guilds, associations of artisans and merchants, were established in major cities, and merchants used their wealth to endow lavish cloth halls—where cloth was sold.



Textile workers dyeing cloth



6 THE BLACK DEATH REACHES BRITAIN 1348–1350

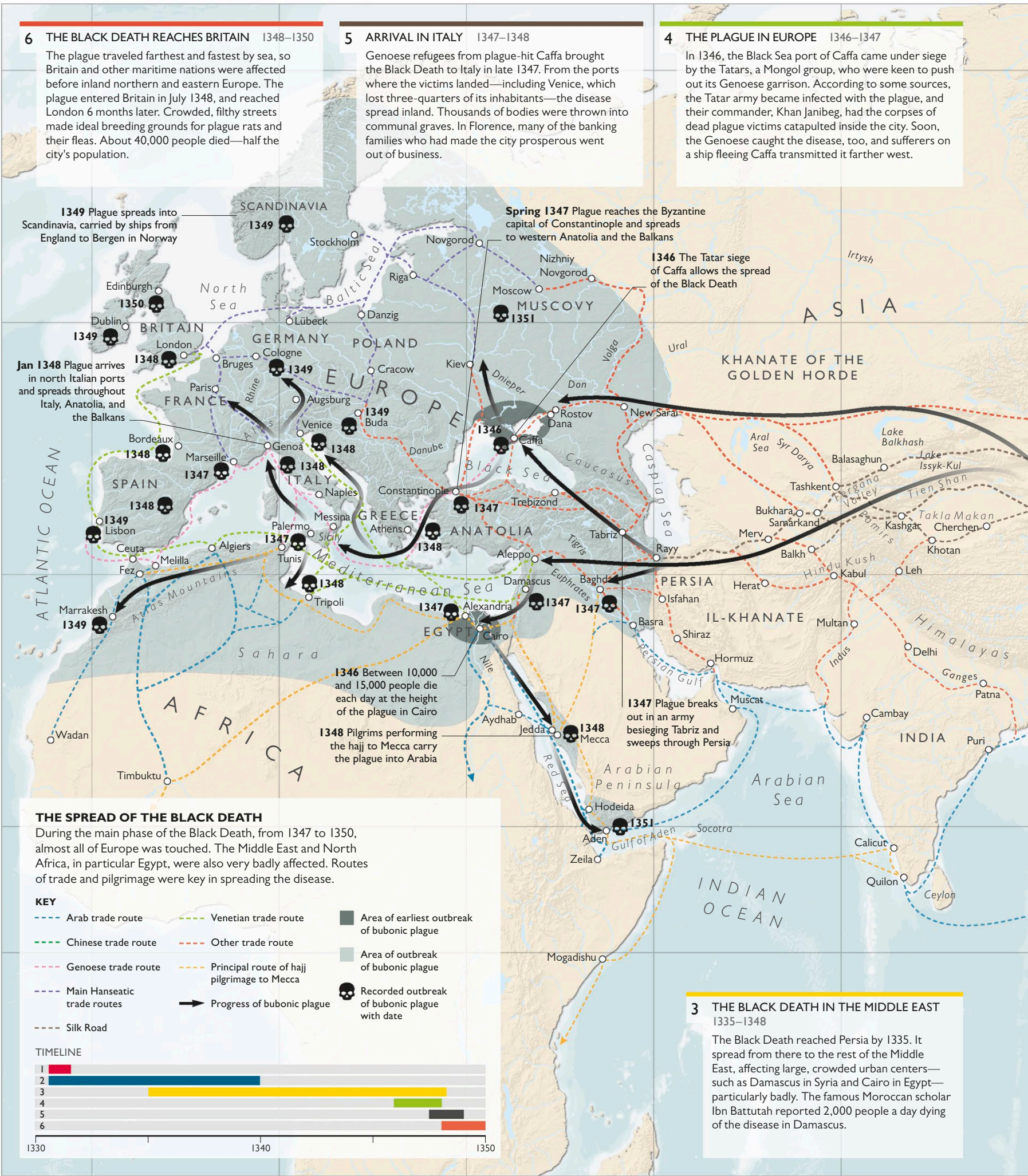
The plague traveled farthest and fastest by sea, so Britain and other maritime nations were affected before inland northern and eastern Europe. The plague entered Britain in July 1348, and reached London 6 months later. Crowded, filthy streets made ideal breeding grounds for plague rats and their fleas. About 40,000 people died—half the city's population.

5 ARRIVAL IN ITALY 1347–1348

Genoese refugees from plague-hit Caffa brought the Black Death to Italy in late 1347. From the ports where the victims landed—including Venice, which lost three-quarters of its inhabitants—the disease spread inland. Thousands of bodies were thrown into communal graves. In Florence, many of the banking families who had made the city prosperous went out of business.

4 THE PLAGUE IN EUROPE 1346–1347

In 1346, the Black Sea port of Caffa came under siege by the Tatars, a Mongol group, who were keen to push out its Genoese garrison. According to some sources, the Tatar army became infected with the plague, and their commander, Khan Janibeg, had the corpses of dead plague victims catapulted inside the city. Soon, the Genoese caught the disease, too, and sufferers on a ship fleeing Caffa transmitted it farther west.



3 THE BLACK DEATH IN THE MIDDLE EAST 1335–1348

The Black Death reached Persia by 1335. It spread from there to the rest of the Middle East, affecting large, crowded urban centers—such as Damascus in Syria and Cairo in Egypt—particularly badly. The famous Moroccan scholar Ibn Battutah reported 2,000 people a day dying of the disease in Damascus.



# THE BLACK DEATH

In 1347, a new disease entered Europe from China and central Asia. The bubonic plague, or Black Death (after the black spots it caused on the skin), spread rapidly, and, with no cure available, killed around 150 million people—roughly one-third of the world's population.

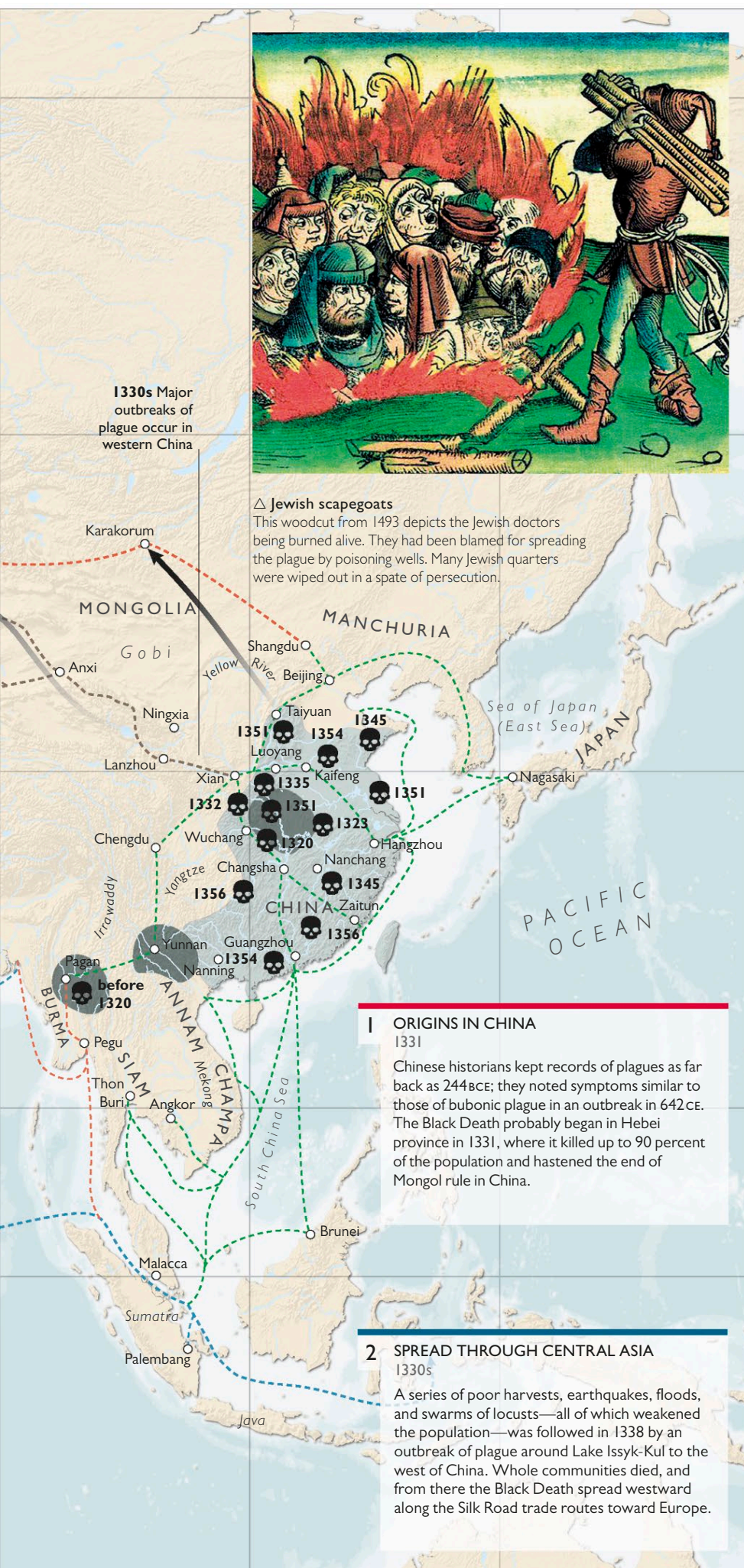
The Black Death was transmitted through the bite of infected rat fleas, so it spread quickly in the crowded, unsanitary conditions of medieval towns. It moved along trade routes once it reached Italy in 1347, and over time developed into more virulent forms. Doctors prescribed sweet-smelling posies, complex brews of herbs and spices, and the fumigation of rooms, only the last of which—by killing the fleas—had the slightest effect in stopping the epidemic's course. Those who tried to flee simply spread the disease to new areas.

The disease caused terror and an outpouring of mysticism, and also had profound social consequences. There was a huge rise in crime—the murder rate in England doubled—as people broke faith with traditional values. Peasants, now scarce in number, could demand better conditions and pay from their feudal masters.

By the end of 1350, the Black Death had mainly run its course, but there were many recurrences; even today, there are occasional cases all over the world.

*"They sickened by the thousands daily, and died unattended and without help."*

GIOVANNI BOCCACCIO, FROM THE *DECAMERON*, 1348–1353



## SPREAD IN EUROPE

The Black Death probably originated in China in the 1320s, and at first moved slowly west along trade routes. Once it reached Constantinople in 1347, its spread became rapid. Striking much of Italy in early 1348, by the summer the plague had reached England. By the following year, it penetrated even northern Scandinavia. Only certain areas were spared, notably central Poland.

### KEY

1347	1350
Mid-1348	1351
Early 1349	After 1351
Late 1349	Relatively unaffected





**Coronation and excommunication**

This painting shows Pope Innocent III both conferring the imperial crown on Frederick II (on the right) and removing it from Otto IV (on the left). It demonstrates the power of a pope to make and unmake emperors.







# THE EMPEROR AND THE POPE

During the 11th and 12th centuries, relations between popes and rulers of the Holy Roman Empire were fraught with tensions, as both laid claim to supreme authority within the empire. It was only when imperial authority declined within Germany that the struggle between them finally subsided.

From the 10th century—with the empire extending across what is now Germany, the Czech Republic, and parts of France—there was a tussle for power between popes and emperors. While popes maintained that ultimate authority should rest with them as heads of the Church, emperors vigorously defended their position as supreme secular rulers. The struggle, known as the Investiture Controversy, focused on the monarch's right to invest bishops, who in turn had to pay homage to the emperor for their lands. Pope Gregory VII refused to accept this, and excommunicated Emperor Henry IV twice, first in 1076 and again in 1080. The Investiture Controversy was resolved in 1122 through a compromise whereby bishops in the empire could have a dual investiture, once by the Emperor for their lands and once by the Pope for their spiritual position.



△ **Crowning glory**  
The ornamental crown seen here was used for the coronation of Holy Roman Emperors from the late 10th century.

## Shift in the seat of power

Popes continued to interfere in imperial succession until 1356, when a document known as the Golden Bull decreed that emperors would be chosen by a college of electors—three bishops and four (later six) German princes. This gave German princes more power in their territories. Also, the shift of the power base of the Habsburg emperors

toward Austria and Spain in the 15th and 16th centuries, the rise of specifically German imperial institutions such as the Imperial Diet, and the weakening of the Catholic Church in Germany after the Reformation (see pp.166–167) meant that by the 17th century, the Papal–Imperial rivalry had become largely irrelevant.



◁ **Divine coronation**  
This 11th-century miniature depicts Christ crowning Emperor Henry II. The idea that an emperor's power was bestowed by God undermined claims of papal authority.



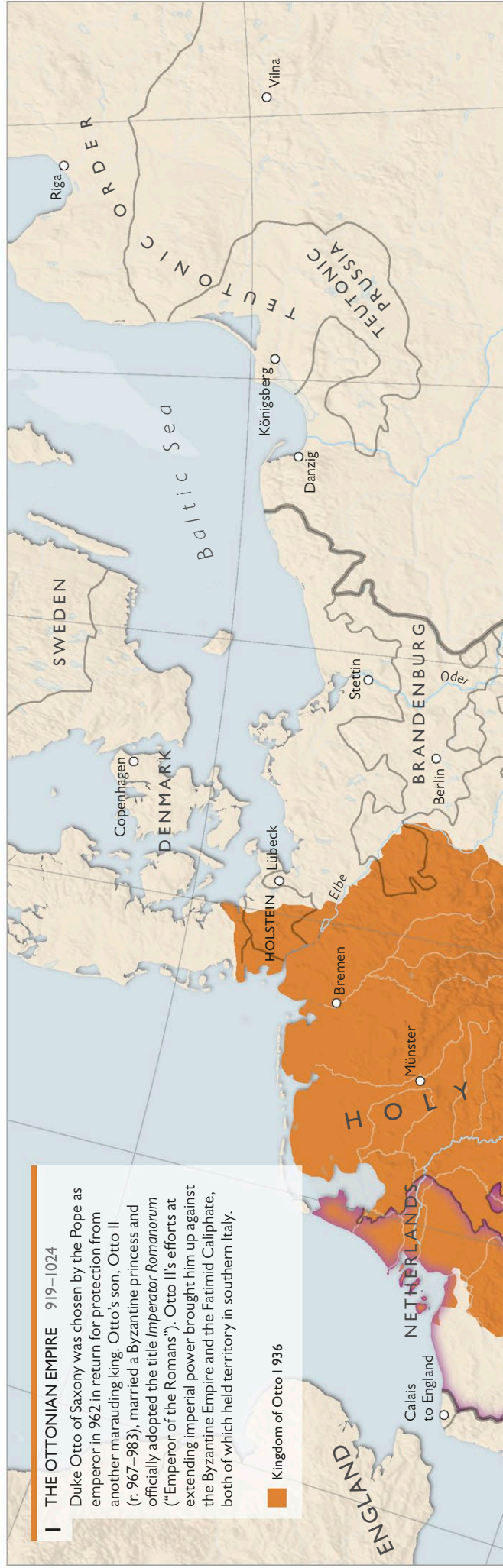
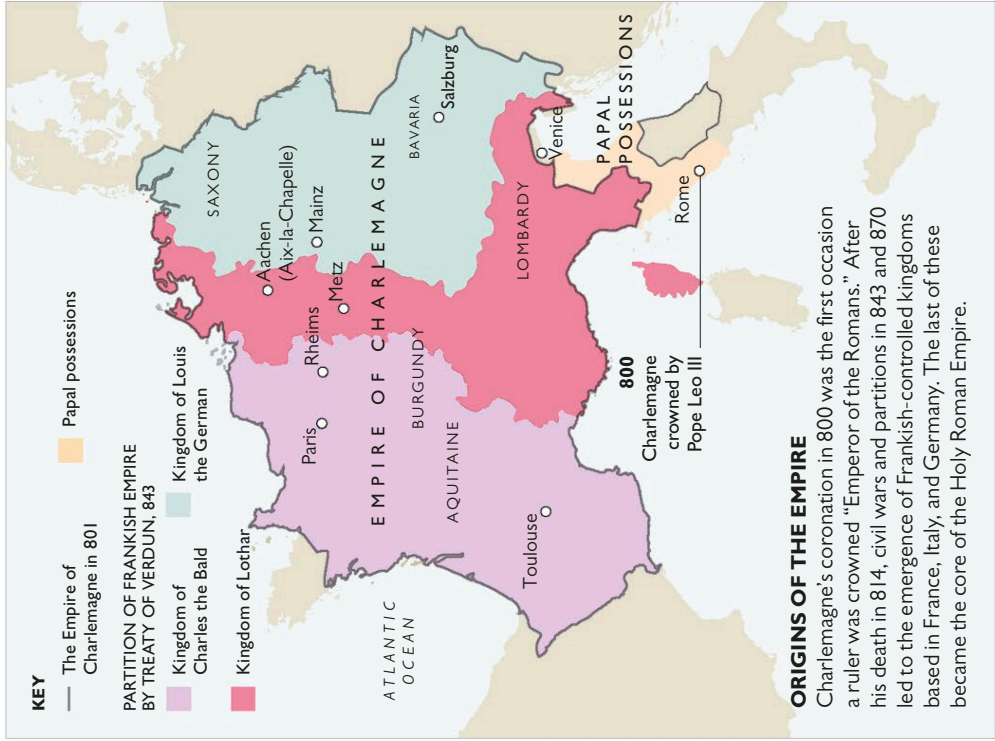
# THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE

The crowning of the Frankish ruler Charlemagne as emperor in 800 marked the birth of an institution that came to be called the Holy Roman Empire. Although it survived for over a millennium, the empire’s territorial core contracted until it became largely German and a sometimes chaotic mosaic of multiple and overlapping jurisdictions.

When Pope Leo III offered a new imperial title to Charlemagne, the ruler of the Franks, it was partly through nostalgia for the lost stability of the Roman Empire and a desire for protection. Having conquered much of northwest Europe since his accession in 768, he seemed an appropriate successor to the Caesars of old. However, the disintegration of the Frankish Empire into civil war after Charlemagne’s death in 814 meant that imperial power was often short-lived. Sometimes there was no recognized emperor, until the Ottonian family acquired the title “Emperor of the Romans” in 962—an event most now regard as the true beginning of the empire. Thereafter, the empire became mainly a German affair, passing through the hands of successive dynasties: the Ottonians, Salians, Hohenstaufen, Luxembourg, and Habsburgs. Imperial lands were ceded to local princes and towns while the emperor was in Italy or on crusade

or when he was preoccupied with campaigning. This caused a general weakening of imperial control. Stronger emperors, such as Henry IV, tried to assert imperial authority, clashing with the Papacy over the right to appoint bishops. But his humiliation in being excommunicated and forced to make penance in 1077 demonstrated the limit of the imperial writ.

The empire briefly reached a new apogee under Frederick II in the early 13th century, when Sicily came into the imperial orbit. But a long domination by the Habsburgs from 1438, who also had lands outside the Holy Roman Empire to rule, contributed to a further withering of imperial power. The settlement at the end of the Thirty Years’ War (see pp.168–169) in 1648 gave the German states almost complete independence, and the forced abdication of the last emperor, the Habsburg Francis II, in 1806 ended a defunct institution.







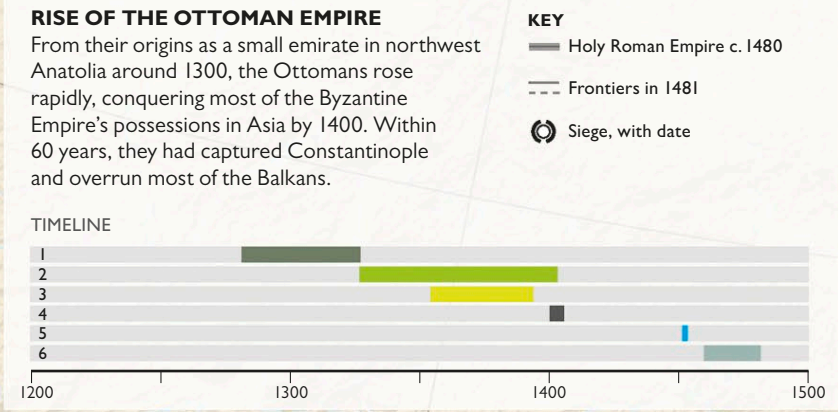


# RISE OF THE OTTOMANS

In the late 13th century, the Ottoman Turks were one of several emirates fighting on the borders of the Byzantine Empire. By 1500, they had conquered much of Anatolia and parts of the Balkans and had taken Constantinople. Their sultanate stretched from Hungary to Mesopotamia.

As the Byzantine Empire weakened in the 11th century, new Muslim groups surged into Anatolia, principal among them the Seljuk Turks. Within a century, they, too, had fragmented, leaving a large number of small, competing Islamic states. In the 1290s, one of them—the Ottomans—took advantage of their position right against the Byzantine border to expand and attract warriors eager for glory.

By the 1350s, Ottoman armies had crossed into Europe; they soon occupied most of what was left of Byzantine territory, defeating Serbia, Bulgaria, and Hungary, the main Christian principalities of the Balkans. In 1402, the Ottomans suffered a defeat by the Mongols, but they soon recovered and, in 1453, Sultan Mehmed II seized the prize of Constantinople, the Byzantine capital. From there, the Ottoman sultans ruled and, over the next two centuries, continued to expand their domain into a huge multinational empire. Eventually, however, the Ottoman expansion was brought to an end by the Safavids in Persia and the Habsburgs in Europe (see pp.172–173).



◁ **Mehmed II**  
This Turkish miniature from around 1585 shows the great sultan, who conquered Constantinople and extended the Ottoman Empire.



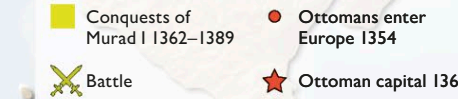
## THE SELJUKS

Even before the Ottoman expansion, Byzantine control over Anatolia had been weakened by the Seljuks, a Turkic people who had migrated west from central Asia. They defeated the Byzantines at Manzikert in 1071, after which they overran most of Anatolia and established the Sultanate of Rum, which survived until 1308.



## 3 OTTOMANS IN THE BALKANS 1354–1389

In 1354, the Ottomans crossed over to Gallipoli, establishing a foothold in Europe. Under Murad I, they occupied much of Thrace, making Edirne (Adrianople) their new capital. The defeat of Serbia at the Battle of Kosovo (1389) marked the beginning of Ottoman supremacy in the Balkans.



## 2 THE CONQUEST OF ANATOLIA 1326–1402

Under Orhan, the Ottomans conquered most of the remaining Byzantine cities in northwest Anatolia, leaving only isolated outposts. Anatolia was later unified under Ottoman control by Orhan's grandson (the son of Murad I), Bayezid I, who conquered the beyliks in the southwest soon after he became sultan in 1389.





#### 4 MONGOL THREAT 1400–1405

In 1400–1401, the Mongol prince Timur, angered by Bayezid I's demands for tribute from one of his vassals, invaded the Ottoman Empire. At Ankara in 1402, Timur crushed the Ottomans, causing many of the former beyliks of Anatolia to break away from Ottoman rule. Only Timur's death in 1405 saved the Ottomans from further losses.

△ Ottoman eastern frontier following Timur's invasion 1402  
✕ Battle

#### 5 THE SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE 1451–1453

By the time Mehmed II became Ottoman sultan in 1451, the Byzantine Empire consisted of little more than the city of Constantinople. Mehmed throttled the city's supply lines and laid siege to it in April 1453. The Byzantine emperor Constantine XI resisted for nearly 8 weeks before the Ottomans finally took the city. The Byzantine Empire was at an end, and the Ottoman Empire had a new capital.

★ Ottoman capital 1453

#### 6 CONQUESTS OF MEHMED II 1460–1481

Having captured Constantinople, Mehmed II dealt with the remaining fragments of the Byzantine Empire, capturing Morea in 1460 and the breakaway Empire of Trebizond in 1461. The defeat of Bosnia in 1463 and the reduction of Wallachia and Moldavia to vassal status meant that resistance to Ottoman rule in the Balkans was confined to a few scattered fortresses and the Venetian possessions in Greece and along the Adriatic coast.

■ Vassal of Ottoman Empire by 1481  
■ Further Ottoman conquest by 1481  
■ Under Venetian control c. 1460



#### THE ORIGINS OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE 1280–1326

After the collapse of the Seljuk Empire, western Anatolia was divided into a number of competing states, known as beyliks. One of them, based around the small town of Söğüt, began to expand in the 1280s under Osman. His son, Orhan, captured the important Byzantine town of Bursa in 1326 and made it his capital. From here, he conquered much of the rest of Anatolia and sent the first Ottoman army into Europe.

■ Ottoman territory 1326  
★ Ottoman capital 1326  
■ Anatolian beyliks c. 1300



# THE RECONQUISTA

Islamic armies overran the Iberian peninsula in the early 8th century. Christian rulers slowly reversed this process in the Reconquista (“reconquest”), which culminated with the fall of Granada in 1492 and the expulsion of most of Spain’s Muslim population.

The Visigothic kingdom of Spain rapidly fell to an Islamic army that crossed from Muslim-held North Africa in 711, and by 718, only a small area in the remote Asturian mountains remained unconquered. The subsequent reconquest of the Muslim-ruled parts of Spain and Portugal (al-Andalus) by Christian states took nearly eight centuries. First, the far northeast was recaptured by the armies of the Frankish ruler Charlemagne, rather than by the comparatively weak Spanish Christian kingdoms. Gradually, though, Castile and Leon in the west and Navarre and Aragon in the east gathered strength and pushed southward.

The emergence of crusading ideology from the late 11th century accelerated the Reconquista, as Christian armies were now infused with the sense of fighting a religiously justified war. The political fragmentation of the Umayyad Caliphate also weakened the Muslim hold on central Spain, leading to the loss of the strategic city of Toledo in 1085. An influx of new groups from North Africa—first the Almoravids and then the Almohads—reunited al-Andalus, but a crushing defeat by Alfonso VIII of Castile in 1212 reduced the Muslim-held area to Granada. By then, a much shorter process of reconquest had taken place in Portugal.

Granada survived as an Islamic emirate until 1492, when Ferdinand II of Aragon and Isabella of Castile sent an army to besiege the town. Its fall, after a brief resistance, marked the end of Islamic Spain and the completion of the Reconquista.

## THE INQUISITION

THE FIGHT AGAINST HERESY IN SPAIN

For centuries, Muslims, Jews, and Christians coexisted in Spain, but by the late 14th century, a desire for religious unity grew in the country. Jews and Muslims were forcibly converted to Christianity, and the converts became targets for persecution. In 1478, Pope Sixtus IV authorized the establishment of the Inquisition, which led to public tests of faith and execution of “heretics.” The accused were dressed up and paraded in an Auto da fe ceremony (right) while their guilt and punishment were decided.



**1 ORIGINS OF THE RECONQUISTA 711–900**

In 711, an Arab-Berber army led by Tariq ibn Ziyad was sent by the Umayyad caliph into Spain, where it defeated Roderick, the Visigothic king. Within 5 years, Muslim forces had conquered all but the northern fringes of Spain. Their advance was halted around 718, when Asturian chieftain Pelayo defeated a Muslim army at Covadonga. Gradually, the Asturian kingdom consolidated as the nucleus of Christian resistance.

Limit of Umayyad Caliphate 732

**2 CHRISTIAN ADVANCES 1030–1080**

By the early 11th century, the ruling Umayyad Caliphate had broken down into dozens of small emirates (or taifas). The taifas were less able to resist Christian advances, particularly those of the kingdoms of León and Castile in the west and Aragon in the east. Many taifas were forced to pay tribute to the Christian kingdoms.

**3 THE ALMORAVIDS 1086–1165**

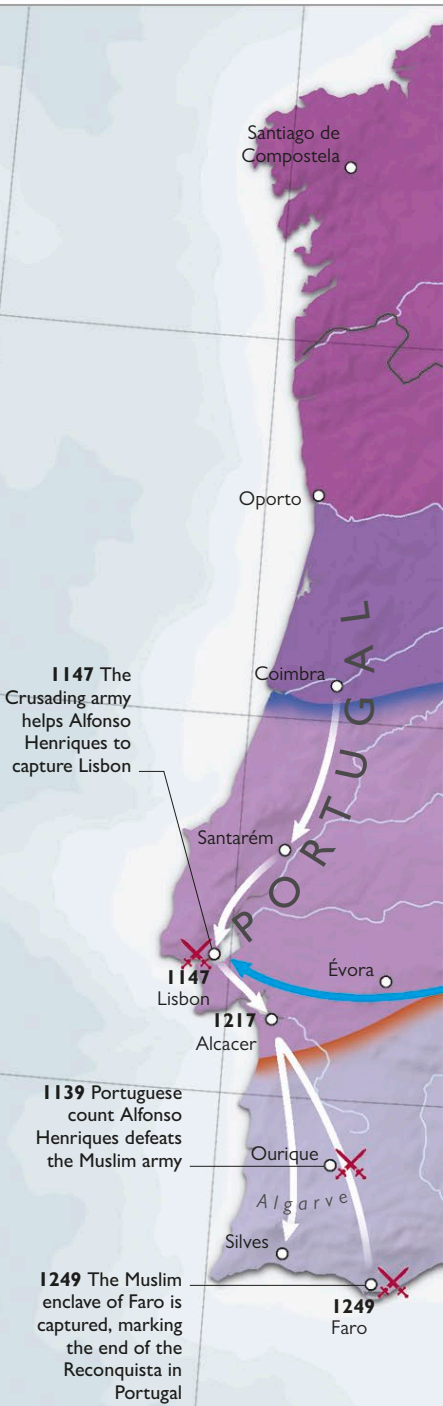
In 1085, Alfonso VI of León-Castile captured Toledo, the old capital of Visigothic Spain, leaving Islamic Spain vulnerable to Christian advances. In desperation, the rulers of the taifas appealed to Yusuf, the emir of the Almoravids, a strict Islamic sect from North Africa. He defeated Alfonso at Sagrajas and swept through central and eastern Spain, undoing many recent Christian advances.

Almoravid campaigns 1086–1115 Frontier of Almoravid Empire 1115

**4 THE ALMOHADS 1165–1228**

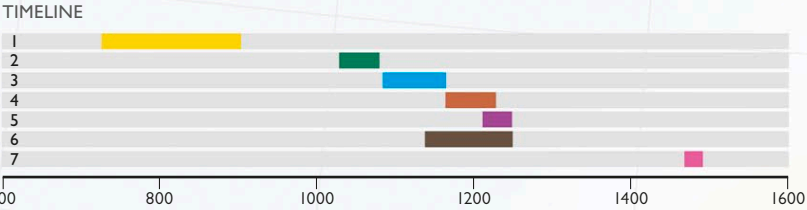
In 1165, an African Muslim group, the Almohads, entered Spain and renewed Islamic opposition to Christian encroachments. In 1195, they won a stunning victory against Alfonso VIII of Castile at Alarcos, opening up southern Spain to Almohad dominance. In 1212, Alfonso struck back, destroying the Almohad army at Las Navas de Tolosa and weakening the Muslims’ military capacity.

Frontier of Almohad Empire 1180

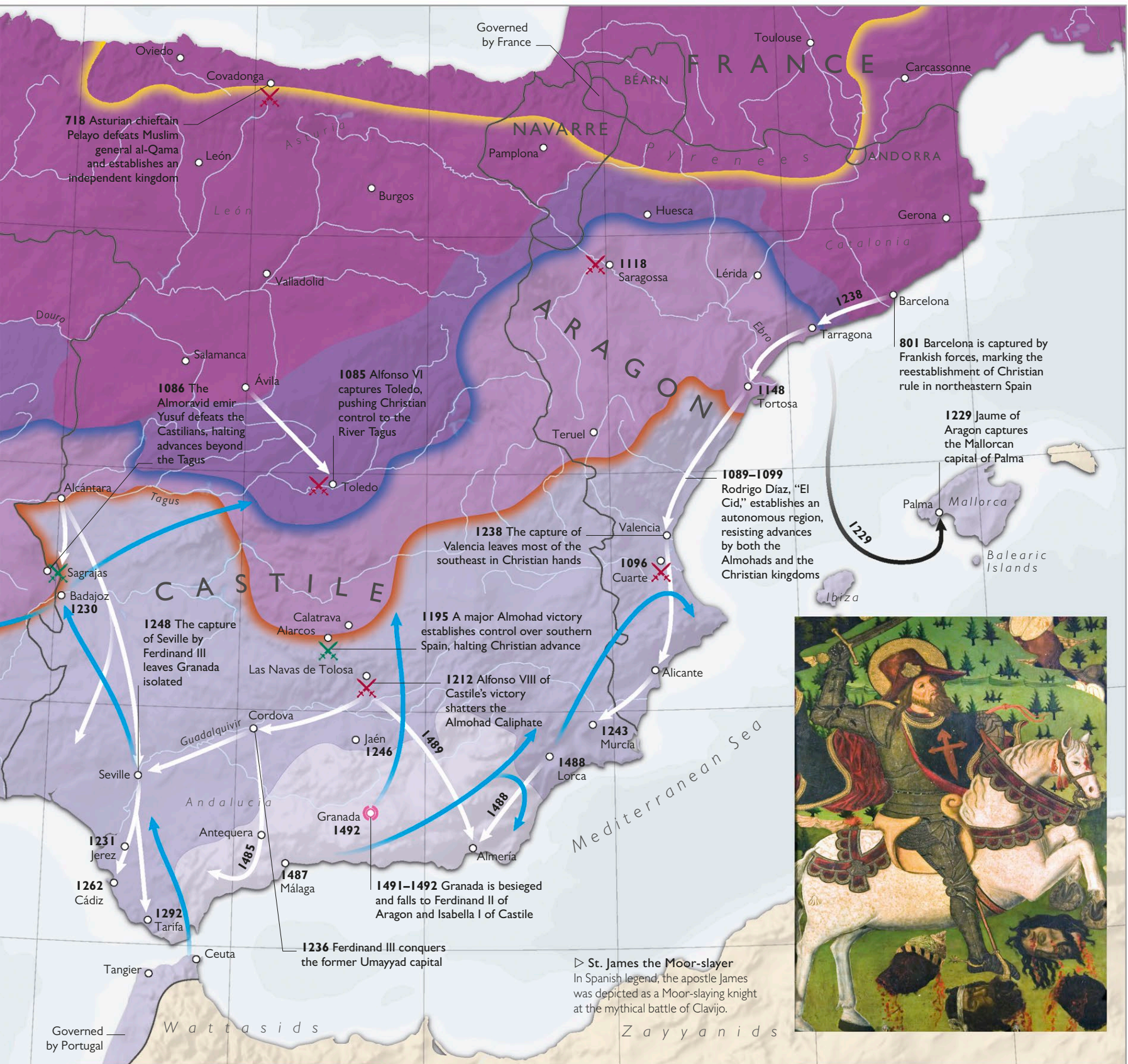


## THE RECONQUEST OF SPAIN

The Reconquista, by which the Christian kingdoms of Spain reconquered the Iberian Peninsula, took over 700 years to complete. Progress was slowest when the Muslims united around movements such as the Almoravids and Almohads.







▷ **St. James the Moor-slayer**  
In Spanish legend, the apostle James was depicted as a Moor-slaying knight at the mythical battle of Clavijo.



## 5 THE GREAT RECONQUEST 1212–1248

After defeating the Almohads at Las Navas de Tolosa, the armies of Castile and Leon pushed farther southward. Weakened, the Almohad Caliphate fractured into three parts, helping Ferdinand III of Castile to capture Cordova in 1236 and Seville in 1248. The loss of these cities was a blow to Islamic Spain, and soon only the emirate of Granada survived under Muslim control.

 Major campaigns of  
 reconquest, with date

## 6 THE RECONQUISTA IN PORTUGAL 1139–1249

In 1139, Count Alfonso Henriques won an overwhelming victory over the Muslims at Ourique. Lisbon was captured in 1147 with the help of crusaders on their way to the Second Crusade. The conquest of the Algarve was begun in the 1190s, but an Almohad resurgence pushed back the Portuguese forces, and the Reconquista was not completed there until 1249.

## 7 RECONQUEST OF GRANADA 1469–1492

The 14th and early 15th centuries saw a lull in the Reconquista, but the union of Aragon and Castile created by the marriage of Ferdinand II and Isabella I in 1469 gave it new impetus. Their armies nibbled away at the emirate of Granada, capturing Málaga in 1487. Finally, they laid siege to Granada, which resisted for 18 months before its ruler, Boabdil, surrendered and went into exile.

 Granada



# MEDIEVAL EAST ASIA

China was the dominant power in east Asia in the 6th–15th centuries. Its form of government was imitated widely in the region, from Japan to Korea and Vietnam. However, just like the other states of the period, China, too, suffered long periods of disunity and conquest by foreign powers.

In China, the division that followed the collapse of the Han Dynasty in 220 ended only when the Sui Dynasty captured Nanjing, the capital of six successive Southern dynasties, in 589. The Sui, and their successors the Tang, intervened repeatedly in neighboring states,

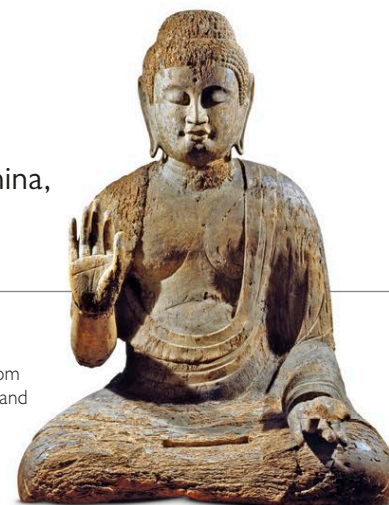
and Chinese rule expanded deep into central Asia. Although economically strong, Tang rule was undermined by fighting among factions, a defeat at the hands of an Arab army in 751, and a major revolt 4 years later. A weakened Tang Dynasty limped on until 907, when China fell apart again, to be restored in 960 by the Song, whose rule saw a period of economic and technological progress. However, by 1127, the Jurchen, a nomadic group from the north, had reduced the Song to a southern kingdom based in Nanjing. This in turn fell in 1251–1279 to the Mongols, whose leader

## ◀ Off to work

A merchant rides a camel in this Tang-era terracotta figurine. Bactrian camels—hardy species capable of carrying heavy loads—were ideal for the Silk Road trade through central Asia.

## ▷ Symbol of peace

This 11th-century wooden statue from Japan shows a seated Buddha. The hand gesture symbolizes peace and the protection of believers from fear. Buddhism was the state religion during the Nara period.



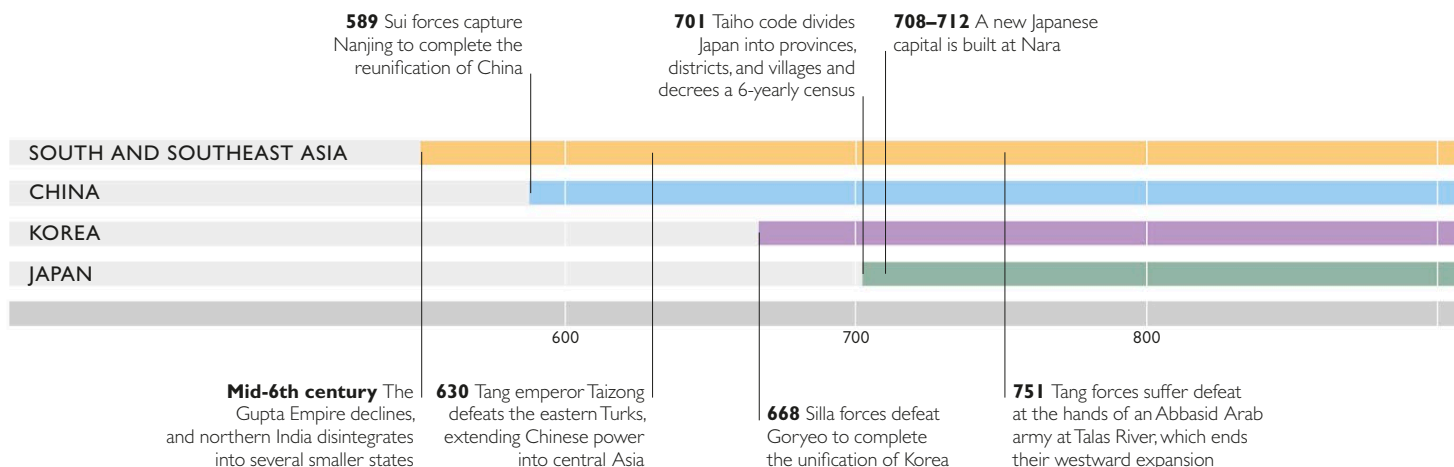
Genghis Khan established the Yuan, the first non-Chinese dynasty to rule China. In time, Mongol rule weakened, and in 1368, the rebel general Zhu Yuanzhang captured Beijing, declaring himself the first emperor of the Ming Dynasty.

## Japan and Korea

A centralized Japanese state emerged during the Nara period (710–794), with a Chinese-style bureaucracy, a system of provinces, and the dominance of Buddhism. In 794, the imperial court moved to Heian (modern-day Kyoto) to reduce the influence of Buddhist monks, but over time, powerful aristocratic families such as the Minamoto and Taira took real power away from the emperor. Rivalry between them led to the Genpei War in 1180–1185, ending with the defeat of the Taira and the establishment of a Minamoto military government, or shogunate, at Kamakura. The emperors became symbolic leaders—although Emperor Go-Daigo did spark a revolt in 1331, in an attempt to assert imperial power. The shoguns, first the Kamakura and then the Muromachi, became the real rulers. By the mid-15th century, however, the shogunate in turn lost power to the daimyo, local warlords, as Japan fragmented into a series of warring statelets.

## POWER SHIFTS IN EAST ASIA

The medieval period saw the process of state formation in Southeast Asia and Japan, both of which were strongly influenced by Chinese models of government and by Buddhism. In China itself, a period of disunity was followed by the reestablishment of strong central control under the Tang and Song Dynasties. India, in contrast, fragmented after the collapse of the Gupta Empire in the 6th century, and many separate dynasties ruled the north and south of the subcontinent.







#### ◁ Heavenly dancers

This intricate carving from the 12th-century Angkor Wat temple complex in Cambodia depicts four *apsaras*, or heavenly dancers, who provided entertainment to gods and granted favors to humans in the heaven of the Hindu god Indra.

After the departure of Chinese administrators in 313, the Korean peninsula was divided between three warring states: Goryeo, Silla, and Paekche. China tried to reconquer Korea, but Silla exploited Chinese attacks on the other two states to reunite Korea under its rule in 668. Unified Silla installed a Chinese-style bureaucracy but collapsed amid a wave of revolts around 900. In 935, Wang Kon founded the Goryeo Dynasty, reuniting Korea, but Mongol invasions from 1231 reduced Korea to a vassal (subordinate) state, until King Kongmin reasserted its independence in 1356. Chinese pressure continued until, in 1388, Yi Song-gye defeated the Ming and established the Choson Dynasty, which ruled Korea until 1910.

### Kingdoms of Southeast Asia

The period from the 9th to the 11th centuries saw a series of strong territorial states being established in Southeast Asia. The Pagan kingdom under Anawrahta united most of what is now Myanmar, while the Angkor kingdom (in today's Cambodia) under Suryavarman II reached the height of its power. In 1181, the Angkor Empire under Jayavarman VII defeated the Champa Empire, which had ruled southern

Cambodia since the 7th century and had also sacked Angkor in 1177. However, the Southeast Asian kingdoms suffered under Mongol attacks, which weakened Pagan and nearly defeated the Vietnamese kingdom of Dai Viet. By the late 15th century, the great medieval kingdoms were crumbling: the Champa capital Vijaya was captured by Dai Viet, and Angkor was sacked by the Thai kingdom of Ayutthaya.

Smaller states had risen in northern India after the fall of the Gupta Empire in the mid-6th century. These were united by Harsha Vardhen of the Pushyabhuti Dynasty, but his kingdom fell apart after his murder in 647. It was only after the invasion of Muhammad of Ghur in 1192 and the founding of the Delhi Sultanate in 1206 that northern India was reunited once more. The south of India developed separately; the Chola Empire expanded in the 10th–11th centuries, occupying northern Sri Lanka and ports along the Malay peninsula, but it collapsed in the 12th century. The kingdom of Vijayanagara, founded in 1336, dominated southern India until its conquest by the Mughals in the 17th century.

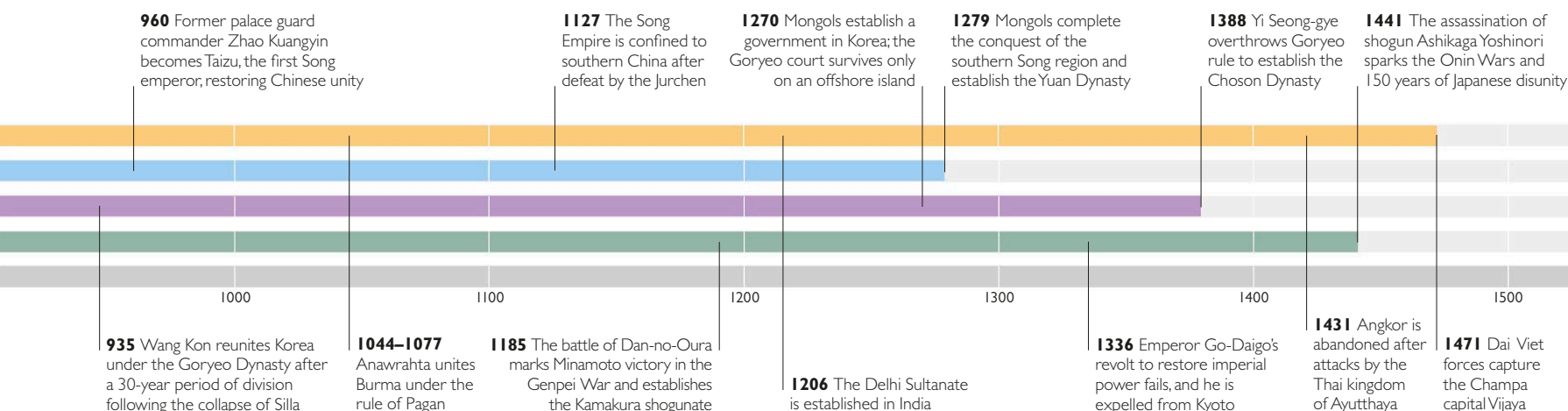
#### ▽ Divine architecture

The 10th-century Mukteshwar Temple in Odisha, southern India, forms part of a larger complex of temples there. Dedicated to the Hindu god Shiva, it was built under the Somavanshi Dynasty, which ruled parts of southeastern India between the 9th and 12th centuries.



*“Baekje [Paekche] is at full moon, Silla is at half moon.”*

PROPHECY PREDICTING THE RISE OF SILLA, 669



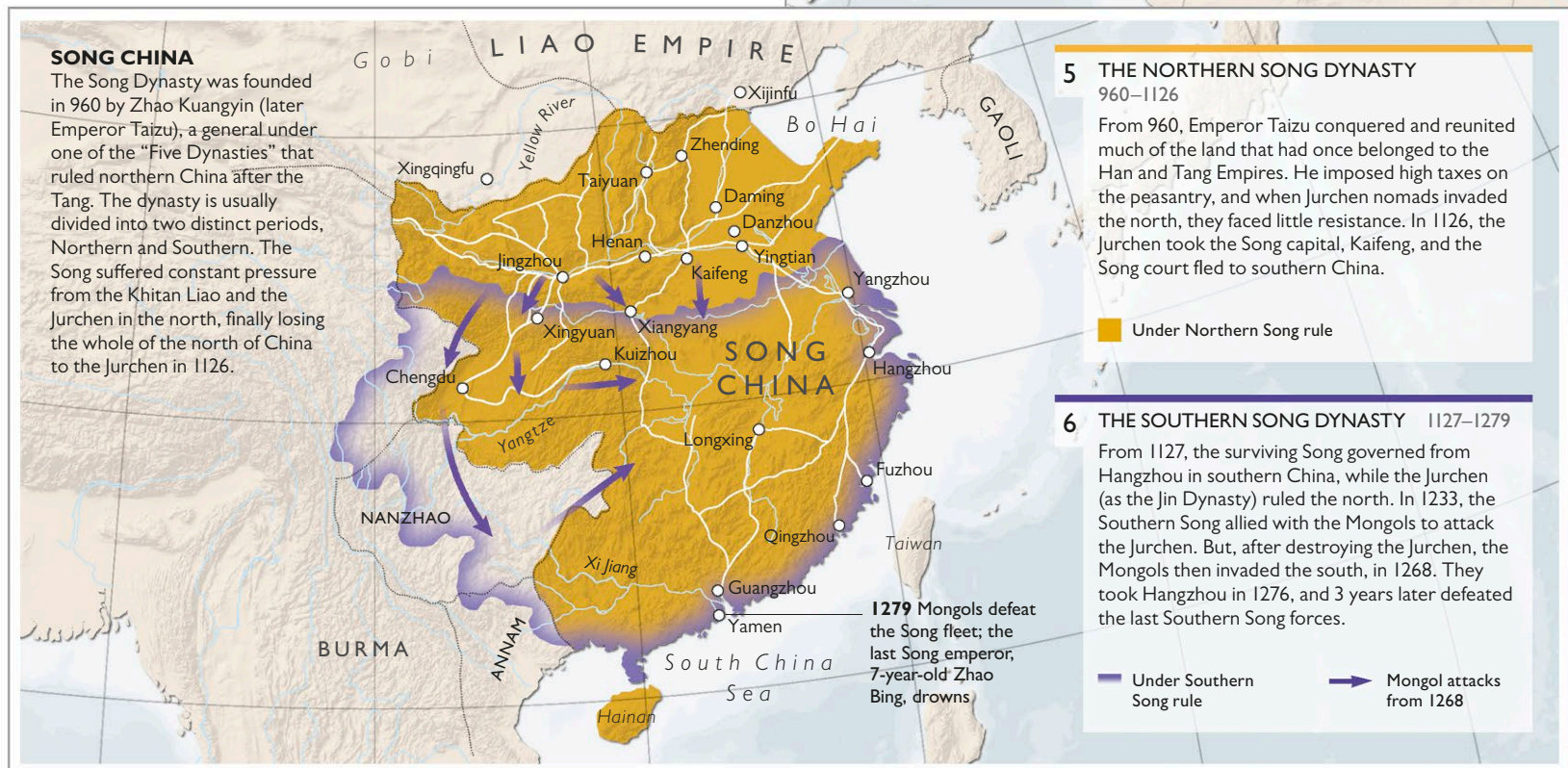
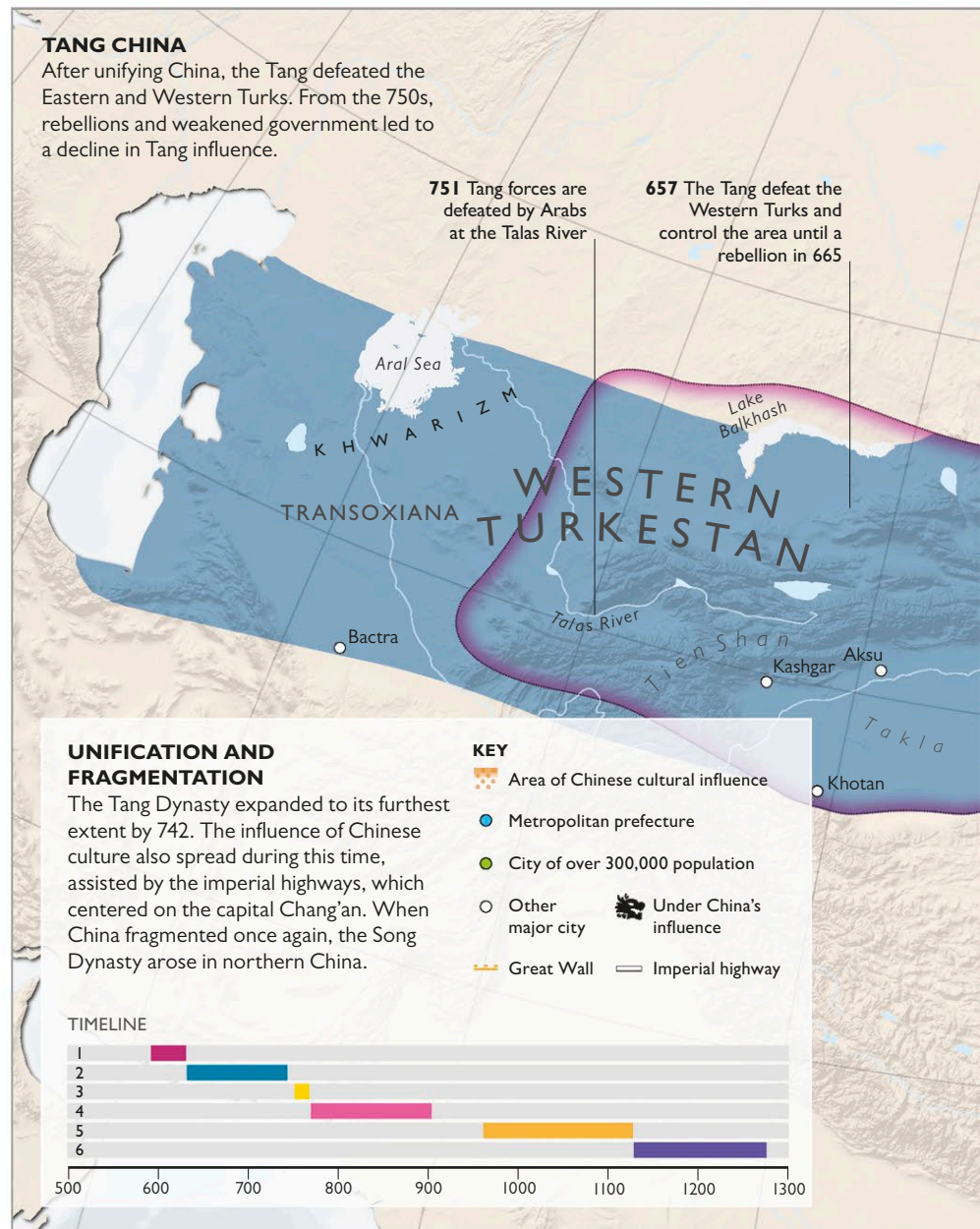


# TANG AND SONG CHINA

After a long period of disunity following the fall of the Han Dynasty, China was reunited under the Sui and then the Tang and Song Dynasties. China prospered, and Chinese power prevailed across central Asia before the Song were finally conquered by the Mongols.

Following the end of the Han Dynasty in 220 CE, China broke apart. The Sui Dynasty (581–618) reunified China, but after a rebellion in 618, Li Yuan took the throne. He and his son, Li Shimin, established the Tang Dynasty, enacting reforms that brought order to the provinces of China. In 639, Li Shimin (by now Emperor Taizong) sent armies into Turkestan, establishing Tang control over a string of strategic trading settlements, such as Dunhuang.

In 755, the dynasty was weakened by a revolt led by general An Lushan; although imperial forces regained control, a series of weak rulers later led to the Tang's collapse in 907. A dozen rival kingdoms vied for power until the Song Dynasty subdued the others and established rule over the whole country by 960. In this resurgent China, trade guilds emerged, paper money was adopted on a large scale, and inventions such as gunpowder and the magnetic compass came into widespread use. By the early 12th century, the dynasty had begun to weaken; nomadic Jurchen tribes conquered the north of China, confining the Song to the south of their former territory.





## 1 THE UNIFICATION OF CHINA 590–628

After the fall of the Han, China broke apart as a series of dynasties, many originating in nomadic groups from the north. Unity was briefly restored in 590, when the Sui Dynasty took control, but their expensive wars against Korea and the Turks led to the dynasty's collapse in 618. After a period of chaos, the young general Li Shimin restored order and placed his father on the throne as Gaozu, the first Tang emperor. By 628, China was united once more.

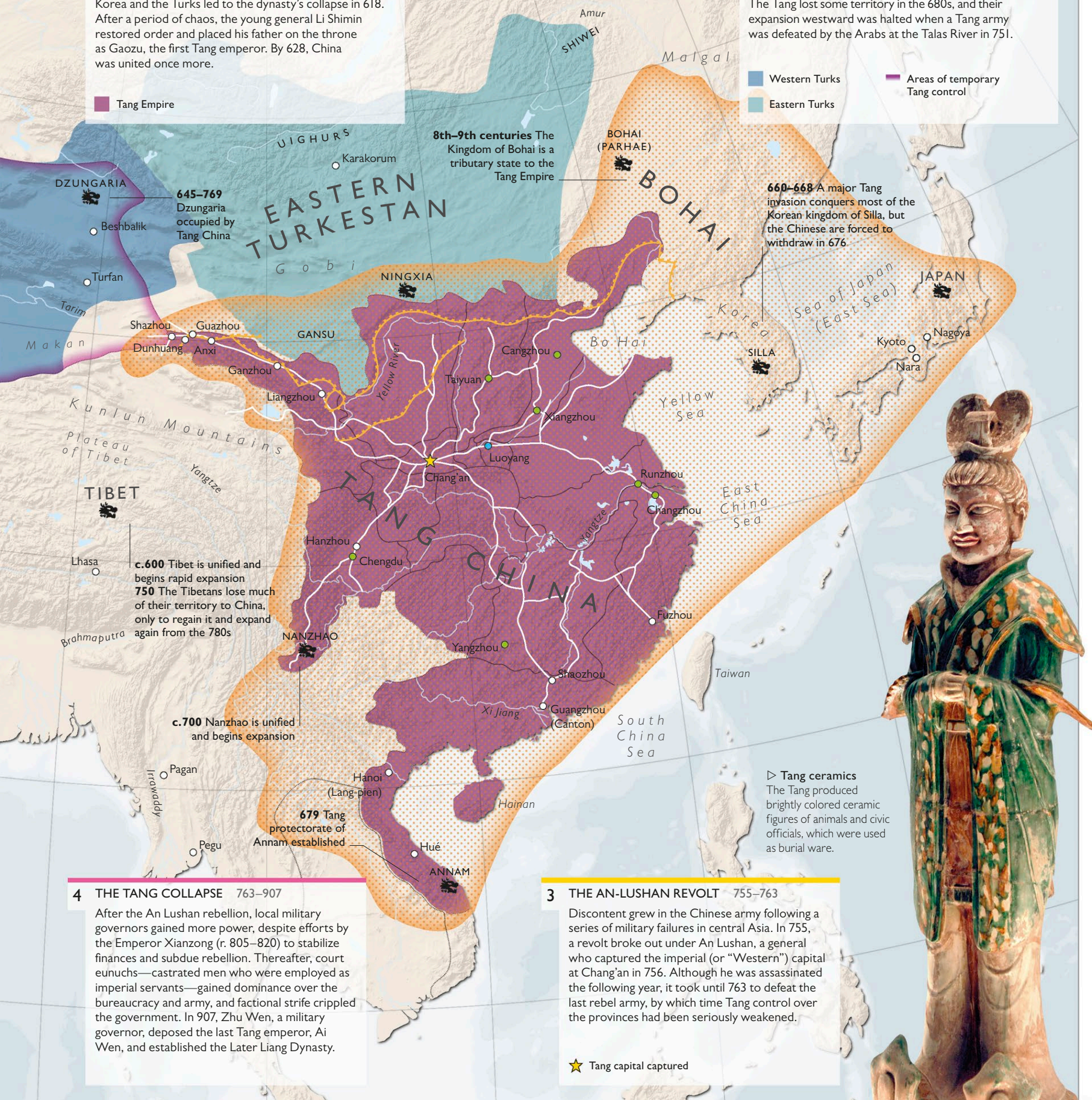
Tang Empire

## 2 THE CENTRAL ASIAN EMPIRE 629–751

Turkic invasions threatened China in the first years of the Tang, but in 629, Emperor Taizong defeated the Eastern Turks. He later sent armies into central Asia, establishing protectorates in the western regions as far as Kashgar. The Tang lost some territory in the 680s, and their expansion westward was halted when a Tang army was defeated by the Arabs at the Talas River in 751.

Western Turks  
Eastern Turks

Areas of temporary  
Tang control



**660–668** A major Tang invasion conquers most of the Korean kingdom of Silla, but the Chinese are forced to withdraw in 676.

**645–769** Dzungaria occupied by Tang China

**8th–9th centuries** The Kingdom of Bohai is a tributary state to the Tang Empire

**c. 600** Tibet is unified and begins rapid expansion  
**750** The Tibetans lose much of their territory to China, only to regain it and expand again from the 780s

**c. 700** Nanzhao is unified and begins expansion

**679** Tang protectorate of Annam established

## 4 THE TANG COLLAPSE 763–907

After the An Lushan rebellion, local military governors gained more power, despite efforts by the Emperor Xianzong (r. 805–820) to stabilize finances and subdue rebellion. Thereafter, court eunuchs—castrated men who were employed as imperial servants—gained dominance over the bureaucracy and army, and factional strife crippled the government. In 907, Zhu Wen, a military governor, deposed the last Tang emperor, Ai Wen, and established the Later Liang Dynasty.

## 3 THE AN-LUSHAN REVOLT 755–763

Discontent grew in the Chinese army following a series of military failures in central Asia. In 755, a revolt broke out under An Lushan, a general who captured the imperial (or “Western”) capital at Chang’an in 756. Although he was assassinated the following year, it took until 763 to defeat the last rebel army, by which time Tang control over the provinces had been seriously weakened.

★ Tang capital captured

▷ Tang ceramics  
The Tang produced brightly colored ceramic figures of animals and civic officials, which were used as burial ware.



# MEDIEVAL KOREA AND JAPAN

Korea and Japan both began developing a centralized bureaucratic monarchy in the 8th century, drawing strong influence from the Tang Dynasty of neighboring China. In addition, the cultural landscapes of both states were largely shaped by the arrival of Buddhism from China in the 4th century.

In the mid-7th century, the Korean state of Silla enlisted the military support of Tang China to defeat the rival kingdom of Koguryo and Paekche to unify the country under its leadership. After ruling for almost three centuries, Silla disintegrated in the ensuing chaos following the fall of China's Tang Dynasty in 906. Thereafter, the Goryeo state (founded in 901 by former Koguryo leaders) reunified Korea in 936 and presided over a period of economic and cultural

*"... my armor and helmet were my pillow; my bow and arrows were my trade ..."*

YOSHITSUNE MINAMOTO, MINAMOTO GENERAL, c.1189

prosperity. However, a series of Mongol attacks from 1231 eventually resulted in Goryeo's fall and, from 1270, it became a vassal state of the Mongol Yuan Empire for the next 80 years.

In Japan, the introduction of Buddhism in 538 coincided with the fall of Yamato rule, as powerful clans and regional kingdoms fought for power. The Taiku Reforms of 646 paved the way for Japan to unify under a centralized government based on the Chinese model.

The emperors of the Nara period slowly lost power, first to the Fujiwara family in the 10th and 11th centuries, and then to the samurai, who supported a military dictatorship called the shogun. The powerful Kamakura shogunate thwarted two Mongol invasions, but it was eventually toppled by a rival clan, and thereafter power ebbed to the local daimyo, or domain lords, leading to a century-long civil war (see pp.180–181).

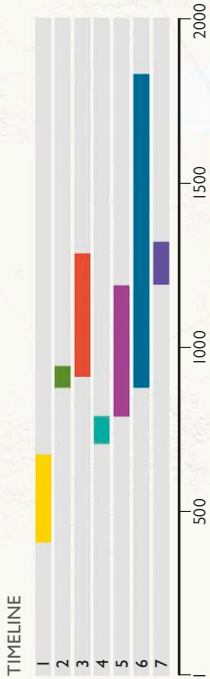
GORYEO TOMBS  
A CULTURAL HERITAGE



The best-known remains of the Korean Goryeo kingdom are the tombs of its society's elites. Built of stone and covered by stone or earthen mounds, these tombs are customarily adorned with wall paintings. In the complex of tombs around Gaegyeong (modern Kaesong), the Goryeo capital, among the most famous is the Hyonjongrung Royal Tomb of King Kongmin. The twin mounds contain the remains of the monarch and his wife—the Mongolian princess Noguk.

## STATE CREATION IN KOREA AND JAPAN

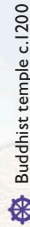
Regional wars between the 4th and 7th centuries led to the unification of the Korean peninsula under first the Silla and then the Goryeo kingdom. Meanwhile, in Japan, a succession of powerful clans brought the country's mosaic of chiefdoms under a single rule.



## 7 THE KAMAKURA SHOGUNATE

1192–1333

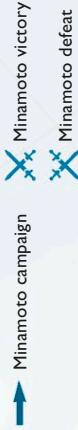
Minamoto Yoritomo founded the Kamakura shogunate in 1221. The shogunate reestablished contact with China, which resulted in Japan absorbing new sects of Buddhism, in particular Zen Buddhism. The shogunate appointed its own military governors, or *shugo*, as heads of each province and named stewards to supervise the individual estates into which the provinces had been divided, thereby establishing an effective national network to maintain stability.



Buddhist temple c.1200

## 6 RISE OF THE SAMURAI 900–1868

From the early 900s, weak Heian rule caused dissatisfaction to spread across the provinces. Nobles began hiring warriors to safeguard their own interests, giving rise to the early samurai. By the 1100s, provincial lords were fighting one another for supremacy, which culminated in the Minamoto clan seizing power after defeating the Taira clan in the Genpei War (1156–1185).



AREAS OF CONTROL, 1180

■ Fujiwara ■ Minamoto ■ Taira

POHAI

Tamatsukuri

Kuryagawa

Nie

Hiratzumi



# KOREA: THE UNIFICATION WARS 370–668

From the 4th century, the kingdoms of Paekche, Koguryo, Silla, and the Gaya Confederacy were fighting to gain control of Korea. Exploiting the Chinese Tang Dynasty's rivalry with Koguryo, Silla forces enlisted the help of the Tang Army to crush Paekche, and in 668 ce, they took the Koguryo capital Pyongyang, uniting Korea under King Munmu.

- Paekche (17–660)
- Koguryo (37–668)
- Silla Dynasty (57–935)
- Tang and Silla campaigns
- Gaya (42–532)
- Silla (57–668)
- Major battle
- Siege

668 Tang and Silla siege of Pyongyang forces Koguryo rulers to abandon the city

663 Tang and Silla army crushes the Paekche with a victory in Baekgang

△ Gilt bronze Bodhisattva  
Buddhism reached Korea via China in the 4th century and inspired a distinctive tradition of Buddhist art. Buddha sculptures were typically given Korean facial characteristics.



## 2 THE RISE OF GORYEO 889–935

After two centuries of Silla rule, rebellions led by provincial warlords caused the Korean peninsula briefly to divide into three parts (Later Three Kingdoms). In this new era, the reformed Koguryo state, Goryeo (which has given its name to modern Korea), possessed the strongest military. In 935, Goryeo commander Wang Geon captured Ningpo, Kyongju, the Silla capital, and reunited the peninsula.

- Goryeo state (901–918)
- Capital

## 3 GORYEO KOREA 935–1392

The demand for luxury goods increased, and the local handicraft industries grew during the Goryeo era. The capital Gaegyeong grew into a major trade hub, with overseas links to the rest of east Asia. Goryeo also adopted the Seon branch of Buddhism, which it proclaimed the "religion of the state." In 1270, Goryeo rule fell to a Mongol invasion, and the peninsula became a vassal state of the Yuan Empire.

- Trade route
- Capital

## 4 JAPAN: NARA PERIOD 710–794

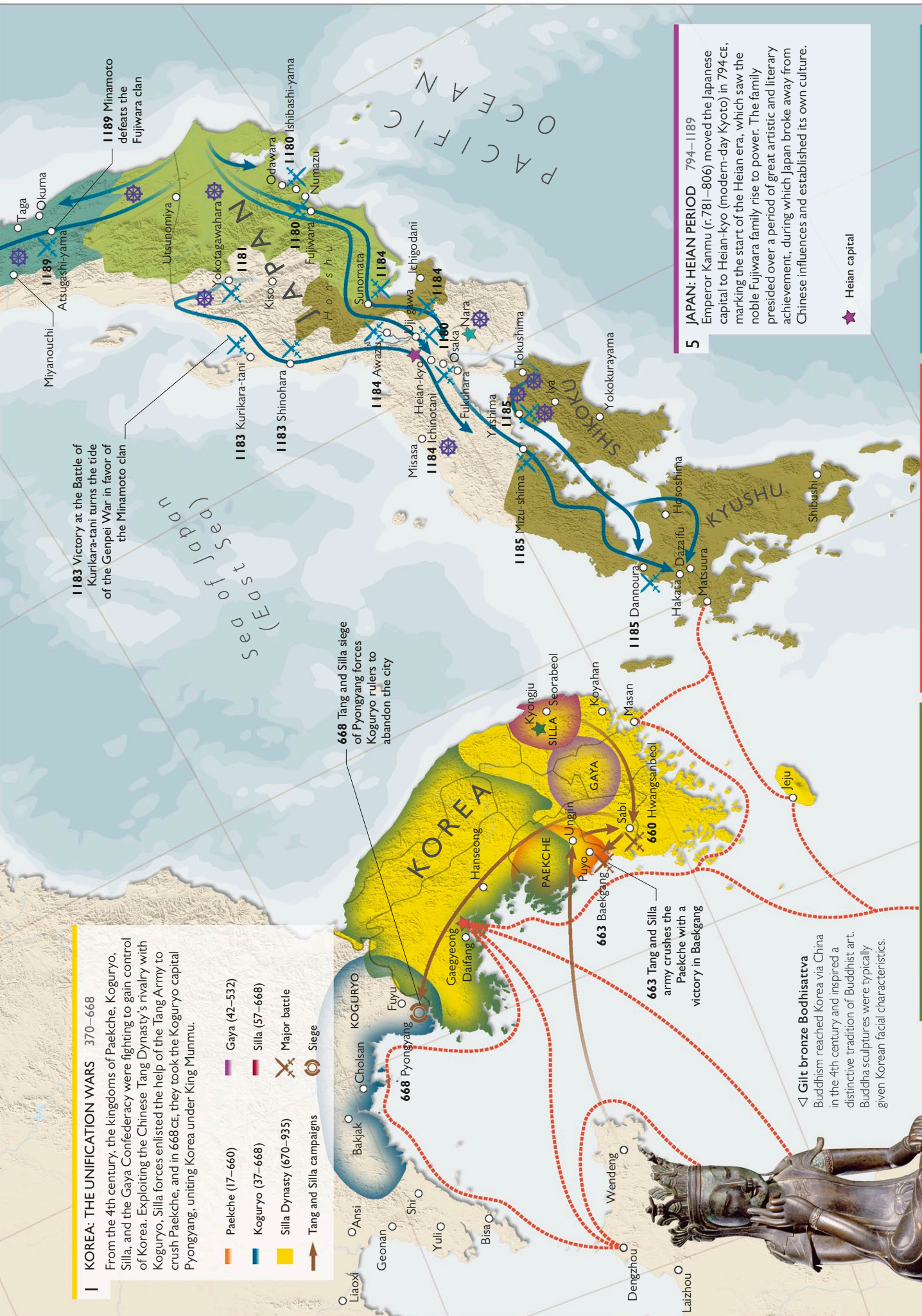
In the early 8th century, Japan adopted a Confucian bureaucracy based on the Chinese model, which included a centralized revenue collection system. Under Empress Genmei (r. 707–715), a new capital was built in Nara, replicating Chang'an—the Chinese Tang capital. Besides Chinese influence, Buddhism also shaped Japanese culture during the Nara era.

- Nara capital

## 5 JAPAN: HEIAN PERIOD 794–1189

Emperor Kanmu (r. 781–806) moved the Japanese capital to Heian-kyo (modern-day Kyoto) in 794 ce, marking the start of the Heian era, which saw the noble Fujiwara family rise to power. The family presided over a period of great artistic and literary achievement, during which Japan broke away from Chinese influences and established its own culture.

- Heian capital





**3 DEFEAT AT AIN JALUT 1251–1259**

Under Great Khan Möngke, the Mongols overthrew the Abbasid Caliphate, brutally sacking Baghdad and destroying the city's Grand Library. Möngke's death in 1259 prompted part of the army to return home, and the rest suffered defeat at the Battle of Ain Jalut against the Mamluks—an Islamic army of slave soldiers who ruled Egypt and Syria from 1250 to 1517.

→ Möngke's campaign route

1241 Mongols destroy a Polish-German army, opening the way for further conquest in Europe

**4 KUBLAI KHAN TAKES CHINA 1251–1294**

The grandson of Genghis Khan, Kublai Khan, overthrew the Song Dynasty in 1279 and conquered the whole of China to establish the Yuan Dynasty. He gained the loyalty of his Chinese subjects by employing many in his administration. In 1277, he launched campaigns against Burma and Vietnam, in what was a decade-long war against the Pagan Empire.

→ Kublai Khan's campaign route

**5 THE FOUR KHANATES 1259–1411**

A single Mongol ruler could not govern the vast imperial realm. In 1259, the empire was divided into four khanates. Each of the four realms was ruled by a descendant of Genghis Khan: the Khanate of the house of Chagatai, the Il-khanate of Hulagu, the Golden Horde of Berke Khan, and what became the Yuan Empire of Kublai Khan.

— Khanate borders

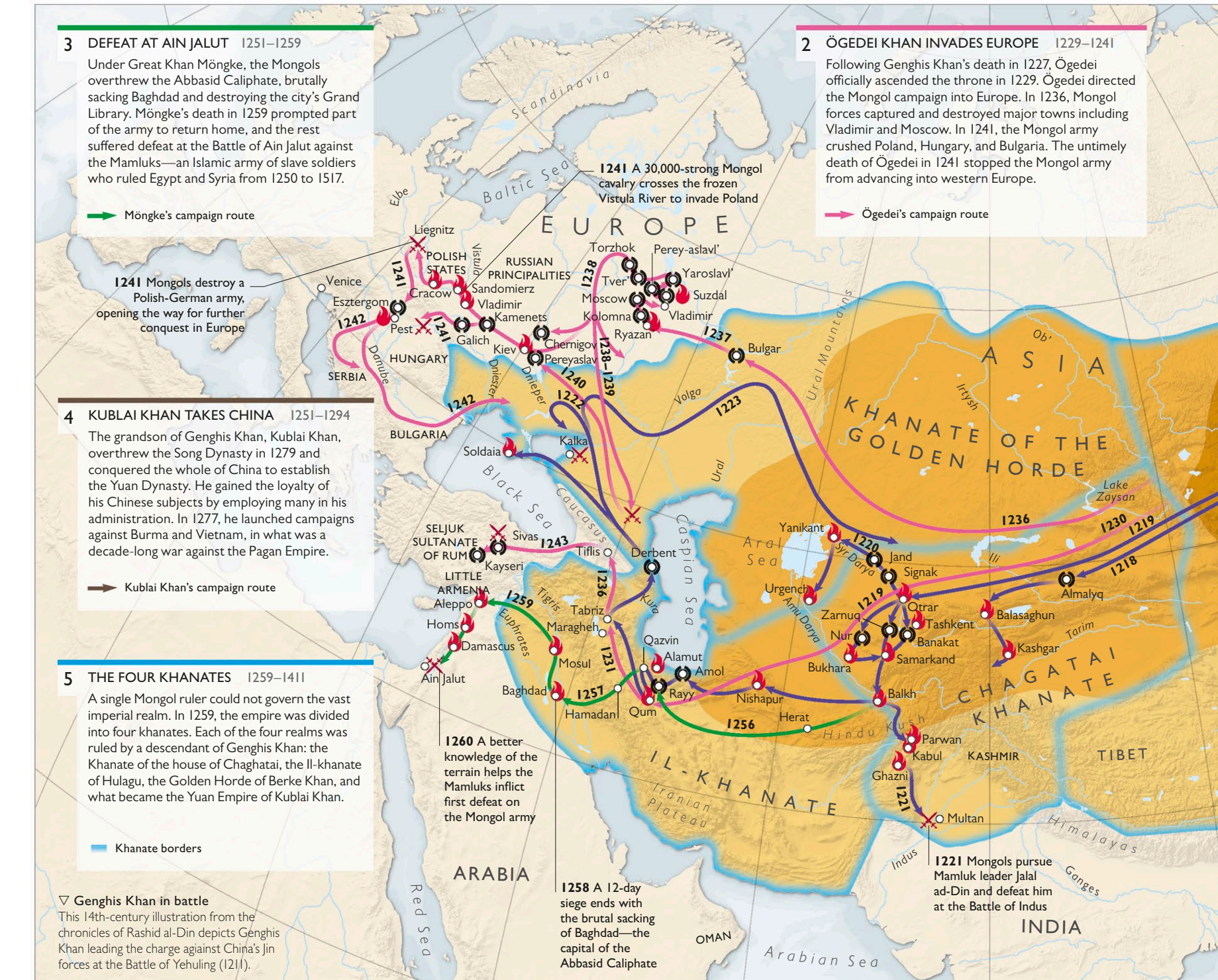
**▽ Genghis Khan in battle**

This 14th-century illustration from the chronicles of Rashid al-Din depicts Genghis Khan leading the charge against China's Jin forces at the Battle of Yehuling (1211).

**2 ÖGEDEI KHAN INVADES EUROPE 1229–1241**

Following Genghis Khan's death in 1227, Ögedei officially ascended the throne in 1229. Ögedei directed the Mongol campaign into Europe. In 1236, Mongol forces captured and destroyed major towns including Vladimir and Moscow. In 1241, the Mongol army crushed Poland, Hungary, and Bulgaria. The untimely death of Ögedei in 1241 stopped the Mongol army from advancing into western Europe.

→ Ögedei's campaign route

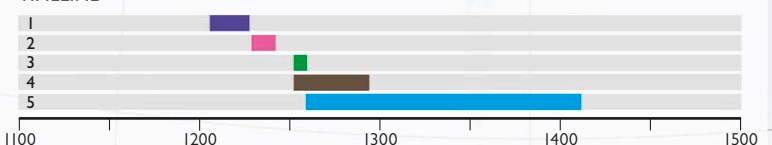
**THE MONGOL CONQUESTS 1206–1294**

Between 1206 and 1227, Mongol leader Genghis Khan built an empire that spanned from China to Persia. Although his successors brought more territories under Mongol rule, in 1260, the empire split into four different realms, or Khanates, and political and cultural differences between them grew.

**KEY**

- Mongol homeland 1206
- Mongol Empire c.1227
- Greatest extent of Mongol Empire

- X Major Mongol victory
- X Major Mongol defeat
- City sacked by Mongols
- City captured by Mongols

**TIMELINE**



## GENGHIS KHAN CONQUERS ASIA 1206–1227

Under Genghis Khan, Mongol raids into northern China turned into a full-scale campaign in 1211. Meanwhile, Mongol forces marched westward, besieging the Kara Khitai cities of Balasaghun and Kashgar. When a Mongol envoy to the Khwarazm Empire was slaughtered in Otrar, the Mongols sacked the major cities of the Islamic empire. In 1219, Genghis Khan chose his third son Ögedei as his successor.

→ Genghis Khan's campaign route



# THE MONGOL CONQUESTS

The Mongols were a mix of Mongolian and Turkic-speaking tribes who united under the leadership of Temujin in the early 13th century. From their homeland in modern-day Mongolia, the fierce Mongol warriors then swept across Asia and Europe, creating the largest land empire in history.

Chosen as the Mongol leader at a tribal meeting in 1206, Temujin took the name Genghis Khan (meaning universal ruler) and united all the tribes under his leadership. In command of a formidable army of warriors on horseback, Genghis Khan organized his army and embarked on a conquest that lasted more than 20 years and resulted in the majority of Asia falling under his rule.

In 1211, Mongol armies invaded northern China, raiding and sacking many Chinese cities. In a long and hard-fought battle, the Mongols took the Chinese capital, Zhongdu, and forced the Jin emperor to flee south.

In 1218, Genghis Khan defeated the Kara Khitai Empire in central Asia after besieging the capital Balasaghun. He then redirected his army against the Islamic world and overwhelmed the lands of the Khwarazm Shah, wreaking great destruction upon the cities of Bukhara and Samarkand. The Mongol army's expertise at traversing long

distances and fighting on horseback, combined with its brutal reputation, struck terror into most adversaries. Although Genghis Khan died in 1227, while on a campaign in China, the empire continued to grow under his son Ögedei, who eliminated the Jin Empire in China in 1234 and also fought campaigns in Russia and eastern Europe. The expansion of the empire slowed after Ögedei died in 1241 and ended in 1260 following the Mongols' first major defeat by the army of the Mamluk Sultanate (1250–1517) at Ain Jalut in Palestine. Soon afterward, the empire fragmented, with separate khans ruling China, Persia, central Asia, and the Russian Principalities.

A century later, a last Mongol resurgence took place under Timur—ruler of a Mongol principality in Transoxiana (a remnant of the Chagatai Khanate). He briefly conquered a vast territory across central Asia but was unable to consolidate the empire.

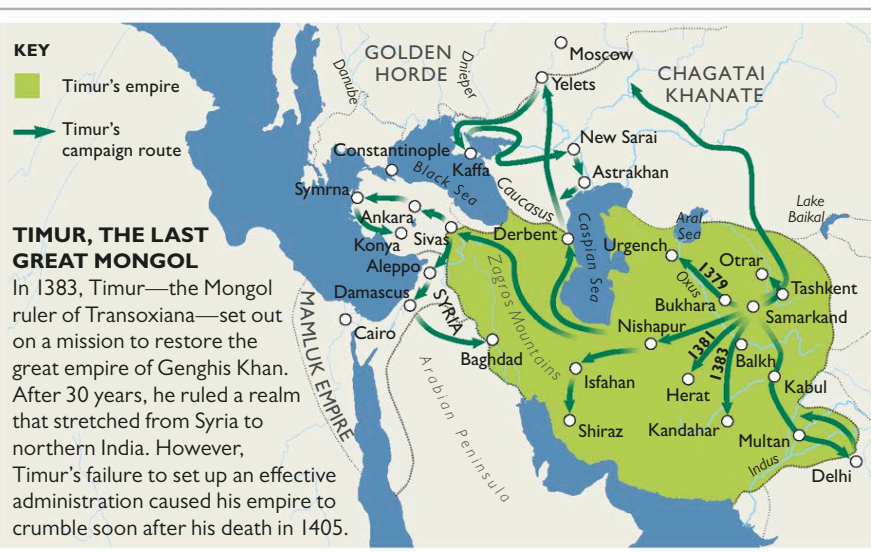
## KEY

■ Timur's empire

→ Timur's campaign route

## TIMUR, THE LAST GREAT MONGOL

In 1383, Timur—the Mongol ruler of Transoxiana—set out on a mission to restore the great empire of Genghis Khan. After 30 years, he ruled a realm that stretched from Syria to northern India. However, Timur's failure to set up an effective administration caused his empire to crumble soon after his death in 1405.





# 1 MONGOL CONQUEST OF CHINA 1211–1293

A series of Great Khans overcame China in stages. Genghis Khan conquered the non-Chinese powers occupying northern China—the Western Xia and the Jurchen people who had founded the Jin Dynasty. Genghis's grandson Möngke Khan then took the Dali Kingdom (which later became the Yunnan province of Yuan China). Finally, Möngke's successor Kublai Khan overthrew the entirety of Song China, becoming the first non-native emperor of all China.

➡ Mongol campaigns against the Jin Dynasty of northern China (1209–1234)

➡ Yuan campaigns against the Dali kingdom and Song Dynasty of southern China (1253–1293)

✖ Key battle

1253 Mongol leader Möngke Khan dispatches Prince Kublai to take the Dali Kingdom (Yunnan province)  
1273 Kublai appoints a governor to ensure taxes are collected for the Yuan

## 2 THE YUAN DYNASTY 1272–1368

Kublai Khan proclaimed that 1272 was the first year of the Yuan Dynasty, with newly built Khanbaliq, or Dadu (modern-day Beijing) its capital. After construction was completed in 1293, Dadu featured a grand palace and huge fortress walls around its perimeter. Meanwhile, Kublai retained links with the Mongolian heartland by making Shangdu the empire's summer capital.

★ Imperial capital

--- External and internal Yuan borders

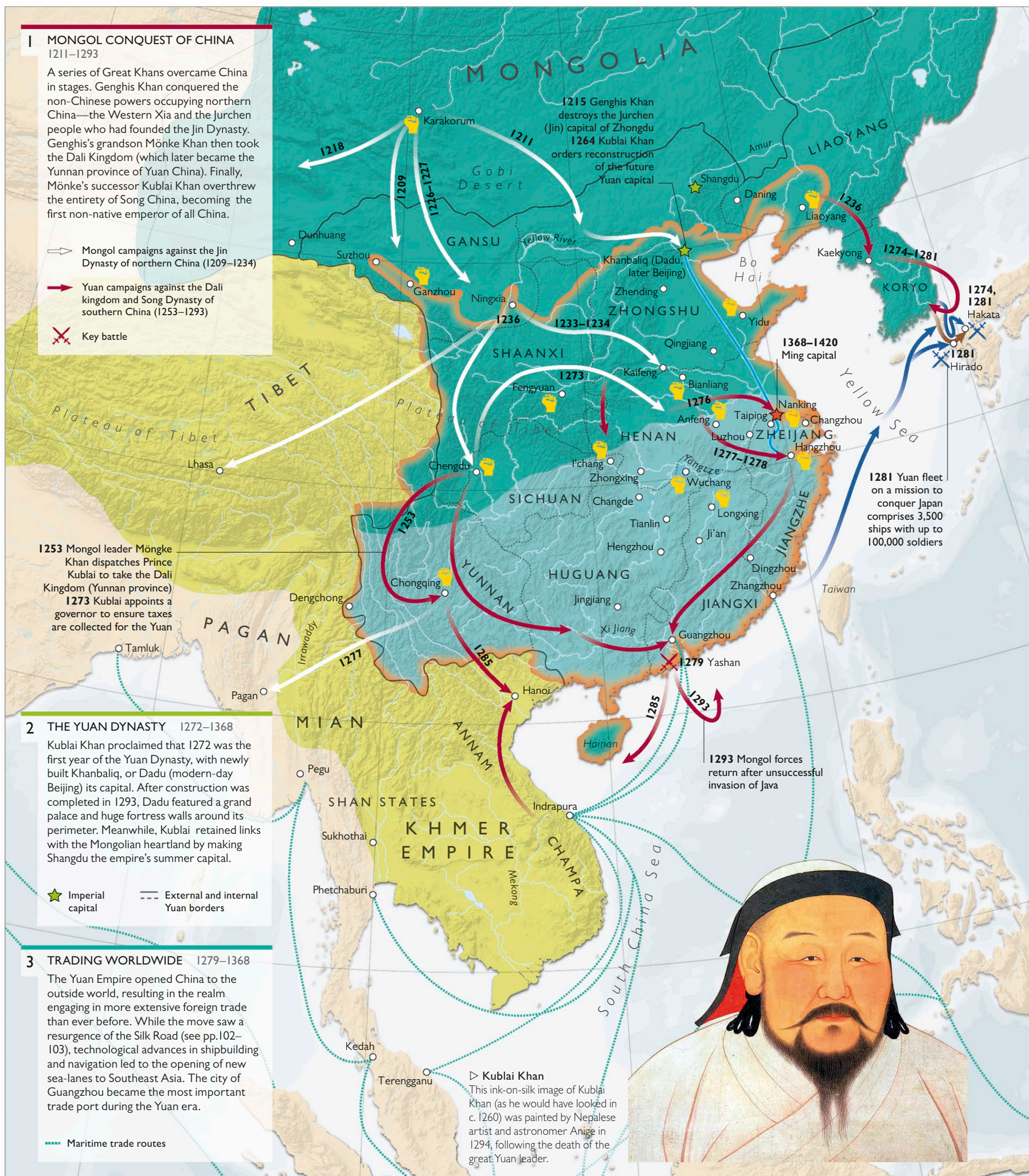
## 3 TRADING WORLDWIDE 1279–1368

The Yuan Empire opened China to the outside world, resulting in the realm engaging in more extensive foreign trade than ever before. While the move saw a resurgence of the Silk Road (see pp.102–103), technological advances in shipbuilding and navigation led to the opening of new sea-lanes to Southeast Asia. The city of Guangzhou became the most important trade port during the Yuan era.

..... Maritime trade routes

### ▷ Kublai Khan

This ink-on-silk image of Kublai Khan (as he would have looked in c. 1260) was painted by Nepalese artist and astronomer Anige in 1294, following the death of the great Yuan leader.





## 4 LUCKLESS IN JAPAN 1274–1281

In 1274, Kublai Khan dispatched a fleet to conquer Japan. Despite scoring some early victories, the Mongols were forced to retreat when a storm destroyed hundreds of ships, many of which were flat-bottomed river vessels. A second invasion in 1281 met a similar fate, as the Mongol armada was unable to penetrate the Japanese defense wall and perished when it was struck by a typhoon.

## INVASION ROUTES

→ 1274

→ 1281

✕ Key battle, 1274

## 5 THE GRAND CANAL 1281–1293

The Yuan rounded up 4 million peasants to work on a new, direct route for the Grand Canal, the oldest parts of which dated to the 6th century BCE. The laborers carved a passage hundreds of miles long through hill country, linking the capital to Hangzhou. This allowed grain transportation to the north, further disenfranchizing the populace.

— Grand Canal

## 6 RED TURBAN REBELLION 1351–1368

A series of floods and droughts in the 1340s was interpreted by the Chinese as divine signs of the Yuan having lost the “Mandate of Heaven.” Revolts broke out across the realm and gave rise to the Red Turban Rebellion. Led by Zhu Yuanzhang, the rebels drove out the Yuan court and seized the capital in 1368.

✊ Provincial capital affected by peasant revolt

## 7 EARLY MING 1368–1398

Zhu Yuanzhang became the Hongwu emperor—the first ruler of the Ming Dynasty, which would rule China for the next three centuries. He took personal control of the organs of government and restored order throughout the country. He instituted public work projects and introduced reforms to redistribute land to the peasants.

— Ming Empire

★ Imperial capital

## RISE AND FALL OF THE YUAN EMPIRE

The Mongols eliminated the Jin Empire in 1234 and took control of northern China. Under the leadership of Kublai Khan, the Yuan Empire conquered the southern Song lands in 1279. After ruling China for 89 years, the Yuan Dynasty fell to peasant revolts and was replaced by the native Chinese Ming Dynasty.

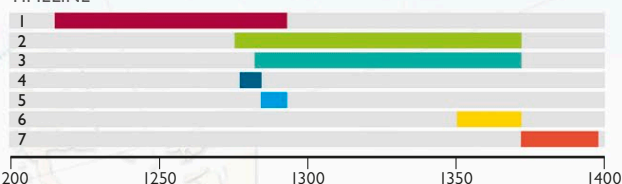
## KEY

■ Yuan Empire to 1279

■ Area under loose or temporary Yuan control

■ Yuan expansion 1280–1368

## TIMELINE



## YUAN CHINA TO THE EARLY MING

In 1272, Genghis Khan's grandson, Kublai Khan, founded China's first foreign-led empire, the Yuan, and 9 years later, he wrested control of the whole realm. However, a system of rule that repressed the Chinese eventually gave rise to widespread rebellion that led to the empire's downfall 89 years later.

Kublai Khan ruled China as an independent realm of the Mongol Empire. He enforced a rigid racial hierarchy, placing the Mongols at the top while denying the Chinese any roles in the government or the military.

Kublai made Dadu (Beijing) the Yuan capital, encouraged trade links with the outside world, and brought paper money into common circulation. Kublai's successors, however, faced a populace that was increasingly aggrieved over rising inflation and the oppressive taxes borne out of the

dynasty's discriminatory social policies. Moreover, the arrival of the Black Death in the 1330s (see pp.114–115), along with a spate of natural disasters, wrought great hardship upon the poorer classes. From the 1340s, revolts broke out in every province, giving rise to a movement known as the Red Turban Rebellion, led by Zhu Yuanzhang.

In 1368, Zhu seized Dadu and expelled the Mongol rulers. He founded the Ming Dynasty and introduced reforms that improved the prospects of the peasant classes.

*“... one can conquer the empire on horseback, but one cannot govern it on horseback.”*

KUBLAI KHAN, YUAN DYNASTY EMPEROR, 1271–1294

## MARCO POLO TRAVELS TO CHINA

Mongol control of Eurasia ushered in a period of peace and stability, known as “Pax Mongolica,” which allowed Italian merchant and explorer Marco Polo to embark along the Silk Road on a trade mission to China. According to his travel writings, Marco Polo spent 17 years in China serving emperor Kublai Khan as a government official.





# TEMPLE STATES OF SOUTHEAST ASIA

The kingdoms that emerged in Southeast Asia from the start of the 1st millennium CE were strongly influenced by their powerful neighbors. Forms of government and religious ideas were imported via trade routes from India, while China's diplomatic and commercial strength shaped the formation of states in the east.

Organized states appeared in Southeast Asia around the 2nd century CE, with the Indian-influenced kingdom of Funan in Cambodia's Mekong Delta among the earliest. They imported key ideas from India, most notably in art, government, and religion. Buddhism reached the Mon kingdom of Burma (modern-day Myanmar) by the late 3rd century and Funan by 375. Hinduism, too, spread rapidly, reaching Borneo by 400 and becoming the favored religion of the Angkor kingdom (in modern-day Cambodia). Rulers took on the characteristics of god-kings (sometimes using the title *cakravartin*, or universal ruler, borrowed from India) and built lavish capitals adorned with Buddhist and Hindu temples. While Indian cultural influence predominated in the west, direct Chinese political influence touched the eastern states. These sent diplomatic missions to Tang China and, in the case of Vietnam,

suffered direct military interventions. By the 9th century, a constellation of large states had emerged from Pagan in Myanmar, to Champa and Angkor in Cambodia, and Dai Viet in modern Vietnam. The Sailendra Empire of Srivijaya, based on Sumatra, dominated the Indonesian archipelago.

In 1287, the Mongols invaded (see pp.130–131) and captured Pagan. Invasion and growth of new competitors, notably the Dvaravati kingdoms of Thailand, shook the stability of the temple kingdoms. By the late 15th century, Angkor, Pagan, Champa, and Srivijaya had all collapsed, leaving a fractured system of regional states by the time Europeans reached the region a century later.

## ▷ Pyramid temple

The Bayon temple at Angkor was built c. 1200 for Jayavarman VII, one of the empire's kings. Some of its towers feature carvings of Jayavarman's face, while others have faces of Buddhist gods.

## HINDUISM

### RELIGIOUS INFLUENCE ACROSS SOUTHEAST ASIA



Hinduism developed in the 2nd millennium BCE, when its most ancient texts, the *Rig-Veda* hymns, were composed. The worship of many gods—all aspects of a single divine truth—within a temple-based system produced an extremely diverse religion. By the time of the Gupta Empire in the 3rd century CE, the principal forms of Hinduism were Vaishnavism (focused on the worship of Vishnu) and Sivaism (worship of Shiva, the god of creation and destruction), both of which spread widely in Southeast Asia.

## Hindu carvings

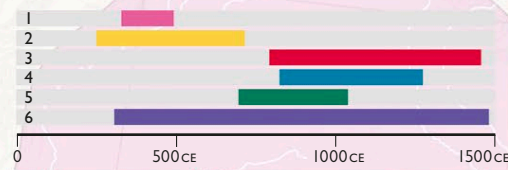
This 10th-century temple shows the influence of Sivaism in Angkor.



## KINGDOMS OF SOUTHEAST ASIA

Indian culture from the Gupta Empire initially spread via trade routes, then grew across the lands of the southeast. The newly formed states there were consumed by a complex struggle for political dominance, with Pagan, Dai Viet, Champa, Angkor, and Srivijaya emerging as the main regional powers.

### TIMELINE





# 1 GUPTA EMPIRE 320–500

Founded by Chandra Gupta I in 320, the Gupta Empire became wealthy from trade with Southeast Asia. Merchants carried Indian culture and religion overland and across maritime routes around Malaysia. Continual warfare to subdue rebellious provinces, and defeat at the hands of Hephthalite Hun invaders in 455, hastened the empire's decline and disappearance in the mid-6th century.

- Maximum extent of Gupta Empire c.550
- Indian influence

# 2 THE KINGDOM OF FUNAN 243–700

Funan, the earliest recorded state in the region of Southeast Asia, appeared around the 2nd century in the Mekong Delta. It maintained close trading links with China through an emporium at Oc Eo on the coast, sending an embassy there in 243. Although Buddhism was strong in the kingdom, Chinese records describe a king called Chan-t'an who sent tribute in 357 as a Hindu.

- Areas influenced by India

# 3 THE RISE AND FALL OF ANGKOR 802–1431

The Kingdom of Angkor began in 802, when Jayavarman II proclaimed himself *cakravartin* and founded a new capital near the later site of Angkor. Subsequent kings established new royal cities nearby, each adorned with Hindu temples. Jayavarman VII (r. 1181–1218) instead promoted Buddhism, but Angkor returned to Hinduism and survived until its collapse in the 15th century.

- Core area of Angkor
- Outermost limit of Angkor

# 4 THE BUDDHIST KINGDOM OF PAGAN 849–1287

Pagan was established in 849 by Burmese-speaking people. Its power grew until, in 1044, Anawrahta brought much of modern Burma under his control, finally defeating the Mon of Thaton in 1057. His descendants ruled for two centuries, but alienation of land to support its temples weakened Pagan, and it fell easily to the Mongols in 1287.

- Core area of Pagan
- Outermost limit of Pagan

# 5 THE MARITIME STATE OF SRIVIJAYA 671–1045

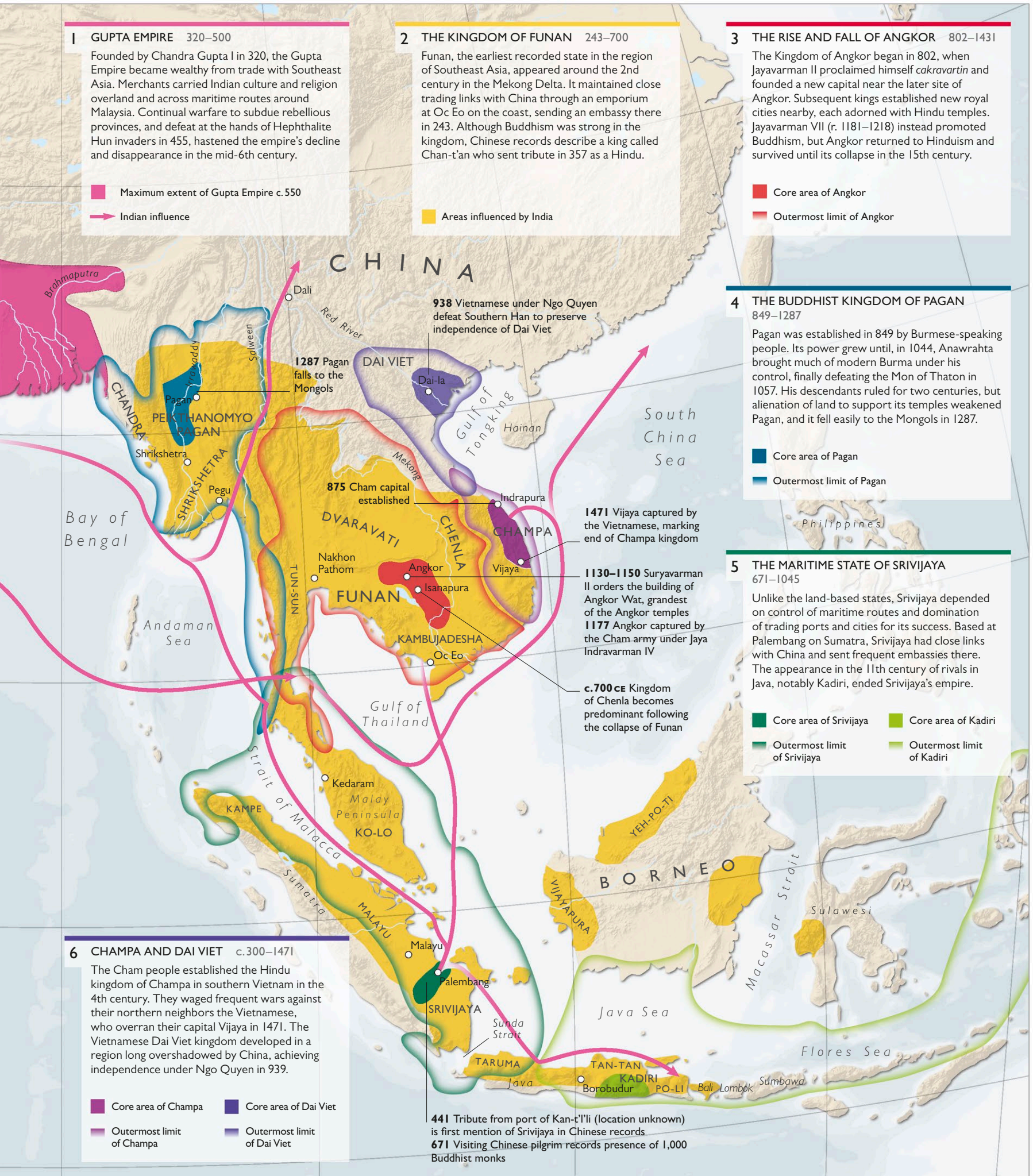
Unlike the land-based states, Srivijaya depended on control of maritime routes and domination of trading ports and cities for its success. Based at Palembang on Sumatra, Srivijaya had close links with China and sent frequent embassies there. The appearance in the 11th century of rivals in Java, notably Kadiri, ended Srivijaya's empire.

- Core area of Srivijaya
- Outermost limit of Srivijaya
- Core area of Kadiri
- Outermost limit of Kadiri

# 6 CHAMPA AND DAI VIET c.300–1471

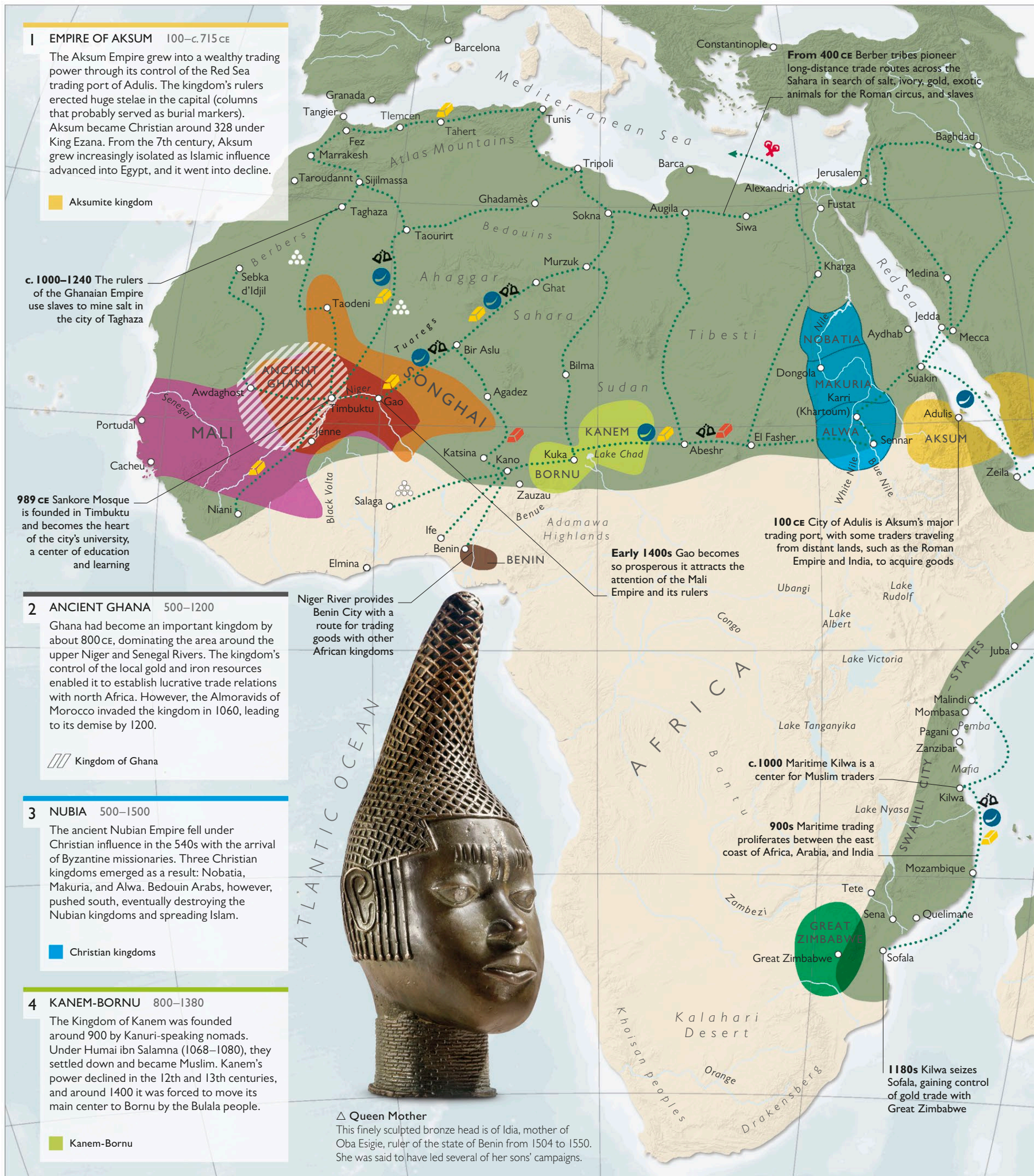
The Cham people established the Hindu kingdom of Champa in southern Vietnam in the 4th century. They waged frequent wars against their northern neighbors the Vietnamese, who overran their capital Vijaya in 1471. The Vietnamese Dai Viet kingdom developed in a region long overshadowed by China, achieving independence under Ngo Quyen in 939.

- Core area of Champa
- Outermost limit of Champa
- Core area of Dai Viet
- Outermost limit of Dai Viet



441 Tribute from port of Kan-t'li (location unknown) is first mention of Srivijaya in Chinese records  
671 Visiting Chinese pilgrim records presence of 1,000 Buddhist monks







## AFRICAN EMPIRES AND TRADE

Islamic influence spread throughout northern Africa from the 7th century. The new trade with Muslim merchants brought wealth to some African kingdoms, allowing them to grow and flourish.

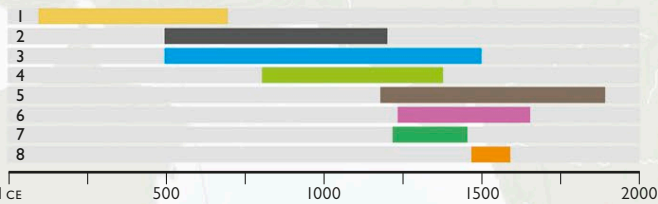
### KEY

○ Major trading cities    ••• Muslim trade routes    ■ Spread of Islamic influence, 1500

### GOODS TRAVELING ON TRADE ROUTES

■ Copper    ● Ivory    ⚔ Slaves  
■ Gold    ⚙ Salt    ⚔ Spice

### TIMELINE



### 8 SONGHAIR EMPIRE 1464–1591

Under Sonni Ali (r. 1462–1492), Songhai conquered most of Mali and established a new capital at Gao. The gold fields of the Niger River were integral to the empire's wealth and power. At its height, the rulers stationed a 200,000-strong army in the provinces to ensure trade was safe and secure.

■ Songhai Empire

### 7 KINGDOM OF ZIMBABWE 1220–1450

The largest of the early hilltop towns in southern Africa was Great Zimbabwe, a huge settlement with massive dry stone walls. It flourished from the 11th to the late 15th centuries CE. Its population was around 30,000, and its rulers grew rich on foreign trade, with exotic imports including pottery from China.

■ Kingdom of Zimbabwe

### 6 MALI EMPIRE 1235–1660

Mali had its origins in a Mande clan called the Keita on the upper Niger and became a significant power under its founder, Prince Sundiata Keita. The empire grew immensely rich through trade with the Arab world, and it won fame for all the gold its later ruler Mansa Musa carried during his pilgrimage to Mecca (see pp. 138–139).

■ Mali Empire

### 5 KINGDOM OF BENIN 1180–1897

The Benin Kingdom established itself in the 11th or 12th century. Its territory increased dramatically during the reign of Oba (King) Ewuare (r. 1440–1473), under whom the capital, Benin, became a large walled town. Benin craftsmen were prized for their skills, particularly in producing ivory masks and bronze plaques, which adorned the royal palace.

■ Kingdom of Benin

# AFRICAN PEOPLES AND EMPIRES

By 1000 CE, Africa's great range of environments and differing access to natural resources had led to a huge diversity of societies. State formation accelerated in the Middle Ages, a process in part provoked by the spread of Islam into the continent.

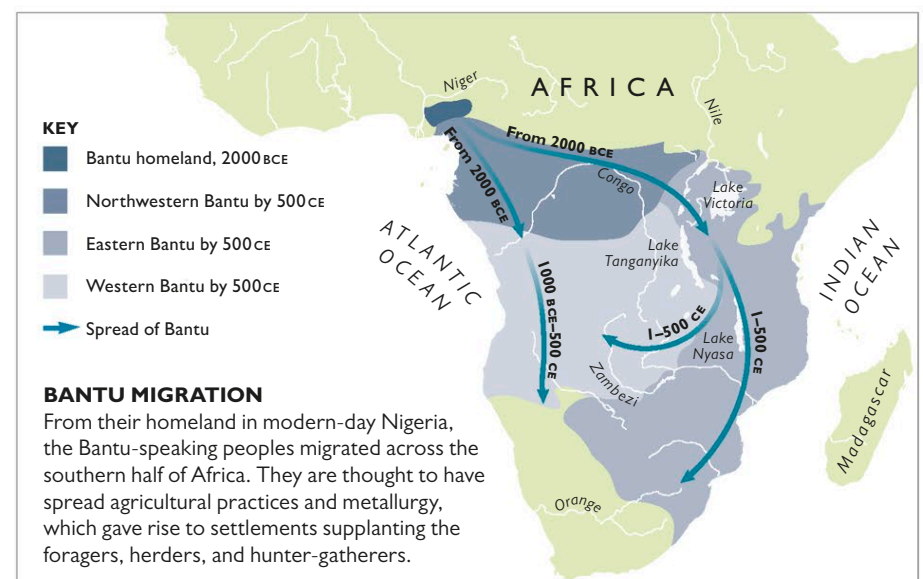
Africa's cultures ranged from the Islamic caliphates in the north to hunter-gatherer bands in the southern Kalahari Desert, with chiefdoms and complex trading states in between. Islam spread into east Africa and was carried by Muslim merchants into west Africa. States that already existed there, such as Ghana, became rich, and their rulers were able to extend their sway across the Sahel belt, south of the Sahara. Increased wealth also sparked competition for resources. Ghana suffered attacks from the Almoravids of Morocco in the mid-11th century and was finally snuffed out by the rival Sahel state of Mali, which was in turn

supplanted by Songhai in the mid-14th century. By this time, a new Islamic sultanate had arisen at Borno, in modern Chad, sustained by its control of salt mines in the desert basins.

Not all state formations were the result of Islamic influence, however. In the northeast, a variety of Christian kingdoms formed in the aftermath of the breakup of Aksum in the late first millennium CE. The kingdom of Zimbabwe, and the iron-working kingdom of Benin in west Africa, which flourished from the 14th century, both imported artifacts and raw materials from abroad but were not subject to direct Islamic influence.

*"They exchanged gold until they depressed its value in Egypt and caused its price to fall."*

MANSA MUSA DESCRIBED BY ARAB HISTORIAN AL-UMARI, C. 1350





**On his way**

This 17th-century print gives an impression of the sheer scale of Mansa Musa's caravan. He was said to have brought 60,000 followers—including 12,000 slaves—and 80 camels to carry the vast quantity of gold needed to fund his expedition.







# MANSA MUSA

In 1324, Mansa Musa, the ruler of Mali, made a pilgrimage to Mecca that became famous for its lavishness. The vast quantities of gold the king brought with him were a sign of the prosperity of Islamic west Africa.

Islam was brought to central Africa by merchants and by the 11th century had reached west Africa, where a series of kingdoms grew rich on trade in gold and slaves. By the early 14th century, the Sundjata Kingdom of Mali, ruled by Mansa Musa (r. 1312–1337), had become the most powerful kingdom in west Africa. Musa extended its boundaries farther, reaching as far as northern Nigeria and Timbuktu.



△ Great mosque

One of Africa's greatest Islamic monuments, the Djingareyber Mosque was built in 1327 by Abu Ishaq al-Sahili, an architect Musa met in Mecca.

## The famous pilgrim

As a show of his power, in 1324, Musa set off to perform his duty as a devout Muslim by undertaking the *hajj*, or pilgrimage to Mecca, taking with him thousands of followers and chests full of gold. His spending was so extravagant that it caused a sudden inflation of prices in Cairo, and when he paid back his debts on his return, the price of gold plummeted. He brought Islamic scholars and architects back with him, founding dozens of Quranic schools and encouraging the growth of a university at Timbuktu, which had more than 1,000 students. The fame of his pilgrimage caused Mali to become known even in Europe. However, after his death, the Sundjata Kingdom went into decline, collapsing in 1433 after Timbuktu fell to the Songhai Empire of Gao (see pp.136–137).



△ Wealth and fame

Mansa Musa, holding a golden scepter and a gold nugget, is prominent in west Africa in this atlas compiled in Spain in 1325. News of his lavish spending, which included a gift of 50,000 dinars to Egypt's sultan, spread far beyond the Islamic world.





**1 ORIGINS AND EARLY MIGRATIONS**  
c. 4000–c. 1400 BCE

DNA evidence indicates that the Polynesians originated somewhere in Southeast Asia, probably in Taiwan. Their migration southward began around 4000 BCE. It remains uncertain whether they moved slowly, spending long periods in areas such as New Guinea and absorbing the indigenous culture, or whether they migrated rapidly, possibly reaching Tonga as early as around 1400 BCE.

**2 THE LAPITA CULTURE** c. 1500–c. 1000 BCE

From 1500 BCE, settlers from the central Philippines spread a new type of pottery. Red-glazed and often decorated, it was the product of what is now called the Lapita culture. The Lapita people engaged in long-range trade, especially in obsidian, which was prized for the blades it could create. They spread eastward, reaching Samoa by about 1000 BCE, and are considered to be the immediate ancestors of the Polynesians.


















 Lapita pottery site      Source of obsidian

**3 THE GREAT VOYAGES** c. 200–c. 1200 CE

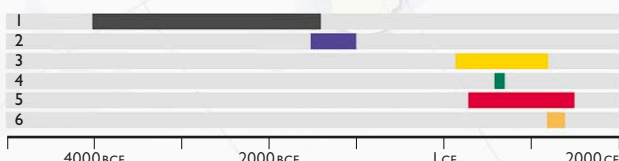
The Polynesians sailed huge distances—often against prevailing winds and currents—without navigation aids. From around 200 CE, they engaged in a phase of great expansion, moving east from Samoa to the Marquesas and then settling on island groups to the north, southwest, and east. On some islands, the crops and animals they brought did not flourish, which is why there were no pigs on Easter Island or breadfruit on New Zealand.

**PACIFIC MIGRATIONS**

From Southeast Asia, a wave of migration spread across the Pacific over a period of more than 5,000 years. The people took with them animals, plants, and the culture that was to become Polynesian.

<b>KEY</b>	 Polynesia	 Yams	 Early migrations
 Micronesia	 Sweet potato	 2000 BCE–1000 BCE	
 Melanesia	 Rice	 1000 BCE–1 CE	
 Area of cultivated breadfruit	 Sugar cane	 1 CE–500 CE	
 Taro	 Bananas	 500 CE–1400 CE	
 Cassava	 Coconuts		

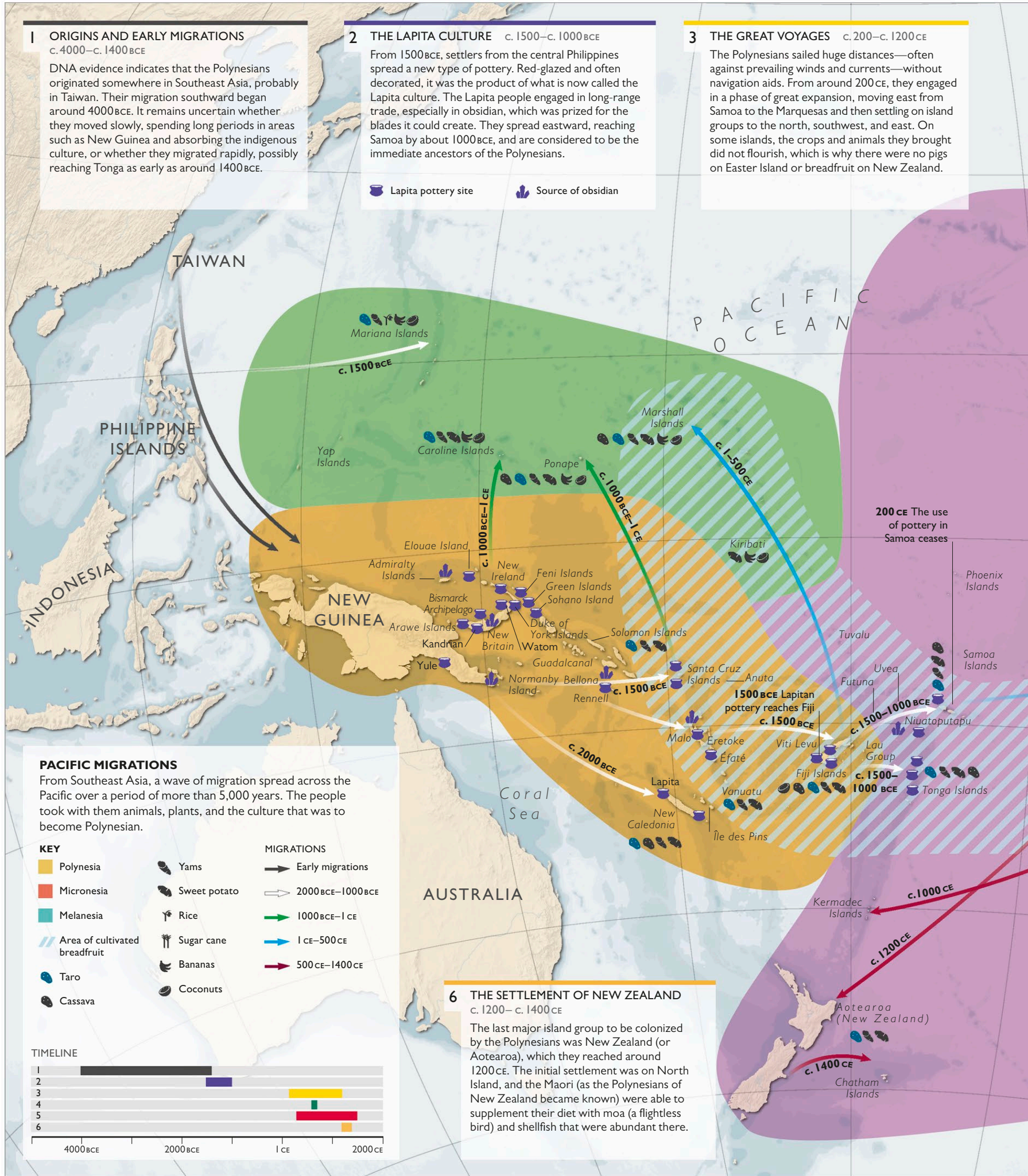
**TIMELINE**



4000 BCE      2000 BCE      1 CE      2000 CE

**6 THE SETTLEMENT OF NEW ZEALAND**  
c. 1200–c. 1400 CE

The last major island group to be colonized by the Polynesians was New Zealand (or Aotearoa), which they reached around 1200 CE. The initial settlement was on North Island, and the Maori (as the Polynesians of New Zealand became known) were able to supplement their diet with moa (a flightless bird) and shellfish that were abundant there.





#### 4 THE SETTLEMENT OF TAHITI c. 600–c. 700 CE

The Polynesians reached Tahiti around 600 CE. The society that they founded there became layered, with classes of chiefs (*ari'i*), lesser chiefs and landowners (*ra'a'tira*), and commoners (*manahune*) that did not intermarry. They built great stone cult platforms (*marae*) for the worship of their gods and developed new technologies, such as fishing gear and adzes with tangs to make attaching hafts easier.

Hawaiian Islands

Hawaii

▷ Drua canoe

The Polynesians traveled in robust, double-hulled canoes called druas that were capable of carrying the seed crops and animals they would need for food.

c. 400 CE

Line Islands

c. 200 CE

Marquesas Islands

c. 200 CE The Marquesas Islands are settled from Samoa

Society Islands

Tahiti

Tuamotu Archipelago

c. 600 CE

c. 600 CE

c. 800 CE

Îles Gambier

c. 300 CE

Rapa Nui (Easter Island)

#### 5 EASTER ISLAND c. 300–c. 1500 CE

The most easterly outpost of Polynesian settlement was Easter Island (Rapa Nui). After reaching there around 300 CE, the Polynesians built large stone platforms and then enormous cult statues (*moai*). Overpopulation, the effort needed to make the *moai*, and severe depletion of natural resources led to war among the islanders, toppling of the *moai*, and eventually collapse of the island's population.

1770s Most *moai* statues are torn down as Easter Islanders replace the Moai cult with that of the Bird Man

# THE POLYNESIANS

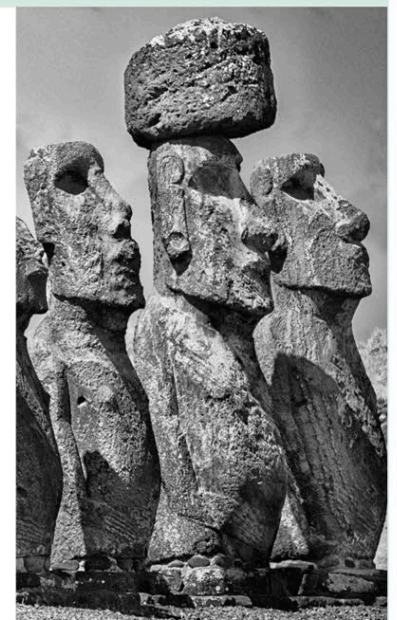
An island people of the central Pacific, the Polynesians originated in Southeast Asia. By around 1000 BCE, they had reached Tonga and Samoa. They then embarked on a great migration to reach previously unpopulated islands as distant as Easter Island and New Zealand.

The Polynesians' original ancestors probably came from Taiwan, and they spoke Austronesian languages similar to those heard in present-day Indonesia and the Philippines. From about 4000 BCE, they spread southward and eastward, passing through the Philippines and areas settled more than 20,000 years earlier by Melanesians (an ethnic group related to modern Australian aboriginals). The eastward spread of their early culture (called Lapita) to Tonga and Samoa can be traced through the remains of its distinctive red-glazed pottery.

The Polynesians developed double-hulled voyaging canoes with balancing outriggers that allowed them to reach distant island groups, including the Cook and Marquesas islands, Hawaii, and New Zealand. They took with them taro, yams, sweet potatoes, breadfruit, and bananas that they would cultivate on the islands, and chickens and pigs they would raise for meat. The far-flung nature of their island settlement meant that their societies diverged significantly from one another, with less stratified societies to the west and more complex ones to the east, especially in Hawaii, where a monarchy and centralized government emerged.

#### EASTER ISLAND MOAI STATUES OF THE SPIRITS

The *moai*, monumental stone statues up to 33 ft (10 m) high, were erected on Easter Island between 1200 and 1600. They are thought to represent protective ancestral spirits. More than 900 *moai* were erected, but the effort required to quarry and haul 88-ton (80-tonne) blocks from the interior of the island and to set them up on *ahau* (platforms) facing out to sea was a major drain on the Easter Islanders' resources. By 1700, the island was almost completely deforested, and its inhabitants could not even build new canoes to fish. In the second half of the 18th century, the Moai cult was superseded by the Bird Man cult, and the *moai* statues were pulled down.





# NORTH AMERICAN CULTURES

From 500 to 1500, many diverse cultures flourished in North America, including complex chiefdoms. Various nomadic groups turned to farming, including the Puebloan cultures in the southwest, evolving into large communities that traded extensively. Meanwhile, a new wave of Mound Builder cultures emerged to the east.

The ancient cultures of North America were shaped largely by the environment and available food resources.

In the southwest, the adoption of corn followed by the development of irrigation practices—as conditions became drier around 1000 BCE—forced previously nomadic groups to adopt complex social structures to ensure their survival, giving rise to the early Puebloan settlements. By 400 CE, these settlements had developed into complexes of cliff-dwellings or small towns, which clustered around a large centre featuring low platform mounds and ceremonial ball courts (which hint at Mesoamerican influences). These communities made pottery and basketware, and also mined turquoise, which they traded with the great

Mesoamerican cities to the south. Several distinct cultures emerged, and each dominated at different times and in different regions of the southwest.

Elsewhere, the introduction of corn, later supplemented by beans, led to the birth of the Mississippian Mound Builder cultures, following the decline of the Adena and Hopewell (see pp. 52–53). The various Mississippian subgroups flourished between 800 and 1500, each ruled by chiefs residing in fortified centers featuring mounds that served as foundations for temples. Some Mississippian centers grew into towns, the largest of which, Cahokia, thrived from 1050 to 1250. With up to 20,000 inhabitants, these settlements each had a palisaded center, ringed by large earthen platform mounds.

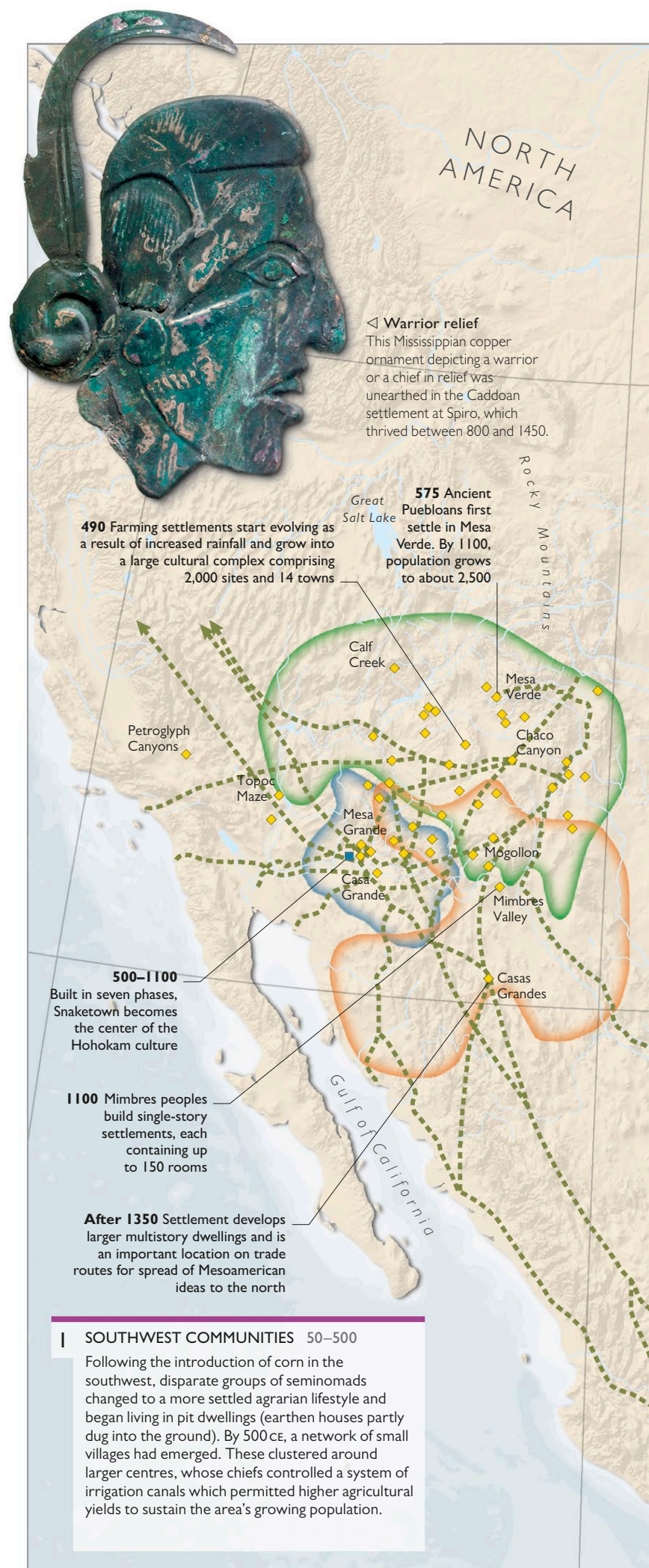
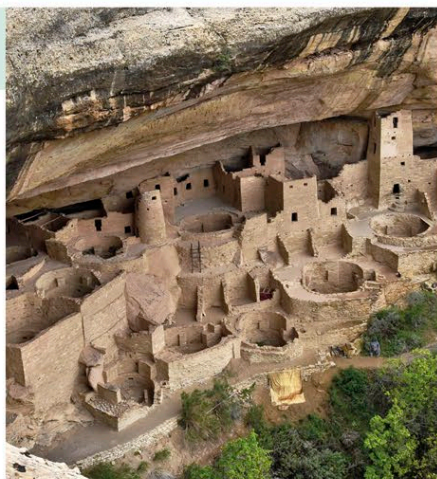
*“... a group of mounds... at a distance resembling enormous haystacks scattered through a meadow”*

WRITER HENRY MARIE BRACKENRIDGE ON SEEING CAHOKIA, 1811

## MESA VERDE

### GREAT ANCIENT PUEBLOAN SETTLEMENT

From about 700 CE, many of the Ancient Puebloans of the southwest began constructing settlements high in the cliffs, which offered protection. The largest of these was Mesa Verde, comprising 4,500 residential sites, of which 600 were cliff dwellings: villages built into the giant alcoves of the mesa walls. By about 1200, the population of Mesa Verde proper reached about 30,000 people, most of whom lived in dense settlements at the heads of the area's canyons.





**2 THE MOGOLLON 250–1350**

Small hamlets comprising several pithouses made up the earliest Mogollon villages. Settlements were built near mountain streams or along ridges, offering defense from raiders. The Mogollon made distinctive red-on-brown ceramics with intricate designs. A subgroup of the Mogollon culture, the Mimbres, made pottery with beautiful black-on-white geometric patterns.

Area of influence

**3 THE HOHOKAM 300–1450**

Between 1100 and 1450, the Hohokam people built a settlement at Snaketown featuring a series of large mounds. The settlement was home to about 1,000 people and also had two ball courts—similar to those of Mesoamerican cultures, from whom they imported exotic products such as copper bells and macaws.

Area of influence

Hohokam center

**4 CHACO CANYON 700–1500**

The peoples of the southwest began to build complexes of houses set into sheltered rock-faces. The Ancient Puebloans constructed towns, notably at Chaco Canyon, with an extensive road network connecting them. They managed water resources carefully, but around 1130, overpopulation, aggravated by droughts, strained the area's resources and the Chaco culture collapsed.

Area of influence

**5 MIDDLE MISSISSIPPIAN 600–1400**

From 600 CE, peoples in the Midwest started shifting to farming corn, beans, and squash. By 1000 they had organized a complex settlement-based society, typically featuring large ceremonial mounds encircled by ditches and ramparts. The largest was based in Cahokia, where about 100 earth mounds were grouped around open plazas.

Area of Influence

Temple mound site

**6 LATE MISSISSIPPIAN MOUND CULTURES 1000–1600**

After 1000 CE, corn cultivation spread widely throughout the east, giving rise to a variety of temple mound subcultures. It is thought that the subgroups were organized as chiefdoms composed of people with either "elite" or "commoner" social ranking. The Mississippians did not have writing, but representations of their beliefs were preserved in engravings on stone figurines, shells, ceramic designs, effigy smoking pipes, and stone tablets.

**CULTURAL AREA AND TEMPLE MOUND SITE**

Oneota	Caddoan
Fort Ancient	South Appalachian
Plaquemine	

**1300** Caddoan settlement in Spiro becomes a large ceremonial center with a chamber filled with offerings

**500–1100** Southwestern cultures trade extensively with Mesoamerican cities and trade centers

**1000–1550** Cultural center of the South Appalachian people, where its elites are buried along with ornamental copper plates

**1000–1550** Moundville is among the largest Mississippian settlements, featuring 20 large platform mounds and covering an area of about 300 acres

**PRE-COLUMBIAN CULTURES OF NORTH AMERICA**

North America's prehistoric farming cultures included the Ancestral Puebloans in the southwest, who lived in semisubterranean dwellings and made baskets and pottery. The Mississippian cultures to the east built giant ceremonial mounds in the heart of their settlements.

**KEY**

Mississippian cultures' area of influence

Archaeological site

Trade route

**TIMELINE**

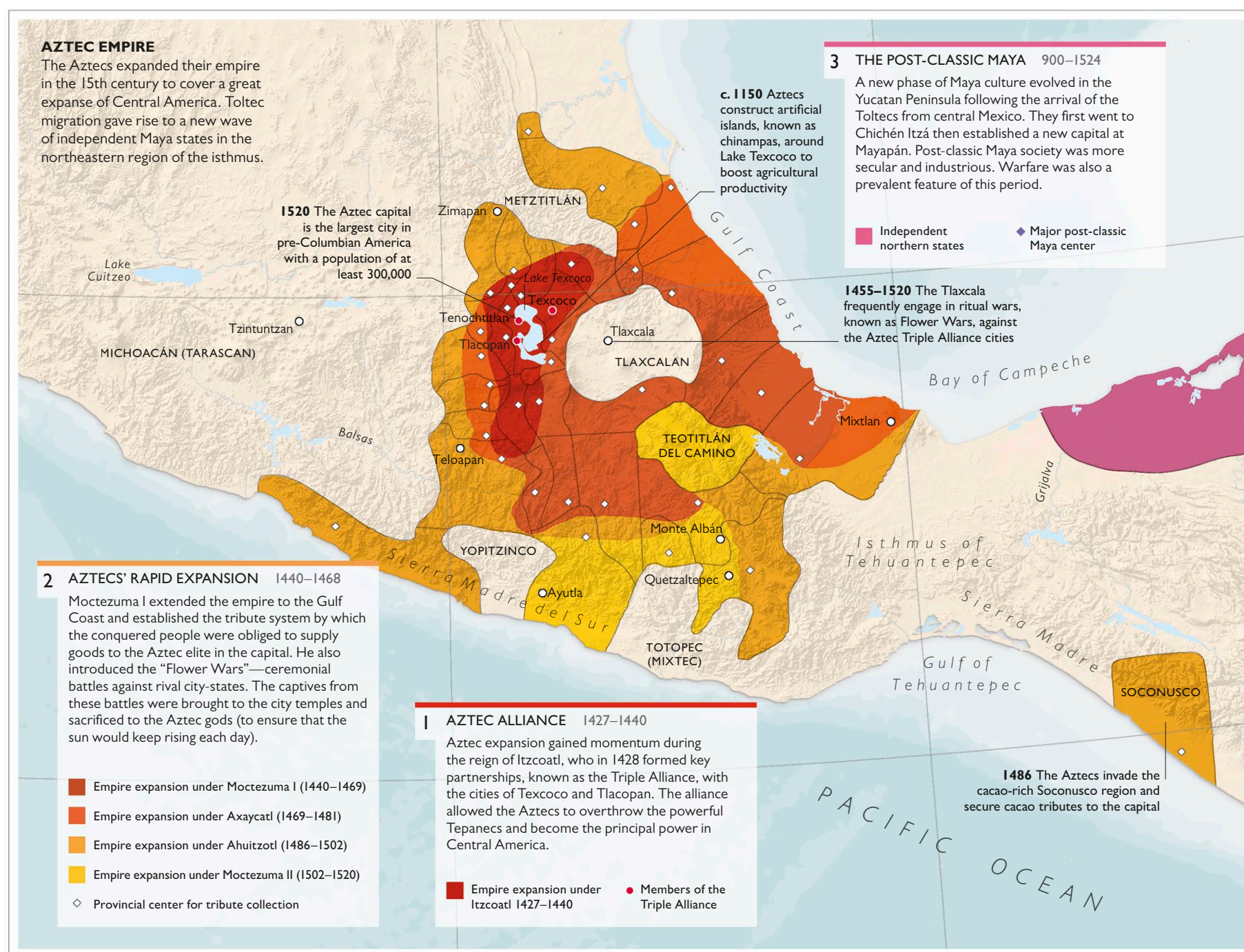


# AZTEC AND INCA EMPIRES

Two large empires emerged in the Americas in the 14th century. In Mesoamerica, the Aztec culture grew into a major civilization, famous for its tribute system, warfare, art, and architecture. Meanwhile, starting in Peru's Cuzco valley, the Inca people created a vast realm along the Andes and asserted their rule using a sophisticated bureaucracy and a sprawling network of roads.

The Aztecs originally settled on an island in Lake Texcoco and founded the city of Tenochtitlan in 1325. The culture privileged the training of a warrior elite, and within half a century amassed a formidable army. Following the Triple Alliance—a partnership the Aztecs formed with the cities of Texcoco and Tlacopan—the Aztecs engaged in a phase of conquests. Their army invaded neighboring communities, overthrew the local chieftains, and turned these territories into vassals. Aztec officials were then appointed to ensure that tributes—the main source of revenue for the empire—as well as captives for human sacrifice were sent to the capital, where the rulers pooled the resources into building monuments and artworks.

The Incas emerged as the predominant group in Peru's Cuzco valley after settling in the region in about 1250, developing techniques to farm on mountain terraces. The Incas began a phase of conquests in 1438; by the early 1500s, they had overthrown powerful neighbors the Chimú and the Chancas and extended their rule to Quito in the north and the Araucanian desert of Chile to the south. The Incas instituted a strong administrative structure and built a complex road network to help them govern the vast empire.



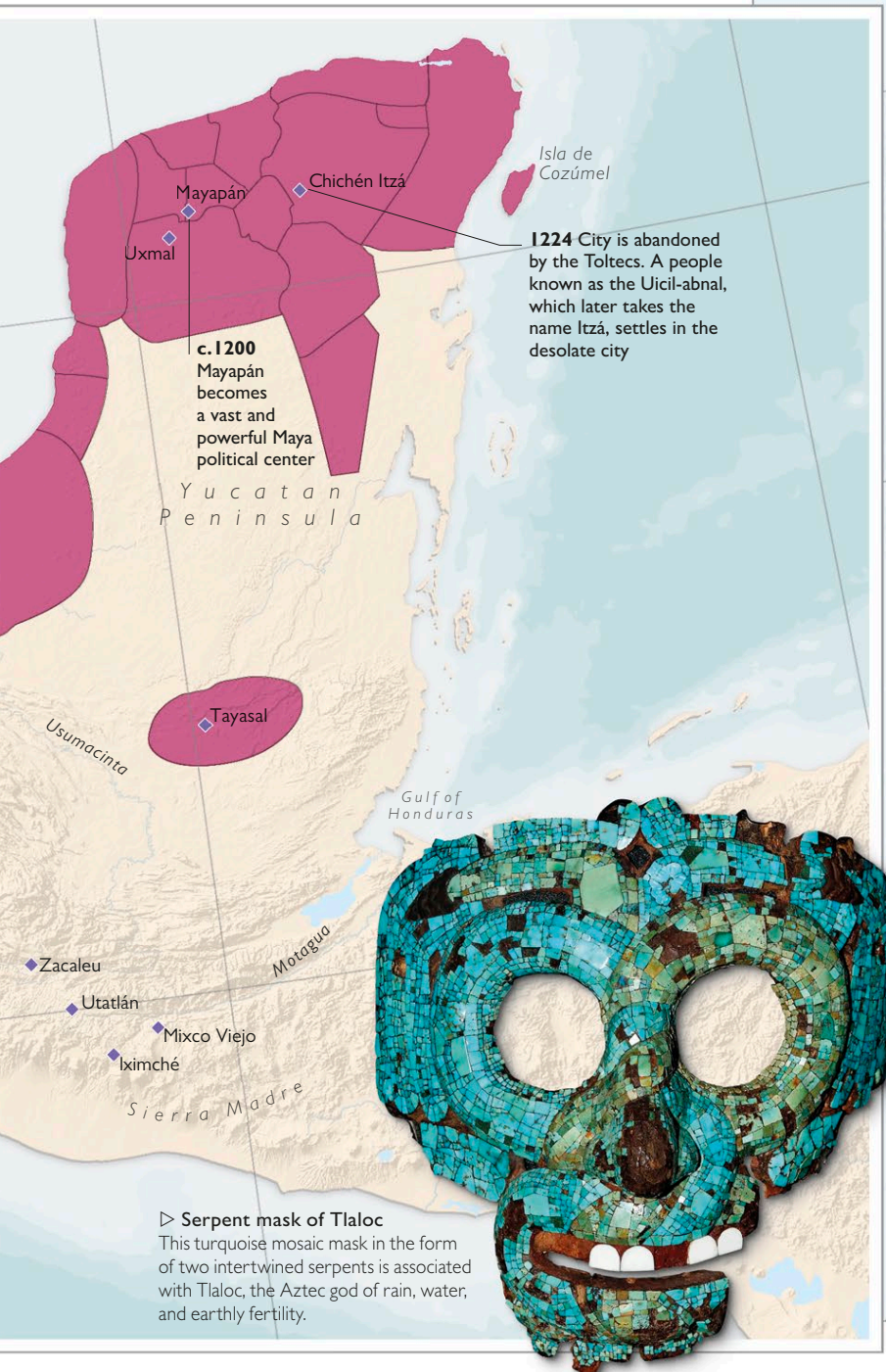
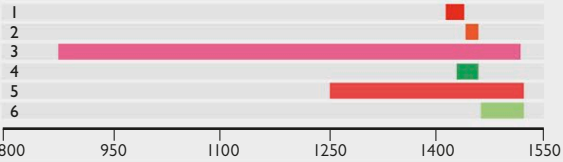


AZTEC AND INCA CONQUESTS

The Aztec and Inca Empires, as well as the independent post-classic Maya states, were the largest urban civilizations in Central and South America before the Europeans' arrival in the 16th century. In particular, the Aztecs and Incas were territorial and embarked on a phase of conquests to absorb other societies and extend their rule over a larger area.

KEY  
○ Major urban centers

TIMELINE



INCA EMPIRE

At its height, the Inca Empire extended from modern Ecuador to the southern city of Talca in modern-day Chile. A vast network of roads connected the major Inca cities.



4 THE BIRTH OF THE INCA EMPIRE 1438-1471

Led by Cusi Yupanqui, in 1438 the Incas defeated the Chancas, who had attacked the Inca stronghold in Cuzco. Yupanqui took the name Pachacutec and became the Sapa Inca (Inca ruler). He then waged a series of wars that resulted in Inca expansion and culminated with victory in Chan Chan, the capital of the Chimú civilization, in 1470.

5 INCA CAPITAL 1250-1525

The Sapa Inca ruled the empire from Cuzco, which sat at the center of a 12,500 mile (20,000 km) road network. The Sapa Inca imposed a realm-wide taxation system (paid in kind), controlled trade, and drew on a large peasant labor force for construction projects.

6 EXPANDING SOUTH 1471-1525

Under Tupac Yupanqui (1471-1493) and Huayna Capac (1493-1525), the Inca completed the conquest of Ecuador and pushed far south into modern Chile. With the prospect of sharing the plunder won in subsequent conquests, male captives often became Inca soldiers, which further strengthened Inca dominance. At its height, the Inca Empire ruled as many as 12 million people.

Inca expansion under Tupac Yupanqui (1471-1493)  
Inca expansion under Huayna Capac (1493-1525)







The background is a blue-tinted historical illustration. It depicts a man in armor, possibly a knight or a soldier, holding a sword. He is surrounded by other figures and objects, including a horse and a shield. The entire image is overlaid with a network of white lines that form a complex geometric pattern, resembling a web or a map's grid.

# THE EARLY MODERN WORLD

AS HORIZONS WIDENED IN 1450–1700, CONTACT BETWEEN EAST  
AND WEST MADE TRADE AND CULTURAL EXCHANGE GLOBAL  
AND THE WORLD RECOGNIZABLY MODERN.





△ **Competing for souls**  
This 1614 painting by the Dutch artist Adriaen van de Venne is symbolic of the religious rivalry that divided Europe. Here, the “catch” of the Protestants (to the left) is depicted as greater than that of their Catholic rivals.

# THE EARLY MODERN WORLD

Between 1450 and 1700, European explorers reached the Americas and began to explore maritime routes around Africa into Asia. Military and scientific revolutions in Europe also enabled its leading powers to encroach on non-European territories.

In 1450, a politically fragmented Europe exerted little influence outside its borders—France and England were still at war, Spain was divided, and the trading city-states of Italy seemed to be the continent’s most dynamic powers. It was the impulse to trade that eventually revolutionized Europe’s position in the world.

### Discovering new worlds

Portuguese mariners inched around the African coastline in search of new routes to the lucrative spice markets of Asia—succeeding in 1498, when Vasco da Gama’s fleet reached the Indian port of Calicut (now Kozhikode). By then, however, an even more astonishing discovery had been made—Christopher Columbus had stumbled upon a Caribbean island in 1492. This had opened up the Americas, which had been isolated from the rest of the world for millennia.

Spanish adventurers poured across the Atlantic into the Americas, toppling the native Aztec and Inca Empires with surprising ease. They established the first European colonial empire and sent back treasures and silver, which contributed to inflation in Spain but also boosted the country’s Habsburg rulers’ ability to fight continental wars. This was an invaluable asset at a volatile time; the

religious unity of western Europe had broken down after the German priest Martin Luther had made protests in 1517 against corruption in the Roman Catholic Church. This had prompted a series of reformers to establish alternative Protestant churches, which in turn provoked a spasm of religious warfare. Matters came to a head with the outbreak of the Thirty Years’ War in 1618, which pitched German Catholic and Protestant princes against each other and brought in armies from France, the Habsburg Empire, and Sweden that criss-crossed the continent and left it utterly devastated.

### Wars in Europe

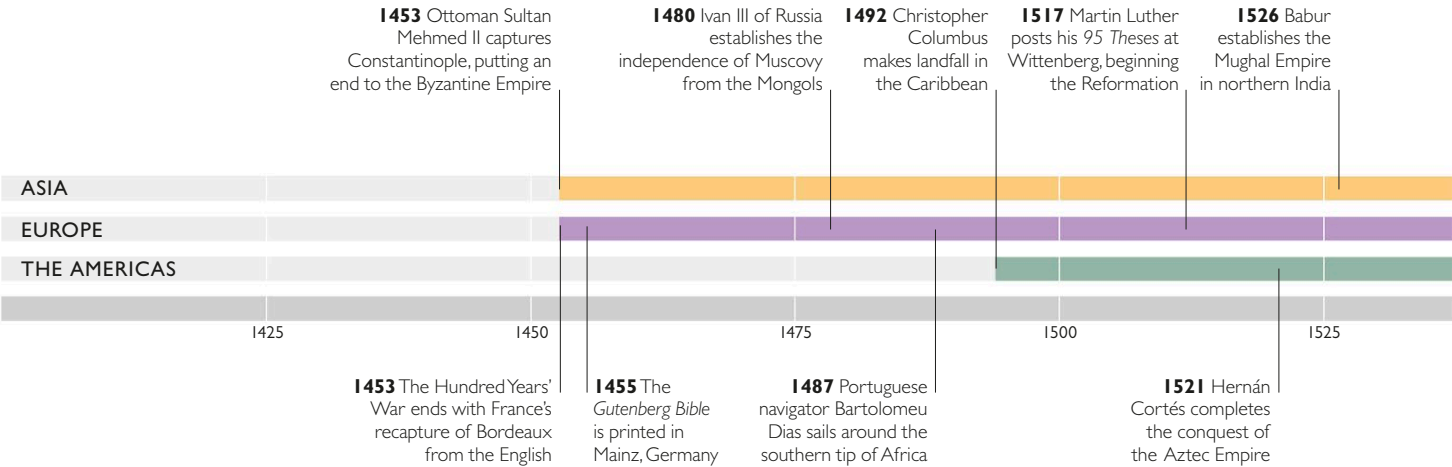
The arrival of gunpowder warfare heralded the beginnings of European standing armies, trained in the use of firearms and operating in units far larger than ever before. This military revolution in the 16th century immeasurably enhanced the powers of European monarchs but raised the risks of warfare. England suffered the consequences of civil war when tension between an autocratic monarch and a resentful parliament burst into conflict—resulting in the execution of King Charles I in 1649



◁ **Art flourishes in India**  
This beautiful edition of the *Divan*, the collected works of the popular 14th-century Persian poet Hafiz, was compiled in Mughal India—a rich period for both visual art and literature.

### EXPLORATION AND SCHISM

The Early Modern period was one of profound transformation. European explorers reached the New World in 1492, precipitating the collapse of previously dominant societies. Although European traders also reached the spice-producing areas of Asia by rounding Africa, the footholds they established there were much more modest. Europe itself was racked by religious conflicts marred by violence that only ended after a century of warfare.







#### ◁ Way of the warrior

During Japan's Edo, or Tokugawa, period, samurai warriors had gained a high ranking in a rigidly followed caste system. This military armor of a samurai warrior dates from the 19th century.

and the establishment of a republic for 12 years, the only one in Britain's history. By the time monarchy was restored in 1660, Britain faced new rivals:

a resurgent France under Louis XIV, and the infant Dutch Republic, whose traders displaced the Portuguese and the Spanish in parts of Asia.

#### Further expansion

France and Britain extended their competition to the Americas, where they ate away at the Portuguese and Spanish duopoly. They also began to encroach upon Asia, but here they faced strong rivals.

The Ottoman Empire had expanded to occupy the whole of Turkey and much of the Middle East and North Africa. The Safavid Empire brought a golden age to Persia (modern Iran), while the Mughals seized Delhi in 1526 and had conquered most of the Indian subcontinent by 1700. In China, the Ming and Qing Dynasties, both socially

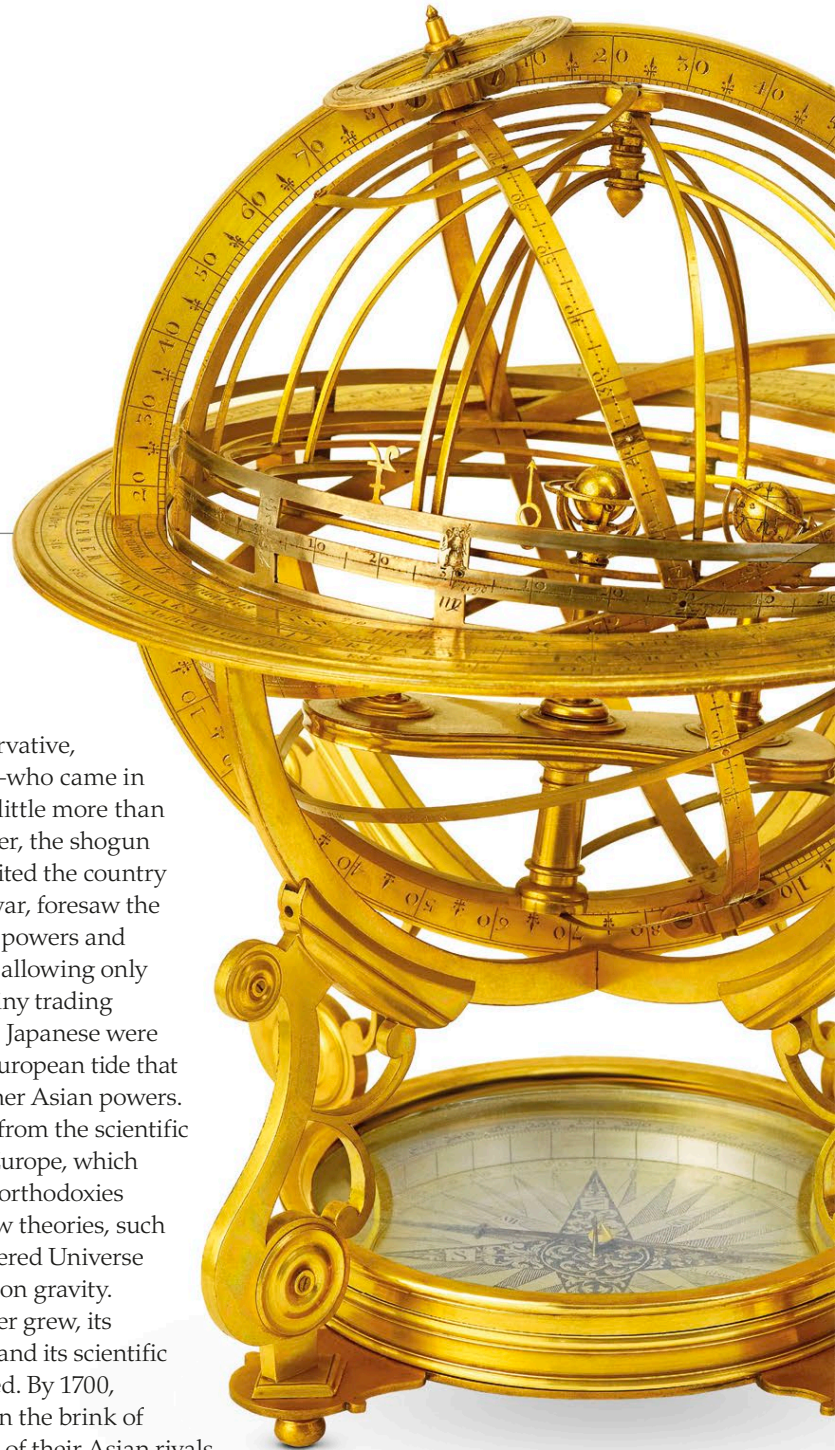
*"The church needs a reformation ... it is the work of God alone ..."*

MARTIN LUTHER, GERMAN THEOLOGIAN

#### ▷ Celestial model

With the Sun at its center, this model, called an armillary sphere, was used to represent the positions of celestial objects.

and diplomatically conservative, regarded the foreigners—who came in increasing numbers—as little more than irritants. In Japan, however, the shogun Tokugawa, who had reunited the country in 1600 after a long civil war, foresaw the dangers posed by foreign powers and gradually excluded them, allowing only the Dutch to persist in a tiny trading enclave off Nagasaki. The Japanese were thus protected from the European tide that began to wash against other Asian powers. They were also insulated from the scientific revolution that began in Europe, which overturned centuries-old orthodoxies and paved the way for new theories, such as Copernicus's Sun-centered Universe and Isaac Newton's work on gravity. As Europe's military power grew, its economic reach widened and its scientific resourcefulness burgeoned. By 1700, European powers stood on the brink of pulling definitively ahead of their Asian rivals.



**1572** King Charles IX of France orders St. Bartholomew's Day massacre of Protestants

**1600** Tokugawa Ieyasu wins the Battle of Sekigahara to complete the reunification of Japan

**1628** Shah Jahan is crowned emperor—the golden age of Mughal India begins

**1648** The Thirty Years' War ends

**1656** Dutch mathematician and physicist Christiaan Huygens constructs the first pendulum clock

**1687** English mathematician Isaac Newton publishes the *Principia*, setting out laws of motion and gravity

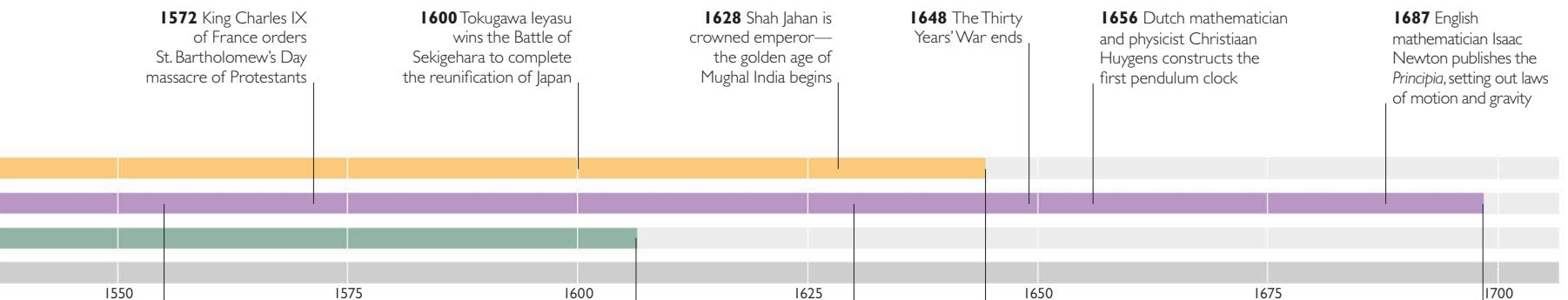
**1555** The Peace of Augsburg treaty brings a temporary halt to religious wars that have spread across Europe

**1607** Jamestown, the first permanent English colony in the Americas, is founded

**1630** Sweden intervenes in the Thirty Years' War, turning the tide in favor of the Protestants

**1644** The Qing, newcomers from Manchuria, overthrow the Ming to establish a new ruling dynasty in China

**1690** The English East India Company establishes a trading post in Calcutta, gaining a foothold in India





## 1 THE VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS 1492–1504

In 1492, Genoese sea captain Christopher Columbus voyaged across the Atlantic in search of a route to China. Columbus hugely underestimated the distance, so when he made landfall on October 12, 1492, in the Bahamas he believed that he had found “the Indies” (or east Asia). Three subsequent voyages explored the Caribbean and part of the South American coastline, but Columbus never accepted that he had found a new continent.

→ Columbus 1492    ... Columbus 1502–1504

1579 Drake sails up west coast of North America, possibly reaching Vancouver

1517 de Córdoba

1513 Ponce de León

1492 Columbus

1502–1504 Columbus

1577–1580 Drake

1519–1521 Magellan expedition

## 2 SPANISH EXPLORERS IN NORTH AMERICA 1513–1540

Christopher Columbus was soon followed by other Spanish explorers. In 1513 Juan Ponce de León landed in Florida and, 4 years later Francisco Hernández de Córdoba sighted Mexico’s Yucatán peninsula. The pace of exploration quickened after Hernán Cortés’s conquest of the Aztec Empire in 1519–1521, allowing expeditions deep into the American southwest in the 1540s.

→ Ponce de León 1513    ... Hernández de Córdoba 1517

## 3 THE EXPLORATION OF BRAZIL 1500–1531

In 1500, Pedro Álvaro Cabral, who was leading a Portuguese expedition to India, sailed too far westward into the Atlantic and made landfall on the coast of Brazil. Some claimed that this apparent accident had been deliberate, but it helped the Portuguese crown to lay claim over a portion of Brazil. Portugal then established a settlement at São Vicente in 1531, and its South American empire expanded to the whole of Brazil.

→ Cabral 1500

## 4 THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE 1497–1610

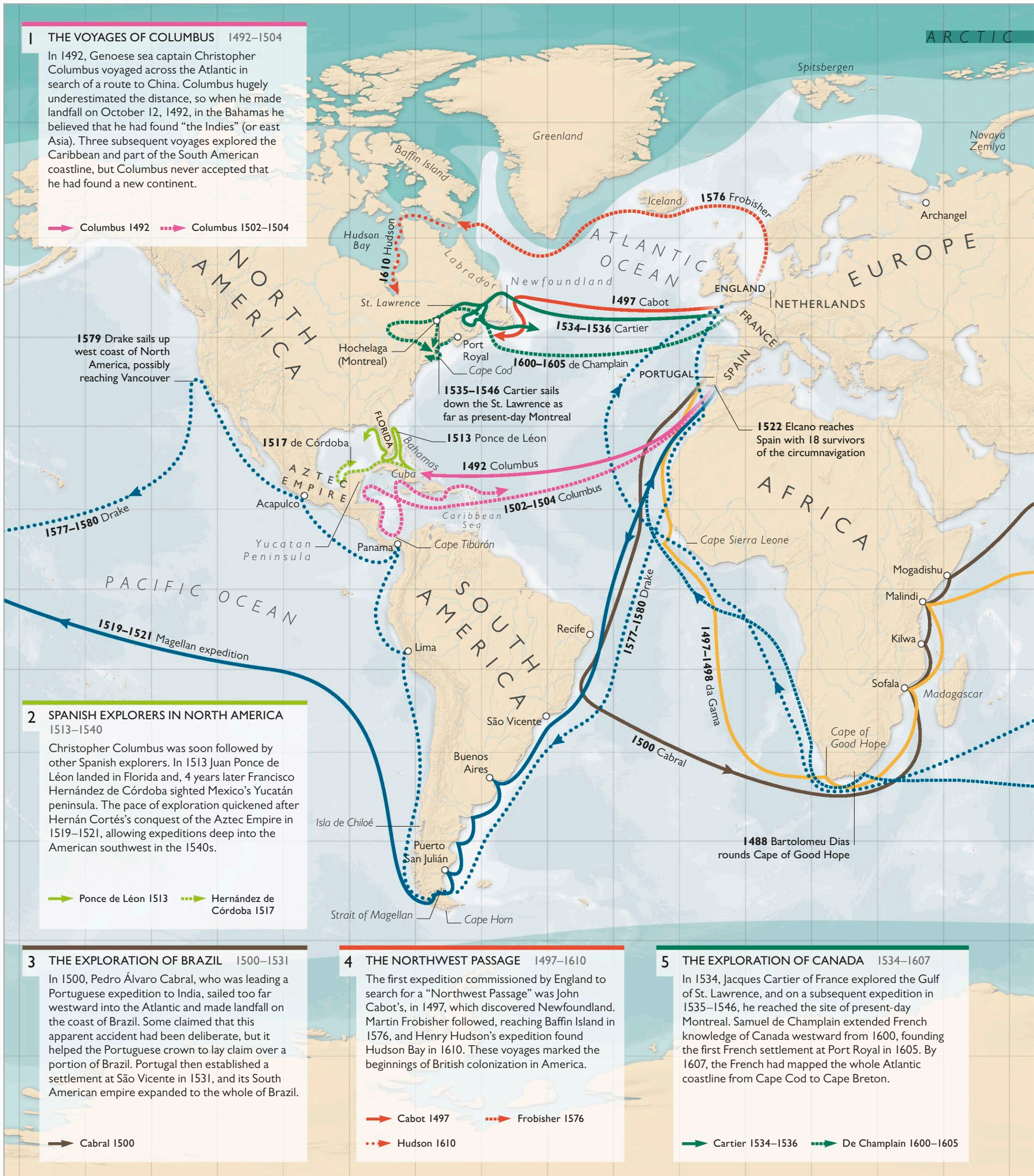
The first expedition commissioned by England to search for a “Northwest Passage” was John Cabot’s, in 1497, which discovered Newfoundland. Martin Frobisher followed, reaching Baffin Island in 1576, and Henry Hudson’s expedition found Hudson Bay in 1610. These voyages marked the beginnings of British colonization in America.

→ Cabot 1497    ... Frobisher 1576  
... Hudson 1610

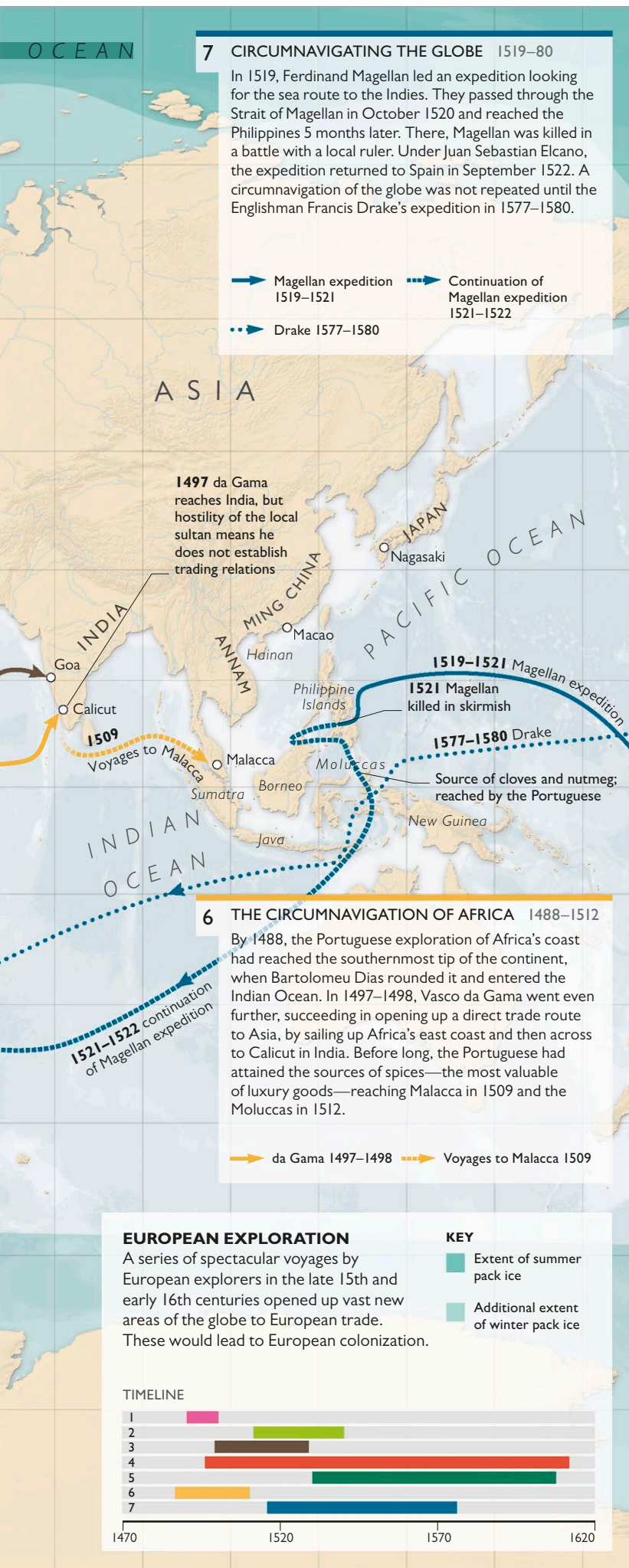
## 5 THE EXPLORATION OF CANADA 1534–1607

In 1534, Jacques Cartier of France explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and on a subsequent expedition in 1535–1546, he reached the site of present-day Montreal. Samuel de Champlain extended French knowledge of Canada westward from 1600, founding the first French settlement at Port Royal in 1605. By 1607, the French had mapped the whole Atlantic coastline from Cape Cod to Cape Breton.

→ Cartier 1534–1536    ... De Champlain 1600–1605







# VOYAGES OF EXPLORATION

The 15th and 16th centuries saw a massive increase in the reach of European nations. Voyages set out in search of new routes to exploit the trade in luxury goods. Portuguese explorers pushed eastward, their Spanish counterparts voyaged west, and soon the English, French, and Dutch joined the scramble to find new lands.

The breakup of the Mongol Empire in the 14th century and expansion of the Ottoman Turks in the eastern Mediterranean blocked the Silk Road, which had been the traditional conduit for trade from Europe to east Asia. Maritime nations on Europe's western coasts began to explore alternative routes by which to access the rich east Asian trade in luxuries and, in particular, spices. From the mid-1420s Portuguese-sponsored voyages edged around the west coast of Africa. It took until 1497, however, for the Portuguese captain Vasco da Gama to circumnavigate Africa and reach the markets of India. By then, the Spanish-sponsored voyage of Christopher Columbus had encountered the coastline of the Americas. The Portuguese established a toehold in Brazil by 1500, and British and

French expeditions tried to locate the "Northwest Passage" to access Asia by sailing north around North America.

More ambitious voyages yet circumnavigated the globe, beginning with that led by the Portuguese explorer Ferdinand Magellan in 1519. The consequences of these voyages were profound. Parts of the world that had had little or no communication with each other were now linked by trading routes and by networks of trading outposts. These were either directly state-controlled or governed by great trading corporations such as the British and Dutch East India Companies (founded in 1600 and 1602). Soldiers and settlers soon followed since what had originally been an effort to secure trading routes became the precursor to the establishment of global European empires.



△ A new world

This late-17th-century engraving by the Flemish-German publisher Theodor de Bry depicts Christopher Columbus arriving in the Americas and is part of a series that portrayed famous explorers surrounded by allegorical scenes.



# SPANISH CONQUESTS IN THE AMERICAS

In the first half of the 16th century, the Spanish established a vast empire in the Americas. Their conquest of the rich native cultures of Mexico and Peru between 1519 and 1533 encouraged Spanish explorers to seize further large tracts of territory. They established an empire that remained in Spanish hands until a series of nationalist revolts in the 1800s.

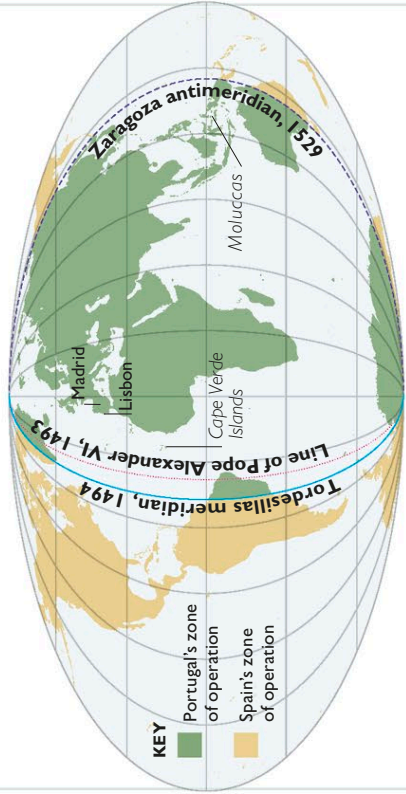
Following Columbus's discovery of the Americas in 1492, initial Spanish efforts were focused on the Caribbean. However, there were few resources to exploit, and the collapse of the native population pushed Spanish adventurers onto the mainland. The conquest of the Aztec Empire by Hernán Cortés from 1519–1521 and of the Inca Empire of Peru by Francisco Pizarro from 1531–1533 (see pp.154–155) transformed the prospects for the Spanish possessions in the Americas. Christian missionaries soon followed in the wake of the conquistadors and made large numbers of converts among the Aztecs and Inca, whose central religious hierarchy had been swept away. These rich, centralized territories fell rapidly into the hands of the conquistadors and formed the nucleus from which

further Spanish expeditions fanned out across the continent—penetrating into Colombia and Venezuela in 1537–1543 and northward into Florida and the southwest of the modern United States in the 1540s.

The Spanish brought new diseases to the Americas (such as smallpox), and the native population had declined to around one-tenth its former level by 1600. However, throughout the 16th century there was also an influx of around 100,000 European settlers, the importation of African slaves to work plantations, and the discovery of rich silver deposits (in Peru in 1545 and in Mexico in 1546). The Spanish empire thrived and developed a distinctive colonial society that lasted until Spanish rule was overthrown by revolutionary nationalists in the early 19th century.

## THE TREATY OF TORDESILLAS (1493–1529)

Spain and Portugal were very confident in their future pursuits of new lands. In 1493, the Spanish persuaded Pope Alexander VI to issue an edict, or decree, that set a dividing line to avoid disputes over any new territories either country might discover. After Portuguese lobbying, the Treaty of Tordesillas (1494) pushed the line westward, which placed Brazil within their sector. The Treaty of Zaragoza (1529) established an antimeridian demarcating Spanish and Portuguese territory in east Asia.



*"I and my companions suffer from a disease of the heart, which can only be cured with gold."*

HERNÁN CORTÉS, CONQUEROR OF MEXICO, c.1520





## 6 SPANISH COLONIAL ADMINISTRATION 1535–1596

In 1535, a viceroyalty of New Spain was set up—based in Mexico City—to govern the Spanish territories in Central America. A Viceroyalty of Peru was established in 1543, based in Lima. Spanish kings issued decrees regarding their governance, and by 1596, some 3,500 of these had accumulated.

New capital city

## 5 THE PORTUGUESE IN BRAZIL 1500–1531

Although Pedro Álvares Cabral claimed Brazil for Portugal in 1500, there were no rich empires to conquer and few commodities that were worth trading. Initially the territory was leased to a consortium of Lisbon merchants, before fear of encroachment by the French in the 1520s led to the establishment of the first permanent settlement at São Vicente in 1531.

Portuguese territory before 1650

Portuguese route of expansion

Portuguese settlement with date of foundation

## 4 SILVER FROM POTOSÍ 1545–c.1600

The new American colonies were a drain on Spain, but the discovery of rich silver deposits at Potosí in Peru in 1545 and at Zacatecas in Mexico in 1546 revolutionized Spanish colonial economics. Fleets crossed the Atlantic regularly back to Spain, carrying two-fifths of the silver mined that was due to the Spanish crown, funding wars and other ventures.

Silver mine

## NEW WORLD EXPEDITIONS

Spanish expeditions spread Spanish rule throughout the New World. Only in Brazil did they face competition from the Portuguese and Dutch, and in North America from the English and French.

### KEY

Spanish territory before 1650

Spanish route of expansion

Spanish settlement with date of foundation

Spanish fort

### TIMELINE

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6

1450 1500 1550 1600 1650 1700

1519  
Panama

1538  
Santa Fé de Bogotá

1534 Quito

1526 Tumbes

1532 Paiza

1532 Cajamarca

1525 Trujillo

1535 Lima

1537 Callao

1539–1572 Last capital of Inca Empire after Spanish conquest of Cuzco

1541 Francisco Pizarro assassinated during civil war with followers of fellow conquistador Diego de Almagro II

1543 Capital of Viceroyalty of Peru is established

1572 Huanacavelica

1533 Cuzco

1540 Arequipa

1537 Arica

1548 La Paz

1538 La Plata

1545 Potosí

1537 Asunción

1630 Ciudad Real

1537 Coquimbo

1541 Valparaíso

1550 Concepción

1552 Valdivia

1541 Santiago

1527 Spanish colony established

1536 Buenos Aires

1561 Mendoza

1573 Córdoba

Colônia do Sacramento

Porto Alegre

## 3 PIZARRO, PERU, AND INCA 1527–1572

The Inca Empire was already weakened when Francisco Pizarro's small Spanish army arrived. He seized the Inca capital, taking control of the whole empire. The Inca chose a new ruler and moved their last stronghold, Vilcabamba.

1516 Portuguese establish sugar plantations in Pernambuco

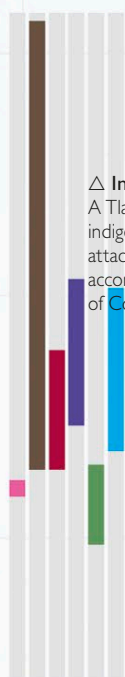
1500 Probable landing of Pedro Álvares Cabral

1531 São Paulo

### △ Indigenous partners

A Tlaxcalan painting shows Tlaxcalan indigenous peoples from an alliance attacking the town of Michoacán, accompanied by Cristóbal de Olid and other Cortés's key captains.

Islas Malvinas





# THE SPANISH IN AMERICA

Within 25 years of their arrival, the Spanish ruled a vast colonial empire in the Americas. Their astonishing success was enabled by exploitation of the political weakness of indigenous empires, superior weaponry, and the diseases that came in their wake.



△ **Soldier-explorer**  
Hernán Cortés had a reputation for ruthlessness. After founding the city of Vera Cruz, he burned his ships to prevent his forces from turning back.

The principal indigenous empires of the Americas, the Aztec of Mexico and the Inca of Peru (see pp.144–145), were highly centralized and dependent on rigid hierarchies and a deeply ingrained respect for their rulers—the Aztec *Tlatoani* in the capital Tenochtitlan and the Sapa Inca in Cuzco. These empires expanded rapidly by conquest in the 14th and 15th centuries, and their hold on recently conquered or peripheral peoples was fragile. When the Spanish arrived in Mexico in 1519 and in Peru in 1531, the Aztec and Inca leaders underestimated the threat they posed.

In Mexico, the Spanish formed alliances with dissenting groups, and in Peru, rapid and ruthless action led to the capture of the Sapa Inca, Atahualpa. Leaderless, the indigenous empires rapidly collapsed—a process accelerated by epidemics of diseases brought by the Spanish, to which native Americans had no resistance. Once embedded, the invaders—known as conquistadors—proved impossible to remove. A constant supply of ambitious yet landless men with military training from the Iberian Peninsula allowed the Spanish to absorb the Maya of Central America in the 1540s–1550s, push into southern North America, and extend into Amazonian South America. Financed by silver, which was discovered in Peru in 1545, and ruled through viceroys, the Spanish empire in South America would last for over 250 years (see pp.152–153).

## CORTÉS'S CAMPAIGNS

**Nov 1519** Cortés first enters Tenochtitlan

**Dec 1520–Aug 1521** Cortés returns to Tenochtitlan and finally completes recapture

Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés and his force of 600 men entered the Aztec capital Tenochtitlan in November 1519 and took the *Tlatoani* Montezuma captive. Although the Spanish were expelled with heavy losses in June 1520, they returned and took the city after an 8-month siege, putting an end to the Aztec Empire.

**May 1520** Cortés defeats fellow conquistador Panfilo de Narvaez

**Mar 1519**

Cempoala

Vera Cruz

Tabasco

**Feb 1519**  
Leaves Cuba

**KEY**  
→ Cortés's route

Tenochtitlan

AZTEC

MAYA





**Life after conquest**

A mural by Mexican artist Diego Rivera depicts the harsh realities of Spanish rule, with indigenous people laboring under armed conquistadors and friars. The replacement of traditional beliefs by Christianity destroyed the indigenous social fabric.





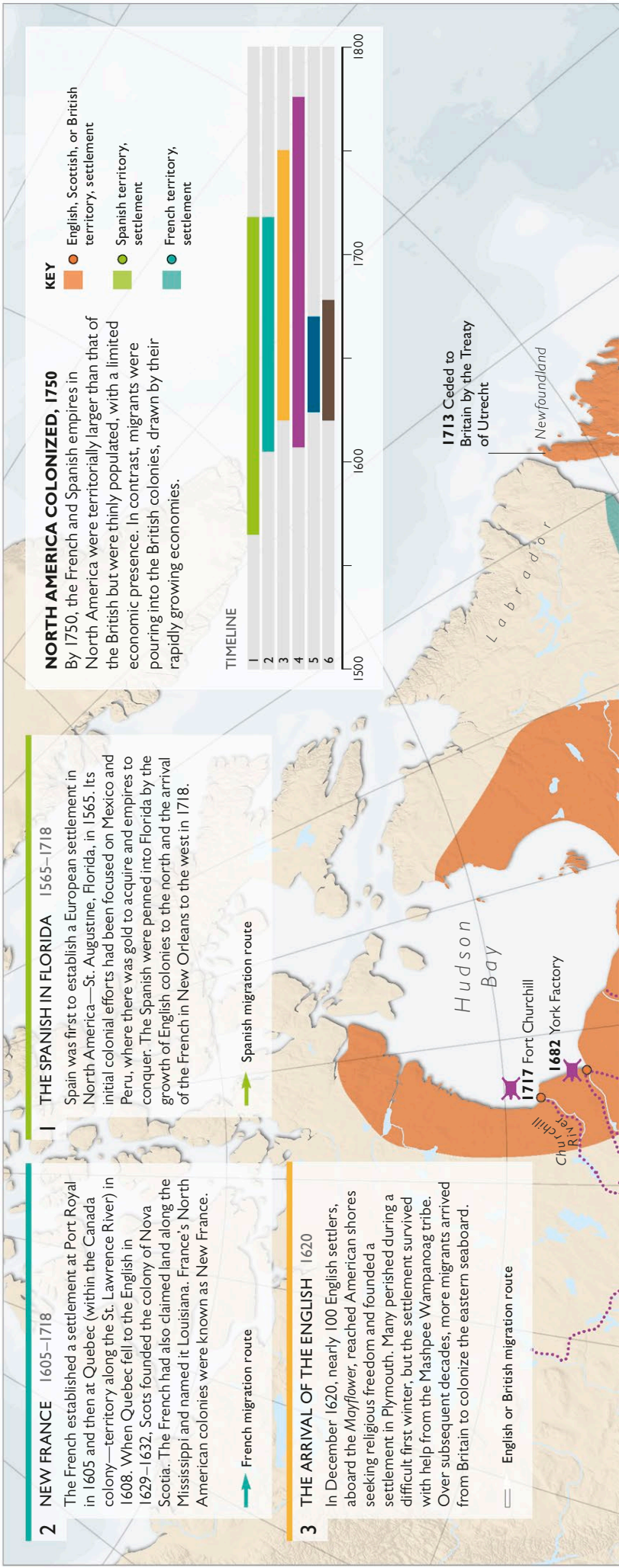
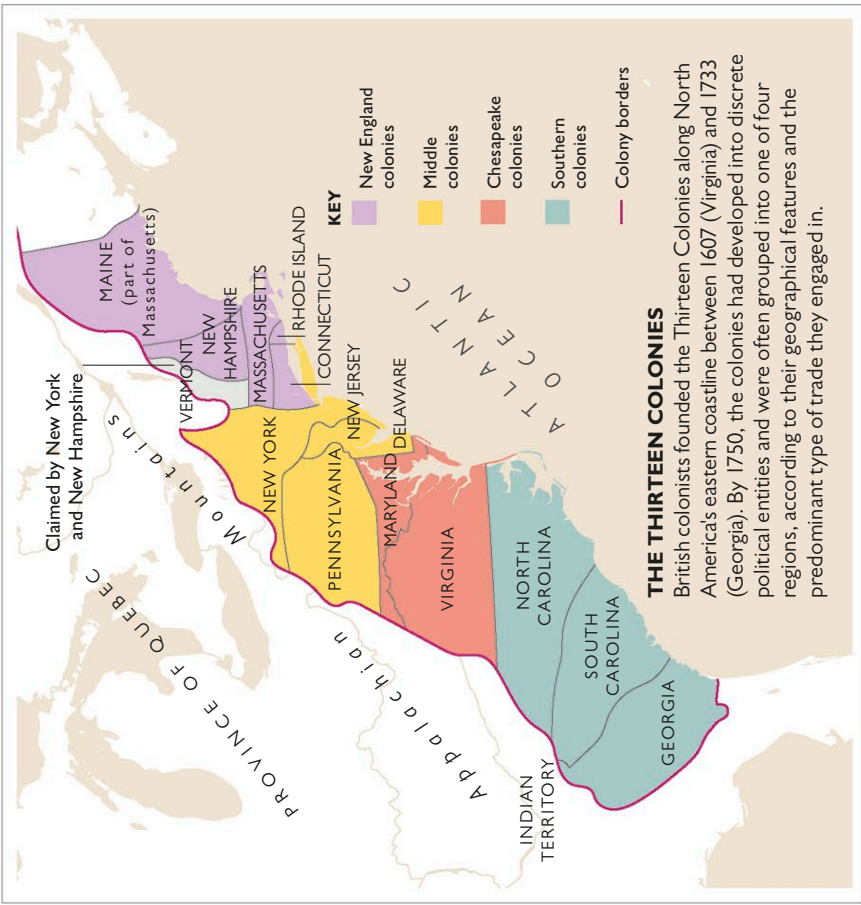
# THE COLONIZATION OF NORTH AMERICA

The Europeans first successfully colonized North America in the early 17th century. While the French and Spanish colonies depended on their crowns for orders, the English colonies—founded by a mix of religious dissidents, merchant companies, and royal initiatives—operated at arm’s length, gaining an advantage over their rivals.

In 1585, Sir Walter Raleigh attempted to found Roanoke as the first English colony of the New World, but the colony failed. The first successful English colony was Jamestown, founded in 1607. A century later, around 200,000 British migrants had arrived, and the number of British colonies in America had grown to 13. European slave traders also brought close to 175,000 African slaves to America to work on the plantations.

French settlers laid down roots in Quebec, Canada, in 1608, and started populating the St. Lawrence River basin and the accessible inland areas. They established forts as far south as New

Orleans, stoking a rivalry with the British that erupted in war in 1689. Meanwhile, the Spanish were unable to develop their fledgling colony in Florida or to capitalize on their explorations of the American Southwest, which had begun in the 1520s. Growing European presence disturbed local power structures, and Native American groups eventually fought to reclaim their lost land, beginning a phase of conflict that would last for almost three centuries. By the mid-1700s, tension was also increasing between the colonists themselves and their overseas rulers in Britain.









# THE AGE OF EXCHANGE

Human migration across the world and the resulting exchange of food crops and animals started in Neolithic times, but it was not until 1492, when European explorers reached the New World (the Americas), that a biological exchange had such dramatic effects.

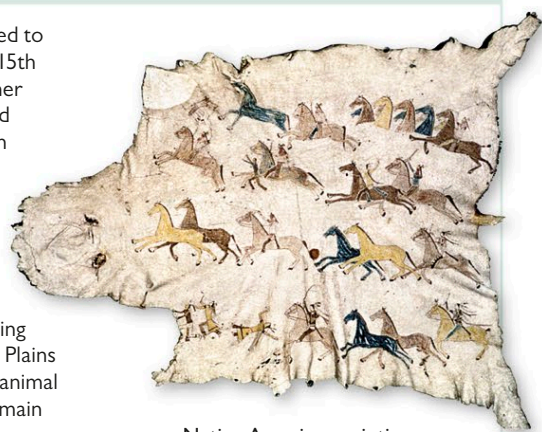
The domestication of crops occurred independently in various areas around the world between 11,000 BCE and 6000 BCE. Among the “founder crops” that formed the cornerstone of early agriculture, wheat was the first to be cultivated on a large scale in western Asia in about 9500 BCE, and rice emerged as a staple crop in east Asia 1,500 years later. Farming communities in the Americas, meanwhile, domesticated an entirely different set of crops owing to their complete isolation from the Old World (Africa, Asia, and Europe).

When European explorers reached the Americas in the late 15th century (see pp.150–151), the Old and New Worlds began to embark on an unprecedented level of biological exchange, in what would become known as the Columbian Exchange. Old World staples such as wheat, rice, pigs, cattle, and horses were introduced to the Americas, while New World foods such as tomatoes, corn, potatoes, and cassava were exported to the rest of the world. Tobacco and the furs of animals native to the Americas became highly profitable commodities that allowed settlers to finance their new colonies. However, not all aspects of the Columbian Exchange were positive. Disease traveled between the two worlds, with syphilis crossing into Europe and Old World diseases such as smallpox, measles, and influenza spreading to the Americas, decimating the native population. Consequently, European plantation owners replaced their depleted Native American workforce with slaves procured from Africa—leading to the displacement and deaths of tens of millions.

## THE HORSE

### THE IMPACT OF THE HORSE ON NATIVE AMERICAN TRIBES

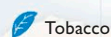
Horses were reintroduced to the Americas in the late 15th century, when Christopher Columbus brought a herd of 25 animals with him on his second voyage to the continent. By 1750, the animal had dispersed into an area of 10 states known as the Great Plains and revolutionized the lives of the people living there. Almost overnight, Plains Indians found a superior animal with which to hunt their main food staple, buffalo.



Native American painting

## 4 TOBACCO 1528–1700

Traditionally used by Native Americans in spiritual ceremonies, tobacco was taken back to Europe by Spanish explorers in 1528. There, the addictive substance became popular, and colonists used this to fund further expansion in North America. From about 1610, British colonists established tobacco plantations along North America's eastern coast. From the early 1700s, most tobacco plantations maximized their profit by utilizing African slaves.



PACIFIC OCEAN

1660 Chesapeake Bay area of Virginia exports \$35 million worth of tobacco annually across the world

15th–16th century  
Explorers bring a number of domesticated animals with them, including horses, cattle, sheep, and pigs

1492 Within 150 years of Columbus landing in the Caribbean, around 80–95 percent of the native population in the Americas perish from new diseases first carried by Columbus's crew

## 5 SUGAR CANE 1492–1650

Sugar cane was brought to the New World from Southeast Asia via Europe. The labor-intensive crop thrived in Brazil and the Caribbean, and by the 1560s, Brazil was the main exporter of sugar to Europe. With local populations reduced by disease, Spanish and Portuguese colonizers transported around 800,000 African slaves to work on sugar plantations by 1650.

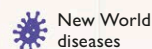


## 6 NEW DISEASES REACH AMERICA 1492–1600

Old World diseases—including diphtheria, measles, influenza, and smallpox—were carried to the Americas by infected Spanish colonists. Between 1520 and 1600, a series of epidemics in both Mexico and Peru killed 90 percent of the native population. In Europe, syphilis is thought to have been carried back from the New World by Columbus's crew.



Old World diseases




New World diseases





**3 POTATOES 1570–1774**

Indigenous to South America, the potato was first brought to Europe in the late 16th century. The potato was slow to spread across Europe, as many were suspicious of the new plant, but eventually it was accepted. It played a key role in decreasing outbreaks of food shortages; King Frederick II of Prussia, for example, ordered large-scale potato cultivation following a famine in 1774.

 Potatoes
**2 HORSES 1493–1800**

First domesticated in central Asia between 4000 BCE and 2000 BCE, horses later spread to Europe. They were reintroduced to the Americas in the late 15th century, although they did not become widespread until the 17th century. The Plains Indians were among the first people to obtain and use horses. Colonists relied on the animal's mobility in wars against local populations.

 Horses
**1 RICE 1500–1690**

Rice was introduced to Europe between the 8th and 10th centuries, having first been domesticated in Asia approximately 10,000 years ago. It was also separately domesticated in Africa around 3,000 years ago. Rice from both continents was taken to the Americas by European explorers from the early 16th century, and the crop reached South Carolina by 1690.

 Rice

**1570** Traders bring potatoes from South America to Spain, where they become a staple ingredient. Potatoes are also independently brought across to England between 1585–1590

**1495** The first recorded outbreak of syphilis occurs among French troops besieging Naples

**1500s** Portuguese traders introduce cassava to Africa from Brazil

**1521** Spanish explorers bring foods such as tomatoes and corn from Central America with them when they colonize the Philippines. From here, these New World foods spread throughout Southeast Asia

**1550s** Tobacco pipes are made locally as tobacco use becomes widespread throughout eastern Asia

**1526** Portuguese traders transport slaves from Africa to Brazil to work on plantations. The slave trade quickly becomes a key part of the Columbian Exchange

ATLANTIC OCEAN

INDIAN OCEAN

ASIA

PACIFIC OCEAN

**△ Mexico smallpox epidemic**

This 16th-century illustration by Spanish missionary Bernardino de Sahagún shows a medicine man ministering to an Aztec person with smallpox—a disease contracted from Spanish colonizers.

**BIOLOGICAL EXCHANGES ACROSS THE WORLD**

With the advent of long-distance navigation in the 15th century, explorers could travel more of the world than ever before, bringing with them new crops, animals, diseases, and ideas.

**KEY****ORIGINAL LOCATION AND DIRECTION OF MOVEMENT**

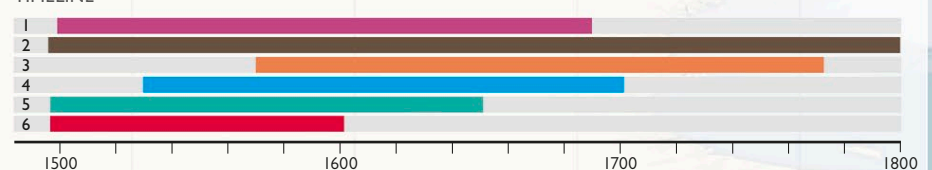
Europe → The Americas  
Asia → Africa

**END LOCATION OF CROPS**

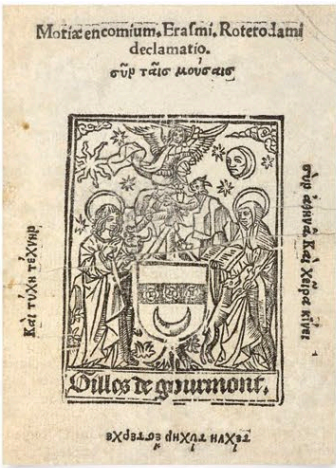
Bananas Cassava Tomatoes  
Corn Wheat

**SLAVE TRADE**

Slaves Slave trade route Slave trading regions

**TIMELINE**





△ **Daring satire**  
Written in 1509 by Desiderius Erasmus, *In Praise of Folly* pokes fun at some of the excesses of the contemporary Catholic Church and ends with a call for a return to a purer sense of Christian morality.

# THE RENAISSANCE

In 15th-century Italy, a revival of interest in classical learning and secular studies, along with a flowering of artistic production, gave rise to the Renaissance (meaning “rebirth”). The movement soon spread to northern Europe, reshaping the continent’s cultural landscape.

Knowledge of classical authors had declined in Europe after the fall of the Roman Empire in the 5th century, although Latin and Greek texts, particularly those dealing with law and the philosophy of Aristotle, had been rediscovered in the 11th and 12th centuries. This renewal, however, was based within the church and focused on a narrow curriculum designed for the education of clerics. Fourteenth-century Italy was made up of dozens of independent city-states. Most of these, such as Florence and Venice, were republics governed by their more prosperous

citizens, made wealthy by the late medieval growth in trade and industry. The growth in secular wealth, uncontrolled by monarchs or the Catholic Church, slowly created a class of patrons whose interests inclined more toward the promotion of their own cities than praise for the Church.

### Rediscovering the past

An awareness of past glories led to a thirst to recover the knowledge that had made the Roman Empire great. Scholars such as Poggio Bracciolini scoured the archives of monasteries

looking for new texts—a search that yielded eight new speeches by the orator Cicero and a manuscript of the *Ten Books on Architecture* by Marcus Vitruvius Pollio. Although he served as papal secretary, Bracciolini formed part of a new humanist movement, which placed human nature—and not just God—at the center of its studies, encouraging a wider approach to education.

### Artistic renaissance

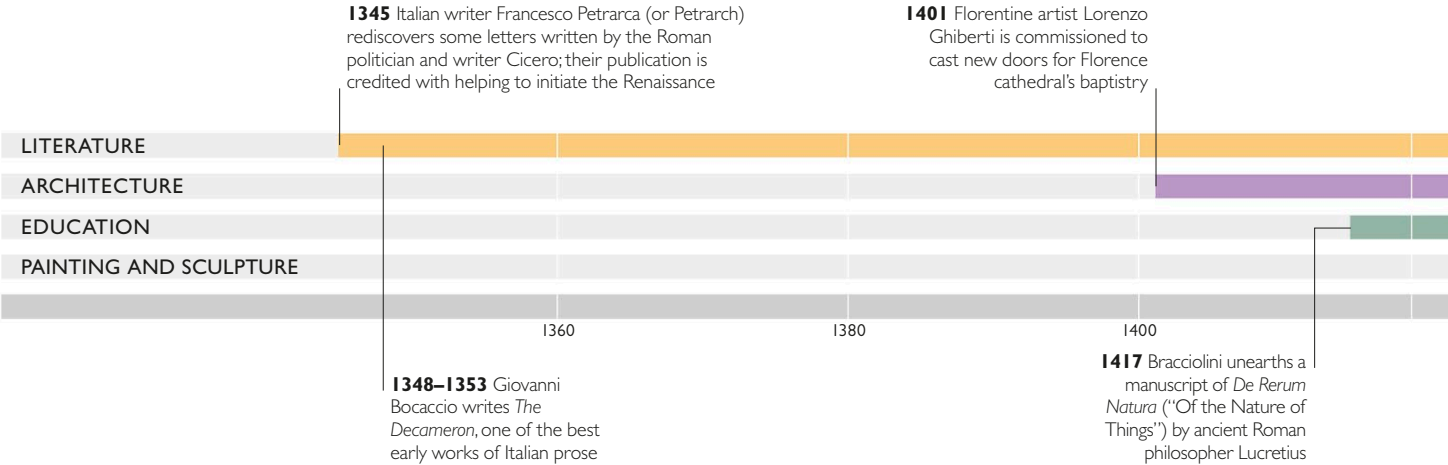
Accompanying humanism was a new interest in the production of literature in vernacular languages, rather than Latin, which had been the medium of almost all



▷ **Patronage in art**  
Florentine artist Sandro Botticelli painted *Primavera* (meaning “Spring”) for a member of Florence’s ruling Medici family. With its portrayal of Venus, the Three Graces, and Mercury, the painting is typical of the works of art commissioned by rich Italian patrons during the Renaissance.

### EUROPE’S REBIRTH

Although there had been periods of cultural renewal in the 9th and 12th centuries, the Renaissance—which began in Italy in the 15th century—was remarkable in the breadth of artistic, literary, educational, and political endeavors it touched. Its first stirrings occurred in the 14th century, with paintings by artists such as Titian and Giotto di Bondone, and it continued to exert influence well into the 17th century. However, the key events of this movement took place in the 125 years from around 1400.







#### ◀ A revolution in anatomy

The central illustration of Flemish anatomist Andreas Vesalius's *Epitome*, which was published in 1543, shows human anatomy in great detail. Vesalius revolutionized the study of the human body.

*"The first thing I shall do as soon as the money arrives ... buy some Greek authors; after that, I shall buy clothes."*

DESIDERIUS ERASMUS, DUTCH SCHOLAR, 1498

scholarship for centuries. The Florentine poet Dante Alighieri was a pioneer in this; his *Divine Comedy* (1320) virtually invented the Italian literary language. By the 16th century, vernacular literatures had been firmly established in many countries, producing works as vibrant as the plays of William Shakespeare in England and the philosophy of Michel de Montaigne in France. The Dutch scholar Desiderius Erasmus pioneered a critical approach to historical analysis and penned *In Praise of Folly*, a satirical attack on religious superstition. An increase in literacy among the affluent and the invention of printing in the 1450s all helped loosen the hold of the Church—whose near-monopoly on the dissemination of manuscripts and on education provided in Europe's universities and theological schools had done much to stifle dissent. This in turn paved the way for the Reformation—a movement that questioned the excesses of the Church, as well as Catholic doctrine. By the 15th century, the wealthy patrons of the Italian city-states had begun to enrich their home towns with tangible signs of the new learning.

Italian artists had been experimenting since the early 14th century with new techniques, seeking to endow their work with a fresher and more realistic approach. Florentine artists

such as Masaccio, who developed expertise in portraying nature and a depth in landscapes, were followed by generations of painters such as Sandro Botticelli, Leonardo da Vinci, and Raphael, whose works are considered among the greatest masterpieces in artistic history. Sculptors produced pieces of public art, such as the statue of David created by Michelangelo, which was placed outside the seat of Florence's city government. Architects, too, advanced their crafts, most notably Filippo Brunelleschi, who designed the *Duomo* at Florence, the largest masonry dome ever constructed.

#### Culmination of the movement

The movement spread rapidly, as Flemish masters such as Jan van Eyck and German scholars like Rudolph Agricola produced works inspired by advances in Italy. Its influence also extended to political thought, as Florentine historian Niccolò Machiavelli wrote a series of works examining how rulers should best govern. By the latter part of the 16th century, Italy's wealth and power had declined in comparison to other rising states such as France, England, and the Dutch Republic, and as its status as a cultural powerhouse waned, the Renaissance drew to a close.

#### ▽ Architectural feat

Florence's cathedral, the *Duomo*, started in 1296, was still incomplete in 1418 when Filippo Brunelleschi won the competition to design its dome. He used innovative techniques to spread the dome's weight across the vast span.



**1423** Vittorino da Feltre sets up a Latin grammar school in Mantua

**1440** Donatello is commissioned to make a statue of the biblical hero David for the Palazzo Medici

**1455** Publication of the *Gutenberg Bible*, the first printed book in Europe

**1480** Italian painter Piero della Francesca writes a treatise on visual perspective

**1502** Portuguese playwright Gil Vicente puts on the first performances of vernacular plays in verse form

**1509–1511** Raphael produces frescoes for the Vatican Stanza della Segnatura

**c.1510** Donato Bramante builds the Tempietto at Rome based on classical temple architecture

**1519** Francis I of France orders the construction of the Château de Chambord in Renaissance style

**1436** Brunelleschi completes the dome of Florence cathedral

**1453** With the fall of Constantinople, many Byzantine scholars come to Italy, bringing with them Greek manuscripts previously unknown in the West

**1495** Aldine Press in Venice publishes the complete works of Aristotle in Greek

**1517** Niccolò Machiavelli publishes his *Discourses on Livy*, an examination of political power in a republic

**1532** French author François Rabelais writes the comic novels *La vie de Gargantua et de Pantagruel* ("The Life of Gargantua and Pantagruel")



# THE COLONIAL SPICE TRADE

The discovery of a sea route from Europe to India in the late 15th century resulted in several European countries swiftly establishing fortified trading posts along the coast of sub-Saharan Africa and in south Asia. In doing so, these countries gained access to sources of spices—a product highly prized in European markets.

During medieval times, Asian spices such as nutmeg, cloves, and pepper reached Europe via overland routes and in doing so passed through the hands of many traders, which accounted for their high price. The aim of European exploration around the coastline of Africa was to find a route that would bypass Muslim-controlled areas of Asia and secure direct access to the sources of these spices.

Vasco Da Gama's pioneering voyage around Africa in 1497–1498 led to Portuguese fleets establishing posts in Mozambique (1505), Goa (1510), Hormuz (1515), and Malacca (1511). Spain, by contrast, largely confined itself

to outposts in the Philippines (1565). Under Afonso de Albuquerque's governorship (1509–1515), Portugal took control of trade in the Indian Ocean but was superseded in 1609 by the Dutch, who established posts in the Moluccas (later known as the Spice Islands).

Britain, too, was attracted by the lucrative returns promised by the spice trade but, unable to break the Dutch monopoly in the Moluccas, turned its attention to India. From 1613, Britain's commercial arm, the British East India Company, set up a series of trading posts and factories in India and gained a foothold that would form the nucleus of its empire in the 18th century.

*"Nutmeges be good for them which have cold in their head and doth comforte the syght and the brain."*

ANDREW BORDE, FROM *DYETARY OF HELTH*, 1452

## AMBOINA MASSACRE 1623

### DUTCH MEASURES TO PROTECT THE SPICE TRADE

By 1621, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) fully controlled the islands in the Moluccas, gaining a monopoly on spices, such as nutmeg, mace, cloves, and pepper, that were cultivated exclusively in the region. In February 1623, the Dutch company allegedly foiled a terrorist plot by British merchants to infiltrate Amboina Island (now Ambon) and seize the fort. The Dutch proceeded to arrest the guilty party (which also included Japanese and Portuguese personnel employed by the VOC), of which 20 were subsequently tortured and executed for acts against Dutch sovereignty.





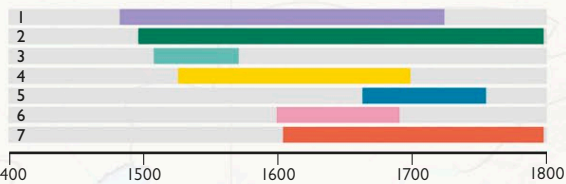
## EUROPEAN TRADING COLONIES IN AFRICA AND ASIA 1700

Throughout the 15th century, several European nations vied with one another to control the spice trade in southern Asia. By 1700, these powers had set up fortified trading posts in the region to secure their presence.

### KEY

- ▲ British colonies and trading posts/forts
- ▲ Portuguese colonies and trading posts/forts
- ▲ French colonies and trading posts/forts
- ▲ Spanish colonies and trading posts/forts
- ▲ Dutch colonies and trading posts/forts

### TIMELINE



## 2 THE SPICE ISLANDS 1499-1796

Many of the spices sought by Europeans were found only in the Moluccas. After the discovery of the maritime route to India in 1499, European traders flocked to the islands determined to gain access to spices, the most popular of which could yield a 1,000 percent profit margin in European markets. The Dutch ousted the Portuguese to gain control of the spice trade in the Moluccas in 1602.

Source of spices

## 3 THE PORTUGUESE IN EAST ASIA 1511-1575

The Portuguese trading empire asserted its dominance in Asia with the seizure of Goa in India in 1510. Two years later, explorer Francisco Serrão reached Hitu island in the Moluccas. He formed ties with the local rulers, allowing the Portuguese to erect posts at Ternate and Amboina. Portugal effectively controlled the Spice Islands until the Dutch arrived in the early 1600s.

Portuguese trade routes

## 4 THE SPANISH IN THE PACIFIC 1529-1700

The 1529 Treaty of Zaragoza resulted in Spain ceding control of the Spice Islands to Portugal. The Spanish, however, landed in the Philippines in 1565 and by 1571 took control of the Manila region. From 1572, a galleon sailed annually from Manila, carrying silver, which was exchanged with Chinese traders for silk and porcelain.

Spanish trade routes

## 6 THE BRITISH IN INDIA 1600-1690

Founded in 1600, the investor-funded British East India Company allowed Britain to open its first trading post in India at Surat (1613). With the acquisition of Calcutta, Britain ousted its French rival and secured British presence in Bengal. This formed the main bridgehead for its expansion throughout India in the 18th century.

British trade routes Main bases of the British East India Company

## 5 FRENCH INDIA 1664-1756

In 1664, the French East India Company was established to compete for trade in Southeast Asia. Colonies were established in India, most notably in Chandernagore (1673) and Pondicherry (1674). Posts were also erected in the Indian Ocean, on the Île de Bourbon (Réunion, 1664), Île de France (Mauritius, 1715), and the Seychelles (1756).

French trade routes

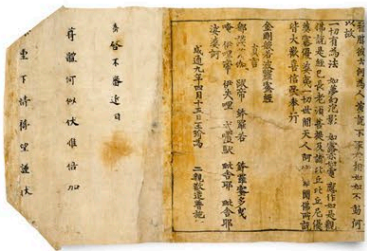


△ The arms of the VOC  
The shield bears the arms of the Dutch East India Company, ornamented with the Roman god Neptune and a mermaid. It was created in c. 1651.



# PRINTING

The invention of the printing press revolutionized the spread of knowledge. Books that previously had to be laboriously copied by hand could now be printed in the hundreds or thousands for a wider market.



△ **Antique print**  
This is a page from the *Diamond Sutra*, the world's oldest dated printed book. It was produced in 868 CE using wood-block printing techniques, and rediscovered in western China in 1907.

Printing was not a new technology. Engraved wooden blocks had been used for printing in east Asia since the 2nd century CE. In 1041, Chinese inventor Bi Sheng came up with movable type, which meant new pages could be composed rapidly without having to engrave a new block each time. However, the key innovation in printing came in 1439 with German printer

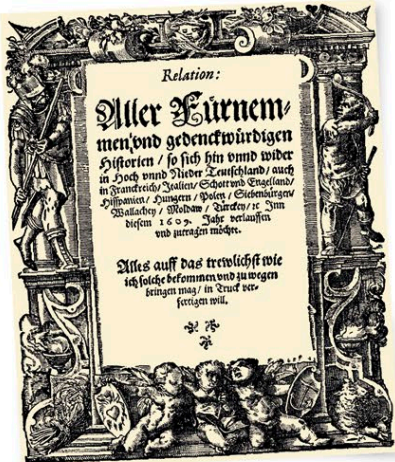
Johannes Gutenberg's printing press. By using a long lever and a screw to press down on paper laid over a wooden tray in which inked type was arrayed, it could accurately create printed sheets at a rate of more than 200 per hour.

### Reaching a wider audience

Gutenberg set up his printing press in Mainz, Germany, in the early 1440s, and by 1455, he had produced his *Forty-two-line Bible*, one of the most famous works ever printed. From here, the technique spread quickly, and by 1500, around 60 German towns had printing presses. Printing reached Italy in 1465, France in 1470, and England by 1476. It made larger editions of books practical, helping the new humanist ideas that were emerging as part of the Renaissance (see pp.104–105)

to spread more rapidly. Cheaper in the long run to produce than handwritten manuscripts, these editions were affordable to wider social groups and helped advance literacy. Although Gutenberg could not have known it, he had unleashed a knowledge revolution.

◁ **World's first newspaper**  
*Relation Aller Fürnemmen und Gedenckwürdigen Historien* (Collection of all Distinguished and Commemorable News), probably the world's first newspaper, was printed by German publisher Johann Carolus at Strasbourg in 1605.



*"The present book of the Psalms ... has been fashioned by an ingenious invention of printing ..."*

FROM THE PSALMS PRINTED BY FUST AND SCHOEFFER, 1457





**Close inspection**

In this engraving, Gutenberg is shown examining the first proofs of his Bible. An apprentice rests on the lever used to push down the press, while below lies a plate of the movable metal type used to compose pages.





# THE REFORMATION

Long-standing dissatisfaction at the conduct of the Roman Catholic Church led to a schism in 1517, causing Reformed (or Protestant) churches to spring up throughout Europe. A period of hostility followed as Catholic states tried to reassert papal authority.

In 1517, Martin Luther, a German Augustinian friar, composed his *Ninety-five Theses*—a tract condemning many of the practices of the Roman Catholic Church. The Church's hostile reaction forced Luther to reject the Catholic hierarchy and adopt a new theological position. He attracted large numbers of supporters, who formed the nucleus of the Reformed churches which proliferated throughout the German states. Once German princes began supporting this movement, a series of religious wars broke out. Amid the hostilities, more radical Protestant reformers appeared, such as Calvin in Switzerland, while

*"A simple layman armed with Scripture is greater than the mightiest pope without it."*

MARTIN LUTHER, 1519

the English and Swedish kings either rejected papal authority or even adopted Protestantism, increasing the geographical spread of Reformed churches. In 1542, the Catholic church council at Trent strengthened the education of the clergy and clamped down on its more dubious practices, and in 1555, a peace agreement was brokered at Augsburg, granting limited religious tolerance to Protestants. The peace, however, was brittle at best, and renewed religious conflict broke out in France in the 1560s and simmered elsewhere, too, before exploding anew in 1618 in the Thirty Years' War (see pp.168–169).

## ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S DAY MASSACRE A BLOODY EPISODE IN FRENCH HISTORY

On August 24, 1572, on the instruction of the Queen Mother, King Charles IX of France ordered the assassination of Huguenot Protestant leaders in Paris. Among those marked for death was the Huguenot leader, Admiral Gaspard de Coligny, who was brutally beaten and thrown out of his bedroom window just before dawn. The act set off a wave of mass fanaticism as Catholic mobs took to the streets and massacred 10,000–20,000 Protestants throughout the country.



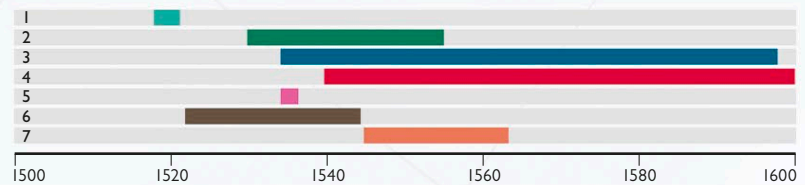
## RELIGIOUS MAP OF EUROPE

A powerful force of revivalism swept across Europe following Martin Luther's attack on the Roman Catholic Church in 1517. Secular rulers in Germany and Scandinavia established Protestantism along Lutheran lines. Calvinism became dominant in the Netherlands, Scotland, and Eastern Europe, while Anglicanism emerged in England.

### KEY

- Catholic majority areas 1555
- Protestant majority areas 1555
- Frontier of the Roman Holy Empire c. 1570

### TIMELINE



## 1 THE NINETY-FIVE THESES 1517–1521

Martin Luther pinned his *Ninety-five Theses*, to the door of Wittenberg Castle Church in October 1517. The document listed 95 complaints against the Church and adopted new theological positions on topics such as salvation and the interpretation of communion. The tract caused a huge stir throughout Europe, and led to his excommunication by the Catholic Church in 1521.

- Birthplace of Lutheranism
- Spread of Lutheranism
- Lutheran areas

## 2 CATHOLIC-PROTESTANT CONFLICT 1530–1555

In 1530, the Holy Roman Emperor Charles V ordered all Protestant churches to abandon their reforms, sparking a series of wars in the 1540s and 1550s. Eventually, peace was brokered in 1555 at Augsburg, Germany, with the Catholic Church agreeing to accept Protestantism but only in those German states that had already adopted the religion.

- Site of Augsburg Agreement

## 3 RELIGIOUS CONFLICT IN FRANCE 1534–1598

Religious wars initially broke out in 1534 after King Francis I (r. 1515–1537) tried to repress Protestantism on French soil. On St. Bartholomew's Day in 1572, thousands of Protestants, known as Huguenots, were massacred in Paris. In 1598, Henri IV (r. 1589–1610), a former Huguenot, issued the Edict of Nantes, which tolerated Protestantism in France. Protestants also faced persecution in London and Rome.

- Site of persecution
- Huguenot centers
- Edict of Nantes

## 4 CALVINISM 1540–1600

The French theologian John Calvin established a Protestant community in Geneva in the 1540s. His movement advanced a theology more radical than that of Luther, emphasizing God's sovereignty and the doctrine of predestination. Calvinism spread rapidly in France, the German states, the Netherlands, Scotland, and many parts of central Europe.

- Calvinism
- Spread of Calvinism









**Descent into chaos**

As Sebastien Vrancx records in his 1620 painting, widespread looting and plundering by soldiers was rife during the Thirty Years' War—by both sides—and there are numerous first-hand accounts of the atrocities committed.





# THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR

When war broke out in 1618, it concerned the rights of Protestant minorities in Bohemia. But the fighting spread, pitting the Catholic rulers of Austria, Bavaria, and the Holy Roman Empire against German Protestant princes and, eventually, several foreign powers.

The Peace of Augsburg in 1555 (see pp.166–167) led to an agreement that each ruler in the Holy Roman Empire should be able to choose between Catholicism or Protestantism as their realm's religion, but a simmering tension still existed between Catholics and Protestants.

The pressure finally boiled over in 1617, when Catholic zealot Ferdinand, Archduke of Styria, was named as King of Bohemia, a primarily Protestant realm. Bohemian Protestants feared for their religious freedom and revolted in May 1618. The conflict that then erupted spread across Greater Bohemia. Imperial forces, supported by Spain, eventually crushed the rebellion at the Battle of White Mountain (1620) and enforced Catholicism as the Bohemian state religion.

Over several years, resentment of the Catholic regime grew and set the stage for neighboring Protestant states to wage war against the empire, starting with Denmark (1625–1629), followed by Sweden (1630–1635), and finally France (1635–1648), which, though Catholic, fought on the Protestant side.

The Thirty Years' War was one of the most intensely fought and devastating wars in European history and reduced the empire's population of 20–25 million by one-third. Peace would finally be brokered in 1648, bringing about an end to widespread Protestant discrimination and the European Wars of Religion.

## ▷ King of Sweden (r. 1611–1632)

Gustavus led his country to military supremacy during the Thirty Years' War, smashing the Imperial army at Breitenfeld in 1631 (right) and overrunning much of Germany and Bohemia. His death during Sweden's victory at the Battle of Lützen in 1632 slowed Sweden's progress.



*"All the things that happened in this robber-war can barely be described."*

PETER THIELE, EYEWITNESS ACCOUNT





# BRITISH CIVIL WARS

In the 1640s and early 1650s, the British Isles were engulfed in a series of intertwined wars, as a king with tendencies to be an absolute monarch tried to take on Parliament. What resulted was a short-lived republican revolution, during which radical political groups pushed for radical social and political reforms.

By the 16th century, it had become customary that English monarchs had to seek parliamentary approval for most taxation. Charles I had to pay for wars against France and Spain in 1636–1637 and Scotland in 1639–1640, but until 1640, he resorted to expedients that did not need parliamentary approval, such as Ship Money, an antiquated naval tax. He avoided summoning Parliament from 1629 to 1640, which led to suspicions that he wanted to dispense with it. Meanwhile, a tide of Puritanism, a radical religious strain that opposed the traditional hierarchy of the Church of England, was rising. Parliament

insisted on stronger powers, which complicated negotiations with the king, and in 1642, war broke out between royalists and parliamentarians.

In the First Civil War, parliamentary armies under the guidance of Oliver Cromwell left the royalist side utterly defeated. The king turned to the Scots during the Second Civil War, but a Scottish-backed invasion failed. Charles was tried and executed, then his son, Charles II, was defeated in the Third Civil War. Political radicals then installed an English Republic which, slightly moderated under the rule of Oliver Cromwell as Lord Protector, lasted until 1660.

OLIVER CROMWELL  
1599–1658



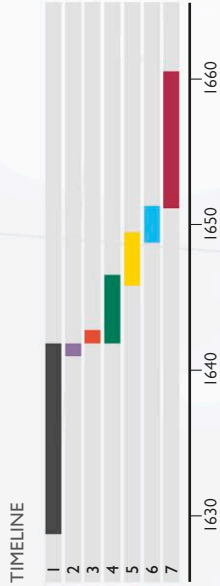
Oliver Cromwell was a Puritan who became a member of parliament (MP) in 1628. He rose to prominence in Britain during the Civil Wars. In 1645, Cromwell became second in command of the New Model Army. This radically new army thrived on its focus on a person's ability, rather than social standing. It was based on light armed cavalry, which greatly increased its speed of attack. Cromwell rose to commander of the parliamentary army in 1650. During the English Republic, he was appointed Lord Protector, a role with quasi-monarchical powers, to stem a rising tide of radicalism. He occupied this position until his death.

*"I shall go from a corruptible to an incorruptible Crown, where no disturbance can be."*

CHARLES I'S LAST WORDS BEFORE HIS EXECUTION, 1649

## PARLIAMENTARY UPRISING

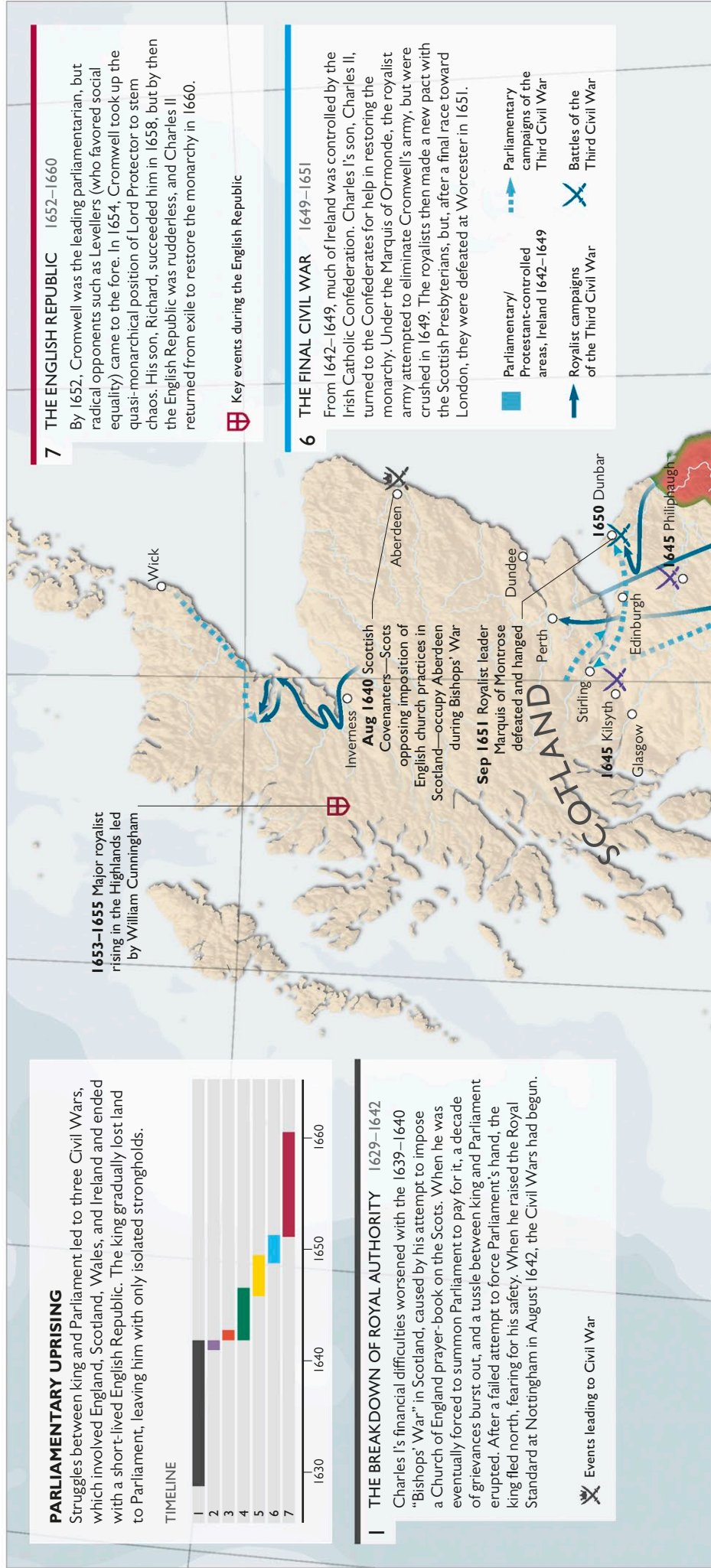
Struggles between king and Parliament led to three Civil Wars, which involved England, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland and ended with a short-lived English Republic. The king gradually lost land to Parliament, leaving him with only isolated strongholds.



## THE BREAKDOWN OF ROYAL AUTHORITY 1629–1642

Charles I's financial difficulties worsened with the 1639–1640 "Bishops' War" in Scotland, caused by his attempt to impose a Church of England prayer-book on the Scots. When he was eventually forced to summon Parliament to pay for it, a decade of grievances burst out, and a tussle between king and Parliament erupted. After a failed attempt to force Parliament's hand, the king fled north, fearing for his safety. When he raised the Royal Standard at Nottingham in August 1642, the Civil Wars had begun.

Events leading to Civil War






## 2 FIRST CIVIL WAR BEGINS 1642

The first, inconclusive engagement of the war took place at Edgehill in October 1642. Neither parliamentary nor royalist forces initially had effective leadership, and the king missed the chance of a thrust from Oxfordshire into London to put an early end to the war. Instead, the country divided into a patchwork of areas supporting either side: in the West, Cornwall was initially royalist and Somerset parliamentarian.

 Battles of First Civil War (1642–1646)

## 3 THE ROYALIST RESURGENCE 1643

1643 saw fragmentary fighting in which the royalists made strategic gains. Sir Ralph Hopton emerged victorious in the West Country after the Battle of Braddock Down in January, and by July, the royalists had captured Bristol. The north, too, fell largely into the hands of the royalists. Only in East Anglia, where Oliver Cromwell was in command, did Parliament hold its own.

 Area controlled by the king late 1643  
 Area controlled by Parliament late 1643




### ▽ Walking to the scaffold

Flanked by soldiers, King Charles I takes a final walk through St. James's Park on his way to his execution on January 30, 1649.






## 4 PURITANS AND PRESBYTERIANS 1643–1646

Many parliamentarians held Puritan beliefs; Puritanism was a strict form of Protestantism. Scotland was mostly Presbyterian, another type of Protestantism, so in 1643, the parliamentary leadership turned to the Scots for aid and in return agreed that the English Church would be reformed on Presbyterian lines. Parliamentary victories led to the fall of most formerly royalist regions.

 Area controlled by the king late 1645  
 Area controlled by Parliament late 1645  
 Royalist strongholds in areas controlled by Parliament late 1645

## 5 A SECOND CIVIL WAR 1646–1649

In 1646, Charles surrendered himself to the Scots, but was handed over to Parliament, marking the end of the First Civil War. In 1647, the king secretly negotiated a treaty with the Scots, and they invaded England on his behalf. Under Cromwell, the strong New Model Army had emerged, which won key victories of the war and defeated the king's army at Preston in 1648. The king was tried and executed.

 Royalist campaigns of the Second Civil War  
 Parliamentary campaigns of the Second Civil War  
 Battles of the Second Civil War





## 1 THE CONQUEST OF THE BALKANS 1453–1495

After taking Constantinople in 1453, Mehmed II claimed the remaining Byzantine possessions, finally seizing Morea in 1460. He conquered Serbia in 1454 and annexed Bosnia in 1463. Moldavia and the Republic of Ragusa both yielded peacefully to the Ottomans and became tributary states. Only a failed siege of Belgrade in 1456 halted Ottoman advances further west.

→ Major campaigns      ○ Siege

## 2 SELIM CLAIMS THE CALIPHATE 1512–1520

Sultan Selim I (r. 1512–1520) began his conquest of Mamluk-ruled Syria and Egypt in 1516. His army swept away the resistance at Aleppo and Damascus and proclaimed victory by hanging the Mamluk caliph at the Gates of Cairo (1517). By gaining guardianship of the Islamic holy cities of Medina and Mecca, the Ottomans effectively became the fourth major Caliphate after the Rashiduns, Umayyads, and the Abbasids.

→ Major campaigns of Selim I      ✕ Ottoman victory



◀ Suleyman I holds court  
This 16th-century Ottoman miniature depicts Suleyman the Magnificent receiving an ambassador from the vassal Hungarian state in 1556.

## 3 SULEYMAN THE MAGNIFICENT 1520–1566

Suleyman I, better known as Suleyman the Magnificent (r. 1520–1566), ruled the empire during the height of its power. In 1526, he routed the Hungarians at Mohács, reducing the country to a vassal state. The Austrian Habsburg ruler Ferdinand I attempted to recapture the state, but the Ottomans struck back by besieging Vienna in 1529. Suleyman failed to take the Habsburg city, but he remained overlord of Hungary.

→ Major campaigns of Suleyman I      ○ Siege  
✕ Major victory

## 4 OTTOMANS' NAVAL WARFARE 1522–1571

In 1522, the Ottoman navy expelled the Knights of St. John (a Crusader army) from Rhodes and, in 1529, captured Algiers. Following the Ottoman's assault on Cyprus in 1570, European powers formed the Holy League. A year later, the League's fleet, led by Don Juan of Austria, crushed the Ottomans at Lepanto, ending Ottoman naval dominance in the eastern Mediterranean.

→ Major naval campaigns      ✕ Major victory  
→ Christian counteroffensive      ✕ Major defeat  
○ Siege





## OTTOMAN EXPANSION

The Ottoman Empire continued to expand during the 16th and 17th centuries as a succession of sultans waged campaigns and won more territory for the empire. The first sign of the empire's decline was its failure to conquer Vienna in 1683.

## KEY

OTTOMAN EMPIRE

Empire in 1451

Conquest by 1481

Conquests between 1512–1520

Conquests between 1520–1566

Conquests between 1566–1639

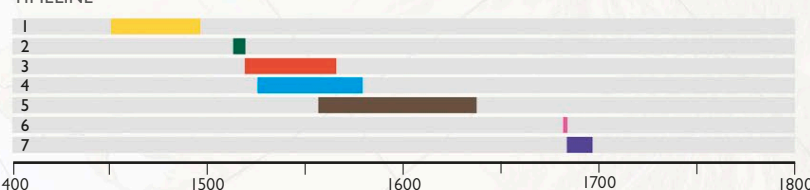
OTHER POWERS

Austrian Habsburg territory

Spanish Habsburg territory

Borders of vassal states

## TIMELINE



## 7 THE MOREAN WAR 1684–1699

The Venetian Republic launched a campaign to conquer Morea in 1684. After taking the peninsula in 1687, the army marched to Athens, where it fired mortars at the Ottoman garrison stationed inside the Acropolis, causing great destruction to the Parthenon. A Venetian win led to the Ottomans signing the Treaty of Karlowitz, ceding Morea and parts of Dalmatia to Venice.

Venetian Republic and possessions

Ottoman defeat

## 6 THE SIEGE OF VIENNA 1681–1683

Commanded by Grand Vizier Kara Mustafa Pasha, the Ottomans attacked Habsburg Austria in 1681, capturing northern Hungary in 1682 and besieging Vienna in July 1683. The Christian states formed a coalition and despatched an army led by the Polish king Jan Sobieski, who liberated Vienna 2 months later. Kara Mustafa was executed for his role in the defeat.

Polish counterattack

Poland-Lithuania

Ottoman defeat

## 5 GOVERNING THE EMPIRE 1566–1639

The capture of Tunis in 1574 sealed the Ottoman domination of the eastern and central Maghreb. The Ottomans also invaded the western frontier of the Safavid Empire, taking several cities, including Derbent (1578) and Baku (1583) in the north. After the reign of Suleyman I, power struggles between the viziers and the harem (the sultan's personal household) challenged the sultan's authority and weakened the empire.

Major campaigns

Ottoman capitals

Major victory

# REIGN OF THE OTTOMANS

The 15th century heralded an era of expansion for the Ottoman Empire, in which it extended its domain in the Balkans, Syria, and Egypt. At the pinnacle of its power, the empire posed a challenge to western Europe, forcing Christian states to form alliances to protect their lands.

With the capture of the Byzantine capital, Constantinople, in 1453, the Ottoman Empire consolidated its position as the principal Islamic power of the modern era. Sultan Mehmed II (r. 1444–1446 and 1451–1481) proceeded to annex the remnants of Byzantium, lands in the northern Balkans and eastern Anatolia, and bolstered the sultanate's power by earning revenues from these new conquests. In 1481, the Ottomans sent shock waves across western Europe by launching an attack on Otranto in southern Italy, but Mehmed's untimely death a year later put a stop to the campaign.

Successor Bayezid II (r. 1481–1512) made further gains in the Balkans, and Selim I's (r. 1512–1520) conquest of Egypt and the Holy Lands allowed him to lay claim to the caliphate and claim preeminence among Muslim rulers. Suleyman the Magnificent (r. 1520–1566) ruled an empire at the height of its power, notably invading Hungary in 1526. The Habsburg rulers proved an obdurate foe, but still most of the country was lost to the Ottomans.

From the mid-16th century, the authority of the sultanate began to diminish as internal power wranglings led to military officials taking greater regional control while government ministers, notably the grand vizier, rose to power. Although Murad IV (r. 1623–1640) and Mehmed IV (r. 1648–1687) made fitful attempts at reform, their efforts proved largely ineffectual. The Ottoman Empire's increasingly dysfunctional leadership was evident in its failed siege of Vienna in 1683, and defeat marked the start of its decline.

## OTTOMAN ARCHITECTURE

### BYZANTINE INSPIRATION

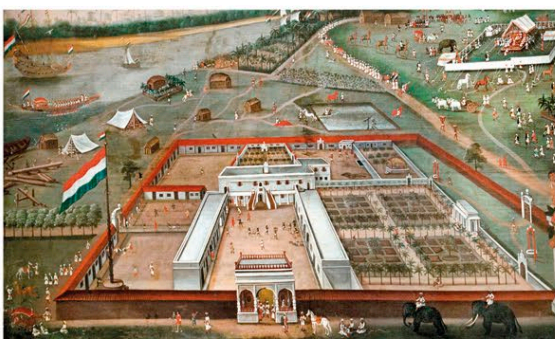
After the conquest of Constantinople, Sultan Mehmed II headed to the Hagia Sophia church—the centrepiece of the former Byzantine capital—and converted it to a mosque. The majesty of the building inspired great Ottoman architects such as Sinan, who went on to design mosques with soaring domes, vast open interiors, and multiple minarets, such as the Sülemaniye mosque (1558) in Istanbul.

### Hagia Sophia

This 16th-century painting shows the church of Hagia (Saint) Sophia transformed into a mosque.







### △ Trading hub

This 1665 painting shows the Dutch flag flying over the trading station of the Dutch East India Company at Hooghly in Bengal, India. Dutch ships can be seen navigating the Ganges.

# EAST MEETS WEST

The arrival of Europeans in the Indian Ocean in the 15th century began a 200-year-long period in which western travelers, goods, and ideas reached Asia in increasing numbers. In turn, information about the continent and its powerful indigenous empires filtered back to Europe.

Before the late 15th century, European knowledge of Asia had been minimal, derived mainly from the observations of the Venetian merchant Marco Polo about the Mongol Empire. It was the desire to acquire spices such as nutmeg, pepper, cinnamon, and cloves—prized for their culinary and medicinal uses—that drew Europeans to Asia once more. Spices were expensive and could only be sourced along overland routes controlled by the Chinese, Mughal, and Ottoman Empires.

### To Asia by sea

The Italian explorer Christopher Columbus sailed westward across the Atlantic in 1492 in an attempt to reach India and China. However, it was the Portuguese captain Vasco da Gama who finally reached Calicut (modern-day Kozhikode) on India's Malabar Coast in 1498 by sailing around Africa and then eastward into the Indian Ocean. Thereafter, the Portuguese returned in greater force and established a series of trading posts across southern Asia: at Goa, India, in 1510; in Malacca on the Malay peninsula in 1511; and in the Moluccas, in modern-day Indonesia, in 1512.

The Portuguese soon lost ground to other European rivals—notably the Dutch, who began to encroach on the Moluccas in 1599, and the English, who established a trading post at Surat in India in 1612. By then, however, Portugal had acquired a trading post at Macao, China, from where European missionaries and merchants traveled into

China and Japan. In China, Jesuit missionaries (members of the Catholic order of the Society of Jesus) under the leadership of Matteo Ricci adopted many Chinese customs, including their dress, and established a presence at the Ming court in Beijing. Although they made few converts and only secured formal toleration of Christianity in 1692, the missionaries introduced China to European astronomical, medical, and mathematical ideas. In turn, knowledge of China was transmitted back to the West,

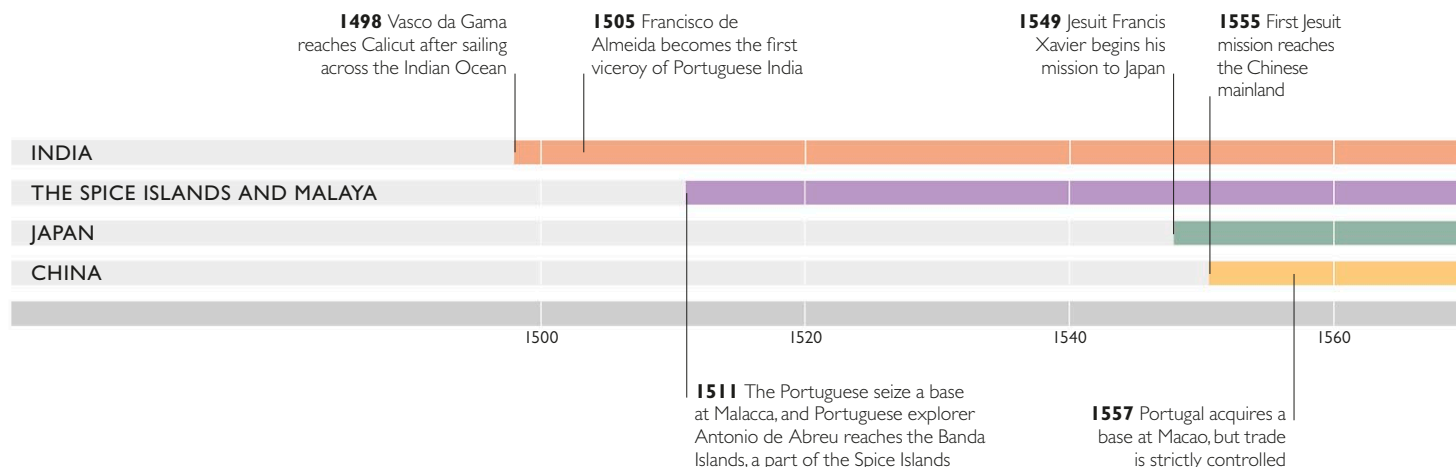


### ◁ Adopting local customs

An illustration from Jesuit Athanasius Kirchner's *China Illustrata* shows Matteo Ricci (left) and another Christian missionary dressed in Chinese-style robes that made their acceptance at the imperial court easier.

## MISSIONARIES AND MERCHANTS

The arrival of Vasco da Gama in India was followed by the setting up of Portuguese forts in south and Southeast Asia. From these, traders and missionaries traveled into Asia, particularly India, Japan, and China. By the mid-17th century, the Portuguese had largely been supplanted by the Dutch and the British. Although their missionary effort was less notable than that of the Portuguese, their merchants helped to spread European ideas into Asia and transmit knowledge about Asia to the West.







#### ◁ Painting foreigners

This painting from the 16th–17th century showing a Portuguese expedition arriving in Japan is in the Nanban style, a Japanese school of art that specialized in the depiction of foreigners and foreign themes.

in works such as the *China Illustrata* (1667), compiled by the Jesuit Athanasius Kirchner, which reproduced Chinese texts for a European audience for the first time.

Japan in the 16th century was mired in internal wars. The shipwreck of two Portuguese sailors in 1543 introduced modern firearms into Japan, increasing the bloodiness of the civil wars. The Jesuit Francis Xavier established a mission in 1549, and its converts included the daimyo lord Omura Sumitada, who gave the Portuguese the site of Nagasaki in 1571, from where they operated a growing trading network.

Although European goods were valued, and the Portuguese introduced copper-plate engraving and painting in oils and watercolors to the Japanese, the increasing number of Christian converts worried the Tokugawa shoguns who ruled Japan after 1600. The Shimabara Revolt of 1637, an uprising that included many Japanese Roman Catholics, proved to be the final straw. Christianity was savagely repressed and the Portuguese expelled; henceforth, the only contact allowed with Europeans was through a trading enclave off Nagasaki run by the Dutch.

#### Trade and diplomacy in India

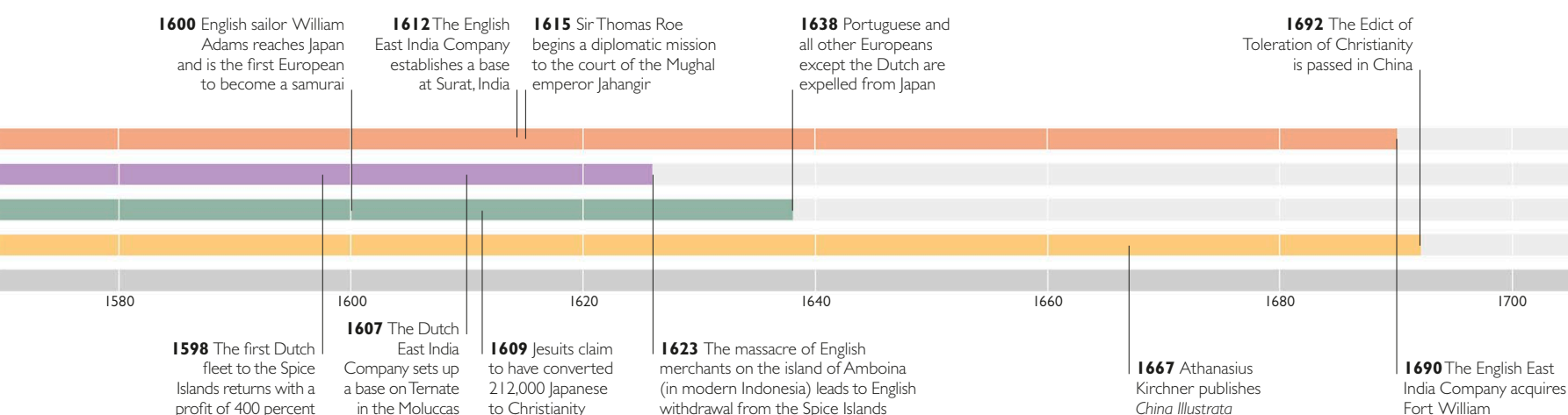
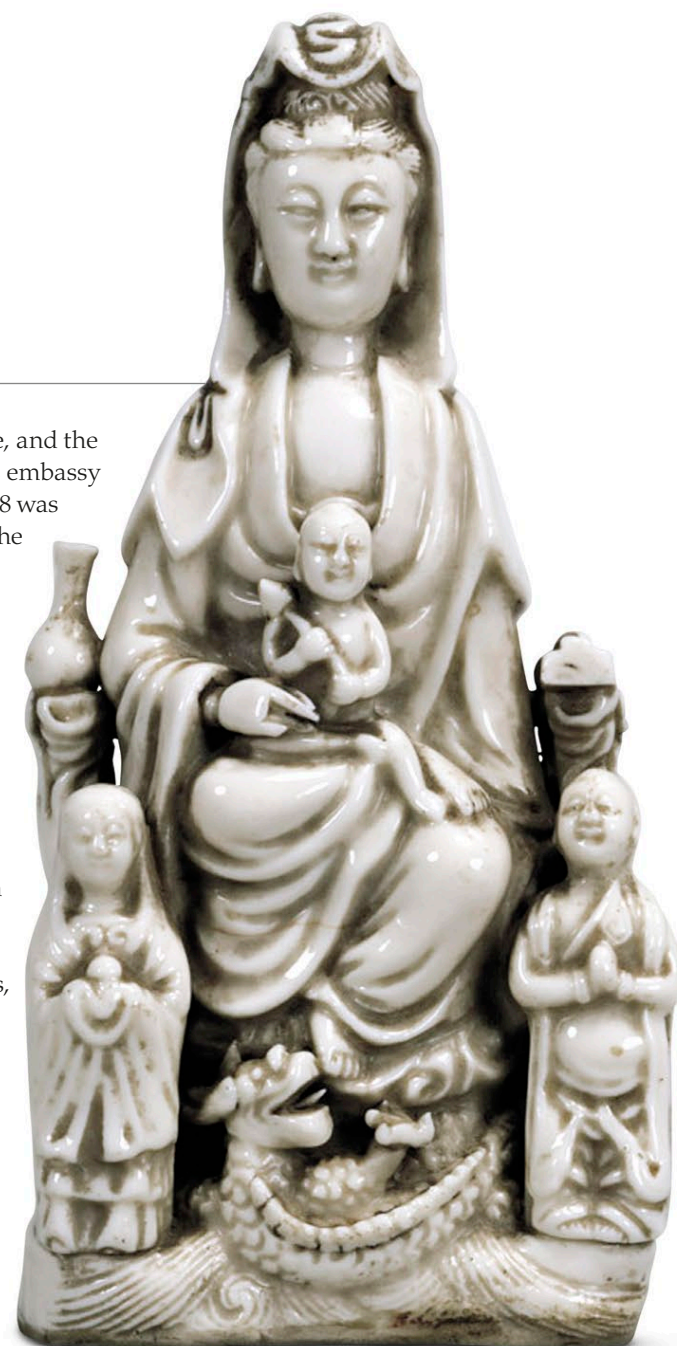
In India, rather than winning converts, the English sought to expand their trade by gaining access to the principal centers of power, which in the north meant the court of the Mughals. Although the English East India Company acquired Fort St. George (modern-day Chennai) in 1641 and Fort William (modern-day Kolkata) in 1690, they avoided large-scale political commitments that would exhaust their resources.

Trade, though, required knowledge, and the English diplomat Sir Thomas Roe's embassy to the Mughal court from 1615–1618 was one of many that reported back on the topography, customs, and politics of India. Indians traveling to the west were limited to servants and *lascars* (seamen of Indian origin) aboard company vessels, though a few high-status Indians also traveled.

By then, the terms of engagement between Asia and Europe were changing. Within a century, the British would directly occupy much of India, the Ottoman Empire would begin to fragment, the Qing Empire would become dependent on trade with Europeans, and Japan would cut itself off from the outside world. East and West, though, would be inextricably intertwined in an increasingly globalized world.

#### ▷ Camouflaged piety

This Japanese ivory figurine depicts the Virgin Mary as Kannon, the Buddhist goddess of mercy, a pretense made necessary by the outlawing of Christianity in Japan from 1614.













# CHINA FROM THE MING TO THE QING

The Ming Dynasty (1368–1644) encouraged industry and foreign trade, heralding a renaissance in China's economy and technological development. However, from 1506, a succession of feckless rulers eroded Ming authority. When civil rebellion broke out across the land following a famine in the 1620s, the non-Han Chinese Jurchen (later known as Manchus) took their opportunity and ousted the beleaguered Ming to become China's new rulers.

The Ming governed the realm according to systems set up long ago by the Qin (see pp. 74–75). China's manufacturing blossomed under the Ming, encouraged by foreign trade. Under Emperor Yongle (r. 1403–1424), the Forbidden City was built in the new capital Beijing (which replaced Nanjing as the main seat of imperial residence). He also increased China's trade influence across Asia and Africa.

The later emperors lacked the same vision, which led to a gradual waning of Ming power. Emperor Xuande (r. 1425–1435) established a Grand Secretariat to streamline legislation and, in doing so, reduced the burden on his rule. The Ming suffered a blow in 1449 when the

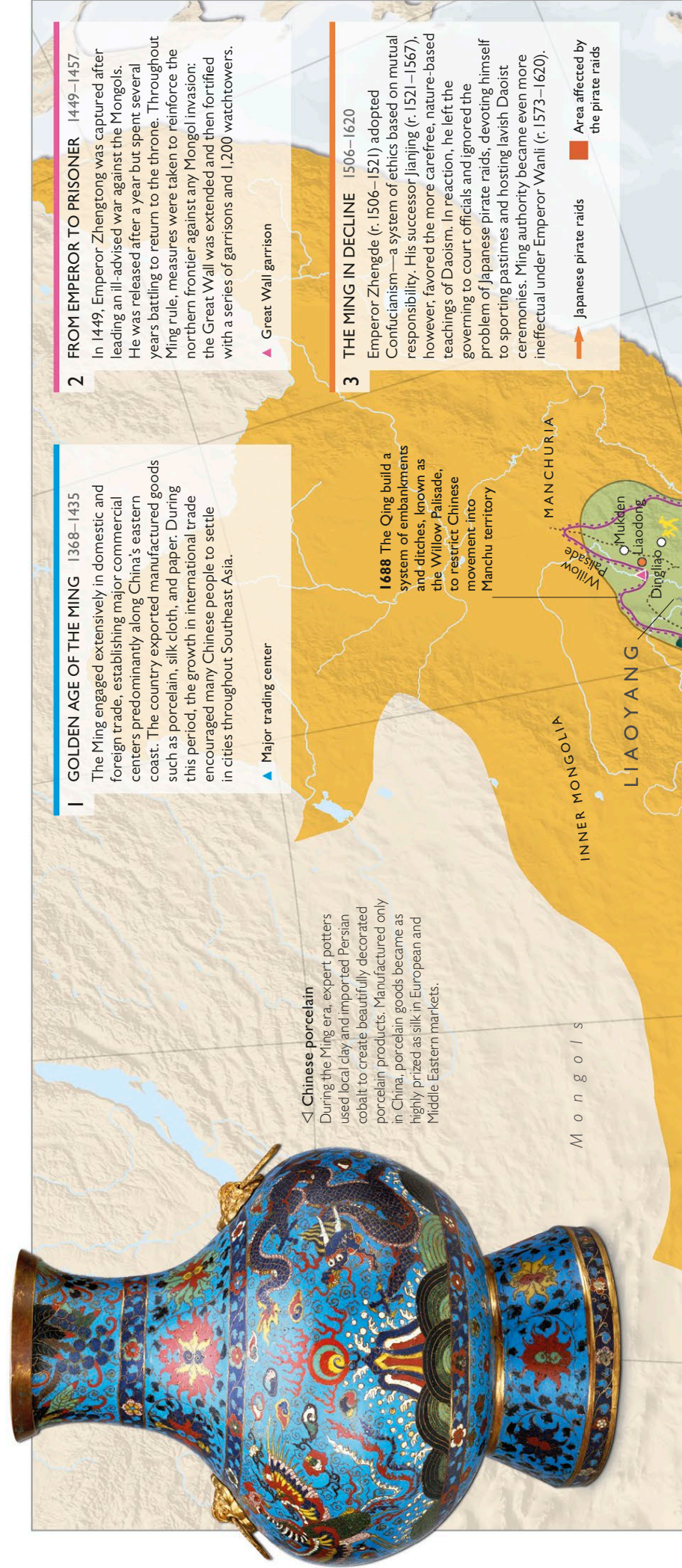
young Emperor Zhengtong (r. 1435–1449 and 1457–1464) was taken prisoner by Mongol tribes while leading a battle against them. The second half of the Ming era saw court officials displace the traditional bureaucracy, leading to factionalism and poor governance. The empire's fall was presaged in the 1620s by a severe famine, which triggered lawlessness and peasant rebellions across the realm.

In 1644, the Manchus seized Beijing. Initially, the Chinese ruling classes were excluded from government positions, leading to revolts, but reforms thereafter created stability for Qing rule under Emperors Shunzhi (r. 1644–1661) and Kangxi (r. 1661–1722).

## ADMIRAL ZHENG HE THE MING TREASURE VOYAGES



Between 1405 and 1433, Admiral Zheng He led seven state-sponsored naval missions, known as the “Ming Treasure Voyages,” across the Indian Ocean. With a fleet comprising more than 200 ships and 27,800 crewmen, Zheng He sailed as far as Arabia and the east coast of Africa, establishing new trade links and extending China's commercial influence.



### Chinese porcelain

During the Ming era, expert potters used local clay and imported Persian cobalt to create beautifully decorated porcelain products. Manufactured only in China, porcelain goods became as highly prized as silk in European and Middle Eastern markets.

### 1 GOLDEN AGE OF THE MING 1368–1435

The Ming engaged extensively in domestic and foreign trade, establishing major commercial centers predominantly along China's eastern coast. The country exported manufactured goods such as porcelain, silk cloth, and paper. During this period, the growth in international trade encouraged many Chinese people to settle in cities throughout Southeast Asia.

▲ Major trading center

1688 The Qing build a system of embankments and ditches, known as the Willow Palisade, to restrict Chinese movement into Manchu territory

### 2 FROM EMPEROR TO PRISONER 1449–1457

In 1449, Emperor Zhengtong was captured after leading an ill-advised war against the Mongols. He was released after a year but spent several years battling to return to the throne. Throughout Ming rule, measures were taken to reinforce the northern frontier against any Mongol invasion: the Great Wall was extended and then fortified with a series of garrisons and 1,200 watchtowers.

▲ Great Wall garrison

### 3 THE MING IN DECLINE 1506–1620

Emperor Zhengde (r. 1506–1521) adopted Confucianism—a system of ethics based on mutual responsibility. His successor Jiajing (r. 1521–1567), however, favored the more carefree, nature-based teachings of Daoism. In reaction, he left the governing to court officials and ignored the problem of Japanese pirate raids, devoting himself to sporting pastimes and hosting lavish Daoist ceremonies. Ming authority became even more ineffectual under Emperor Wanli (r. 1573–1620).

→ Japanese pirate raids

■ Area affected by the pirate raids

M o n g o l i a

INNER MONGOLIA

LIAOYANG

MANCHURIA

Mukden

Liaodong

Dingliabao

Willow Palisade







# JAPAN UNIFIES UNDER THE TOKUGAWA

Following the Onin War (1467–1477) involving Japan’s two most powerful families, the daimyos (provincial warlords) fought for supremacy, keeping the country in a state of civil unrest for almost a century. Peace came in stages as a succession of men assumed control, but it was Tokugawa Ieyasu who finally restored long-term stability, establishing a tightly controlled regime that would endure for 265 years.

A dispute between Japan’s powerful Hosakawa and Yamana clans in 1467 erupted into a violent conflict over who should succeed Ashikaga Yoshimata as *shogun* (Japan’s military commander). The resulting Onin War raged on for a decade, destroying the capital, Kyoto, and ended with the Yamana yielding.

With the two families left markedly weakened by the ravages of war, the daimyos saw their opportunity to seize power. Japan was thus thrown into further turmoil as rival daimyo lords battled one

another for supremacy. Daimyo Oda Nobunaga emerged victorious almost a century later, forming alliances to defeat his rivals in a campaign spanning 15 years. On the cusp of becoming Japan’s new leader, however, Nobunaga was forced into committing suicide in June 1582, at the hands of his samurai general.

Nobunaga’s former ally, Toyotomi Hideyoshi, fought for the next 8 years to defeat daimyos from the Katsue, Shimazu, and Hojo clans to reunify Japan. His death from ill health in 1598 led to another series of battles, in which Tokugawa Ieyasu (r. 1603–1605) scored a decisive victory at Sekigahara (1600) and earned the title of shogun.

Ieyasu introduced strict reforms, which were also enforced by his Tokugawa successors, to curb the powers of the daimyo lords. He also removed the growing threat of Christian wars on Japanese soil by limiting European presence in the port cities of Kyushu, thereby ensuring stability under Tokugawa rule.

*“The strong manly ones in life are those who understand the meaning of the word patience.”*

TOKUGAWA IEYASU, FIRST TOKUGAWA SHOGUN, 1616

TOKUGAWA IEYASU  
1543–1616

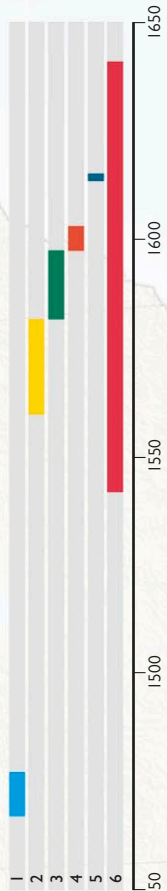


Inheritor of the minor Okazaki domain in eastern Mikawa Province (modern-day Aichi Prefecture), Tokugawa Ieyasu began his military training with the Imagawa family. He allied himself with the powerful forces of Oda Nobunaga first and then Toyotomi Hideyoshi and expanded his land holdings by defeating the neighboring Hojo family to the east. After Hideyoshi’s death in 1603, Ieyasu became shogun to Japan’s imperial court and founded the Tokugawa shogunate.

## THE REUNIFICATION OF JAPAN

The 16th century in Japan is known as the Sengoku period, during which regional warlords fought one another to win control of the country. The era culminated with the rise of the Tokugawa shogunate in 1603.

### TIMELINE



### KEY

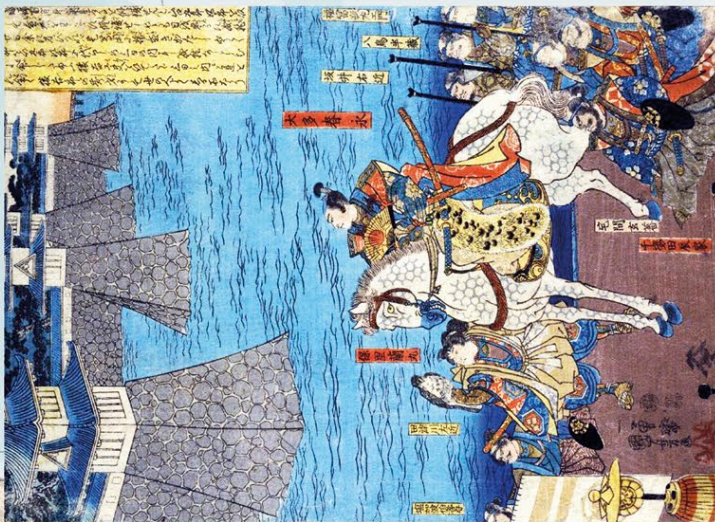
- Domain boundaries
- ☆ Capital city

## THE ONIN WAR 1467–1477

In 1467, the Ashikaga shogun, Yoshimasa, abdicated power, having failed to quell civil unrest in the wake of a famine. While the Yamana clan supported his chosen heir, the Hosokawa family promoted a rival claimant, and the dispute escalated into a brutal war. Fighting spread beyond the capital, Kyoto, eroding the shogun’s power, and ended with the Yamana submitting in 1477.

- Yamana and their allies
- Hosokawa and their allies





◁ Oda Nobunaga observes his castle  
Castles provided key bases for daimyos in their domination of the provinces they ruled and were often hard-fought over in Japan's civil wars. Nobunaga's main fortress at Azuchi allowed him to control the approaches to the imperial capital Kyoto.

## 2 CAMPAIGNS OF ODA NOBUNAGA

1560–1582

In 1560, Oda Nobunaga foiled the attack on his domain by rival daimyo Imagawa Yoshimoto. He then amassed allies and set out to win control of Japan. By 1575, he had subdued his rivals and clamped down on armed militia based around monasteries. Nobunaga was close to securing his rule in Japan, but a disaffected lieutenant forced Nobunaga to commit suicide in 1582.

Area unified by Oda Nobunaga by 1582



## 3 HIDEYOSHI TAKES CONTROL 1582–1598

In the chaos that ensued following Nobunaga's death, his former general Toyotomi Hideyoshi took up arms against rival daimyos. Starting with a victory over the Shibata Katsue at Shizugatake in 1583, he defeated his rivals and, in 1587, became Japan's leader. He ordered the Great Sword Hunt, demilitarizing the countryside and restricting the samurai to towns. His invasion of Korea in 1592 began a 6-year war that ended in failure.

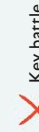
Hideyoshi's campaigns of unification



## 4 RISE OF THE TOKUGAWA 1598–1603

Hideyoshi died in 1598, leaving behind a sole heir who was only 5 years old. The resulting power vacuum prompted Hideyoshi's allies to rally around the banner of fellow ally Tokugawa Ieyasu. In 1600, Ieyasu's Eastern Army defeated rival Ishida Mitsunari's Western Army at Sekigahara, and 3 years later, Ieyasu became shogun and founded the Tokugawa shogunate.

Domain under Tokugawa control from 1600



## 5 SIEGE OF OSAKA 1614–1615

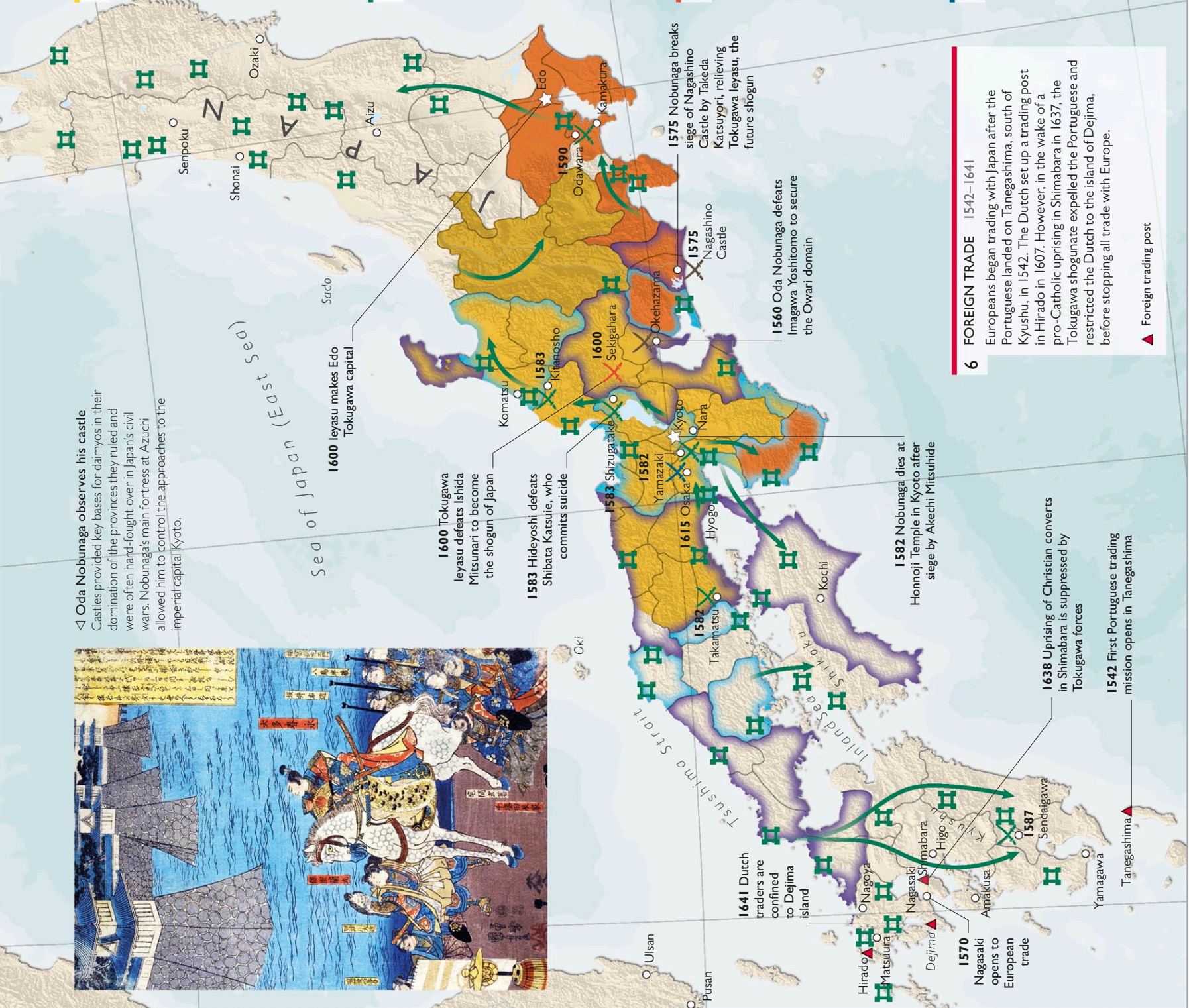
Although Tokugawa Ieyasu had unified Japan by 1603, the Toyotomi clan, led by Hideyoshi's son, Toyotomi Hideyori, prevented the shogun assuming absolute control of Japan. In the winter of 1614, Ieyasu mounted a large-scale assault on Toyotomi stronghold in Osaka. A series of bloody battles ensued, lasting 6 months, and ended with Toyotomi's defeat.

Key battle

## 6 FOREIGN TRADE 1542–1641

Europeans began trading with Japan after the Portuguese landed on Tanegashima, south of Kyushu, in 1542. The Dutch set up a trading post in Hirado in 1607. However, in the wake of a pro-Catholic uprising in Shimabara in 1637, the Tokugawa shogunate expelled the Portuguese and restricted the Dutch to the island of Dejima, before stopping all trade with Europe.

Foreign trading post





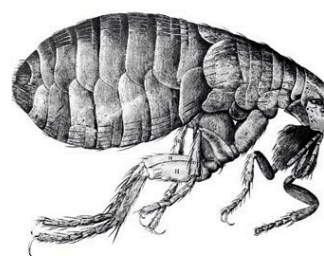
**Master and disciple**

This 1892 painting by Italian painter Tito Lessi shows Galileo Galilei (right), who became blind toward the end of his life. Galileo is accompanied by his assistant Vincenzo Viviani, who calculated the speed of sound in 1660 by observing the sound and light flash from a cannon.



# THE SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION

In the mid-16th to late 17th centuries, scientists such as Nicolaus Copernicus, Galileo Galilei, and Isaac Newton inspired a revolution that overturned traditional views of the workings of nature and the Universe.



## △ Microscopic observation

The English naturalist Robert Hooke produced this drawing of a flea in 1665 using the recently invented microscope—another instrument that helped advance scientific observation.

Before 1500, scholars had largely confined themselves to commentaries on the works of ancient writers such as Ptolemy, whose astronomical work in the 2nd century CE described an Earth-centric solar system. In 1543, dissatisfaction with Ptolemy's theory led Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus to propose an alternative—he observed that Earth orbits the Sun. German astronomer Johannes Kepler refined the Copernican system and, in 1619, discovered that planetary orbits

are elliptical and not circular. Copernicus's work encouraged others to base their theories on observation rather than orthodoxy. In 1609–1610, Italian astronomer Galileo Galilei discovered the four moons of Jupiter using the newly invented telescope. He also made huge advances in dynamics, establishing laws for the acceleration of falling bodies.

## Far-ranging efforts

In the field of medicine, the direct observation of patients and dissection of corpses yielded new insights, such as the discovery of blood circulation in the human body by English physician William Harvey in 1628. The culmination of the scientific revolution came in the late 17th century with English mathematician Isaac Newton's three Laws of Motion and Theory of Gravity, which provided a mathematical explanation of planetary orbits. By then, the view that the Universe could be described in mechanical terms, by mathematical formulae rather than theological dogma, had been firmly established.

## MAPPING THE WORLD

The voyages of European explorers in the 15th and 16th centuries inspired a revolution in mapping. The Netherlands became a center of expertise, where, in 1569, the Flemish cartographer Gerardus Mercator produced a world map using a new projection. This became the standard for maps for centuries to come.





# THE DUTCH GOLDEN AGE

The Netherlands began to assert its independence from Spain in 1568; a golden age for the new country followed. Abroad, the Dutch East India Company out-competed other European nations in the Spice Islands (see pp.162–163) and constructed a maritime empire.

The revolt of the Netherlands against Spanish rule in 1568 initially devastated the main rebel areas in the north. On winning their independence, these areas became known as the Dutch Republic or United Provinces. After the country had recovered from the war, economic prosperity returned, and a “Regent” class emerged. Though wealthy, this class privileged the virtues of self-reliance and hard work, an ethic that their religious leaders applauded. Yet they also provided a pool of patrons in the fields of arts and sciences that made the first century of Dutch independence a golden era.

Together with early forms of maritime insurance, state banks, and stock exchanges, the Dutch Republic pioneered the joint stock company, in which investors pooled their risks (and shared equally in the profits). The most important, the Verenigde Oost-Indische Compagnie (the VOC, or Dutch East India Company), founded in 1602, exploited a favorable investment climate in the spice markets, which included a lack of state interference. The VOC captured Ambon in 1605, at the center of the spice production region of the Moluccas—also known as the Spice Islands—and it became the VOC headquarters from 1610–1619. The VOC expanded its network of forts and outposts until, by the 1660s, the Dutch had built an empire that stretched from Surinam in South America to Cape Town, Ceylon (modern Sri Lanka), and large parts of the Indonesian archipelago.

## DUTCH GOLDEN AGE PAINTING

ART AFTER INDEPENDENCE

The growing wealth of the Dutch Republic meant that there were many rich mercantile families who could act as patrons, encouraging the flourishing artistic scene. Their lack of interest in religious subjects meant that the Netherlands’ leading artists were masters in history paintings (Rembrandt van Rijn, 1606–1669), genre scenes (Johannes Vermeer, 1632–1675), landscapes (Jacob van Ruisdael, 1629–1682), and portraits (Frans Hals, 1582–1666).

**Domestic art**  
Vermeer’s *The Milkmaid* (c.1666) is typical of scenes of domestic tranquility favored by many Dutch patrons.



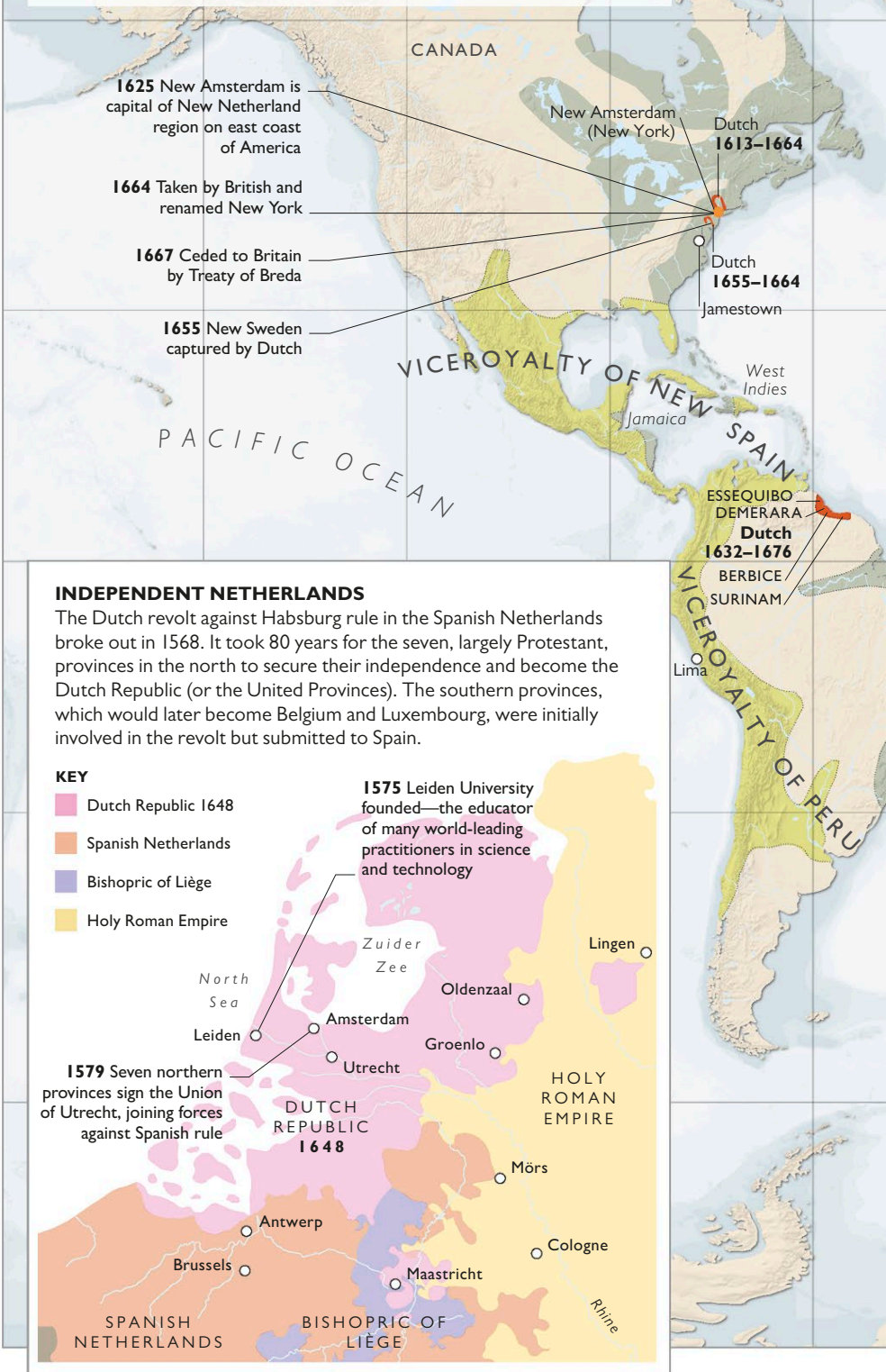
## THE DUTCH EMPIRE

Throughout the 17th century, the Netherlands sought to expand its empire and had to compete with already well-established European empires, such as those of Spain and Portugal. The Dutch gained many possessions across the world, including the Moluccas in Indonesia, which helped develop their dominance in the spice trade.

### KEY

- Orange diamond: Netherlands possessions or regions held temporarily by the Netherlands during 17th century
- Yellow diamond: Spanish possessions 1700
- Green diamond: Other European possessions 1700

### TIMELINE

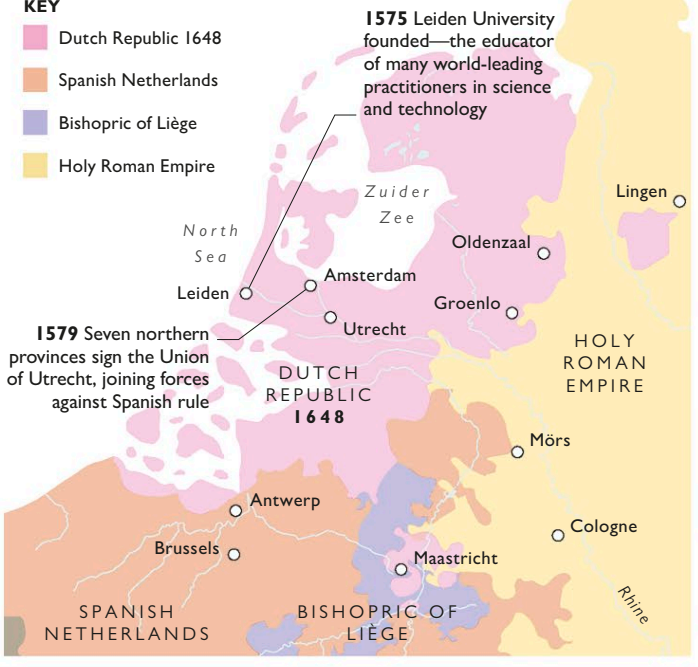


## INDEPENDENT NETHERLANDS

The Dutch revolt against Habsburg rule in the Spanish Netherlands broke out in 1568. It took 80 years for the seven, largely Protestant, provinces in the north to secure their independence and become the Dutch Republic (or the United Provinces). The southern provinces, which would later become Belgium and Luxembourg, were initially involved in the revolt but submitted to Spain.

### KEY

- Pink: Dutch Republic 1648
- Orange: Spanish Netherlands
- Blue: Bishopric of Liège
- Yellow: Holy Roman Empire















# REVOLUTION AND INDUSTRY

IN 1700–1850, MUCH OF THE WORLD WAS REVOLUTIONIZED BY NEW SCIENTIFIC AND POLITICAL IDEAS. PERHAPS THE MOST FAR-REACHING CHANGE, HOWEVER, WAS THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION.



# THE AGE OF REVOLUTION

The era from 1700 to 1850 could be called by many names—the age of empire, of industry, of nation-states, of Enlightenment, or of Romanticism and Nationalism. It was all these and more—it was the Age of Revolution, which formed the modern world.

▽ **Fight to the finish**  
In one of the decisive naval battles of the Seven Years' War, the British took control of the French fortress of Louisbourg (in modern Canada) in July 1758. The victory enabled the British to take over the French North American capital of Quebec the next year.

The overriding and underlying force of this period in world history was growth. An explosion in world population went hand in hand with innovations that, in turn, resulted in a growth in productivity, trade, economies, urbanization, agriculture and industry, literacy and education, and media and technology, among others. The end result was the



expansion of some empires and the toppling of others, as different political entities and systems tried—and sometimes failed—to cope with the sudden growth. Some nations thrived, often with brutal economic and human ramifications, as with the British exploitation of global resources, which was underpinned by the slave trade, or with the expansion of the US farther into the North American continent (see pp.260–261). Others, from east Asia to western Europe, failed to cope with the pressure, unleashing revolutions with long-term effects.



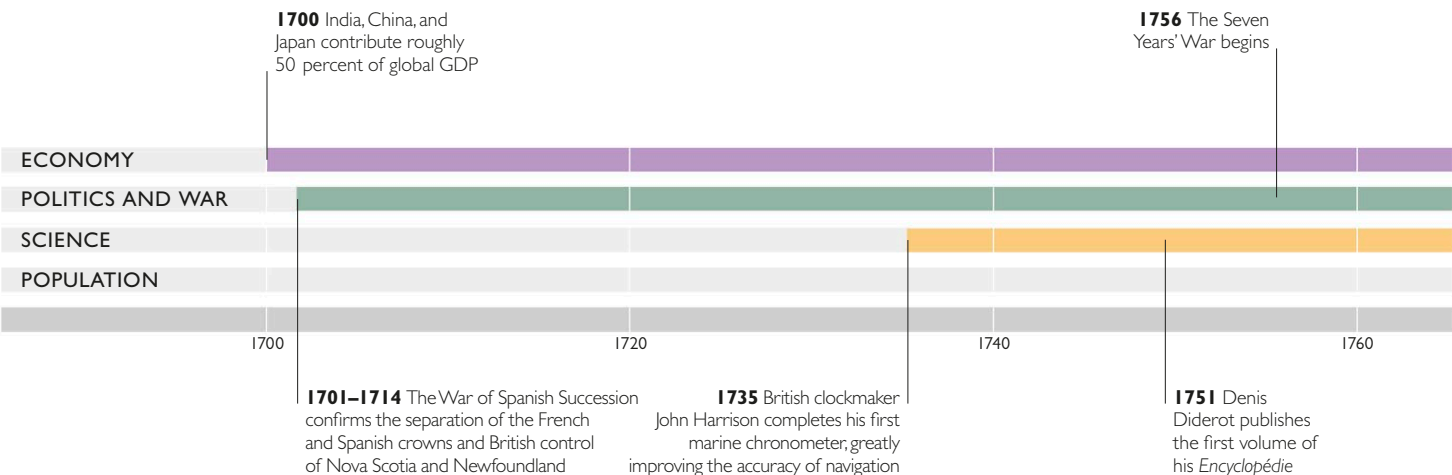
△ **Party in Boston**  
Of all the tea chests thrown into the harbor at the Boston Tea Party in 1773 by Americans protesting against British rule, this is the only chest to have survived.

## Reshaping the world

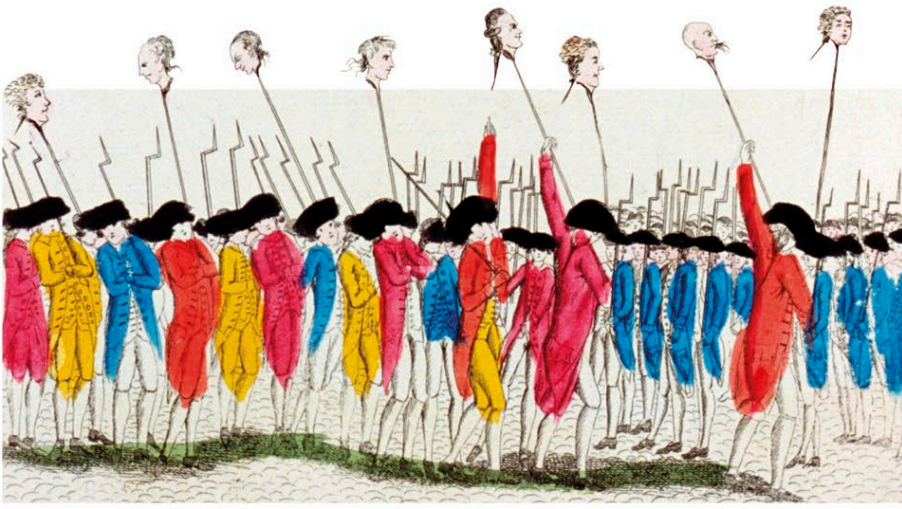
The early 18th century saw change on several fronts. Innovations in agriculture, industry, and other kinds of technology prompted colonization by European settlers in America, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand. The consequences for indigenous populations were horrific—for example, the expansion of the US into Native American territory, or the genocide of Aboriginal peoples in Australia. Advances in technology meant that the scale and lethality of conflicts grew exponentially, whether in Europe where

## GROWING CONNECTIONS

As the connections between different parts of the world increased, populations grew, and travel and communication became easier. The consequences were seen in the movement of people, a change in the scale of world economies, and political developments within and between nations, including global conflicts. It was a period that saw immense strides in the development of human understanding of nature and the subsequent ability to control and exploit it.







#### ◁ Heads up

An 18th-century etching depicts French revolutionaries displaying the heads of the guards killed during the storming of the Bastille on July 14, 1789—one of the great symbolic acts of the French Revolution.

the Napoleonic Wars (see pp.208–211) saw the mobilization of huge armies; in New Zealand, where muskets transformed traditional Maori warfare; in India where small European forces were able to defeat larger local forces; or in Africa, where slaving empires flourished due to new weapons.

### Global impacts

The 18th century saw the world's first global war, when the Seven Years' War (see pp.192–193), fought between European powers, spread to theaters around the world—from North America to Southeast Asia. As networks of trade and finance reached into every corner of the world, the consequences could be felt everywhere: on the plains of the American Midwest, where coast-to-coast railroads led to economic growth but also wiped out buffalo herds that sustained indigenous ways of life; across Africa, where the slave trade resulted in massive depopulation; and in south Asia, where British imperialism eventually resulted in the thorough dislocation of local economies and trade. In China, problems with currency and trade in commodities led to the Opium Wars; while in Australasia, colonial land grabs resulted in the depletion of indigenous populations.

Such immense transformations inevitably had profound political consequences. In Europe and the Americas, growing middle and artisan classes pushed for change, by revolution if necessary, so that the period 1700–1850 saw a slew of revolutionary conflicts, with the American and French revolutions of the 18th century and the nationalist and

political revolutions of the early 19th century in South America. The greatest upheavals came in China, where the 19th century saw near-constant unrest as the country failed to cope with economic, technological, and political changes in the world.

By 1850, the world was vastly richer overall but with greater inequality than ever before. Despite celebrated advances in politics, society, and culture, with revolutionary, liberation, and emancipation movements, the Enlightenment, and the Scientific Revolution, it was the global sum of human misery that had grown most of all. Achievements in industry, trade, technology, and culture had been built on foundations of exploitation, slavery, genocide, and injustice.

#### ▷ Map of the future

This map was drawn during the Lewis and Clark Expedition (1804–1806), which helped open North America to settlement and accelerated the expansion of the US.



**1776** The American Revolutionary War begins

**1790** About 95,000 slaves embark from Africa for the Americas

**1800** Italian physicist Alessandro Volta invents the battery

**1820** Global GDP reaches c. \$700 billion (as calculated in 1990 terms)

**1822** Brazil declares independence from Portugal, and Ecuador gains freedom from Spain

**1849** Discovery of gold leads to a Gold Rush in California

**1853** Height of the Taiping Rebellion in China as rebels capture Nanjing

1780

1800

1820

1840

1860

**1788** First fleet arrives in Australia from England

**1792** Revolution in France topples the monarchy, establishing the French Republic

**1815** Napoleon is defeated at Waterloo

**1830** Genocide of Tasmanian Aboriginals renders the group extinct

**1838–1839** Native Americans are forced to relocate from their traditional lands in a journey now known as the Trail of Tears

**1861** James Maxwell formulates equations of electromagnetism



### 3 THE IROQUOIS CONFEDERACY 1600–1779

In 1722, the Tuscarora tribe, displaced from the Carolinas by European settlement, became the sixth member of a league of nations known as the Iroquois Confederacy, located in upper New York State. The Iroquois successfully defended their territory until 1779 when an American force carried out a systematic destruction of Iroquois settlement and crops.

Iroquois Confederacy territory

### 4 WAR OF JENKINS' EAR 1739–1748

The conflict between the Spanish and English over the land between South Carolina and Florida had been simmering for a century. However, the hostilities found a new edge with English naval captain Robert Jenkins's claim that Spanish coast guards had pillaged his ship and cut off his ear (which he presented to Parliament), triggering a 9-year war with Spain, which eventually became mixed up with King George's War.

Spanish campaign  
British campaign  
Major battle

### 5 KING GEORGE'S WAR 1744–1748

In 1744, the French and British were at war in Europe, over the Austrian succession. King George's War was the name given to its French and British theater in North America. The war resulted in the British-American colonists taking Louisbourg on Cape Breton Island. However, under the terms of the 1748 peace treaty, the British returned Louisbourg to the French—a move that infuriated the American colonists.

French campaign  
British campaign  
French raid  
Major battle

### 6 THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR 1756–1762

With French military resources committed in Europe, British colonists took advantage, waging war on their French counterparts (see p.192). Key victories in Fort Louisbourg (1758), Quebec (1759), Fort Niagara (1759), and Montreal (1760), ended French territorial claims in North America, with France ceding Louisiana to Spain in the secret Treaty of Fontainebleau (1762).

Major battle

### 2 QUEEN ANNE'S WAR 1702–1713

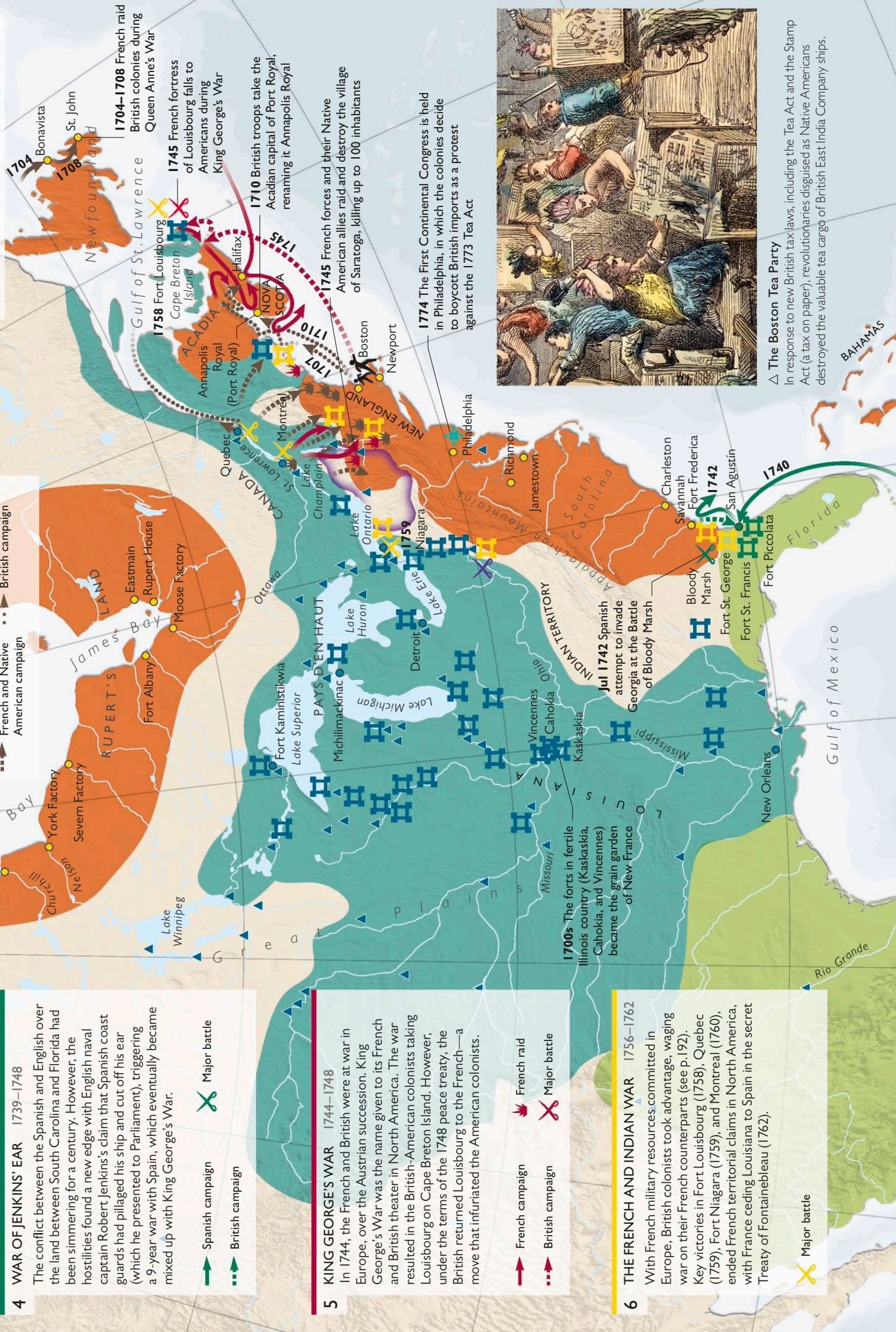
Allied with Native American groups, French colonists raided British settlements in the New England colonies. In retaliation, the British captured the key French fortress of Port Royal in the French colony of Acadia. Following the war, the French colony of Acadia, Hudson Bay, and Newfoundland were ceded to Britain under the 1713 Treaty of Utrecht. Part of Acadia became Nova Scotia, so named due to its brief period as a Scottish colony in 1629–1632 (see p.156).

French campaign  
French and Native American campaign  
French raid  
British campaign

### 1 FRENCH VIE FOR DOMINATION 1700–1750

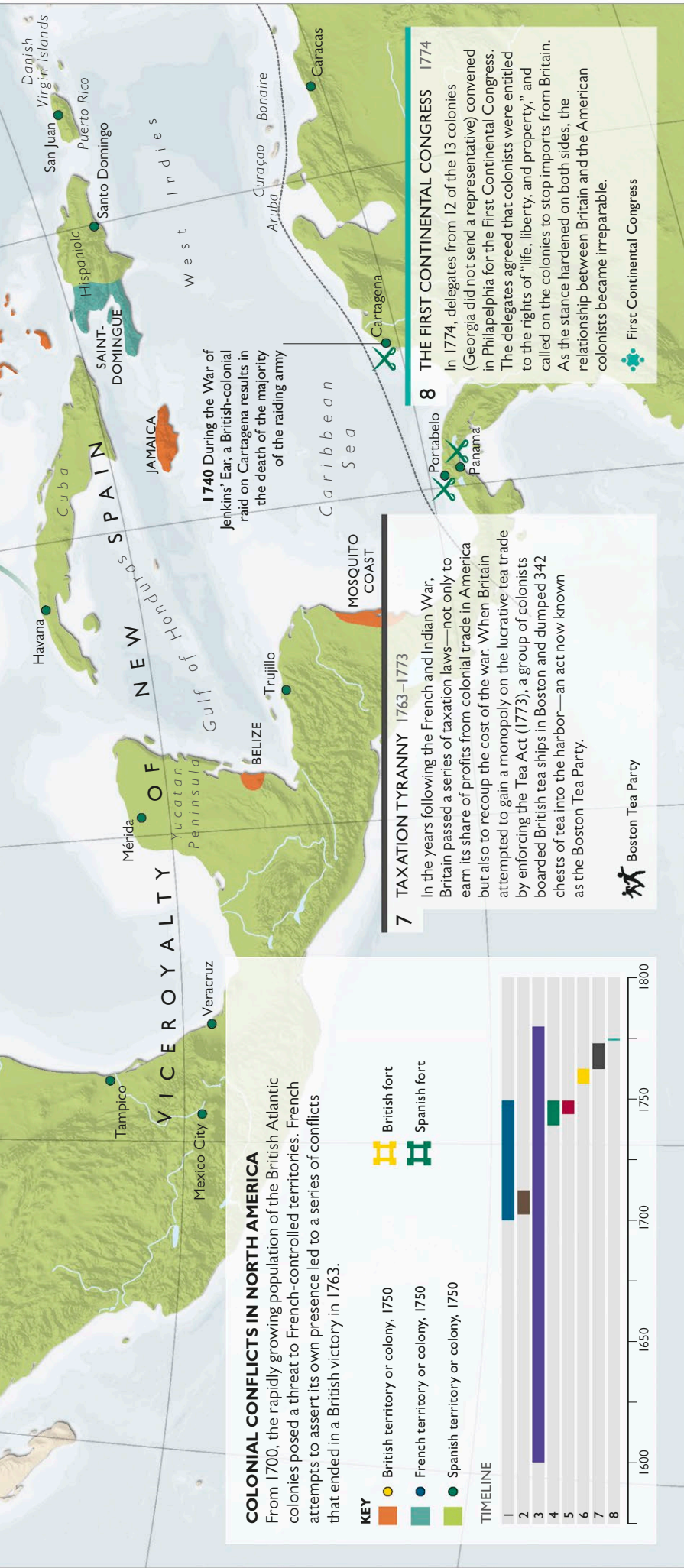
French colonists claimed, and began to settle, a vast expanse of North America—from the Mississippi Delta in the south to the northeastern coastline, with the fur trade forming the mainstay of their economy. By 1750, rising tension over British encroachment into Midwestern territories abutting the Great Plains had resulted in the French erecting a series of forts. They also formed friendly relations with tribes such as the Huron and Odawa to help them fight the British threat.

French forts  
French trading posts



△ The Boston Tea Party  
In response to new British tax laws, including the Tea Act and the Stamp Act (a tax on paper), revolutionaries disguised as Native Americans destroyed the valuable tea cargo of British East India Company ships.





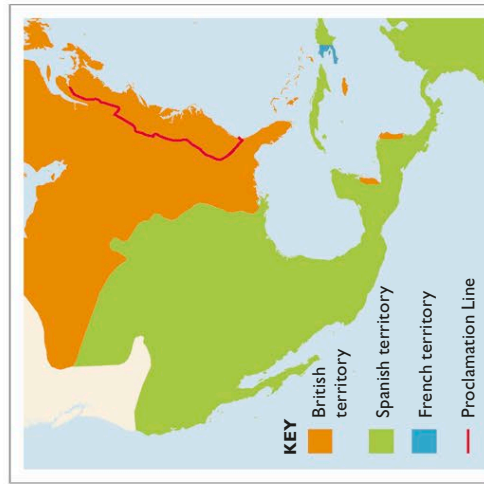
# BATTLE FOR NORTH AMERICA

In the first half of the 18th century, North America became another theater for the expression of the imperial rivalries between France, Britain, and Spain. Britain would eventually triumph, but the cost of victory would sow the seeds of revolutionary sentiment into the hearts of the American colonists.

The population of Britain's North American colonies had reached 1.2 million by 1750—far outnumbering the 65,000 French and 20,000 or so Spanish colonists on the continent.

In contrast, the native population was in rapid decline, ravaged by displacement, massacres, and diseases borne from the Old World. For example, Native American numbers east of the Appalachians had dwindled from about 120,000 at the start of European colonization to just 20,000 in 1750. Moreover, the Native American groups struggled to find unity among themselves to help them withstand the tide of incomers. The French sought to contain the burgeoning British Atlantic colonies by strategically locating their own settlements

and forming alliances with Native Americans. The tactic gave rise to skirmishes but could not prevent the British colonies from extending their territory, displacing French colonists in the northeast, and destroying Spanish outposts that threatened to curtail their expansion to the south. The conflicts culminated in the French and Indian War (part of the Seven Years' War; see pp.192-193)—a bloody and costly campaign that earned the British a sweeping victory, and which all but ended French territorial claims on the continent. However, in the war's aftermath, the British government imposed laws and taxes to recoup the cost of the war, stoking resentment among colonists about being ruled from afar.



## NORTH AMERICA, 1763

The map of North America changed dramatically following British victory in the French and Indian War (1754-1760) as Britain wrested all lands east of the Mississippi from the French. Meanwhile, Spain gained nominal control over Louisiana and ceded Florida to the British. To appease Native American groups, the British government drew up the Proclamation Line of 1763, which forbade colonial settlement beyond the line of the Appalachian Mountains.



# THE SEVEN YEARS' WAR

The outbreak of a conflict between Britain and France for colonial domination drew in allies on both sides. With hostilities extending from North America to India and from the Caribbean to Russia, this was the first war on a truly global scale.

The Seven Years' War pitted the alliance of Britain, Prussia, and Hanover against the alliance of France, Austria, Sweden, Saxony, Russia, and Spain. The war was driven by commercial and imperial rivalry, and by the antagonism between Prussia and Austria. In Europe, Prussia made a preemptive strike on Saxony in August 1756 after finding itself surrounded by enemies, once France had ended its ancient rivalry with Habsburg Austria and, along with Russia, formed a grand alliance. Britain aligned itself with Prussia, partly so that the British king could protect his German possession, Hanover, from the threat of a French takeover. However, Britain's main aim was to destroy France as a commercial rival, and its attack focused on the French navy and French colonies overseas, particularly in North America. Heavily committed to the European cause, France had few resources to spare for its colonies and consequently suffered substantial losses in North America, the Caribbean, west Africa, and also India (see pp.224–225). Fought simultaneously on five continents, the Seven Years' War culminated in 1763 with Britain emerging as the world's largest colonial power.

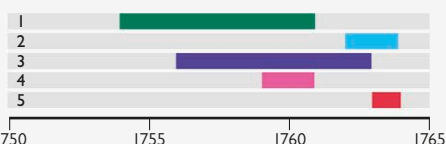
*"While we had France for an enemy, Germany was the scene to employ and baffle her arms."*

WILLIAM PITT, BRITISH PRIME MINISTER, 1762

## COLONIAL DOMINATION

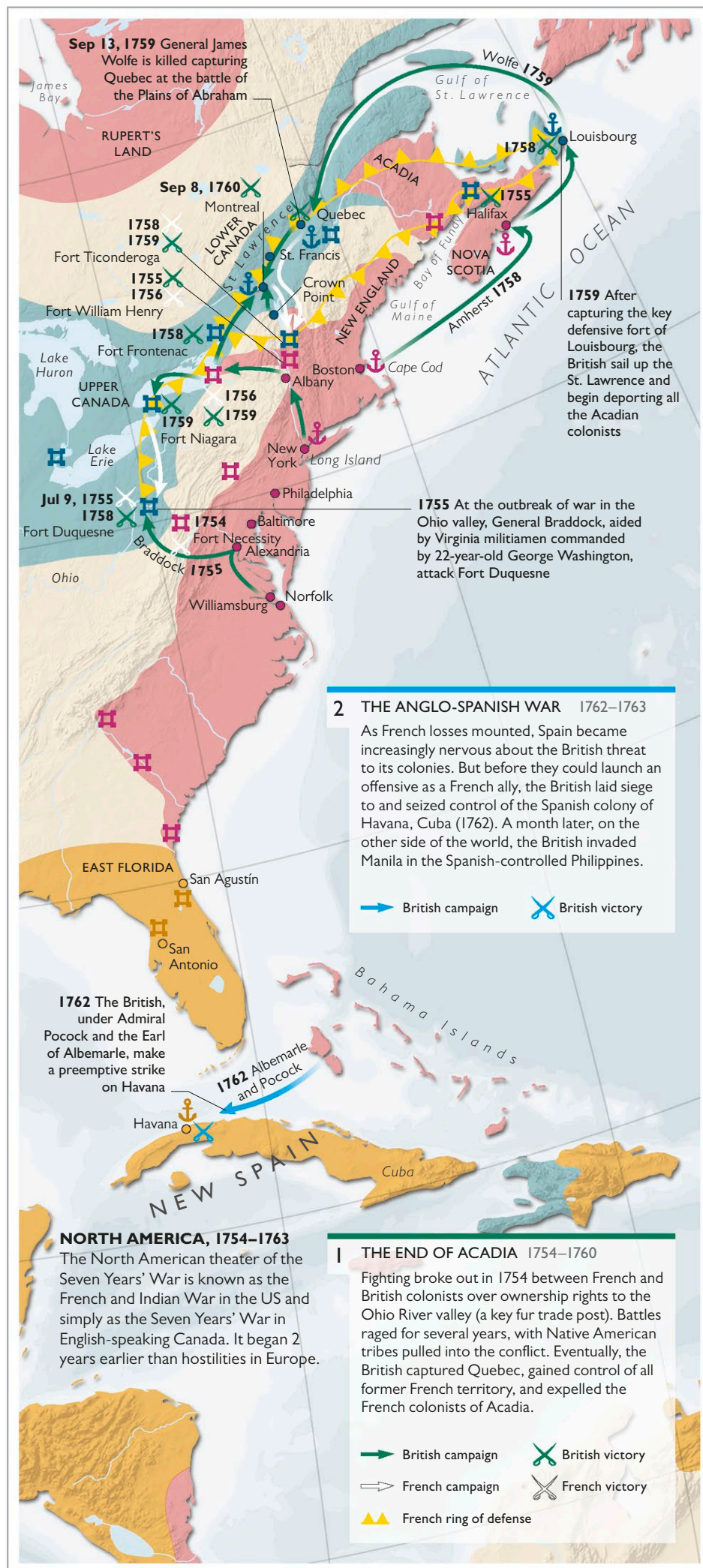
The Seven Years' War tested the military might of European powers—France, Britain, and Spain—in North America as they fought for colonial supremacy. Fighting battles on two fronts, in Europe and in the colonies, strained both resources and colonists' loyalties.

### TIMELINE



## KEY






- British fort
- French fort
- Spanish fort
- British naval base
- French naval base
- Spanish naval base
- British possessions
- French possessions
- Spanish possessions





### 3 PRUSSIA'S INVASION 1756–1762

When Prussia's Frederick the Great invaded Saxony, Austria and its allies retaliated on all fronts, but Prussia, aided by British subsidies, scored a string of early victories, notably in 1757 in Leuthen against French troops. However, Prussia suffered a heavy loss to Austria and Russia in 1759 at Kunersdorf. Further Russian advances appeared to seal Prussia's fate, but the death of Russia's warmonger, Empress Elizabeth, earned Prussia a timely reprieve.

-  Prussia and allies
-  Prussia and allies victories
-  Austria and allies
-  Austria and allies victories
-  Initial campaigns by Austria and allies

### EUROPE, 1756–1763

In Europe, the Seven Years' War took place on land in the center and east of the continent and in the seas of western Europe.




### 4 THE BRITISH BLOCKADES 1759–1761

The French had planned an invasion of Britain, but their fleet was badly battered in defeats in 1759 at Lagos off Portugal (August 19–28) and Quiberon Bay off Brittany (November 20), while the British naval blockades impaired French supply routes to the colonies. These naval victories enabled Britain to gain an advantage over France in its colonial conquests elsewhere.

-  British victories
-  French victories
-  British naval campaigns
-  French naval campaigns

### 5 PEACE OF PARIS TREATY 1763

The signing of the treaty in Paris confirmed the end of French imperial and colonial ambitions and the ascendancy of Britain as a world empire. In the war's aftermath, saddled with a huge war debt, Britain attempted to draw revenues from its colonies in North America, much against the will of the colonialists, and fomented the beginnings of a rebellion.

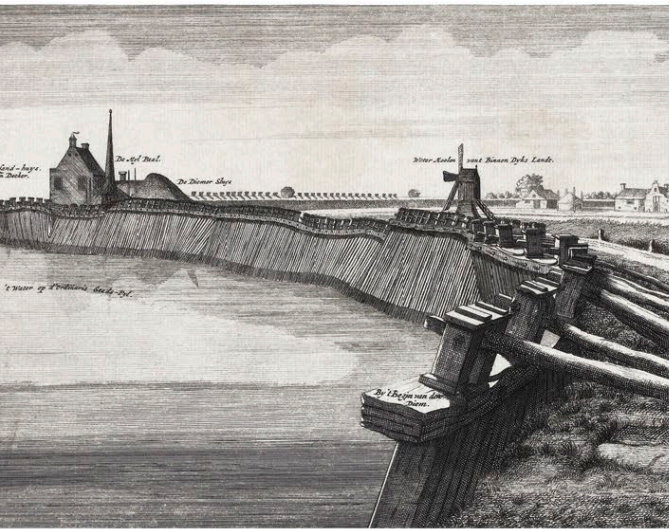
-  Treaty of Paris



△ Old Fritz

Frederick the Great of Prussia, pictured here honoring a fallen officer, triumphed against the odds in the Seven Years' War and became known affectionately in Germany as "Old Fritz."





**△ New land from the sea**  
This illustration from 1705 is one of the most dramatic portrayals of the impact of land reclamation—the Dutch literally enlarged their nation by using dams and dikes to drain land that had previously been below sea level.

# THE AGRICULTURAL REVOLUTION

The term “Agricultural Revolution” is traditionally associated with the rapid increase in agricultural productivity from the early 18th to the mid-19th centuries. It began mainly in Britain and later spread throughout Europe, the US, and beyond.

Beginning in the early 18th century, innovative British farmers adopted and adapted techniques, crops, and technologies from other parts of the world, particularly the

Low Countries (modern-day Belgium and Holland), to achieve a dramatic increase in agricultural productivity. Between 1750 and 1850, grain productivity in Britain tripled, supporting a similar expansion of the population far beyond historically sustainable levels. Many of the practices and ideas involved may have been drawn from continental Europe, but by 1815, British agricultural productivity far outstripped that of any other European country. In the 19th century, these innovations spread across the developed world. The four pillars of this revolution in agriculture were: agricultural technology, such as seed

drills and mechanization; crop rotation; selective breeding to improve livestock yields; and enclosure, reclamation, and other changes in land-use practices.

### Innovation and mechanization

In 1701, English farmer and agronomist Jethro Tull developed an improved seed drill—a device that planted seeds in rows, making it easier to weed and tend the crop, and thus increasing labor efficiency. Although initially slow to catch on, the seed drill was emblematic of the potential of technology to greatly improve the productivity of both land and labor. In the US, Cyrus McCormick developed a machine called the reaper; in 1840, he was able to cut 12½ times more wheat with it in a day than was possible with a scythe.

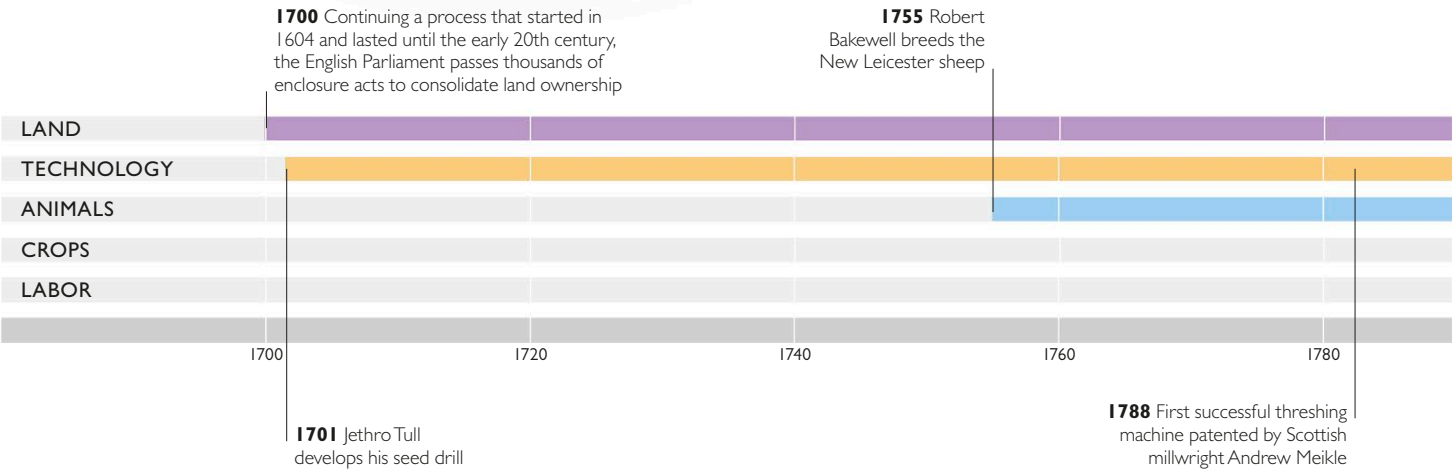
Another source of increasing yields was the use of new crop types, such as high-yielding wheat and barley—which replaced low-yielding rye—and turnips, root vegetables that could be grown without impeding weed clearance. However, perhaps the greatest boost came by overcoming the factor that was primarily limiting yields: the level of biologically available nitrogen in the soil. Although they did not yet understand the underlying biology, farmers in the Low Countries had discovered that crops such as legumes and clover could improve soil fertility and reduce the need for land to be left fallow. This is because bacterial root nodules on such crops can fix, or assimilate, atmospheric nitrogen, fertilizing the soil even as they produce useful food and



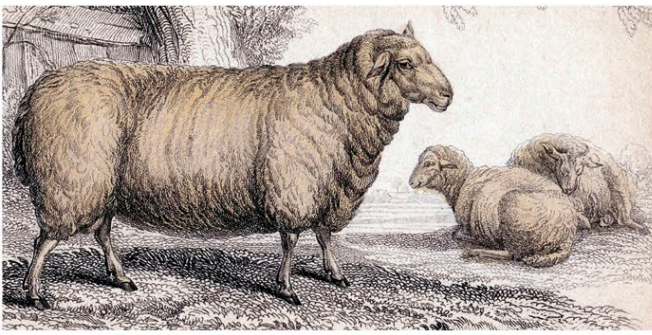
**▷ Seed drill**  
This relatively simple device greatly improved agricultural productivity by planting seeds with consistent depth, spacing, and alignment.

### DRIVING THE REVOLUTION

The introduction of high-yielding crop varieties, crop rotation, and the economic impact of nonfood cash crops were some of the primary drivers of the Agricultural Revolution. Other milestones included new livestock breeds and how they were brought to market. New areas of land were tilled in the New World even as land use was transformed in the Old World. Shifts in urban and rural demographics changed the labor force, while new technologies boosted productivity.







#### ◁ Bakewell's Leicester ram

This engraving shows a Dishley or New Leicester ram, one of the products of Robert Bakewell's extensive program of selective breeding to create more productive livestock.

fodder crops. In Norfolk, for example, between 1700 and 1850, a switch to clover and the doubling of the cultivation area of legumes tripled the rate of nitrogen fixation.

#### Changing practices

Meanwhile, changes in the way livestock were reared (stall rearing instead of pasturing, for example) made it possible to collect manure to use as fertilizer. Together, such innovations increased wheat yields by about one-quarter between 1700 and 1800, and then by about half between 1800 and 1850. Eventually, scientific knowledge caught up with empirical wisdom to reveal nitrogen as the key element in fertilizers, and from the mid-19th century imported sources such as guano became important.

Better yields and cultivation of fodder plants resulted in an increase in livestock rearing, and selective breeding led to higher-yielding breeds. Breeds such as the Merino sheep, famous for its wool, radicalized Australian agriculture from 1807; by the 1850s, there were 39 sheep for every Australian.

*“Agriculture not only gives riches to a nation, but the only riches she can call her own.”*

SAMUEL JOHNSON, ENGLISH ESSAYIST (1709–1784)

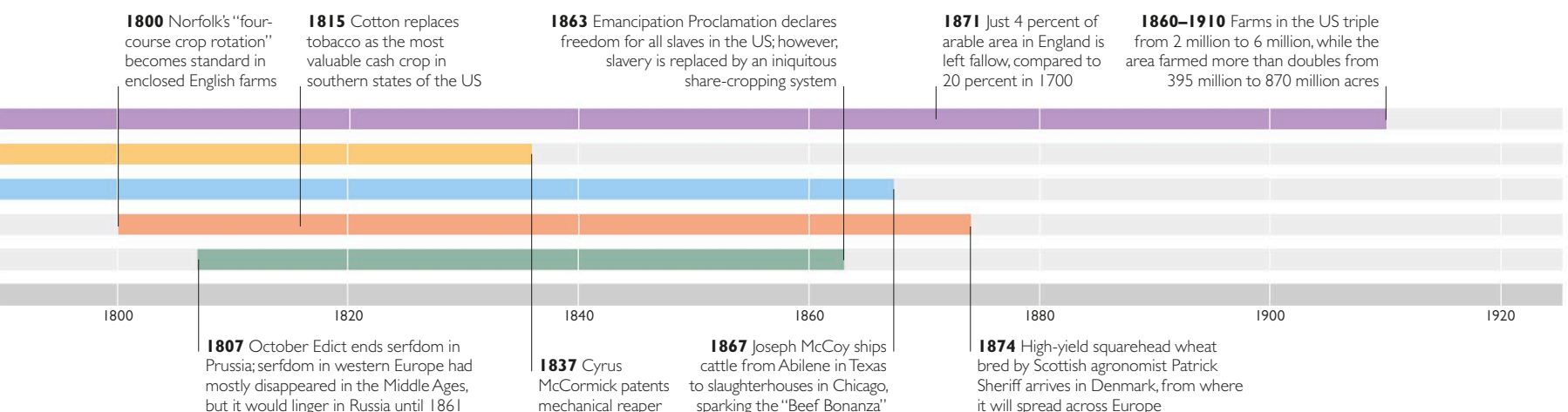
In Britain, enclosures—the fencing in of wasteland or common land to make it private property—increased the land available for intensive farming, as did the clearing of woodland, the reclamation of upland pastures, and the reclamation of fenland. From the mid-17th to the mid-19th centuries, nearly one-third of England's agricultural land was affected. Land that had previously been pasture became arable, as pasture was replaced by fodder crops, especially those produced in the crop rotation system. Crop rotation, especially when crops were planted in rows, meant that fields need not be left fallow to allow weeding.

The Agricultural Revolution laid the foundations for the Industrial Revolution (see pp.212–213). It sustained high levels of population growth and increased the productivity of land and workers, freeing up labor from agriculture and the countryside and driving the growth of cities and industrial workforces.



#### △ Muck spreading

This pleasant country scene somewhat obscures the true nature of the product being advertised—guano, or fertilizer made from bird droppings.

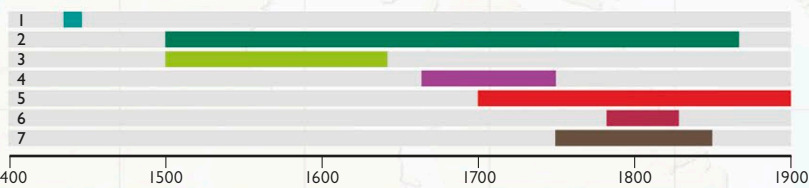




### THE ATLANTIC SLAVE TRADE (TAST)

Though not the only slave trade (for instance, the Arab trade in slaves to the Islamic world predated and outlasted TAST), TAST was unprecedented both in scale and profitability, developing from a few voyages to an industrial-scale network.

#### TIMELINE



### KEY

**TERRITORIES AND SETTLEMENTS**

- Portuguese
- Spanish
- Dutch
- Danish
- British
- French

### PORTUGUESE INSTIGATORS 1441–1455

In the early 15th century, the Portuguese raided the west African coast for slaves to labor on the large estates of the Algarve region on the mainland and on the Atlantic islands colonized by Portugal, such as Cape Verde and Madeira. By 1455, around 10 percent of the population of Lisbon was black.

Early Portuguese slave trade

1695–1807 5,300 voyages are made from Liverpool, Europe's busiest slave-trading port, to Africa

1794 France abolishes slavery in its dominions

By 1455  
10 percent of Lisbon's population is made up of African slaves

Mid-1400s Portugal becomes the first to export slaves from the west African coast

1525 Portugal's Santa Maria de Bogoña is the first-known named ship to transport slaves directly from Africa to New World (from São Tomé to Hispaniola)

### 7 THE PLANTATION COMPLEXES 1750–1850

The collapse of most of the transatlantic empires did little to slow TAST, which was now driven by the three primary plantation complexes: cotton in the southern US, coffee in Brazil, and sugar in Cuba. After being run mostly out of British ports, the trade passed back into Brazilian-Portuguese and Spanish hands after the British abolished their slave trade in 1807 (see pp.222–223).

Coffee

Cotton

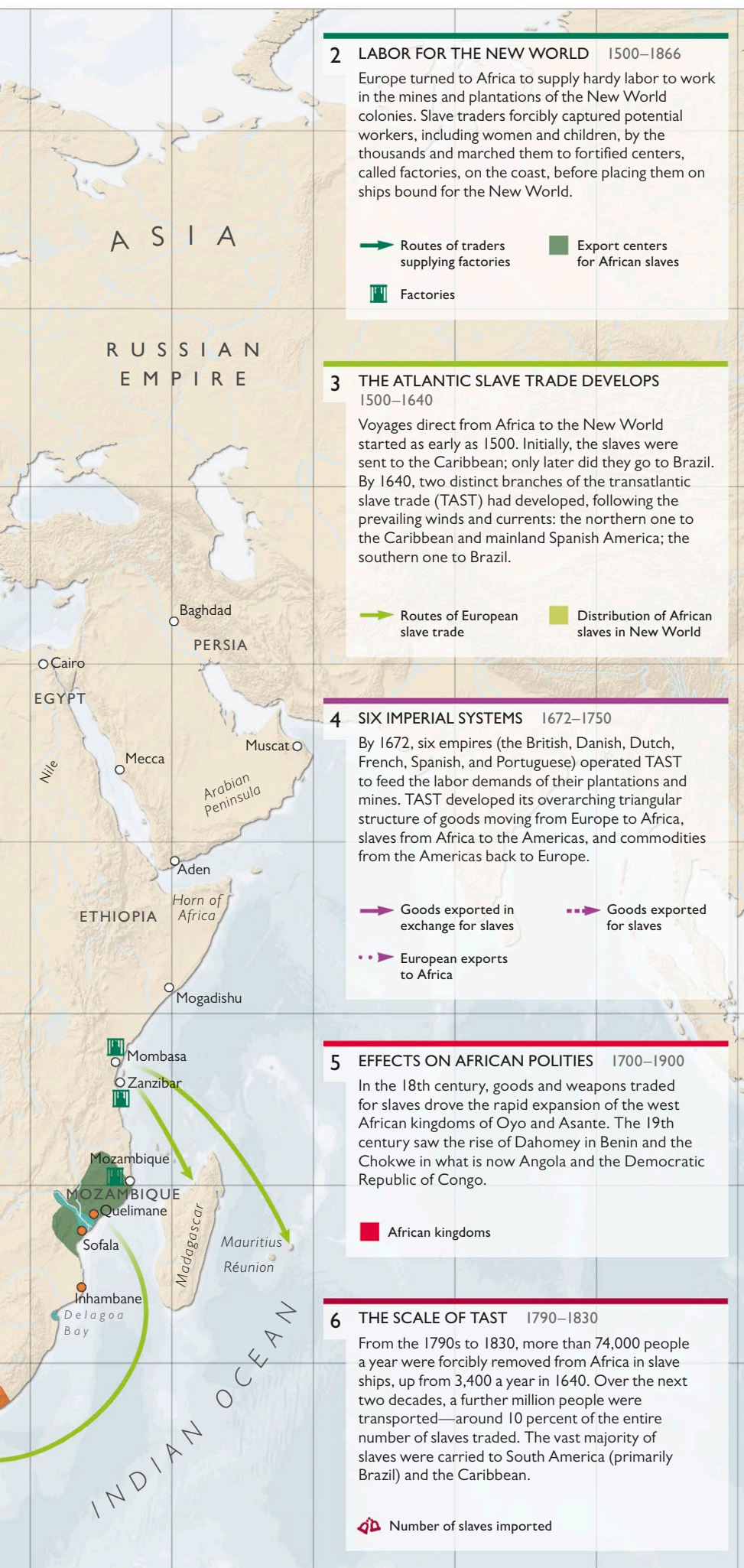
Sugar

#### ◀ The lash

Life on the plantations of the southern United States was brutal. This graphic illustration, from c.1863, shows an African American slave being whipped.







# THE ATLANTIC SLAVE TRADE

The Atlantic slave trade was an international system of commerce and human misery that saw around 12.5 million people forcibly transported to the New World, and about 2 million killed in the process. The trade transformed the world economy and the nations involved.

Slavery was still a major feature of 15th-century life, especially in Iberia and Italy, with slaves coming from eastern Europe as well as Africa. Though slaves were often domestic servants, this provided a model when the colonization and exploitation of the New World got under way, as the intense demand for labor drove the development of one of the first global systems of large-scale commerce: a triangular system in which manufactured goods from Europe were traded for slaves in Africa, who were then transported to the New World and forced to produce raw materials to be shipped back to Europe.

Slave trading was immensely profitable, so much so that it may have underwritten the entire edifice of Western capitalism. Even as some of the nations that had profited the most sought to stamp out the trade, it continued at high volumes into the early part of the 19th century. The trade had profound effects on the populations and subsequent development of both exporting and importing regions and constituted one of the greatest forced migration events in history. It was an atrocity on an immense scale, the ramifications of which are still barely acknowledged today.

*“The shrieks and groans rendered the whole scene of horror almost unimaginable.”*

FORMER SLAVE OLAUDAH EQUIANO, 1789

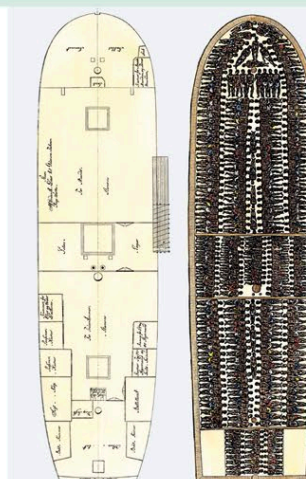
## THE MIDDLE PASSAGE

### THE JOURNEY AND THE DESTINATION

The journey across the Atlantic was the “middle” leg of the triangular trade and so was known as the Middle Passage. Slaves, most of whom had never before seen the sea, were shackled and tightly packed together, confined in horrific conditions for 6–8 weeks, or sometimes up to 13 weeks with adverse weather. Disease, murder, and suicide were rampant and 10–20 percent of slaves died on the voyage.

#### Packed together

This harrowing deck plan shows the unimaginable way in which slaves were packed together in the hold of a slave ship.





# THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

Also known as the American War of Independence, the American Revolution was the culmination of increasing tensions between Britain and its colonies in the Americas. The war pitted Patriots (who wanted independence) against Loyalists (who were loyal to the Crown) in a conflict that would forge a new nation in America.

Seeking to defray the costs of war debt, as well as the many expenses of securing the western frontier and protecting colonists from Native Americans, Britain looked to impose more taxation on its 13 colonies. The colonies, however, resented this repressive taxation, since they did not receive any direct representation in British Parliament in return. Fired by Enlightenment ideals of liberty and justice, many colonists resisted the acts of a distant Parliament, staging rebellious stunts such as the Boston Tea Party in 1773 and summoning a Continental Congress in 1774 to press for autonomous rights and liberties.

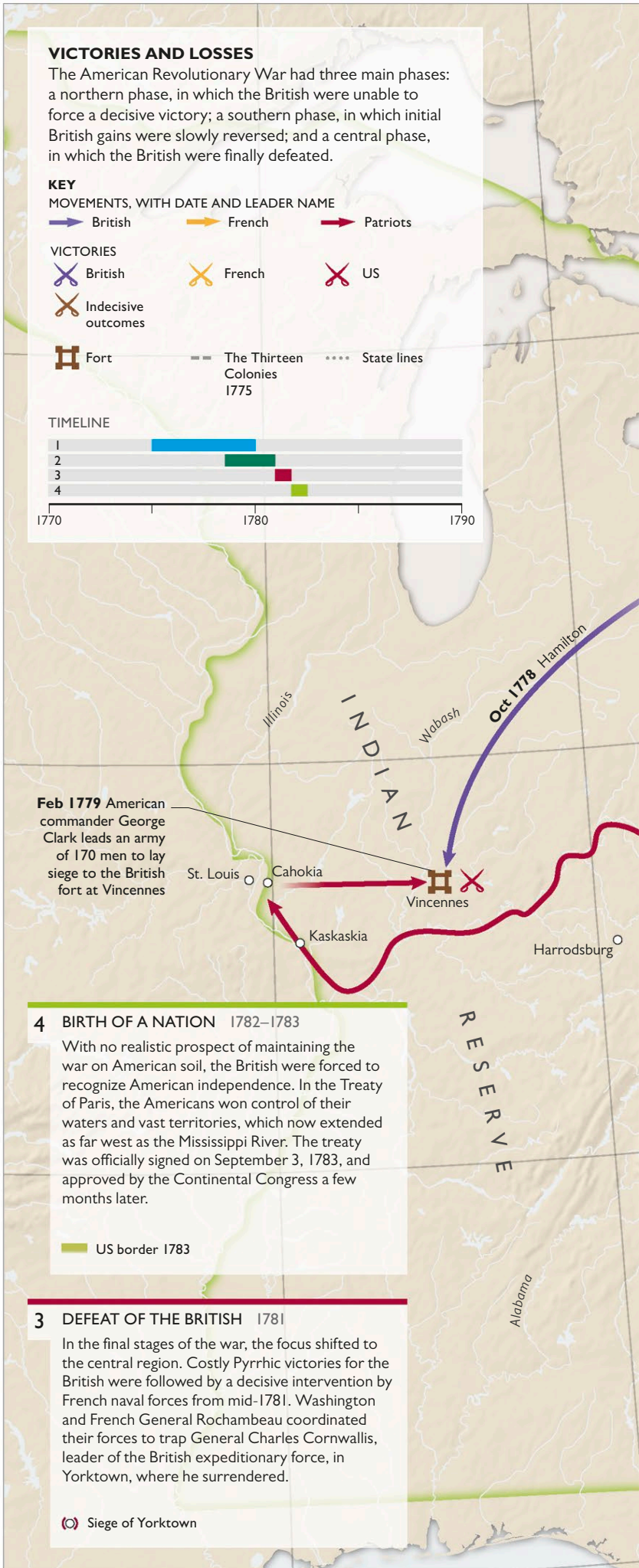
Growing tension between Patriots and foreign troops spilled over into war when the first shots were fired at Lexington, Massachusetts, in April 1775. The war was as much a civil conflict as a revolution; many colonists remained loyal to the Crown, and

Loyalist militia composed a significant portion of British forces. British efforts to crush George Washington’s Patriot army in the north ended in a stalemate, yet the Patriots won key symbolic victories, such as their defeat of a column marched from Canada, which convinced the French to enter the war on the Patriots’ side. When the British began to attack from the south, and after a crushing British victory at Charleston, the Revolution looked to be in danger, but slowly things changed in the Patriots’ favor, and the British began to feel the strain of fighting a war from such a distance—orders, troops, and supplies could take months to cross the Atlantic. When the French fleet chased off British naval relief in 1781, Washington and his French allies were able to trap the British commander Charles Cornwallis in Yorktown, Virginia, and force the British to agree to a peace treaty.

## THOMAS JEFFERSON 1743–1826

A lawyer and plantation owner from Virginia, Thomas Jefferson emerged as one of the prime intellectual powerhouses of the Patriot cause with his 1774 defense of American independence, *A Summary View of the Rights of British America*. He was asked to help write the Declaration of Independence, and his draft was adopted in 1776, with only minor changes. He went on to found the Democratic Party, serve as third president of the US, and oversee major expansion of US territory.

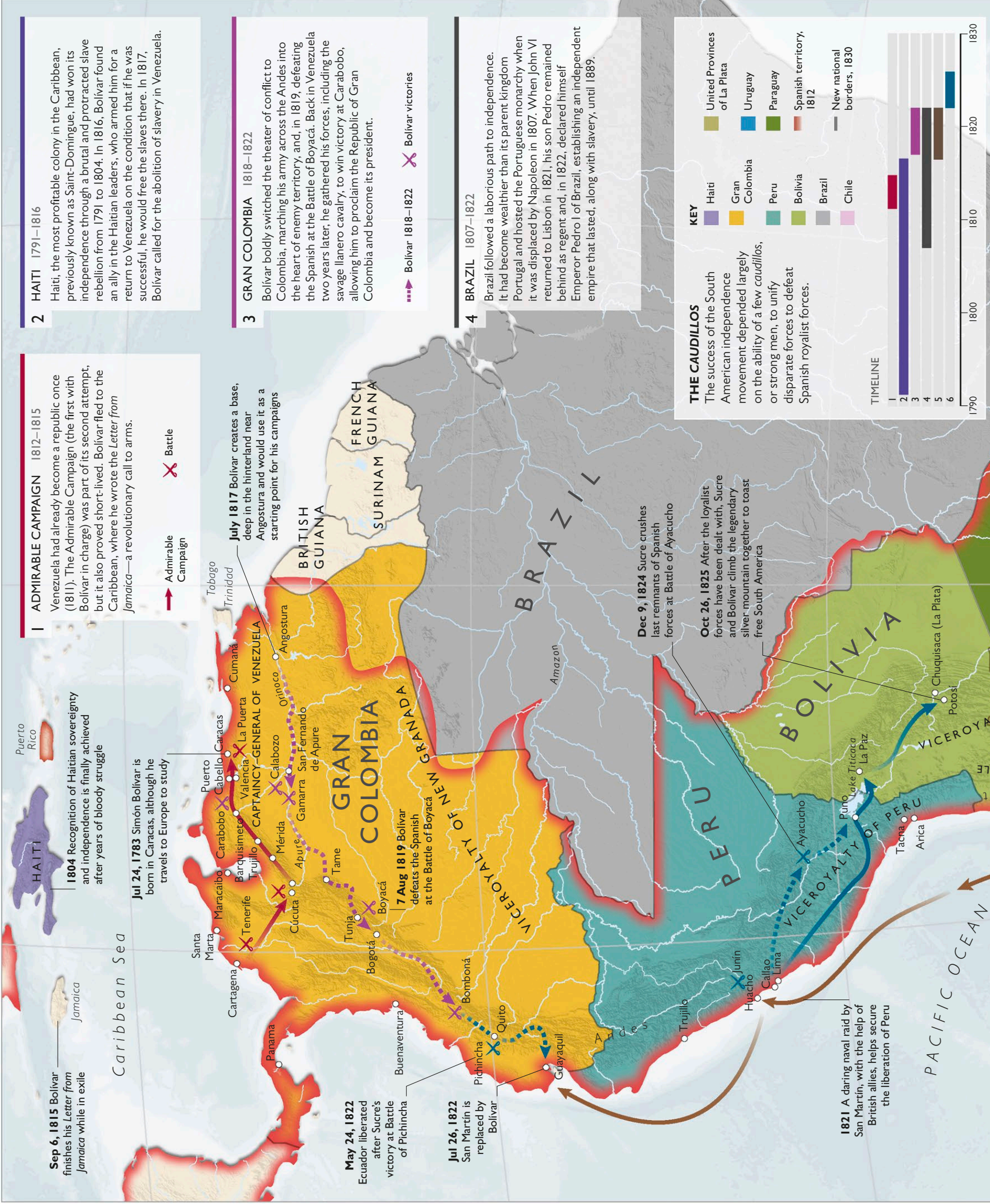
**Declaring independence**  
Thomas Jefferson presents the Declaration of Independence to Congress.

















# THE ENLIGHTENMENT

Spanning the mid-17th to early 19th centuries, the Enlightenment was a period in which thinkers championed reason over superstition and made significant advances in the sciences, arts, politics, economics, and religion.



## △ Enlightened empress

As well as modernizing and expanding the Russian Empire during her 34-year rule, Empress Catherine the Great championed Enlightenment ideas and advanced state education for women.

Also known as the Age of Reason, the Enlightenment blossomed in pockets across the Western world, advocating rationalism and religious tolerance over superstition and sectarianism.

In Germany, it took the shape of a philosophical and literary movement, known as the *Aufklärung*, which helped invigorate literature and philosophy in eastern Europe. In France, the movement was associated with *philosophes*—men of letters, science, and philosophy—starting with René Descartes and including Voltaire and Jean-Jacques Rousseau, among others. Their ideas combined rationalism with a desire to bring about

social change and overcome inequality and injustice. Their belief in the supremacy of reason, religious tolerance, and constitutional governments formed a critique of a dogmatic church and absolute monarchy in France. Their writings provided an intellectual basis for the French Revolution. The US Founding Fathers drew inspiration from them when framing the constitution of their new nation.

In England, the Enlightenment included thinkers such as John Locke and Thomas Paine, who in turn influenced poets, as well as writers such as Mary Wollstonecraft. In Scotland, the movement flourished in and around Edinburgh between 1750 and 1800 thanks to writers such as David Hume and Adam Smith. This Age of Reason encouraged not only literary realism and the growth of the novel, but also created a cultural reaction in the form of Romanticism—an artistic and literary movement in the late 18th century (see pp.216–217).

## THE EXPANSION OF RATIONAL THOUGHT

“Rationalist hotspots” in Europe ranged from Stockholm to Lisbon and from Dublin to St. Petersburg. In the United States, they included Boston and Philadelphia. The increasing communication between these centers allowed rapid exchange of ideas, mirroring the development of international trade.

### KEY

● Main centers of the Enlightenment





**Learning from Voltaire**

The guests at this Paris salon in 1755 include Denis Diderot and Jean Le Rond d'Alembert. The *philosophes* are gathered around a bust of Voltaire to hear a reading of one of his plays, in which blind force and barbarism are defeated by genius and reason.





# THE FATE OF NATIVE AMERICANS

Native American societies across North America were transforming even before direct contact with the United States, but the young nation’s increasing belief that westward expansion was its destiny would bring drastic change—two centuries of brutal conflict and near-eradication of America’s native peoples.

In 1783, the United States became a sovereign nation, no longer bound by the limitations on settlement imposed by Britain. This newfound freedom inspired in the American settlers a belief that they were the natural inheritors of the continent, giving birth to the empowering phrase “manifest destiny” (see below), which drove their expansion westward.

By 1790, about 500,000 settlers had laid down roots west of the original Thirteen States (see pp.156–157). The expansion gained momentum during the next 50 years as explorers ventured westward in wagon trains or sailed to the Pacific Coast to join the Gold Rush. Pioneers paved the way for migrants to settle on the western coast, especially

after railroads replaced the wagon trails. By 1860, approximately 16 million colonists had migrated and settled west of the Appalachians, their arrival displacing and disenfranchising the 250,000 or so Native Americans in the Great Plains and the West.

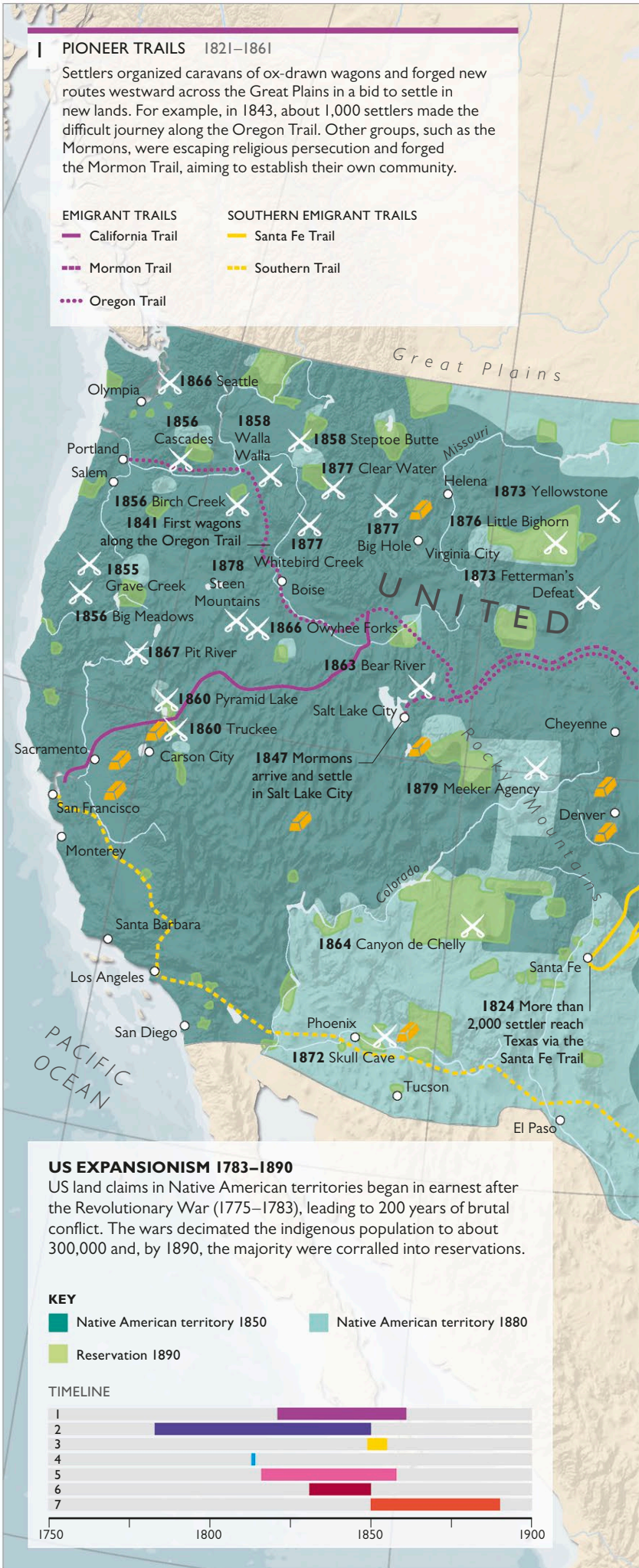
Many indigenous groups fought for their lands and mounted some notable defenses, but it was only a matter of time before their resistance was crushed by the might and momentum of this Euro-American expansion. By 1890, the remaining Native Americans who had survived the wars were forced out of their homes and herded into specially designated sites called reservations, which amounted to a little more than 2 percent of the area of the United States.

*“Kill them all, big and little: nits make lice.”*

JOHN CHIVINGTON, US COLONEL, 1864

**MANIFEST DESTINY**  
THE RIGHT TO COLONIZE

Coined in 1845, the term “manifest destiny” encompassed the belief in American settlers of their divine right to inhabit and “civilize” the whole expanse of the continent. Although the hunger for land and opportunities in the west had long been features of American colonization, after independence, it evolved into a sense of continental entitlement that drove mass migration westward. In his painting *American Progress* (1872), John Gast depicts Columbia—a personification of the US—leading settlers westward. The figure strings a telegraph wire, implying that the settlers are bringing “light” to the west.





## 2 CLAIMING THE OLD NORTHWEST 1783–1850

Following independence, the legal boundary drawn by the British no longer applied, allowing Euro-American settlers to move into the western regions beyond the Appalachians. The settlers dealt with Native American resistance by inflicting a crushing defeat at the Battle of Fallen Timbers in 1794. The last of the resistance in the region fell at the Battle of Tippecanoe in 1811, with some settlers' sights already set farther west.

✕ Local wars

## 3 THE GOLD RUSH 1849–1855

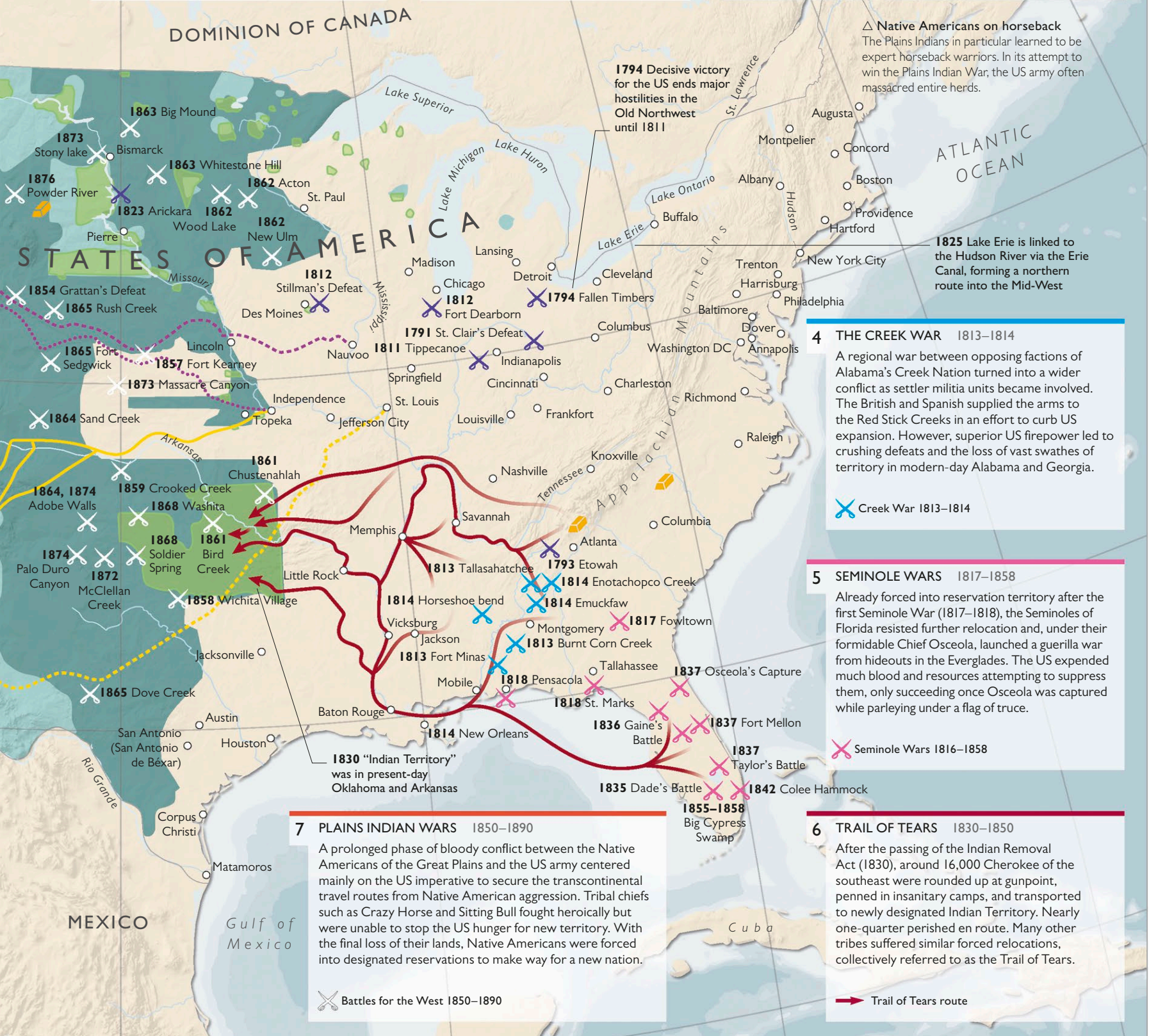
The discovery of gold in California set off a frenzied Gold Rush in 1849, as hopeful prospectors poured into the region to profit from this new find, leading to a genocide of the Native American population. Between 1850 and 1860, war, disease, and starvation reduced Native American numbers in California from 150,000 to 35,000. The pattern was repeated when gold was discovered in other parts of North America.

📍 Major gold sites



### △ Native Americans on horseback

The Plains Indians in particular learned to be expert horseback warriors. In its attempt to win the Plains Indian War, the US army often massacred entire herds.



1825 Lake Erie is linked to the Hudson River via the Erie Canal, forming a northern route into the Mid-West

## 4 THE CREEK WAR 1813–1814

A regional war between opposing factions of Alabama's Creek Nation turned into a wider conflict as settler militia units became involved. The British and Spanish supplied the arms to the Red Stick Creeks in an effort to curb US expansion. However, superior US firepower led to crushing defeats and the loss of vast swathes of territory in modern-day Alabama and Georgia.

✕ Creek War 1813–1814

## 5 SEMINOLE WARS 1817–1858

Already forced into reservation territory after the first Seminole War (1817–1818), the Seminoles of Florida resisted further relocation and, under their formidable Chief Osceola, launched a guerilla war from hideouts in the Everglades. The US expended much blood and resources attempting to suppress them, only succeeding once Osceola was captured while parleying under a flag of truce.

✕ Seminole Wars 1816–1858

## 7 PLAINS INDIAN WARS 1850–1890

A prolonged phase of bloody conflict between the Native Americans of the Great Plains and the US army centered mainly on the US imperative to secure the transcontinental travel routes from Native American aggression. Tribal chiefs such as Crazy Horse and Sitting Bull fought heroically but were unable to stop the US hunger for new territory. With the final loss of their lands, Native Americans were forced into designated reservations to make way for a new nation.

✕ Battles for the West 1850–1890

## 6 TRAIL OF TEARS 1830–1850

After the passing of the Indian Removal Act (1830), around 16,000 Cherokee of the southeast were rounded up at gunpoint, penned in insanitary camps, and transported to newly designated Indian Territory. Nearly one-quarter perished en route. Many other tribes suffered similar forced relocations, collectively referred to as the Trail of Tears.

➔ Trail of Tears route



# THE FRENCH REVOLUTION

The French Revolution was actually a series of revolutions accompanied by pan-continental war. Three revolutionary forces converged to drive the transformation of the French state: a liberal aristocratic and bourgeois movement that brought about constitutional change; a popular revolutionary mob in the streets of Paris; and an agrarian revolt by peasants across the country.

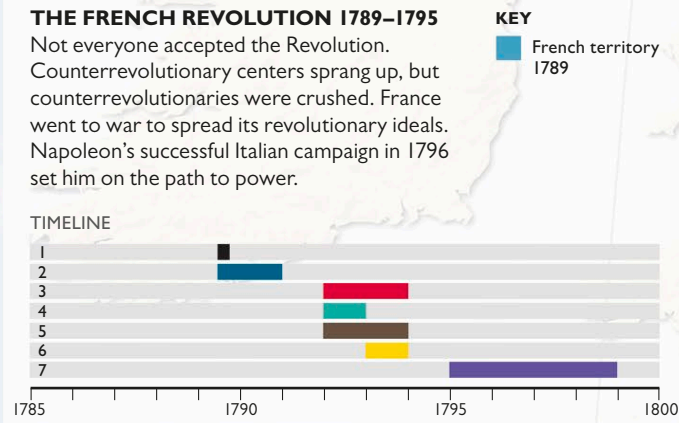
In 1789, Louis XVI convoked the Estates-General (for the first time in 175 years) as he sought financial reforms to alleviate France’s huge debt. The Estates-General was the Ancien Régime’s representative assembly, made up of three estates: clergy (First Estate); nobility (Second Estate); and commoners (Third Estate). In May 1789, the majority Third Estate insisted on greater voting rights. When they were refused, they broke away to form the National Assembly. This triggered a period of great change: a constitutional monarchy was created; and the Declaration of the Rights of Man was drafted, defining a single set of individual and collective rights for all men.

The Assembly, formed out of the National Assembly, pushed through a new constitution and other major reforms, such as the end of feudalism. Factional struggles between the Girondists on the one hand and the Jacobins, headed by Robespierre,

Marat, and Danton, on the other, dominated the Assembly. The threat posed to France’s neighbors by a revolutionary state exporting its ideals prompted a reactionary coalition against France. With enemy armies pressing on all sides and domestic counterrevolutionary uprisings, the revolutionaries panicked. The Revolution descended into a second, extremist phase known as the Reign of Terror. In July 1794, the Jacobins were overthrown in the Thermidor coup, and this instituted the third phase of the Revolution, with the more moderate Directory taking power in October 1795 and attempting to restore the liberal, constitutional values of the first phase. By November 1799, however, enemy armies once more threatened the survival of the Republic, and a coup engineered by Bonaparte to make himself First Consul is traditionally held to mark the end of the Revolution and the start of the Napoleonic era.

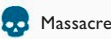
## DECLARATION OF THE RIGHTS OF MAN PRINCIPLES OF THE REVOLUTION

The Declaration of the Rights of Man and Citizen was a statement of the principles of the Revolution, establishing the sovereignty of the people and the principle of “liberty, equality, and fraternity.” Louis XVI was forced to accept it in the 1791 constitution. The painting shows an officer of the National Guard swearing an oath of allegiance before the Altar of the Convention.



**2 THE NATIONAL ASSEMBLY 1789–1791**

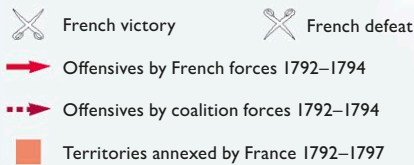
The National Assembly abolished feudalism, adopted the Declaration of the Rights of Man, and proclaimed a new, constitutional monarchy. In June 1791, the king was caught fleeing Paris, and radical sentiment was further inflamed when moderates were blamed for the “massacre of the Champ de Mars” on July 17, in which the National Guard fired upon a crowd in Paris, killing up to 50 civilians.



Massacre

**3 THE TUMULT SPREADS ABROAD 1792–1794**

Shock waves rippled across Europe, sparking both revolutionary feeling (the Austrian Netherlands revolted and declared independence as Belgium) and reactionary opposition (neighboring monarchies formed the First Coalition to restore the French monarchy). The Revolutionary Wars began, with France going to war with Austria, Prussia, and most of its neighbors. Panic grew inside France, and the revolution became more extreme.



**4 THE REPUBLIC 1792–1793**

The Parisian mob, fearful that Louis XVI was in league with the Prussians, stormed the Tuileries Palace and locked up the royal family. The monarchy was abolished, a republic declared, and a new Year One proclaimed. The Jacobin Convention took over, promulgating in 1792 an Edict of Fraternity espousing the export of revolutionary ideals, and in 1793, the king was executed.

**5 LEVÉE EN MASSE 1792–1794**



Forced mass military conscription prompted a counterrevolutionary uprising in the Vendée and elsewhere. Combined with the threat from a British landing at Toulon, this prompted the Convention in August 1793 to issue a decree of levée en masse—total mobilization of the entire population. The Vendée risings were brutally suppressed and the foreign armies thrown back.





# STATE OF EMERGENCY JUN–OCT 1789

Mounting economic and political crisis forced Louis XVI to summon the Estates-General at Versailles in 1789. The Third Estate (the commoners) formed a National Assembly and took the Tennis Court Oath, vowing to remain united until a constitution is established. July 1789 saw the storming of the Bastille, hated symbol of Ancien Régime oppression, marking the acceleration of the Revolution.

 Center of revolution  Riots



▷ **Leaving for the Guillotine**  
The reign of the Jacobins ended in July 1794 with the Thermidor coup, and its leaders, including Robespierre (right, center) were sent to the guillotine.



**Jan 1790**  
The Austrian Netherlands revolt and declare independence as Belgium


## 7 THE DIRECTORY 1795–1799

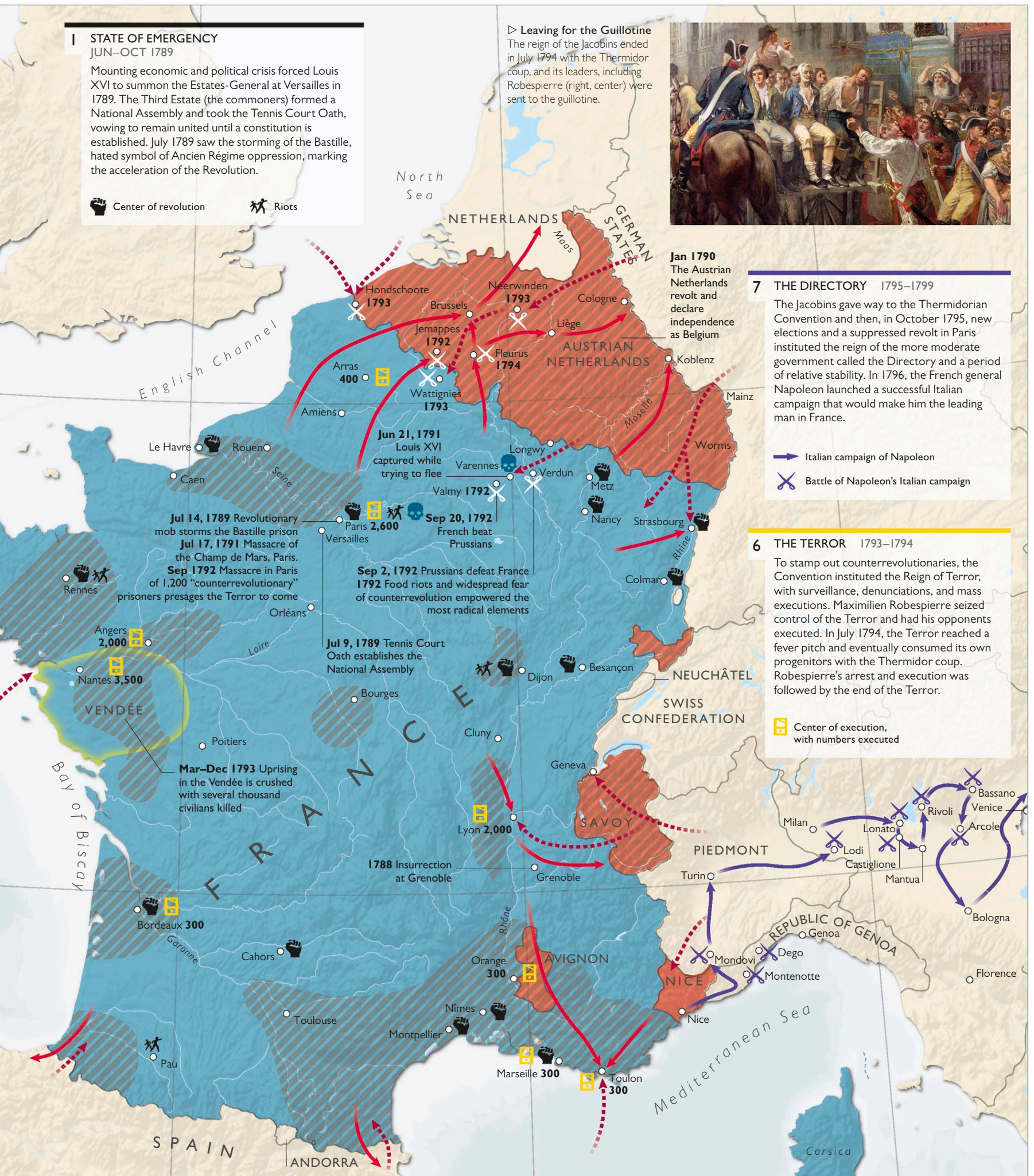
The Jacobins gave way to the Thermidorian Convention and then, in October 1795, new elections and a suppressed revolt in Paris instituted the reign of the more moderate government called the Directory and a period of relative stability. In 1796, the French general Napoleon launched a successful Italian campaign that would make him the leading man in France.

 Italian campaign of Napoleon  
 Battle of Napoleon's Italian campaign

## 6 THE TERROR 1793–1794

To stamp out counterrevolutionaries, the Convention instituted the Reign of Terror, with surveillance, denunciations, and mass executions. Maximilien Robespierre seized control of the Terror and had his opponents executed. In July 1794, the Terror reached a fever pitch and eventually consumed its own progenitors with the Thermidor coup. Robespierre's arrest and execution was followed by the end of the Terror.

 Center of execution, with numbers executed









## NAPOLEON'S EMPIRE, 1812

At its greatest extent in 1812, Napoleon's domain included most of Europe. Only Britain consistently opposed him.

### KEY

- French Empire
- French client states
- Independent allies
- Countries at war with Napoleon

## 4 WARS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH COALITIONS 1805–1807

Austria joined a British-financed anti-French coalition that already included Russia, Sweden, and the Kingdom of Naples. After heavy defeats, Austria agreed on peace terms with France and Russia and retreated to Poland. France created the Confederation of the Rhine, as a client state, in the ashes of the Holy Roman Empire. Prussia was threatened by this and made war with France, which ended in Prussian defeat and the creation of another client, the Duchy of Warsaw (Poland), from former Austrian and Prussian lands.

- French forces
- ✕ French victories



**1798** Ottoman sultan declares jihad on Napoleon in response to his invasion of Egypt

**Mar 1799** Undeterred by losing his fleet, Napoleon presses on and besieges the Ottomans at Acre, who resist him with the help of British guns

**Aug 1798** In the Battle of the Nile, Nelson destroys the French fleet, crippling Napoleon's Egyptian campaign

**Apr 1799** Napoleon wins a battle on his retreat to Egypt

**Jul 21, 1798** Napoleon defeats the Mamluk rulers of Egypt and captures Cairo

# NAPOLEON ADVANCES

Napoleon established his reputation as leader of the French Revolutionary Army with his bold, unexpected maneuvers against Austria in Italy (1796–1797). By 1804, 10 years after France's republican revolution, he had crowned himself emperor. By 1809, he had complete control of central Europe.

From the maelstrom of the French Revolutionary Wars, Napoleon Bonaparte emerged as a young, ambitious general. Among his early remarkable successes, he pushed the armies of Austria and the kingdom of Sardinia out of northern Italy (1796–1797). Austrian forces retreated all the way back to Vienna, leaving northern Italy in the hands of the French. By 1809, Napoleon had absorbed the southern Netherlands (Batavia), the west bank of the Rhine, and a large part of Italy into French territory. He

### ◀ The man and the myth

Jacques-Louis David's equestrian portrait (1800–1801), which pictured Napoleon crossing the Alps, fed into the leader's desired image of a classical hero.

had created client states under French control (for example, the Confederation of the Rhine). He had placed family members on thrones all over Europe, married Marie Louise of Austria, and made Prussia and Austria reluctant allies.

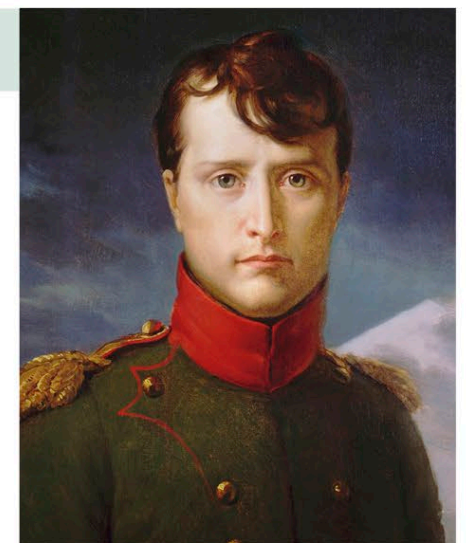
Throughout, Britain remained at war with Napoleon. The British established naval superiority, and it was naval power that thwarted Napoleon's ambitions in Egypt and the Middle East. Napoleon retaliated by isolating Britain with a trade blockade called the Continental System. Its aim of destroying British commerce failed, however, as it was impossible to enforce compliance throughout Europe, from Portugal to Russia.

*"In war there is but one favorable moment; the great art is to seize it!"*

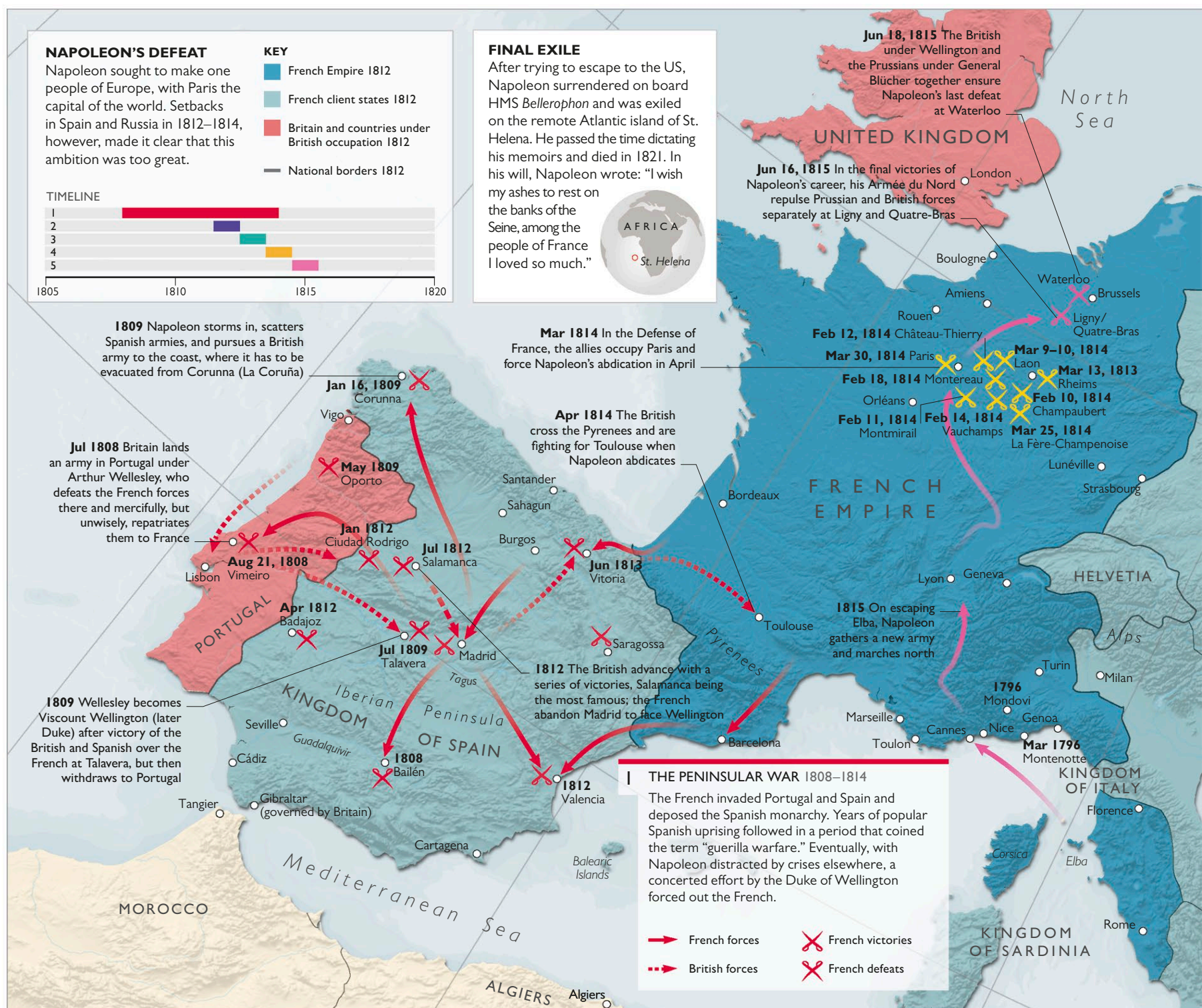
NAPOLEON BONAPARTE, 1804

## NAPOLEON BONAPARTE 1769–1821

Napoleon rose to prominence during the French Revolution and led several successful campaigns during the French Revolutionary Wars. As Napoleon I, he was endorsed by the Pope as Emperor of the French 1804–1814, and again in 1815 (see pp.210–211). Napoleon dominated European and global affairs for more than a decade while leading France against a series of coalitions in the Napoleonic Wars. He won most of these wars and the vast majority of his battles, building an empire that ruled over continental Europe before its final collapse in 1815.







# NAPOLÉON'S DOWNFALL

Napoleon's efforts to dominate Europe took him to the far eastern and western ends of the continent. After failing to control Spain, Portugal, and Russia, he was met and defeated by a coalition of nations in central Europe. He was exiled first to Elba, then to far-off St. Helena.

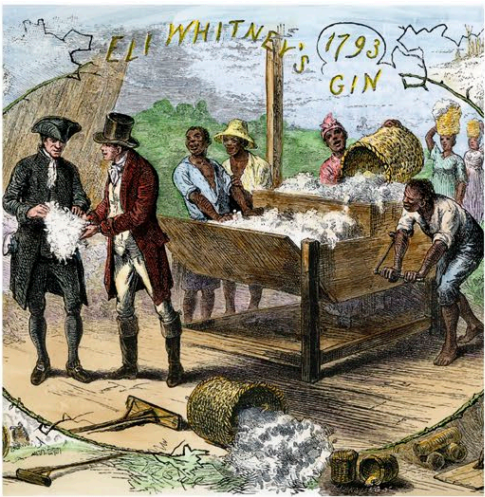
Napoleon's 1809 defeat of Prussia and the Fourth Coalition (see pp.208–209) seemed to consolidate his hold over Europe, but Britain had not made peace, and he would not rest. His strategy to defeat Britain—a trade blockade called the Continental System—needed the cooperation of Spain, Portugal, and Russia. The Spanish monarchy was sympathetic, but a French army invaded Portugal in 1807 to force the Portuguese hand, and soon also replaced the Spanish king to assert direct control in Spain as well.

In May 1809, a popular revolt in Madrid spread across Spain and began a guerilla war that Napoleon came to know as his "Spanish ulcer." Although the French leader took matters into his own hands early on and chased the British out of Spain, he was distracted by a new declaration of war by Austria in 1809. He beat the Austrians at Wagram, but with huge losses—the cost of controlling Europe was beginning to mount. Napoleon's plans unraveled more profoundly









**△ Slave to the machine**  
This engraving celebrating American inventor Eli Whitney's cotton gin also reveals the human suffering and exploitation that helped to make the Industrial Revolution possible.

**▽ Flying shuttles**  
Patented by John Kay in England in 1733, these shuttles drew threads back and forth on mechanical looms, halving the labor force required to produce cloth.

# THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

Industrialization is probably the single greatest event in world economic history, at least since the advent of agriculture several millennia earlier. The process, which began in the late 18th century, had far-reaching consequences that would reshape the world.

Before the late 18th century, the Western world's economy was largely static. Although it periodically expanded as populations grew, this population growth tended to outstrip the carrying capacity of the economy, leading to famine, disease, or war and resulting in population crashes followed by economic contraction.

However, from the late 18th century, economic growth broke free of this trap and began to rise continually. What changed was that the efficiency of the economy began to increase relentlessly. Known as the Industrial Revolution, this transformation began in Britain and then spread to the rest of the world.

The Industrial Revolution was not a single event but a series of changes that took place in a piecemeal fashion in different places and different parts of the economy at different times. Some of these changes had already begun well before the 18th century. For example, a miniature revolution in the manufacture of woolen textiles, thanks to water-mill technology, can be traced to the 13th century.

## Labor, materials, and technology

Industrialization was underpinned by population growth and enabled by the Agricultural Revolution (see pp.194–195), which had dramatically increased agricultural efficiency and output. Another contributor was slavery. The abuse and exploitation of slave labor in the New World drove an explosive growth in the production of raw cotton to fuel the dynamic textile industries of the era. Slavery also enabled large-scale production of sugar, tobacco, and other raw materials. The profits from the trade contributed to the growing financial might of Europe, and later the US, underwriting the injections of capital that helped transform cottage industries into global ones.

The Industrial Revolution was also powered by changes in technology. The invention of the steam engine provided the power for the textile mills and other factory machinery. The need to fuel these engines created an increased demand for coal that could be met because of improved mining and better distribution, first by canal and later by rail. In the later part of the revolution, improvements in steel-making provided an impetus to change as stronger, more versatile kinds of steel began to replace iron.

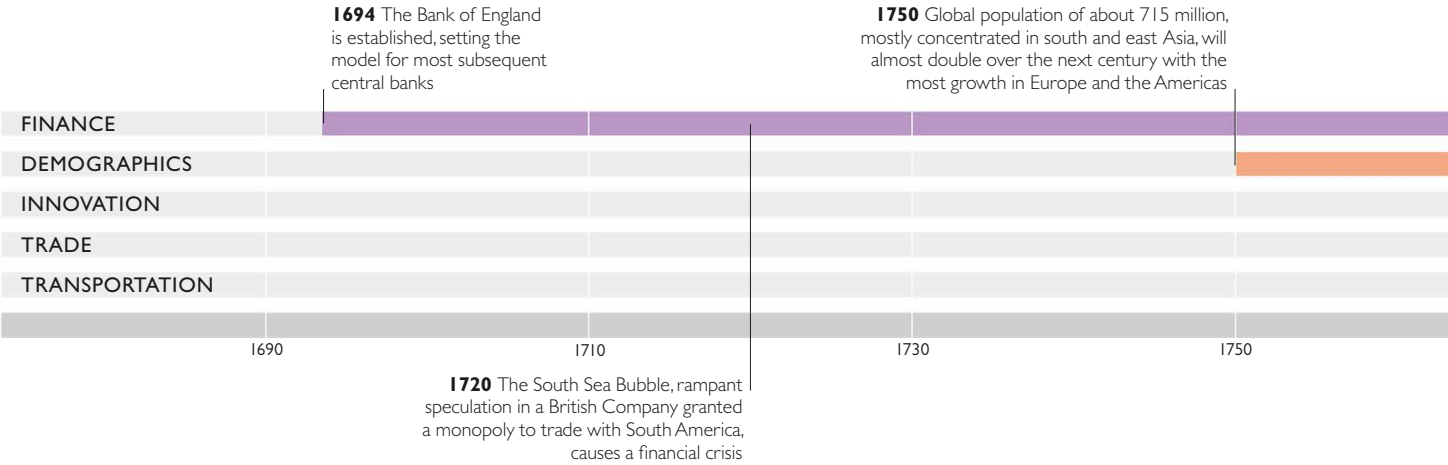
## A global phenomenon

Although the revolution began in Britain, it was not long before it spread throughout Europe and to America. Industrialization was readily adopted in countries with enthusiastic entrepreneurs and governments open to change. In the US, iron production and shipbuilding

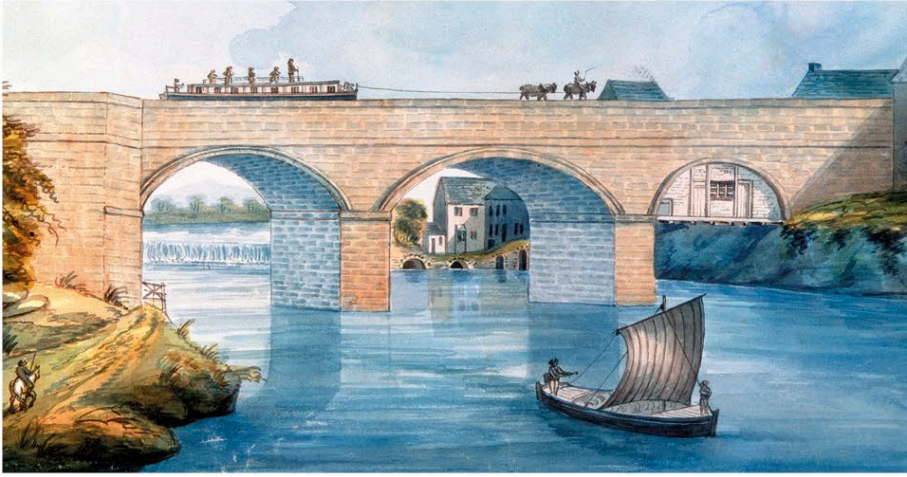


## SEEDING INDUSTRIALIZATION

The Industrial Revolution involved a complex set of factors. Demographics—the growth and distribution of population—influenced the supply of raw materials and demand for products. This in turn drove developments in finance, which provided the capital needed by industries. Innovations in communication, power, and transportation—inspired by new materials and the rising social and economic demand—led to a dramatic boost in productivity.







#### ◁ The Barton Aqueduct

Part of a coal-shipping canal network that made Francis Egerton, the Duke of Bridgewater, a fortune when completed in 1761, this aqueduct helped to transport raw material from the duke's mines to market at a vastly reduced cost.

were the first industries to undergo transformation. In Europe, Belgium and Prussia led the way as the French Revolution initially stalled development in France. A fresh wave of industrialization followed German unification in the 1870s, and by 1900, industrial output in Germany and the US had overtaken that in Britain.

#### The consequences of industrialization

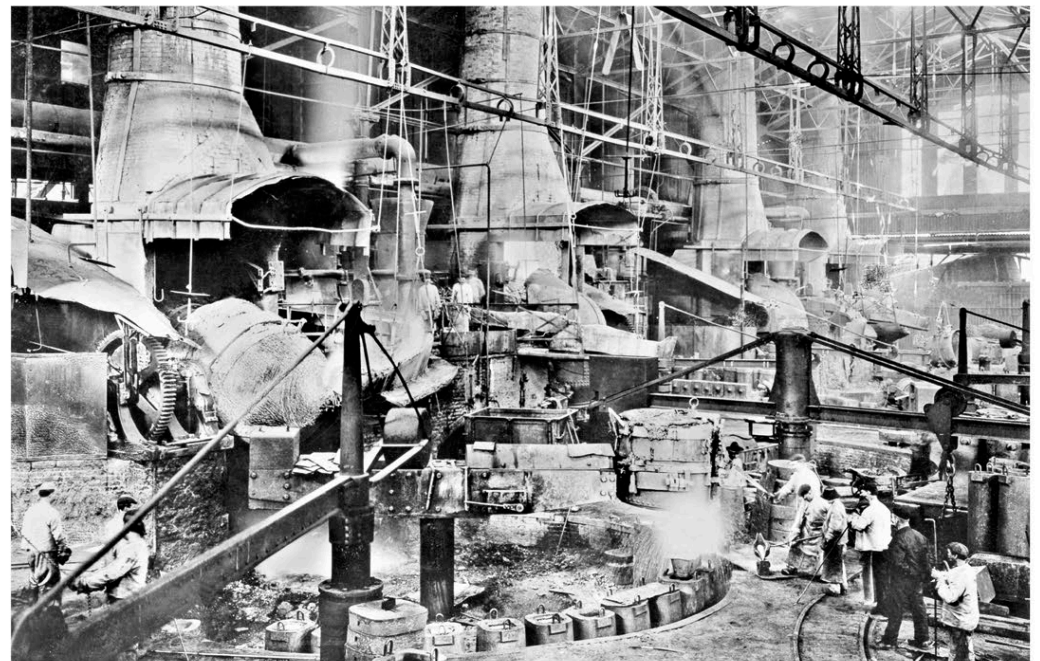
With better transportation, it was no longer necessary to build factories close to the sources of raw materials. Industries were built in cities, and urban populations grew rapidly. In 1800, there were 28 cities in Europe with populations over 100,000; by 1848, there were 45 such cities. However, conditions for urban workers were harsh. Wages were low, living standards were poor, and inequality grew, especially during the early part of the revolution.

As the revolution progressed, new patterns of trade emerged. Improvements in transportation, combined with the invention of communication technologies such as the telegraph, led to a rise in global trade. In turn, trade fueled

further growth as raw materials could be sourced more cheaply and markets for finished products expanded. The Industrial Revolution has many echoes in the present—not least, the changes in climate we are now experiencing, the onset of which can be traced to the increased use of fossil fuels such as coal in the very first wave of industrialization.

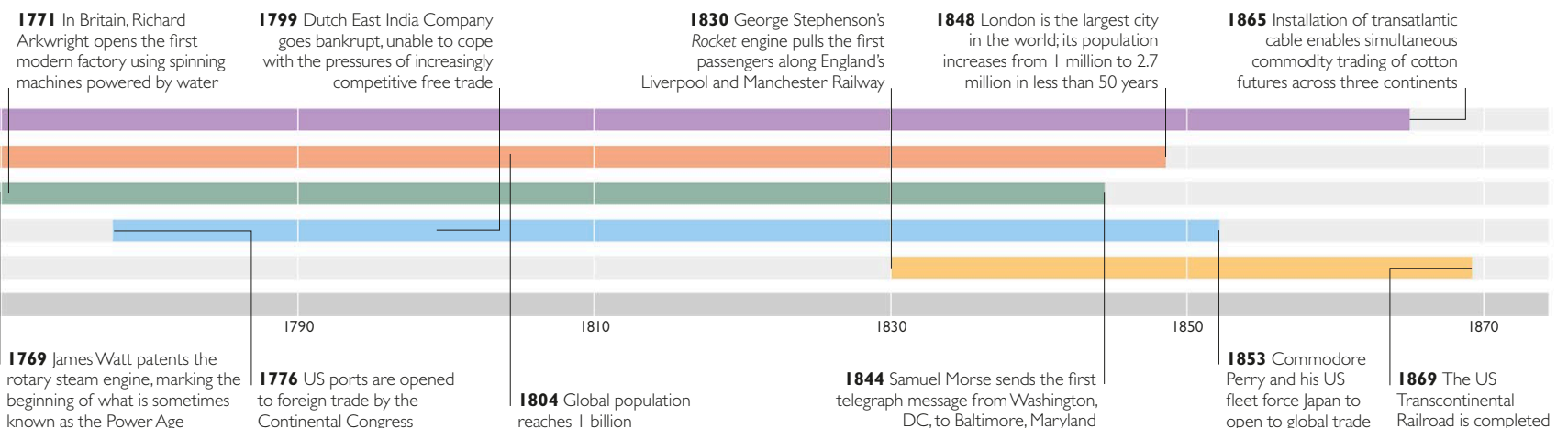
#### ▽ Bessemer converters

The Bessemer process, which used vast furnaces such as those installed at the Krupp Steel Works at Essen in Germany, transformed industrial output in Europe.



*"The process of industrialization is necessarily painful."*

E. P. THOMPSON, BRITISH HISTORIAN, FROM *THE MAKING OF THE ENGLISH WORKING CLASS*, 1963





# INDUSTRIAL BRITAIN

The Industrial Revolution, which began in Britain in the late 18th century, was a period of rapid development in industry that led to changes in politics, society, and the economy. It was in Britain that many of the technological advances occurred that would drive mechanization, urbanization, and capitalism, and lead to the growth of industries such as cotton, coal, and iron.

Many factors contributed to the start of the Industrial Revolution in Britain, as well as to its rapid progression. One significant cause was the Agricultural Revolution (see pp.194–195), which saw improvements to the farming process. Agricultural production became more efficient, and Britain was able to sustain a larger workforce. Fewer agricultural workers were needed to work on the land, and many were now able to move to urban areas to find work in the new factories. The political system in Britain was also conducive to rapid industrialization. As a nation now dependent on trading across the globe, the British government took steps to encourage commercial innovation, such as introducing laws

to protect intellectual property rights. The geographical location of Britain was a key factor, allowing it to communicate and trade with the rest of the world. Britain also had an abundance of natural resources, such as water to power mills and factories, coal to burn for energy, and ores to smelt for metals, which proved invaluable. Combined with these factors, a series of important technological innovations in the 18th and early 19th century, funded by an increasingly wealthy middle class, revolutionized many industrial processes. By the end of the 19th century, Britain was transformed from a predominantly rural society into an urban one, and almost every aspect of daily life had been altered.

JAMES WATT  
1736–1819



Born in Greenock, Scotland, in 1736, inventor and engineer James Watt is chiefly remembered for his improvements to steam engine technology. Watt worked to make Thomas Newcomen's 1712 steam engine more efficient by creating a separate condensing chamber to prevent loss of steam. Watt patented his invention in 1769.

## 1 COTTON TEXTILE INDUSTRY 1700–1790

Britain's expansion across the globe, and slave labor in its colonies, created a boom in cotton production. It provided the raw material for a new mass-market product—cotton textiles. Richard Arkwright's combination of innovations created the first modern factories, which wove cloth at ever greater levels of productivity, especially with the adoption of steam power. Cotton was seen as a threat to the wool trade, which was slower to mechanize.

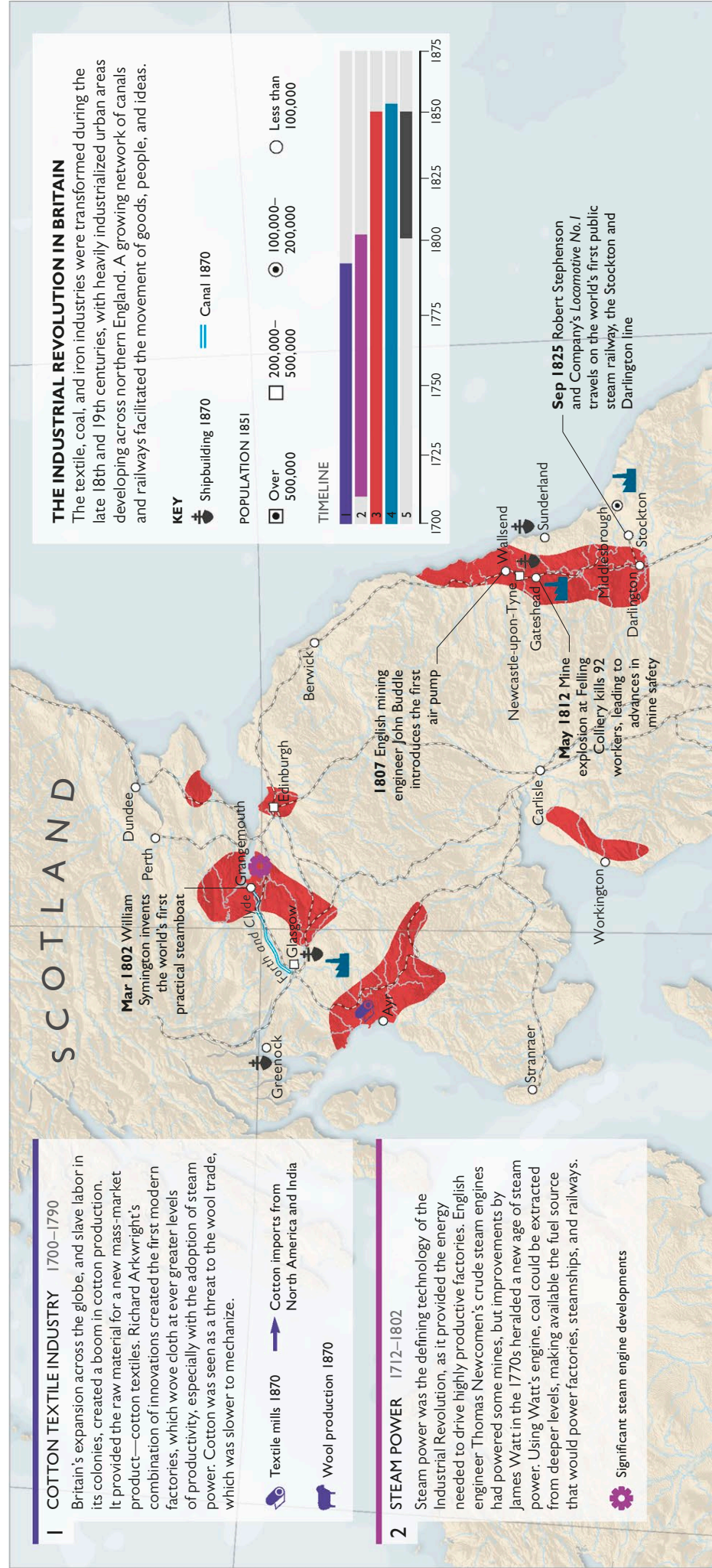
Textile mills 1870    Cotton imports from North America and India

Wool production 1870

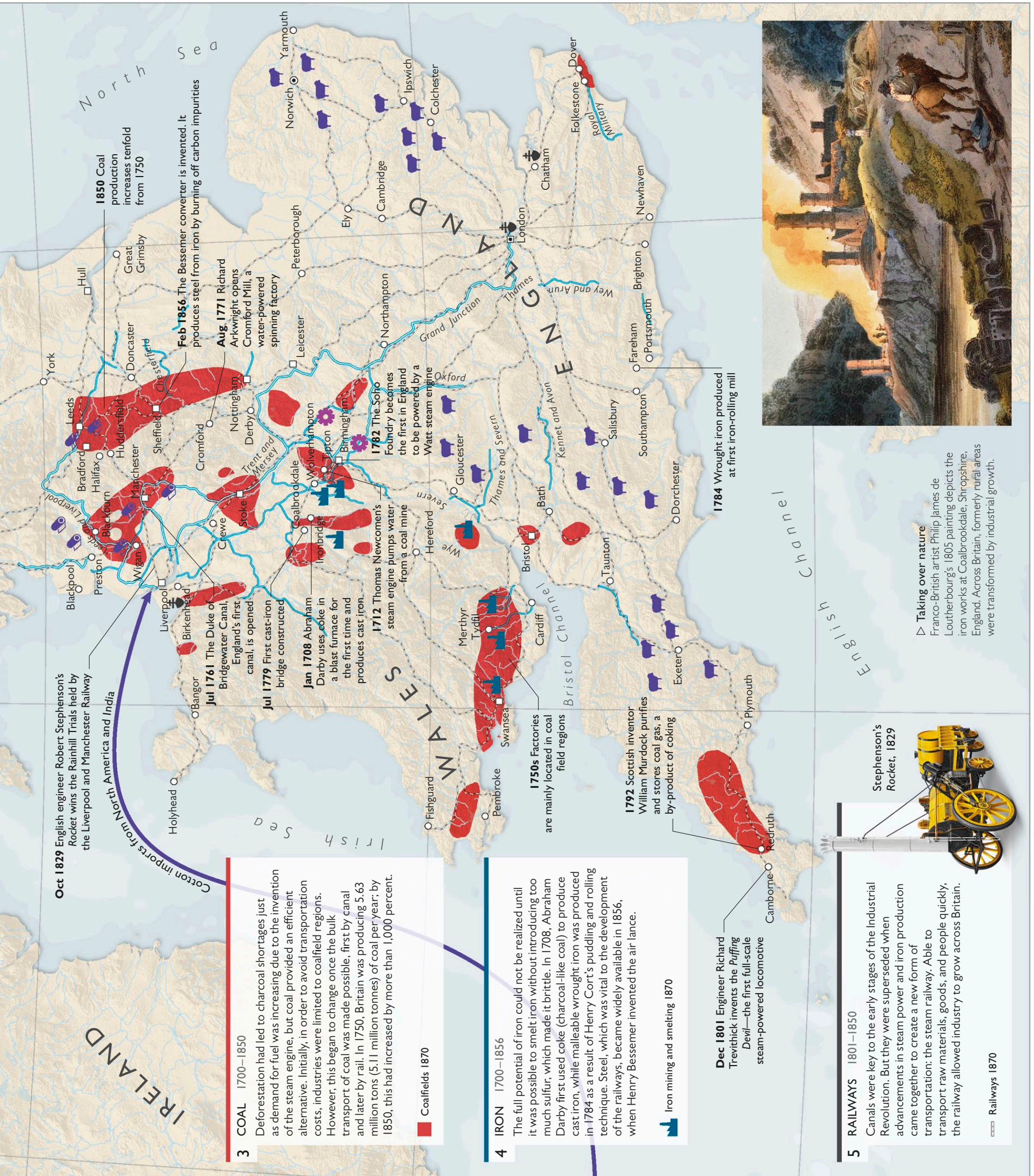
## 2 STEAM POWER 1712–1802

Steam power was the defining technology of the Industrial Revolution, as it provided the energy needed to drive highly productive factories. English engineer Thomas Newcomen's crude steam engines had powered some mines, but improvements by James Watt in the 1770s heralded a new age of steam power. Using Watt's engine, coal could be extracted from deeper levels, making available the fuel source that would power factories, steamships, and railways.

Significant steam engine developments



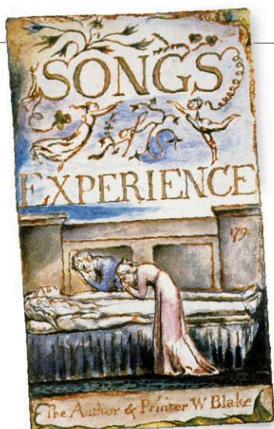






# ROMANTICISM AND NATIONALISM

Romanticism and Nationalism were intertwined cultural and political movements that spread across the Western world from the late 18th to the early 20th centuries, emphasizing emotion and patriotism over reason and cosmopolitanism.



△ **Early Romantic poetry**  
The title page of the 1794 poem *Songs of Experience* was written, illustrated, and hand-printed by William Blake—a key early proponent of both Romanticism and Nationalism.

Romanticism was a cultural movement that began in the late 18th century and affected art, literature, music, theater, and politics. It was a reaction against the rationalism of the Enlightenment (see pp.202–203) and insisted on the primacy of imagination and emotion. The Romantics were fascinated with nature and its relationship with the human psyche. This led to the belief that a land and its people shared a special bond, hence the Romantic enthusiasm for folk culture and legends.

Romanticism became a driving force for the emerging Nationalist movement, which declared the nation state to be the defining unit in politics, culture, language, and history. Aspirations for nationhood, as opposed to sprawling dynasties such as the Austro-Hungarian Empire, became bound up with liberal aspirations for greater rights for citizens.

## Romantic Nationalism and culture

Culture was to be at the forefront of Romantic Nationalism, celebrating the unifying legends and arts of traditional culture and creating new ones. Writers collected folk tales and made up their own in literature, drama, and national epics. Painters sought to capture characteristic scenes or create nationalist allegories. Composers incorporated folk songs and country dances into their music, produced stirring new anthems, and, at their most ambitious, sought to create what German composer Richard Wagner called a *Gesamtkunstwerk*, or “total work of art”—a synthesis of arts in the service of the soul of the nation.

Romantic Nationalism shaped the world order in the early 20th century. It can be credited with the creation of independent states in Europe and the birth of populist movements that resulted in claims of supremacy based

on ethnic identities. For example, in Germany, the notion of racial superiority of Germans over other peoples contributed to the rise of Nazism.



◁ **Influential composer**  
Richard Wagner's *Ring Cycle* of operas was based on Germanic legends and is seen as the high point of Romanticism. It was embraced by German Nationalists as a potential foundational myth.





**Revolutionary sentiments**

French artist Eugène Delacroix's painting *Liberty Leading the People* (1830), based on an uprising he witnessed, is a classic example of Romantic Nationalist art, symbolizing the revolutionary power of liberal, nationalist aspiration.



# THE REVOLUTIONS OF 1848

Frustration was growing at the failure of the European ruling classes to modernize or to answer the aspirations of a wealthier population for greater liberties and rights to nationhood. Tension boiled over in 1848 as a string of revolts and rebellions flared up across the continent, prompting a bloody, reactionary backlash.

The Congress of Vienna in 1815, after the Napoleonic Wars (see pp.208–211), was supposed to create a lasting European settlement. Statesmen from the powers that had brought down Napoleonic France gathered at Vienna to decide how to redraw the borders of Europe. The resulting agreement was essentially conservative: an attempt to stamp out nationalism, a movement centered on the concept of the nation as a legitimate and necessary political and cultural unit, the rise of which, in France, had shattered the old order of Europe. And, for 30 years, it succeeded.

However, major change in the years following the congress continued and even accelerated. The population of Europe had increased by 50 percent since 1800, and it had urbanized rapidly, with the number of cities having populations over 100,000 increasing from 28 in 1800 to 45 in 1848. In the political arena, the preservation of the Holy Alliance empires—Prussia,

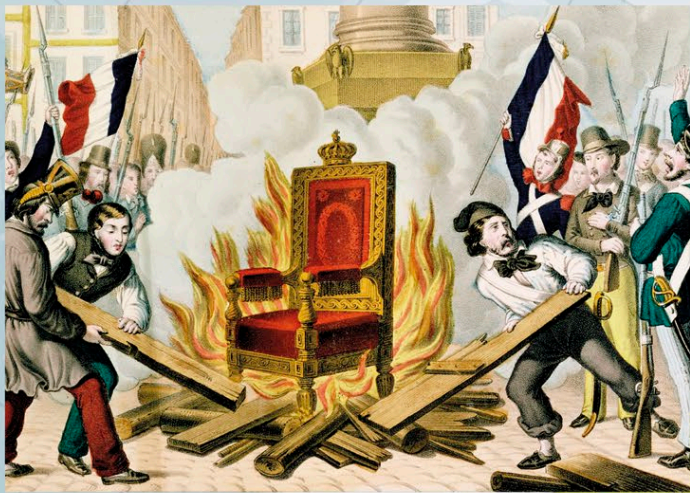
Russia, and, especially, Austria—had come at the cost of suppressing and frustrating awakening nationalist sentiment, particularly in Germany, Poland, and Italy.

Social and economic changes had led to the rapid growth of the middle classes. Such growth fostered liberal sentiments that fueled an appetite for change, with demands for greater representation and freedoms—including the freedom for nations to self-determine.

On Europe’s borders, the crumbling of the Ottoman Empire lent impetus to Balkan drives for self-determination, with the Serbs gaining autonomy in 1817 and the Greeks in 1821 (see pp.266–267). Revolutionary sentiment that had convulsed Europe in the Napoleonic era stirred once more, and the growing demand for a more liberal political order meant that many parts of Europe were like a tinderbox, waiting for a spark.

## SOWING SEEDS FOR THE FUTURE THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE 1848 REVOLUTIONS

The 1848 Revolutions ended in failure, harsh repression, and disillusionment among liberals, but they did leave crucial legacies. They led to the formation of different political groups; accelerated the abolition of serfdom and feudal systems; and stimulated political awareness among the masses. Widespread dreams of nationalism may have been stifled momentarily, but they had not been quashed entirely: both Italy and Germany were unified by 1871 (see pp.264–265). The nationalist mood can be seen in this painting from 1860: Germania is seen holding a shield and sword, defending the Rhine River.



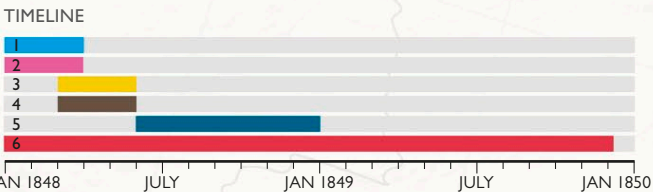
△ Down with the monarchy  
This 19th-century illustration shows people burning the French throne in the Place de la Bastille during the 1848 Revolution in France.



## EUROPE AFTER THE CONGRESS OF VIENNA

Exhausted by decades of revolutionary turmoil, the great powers of Europe had agreed at the Congress of Vienna a geopolitical dispensation that often cut across linguistic and nationalistic lines, brewing trouble for the future.

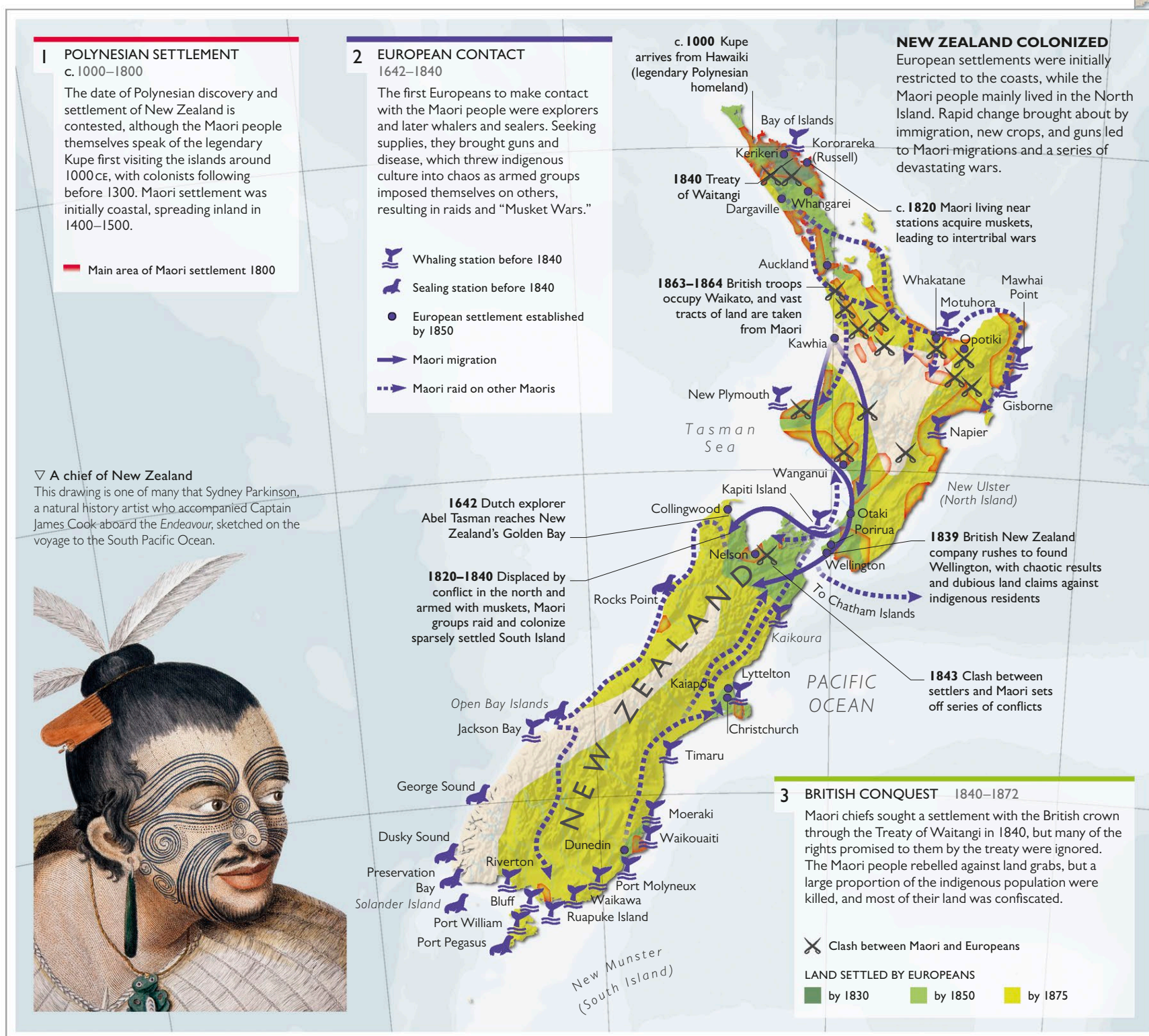
KEY	
German Confederation	Other countries subject to 1848 revolts
Prussia	Frontiers 1848
Small German states	











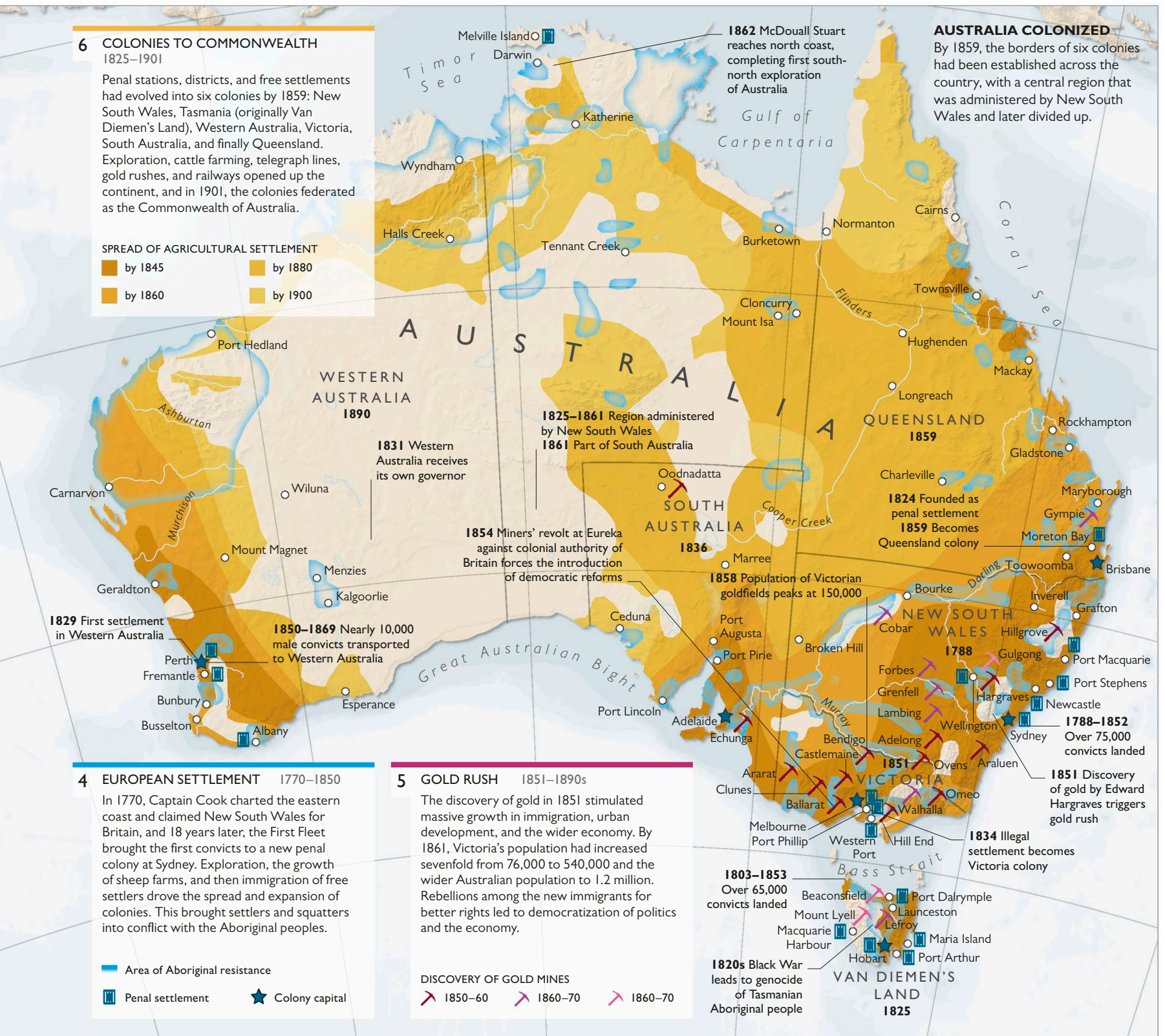
# NEW ZEALAND AND AUSTRALIA

Motives ranging from whaling to exiling criminals drove European colonization of New Zealand and Australia. This had shocking and often tragic consequences for the indigenous peoples, including warfare and genocide.

Settlement of the land now known as Australia dates back to the earliest days of modern humanity (see pp.18–19). After that, remoteness led to relative cultural isolation for both Australia and for its southern neighbor New Zealand—probably the last habitable place on Earth to be settled by humans.

This would change with the increasing technological reach and territorial appetite of European powers, particularly Britain, in the 18th and 19th centuries. To these powers, the unknown lands of the Antipodes appeared as a blank canvas upon which all manner of colonial and imperial fantasies could be projected. In fact, they were home to a diverse range of cultures and







# THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY

The explosive economic growth that brought European powers to global ascendancy was driven in large part by slavery. However, from the 18th century, a long process to abolish the global slave trade was set in motion.



## △ Anti-slavery crusaders

The British Anti-slavery Society, whose emblem is seen here, was a major force in the battle over abolition.

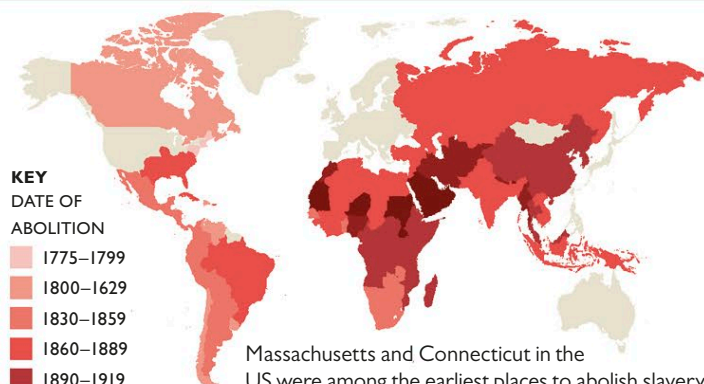
The abolition movement, or abolitionism, was a moral, social, and political campaign to ban the slave trade. It was distinct from, but related to, the movement to emancipate slaves. Abolitionism first took shape among the Quakers, a Protestant Christian group, who in 1787 in Britain set up the Committee for the Abolition of the Slave Trade.

The cause's success was checked when the movement associated itself with radical sentiments following the French Revolution in 1789. Public fears about reprisals that might follow abolition were also stoked by a revolt among Haitian slaves in 1791–1804.

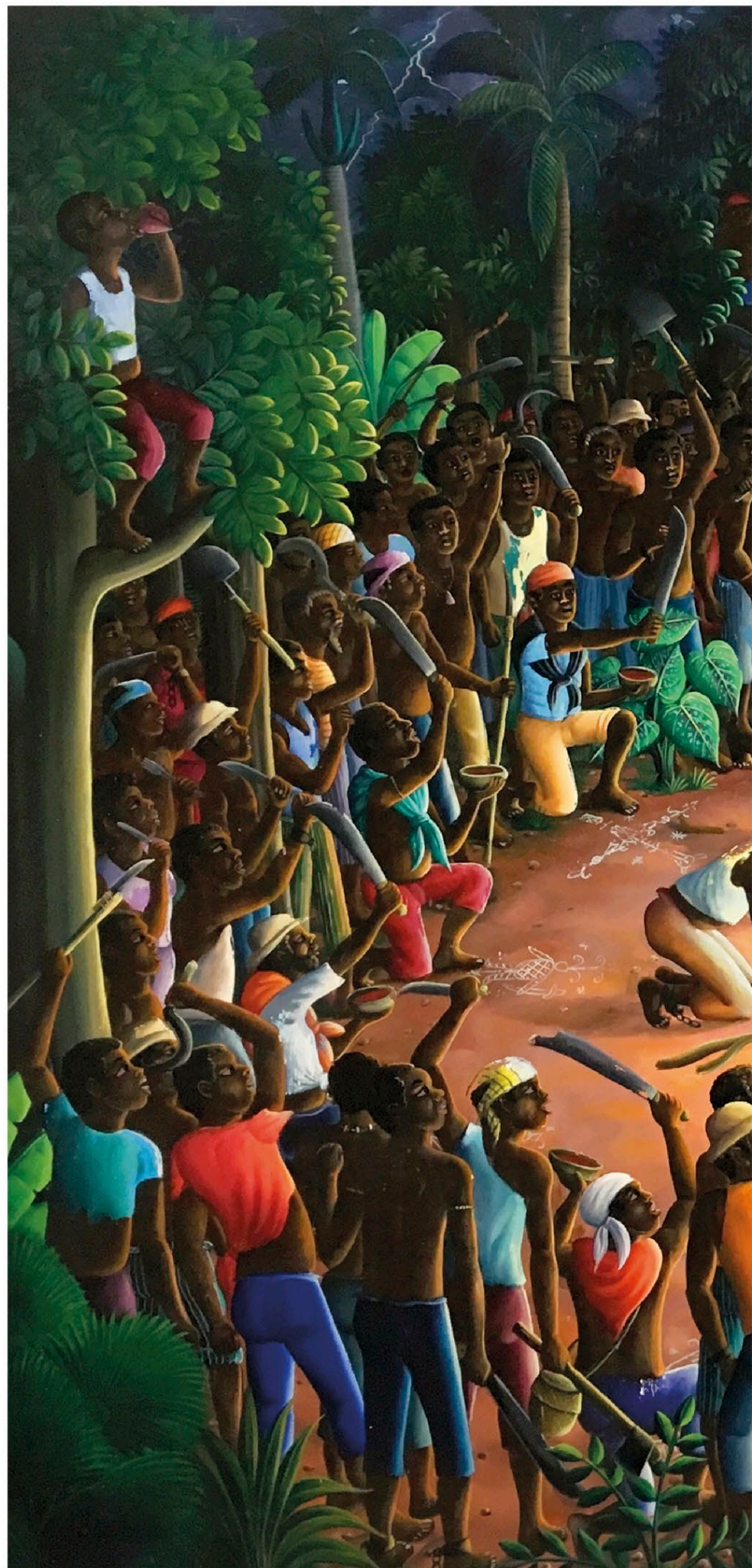
Nonetheless, skillful use of propaganda, and alliances with evangelical Christians and women's groups helped abolitionism gain ground. Although the slave trade was abolished by a Bill of Parliament in Britain in 1807, followed by other European nations such as France, Spain, and Portugal, the practice of slavery continued in many colonies.

The enactment of anti-slavery legislation in Europe boosted the cause of emancipation in America's northern states, fed by a religious revival known as the Second Great Awakening and by voters' resentment of "fugitive slave" laws. Increasing radical responses by both pro- and anti-abolitionists that ensued in the US helped tip the dispute over slavery into civil war (see pp.170–171).

## THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY AROUND THE WORLD



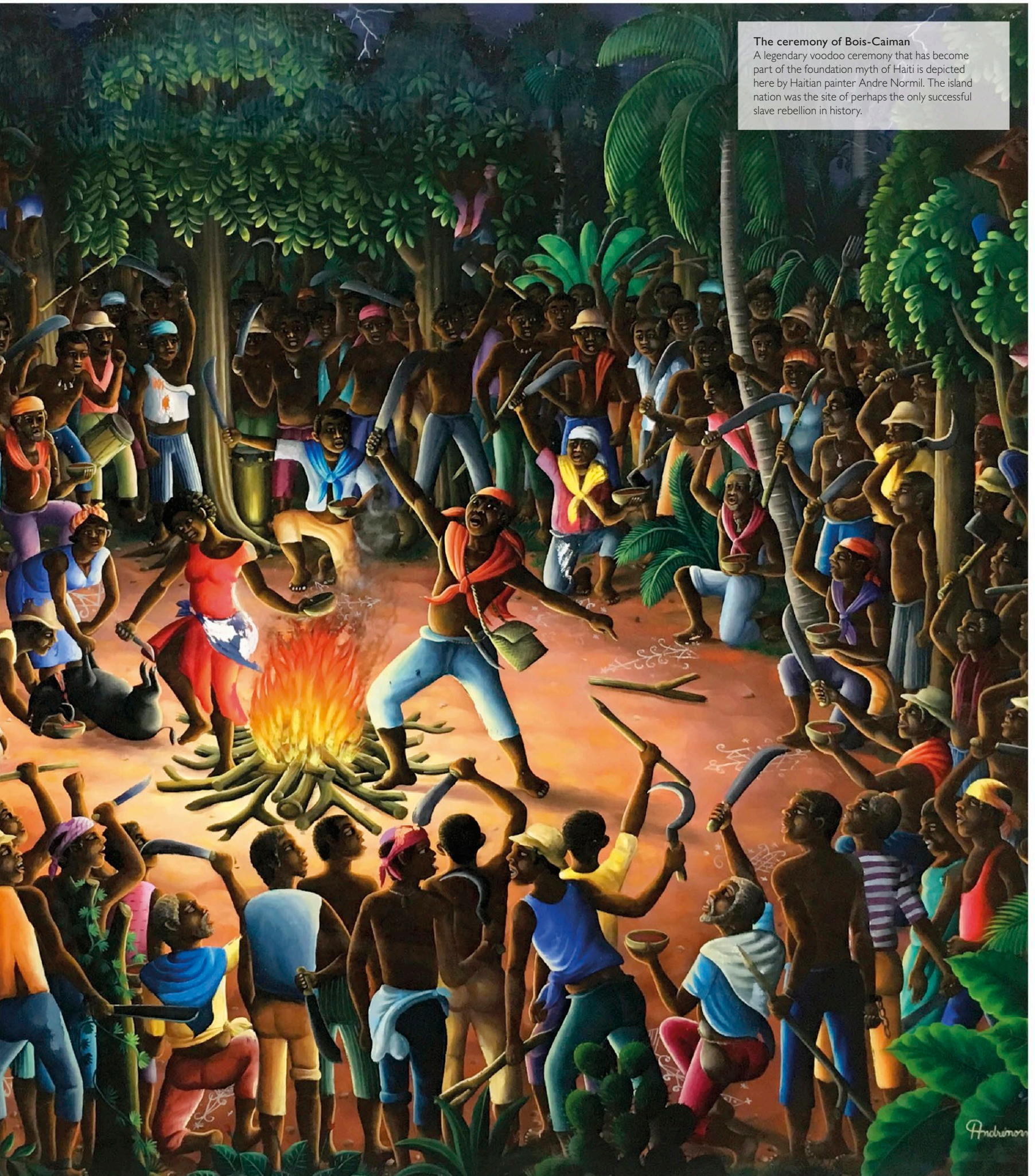
Massachusetts and Connecticut in the US were among the earliest places to abolish slavery. Although European nations tended not to practice slavery in their own territories, they were responsible for the trans-Atlantic slave trade. Despite being illegal, slavery is still practiced in many parts of the world.





**The ceremony of Bois-Caiman**

A legendary voodoo ceremony that has become part of the foundation myth of Haiti is depicted here by Haitian painter Andre Normil. The island nation was the site of perhaps the only successful slave rebellion in history.





# RISE OF BRITISH POWER IN INDIA

From initial footholds in the southeast and Bengal, the power of the British East India Company, a corporate concern with imperial pretensions, spread across all of India, conquering territory and winning fealty through guile, brutality, and arrogance. Eventually, almost the entire subcontinent came under Company control.

European nations had been trading extensively with India since the 16th century, and by the late 17th century, five European powers had trading ports in the subcontinent. Among them was the British East India Company, a commercial organization first chartered in 1600 to profit from trade with the Moluccas (or Spice Islands) in Southeast Asia. Rebuffed by the Dutch, the British East India Company focused instead on trade in textiles and spices with south India, where it had won trading concessions with the Mughal Empire.

Under the Mughals (see pp.176–177), India was a developed, sophisticated polity, with a strong military and wealth and population outstripping that of Europe. However, the collapse of Mughal rule in the 18th century led to the rise of a mosaic of princely states, confederations, and small kingdoms. With no major, unifying power in India, imperialistic and mercantile European powers had the opportunity to exploit

the subcontinent, and it would be the British that took it. Faced with foreign competitors and sometimes hostile hosts, the East India Company developed its own military force to strengthen and protect its interests. Over about the next 100 years, the Company first overcame its competitors and then widened its control of territory, trade, and power in India, using a combination of diplomacy, bribery, and force.

In consolidating its power, the Company faced formidable opponents, including the French, the sultans of Mysore, the Maratha Confederacy, the Sikh kingdom, and the Afghans. The Company was not always victorious, but it was relentless, and it eventually controlled all of India. However, in the wake of a bloody revolt (see pp.244–245), the Company was effectively abolished in 1858. Its possessions and forces were taken over by the British government, and direct colonial rule began.

## SIR ROBERT CLIVE 1725–1774

Commonly known as Clive of India, Robert Clive played a key role in establishing the power of the British East India Company in the subcontinent, gaining honors and wealth in the process. After leading several successful military actions—notably defeat of a French and Mughal force at Plassey in 1757—he twice served as Governor of Bengal (1758–1760, 1765–1767). He returned to England in 1767 and died—possibly by suicide—7 years later in London.

**A meeting of allies**  
Robert Clive meeting Mir Jafar after the Battle of Plassey. Mir Jafar supported Clive in the battle and was made Nawab of Bengal in return for his support.



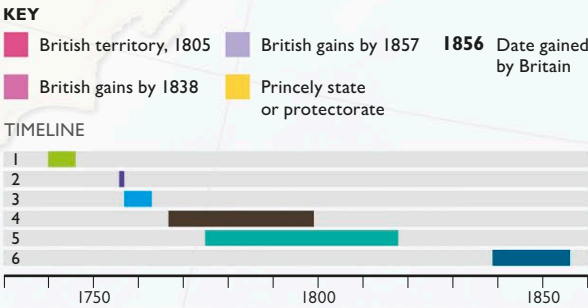
## THE FRENCH THREATEN BRITISH POWER 1740–1746

The Dutch and French had their own India companies, which initially vied with the British for supremacy. Dutch ambitions were ended after defeat by forces of the state of Travancore at Colachel in 1741, but in 1746, the French took Madras from the British and then defeated an Indian army, establishing European military supremacy in the subcontinent.

Battle French colony

## GROWTH OF BRITISH TERRITORY

From its early 19th-century strongholds in the southeast and northeast, Britain gained increasing territorial control through piecemeal acquisition of lands in central and western India and by means of a network of protectorates and vassal states.



## 6 LAST DAYS OF THE EAST INDIA COMPANY 1839–1857

As the Company sought to extend control to the northwest, it fought a series of conflicts in the Punjab and Afghanistan. In 1856, the Company annexed Oudh, which precipitated a revolt in 1857 that eventually led to the British government taking direct control of India. The Company was finished, and the era of the British Raj had begun.

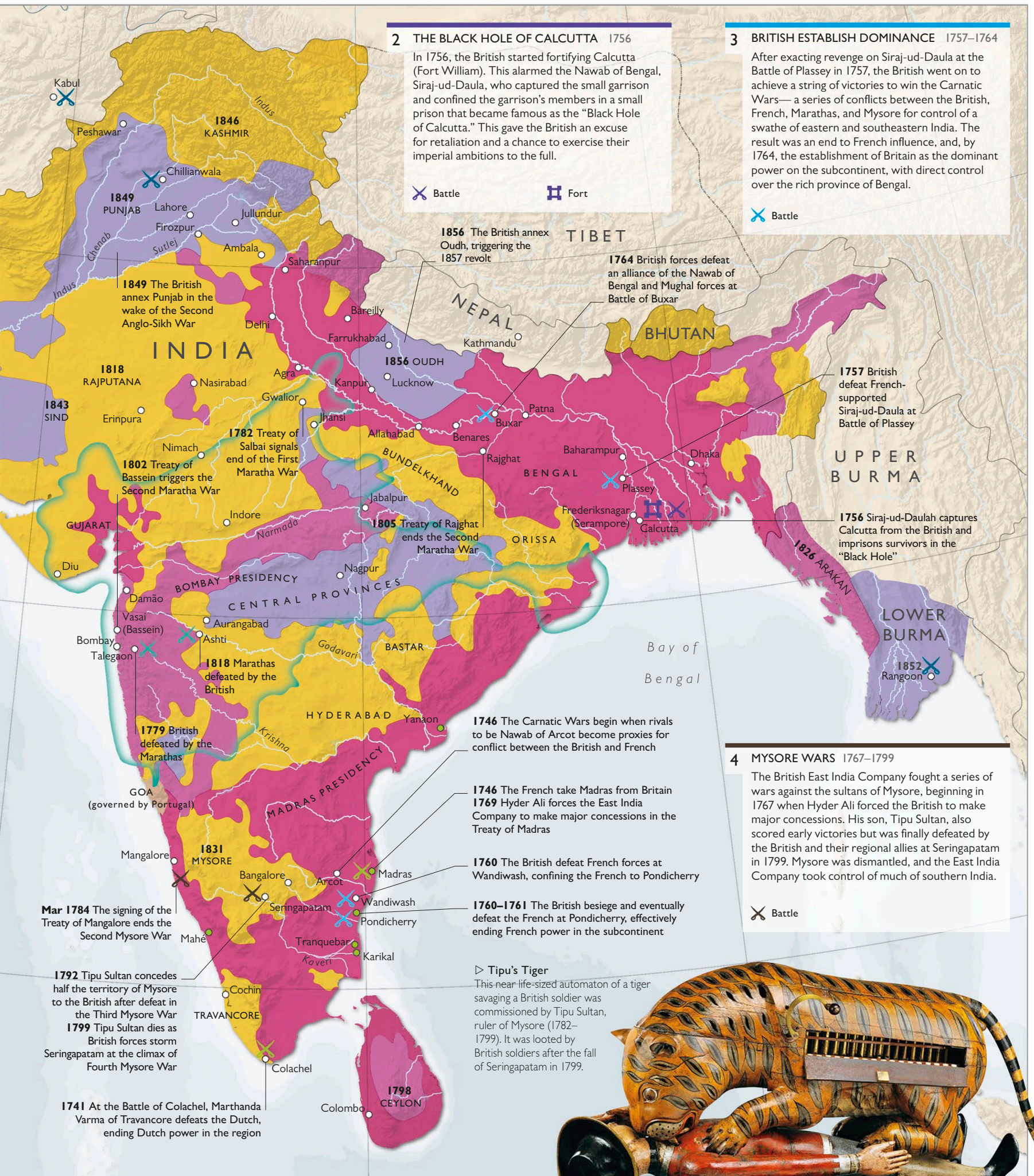
Battle

## 5 MARATHA WARS 1775–1818

Three conflicts between the British and the Maratha Confederacy of Hindu princes (1775–1782, 1803–1805, 1817–1818) effectively marked the last stand for indigenous power against British hegemony over India. As in the Mysore Wars, sometimes humiliating reverses for the British were followed by victories and gradual extension and consolidation of East India Company control.

Maratha territory 1785 Battle







# THE OPIUM WARS

In the early 1800s, opium was being illegally imported into China (mainly by Britain), which eventually sparked confrontations over foreign trade. China’s rulers, the Qing Dynasty, badly misjudged their strength in relation to Britain, which used “gunboat diplomacy” to force China to open to international trade.

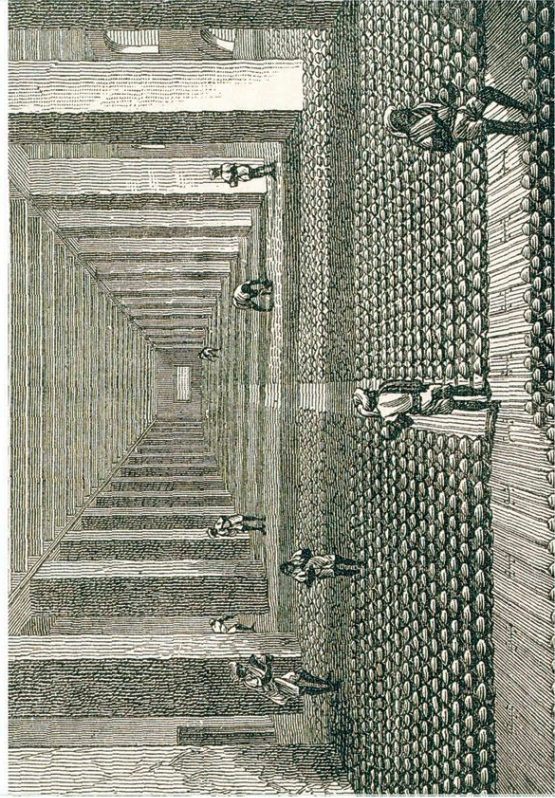
The Chinese imperial court viewed trade as a favor bestowed on foreign tributaries; the British, in contrast, viewed it as the lifeblood of international relations and a way to exploit their colonies. Specifically, the British were seeking to monetize their colonization of India, and they saw opium as the key. India produced high-grade cash crop opium, which could be sold in China for silver, which was promptly swapped for tea—a valuable commodity for the domestic British market. The only problem with the arrangement was that it was illegal to sell opium to China. The trade fed massive corruption and a huge black economy, at the same time as contributing to monetary problems that the Qing were suffering

linked to inflation. Tension inevitably flared, boiling over into confrontations between the Chinese and the British, which the latter were happy to exploit. The “gunboat diplomacy” that followed saw China lose a series of battles across two wars, with the Qing forced to make severe concessions in what became known as the “unequal treaties.” These stoked resentment in China and inflicted lasting humiliation that even today affects Chinese relations with Western powers. The damage to the prestige of the Qing Dynasty undermined their mandate to rule, instigating the series of colossal rebellions that would convulse and eventually destroy imperial China (see pp.252–253).

## THE OPIUM TRADE

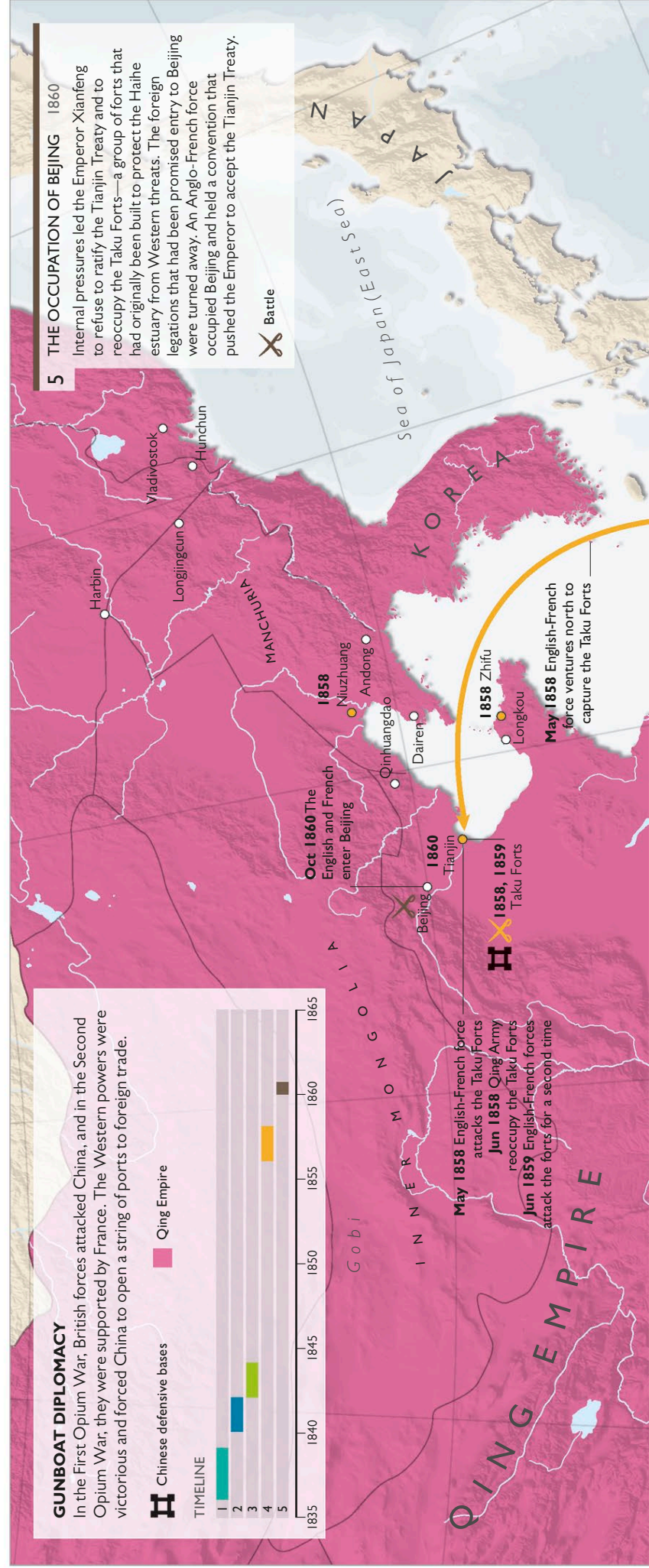
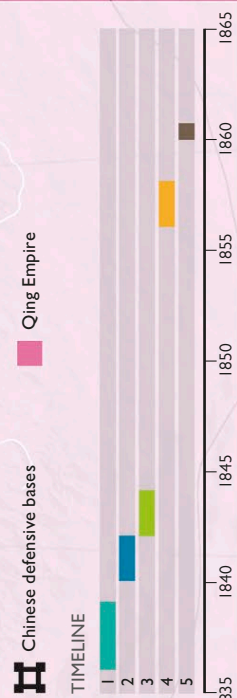
CHINA’S ADDICTION, BRITAIN’S FINANCIAL GAIN

Poppy plants were grown and the seeds dried (see below) in factories in India. Produced and processed by the quasi-governmental British East India Company, the opium was then imported to China by private merchants, allowing the British to wash their hands of the trade’s illegality. Chests of opium were unloaded onto floating warehouses off the coast of Guangzhou, where Chinese smugglers bought it with silver and shipped it upriver, paying bribes and spreading corruption to get around official prohibitions.



### GUNBOAT DIPLOMACY

In the First Opium War, British forces attacked China, and in the Second Opium War, they were supported by France. The Western powers were victorious and forced China to open a string of ports to foreign trade.

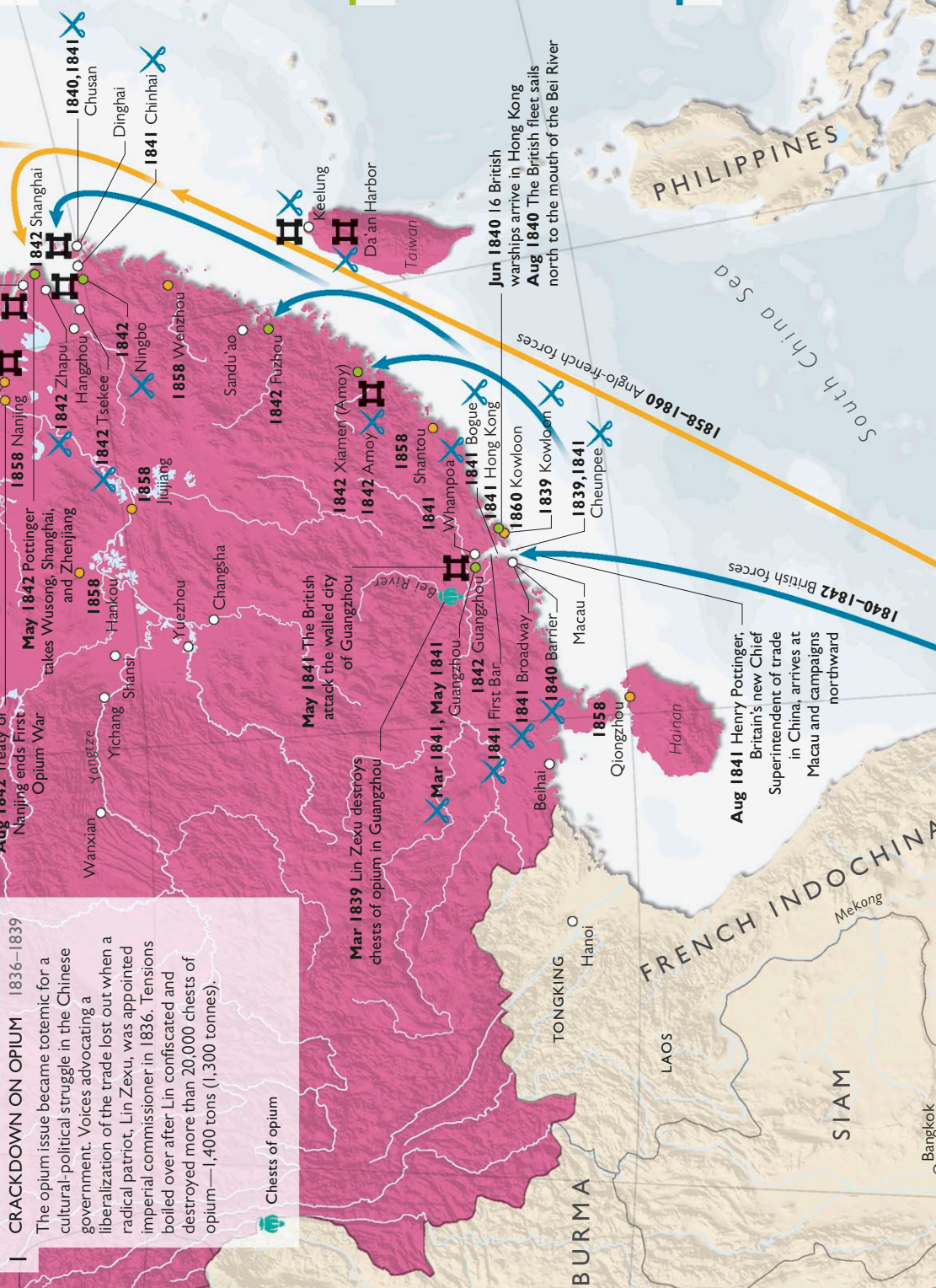




# 1 CRACKDOWN ON OPIUM 1836–1839

The opium issue became totemic for a cultural-political struggle in the Chinese government. Voices advocating a liberalization of the trade lost out when a radical patriot, Lin Zexu, was appointed imperial commissioner in 1836. Tensions boiled over after Lin confiscated and destroyed more than 20,000 chests of opium—1,400 tons (1,300 tonnes).

Chests of opium



▷ **Second Opium War**  
French and British forces landed at the mouth of the Bei River, prior to occupying the Taku Forts, a precursor to their occupation of Beijing.









# PROGRESS AND EMPIRE

THE HIGH POINT OF IMPERIALISM WAS REACHED IN THE PERIOD 1850–1914, BUT THE WORLD'S GREAT POWERS WERE ON AN INEXORABLE PATH TOWARD GLOBAL CONFLICT.





△ **Unequal world**  
Poverty was rife in many cities, as this photograph of a child in Paris from 1900 illustrates.

# CITIES AND INDUSTRY

Industrialization shaped every aspect of life in the 19th century. It not only affected where and how people lived, and how they traveled and communicated with each other, but also helped shape public health, politics, and people’s attitudes.

Industrialization became a global phenomenon in the second half of the 19th century. Where the industrial advances at the end of the 18th and beginning of the 19th centuries had predominantly benefited Britain (see pp.212–215), the development of heavy industry based on coal, iron, and steel, and the transport revolution of the mid-19th century, reshaped the world.

As western Europe, Japan, Russia, and the US all began to industrialize rapidly from 1870, they experienced huge social, cultural, and population

to find gold in the US, Canada, South Africa, and Australia contributed to the creation of a world in which all but a few currencies were convertible to gold. The gold standard—a monetary system that backed paper money with gold—in turn facilitated international trade, stimulating new markets for industrial products and creating a period of great financial stability. The people made rich by industrialization sought new avenues for investment, feeding a wave of imperial activity that saw Africa carved up by the European nations, the ancient Chinese Empire come under threat, and Latin America brought within the spheres of influence of Britain and the US.

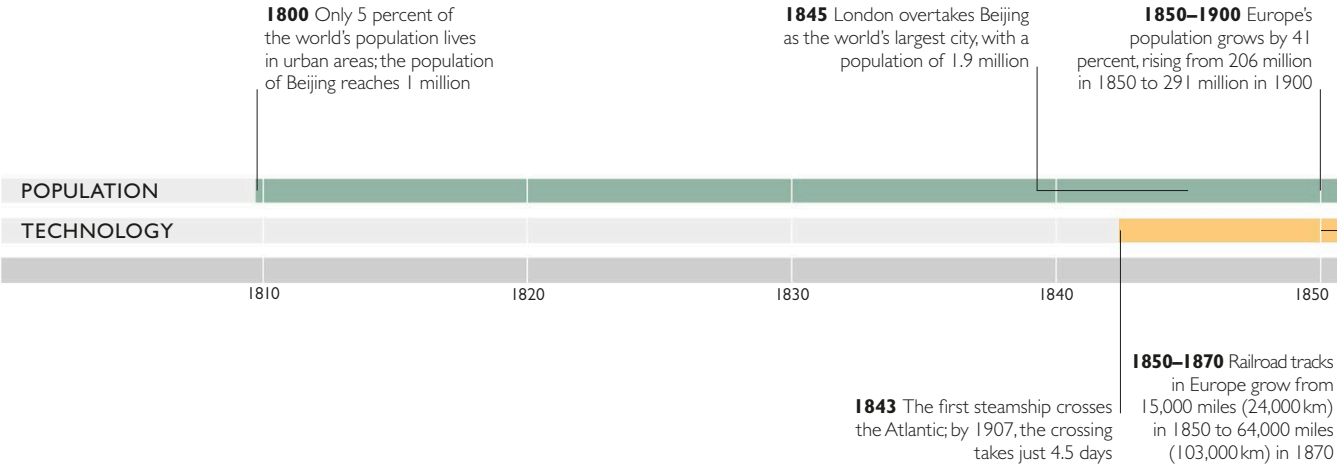
changes. The world’s population grew as land reform and modern farming methods—the utilization of chemical fertilizers, steel tools, and steam-powered machinery—helped sustain more people. Millions moved from the countryside into the cities seeking employment and opportunities. In 1800, 5 percent of the world’s population lived in urban areas; by 1925, that figure had reached 20 percent, and in the industrialized regions of Europe and the US, 71.2 percent of the population lived in cities. Millions took advantage of the improved transportation offered by oceangoing steamships to migrate overseas (see pp.238–239). The immigrants who traveled



△ **New horizons**  
In this photograph from 1906, immigrants crowd the decks of an Atlantic liner as it approaches Ellis Island—the gateway to a new, better life in the US. Third-class passengers would remain at Ellis Island until they passed health and legal checks.

**The modern city**  
Society developed in multifarious ways in the 19th century—industrialization fueled the gap between the rich and the poor but also created a middle class comprising lawyers, doctors, businessmen, merchants, civil servants, shopkeepers, and clerks. While a generation of tycoons became wealthy on the back of industry and investment, in the cities where their workers lived, poverty, pollution, and diseases—such as dysentery, tuberculosis, rickets, and cholera—were rife. Work itself involved long hours in hazardous conditions, and many

**CITIES OF THE INDUSTRIAL AGE**  
The technological developments of the 19th century brought with them profound changes in the size and distribution of the world’s population. There was a shift away from rural to city life in the industrialized West. Europe outdid Asia for the first time in terms of the number and size of its cities. The population grew rapidly, particularly in Europe. Modern transportation meant that the overspill from Europe’s cities could move easily to the high-rise cities in the US.







#### < Cleaning up

British engineer Sir Joseph William Bazalgette (top right) surveys work on London's sewers. His sanitation systems transformed public health in cities around the world.

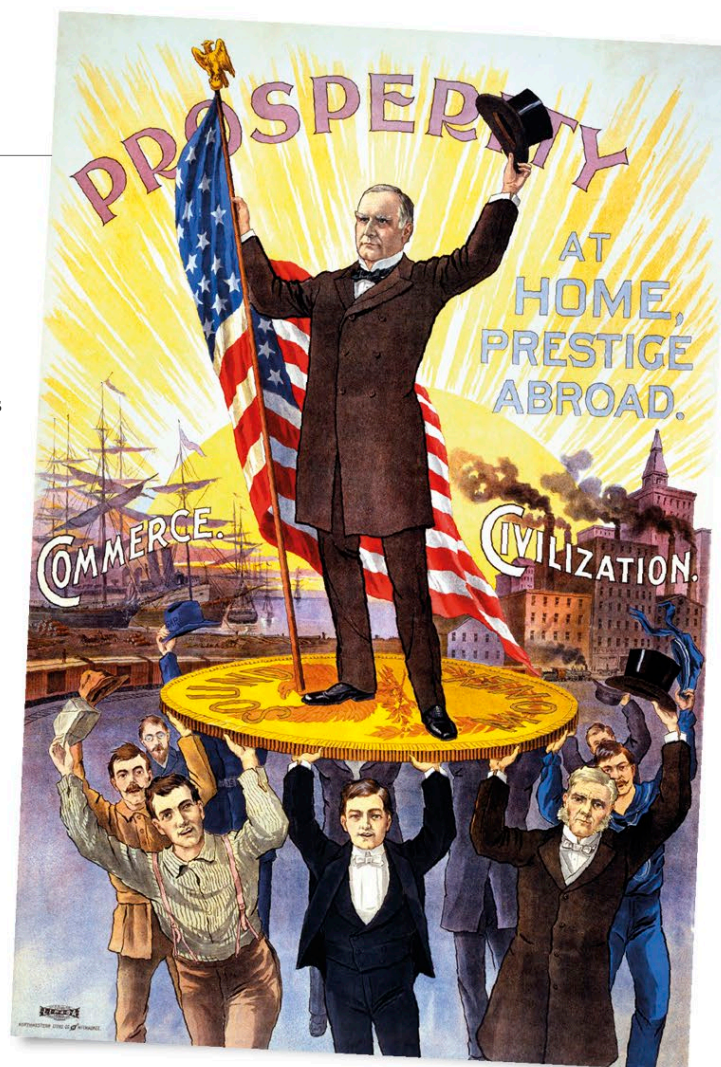
children had to work. Yet the cities also provided the means to combat this inequality and solve some of the ills of industrialized society. Migrants from rural areas and other countries arrived into a melting pot of social classes and ethnic backgrounds. Social and religious taboos broke down, and the exchange of ideas gave rise to movements for social change. Various workers' unions came into existence campaigning for better pay and improved working conditions. The demands for suffrage for both men and women also began to increase. Charitable organizations proliferated as both wealthy philanthropists and Christian societies such as the Salvation Army sought to meet the city populations' physical and spiritual needs. A deeper understanding of poverty combined with political activism ensured that by the 20th century, Germany and Britain—the most industrialized nations—had in place the beginnings of a welfare system that would care for the elderly and the sick.

By then, industry and the wealth it generated had also begun to solve some of the practical problems of city life. Steel construction made high-rise living and working a reality; steel-framed buildings provided a way for offices and accommodations to be erected swiftly and made the

best use of limited space by reaching upward. The development of modern sanitation—the use of iron tanks and steam-powered pumping stations—saved city dwellers from the horrors of diseases such as cholera. Underground transportation meant that workers could move swiftly around the city, and connections with the railroads meant they could escape the city for the suburbs. The speed and breadth of technological change in the 19th century was unprecedented, and even the telecommunication revolution of the 20th century could not match the impact of industrialization on modern society.

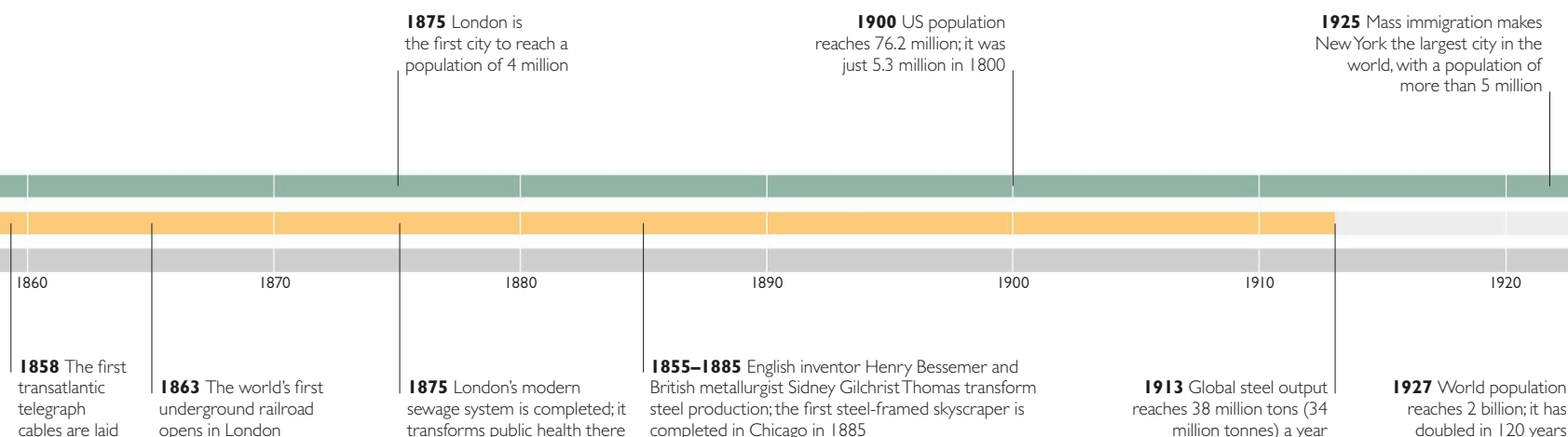
*"It is from the midst of this putrid sewer that the greatest river of human industry springs up ..."*

ALEXIS DE TOCQUEVILLE, FRENCH HISTORIAN, FROM *VOYAGES EN ANGLETERRE ET IRLANDE* (JOURNEYS TO ENGLAND AND IRELAND), 1835



#### △ Gold rush

A presidential election poster from 1900 shows US President William McKinley held aloft on a gold coin, celebrating the prosperity of the Gold Standard era.

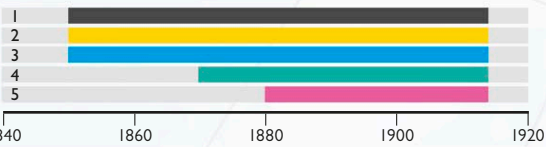




THE INDUSTRIALIZATION OF EUROPE BY 1914

Concentrations of the natural resources necessary for industrialization—such as coal and iron—allowed for rapid development in places like France, Germany, and Russia. Topography and the lack of these resources meant that Spain, Greece, Scandinavia, and the Balkans were left behind or largely restricted to more traditional industries, such as silk production.

TIMELINE



KEY

- Mountain/wasteland
- Agriculture and stock rearing
- Forest
- Industrial area
- Major port
- Frontiers 1914
- MANUFACTURING INDUSTRY
  - Cotton
  - Linen
  - Wool
  - Silk
  - Machinery
  - Shipbuilding

5 THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE 1880–1914

Only after the emancipation of the serfs in 1861 was Russia able to produce enough food to sustain an industrial workforce. Work started on the Trans-Siberian Railway in the 1890s, and foreign investment funded factories in St. Petersburg, Moscow, and the Donbass region. By 1900, Russia was the world's fourth-largest steel producer.





#### 4 THE RISE OF GERMANY 1870–1914

Germany made rapid progress following unification in 1871. Chancellor Bismarck's economic policies created a secure environment for investment, and the country benefited from the settlement from France after the Franco-Prussian War (1870–1871). Plentiful coal from the Ruhr Valley helped to fuel the developing steel, chemical, and electrical industries.

Jan 1905 Moscow is crippled by strikers protesting the working and living conditions and the lack of political reform in Russia



1869 Donetsk company is founded by British businessman John Hughes, who builds steelworks and several collieries in the region

△ World's Fair  
This poster for the 1900 World's Fair in Paris, France, trumpets the achievements of the industrialized world, such as the Trans-Siberian Railway.

1890s Branobel, set up in Azerbaijan, becomes one of the largest oil producers in the world

#### 3 SOUTHERN EUROPE LEFT BEHIND 1850–1914

Politics, geology, and poverty conspired against southern Europe in the 19th century. In Spain, progress in the mining and steel industries was hampered by the country's dependence on subsistence farming and cultural pressures against entrepreneurship. A lack of iron and coal made industrialization hard in Italy. Only the advent of hydroelectric power late in the century brought much progress, and then only in the north.

# INDUSTRIALIZED EUROPE

From 1850, Britain's position as the unchallenged leader of industrialization was threatened as other countries, notably the US and Germany, began to modernize. The industrializing nations of this second revolution pioneered technologies that helped change the world.

In 1851, Great Britain held the Great Exhibition, a showcase of the achievements of British industry, at the Crystal Palace in London's Hyde Park. It marked the pinnacle of Britain's industrial dominance. Britain's success had been built on the mechanization of the textile industry and leadership in the iron industry. But, by 1850, much of northern Europe was catching up, building factories and developing their own exploitation of mineral resources, such as coal and iron. In the second half of the 19th century, social and political changes in Germany, the United States, Russia, and Japan sparked a new wave of industrialization, and the industrial balance shifted in their favor. World industrial output from 1870 to 1914 increased at an extraordinary rate: coal production rose by 650 percent; steel by 2,500 percent; and steam engine capacity by over 350 percent.

This second industrial revolution brought significant innovations in engineering and science: the internal combustion engine, petroleum, communication technologies, armaments, and chemicals all played a part. It also brought new opportunities for the wealthy nations of the West to extend their influence through investment and control of industrial knowledge. However, the developed nations of the late 19th century also had to contend with an increasingly educated and informed urban working class, ready to fight for their rights to better living and working conditions.

#### EMPIRE AND INDUSTRIALIZATION

The pace of industrialization was, in many countries, determined by the interests of colonial powers. In South America, European investment helped to build railways and shipyards to facilitate exports of coffee and meat. In India—which was both a source of raw materials and a market for Britain's industrial goods—the British saw little to be gained from industrialization.

#### KEY

- Major industrial regions c. 1914
- ⚙ Heavy machinery
- ⚒ Iron and steel
- 🧶 Textile production





# SOCIALISM AND ANARCHISM

Socialist ideas of common ownership of resources and production had a long history. However, socialism developed as a political theory in the 1840s; it spread across the world in several forms, including a variant taken up by anarchists.



△ **Fathers of socialism**  
A statue of Karl Marx (left) and Friedrich Engels stands in the Marx-Engels Forum, a public park in Berlin, Germany.

In 1848, German thinkers Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels published *The Communist Manifesto*, suggesting that workers would inevitably revolt against capitalists and move toward communism—public ownership and control of production and resources.

The ideas quickly spread. At a meeting in London in 1864, an influential federation of labor groups called the First International was founded. In 1871, the Paris Commune created the world's first, albeit short-lived, socialist government. By 1872, socialists were divided over how to achieve their aims.

While moderates developed political parties to work within the parliamentary system, radicals turned to anarchism—a philosophy that deems all governments unnecessary. Anarchism took many forms; some were peaceful, but others came to be associated with terrorism. By the early 1900s, anarchists had bombed several western cities and assassinated King Umberto I of Italy and US President William McKinley.

## A revolutionary direction

Socialism took another path in Russia when Vladimir Lenin proposed that workers needed a Revolutionary Party to lead them to communism. In 1922, Russia formed the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR)—a socialist state that finally collapsed in 1991.



△ **Violent display of anarchy**  
A contemporary illustration shows the anarchist Leon Czolgosz shooting US President William McKinley while the president greets visitors at the Pan-American Exposition in Buffalo, New York, on September 6, 1901. The president died 8 days later.





**Paris's Bloody Week**

This print shows Paris burning after the French National Guard set fire to the Paris Commune's headquarters on May 24, 1871. More than 20,000 supporters of the Commune were killed in the "Bloody Week."





1 CANAL CONSTRUCTION 1825–1914

The Industrial Revolution fueled a boom in canal building that created thousands of miles of new inland waterways and dramatically reduced journey times along the world's trade routes. The Panama and Suez Canals were impressive feats of engineering, but costly; over 5,000 workers died constructing the \$375-million Panama Canal, and 120,000 died building the \$100-million Suez Canal.

 Major Canals

**1858** First transatlantic telegraph cable laid between Ireland and Newfoundland  
**1866** The SS *Great Eastern* steamship lays a second, more reliable cable

2 THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH 1844–1914

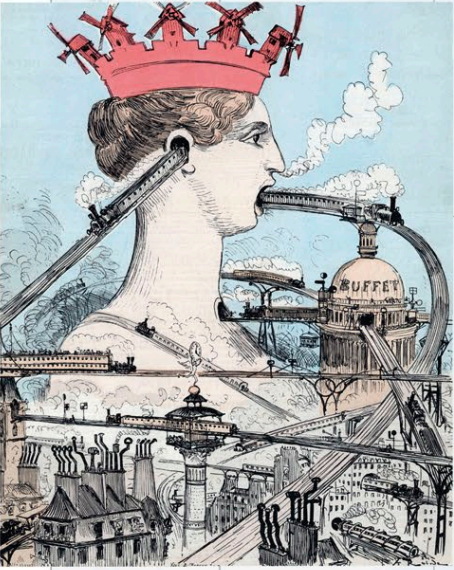
The electric telegraph allowed messages to travel hundreds of miles. Undersea telegraph cables revolutionized global communication. The first, laid across the Atlantic, cut the time for a message from Europe to reach the US from days to hours. Poor reception on the first cable meant that messages were transmitted at 0.1 words a minute. Undersea cables soon connected the world.

 Underwater telegraph cable route

3 MASS TRANSIT IN THE CITIES 1863–1914

In January 1863, London became the first city to run trains underground. The network transported 38,000 passengers on its first day alone, and its success prompted other cities to develop their own. The underground trains boosted the economy by introducing a more efficient way to transport increasing numbers of workers across the cities.



 Underground train systems



◀ **The Paris Metro**  
This French cartoon from 1886 mocks plans for an above-ground railway system in Paris; the city's underground railway opened in 1900

4 THE ADVENT OF OCEAN-GOING STEAMSHIPS 1830–1914

Steamships crossed the Atlantic from the early 1830s. Improvements to ships and their engines in the middle of the century increased the distances they could travel before recoaling, reducing journey times. Steamships were larger and could carry more cargo and passengers, making long-distance trade far more profitable.

 North Atlantic shipping route  
 Other shipping routes

5 TECHNOLOGY AND EXPORT 1876–1914

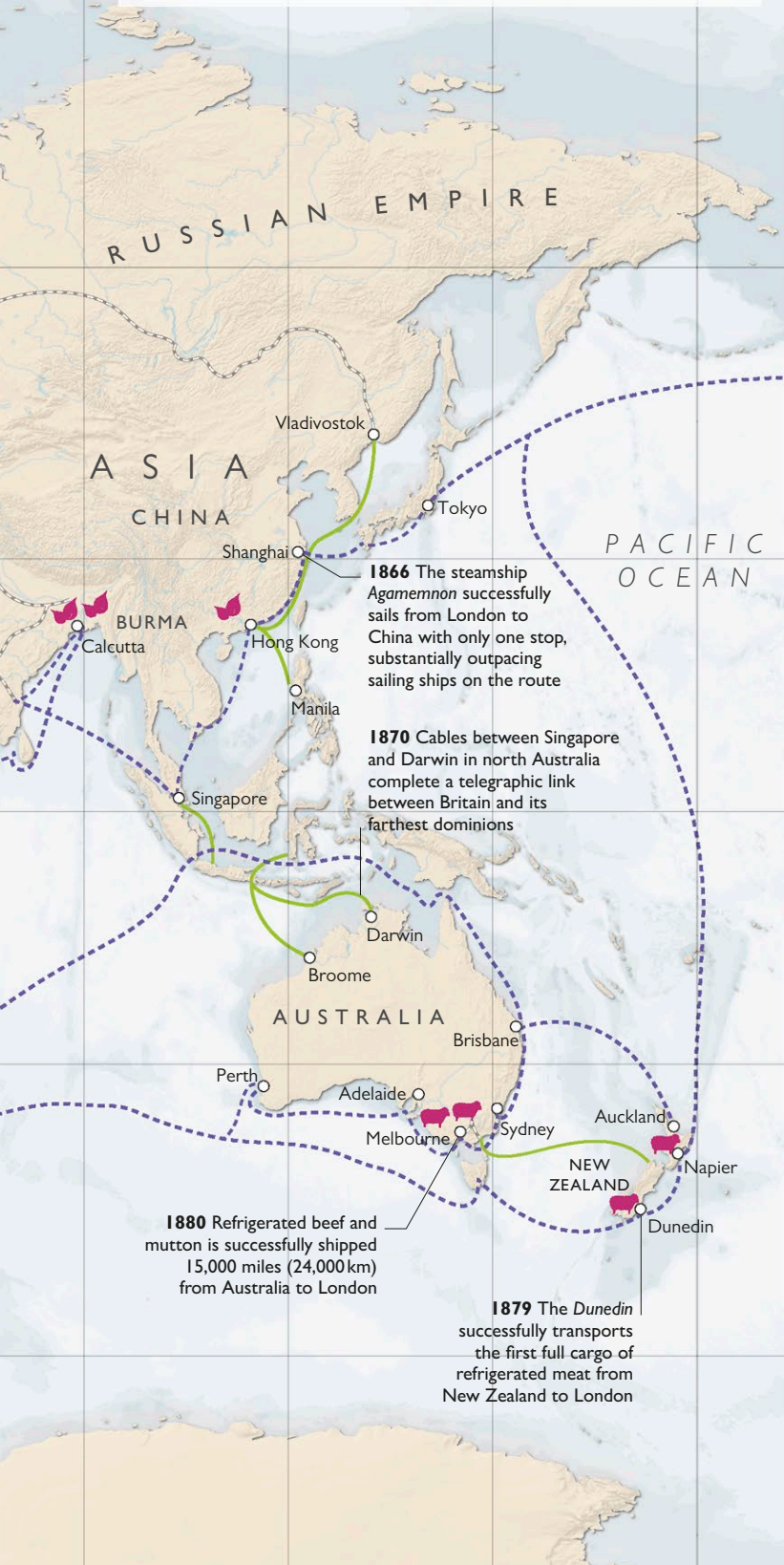
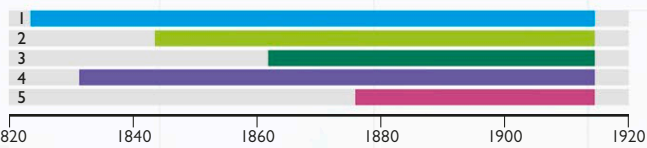
New, refrigerated ships and the spread of railways opened up new export markets. Cattle raised in America or Australia and New Zealand were sent by train to processing plants on the coast, from which ships carried the meat around the world. Refrigeration also boosted fruit exports, giving rise to the “banana republics” of Central America.

 Major rail networks c.1914  
 Lamb and mutton  
 Beef cattle  
 Fruit  
 Tea



**THE IMPACT OF ADVANCES**

Technological advances in shipbuilding, electric telegraphy, mass transit, canal construction, the railways, and refrigeration contributed to the economic revolution in the 19th century, helping create a worldwide trading system.

**TIMELINE**

# TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS

In the 19th century, transport and communications were transformed. In turn, they transformed the world's economy by improving productivity in the cities, speeding up intercontinental communication, and increasing trade profits. Developments in refrigeration and the railways created new export opportunities.

Advances in technology made the world a much smaller place. The sailing ships that had, for centuries, plied the long-distance routes around the globe gave way to steamships capable of carrying more cargo more quickly and profitably. In the 1830s, steamer journeys across the Atlantic took 17 days. Continued steam engine improvements made the ships even faster and by 1910, transatlantic journey times had been reduced to just 5 days. The shortcuts provided by the great Canals built during the 19th and early 20th centuries allowed ships to bypass notoriously dangerous passages like those around the Cape of Africa and the

tip of South America. And as journeys became less risky, insurance costs came down and profits increased further. By the end of the 19th century, even the farthest-flung corners of the world were participating in the global economy. Once refrigeration had been mastered, frozen beef, lamb, and mutton from as far afield as New Zealand and the tip of South America, along with fruit from South Africa and Central America, were crossing the oceans to feed the hungry workforces of Europe's and North America's industrial cities. Electric telegraphy and mass transportation systems ensured that the wheels of commerce in the cities turned smoothly.

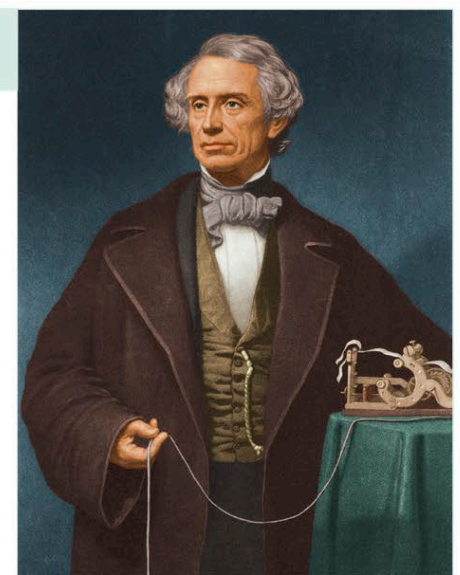
*"Cunard's liners and the electric telegraph, are ... signs that ... there is a mighty spirit working among us."*

CHARLES KINGSLEY, FROM HIS NOVEL YEAST (1851)

**SAMUEL MORSE**

1791–1872

A successful artist born in Massachusetts in 1791, Samuel Morse began working on improving electric telegraphy in the 1830s after hearing about the newly invented electromagnet on a ship home from Europe. Morse's design used a single telegraph wire to send messages. He created a system for encoding messages, known as Morse Code, using short and long electrical signals to represent letters. These signals were then sent along the wire to a stylus operated by an electromagnet that embossed the code onto a moving paper tape. He completed America's first electric telegraph line in 1844.





# MASS MIGRATIONS

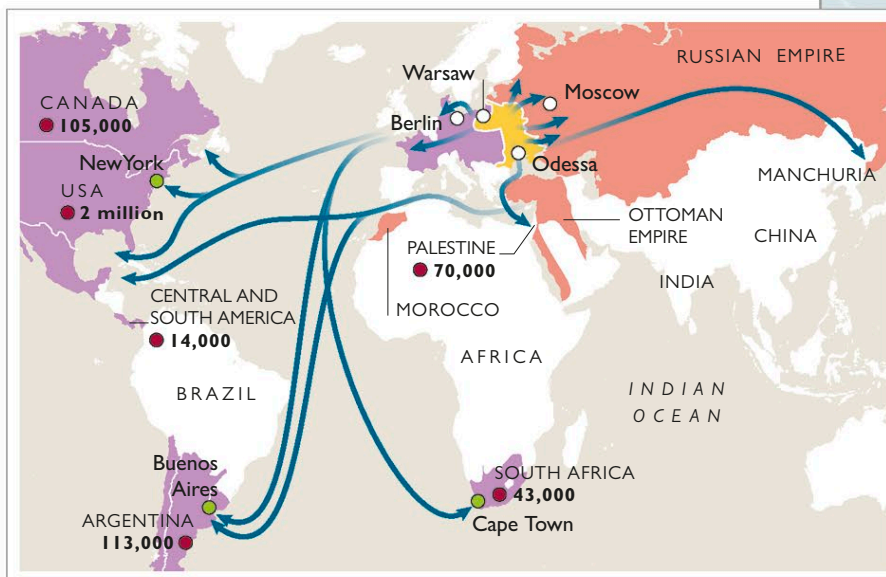
In the 19th century, millions left their home countries in search of stability, freedom, and employment. As they left the Old World behind, flowing out from Russia, Europe, China, and India, the younger countries of the Americas and Australasia saw their populations boom.

The political, social, and economic changes wrought by the Industrial Revolution, coupled with new forms of mass transportation, caused a huge surge in migration in the 19th century. Newly mechanized industries demanded a concentration of labor on a scale never seen before. A ready supply of migrant labor was to be found among those fleeing economic hardship in Europe, India, and China. And with political upheaval and anti-Semitism in central Europe and the Russian Empire swelling the ranks of those seeking a new life, more than 80 million people left their country of origin in the 19th and early 20th centuries.

Many headed for the rapidly industrializing coastal regions of the United States, due to the end of the Civil War and the opening up of Native American land to new settlers. The emerging economies of South America drew millions from southern Europe, and hundreds of thousands were attracted by the promise of riches in the gold rush towns of Australia, Canada, and South Africa. That so many could travel so far was a result of the advances brought by the Industrial Revolution: the railroads, faster and safer ships, and new routes through the Panama and Suez Canals.

▷ ***The Last of England, 1855***  
This painting by the English artist Ford Madox Brown shows the apprehension on the faces of emigrants bound for an uncertain future in the gold fields of Australia.

▷ ***The Last of England, 1855***  
This painting by the English artist Ford Madox Brown shows the apprehension on the faces of emigrants bound for an uncertain future in the gold fields of Australia.



## THE AMERICAN DREAM 1800–1914

Over 50 million migrants traveled to North America in the 19th century, the majority of them to the United States, as wave after wave left their homes for the economic opportunities and political and religious freedom offered by the “land of the free.” They initially came from northern Europe—Germany, Scandinavia, Britain, and Ireland—but from 1880, migrants from southern Europe, particularly Italy, began to arrive in large numbers.





## 2 INDENTURED LABOR 1833–1920

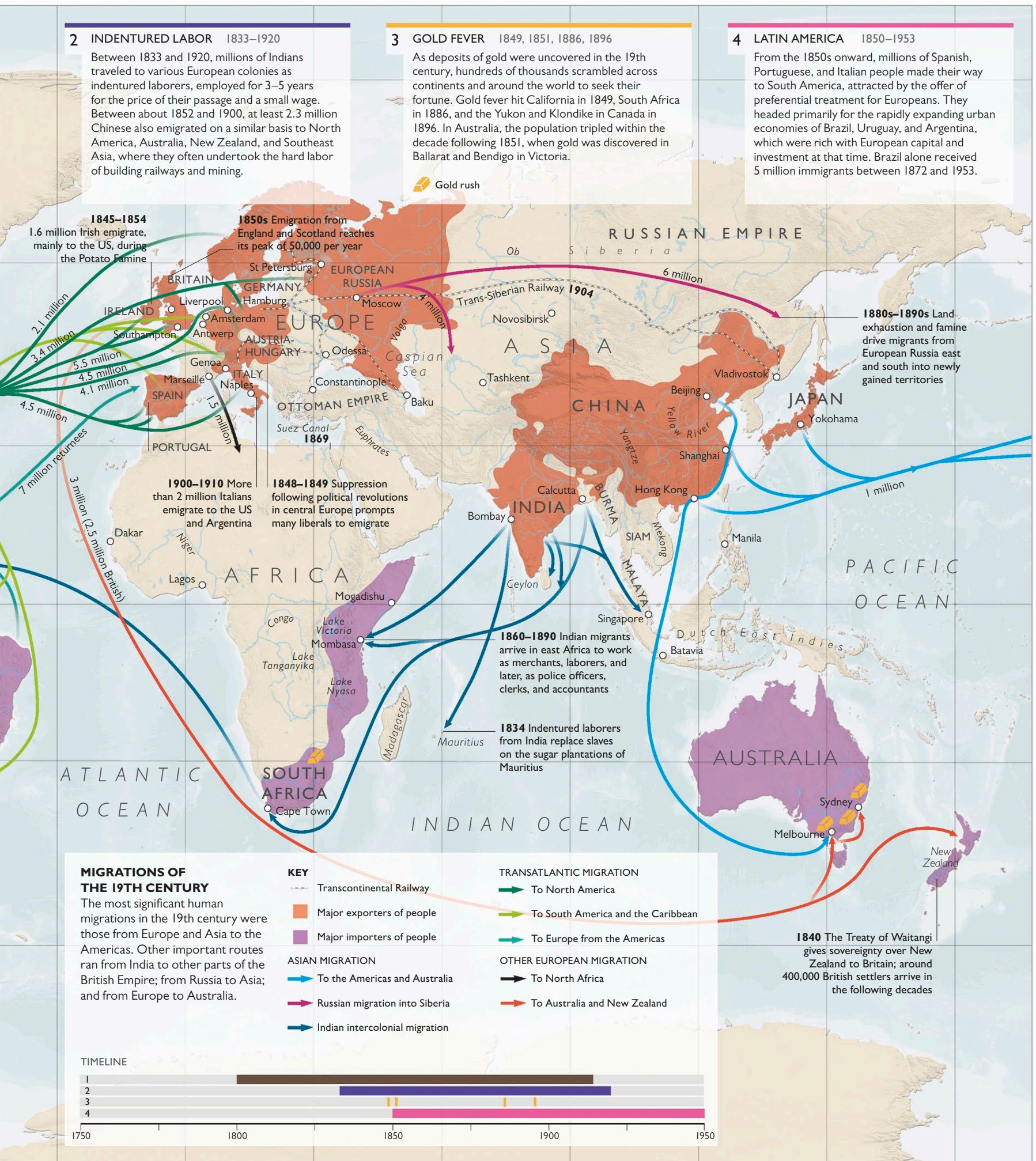
Between 1833 and 1920, millions of Indians traveled to various European colonies as indentured laborers, employed for 3–5 years for the price of their passage and a small wage. Between about 1852 and 1900, at least 2.3 million Chinese also emigrated on a similar basis to North America, Australia, New Zealand, and Southeast Asia, where they often undertook the hard labor of building railways and mining.

## 3 GOLD FEVER 1849, 1851, 1886, 1896

As deposits of gold were uncovered in the 19th century, hundreds of thousands scrambled across continents and around the world to seek their fortune. Gold fever hit California in 1849, South Africa in 1886, and the Yukon and Klondike in Canada in 1896. In Australia, the population tripled within the decade following 1851, when gold was discovered in Ballarat and Bendigo in Victoria.

## 4 LATIN AMERICA 1850–1953

From the 1850s onward, millions of Spanish, Portuguese, and Italian people made their way to South America, attracted by the offer of preferential treatment for Europeans. They headed primarily for the rapidly expanding urban economies of Brazil, Uruguay, and Argentina, which were rich with European capital and investment at that time. Brazil alone received 5 million immigrants between 1872 and 1953.







△ **Ravaging their colonies**  
Contemporary cartoons frequently satirized the plundering nature of imperialism. In this American cartoon from 1885, Germany, England, and Russia grab pieces of Africa and Asia.

# THE AGE OF IMPERIALISM

In the 19th century, forces of imperialism reshaped the world, as nations sought to gain control of overseas territories that would provide valuable resources, space for growing populations, and power in a competitive world.

The middle of the 19th century witnessed a dramatic shift in European overseas expansion. For centuries, European activities overseas had been dominated by trade and the creation of a chain of staging posts, by which the riches of the East could be brought to Europe. However, this changed in the 1870s. Countries everywhere scrambled to annex new territories and strengthen their control over existing colonies, and new nations competed with the old colonial powers. By 1900, the world was largely imperial, setting the stage for World War I.

### Reasons for imperialism

The shift from colonialism to imperialism was largely driven and facilitated by industrialization (see pp.232–233), which required vast amounts of raw materials. Imperialism gave nations control over raw materials, access to labor and huge new markets, and plenty of investment opportunities.

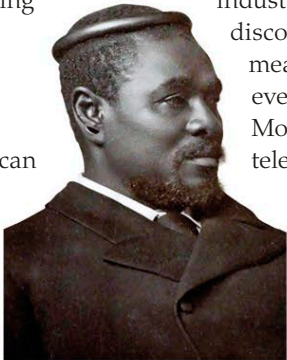
The colonies offered ample chances for those hoping to make their fortune, and some countries—mainly Britain and France—needed space for their growing populations. The desire to become a “Great Power” also nudged many countries to expand. European countries were keen to reassert themselves or carve out new identities. Britain hoped to recover its stature after losing its American colonies, France wanted to rebuild its power, and Russia continued its push eastward into the weakening Qing Empire in China. From the 1860s, the young nations of Germany, Italy, and the US sought to become world powers. Emerging from centuries of

isolation, Japan, too, was keen to gain access to the resources it lacked and living space for its people, while being painfully aware that it was itself vulnerable to imperialism.

In addition to the economic and political benefits of imperialism, there was also a belief in the superiority of the white man. As scientists sought to apply Charles Darwin’s theory of evolution to humankind, the perceived “advanced” state of Western society was used to justify imperialism. Many Westerners felt that they had a moral duty to Christianize “native” cultures. It was an attitude neatly summed up in Kipling’s 1899 poem “The White Man’s Burden,” which exhorted Americans to colonize the Philippines. It spoke of a white man’s moral obligation to rule the nonwhite peoples, or the “other,” and encourage their economic, cultural, and social progress.

### Building empires

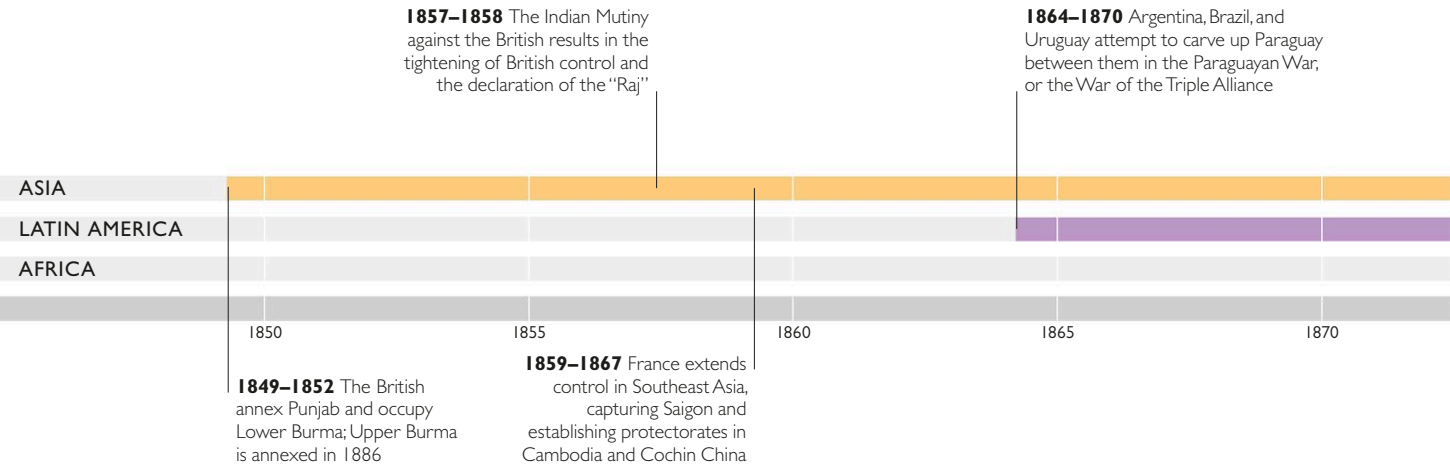
The huge empires built in the 19th century were largely made possible by the advances brought about by industrialization. Modern medicine, such as the discovery of quinine as a treatment for malaria, meant that Europeans could push farther than ever before into lands rife with tropical disease. Modern communications, such as railways and telegraph lines, allowed large areas to be easily



◁ **Resisting imperialism**  
Zulu chief Cetshwayo kaMpande led his warriors against the British in 1879. His defeat removed a major threat to British colonial interests in South Africa.

### THE IMPERIAL WORLD

Patterns of imperial activity varied around the world. While the colonization of Africa was marked by a scramble in which almost all major European countries took part, India and Southeast Asia were mainly dominated by the British and French, respectively. The decaying Qing Empire provided easy pickings for Japan and Russia. While Britain and the US sought to bring Latin America within their spheres of influence, Latin American countries also embarked on their own expansionist ventures.







#### ◁ Soft imperialism

Built with British expertise, using British materials, the Retiro Railway Station in Buenos Aires is an example of how imperial influence extended beyond official colonies through cultural, financial, and industrial means.

controlled. New mechanized weaponry made it possible to suppress local resistance; this also meant that brutality was a frequent companion of imperialism.

Even countries that were not directly colonized came under the influence of imperialist nations. For example, in Latin America, political and economic intervention helped secure American and British influence in the region. Cultural influence helped the imperialist nations to embed their lifestyles and aspirations both in their colonies and beyond.

*"I am an anti-imperialist. I am opposed to having the eagle put its talons on any other land."*

MARK TWAIN, WRITER,  
NEW YORK HERALD, 1900

#### ▽ Military might

Japan destroyed Russia's Baltic Fleet at the Battle of Tsushima in 1905 during the Russo-Japanese War. Japan's victory was proof of her increasing military and imperial power and of Russia's growing weakness.



旅外艦隊大勝利之圖

**1876** Queen Victoria is proclaimed the Empress of India

**1884–1899** Germany creates German New Guinea after annexing territories in the Pacific

**1889–1896** Italy establishes its first colony in Eritrea but is kept out of Abyssinia by the armies of King Menelik II at the Battle of Adwa

**1895** France creates the federation of French West Africa, comprising eight territories

**1895–1898** The Venezuela Crisis—a border dispute between British Guyana and Venezuela—justifies US intervention in the region

**1904–1905** Japan defeats Russia to become the first non-European nation to defeat a great European power

1875

1880

1885

1890

1895

1900

1905

**1876** A scramble for Africa begins when Belgian King Leopold II begins colonizing Congo

**1884–1886** Germany acquires parts of southwest Africa, present-day Togo, and Cameroon. It agrees to share east Africa with Britain

**1894–1895** Japan gains control of China's Liaodong peninsula and annexes Formosa (modern-day Taiwan)

**1898** Victory in the Spanish-American War gives the US Cuba and Puerto Rico

**1899–1902** The Second Anglo-Boer War gives Britain control of South Africa, paving the way for the creation of the British Union of South Africa in 1910



# THE NEW IMPERIALISM

The 19th century saw a remarkable wave of imperial activity as freedom from war, the second wave of the Industrial Revolution, and the emergence of new countries fueled the land grab of most of Africa, the Pacific, and southern Asia among European powers.

In 1830, the European colonies were in retreat. The French, British, and Spanish had been swept out of the Americas in a wave of revolution. Only Russia, with its vast empire in north and central Asia, and Britain, holding Canada, Australia, and India, retained significant territory. However, conditions were ripe for the emergence of renewed imperial activity and new forms of imperialism.

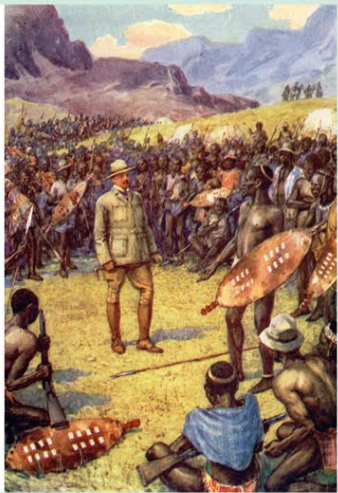
Britain made a cautious start. Many of its acquisitions—Singapore (1819), Malacca (1824), Hong Kong (1842), Natal (1843), and Lower Burma (1852)—were driven by a desire to secure the trade routes to the East Indies and protect its position in India. France acquired Algeria (1830s) and Tahiti and the Marquesas in the South Pacific (1840s), then gained a foothold in Indochina (1858–1859).

By 1870, Europeans had not yet penetrated Africa’s interior, and much of Indochina and China remained untouched, but this was not to last far beyond 1880, when the Second Industrial Revolution created a strong demand for raw materials and markets. By then, the unified countries of Germany and Italy—along with the US and Japan—were eager to challenge the older colonial powers. In the last 20 years of the century, the European nations carved up almost all of Africa, while in Asia, the weakness of the Qing Dynasty allowed the French, British, Russians, and Japanese to extend their influence deep into China. Between 1880 and 1914, Europe added 8.5 million square miles (20.7 million sq km) to its overseas possessions, and Britain and France ruled more than 500 million people between them.

## OVERCOMING RESISTANCE FORCE AND TRICKERY IN THE COLONIES

Colonists faced almost constant pressure from local uprisings. In Indochina, for example, the French were engaged in a guerilla war from 1883–1913. Brute force was the usual response—the Herero rising against the Germans in Southwest Africa in 1904 ended in genocide—but trickery played a part, too, as Cecil Rhodes showed when in 1888, he deceived King Lobengula into signing away mining rights for his territory in Matabeleland.

**Cecil Rhodes with the Matabeles**  
Rhodes, prime minister of Britain’s Cape Colony, confronts the Matabele in this contemporary illustration.





## 2 EAST AND SOUTHEAST ASIA 1850–1895

Agrarian unrest in China in the 1850s led to rebellion and famine (see pp.252–253), and Western powers were quick to exploit the internal dissent. France and Britain extended their influence deep into China (see pp.226–227), but they faced competition from a rapidly modernizing Japan and Russia. To the southeast of the region, the British expanded into the tin- and rubber-rich lands of Malaya, while the French gained control of Indochina.

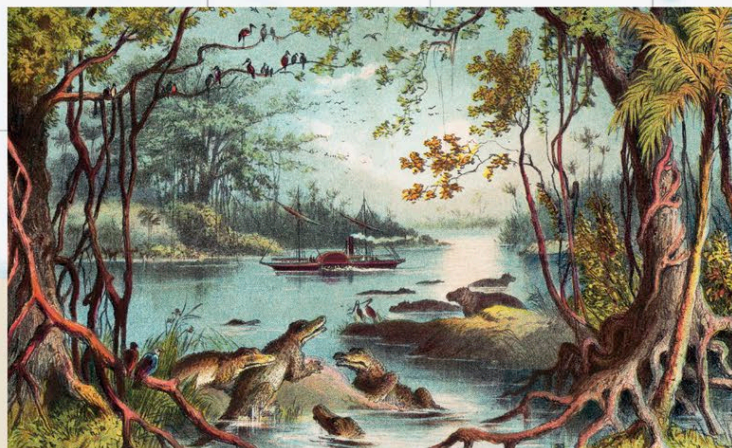
## 3 AFRICA 1876–1900

In 1850, Africa was a patchwork of kingdoms, mostly unknown to Europeans. But in the 1880s, the “Scramble for Africa” began (pp.248–249) with the exploitation of the Congo by Leopold II of Belgium, who ran the country as a private fiefdom. Other European nations raced to secure territory, raw materials, and new markets. Colonization brought the Europeans into conflict not only with the indigenous populations but also with one another. By 1900, as much as 90 percent of Africa was in European hands.



## 4 INFORMAL EMPIRES 1870–1900

Financial investment, technical expertise, and control of critical resources such as coal, iron, and steel gave the more advanced, industrialized European countries huge influence over even those territories that they did not directly rule. Argentina in particular came within the sphere of influence of Britain's informal empire as British investment, engineers, and railwaymen flooded the country, securing Britain preferential trade agreements and changing the country both culturally and socially.



◀ **Zambesi Expedition**  
The European media reported on the bravery of explorers, such as the Scottish missionary David Livingstone, who navigated a steamship up the Shire River in 1858 and the Zambesi in 1860.



# RESISTANCE AND THE RAJ

In 1857–1858, a revolt by Indian soldiers threatened to force the British out of India. Instead, the British increased their control, creating the Raj under the direct rule of Queen Victoria.

Unrest was growing in India in the 1850s. Indians were worried about British expansionism and feared forced conversion to Christianity, suspecting that the British were trying to undermine traditional culture.

In 1857, a rumor spread among the sepoys (native soldiers) employed by the British. They came to believe that cartridges for the new Enfield rifles, which had to be opened with the teeth, were greased with cow or pig fat. This caused offense to both Hindus, who believed cows were sacred, and Muslims, who thought pigs were unclean. In spite of British reassurances that the cartridges were free from animal fat, the sepoys on parade at Meerut on May 10, 1857, refused to use them and mutinied.



△ Enfield rifle cartridges

Rumors about the fat used to grease the new Enfield rifle cartridges sparked a mutiny among India's sepoys, which developed into a wide-reaching Indian Revolt.

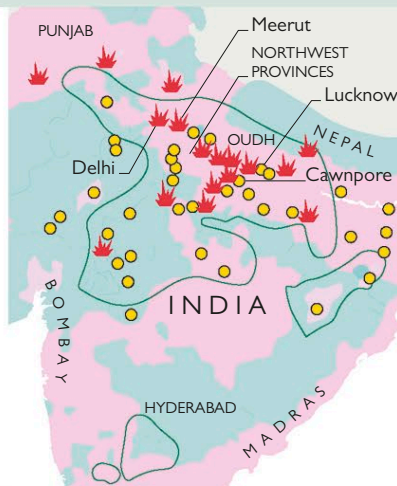
The mutiny quickly developed into a general revolt, spreading through Bengal, Oudh, and the Northwest Provinces as local princes, such as Nana Sahib and Lakshmi Bai, the Rani of Jhansi, tried to drive out the British. After atrocities on both sides, the British succeeded in quelling the rebellion by the end of 1858. Their position in India was totally changed. The East India Company was abolished, and the last ruler of the Mughal line, Bahadur Shah Zafar, was tried for treason and exiled, opening the way for direct rule by the British over India. The British Raj had been born.

## THE REVOLT OF 1857–1858

From Meerut, the mutiny soon spread to other sepoy regiments around India and to the general populace. Some princely states remained neutral or loyal to the British, while others seized the chance to rebel. The revolt remained largely centered in northern India.

### KEY

- British India
- Princely states
- Areas affected by the revolt
- Posts at which Indian troops mutinied
- Main centers of rebellion

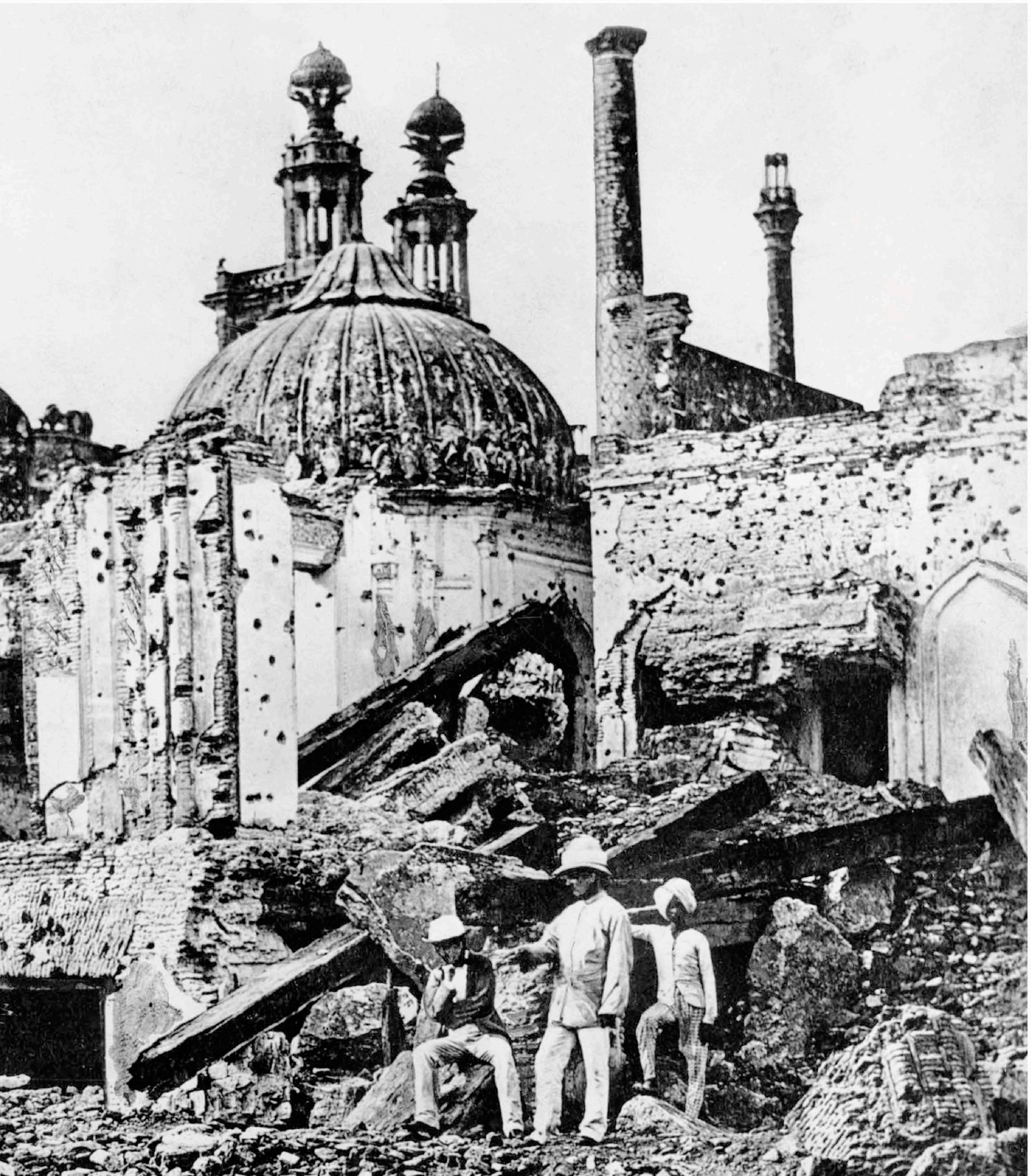


## The Siege of Lucknow

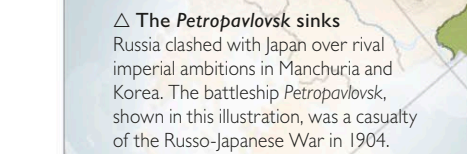
Part of the British administrative headquarters, or Residency, in Lucknow, the Chattar Manzil palace was besieged by rebel forces for several months. The siege was eventually broken by the British in March 1858.









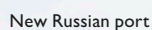


**1854–1855** The Siege of Sevastopol ends Russia's attempt to expand its territories in the Black Sea region

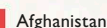
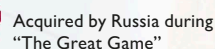
Russia first tried to find a sea passage from the Arctic to the Pacific Ocean. When this failed, it turned to conquering Siberia in order to gain access to the Pacific coast and to win control over its land, minerals, and fur trade. Military forays and massacres, as well as diseases brought in by Russian trappers and traders, subdued the indigenous peoples. By 1650, Russia had colonized the whole of north Asia. Russia then reached North America, where it founded colonies in Alaska (1784) and California (1812).

For centuries, the Swedish Empire and the Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth had limited Russia's western territory. However, the military reforms of two czars, Ivan V and Peter the Great, helped to bring much of Poland and Lithuania into the empire by 1795. Success against Sweden in the Finnish War (1808–1809) gave Russia the Grand Duchy of Finland. A final shuffle of Polish territories after the Napoleonic Wars (1803–1815) defined the western limits of the Russian Empire.

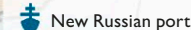
Under Empress Catherine the Great, Russia moved toward the Black Sea, securing the independence of the Crimean Khanate from the Ottoman Empire in the Russo-Turkish War (1768–1774) and then annexing it in 1783. By 1815, Russia had gained control of the entire northern shore of the Black Sea, and finally it had a warm-water port. Russia's attempt to occupy the Balkans, however, was swiftly suppressed in the Crimean War (1853–1856).



As Russia moved south and Britain moved north from its power base in India, a series of political and diplomatic confrontations known as “The Great Game” played out, as each side tried to expand its influence in Afghanistan and its surrounding countries. Ultimately, Afghanistan became a buffer zone, but Russia was able to annex the valuable lands of Bukhara, Khiva, and Samarkand.



From 1858, a weakening Qing Empire ceded Outer Manchuria to Russia—an area from which it had previously been excluded by the Treaty of Nerchinsk (1689). Russia founded Vladivostok, a relatively ice-free port and, in 1898, leased the Liaodong Peninsula from China, gaining the warm-water port of Port Arthur. Alarmed by Japan's growing interest in China, Russia occupied southern Manchuria but was defeated in the Russo-Japanese War (1904–1905) and abandoned its imperial ambitions in the area.







# RUSSIAN EMPIRE EXPANDS

From 1600, Russia set out on a mission to expand its territory. It conquered Siberia, reached North America, drove deep into central Asia, and gained a foothold in the Black Sea region. By the 19th century, Russia's sizeable empire had begun to alarm Europe.

In 1600, the Czarism of Russia spread from the Ural Mountains in the east to the edge of the great Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth in the west. It was, however, effectively landlocked; the Arctic Ocean was often frozen, and the Baltic Sea was controlled by Russia's enemy, Sweden. Consequently, Russia's expansion over the next 400 years was driven, to a great extent, by the search for a warm-water port that would allow it to house a fleet to rival the French and British navies and that would provide access to international trade.

Russia seized Siberia by conquest, but the growth of the empire was largely achieved by a process of accretion. Territories occupied by Russian migrants were slowly incorporated into the empire, and as the older powers—such as the Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth, the Ottoman Empire in central Asia, and the Qing Empire in China—weakens, Russia simply took over. Russia's attempts at more aggressive expansion in the Balkans, Manchuria, and to the north of Afghanistan met with varying degrees of success, and, in the end, the limits of Russia's empire were defined by other imperial powers.

*"Russia has only two allies: her army and her fleet."*

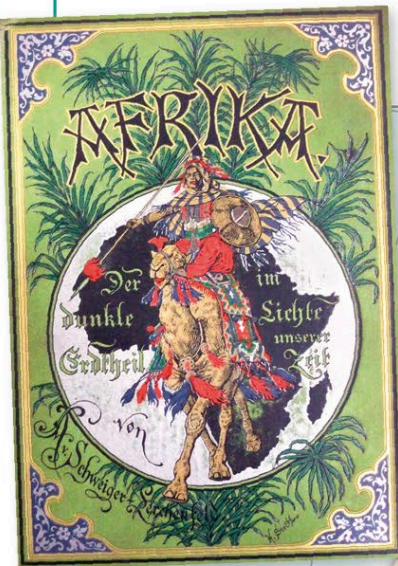
ALEXANDER III, EMPEROR OF RUSSIA, c. 1890

## IVAN IV VASILYEVICH 1530–1584

The Grand Prince of Moscow from 1533–1547, Ivan IV Vasilyevich (also known as "the Terrible") became the first czar of Russia in 1547. A brutal autocrat, his rule is considered to mark the beginning of the Russian Empire, as he set about bringing Russia's aristocracy under his autocratic rule and uniting their lands under a central administration. By the time of his death in 1584, Ivan had not only united Russia's princedoms but also conquered Kazan, Astrakhan, and parts of Siberia, setting the foundation for a vast empire that would span much of Europe and Asia.







### △ A view from Europe

The cover of this German book, published in 1886 (*Africa. The Dark Earth in the Light of our Time*), presents a highly romanticized view of African colonization to its European readers.

THE GAMBIA  
PORTUGUESE  
GUINEA

ATLANTIC  
OCEAN

1847 Resettled slaves from  
America declare Liberia an  
independent republic

### 5 RESISTANCE TO COLONIZATION 1896

European colonizers often met with resistance, most of which was brutally suppressed. Yet in Abyssinia, Emperor Menelik II was able to play the Europeans off against each other and secure modern weapons that allowed him to crush an Italian invasion at the Battle of Adowa in 1896 and keep Abyssinia independent of European control.

✕ Battle of Adowa

### THE SCRAMBLE FOR AFRICA

Europe's colonial settlements were at first centered on coastal Africa, but from 1880, colonists pushed inward, creating new settlements (dates of establishment in bold type) and frequently competing for territory with one another.

#### KEY

TERRITORIES c.1880

■ African peoples and powers  
■ French  
■ Portuguese  
■ British  
■ Ottoman Empire  
■ Spanish

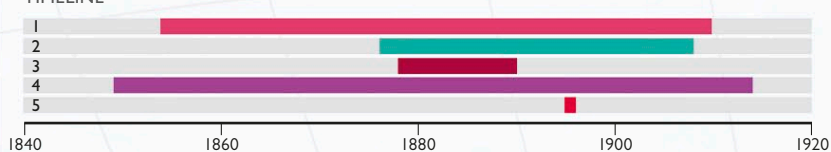
#### EUROPEAN ROUTES OF EXPANSION

→ Belgian  
→ French  
→ Portuguese  
→ Spanish  
→ British  
→ German  
→ Italian

#### COLONIAL SETTLEMENTS

▲ Belgian  
▲ French  
▲ Italian  
▲ Portuguese  
▲ British  
▲ German  
▲ Other settlement

#### TIMELINE



1884 A recently  
unified Germany  
gains its first colony,  
Southwest Africa

1882 Britain occupies  
Egypt and gains control  
of the Suez Canal,  
which provides quicker  
access to India

1904-1906 The  
Herero rising  
against German  
colonists ends in  
genocide

1884 A recently  
unified Germany  
gains its first colony,  
Southwest Africa

1884 A recently  
unified Germany  
gains its first colony,  
Southwest Africa



# AFRICA COLONIZED

In 1880, only a few European colonies dotted the African coastline. Much of the north was formally part of the Ottoman Empire, but most of Africa was free of direct control from outside. By 1914, nine-tenths of the continent had been divided between seven nations, each hungry for resources and keen to build their empires.

The shifting balance of power in Europe in the 19th century was to have lasting consequences for Africa, as nationalist, liberal, and commercial interests converged in an orgy of colonization. Having lost their American colonies, Spain and Portugal also lost influence in Africa, but Britain and France were ready to build their empires after the Napoleonic wars, and the newly unified nations of Italy and Germany sought to bolster their international standing. Tales from African explorers about diamonds, gold, copper, and coal stirred Europe's commercial interest, so when news reached Europe in the 1880s that the Belgian king, Leopold II, had made a grab for the Congo, the race to conquer Africa's interior began.

Competition between the colonizers nearly resulted in conflict, so the Berlin Conference (1884–1885) was called to settle claims and set rules for partition. Missionaries, companies, and military forces all played a part in the colonization process, but it was also made possible by technological and scientific advances that came out of the Industrial Revolution. Steamships—and the discovery of effective antimalarial treatments—allowed Europeans to navigate deep into the continent’s interior. The weapons of local peoples were no match for the breech-loading rifle, and within 20 years, Africa had been carved up by European powers with little regard for the traditions of the indigenous peoples.

#### 4 THE ROLE OF MISSIONARIES 1849–1914

In 1849, Scottish missionary David Livingstone headed for Africa. His expeditions made him a hero, and his assertion that slavery in Africa could only be ended through “Christianity, Commerce, and Civilization” sparked a wave of missionary activity. Some provided valuable health and education services, but others colluded with the companies to defraud local chiefs of their lands.

Frontier of Christian missionary activities c. 1880

➡ Main lines of missionary advance

### 3 THE CALL OF COMMERCE 1878–1890

Africa was commercially attractive because it was a huge market for European manufactured goods; it had vast reserves of raw materials—including coal, metal ores, rubber, gold, and diamonds; and it had plentiful labor to raise cash crops. Many early conquests were funded by commercial interests, such as Cecil Rhodes' de Beers Consolidated Mines company (formed in 1888).

## IMPORTANT MINERAL DEPOSITS

 Coal
  Diamonds  
 Copper
  Gold

## 2 LEOPOLD II AND THE CONGO 1876–1908

The scramble for Africa began with King Leopold II of Belgium. In 1876, he created the International African Association—a front for his imperial ambitions. He drew the explorer Henry Stanley (who had spent years exploring the Congo basin) into a secret scheme to carve out a Belgian state in the region. By 1885, Stanley had secured for Leopold the Congo Free State (1885–1908).

... Stanley's route across Africa 1871–1877

## THE STRUGGLE FOR SOUTH AFRICA 1854–1910

In the 19th century, the Boers, British, and Zulus fought for control of South Africa. Since 1852, the Boers (descendants of the first European settlers) had lived independently in the Orange Free State and Transvaal, while British power was concentrated in Cape Colony and Natal. In 1877, the British annexed Transvaal after gold was found there. At the same time, they decisively crushed the Zulu kingdom. In 1910, after two Anglo-Boer wars (1880–1881, 1899–1902), Transvaal (by then, the South African Republic), the Orange Free State, and the Zulu lands were subsumed by a new British dominion—the Union of South Africa.

**Cape Colony and Natal 1854**

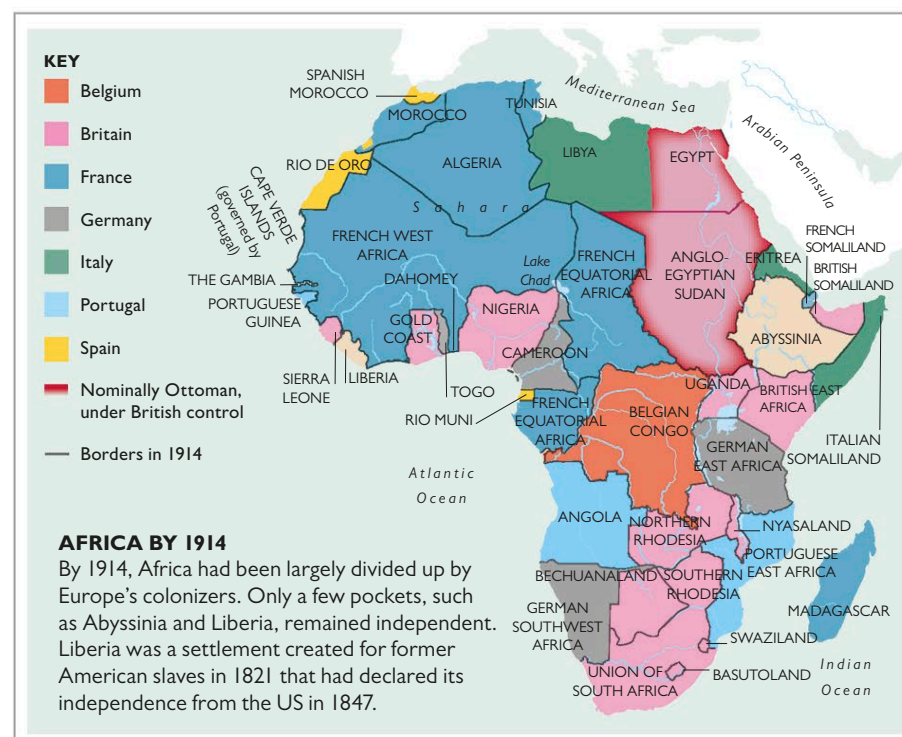
Territory under British control 1895

■ South African Republic 1895

Orange Free State 1895

- ✕ Battle in Zulu wars

— Union of South Africa boundary 1910





# FOREIGN POWERS IN CHINA

By the mid-19th century, the Qing Empire in China was facing internal strife, as well as pressure from foreign powers. Anger against growing foreign dominance erupted in the Boxer Rebellion, but it was swiftly repressed by a coalition of foreign forces. The subsequent war reparations crippled the empire.

Two hundred years of Qing rule had created a vast empire that flourished economically. Foreign traders were granted access to only one port, Canton (modern Guangzhou), but requests for further concessions were rebuffed.

Western merchants began to bribe officials and pay for goods with opium, which damaged the Chinese economy and led to a rise in opium addiction. The First Opium War (see pp.226–227) resulted in the transfer of Hong Kong and other ports to Britain, and over the next decades, parts of the empire fell under the influence of Britain, France, Russia, Germany, Japan, and the US.

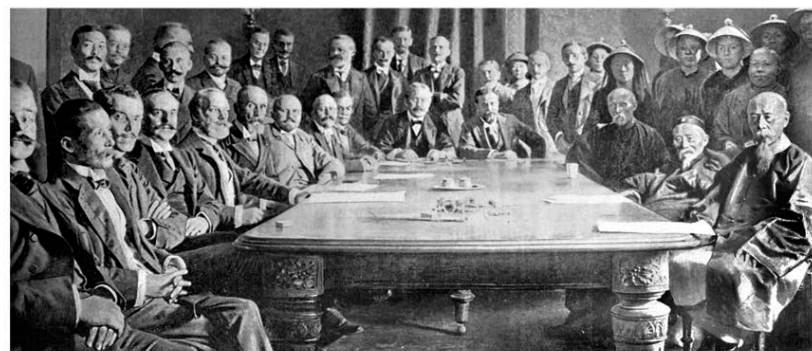
## The Boxer Rebellion

By 1900, anger at foreign control of trade and at Christian missionary activity made many Chinese join a secret group known as the Society of Righteous and Harmonious Fists. Popularly called “Boxers,” its members began attacking Westerners and Chinese Christians.

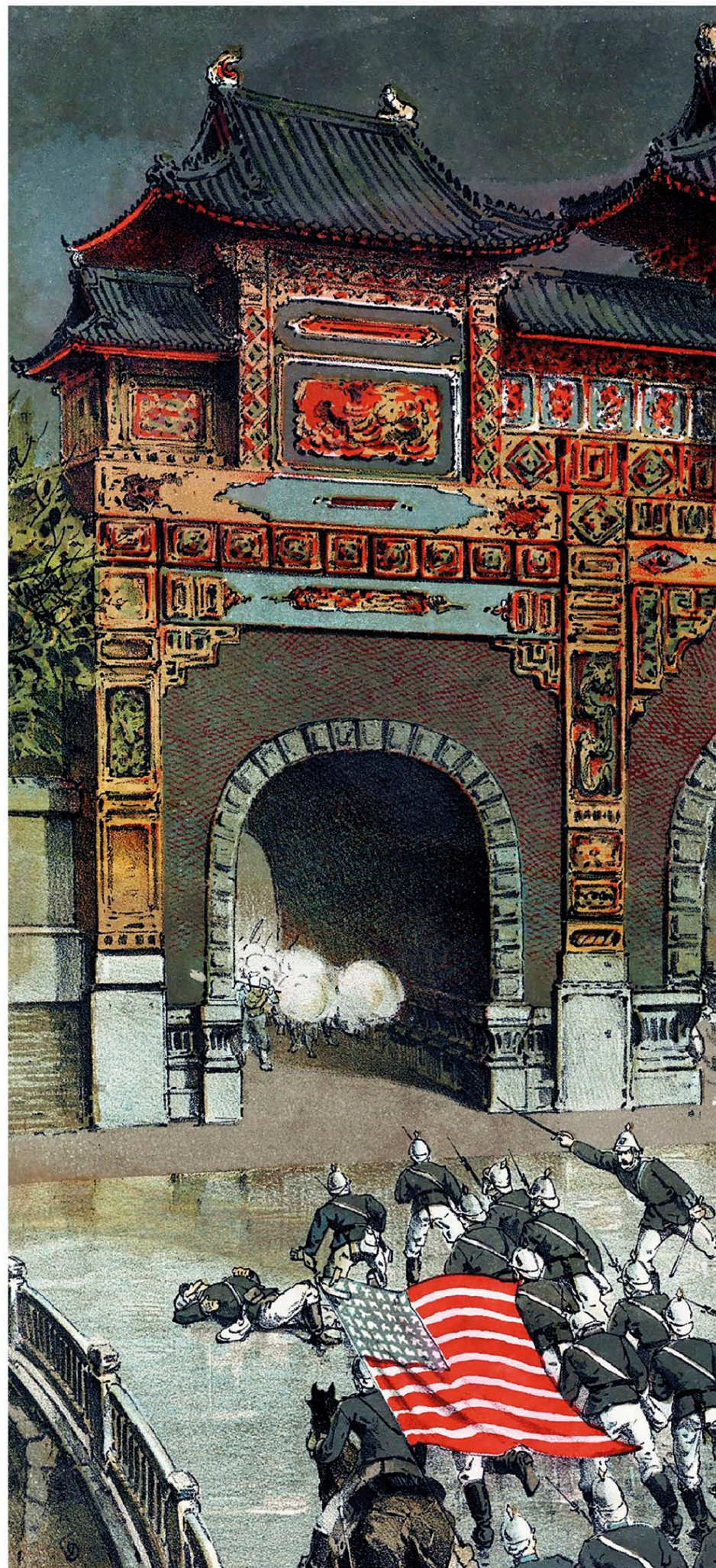
In June 1900, Qing forces and the Boxers besieged the foreign legations in Peking (Beijing). Soldiers from an eight-nation alliance lifted the siege 55 days later, and then demanded war reparations. Damaged by its failure to expel the foreigners and by internal rebellions, the Qing Dynasty could not prevent further losses to foreign powers or stop the spread of revolutionary ideas. In 1912, the last emperor abdicated and China became a republic.



△ **Assassination of Baron Ketteler**  
In revenge for his having beaten and shot a boy suspected of being a Boxer, German diplomat Baron Clemens von Ketteler was murdered in Beijing on June 20, 1900. His assassin was later beheaded.



△ **The Peking Protocol**  
Having defeated the Boxers, the foreign powers demanded in the Peking Protocol (1901) that China punish the government officials involved in the uprising, pay reparations equivalent to \$330 million, and allow foreign troops to be stationed there.





**Storming the Imperial Palace**

On August 14, 1900, a multinational force, including British, American, and Japanese soldiers, broke the siege of the Imperial Palace in Peking (modern Beijing) by Qing forces and Boxer rebels.





# DECLINE OF QING CHINA

The richest and most populous state in the world, Qing China should have been a major presence on the world stage competing with Western powers. Instead, however, it underwent a long decline from the mid-1800s, racked with rebellions and civil wars and repeatedly carved up by foreign military adventures.

The Qing Dynasty was founded by a clan of Manchurians who had seized the Chinese empire and, under a series of forceful emperors (see pp.178–179), enlarged it with conquests in central Asia. But their failure to modernize had exacerbated a series of problems that afflicted China in the 19th century, including population growth and the constant threat of famine; problems with the money supply; failure to open the economy to foreign trade; and failure to keep pace with the technology and military power of foreign states that wanted to impose trade liberalization, and possibly even carve up China between themselves (see pp.250–251).

The humiliations inflicted as a result of the Opium Wars (see pp.226–227) had severely damaged the authority of the Qing and centralized government. In the resulting power vacuum, there flourished corruption, smuggling, and “secret societies”—networks of local leaders and low-ranking nobility with diverse cultural, political, and economic agendas. The threat of rebellion was relentless, and the ground was fertile for mass movements to galvanize resistance to the Qing. This feverish atmosphere would spark the greatest civil war in history and eventually bring to an end the Qing Dynasty and millennia of imperial rule.

*“Heaven sees as the people see; Heaven hears as the people hear ... China is weak, the only thing we can depend on is the hearts of the people.”*

DOWAGER EMPRESS CIXI DURING THE BOXER REBELLION, 1899–1901

**PUYI**  
1906–1967

The turbulent life of the last Emperor of China traced the history of 20th-century China. Puyi became emperor in 1908, aged only 2, but was forced to abdicate in 1912 as a result of the Xinhai revolution. He was briefly restored as puppet emperor by a warlord in 1917 and again by the Japanese in 1934. Later, he was captured by the Soviets, then handed over to the Chinese Communists after World War II and reeducated to be a common citizen. He died in Beijing in 1967.

**Emperor Puyi as a child**  
Puyi (seen here aged 3) was proclaimed the Xuantong Emperor by his great-aunt, the Dowager Empress Cixi.





△ **Imperial troops march against the Taiping**  
A contemporary image of imperial troops marching to battle against the Taiping rebels. The civil war set off by the rebellion was one of the largest conflicts the world had ever seen.

**1 OUTBREAK OF THE TAIPING REBELLION**  
1844–1853

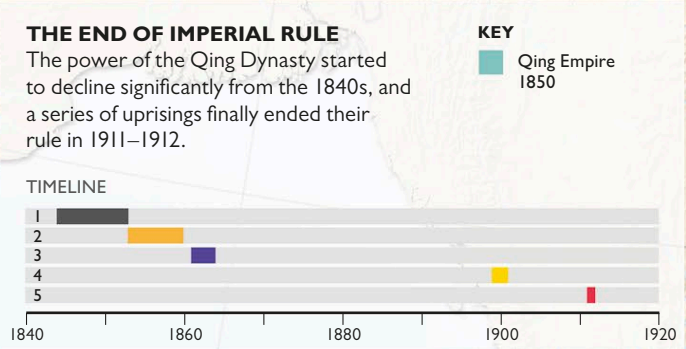
Hong Xiuquan was a quasi-Christian visionary around whom a cult grew in Guangxi province in the 1840s. In 1851, Hong proclaimed a new dynasty, the Taiping Tianguo (“Heavenly Kingdom of Great Peace”), and assumed the title of Tianwang, or “Heavenly King.” Shrugging off imperial assaults, his rebellion gathered strength and made Nanjing its capital.

⇒ Hong’s march to Nanjing 1850–1853

**2 THE TAIPING EMPIRE** 1853–1860

The Taiping Empire presented a challenge to the Qing, but infighting and failed military expeditions checked its momentum. In 1856, feuding between the Taiping’s top military leaders saw two of them murdered and a third flee with many men. An 1860 attempt to take Shanghai was stopped by the “Ever-Victorious Army,” Western-trained and led troops fighting for the Qing.

■ Area controlled by rebels c.1861      ➔ Unsuccessful northern campaign 1853–1855





### 3 FALL OF THE TAIPING 1861–1864

With the capture of Anqing in October 1861 by the Hunan Army (a local militia force fighting for the Qing), the revolutionary cause was doomed. In 1862, Imperial General Zeng Guofan surrounded Nanjing, and in July 1864, the city fell, ending the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom. Including those lost through famine, the greatest civil war in history had cost 25–30 million lives.

➡ Advance of Western troops

● Advance of Qing troops

#### 4 BOXER REBELLION 1899–1901

Economic woes, natural disasters, and growing anti-foreign sentiment sparked an uprising called the Militia in Righteousness (known as the “Boxers” in English). The Boxers killed foreigners and destroyed foreign property. The Qing supported the anti-foreign crusade, but some regional warlords cooperated with foreign powers to crush the uprising, which was ended when an eight-nation military alliance occupied Beijing.

Area of Boxer uprising 1900–1901

## 5 XINHAI REVOLUTION 1911-1912

In 1908, the Dowager Empress Cixi died, leaving the infant Puyi as emperor. Reformist and revolutionary movements then sought to harness domestic discontent. In 1911, the discovery of an anti-imperialist plot in Wuchang triggered open revolt, leading to the formation of a republican government under revolutionary leader Sun Yixian (Sun Yat-sen) in Nanjing and the end of imperial rule.

 Revolution 1911–1912

**Sep 1901** International forces defeat the Boxers in Beijing. China agrees to pay swingeing reparations, but US determination to protect its trade interests prevents other Western powers from partitioning China

**May 1853** The Taipings send an expedition to northern China. It reaches the neighborhood of Tianjin, but finally collapses in early 1855

 **Mar 11, 1912**

**Jul 1864** The Taipings are finally defeated by Qing troops under General Zeng Guofan. Hong, the Taiping's leader, had committed suicide in June.

**Dec 1911** A provisional republican government is set up in Nanjing, with Sun Yixian (Sun Yat-sen) as premier.

**Oct 1911** An anti-imperialist plot is uncovered among army officers in Wuchang, triggering them into an open revolt that quickly spreads, marking the start of the Xinhai revolution

- 1860** An attempt by the Taipings to regain strength by taking Shanghai is stopped by the Western-trained “Ever-Victorious Army” commanded by the American adventurer Frederick Townsend Ward

- **Oct 1861** Anqing, the capital of Anhui, is captured by the Hunan Army, severely damaging the Taiping revolutionary cause

**Sep 1851** The Taiping rebels establish a base in Yongan, where they are besieged by the imperial army but emerge victorious



# JAPAN TRANSFORMED

The restoration of the Meiji (“enlightened rule”) emperor in 1868 kick-started a process of modernization that would see Japan transformed from an isolationist, feudal country to an outward-looking industrial nation with an educated population and an army and navy ready to defend and strengthen its position in the world.

By 1850, Japan had endured 200 years of isolation under the Tokugawa shogunate (see pp.180–181). The country was weak compared to foreign powers and was forced to accept unfavorable treaties that undermined its sovereignty.

An alliance of samurai from Japan’s western domains began to coalesce around the imperial court in Kyoto, and by 1868 sought to restore imperial power and to modernize Japan. The shogun, Tokugawa Yoshinobu, resigned in an attempt to maintain peace but could not prevent the clash between imperial and government forces in the Boshin War of 1868–1869. The imperial faction won the conflict, securing the emperor’s position, although not his personal

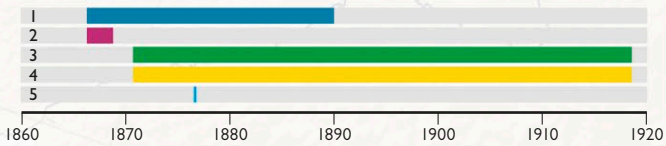
power. A group of ambitious young samurai took control of the country and soon began to implement profound reform. They asked the feudal lords to give up their domains in favor of a centralized state, placed the nation’s defense in the hands of a new imperial army and navy, and promoted rapid industrialization to transform Japan’s economic base.

It was little wonder that many of the older samurai from the most powerful clans balked at the changes and rebelled in 1877. The rebellion (known after its origin in Satsuma Domain) failed, but it forced a reassessment of reform, ensuring that Japanese values were not lost in the race to modernize.

## MODERNIZATION OF JAPAN

The modernization of Japan progressed swiftly between 1868 and 1918, as the new government swept away feudal structures and established power bases during the Boshin War and Satsuma Rebellion, paving the way for rapidly developing industrial areas and increasing urbanization.

### TIMELINE



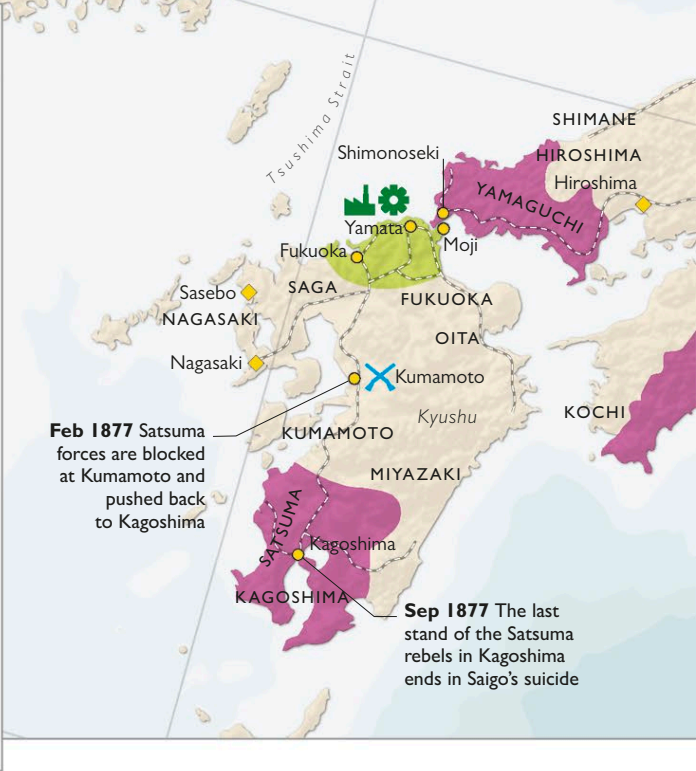
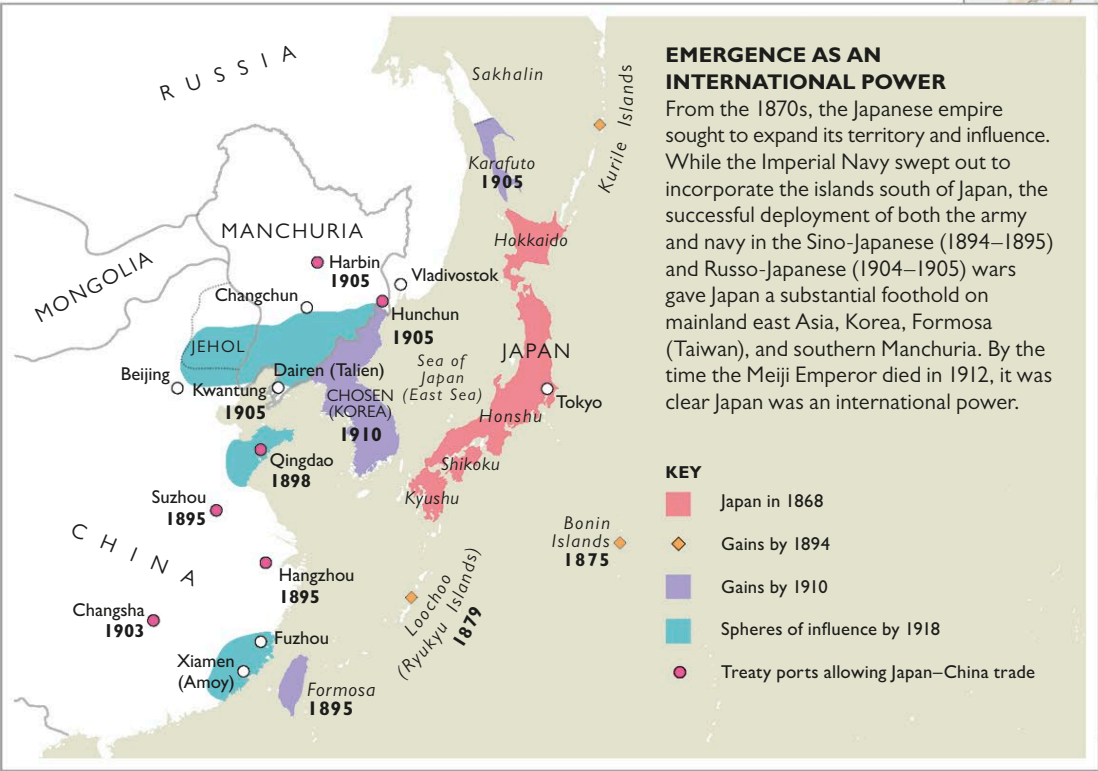
## 2 BOSHIN WAR 1868–1869

Civil war broke out between imperial forces and troops loyal to the ex-shogun, Tokugawa Yoshinobu, when Yoshinobu was stripped of all titles and land. The imperial troops won the war’s first battle, at Fushimi on January 27, 1868. They then moved east to secure Edo’s surrender, before heading north to Hokkaido to defeat the remaining government supporters at Hakodate in June 1869.

- Route of imperial army
- ✕ Battle, with date
- Imperial alliance

## 1 MODERNIZATION OF THE ARMY AND NAVY 1868–1890

The Meiji government’s determination to modernize the military cut across the privileges of Japan’s warrior class, the samurai. In 1869, their fleets were subsumed by the new Imperial Japanese Navy, and in 1873, their exclusive right to bear arms was broken by the introduction of conscription. Many samurai became officers in the new regime, where their discipline helped to create the most powerful military force in Asia by the 1890s.





### 3 INDUSTRIALIZATION 1871–1918

The abolition of feudalism in Japan freed millions of people to choose their occupation and move around the country. The government encouraged industrialization, building railway and shipping lines and telegraph and telephone systems, as well as opening mines; shipyards; and munitions, glass, textile, and chemical factories. Many of these were privatized when a European-style banking system was introduced in 1882, leaving the government free to invest in education and the armed forces.

#### MODERNIZATION UNDER THE MEIJI

■ Main industrial areas by 1918

— Railways built 1868–1918

#### TRADITIONAL INDUSTRIES

🏺 Ceramics 🧶 Textiles 🐛 Silk

#### INDUSTRIES DEVELOPED AFTER 1868

🏭 Manufacturing 🚢 Shipbuilding  
⚙️ Machine-building 🧪 Chemicals

### 4 URBAN GROWTH 1871–1918

By 1871, all of Japan's ancient feudal domains, loyal to the local lord, had been reorganized into prefectures, each with a chief executive answerable to the central government. Initially, Japan's urban prefectures—Tokyo, Osaka, and Kyoto—lost population as people adjusted to the new regime and migrated to other areas. However, by 1883, the work offered through industrialization was driving population growth in the urban prefectures and in emerging cities such as Kobe, Yokohama, Nagasaki, and Hiroshima.

◆ City of over 500,000 in 1918 ● Other major city  
■ City of over 100,000 in 1918

1871 Akita is one of the prefectures—the divisions of the new centralized state created when the feudal domains are abolished

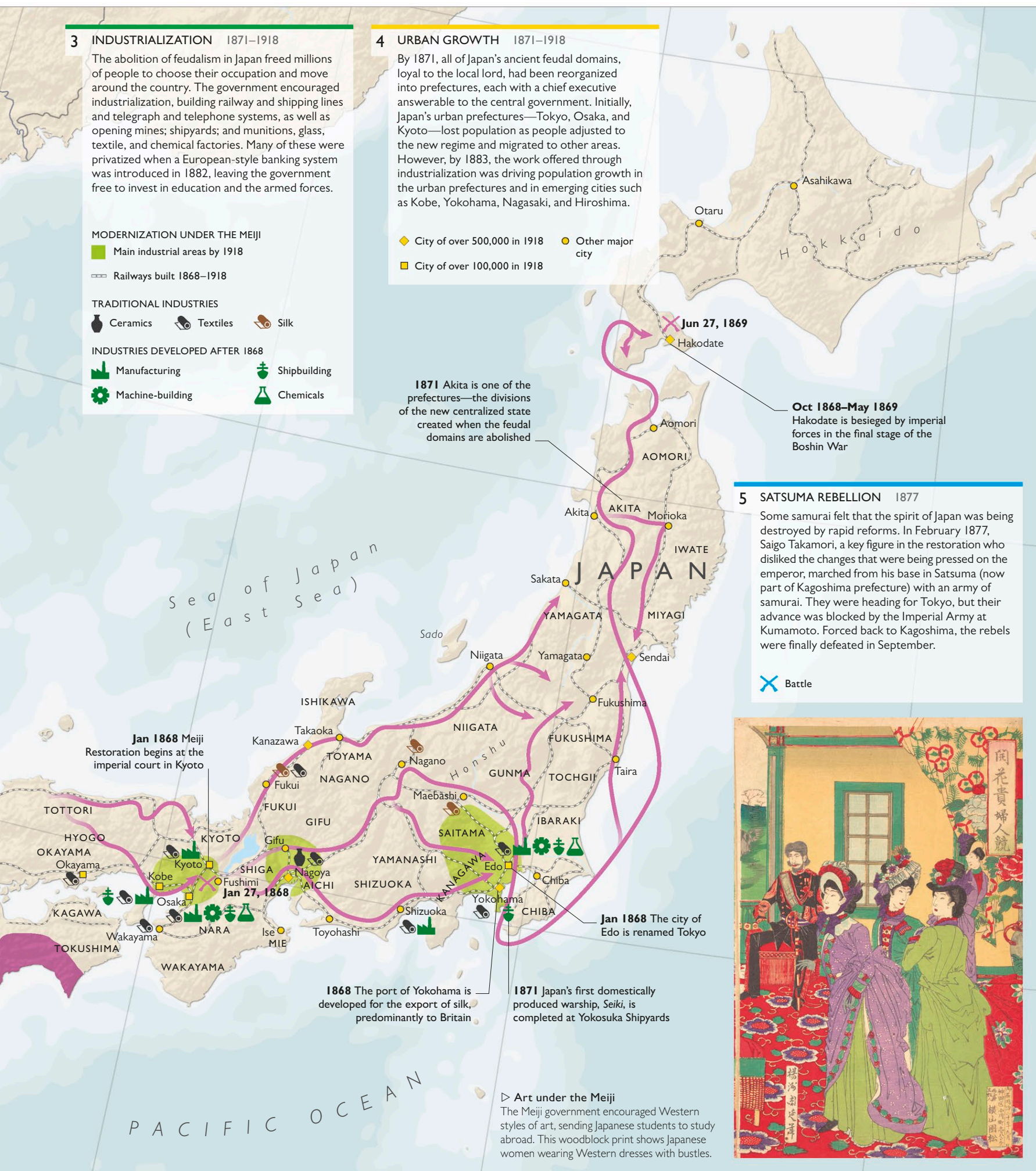
Jun 27, 1869  
Hakodate

Oct 1868–May 1869  
Hakodate is besieged by imperial forces in the final stage of the Boshin War

### 5 SATSUMA REBELLION 1877

Some samurai felt that the spirit of Japan was being destroyed by rapid reforms. In February 1877, Saigō Takamori, a key figure in the restoration who disliked the changes that were being pressed on the emperor, marched from his base in Satsuma (now part of Kagoshima prefecture) with an army of samurai. They were heading for Tokyo, but their advance was blocked by the Imperial Army at Kumamoto. Forced back to Kagoshima, the rebels were finally defeated in September.

✕ Battle



#### ▷ Art under the Meiji

The Meiji government encouraged Western styles of art, sending Japanese students to study abroad. This woodblock print shows Japanese women wearing Western dresses with bustles.





In 1861, angry at Lincoln's threat to end slavery, 7 states seceded from the Union, forming the Confederate States of America. Four more states followed later in the year. Disagreement about the legality of slavery in the US Territories led to irreconcilable differences between the Union and Confederate states.

Union states      Slavery legal

States seceding from the Union in 1861      US Territories

The Union army under General Ulysses S. Grant won a victory at Shiloh in April 1862 before seizing key points on the Mississippi, Tennessee, and Cumberland Rivers and moving south to take Vicksburg (July 1863) after a 6-week siege. New Orleans and the Confederate forts at the mouth of the Mississippi had also fallen; the Union had succeeded in splitting the Confederacy in two.

The Union army under General Ulysses S. Grant won a victory at Shiloh in April 1862 before seizing key points on the Mississippi, Tennessee, and Cumberland Rivers and moving south to take Vicksburg (July 1863) after a 6-week siege. New Orleans and the Confederate forts at the mouth of the Mississippi had also fallen; the Union had succeeded in splitting the Confederacy in two.

In April 1861, Confederate soldiers attacked the US garrison at Fort Sumter. In response, Lincoln called out the militia, and the Civil War began. An early Union victory at Manassas (July 1861) gave way to defeats to superior Confederate forces at Fredericksburg and The Wilderness. Union attempts to reach the Confederate capital at Richmond were also thwarted. Under General Robert E. Lee, the Confederates pushed into Union territory in Pennsylvania but were defeated at Gettysburg and retreated to Virginia.

In April 1861, Confederate soldiers attacked the US garrison at Fort Sumter. In response, Lincoln called out the militia, and the Civil War began. An early Union victory at Manassas (July 1861) gave way to defeats to superior Confederate forces at Fredericksburg and The Wilderness. Union attempts to reach the Confederate capital at Richmond were also thwarted. Under General Robert E. Lee, the Confederates pushed into Union territory in Pennsylvania but were defeated at Gettysburg and retreated to Virginia.



◀ **The Battle of Williamsburg**  
This 1893 print shows the first large-scale pitched battle in the eastern theater of the war. It took place in Virginia in 1862.

In the first phase of the war, neither side was decisively superior. However, a Union naval blockade affected the south's supplies, and, after capturing Vicksburg, the Union split the Confederacy, forcing it to fight on multiple fronts.

In the first phase of the war, neither side was decisively superior. However, a Union naval blockade affected the south's supplies, and, after capturing Vicksburg, the Union split the Confederacy, forcing it to fight on multiple fronts.



## NORTH VERSUS SOUTH

In two phases, 1861–1863 and 1864–1865, the north's Union forces moved on several fronts into the Confederate states. Although isolated by the north's naval blockade and often outnumbered, the Confederates won several victories but were ultimately beaten by the Union's superior power.

## KEY

## UNION FORCES

Union states 1861

Union naval blockade

Union fort

Union victory

Union movement

## UNION FRONT LINE

1861

1862

Dec 1863

Dec 1864

Inconclusive battle

Apr 26, 1865 Date of battle or attack

## CONFEDERATE FORCES

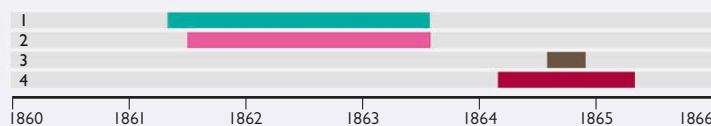
Confederate states 1861

Confederate fort

Confederate victory

Confederate movement

## TIMELINE



## THE CIVIL WAR

The American Revolution created the United States, but it was the Civil War of 1861–1865 that decided its future, forging a nation under one government and ensuring that freedom and equality remained its guiding principles, albeit at a terrible human cost.

After independence in 1783, the US developed into two regions. The rich, libertarian north was dominated by industry and finance, while the south relied on farming driven by slave labor and was anxious about the north's desire to restrict slave ownership. By 1860, the US—composed of 18 “free” states and 15 “slave” states—was just about held together by the Democratic Party, but after the party split in 1859, and Abraham Lincoln was elected president in 1860 on an antislavery platform, the Union collapsed. Several southern states seceded to form the Confederate States of America, and civil war followed. The Confederate armies put up fierce resistance, and it was 4 years before the north's forces finally prevailed. By the time the war ended in April 1865, about 650,000 men had died. Yet America's slaves had also been emancipated, and the states reunited under a supreme federal government.



## SECOND PHASE (1864–1865)

After defeats at Vicksburg and Gettysburg, the Confederates were increasingly outnumbered and outfought by Union forces under Generals Sherman and Grant. In April 1865, Confederate resistance collapsed, ending the war.

3 GENERAL SHERMAN'S ADVANCE  
JULY–DECEMBER 1864

In 1864, the Union targeted Atlanta, an important Confederate rail and commercial center, which General William Sherman besieged from July 1864. Its capture in September boosted the north's morale and helped win Lincoln a second term in office. Sherman then marched south to Savannah and the sea, operating deep in enemy territory without supply lines and destroying Confederate infrastructure, industry, and property as he went.

Destruction by Sherman's forces

## 4 THE END OF THE WAR FEBRUARY 1864–APRIL 1865

During 1864, General Grant was put in command of all Union armies. After a series of bloody battles, he forced General Lee's Confederate army into defensive positions around Richmond and Petersburg. On April 9, 1865, Lee fled to Appomattox and surrendered. Soon after, 89,000 Confederate soldiers surrendered at Bennett House, North Carolina, effectively bringing the war to an end.

Bennett House



**At home in her laboratory**

French-Polish physicist Marie Curie received two Nobel Prizes for her work on radioactivity. Renowned for her efforts at the front during World War I and for her research into cancer treatments, her contribution to medical science is invaluable.



# SCIENCE AND INNOVATION

In the 19th century, new techniques and improvements in laboratory equipment enabled scientists to make important advances that changed our understanding of the world and revolutionized public health.



**△ Founder of microbiology**  
In the 1860s, French biologist Louis Pasteur proved that decay and disease were caused by microbes, or germs; this knowledge changed the course of medicine.

The roots of many of the things that define modern life—such as plastics, fiber optics, and radar—can be traced back to the 19th century. Yet, perhaps the most important discoveries of the time were in the field of medicine. In 1869, Russian chemist Dmitri Mendeleev developed the periodic table, a framework for understanding chemical elements and their reactions. Knowledge of chemistry quickly advanced, creating a new pharmaceutical industry, and soon the use of synthetic drugs, such as aspirin and barbiturates, became commonplace.

## Medical breakthroughs

The discovery of X-rays (1895), radiation (1896), and the radioactive elements polonium and radium (1898) revolutionized medical treatment. Radiography made diagnoses more accurate, and radiation therapies were developed for cancer. Combined with the discovery of the electron (1897) and of the source of radioactivity (1901), these findings also paved the way for nuclear power. Louis Pasteur's theory that microorganisms were the transmitters of disease radicalized approaches to disease control. Vaccines for cholera, anthrax, rabies, diphtheria, and typhoid soon followed. Deaths from infection were much reduced by the introduction of carbolic to disinfect both operation theaters and surgeons. Together, these advances contributed to a population explosion in the early 20th century.



## Safer surgery

Building on Pasteur's work, English surgeon Joseph Lister introduced carbolic acid (phenol) to clean wounds and sterilize surgical equipment. His promotion of antiseptic surgery dramatically reduced postoperative infections.



# EXPANSION OF THE US

US territory grew in the 19th century through the agencies of war, political agreement, and annexation. Settlement by migrants helped bring new areas into cultivation, while rapid industrialization from the 1870s fueled urbanization and population growth.

In 1800, the borders of the United States reached only to the Mississippi River, but the next 100 years saw a swift westward expansion as Britain withdrew its claim on Oregon Country and the US annexed Texas and defeated Mexico in the war of 1846–1848. By 1900, the country stretched from the Atlantic to the Pacific and covered an area of almost 3 million sq miles (7.8 million sq km).

The promise of cheap land attracted immigrants from abroad who settled alongside American frontiersmen and women. In 1890, the US Census declared the frontier closed—there were no longer any continuous unsettled areas in the west. By then, America’s cattle barons were driving their herds to railheads that supplied growing cities in the east, where industrialization was taking hold. By 1900, the US was producing more steel than Britain and Germany combined. Cities such as Chicago—just a small town in 1837—had grown into metropolises of more than 1 million people. New York’s Ellis Island had become a key entry point for millions of migrants to America’s vast cities. The industrial boom of the late 19th century made millions of dollars for a few, but it was punctuated by periods of depression that boded ill for America’s rapidly growing population.

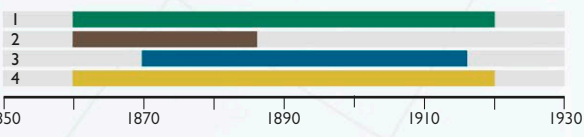
## IMMIGRATION AND TRADE IN THE US 1860–1920

Cattle, oil, industrialization, and immigration drove the development of the largest American cities in the 19th century, creating heavily urbanized areas in the Midwest and on the Pacific coast.

### KEY

— US state boundaries c. 1920

### TIMELINE



△ Railroad construction crew

This image from 1886 documents one of the many crews employed on the US rail network. The first transcontinental railroad, covering nearly 2,000 miles (3,200 km), was built by three private companies in 1869.

1882 Chinese immigration into the US is banned after anti-Chinese sentiment spreads from San Francisco during the economic depression of 1877

FROM CHINA

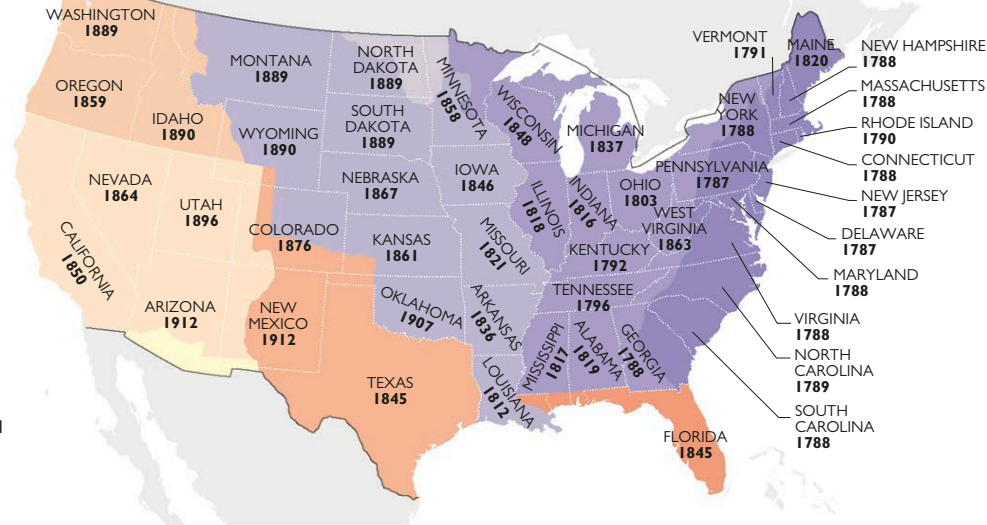
## TERRITORIAL EXPANSION

The United States grew from just 13 colonies in 1776 to a nation of 48 states in 1912. Territory was acquired through a series of purchases and treaties: France sold a vast swathe of land to the US in the Louisiana Purchase; and the British gave up the northwest

territories in the Oregon Treaty. Some regions—including Texas—were annexed, while much of the west was won in the war with Mexico (1846–1848) or through subsequent land purchases from the cash-hungry Mexican regime.

### KEY

- Thirteen Colonies 1776
- Addition of 1783
- Louisiana Purchase 1803
- Red River Cession 1818
- Purchase of Florida 1819
- Texas Annexation 1845
- Oregon Country Cession 1846
- Mexican Cession 1848
- Gadsden Purchase 1853
- 1788 Date of admission to statehood
- ..... Modern state boundary







## 1 IMMIGRATION AND AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT 1860–1920

Millions of immigrants worked in US industrial towns and cities, but many brought agricultural skills and helped transform land management in the US. Russian Mennonites (Anabaptist Christians of German-Dutch descent), for example, began to cultivate wheat in the prairie lands of Oklahoma, Kansas, and Nebraska, while German settlers were among the first to cultivate oranges in California. Migrants also moved between the US and Canada.

-  Cotton growing
-  Timber production
-  Immigration to US 1860–1920
-  Immigration to Canada 1860–1920

### WHEAT PRODUCTION C. 1900

-  19–96 tons (17–87 tonnes) per sq mile
-  Over 96 tons (87 tonnes) per sq mile

## 2 THE CATTLE DRIVES 1860–1886

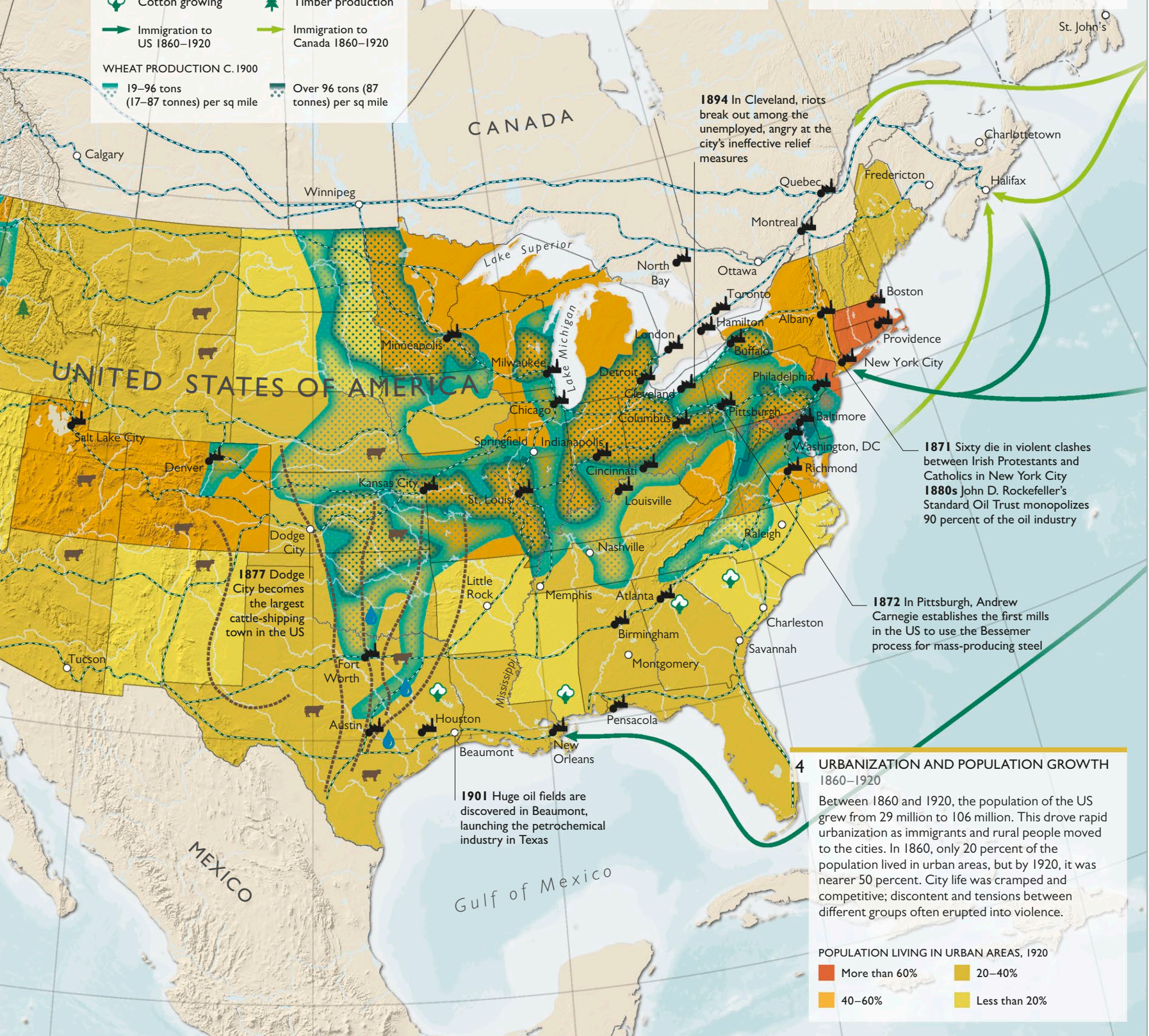
As demand for beef grew and prices rose in the 1860s, Texan herders began to drive their cattle on long trails north to Denver and into Kansas, where they were loaded on to trains and shipped to Chicago's burgeoning meat-packing industry. By 1887, beef prices had dropped to one-half of their peak. At this point, hit by the overgrazing of the open plains and a particularly harsh winter in 1886–1887, the industry collapsed, and many of the vast cattle ranges were enclosed by homesteaders.

-  Cattle ranching
-  Cattle trails

## 3 INDUSTRIALIZATION 1870–1916

After the Civil War (see pp.256–257), the US rapidly industrialized, increasing factory output almost tenfold between 1870 and 1916. Industry boomed in the northeast, where coal and iron were easily accessible via the growing railroad network, which extended to cities in neighboring Canada. Banking, finance, and new inventions such as the typewriter and electric light spawned businesses, creating many tycoons.

-  Oil production
-  Main railroads
-  Major industrial city





# INDEPENDENT LATIN AMERICA

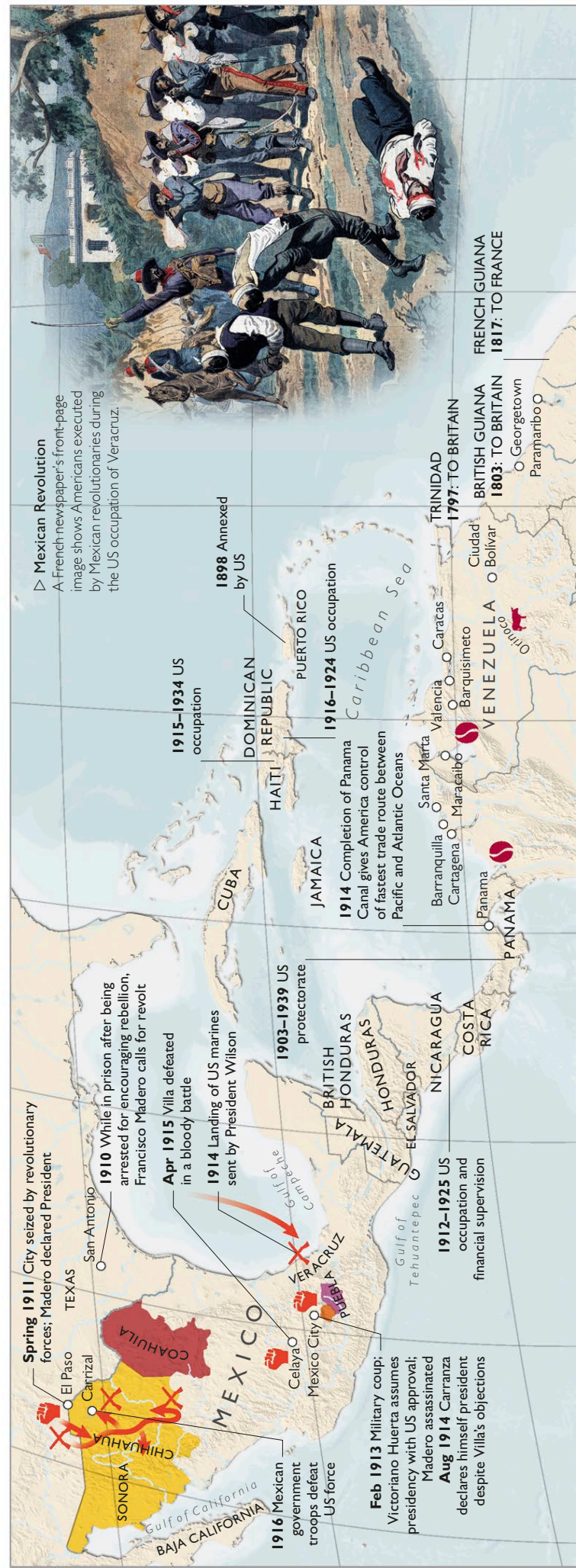
The decades following liberation in Latin America were marked by the appearance of successive military dictators, civil wars, and battles between states over resources and territories. The shadow of imperialism continued to hang over the region, too, as financial investment and military intervention secured American and British influence.

In the aftermath of liberation, many countries in South America saw power seized by *caudillos*, military dictators such as José Antonio Páez in Venezuela and Juan Manuel de Rosas in Argentina. Civil wars were common as new dictators fought for leadership, as happened in Mexico in 1910. Border disputes were also common as the young states sought to extend their territory or gain control of valuable natural resources. Bolivia and Peru both lost lands to Chile

*"I'd rather die on my feet, than live on my knees."*

ATTRIBUTED TO EMILIANO ZAPATA, 1913

in the War of the Pacific, fought over the Atacama Desert's nitrates, which were used in fertilizers and explosives. Brazil, Bolivia, and Argentina took almost half of Paraguay's territory in Latin America's bloodiest war. The region's economies depended on the export of raw materials and food to feed Europe's burgeoning industries and consumer markets: coffee and rubber from Brazil; copper and tin from Chile and Peru; and salted and frozen meat from Argentina. Access to the Atlantic trade routes gave Argentina in particular an advantage, and the country developed rapidly. Yet foreign power lingered in the region. It was evident in the United States' interference in Central America and the Caribbean—where it annexed Puerto Rico and occupied or made Protectorates of many other countries—and in the large profits made by British and American firms investing in the region's railways and mines.



▷ **Mexican Revolution**  
A French newspaper's front-page image shows Americans executed by Mexican revolutionaries during the US occupation of Veracruz.

JUAN MANUEL DE ROSAS  
1793-1877



A charismatic but brutal military dictator, Juan Manuel de Rosas was the archetypal *caudillo*. As governor of Buenos Aires province, Rosas controlled all of Argentina for 17 years and extended the country's territories deep into Patagonia through a violent campaign against the indigenous people there. Ousted from power by a rival general in 1852, he fled to England and died there in 1877.



5 CENTRAL AMERICA, THE CARIBBEAN, AND THE UNITED STATES 1895–1920

In 1898, the Spanish-American War finally ended Spanish rule in Latin America. Prefaced by America's support for Cuba's revolt against Spain in 1895, the war left America in possession of Cuba and Puerto Rico and secured its influence in the Caribbean and Central America. The US then intervened across the region in Honduras, Guatemala, Nicaragua, the Dominican Republic, and, crucially, Panama.

4 EXPORT AND INVESTMENT 1850–1920

As the world entered a second phase of industrialization at the end of the 19th century, South America experienced a series of export booms in nitrates, rubber, copper, and tin. South America also became a major coffee producer, and British investment in the region's railways and ports made wheat and beef viable export products.



3 THE MEXICAN REVOLUTION 1910–1917

In 1910, Francisco Madero challenged Mexico's dictator for the presidency and called for revolution. Armies under Pascual Orozco, Pancho Villa, and Emiliano Zapata all attacked government positions. Successive presidents failed to pacify the country, and the US intervened militarily. A new constitution was agreed on in 1917, and Venustiano Carranza became President.



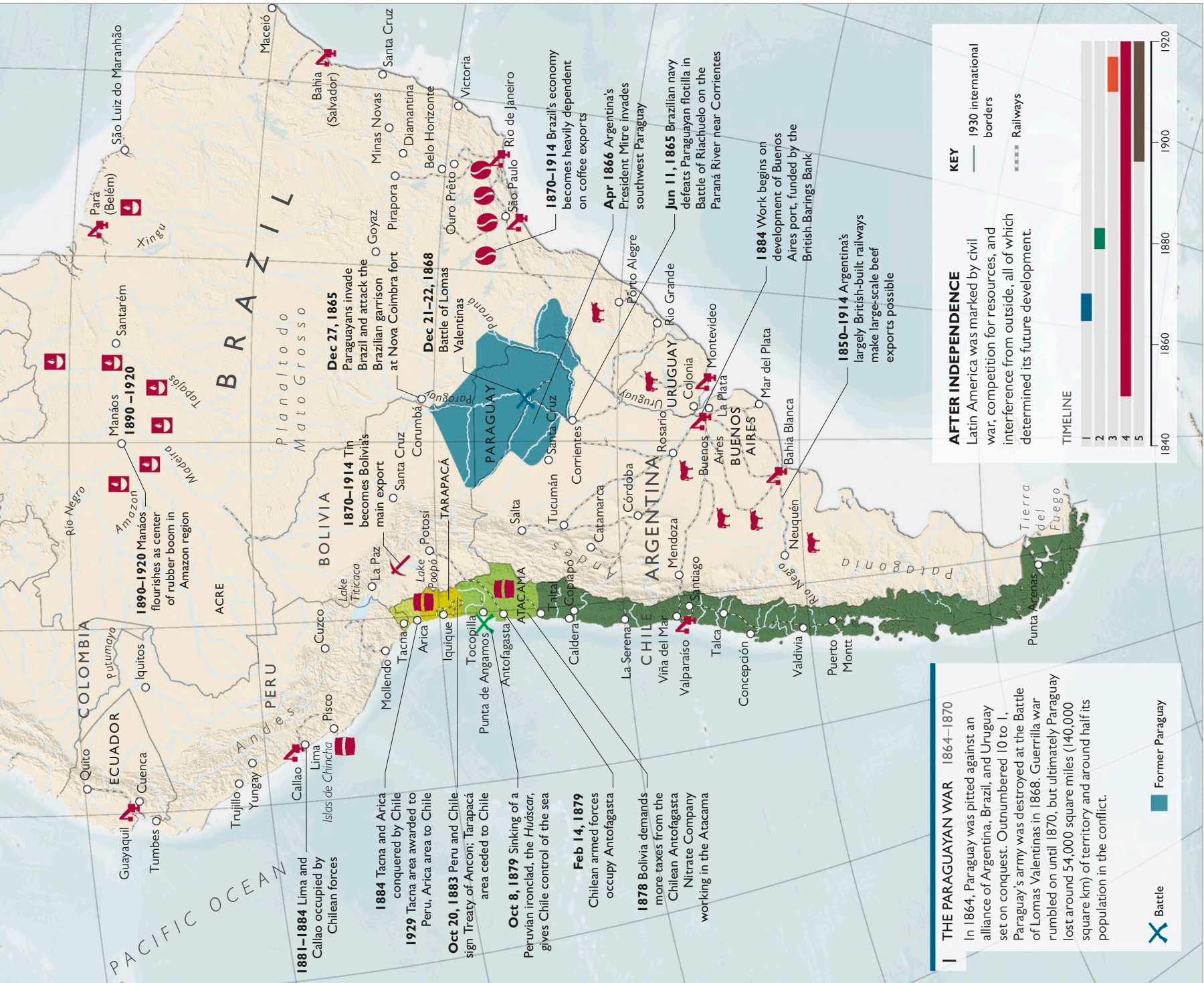
2 WAR OF THE PACIFIC 1879–1883

In 1879, Bolivia, Chile, and Peru went to war over control of the Atacama Desert's nitrate deposits. Chile landed an army at Antofagasta, taking the Bolivian coastline and the southern provinces of Peru. Chilean troops then sailed to attack Lima, and the city was occupied by a Chilean force between 1881 and 1884.



1 THE PARAGUAYAN WAR 1864–1870

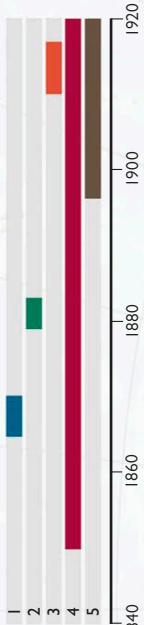
In 1864, Paraguay was pitted against an alliance of Argentina, Brazil, and Uruguay set on conquest. Outnumbered 10 to 1, Paraguay's army was destroyed at the Battle of Lomas Valentinas in 1868. Guerrilla war rumbled on until 1870, but ultimately Paraguay lost around 54,000 square miles (140,000 square km) of territory and around half its population in the conflict.



AFTER INDEPENDENCE

Latin America was marked by civil war, competition for resources, and interference from outside, all of which determined its future development.

TIMELINE

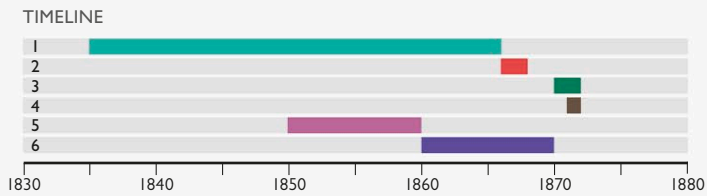




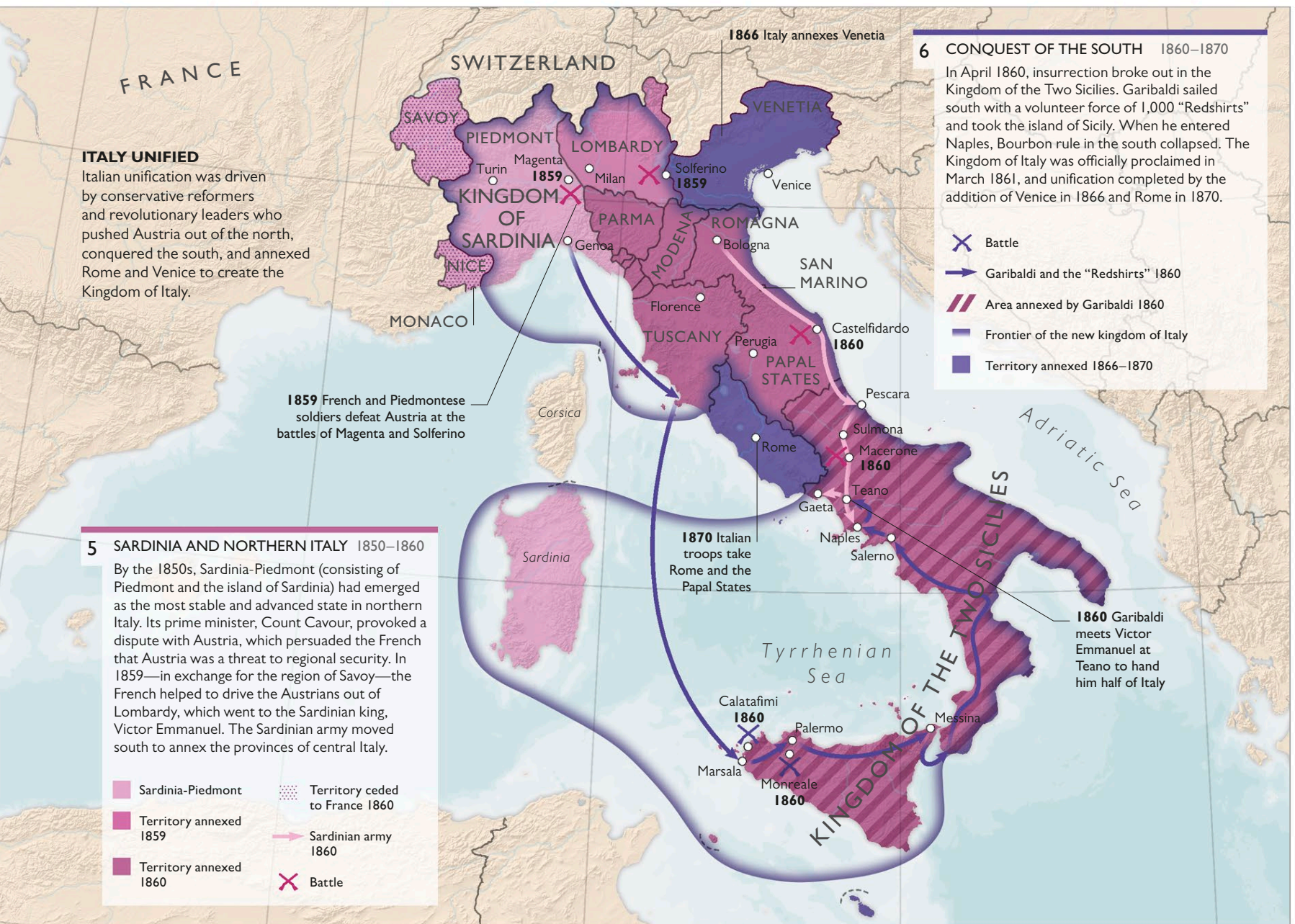
▷ **Battling hussars**  
A painting by German artist Christian Sell the Elder shows a clash between French and German cavalry in the Franco-Prussian War.



**UNIFICATION OF ITALY AND GERMANY**  
After 1835, powerful German and Italian leaders emerged who contested Austrian power and—in a rapid succession of political and military campaigns from 1850 to 1870—created the unified nations of Italy and Germany.







# GERMANY AND ITALY UNIFIED

In 1850, Germany and Italy were fragmented. Germany was a loose confederation of states dominated by Austria, while Italy was a mixture of duchies and kingdoms with little direction. By 1870, through war, diplomacy, and a certain amount of political machination, both had been unified into new nations.

A wave of popular nationalism followed the Napoleonic Wars (see pp.208–211). In 1848–1849, this erupted in a series of republican revolutions (see pp.218–219), which began in Sicily and extended across much of Europe. These revolts were repressed by armies loyal to their respective governments; and popular fervor had largely dissipated by the 1850s, leaving the German and Italian states as fragmented as ever.

The yoke of unification was, however, taken up by conservative reformers in both Italy and Germany in the 1860s. Afraid of revolution from below, they took control of reform from above, seeing in unification a chance to curb Austro-Hungarian power and carve out strong new kingdoms.

After the Napoleonic Wars, Prussia was one of a confederation of 39 states under the leadership of Austria. It was the only one of these states powerful enough to compete with Austria-Hungary for control of the fiercely independent German principalities, so it took the lead on unification. In 1864, Prussia, led by its formidable prime minister, Otto von Bismarck, made its move against Austria. Within 7 years, through a combination of war, political maneuvering, and luck, the threat to unification posed by both Austria and France had been neutralized, and Bismarck had forged a unified German empire. Bismarck became the first chancellor of the Empire in 1871.

In Italy, following the failure of Giuseppe Mazzini’s nationalist revolution in 1848, the prime minister of Sardinia-Piedmont, Count Cavour, steered the process of unification. By allying with France against the Austrians in northern Italy and harnessing the talents of the great nationalist revolutionary Giuseppe Garibaldi to secure the south, Cavour was able to create a unified kingdom by 1860.



## 5 THE SECOND BALKAN WAR 1913

In June 1913, tension over the division of Macedonia turned to war when the Bulgarians attacked Greek and Serbian positions in the region. When Romanian and Ottoman forces invaded Bulgaria, looking for gains of their own, Bulgaria soon sued for peace, and Macedonia was largely divided between Greece and Serbia.

- Serbian gain 1913     ■ Bulgarian gain 1913  
■ Greek gain 1913     ■ Montenegrin gain 1913  
■ Romanian gain 1913     ✕ Battles

**1878** Treaty of Berlin puts Bosnia-Herzegovina under Austria-Hungary's control, although it remains an Ottoman possession

**Oct 7, 1908** Serbia mobilizes its troops and demands Novi Pazar region as compensation

**1878** Enlarged by the treaty of San Stefano, Serbia becomes independent

**1878** Romania becomes independent and gains Dobruja

**Sep 30, 1913** Treaty of Bucharest ends Second Balkan War

**Dec 1877** Ottoman garrison at Plevna submits after being besieged by Russian and Romanian force for 5 months

**Oct 5, 1908** Prince Ferdinand of Bulgaria declares Bulgaria's independence

**Mar 1821** Greek revolutionaries in Moldavia occupy Jassy and call on all Greeks and Christians to rise up against the Ottomans

**1878–1885** Treaty of Berlin returns Eastern Rumelia to Ottoman Empire, but Bulgaria reclaims it in 1885

**Oct 6, 1908** Austria-Hungary annexes Bosnia-Herzegovina

**1878** Montenegro doubles its territory and gains independence

**Oct 23–24, 1912** Serbian army defeats Ottomans at Battle of Kumanovo and joins forces with Montenegrins to enter Skopje

**Jun 30–Jul 8, 1913** Bulgarian army defeated by Serbs at Battle of Bregalnica

**Oct 19-20, 1912** Greek army defeats Ottomans and captures Yanitza

**May 21, 1864** Britain transfers the Ionian islands to Greece as a gesture of support for King George I

#### 4 THE FIRST BALKAN WAR 1912–1913

In 1912, Russia encouraged Serbia, Bulgaria, Greece, and Montenegro to band together and take Macedonia from Turkey. Montenegro declared war on Turkey and was joined by the other league nations. By May 1913, the war was over and the Ottoman Empire had lost most of its remaining European territories, including Albania.

- ✂ Significant Ottoman defeats      ■ Albania 1913

## 3 BOSNIA CRISIS 1908

Fearing that the Young Turks in Constantinople might reinvigorate Turkey, Austria-Hungary decided to annex Bosnia and Herzegovina. When Serbia demanded that they receive compensation for the annexation, Russia supported their claim. But when Austria—backed by Germany—threatened to invade Serbia, Russia was forced to back down and accept the annexation.

-  The Bosnia Crisis    Annexation border





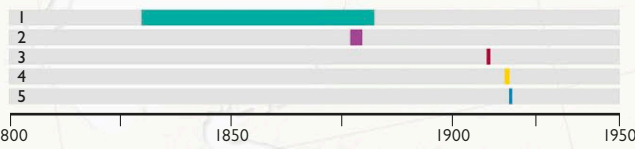
**CONFLICT IN THE BALKANS**

From 1830, a series of conflicts reshaped the Balkans. By 1913, the region was a fragile patchwork of independent states, in which ethnic and religious tensions persisted.

**KEY**

— International boundaries 1913

Ottoman Empire

**TIMELINE****1 GREECE, INDEPENDENCE, AND EARLY DEVELOPMENT 1830–1881**

Greece was the first Balkan country to gain independence from the Ottoman Empire. The war for independence, from 1821, continued for nearly 10 years before the Ottomans finally accepted Greece's independence in 1830. Greece's territory grew with the addition of the Ionian Islands in 1864 and Thessaly in 1881.

Greece 1864  
Greek gain 1881

Key events in Greek fight for independence

**2 THE RUSSO-TURKISH WAR 1877–1878**

In June 1877, 150,000 Russian troops crossed the Danube to support the people of Bulgaria and Bosnia-Herzegovina in their rebellion against Ottoman rule. The San Stefano peace treaty reshaped the Balkans region, creating Bulgaria and bringing independence to Romania, Serbia, and Montenegro.

Russian forces in Russo-Turkish War

Romania 1878

Montenegro 1878

Bulgaria 1885

Serbia 1878

# BALKAN WARS

A wave of nationalism swept through the Balkans in the 19th century. As the Balkan countries coalesced and gained independence—often under the influence of the Great Powers—ethnic and religious diversity created conflict, feeding the instability in the region.

The Balkans in the 19th and early 20th centuries endured a series of conflicts as Ottoman power receded and the peoples of the region fought for independence. In 1830, Greece broke away from the Ottoman Empire. There were further conflicts, at the expense of the Ottomans, over the next 80 years. The Great Powers of Russia, Britain, and Austria-Hungary all played a part in these conflicts and regarded the region with an uneasy mix of ambition and anxiety. Russia supported Slavic nationalism, hoping that the Bulgarians, Montenegrins, Bosnians, and Serbs would provide it with allies. Austria-Hungary watched the emergence of Serbia with concern, aware that its own population of Serbs might make a claim for independence. And Britain, wary of Russian influence in the region, sought to bolster the Greeks. But for all their involvement in peace treaties and territory division, the Great Powers could not solve the problem at the heart of the Balkans: the region's ethnic groups would not be separated neatly into nations. By 1914, Turkey may have lost all but a small part of its European possessions, but few were happy with the outcome of 70 years of struggle. The two Balkan Wars alone resulted in more than half a million casualties, and the conflicts pushed the Great Powers closer to a European war.

*"A ... peninsula filled with sprightly people ... who had a splendid talent for starting wars."*

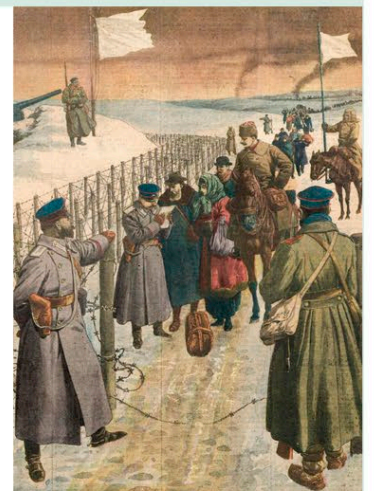
C.L. SULZBERGER, FROM A LONG ROW OF CANDLES, 1969

**EDIRNE****THE IMPORTANCE OF ADRIANOPLE**

The city of Edirne (formerly known as Adrianople) was one of the largest in the Ottoman Empire. It guarded the route to Constantinople, the capital of the Ottoman Empire, so was of vital strategic importance to the Ottomans. Heavily fortified with a network of trenches, fences, and 20 massive concrete forts, the fortress at Edirne was believed to be unassailable; its capture by the Bulgarians in 1913 was a huge blow to Ottoman confidence.

**Flight from Edirne, 1913**

A stream of foreigners flees the Bulgarian attack on Edirne.

**► Bulgarian attack**

In this 1913 painting, Czech artist Jaroslav Věšín shows the fierceness with which the Bulgarians fought the Turks in the First Balkan War.





Germany negotiated alliances with Austria-Hungary and Russia to limit or prevent war. The defensive Austro-German alliance, later joined by Italy (creating the Triple Alliance), prevented Austria siding with Russia in any attack on Germany; Romania secretly joined in 1883. The Three Emperors' Alliance helped to ease the tension between Russia and Austria over the Balkans and isolated France.

- Austro-German alliance 1879–1918
- ◆ Three Emperors' Alliance 1881–1887
- ◆ Triple Alliance 1882–1915

After the Three Emperors' Alliance collapsed, Bismarck arranged the Reinsurance Treaty between Germany and Russia. In 1890, Kaiser Wilhelm II refused to renew this treaty, leaving Russia free to ally with France. The Franco-Russian alliance provided reassurances of mutual military support. Britain sought to limit threats to her Empire, and in 1904 allied with France, and then in 1907 with Russia, creating what was called the Triple Entente.

- Franco-Russian alliance 1894–1917
- ▲ Anglo-Russian Entente 1907
- ★ Entente Cordiale 1904

**1887–1890** Germany agrees to Reinsurance Treaty with Russia, guaranteeing neutrality in any war with a third power, excluding France and Austria  
**1909–1910** Tsar Nicholas II commits around 1 million rubles to construction of a military air force

**1907** Construction begins on Rosyth naval dockyard

**1907** Britain reorganizes its army to create Expeditionary Force of 160,000 troops and a volunteer, part-time force of 300,000 Territorials

**Mar 1908**  
 launches its first  
 dreadnought  
 SMS Nassau

**1903** Krupp's dockyard in Kiel completes the first fully functioning U-boat

**1910** First aviation school opens in Gatchina

St. Petersburg

**Feb 1906**  
Launch of HMS  
*Dreadnought*, the  
first "all-big-gun"  
battleship, fuels  
naval race

ATLANTIC  
OCEAN

**1839** Treaty of London guarantees Belgian neutrality and commits Austria, Belgium, France, the German Confederation, the Netherlands, Russia, and Britain to military intervention if neutrality is breached

**1906** Britain supports France over Morocco at the Algeiras Conference, and the two countries begin talks on a military alliance.

**1905–1906** Germany tests the strength of the Anglo-French Entente by recognizing Morocco as independent

**1882** Italy joins the Austro-German alliance to create the Triple Alliance

**1898–1912** —  
an naval laws  
al Germany's  
ambition to  
build a navy  
rival Britain's

**1908** Austria-  
ungary annexes  
Bosnia, driving  
Serbia closer  
to Russia

Sarajevo

**1881–1895** Serbia associates with the Triple Alliance through the Austro-Serb alliance

**1883–1916** Romania secretly joins the Triple Alliance with Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy

ROMANIAN

BULGARIA

Constantinople

GREECE

OTTOMAN EMPIRE

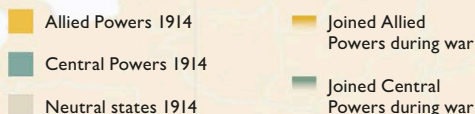
sed

Mediterranean

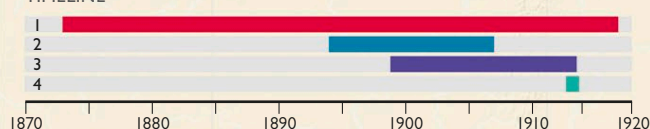


### THE BALANCE OF POWER IN EUROPE

European relations from 1871 were marked by a shifting pattern of alliances designed initially to keep the peace. From 1890, the balance of power was disrupted by an alliance between Russia and France, which threatened the Central Powers, and by the build-up of military power across Europe.



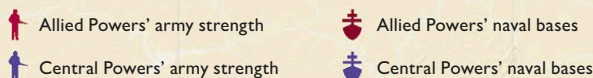
#### TIMELINE



### 3 ARMS BUILD-UP 1898–1914

Alongside shifting alliances, Europe was building its military capacity; Britain already had the largest navy in the world. Vast numbers of men were conscripted into Europe's armies, and advances in military technology meant that more money was spent on the armies and navies, creating a volatile mix of militarism and mutual suspicion.

1 ICON = 100,000 COMBATANTS



### 4 ALLIANCES ON THE EVE OF THE WAR 1914

By the time war broke out in 1914, Europe was divided into two well-armed camps: the Allied Powers, formed of the Entente Powers—Great Britain, France, and Russia—and Montenegro; and the Central Powers of Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy. Throughout the war, more countries joined each side.

#### ▽ HMS Dreadnought

This British ship—more powerful, faster, and with more firepower than any seen before—ushered in a new class of battleship.

1907 Britain and Russia settle disputes over spheres of influence in Persia and create the Triple Entente with France

PERSIA

# THE EVE OF WORLD WAR

War between the Great Powers—Austria-Hungary, Britain, France, Germany, Italy, and Russia—was prevented throughout the late 19th century by a series of defensive alliances. However, those alliances were eroded by the crises in the Balkans in the early 20th century and by the rise of militarism.

Since the end of the Napoleonic War in 1815, Europe had maintained a delicate balance of power. The creation of Germany in 1871 (see pp.264–265) brought a powerful new force into play. Yet instead of breaking the balance of power, Germany was instrumental in maintaining it for many years. Under the leadership of Otto von Bismarck, Germany set about allying with the more conservative powers in Europe—Austria-Hungary and Russia. This ensured that the other two would remain neutral if any one of them took military action against any nonallied country, and if Russia attacked Austria, it would have to face Germany as well.

As tensions in the Balkans increased (see pp.266–267), so did the tensions between the Great Powers. Russia moved to ally with France, and Austria's annexation of Bosnia in 1908 humiliated Russia and pushed it closer to Austria's nemesis, Serbia. By then, an arms race had begun that saw millions of marks, pounds, rubles, and francs poured into military reorganization and new technology. In 1913 alone, Germany spent \$140 million on its military and Britain spent \$106 million. By 1914, the bond that prevented a major war had been broken, and Europe was divided into two heavily armed blocs, primed for war.

*"England, France, and Russia have conspired ... to wage a war of annihilation against us."*

KAISER WILHELM II, MEMORANDUM WRITTEN JULY 30, 1914

### OTTO VON BISMARCK (1815–1898)

Architect of the unification of Germany and its rise as a major power, Otto von Bismarck guided Germany's fate, first as chief minister of Prussia (1862–1890) and then as chancellor of the German Empire (1871–1890). His skilled diplomacy ensured that there was no major European conflict in the late 19th century; he created an alliance with Austria-Hungary and also kept friendly relations with Russia. However, Kaiser Wilhelm II came to the throne in 1888 with a more aggressive desire to lead the German Empire toward global power, and in 1890, he forced von Bismarck's resignation. Without his hand to steady international relations, Europe moved inexorably toward war.











# THE MODERN WORLD

WORLD WARS, UNPRECEDENTED TECHNOLOGICAL AND ECONOMIC  
DEVELOPMENT, AND EXPLOSIVE POPULATION GROWTH HAVE MADE  
THE 20TH AND 21ST CENTURIES THE MOST EVENTFUL IN HISTORY.





**△ The face of nationalism**  
A Bosnian nationalist, Gavrilo Princip shot Austrian Archduke Franz Ferdinand on June 28, 1914. The event catapulted the Great Powers into World War I, a century-defining conflict that caused the downfall of empires.

# THE MODERN WORLD

The early 20th century was dominated by extraordinary developments in technology, economics, and new ideologies that transformed societies. However, demands for national independence and a better way of life destroyed old structures, leading to unprecedented violence and turbulence before a new world order was formed.

By the dawn of the 20th century, the old had begun giving way to the new. Although new empires were still being formed in South Africa, Korea, and elsewhere, some established empires were in turmoil as people demanded emancipation from oppression and political exclusion. In Russia, thousands marched against Czar Nicholas II, demanding reform, while the czar’s forces were being routed by the Japanese in the Russo-Japanese War. Around the same

time, imperial China was crumbling under the pressure of European imperialism and internal strife. By 1912, China had done away with the Qing Dynasty and become a republic. In 1908, the vast Ottoman Empire was shaken when the Young Turks (a Turkish nationalist party) revolted and brought in a constitution and multiparty politics. Taking advantage of these unsettled affairs, a league of Balkan states—Serbia, Bulgaria, Greece, and Montenegro—went to war with Turkey and then squabbled over the spoils, leading to yet another war.

### Constant turmoil

The assassination of the Austrian Archduke Franz Ferdinand by a radical nationalist, Gavrilo Princip, in Sarajevo, Bosnia, set off World War I (see pp. 274–275). Lasting 4 long years, the war became a stalemate at an incalculable cost—a generation of young men was mown down as deadly technological advances saw aircraft, poison gas, tanks, and submarines deployed on a mass scale. By the third year of World

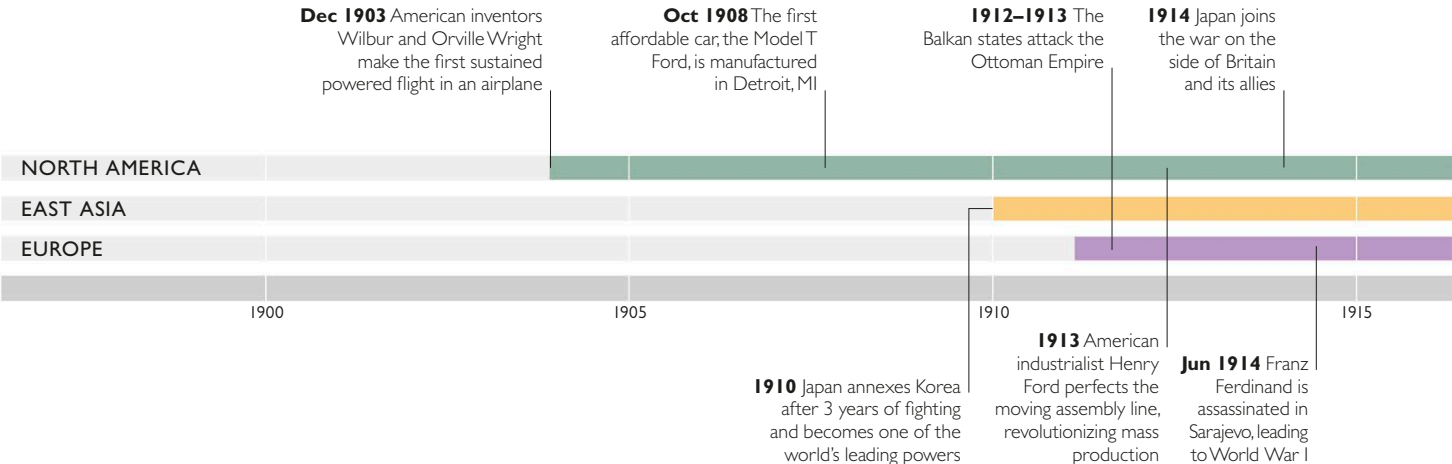


### ◁ The cost of war

Passchendaele (the Third Battle of Ypres) was fought in 1917. It cost the Allies 300,000 lives and brought them a gain of a meager 5 miles (8km). It became a byword for the utter futility of war.

### TROUBLED TIMES

The early part of the 20th century was dominated by conflict; the timeline shown here ends with the ominous build-up to yet another world war. Unlike Europe and east Asia, North America avoided major turbulence until its involvement in World War I. However, its stock market collapse in 1929 was one of the most damaging events in its, and the world’s, history. Despite the convulsions of the period, this era was also one of great technological innovation and productivity.







#### ◁ Worldwide epidemic

An outbreak of Spanish flu in 1918–19 infected around 500 million people and killed up to 50 million. Starting in the US, it became a global catastrophe.

War I, Russia was in tatters. Into this chaos stepped revolutionary Vladimir Lenin, who saw his Bolshevik Party to power. By 1919, the Russian, Austrian, and German empires had collapsed. The Ottoman Empire was the last great casualty of the war—the Treaty of Sèvres was signed in 1920, and the empire was dismantled.

Meanwhile, around Easter 1916, an armed uprising in Dublin set southern Ireland on a path to independence from British rule, and the Irish Free State was founded in 1922.

### Global repercussions

The US had followed an isolationist policy at the start of the war but was drawn into the conflict by German submarine attacks on their commercial ships. During and after the war, Americans embraced and invested heavily in technology, pioneering methods of assembly-line production. Women, who had contributed so much to the war effort, had been granted the right to vote in 1918 in the UK, Austria, Germany, and Canada. Most American women were given the same right in 1920. However, the good times came to a grinding halt with the Stock Market Crash of 1929.

The Great Depression that followed (see pp.286–287) led to mass unemployment and strikes. It became a global crisis, leading to poverty on an unprecedented scale. The 1930s were haunted by violent political extremism. China, in turmoil due to a civil war, was also under attack from Japan. In Germany, more than 40 percent of industrial workers were unemployed. Already hit severely by the collapse of world trade, a starving Germany suffered, and the time was ripe for an ambitious

Adolf Hitler to form the Nationalist Socialist (Nazi) Party. With his promise to restore Germany's status as a great power, he was poised to assume total control.

### Totalitarianism and the seeds of war

Other European nations, too, became seduced by right-wing politics and propaganda. While Germany had *der Führer* (Adolf Hitler), Italy had *il Duce* (Benito Mussolini) and fascist-leaning Spaniards had *el Caudillo* (Francisco Franco). In July 1936, Franco's forces fought the forces of the Spanish Left in a brutal civil war. Aided by Hitler and Mussolini, Franco was victorious in this precursor to the next global war. World War I—called the Great War—was supposed to have been the conflict to end all conflicts. Instead, the peace treaty

that followed in 1919—the Treaty of Versailles—redrew the map of Europe, breeding discontent and resentment. Together with the Great Depression, it paved the way for the world's bloodiest conflict yet—World War II (see pp.294–295).



#### ◁ Man of the masses

A founding member of the Chinese Communist Party, Mao Zedong went on to become the leader of the People's Republic of China and one of the most influential figures of the 20th century.



#### △ Germany on fire

The mysterious fire of the German parliament building on February 27, 1933, was a key moment in Nazi history, acting as a stepping-stone to the total dictatorship of Adolf Hitler.

**Nov 1918** Germany signs an armistice that marks the end of the war

**1918–19** Taking millions of lives, an outbreak of Spanish flu becomes the world's most deadly natural disaster

**1927** Civil war breaks out in China

**Late 1920s** Extreme nationalism begins to take hold in Japan as world economic depression hits; the emphasis is on a preservation of traditional Japanese values and a rejection of "Western" influence

**Sep 1931** Japan invades Manchuria, seeking control over northern China

**1937** Japan captures Shanghai, Beijing, and Nanjing during the second Sino-Japanese War

**1917–1918** The US intervenes in World War I

**Dec 1922** The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR) is established

**Oct 1929** 13 million Americans become unemployed after the stock market crashes in the US

**1920–1933** The sale and manufacture of alcohol is outlawed in the US with the introduction of Prohibition

**Jan 1933** Adolf Hitler becomes Chancellor of Germany

**Jul 1937** The Japanese army massacres tens of thousands in Nanjing, China, during the Sino-Japanese War







# WORLD WAR I

World War I was one of the defining events of the 20th century. Bound by the chains of interlocking alliances and provoked by the massive buildup of battleships and weaponry, governments sent their armies off to face a new kind of warfare.

On June 28, 1914, Archduke Franz Ferdinand, heir to the Austrian throne, was assassinated in Sarajevo, Bosnia. Blaming their bitter rival, Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia. Events quickly escalated, and the wider system of alliances (see pp.268–269) got drawn into the war. Russia hurried to the aid of Serbia, while Germany, coming to the support of Austria-Hungary, declared war on both Russia and France. When Germany, on its way to France, invaded neutral Belgium on August 4, 1914, Britain declared war on Germany. Stalemate quickly followed. The Germans, British, and French dug a

network of trenches stretching from the Swiss border to the North Sea, and with modern weaponry, the Western Front became a killing field. On the more fluid Eastern Front, the better-equipped German army defeated the Russians, and in December 1917 Russia signed an armistice. The arrival of the US into the war in April 1917 turned the tide in the Allies' favor, and following a series of brutal battles, an armistice was agreed on November 11, 1918. At the start of the war, both the Central Powers and the Allies had been convinced it would be short and decisive; neither was prepared for this long war of attrition.

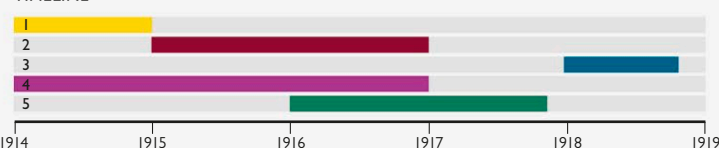
## WAR ON TWO FRONTS

World War I was fought largely on the Western Front (in western Europe) and the Eastern Front (in eastern Europe), although countries from around the world were gradually pulled into the conflict. There were two opposing alliances: the Central Powers (Germany and Austria-Hungary) and the Allies (Russia, France, and Britain). Despite early German successes, the Allies achieved victory in November 1918.

### KEY

- Central Powers
- Allies
- Russian Empire

### TIMELINE



## 4 WAR OF MOVEMENT 1914–1917

Unlike the stalemate experienced on the Western Front, the Eastern Front was the war everyone had anticipated, with large armies making significant breakthroughs. The German and Austro-Hungarian forces faced Russia and its allies, including Serbia, along a front that extended more than 1,000 miles (1,600 km). Russia's greatest success was under General Alexei Brusilov. From June to September 1916, he broke Austria-Hungary's lines on the southwestern front. Austria never truly recovered.

- Russian advances 1914
- German landings 1917–1918
- ▲ Russian front line 1914–1915
- ▲ Limit of Central Power advances 1915–1916
- Brusilov Offensive 1916
- Armistice line Dec 1917
- ✕ Major battle

**Aug 1914**  
Two Russian armies invade Prussia but are decisively beaten at the Battle of Tannenberg

## THE EASTERN FRONT

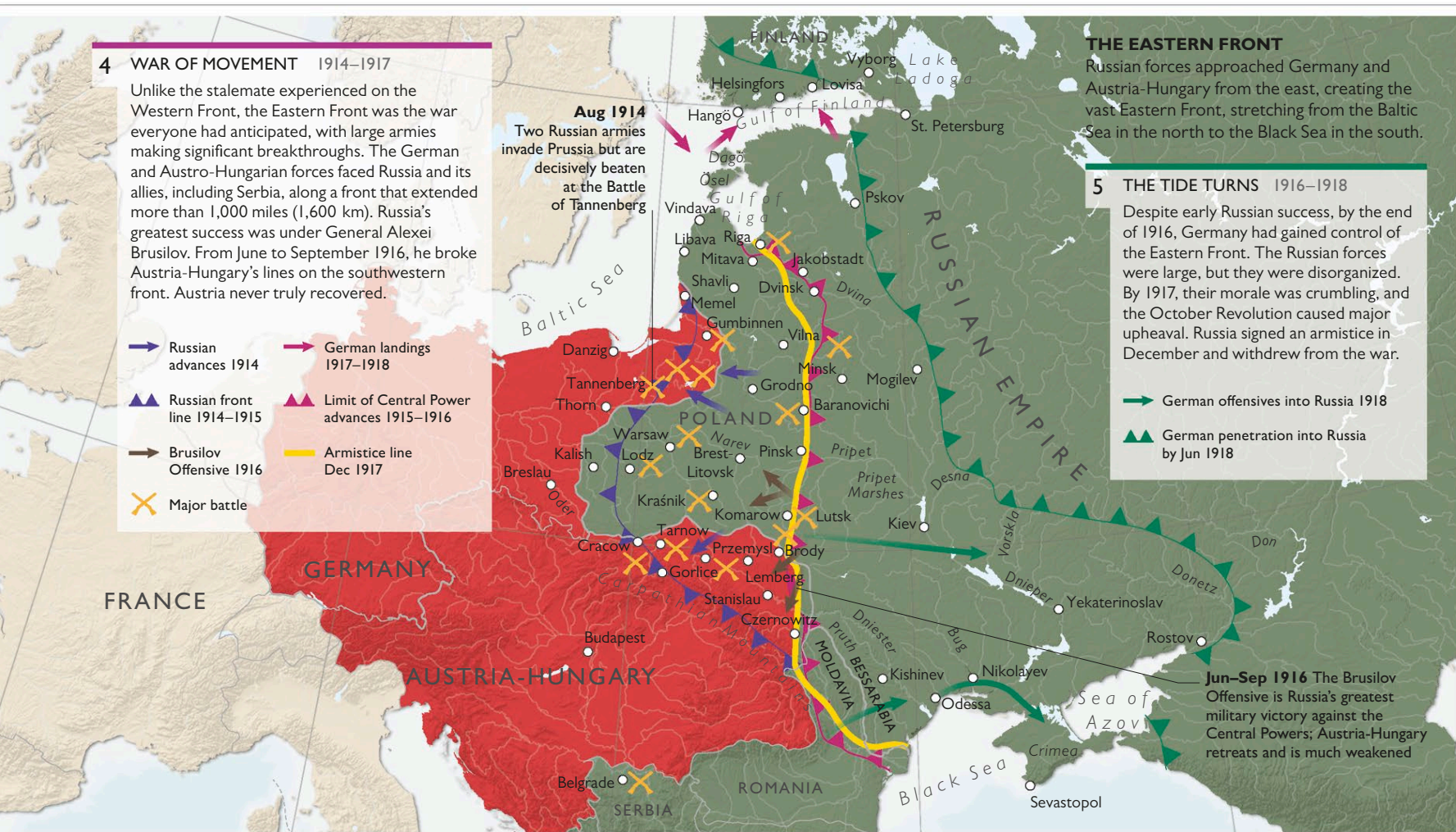
Russian forces approached Germany and Austria-Hungary from the east, creating the vast Eastern Front, stretching from the Baltic Sea in the north to the Black Sea in the south.

## 5 THE TIDE TURNS 1916–1918

Despite early Russian success, by the end of 1916, Germany had gained control of the Eastern Front. The Russian forces were large, but they were disorganized. By 1917, their morale was crumbling, and the October Revolution caused major upheaval. Russia signed an armistice in December and withdrew from the war.

- German offensives into Russia 1918
- ▲ German penetration into Russia by Jun 1918

**Jun–Sep 1916** The Brusilov Offensive is Russia's greatest military victory against the Central Powers; Austria-Hungary retreats and is much weakened





# THE TRENCHES

Much of the fighting in World War I was characterized by the mud and blood of the trenches. The prolonged stalemate between trench-bound enemies was marked by mass killings over just a few yards of land.



△ **Lines of communication**  
Telephones were used extensively to give orders directly to front-line troops. A web of telephone and telegraph wires crisscrossed the battlefields.

The German advance across France was halted in the early fall of 1914. Confronted with deadly machine guns, mortars, and howitzers, both sides reached for their spades to dig rudimentary trenches, from where they could both defend and attack. The era of modern trench warfare had begun.

By mid-October 1914, two lines of trenches faced each other in a meandering line that ran from the Swiss border in the south to the North Sea. It became known as the Western Front. The early Allied trenches were crude and shallow. The

German trenches, on the other hand, were more solidly built and on higher ground. Some even had electricity and toilets. Sandbags, wire mesh, and wooden frames were brought in to reinforce the walls.

## The human cost

Life in the trenches was appalling. They were filled with rats, flies, and lice and prone to flooding. Frightened young men stood in knee-deep mud waiting for the call to go “over the top.” Casualty rates were high, not only from major battles such as Passchendaele (July–November 1917), but also from the ever-present threats of sniper fire, random shells, and poison gas. Diseases, such as typhoid and trench foot, put many out of action. The constant bombardment and sound of enemy fire led to the diagnosis of a new condition called “shell shock,” which prompted a range of disabling psychosomatic conditions.

For soldiers trapped in the trenches, there was no way out. Deserters were shot and malingerers penalized. Trench warfare in World War I resulted in a 4-year-long impasse, with soldiers dying from not just new weaponry but horrific living conditions.



△ **Crossing the trenches**  
German troops clamber over the top of their trenches and advance across no-man's land—the area that separated the enemy trenches—toward British lines. Soldiers marched into the guns and were mown down in droves.





**Battle of the Somme**

While a soldier from the 11th Cheshire Regiment keeps watch during the Battle of the Somme (July–November 1916), his comrades catch what sleep they can amid the rubble of their trench.



# THE WIDER WAR

Although the main theater of battle during World War I (1914–1918) was in Europe, the conflict extended across the globe. It was shaped by the major European powers, spreading through a series of alliances, as well as through their empires and colonies.

World War I originated in central Europe. However, since many of the European belligerents were colonial powers, they had valuable assets and troops stationed all over the globe. Millions of soldiers were recruited from colonized countries and brought in to fight on the front lines. As the war spread, new fronts opened up in the Balkans, Mesopotamia, Anatolia (modern Turkey), East Africa, and Salonika. Italy joined the war on the side of the Allies in May 1915, and a series of brutal battles were fought along its border with Austria-Hungary.

In the Balkans, already a volatile region, loyalties were divided. In September 1918, Allied forces attacked from northern Greece, eventually liberating Serbia. The entry of the Turkish Ottoman Empire as an ally of Germany in fall 1914 had brought the Middle East into the conflict. The Turks had initial successes against the British, but struggled against Russia in the Caucasus. In 1916, a widespread Arab uprising against Ottoman rule helped the British cause by tying up Ottoman forces. By the time Turkey sued for an armistice in October 1918, the centuries-old empire had collapsed.

*“We were casting them by thousands into the fire to the worst of deaths.”*

T. E. LAWRENCE, BRITISH MILITARY OFFICER

T. E. LAWRENCE  
1888–1935

One of the most iconic figures of World War I, Thomas Edward Lawrence—popularly known by his nickname, Lawrence of Arabia—was an Arabic-speaking British archaeologist who traveled and worked in the Middle East. During World War I, he joined the British army and became an intelligence officer in Cairo, Egypt. His daring raids made him an international legend. Lawrence developed a deep sympathy for the Arabs living under Turkish rule and worked for their emancipation. He died in England in a motorcycle accident in 1935.









4 CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT 1917–1922

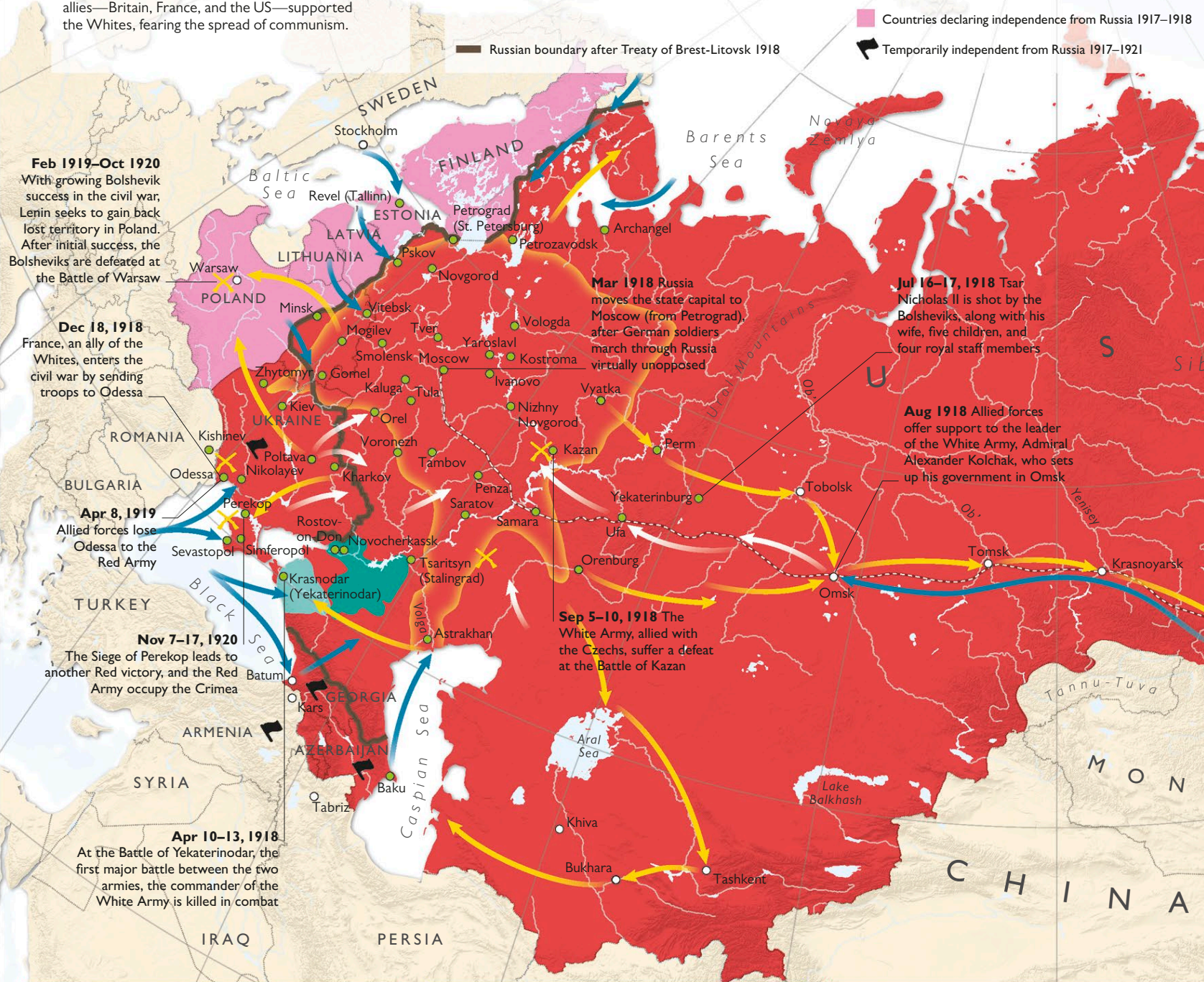
Although the Bolsheviks had gained power, they were a minority in Russia. Lenin started the “Red Terror”—a campaign of intimidation against anyone thought to be a threat to the regime—which was carried out by the new Bolshevik secret police, the Cheka. Meanwhile, a violent civil war broke out between the Bolsheviks (the “Reds”) and anti-Bolshevik forces, including the White Army, formed of Tsarist supporters and military officers. Russia’s former allies—Britain, France, and the US—supported the Whites, fearing the spread of communism.

3 RUSSIA PULLS OUT OF WORLD WAR I 1917–1918

The new Bolshevik government, led by Lenin, signed an armistice with the Central Powers (see p.275) in December 1917. The terms, which were harsh on Russia, were formalized in the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk in March 1918. Russia relinquished control of the Baltic States and Ukraine and was forced to pay 6 billion German marks in reparations. Anger at these losses fueled opposition to the Bolsheviks.

2 INDEPENDENT REPUBLICS 1917–1921

The Russian Empire was ethnically diverse, and calls for self-determination had been growing among non-Russian nationalities. After the revolution, Finland, Estonia, Poland, Latvia, Lithuania, and Ukraine declared independence, while Armenia, Azerbaijan, and Georgia formed a short-lived republic. Faced with financial crisis and militarily weak, Ukraine and the Caucasus states were later reabsorbed into the USSR.



5 COSSACK ATTACK 1917–1920

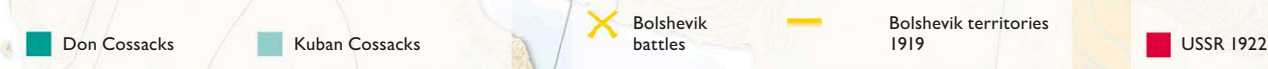
The Cossacks, a group who formed self-governing communities, rose to fight against the Bolsheviks, and many anti-Bolsheviks fled to join them in southern Russia. United with the Whites, the Cossacks put the Bolsheviks on the defensive along the Southern Front, wrecking their lines of communication, laying siege to the port city of Tsaritsyn from 1918–1920, and briefly occupying the city of Voronezh in September 1919.

6 BOLSHEVIK ADVANCES 1917–1922

Although the Whites had the support of many countries outside of Russia, the Bolsheviks had a brilliant tactical leader in Leon Trotsky and were better organized. Crucially, they had control of the industrial cities of Moscow and Petrograd, which included much of Russia’s railroad network. When the civil war ended in October 1922, the Bolsheviks had total control of Russia.

7 USSR FOUNDED DECEMBER 1922

After the civil war, the country was in tatters. Around 6 million peasants had died from famine between 1921 and 1922, and there was rioting in many cities. Lenin suffered a stroke in May 1922. In December 1922, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR) was established, based on one-party rule. Lenin died in 1924, worried about political infighting in his party. His legacy, however, was the world’s first socialist state.





# THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTION

For centuries, the Russian Empire was ruled by absolute monarchs, or Tsars. However, in one tumultuous year, the people of Russia rose up to topple Tsarist rule. Vladimir Lenin's communist party, the Bolsheviks, took control and set the stage for the creation of the USSR.

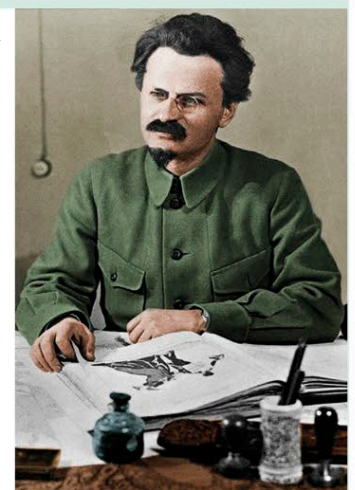
The outbreak of World War I in 1914 briefly united a discontented Russia, but the war did not go well. Huge military losses and food shortages led to increasing resentment against Tsar Nicholas II. On February 23, 1917, a riot broke out in Petrograd, led by women who had waited hours for bread. The riot grew into a general strike. The Tsar was forced to abdicate in March 1917, and a provisional government was put in charge, but it was weak. Meanwhile, the Petrograd Soviet of Workers' and Soldiers' Deputies, a council pushing for change, grew in popularity. Lenin, the leader of the Bolshevik faction of the Russian Social Democratic Party, who was in exile for Marxist activities, returned to Russia, convinced it was the time to implement his ideas. However, the Provisional Government leader, Alexander Kerensky, banned the Bolsheviks and ordered the arrest of Lenin, who fled to Finland. By August 1917, the Bolsheviks had taken control of the Petrograd Soviet. Sensing victory, Lenin returned home in the fall, certain that the Bolsheviks could seize power.

*"History will not forgive us if we do not assume power now."*

VLADIMIR LENIN, REVOLUTIONARY, SEPTEMBER 1917

## LEON TROTSKY 1879–1940

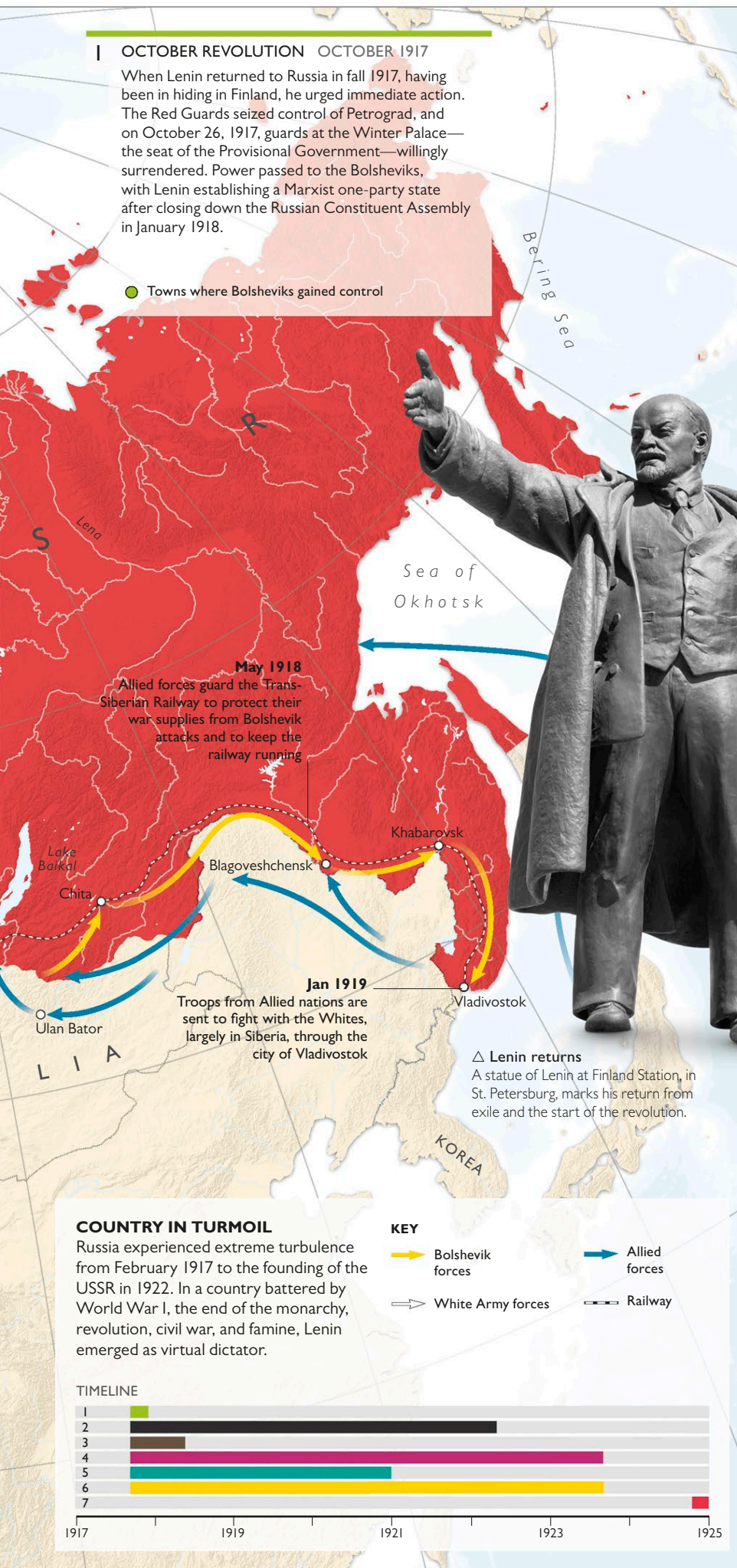
Originally a member of the Mensheviks—a faction of the Russian socialist movement in opposition to the Bolsheviks—Leon Trotsky was in exile in the US for anti-war activities when the Tsar was overthrown in March 1917. He returned to Russia and joined the Bolshevik Party. Trotsky helped to organize the October Revolution and form the Red Army, which he then commanded in the Russian Civil War (1917–1922). After Lenin's death in 1924, he clashed with Joseph Stalin. Trotsky was exiled again in 1929 and found asylum in Mexico. In 1940, he was fatally stabbed by a Stalinist assassin.



### OCTOBER REVOLUTION OCTOBER 1917

When Lenin returned to Russia in fall 1917, having been in hiding in Finland, he urged immediate action. The Red Guards seized control of Petrograd, and on October 26, 1917, guards at the Winter Palace—the seat of the Provisional Government—willingly surrendered. Power passed to the Bolsheviks, with Lenin establishing a Marxist one-party state after closing down the Russian Constituent Assembly in January 1918.

● Towns where Bolsheviks gained control





# POLITICAL EXTREMISM

World War I left a poisonous legacy. Several nations—including Germany, Italy, and Spain—looked for solutions to their problems in political extremism.



## △ The birth of fascism

Charismatic Italian dictator Benito Mussolini inspired thousands at mass rallies. His stiff-armed salute became a symbol of fascism.

After World War I, Europe saw a rise in communism, triggering the emergence of extreme right-wing groups. People turned to leaders willing to assume political authority, and Benito Mussolini, who coined the term “fascism” to describe his right-wing movement, became Italy’s military dictator in 1922.

Mussolini’s mass rallies and use of propaganda influenced Adolf Hitler, the rising star of Germany’s Right and leader of the National Socialist German Workers (Nazi) Party, which was openly racist, anti-Semitic, and anti-communist. The 1930s became a period

of extreme turbulence. The Great Depression (see pp.286–287) led to a global economic crisis. Both communism and fascism offered answers to hungry, unemployed people. Authoritarian governments came to power in central and eastern Europe, and democracy was in decline.

## Crisis and conflict

In Germany, as Nazi groups battled communists and against a backdrop of economic crisis, Hitler assumed power in 1933. The Spanish Civil War (see pp.292–293) epitomized the antipathy between fascists and the left. Italy and Germany supported fascist General Francisco Franco and used the war to test new weapons and strategies against the Republican government, which was supported with supplies and advisers by the USSR. Europe was once again choosing sides and forming alliances.

## ▷ Bombing Guernica

The bombing of the Basque town of Guernica, Spain, on April 26, 1937 during the Spanish Civil War was carried out by the Nazis in support of General Francisco Franco.



*“The truth is that men are tired of liberty.”*

BENITO MUSSOLINI, ITALIAN DICTATOR, 1934





**The rise of the Nazis**

Nazi leader Adolf Hitler addresses a rally of paramilitary SA (*Sturmabteilung*) troops in Germany in 1933. Such larger-than-life displays built up support for the Nazi Party to fever pitch.







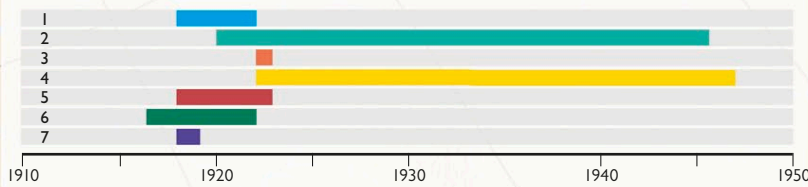


## AFTER WORLD WAR I

The postwar period saw territorial winners and losers. Russia lost the most, with Germany close behind. Many of the old empires had fallen, except for Britain and France, which retained influence and colonies worldwide.

**KEY**  
 New states  
 National borders 1923

### TIMELINE

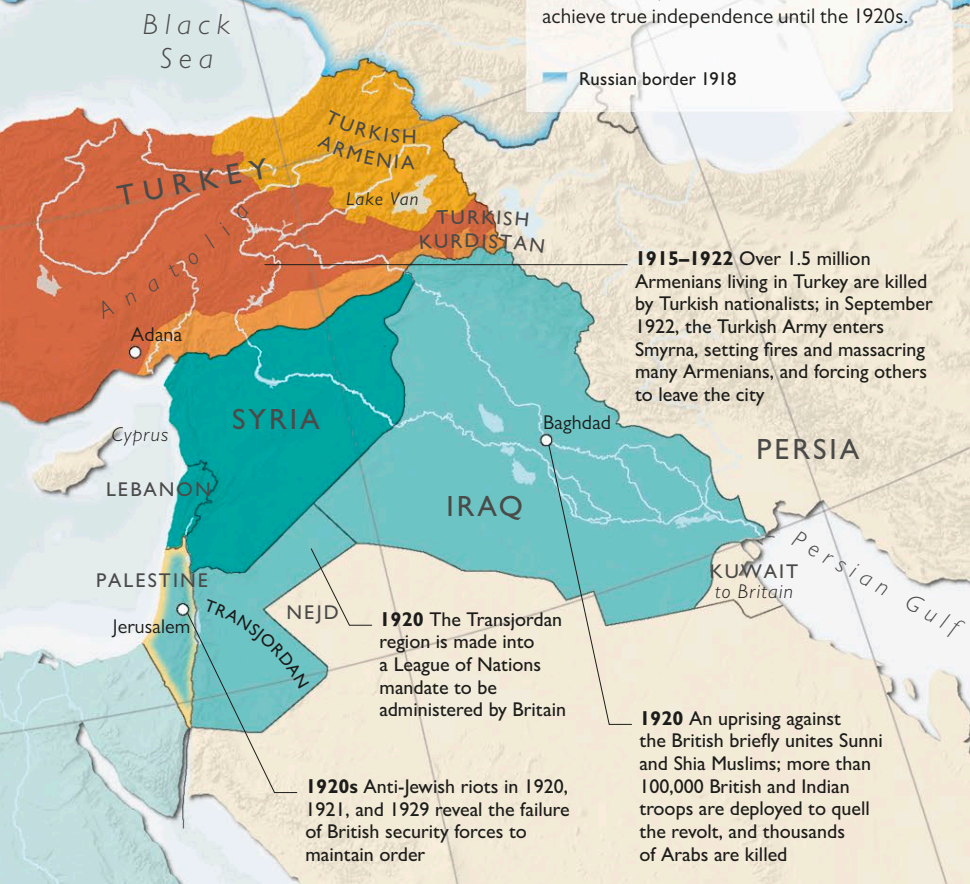


△ **The Wafd Party**  
 Members of the Egyptian nationalist party, the Wafd Party, gather in 1936. The party was instrumental in gaining independence.

### RUSSIAN LOSSES 1918–1922

The Bolshevik regime could not hold on to its new empire. In the 1918 Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, Russia recognized the independence of the Baltic States, Ukraine, Georgia, and Finland. Ukraine and Georgia both joined the USSR in 1922, and the Baltic States did not achieve true independence until the 1920s.

Russian border 1918



# AFTERMATH OF THE GREAT WAR

By the end of World War I, the political landscape of Europe and the Middle East had changed forever. Centuries-old empires and dynasties had collapsed, borders were redrawn, new nation-states were created, and the seeds of future conflict were sown.

World War I had a profound effect on global politics, bringing to an end three powerful monarchies—Germany, Russia, and Austria-Hungary. The victorious Allies assembled at the 1919 Paris Peace Conference to draw up a settlement. The main result was the Treaty of Versailles, which punished Germany harshly. Austria-Hungary, Turkey, and Bulgaria also suffered losses, while Italy, which had entered the war in 1915, was given former Habsburg lands in northern Italy. Also to gain were nine new nation-states created in Europe. The Middle East was also hugely impacted by the war. In 1916, the Sykes-Picot Agreement set out the intention to divide the Ottoman Empire's Middle Eastern territory between British and French zones of control. In many areas, the act of being placed under British or French control in 1920 fueled nationalist sentiments.

The victors of World War I hoped to build a lasting peace, but disputes rumbled on across the globe, and mass unemployment, bitter ideological divisions, fanatical nationalism, and the threat of communism created escalating international tension.

*"This [the Treaty of Versailles] is not peace. It is an armistice for 20 years."*

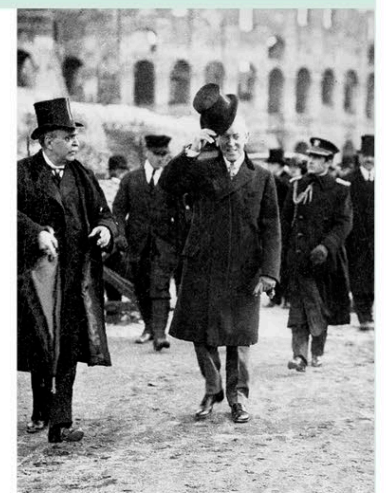
FERDINAND FOCH, FRENCH GENERAL, JUNE 28, 1919

## THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS

1920–1946

Proposed by US President Woodrow Wilson, the League of Nations was an international organization set up in Geneva in 1920 to preserve peace. Conflict was to be settled by negotiation; diplomacy; and, if necessary, sanctions. The league relied on international goodwill, but Germany and Russia were excluded, and the US Senate refused to ratify US membership. In 1946, the league was replaced by the United Nations.

President Wilson arrives in Italy to discuss founding the League of Nations.





# THE GREAT DEPRESSION

The US stock market crash in October 1929 was part of a worldwide economic recession that crippled the future of an entire generation. As people lost faith in democracy, new extremist politics gained popularity, setting the stage for the horrors of World War II.

The US recovered quickly after World War I. Factories used in the war effort switched to making consumer goods, and industrial growth doubled in the 1920s. Thousands of Americans invested in the stock market, often using borrowed money. A boom time, it became known as the “Roaring Twenties.” However, by mid-1929, there were signs of trouble. Unemployment was rising, and car sales had dipped. The crisis broke on October 24, when the stock market dropped by 11 percent. Panic set in, and over the next 6 days, the market crashed. One-quarter of the US working population became unemployed. In mid-1932, Franklin Roosevelt replaced Herbert Hoover as president and pledged a “New Deal” of social and economic reforms.

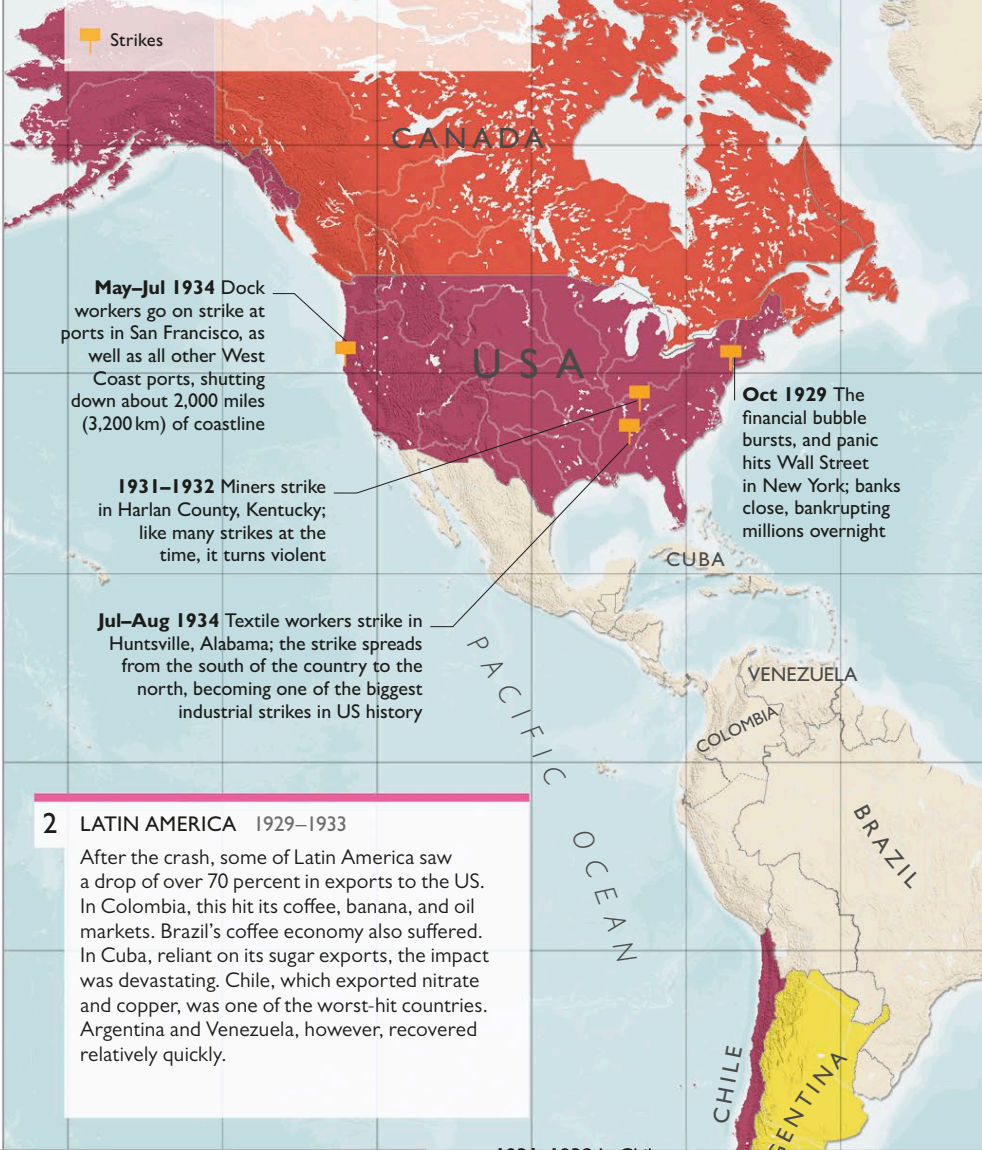
The Great Depression spread around the globe, leading to massive poverty. The only country not adversely affected was the USSR. In Germany, the US’s demand for outstanding loans to be repaid further impoverished the country, fueling the popularity of Adolf Hitler’s National Socialist (Nazi) Party.

*“There may be a recession in stock prices, but not anything in the nature of a crash.”*

IRVING FISHER, US ECONOMIST, SEPTEMBER 5, 1929

## I STOCK MARKET CRASH AND STRIKES 1929–1934

Approximately \$25 billion was lost in the 1929 crash. People became bankrupt, factories closed, trade collapsed, wages fell, and homelessness soared. There were strikes and riots across the country as workers sought protection offered by the unions, as well as greater involvement of the US government in the economy.



## 2 LATIN AMERICA 1929–1933

After the crash, some of Latin America saw a drop of over 70 percent in exports to the US. In Colombia, this hit its coffee, banana, and oil markets. Brazil’s coffee economy also suffered. In Cuba, reliant on its sugar exports, the impact was devastating. Chile, which exported nitrate and copper, was one of the worst-hit countries. Argentina and Venezuela, however, recovered relatively quickly.

1931–1932 In Chile, copper exports collapse, and the value of sodium nitrate exports to the US drops from \$21 million to \$1.4 million

1929–1930 In Argentina, exports of wheat and beef drop by more than two-thirds, and inflation increases; subsequent political instability leads to a military dictatorship

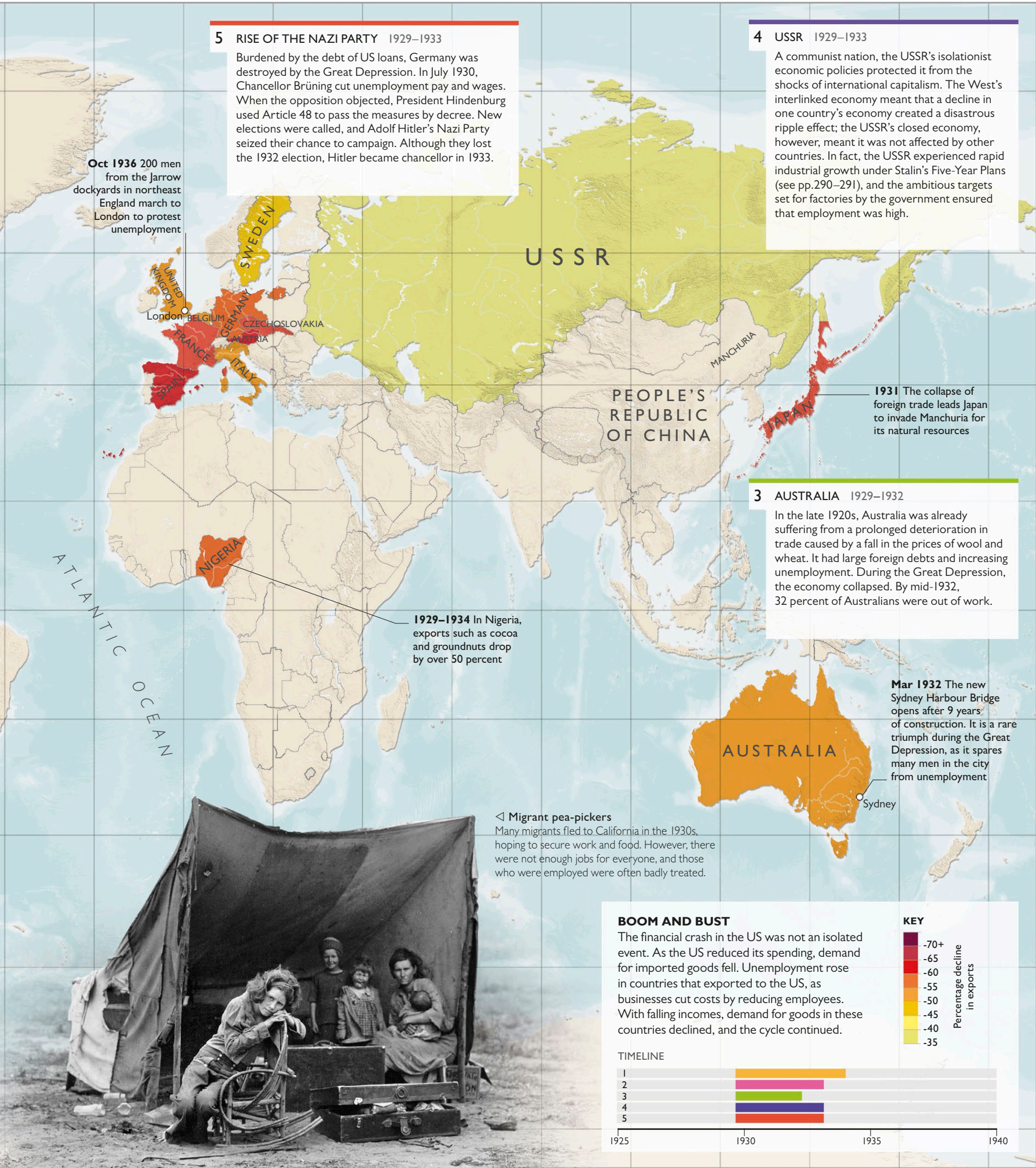
## THE DUST BOWL

In 1932, severe droughts hit the US from Texas to the Dakotas. Exposed topsoil turned to dust, and without windbreaks such as trees, high winds churned the dust into huge storms. Settlers and livestock choked on the dirt. Farmers, already hit by the Great Depression, were forced to migrate west to California, where regular harvests meant more jobs. Many rode along Route 66, which became known as the “road to opportunity.”

- KEY**
- Area of severe damage
  - Other areas damaged by dust storms
  - Migration route









2 BREAKDOWN OF THE ALLIANCE 1927–1936

In the early 1920s, the USSR supported the KMT, seeing it as part of an anti-imperialist revolution. In 1923, they ordered the CCP to join the KMT, but a bitter rivalry between the parties remained. After a temporary alliance, in 1927, Chiang dismissed his Soviet advisors and then turned against the CCP in a savage attack in Shanghai. It marked the beginning of years of violence between the parties.

Clashes between the CCP and KMT, with date

3 CHINESE REUNIFICATION 1928

During the second stage of the Northern Expedition, some warlords allied themselves with the KMT. This new support allowed the KMT to capture the city of Beijing. The Kuomintang became the single most powerful force in China, and Chiang Kai-shek was made president of the Republic of China in 1928.

Kuomintang control by 1928  
Warlords joining the Northern Expedition

THE NORTHERN EXPEDITION 1926–1928

Outside the few KMT-controlled provinces, China was ruled by regional warlords. Led by Chiang Kai-shek and supported by communist USSR, the KMT and CCP combined forces and advanced northward from Guangzhou to unify China in a campaign known as the Northern Expedition. During the first phase, they seized wealthy and heavily populated southern, central, and eastern areas.

Northern Expedition 1926–1928

NATIONALIST CHINA, 1926–1937

The Kuomintang (KMT) seized vast amounts of territory from 1926, but their control was challenged by both domestic and international forces eager to seize land.

▽ Chiang Kai-shek  
Following the death of its founder, Sun Yat-sen, Chiang Kai-shek became the leader of the KMT in 1926. He attempted to modernize China, but struggled to do so in a country beset by internal strife and constant threat from Japan.



1912–1945 Chiang is unable to capture Shanxi, which is in the hands of the warlord Yan Xishan; however, in 1927, Yan briefly forms an alliance with Chiang

Apr 20, 1929 Wuhan, which was set up as a capital by rival left-wing elements of the KMT, is captured by Chiang's troops

Sep 13, 1927 Changsha

Aug 1, 1927 Nanchang

9 Dec, 1927 Canton (Guangzhou)

Dec 9, 1927 A violent communist uprising occurs after the KMT severs its alliance with the CCP

Jun 8, 1928 Beijing falls, an important victory that brings the far north under KMT control

Mar 1927 Captured by Chiang's forces, Nanjing is made the new capital of the Republic of China

Apr 12, 1927 Shanghai

4 INCOMPLETE UNIFICATION 1931–1937

Despite the success of the Northern Expedition, China was only partly unified. Chiang was unable to defeat all the warlords, especially in the north. Faced with the Japanese invasion of Manchuria in September 1931, he became determined to eliminate domestic conflict. From 1935–1937, Chiang brought more provinces under the influence of the Republic of China.

Japanese control by 1936  
Kuomintang control by 1937





# CHINA AND NATIONALISM

When its last emperor abdicated in 1912 (see pp.252–253), China was torn apart as warlords and China's Nationalist Party rushed to fill the void. After Japan was given territory in China in 1919, political unrest grew, leading to the emergence of the Communist Party. Years of fighting between the two parties and Japan followed, which carried on during the wider conflict of World War II.

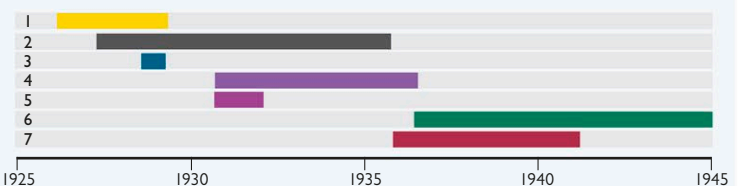
The years following the fall of the Qing Dynasty were tumultuous. Regional warlords fought among themselves for territory, and the Nationalist Party, the Kuomintang (KMT) (Guomindang in modern Pinyin)—which had helped to overthrow the Qing Dynasty—battled them for control. After Japan was given land in China following the Paris Peace Conference (1919), a radical group known as the May Fourth Movement demanded change, and the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) emerged.

In 1924, the KMT set up a government in Guangzhou and built up an army. In 1926, the new leader, Chiang Kai-shek, then began a military campaign to crush the warlords and unite China. The CCP initially helped, but in 1927, fearing a power struggle, Chiang turned against them, massacring communists in Shanghai. This outburst led to years of civil war (see pp.310–311). The KMT and the CCP came to an uneasy truce in 1937, when Japan invaded the country and began seizing territory.

## CHINA

During the first half of the 20th century, China experienced constant turbulence, with battles fought against regional warlords in attempts to unify the vast nation, frequent struggles between the nationalist and communist parties, and the ever-present threat of Japanese invasion.

### TIMELINE



## 5 IMPERIAL EXPANSION 1931–1932

Japan, which had limited land and natural resources, saw China as key to its imperialist ambitions. As China now appeared weak and fragmented, Japan launched a series of invasions to capture territory, annexing Manchuria in September 1931. From here, they sought control of the whole of northern China.

- Japanese control before Sep 1931
- Captured by Japanese Sep 1931–Feb 1932

**Mar 1, 1932** Chinese resistance is sporadic, and by March 1932, Japan has total control of Manchuria, which becomes a puppet state called Manchukuo

**Sep 18, 1931** Japanese soldiers blow up a strip of Japanese-controlled railway near Mukden. They blame the Chinese and use it as a reason to invade Manchuria

## JAPAN IN CHINA

Japan's rapid industrialization required access to raw materials overseas. It looked to China to expand its empire and was a constant military aggressor from 1931–1945.

## 6 SECOND SINO-JAPANESE WAR 1937–1945

In July 1937, following a clash between local Chinese soldiers and Japanese forces in Beijing, full-scale war erupted. Japan seized swathes of northern and eastern China, including the KMT capital Nanjing, installing puppet regimes. By 1941, much of central China was also under Japanese occupation. Although lacking training and equipment, Chinese nationalists refused to surrender.

- Japanese advance
- Japanese control by 1941
- Japanese control by 1945

**Dec 1937–Jan 1938** Japanese soldiers brutally attack the Chinese population of Nanjing. 260,000–350,000 people are killed and 20,000–80,000 women are raped

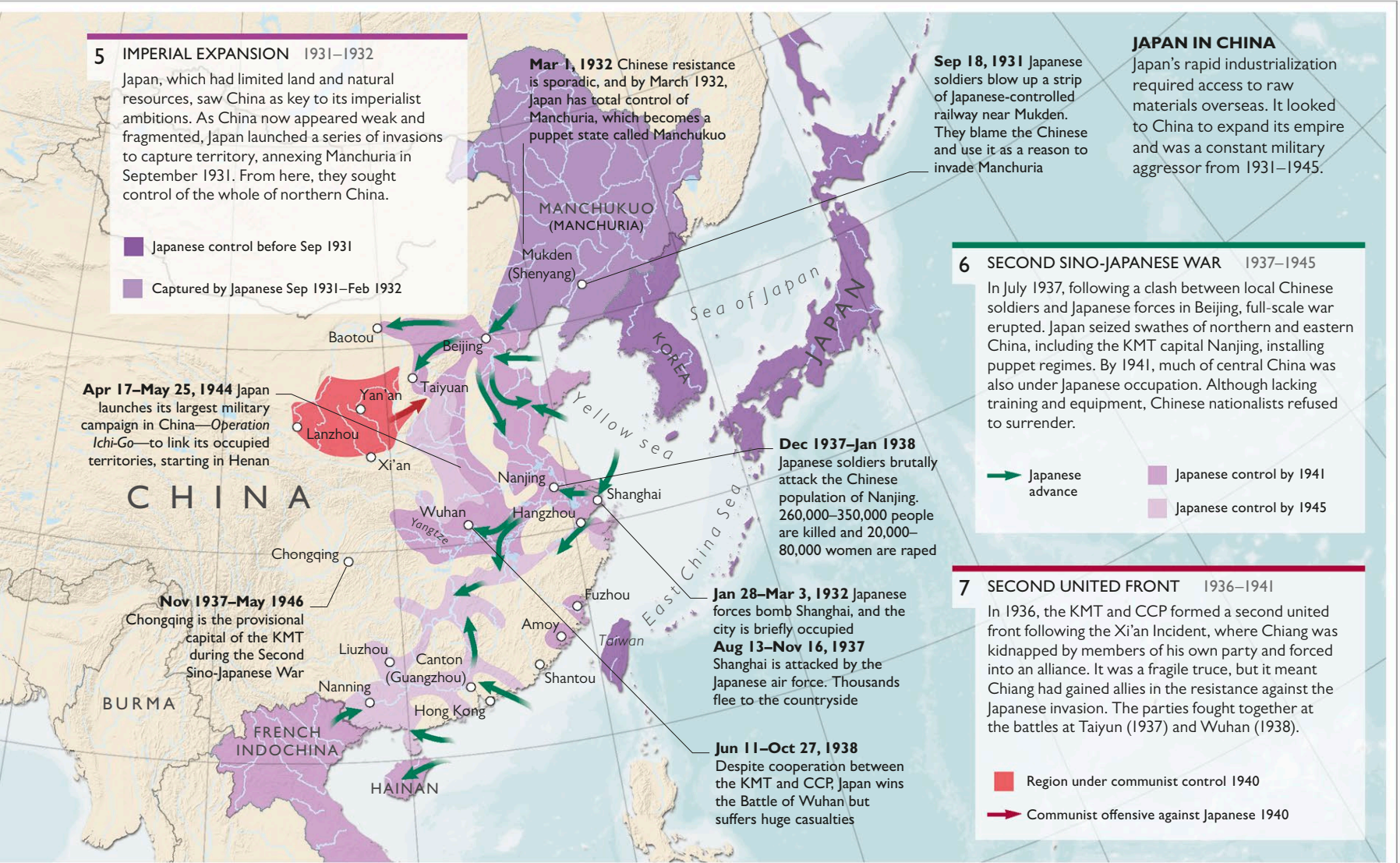
**Jan 28–Mar 3, 1932** Japanese forces bomb Shanghai, and the city is briefly occupied  
**Aug 13–Nov 16, 1937** Shanghai is attacked by the Japanese air force. Thousands flee to the countryside

**Jun 11–Oct 27, 1938** Despite cooperation between the KMT and CCP, Japan wins the Battle of Wuhan but suffers huge casualties

## 7 SECOND UNITED FRONT 1936–1941

In 1936, the KMT and CCP formed a second united front following the Xi'an Incident, where Chiang was kidnapped by members of his own party and forced into an alliance. It was a fragile truce, but it meant Chiang had gained allies in the resistance against the Japanese invasion. The parties fought together at the battles at Taiyuan (1937) and Wuhan (1938).

- Region under communist control 1940
- Communist offensive against Japanese 1940





## 1 GULAGS 1917–1953

Gulags—concentration camps for prisoners—were created under Lenin but proliferated under Stalin. They housed a range of convicts, who were exploited to open up remote and forbidding areas of the country, such as the Arctic north and the Siberian east. The population of the gulag camps reached its height in the late 1940s, but the system was run down under Stalin's successors.

 Gulag


 Isolation camp region

## 2 COLLECTIVIZATION 1927–1953

Stalin deemed Soviet agricultural methods outdated, as they produced too little food for a growing urban population. From 1927, Stalin instigated collectivization, uniting small farms into larger collectives. Food production eventually grew, and labor was freed for industry. Few farms volunteered, and terror was used to coerce them into handing over their land. Millions were starved, persecuted, or sent to gulags. By 1939, 99 percent of land was collectivized.

## 3 INDUSTRIALIZATION 1928–1953

Stalin's main ambition was industrialization on a massive scale. Over 12 million people moved from rural areas to the new factories and towns that had been built or extensively remodeled between 1928–1932. They were attracted by the promise of higher wages and training. Life for workers was brutal, but Stalin achieved his goal; under the first Five-Year Plan, which ended in 1934, there was a 50 percent increase in industrial output.

 New or remodeled towns

**Nov 1923** The Solovki prison camp is opened on an island in the White Sea. Political opponents and criminals are incarcerated here

**Mar 1918** Fearing invasion from the West, Lenin moves the capital city farther east, to Moscow. It undergoes extensive modernization, including the building of the subway system

**1945** After World War I, Kiev becomes a major industrial center

**1929** Under Stalin's Five-Year Plans, iron ore-rich Magnitogorsk is extensively remodeled and becomes a one-industry city

**1921** Novosibirsk is reconstructed after damage done by the Russian Civil War. It becomes the major industrial center in Siberia


**1931** Karlag is one of the largest labor camps. Its prisoners include scientists, doctors, artists, and political figures

◀ **"No room for kulaks"**

This Soviet poster from 1930 denounces kulaks as the opponents of the collective farm. People were encouraged to believe that kulaks were the enemy of the working class.


## 4 FAMINE 1932–1933


Grain grown on the collectives was given to the city workforce, leaving little for rural peasants. Hardest hit by famine was the north Caucasus, the Volga region, southern Russia, central Russian Asia, and above all the Ukraine, known as the Soviet "breadbasket." Millions died in the Holodomor ("hunger death"), as Stalin used famine to break Ukrainian resistance to farm reform.

 Famine

## 5 DEPORTATIONS 1942–1945

Stalin enforced mass deportations of entire peoples deemed "anti-Soviet." These groups were relocated to underpopulated, inhospitable areas of the country. During World War II, he deported about a dozen nationalities from western regions of the USSR to central Asia, accusing them of collaboration with the invading Nazi army.

 Deportations 1942–1945

 Areas depopulated by deportations




# SOVIET UNION UNDER STALIN

With civil war at an end by 1922, Joseph Stalin had ambitions to transform the newly formed Soviet Union into an industrialized, modern society. He achieved extraordinary economic growth for Russia but became one of the most brutal tyrants of the 20th century.

After the death of Vladimir Lenin in 1924, Stalin manipulated his way to becoming leader of the USSR. Stalin wanted to transform the country into an international power, but this required rapid industrial growth. To achieve this, he launched a series of Five-Year Plans, starting in 1928. He began by taking farms from wealthy peasant landowners (kulaks), combining them into vast farms to be run collectively, providing more crops for the population. When these measures were resisted, he unleashed a wave of terror across the countryside. Millions of kulaks were deported, sent to labor camps, or deliberately starved when their grain was seized.

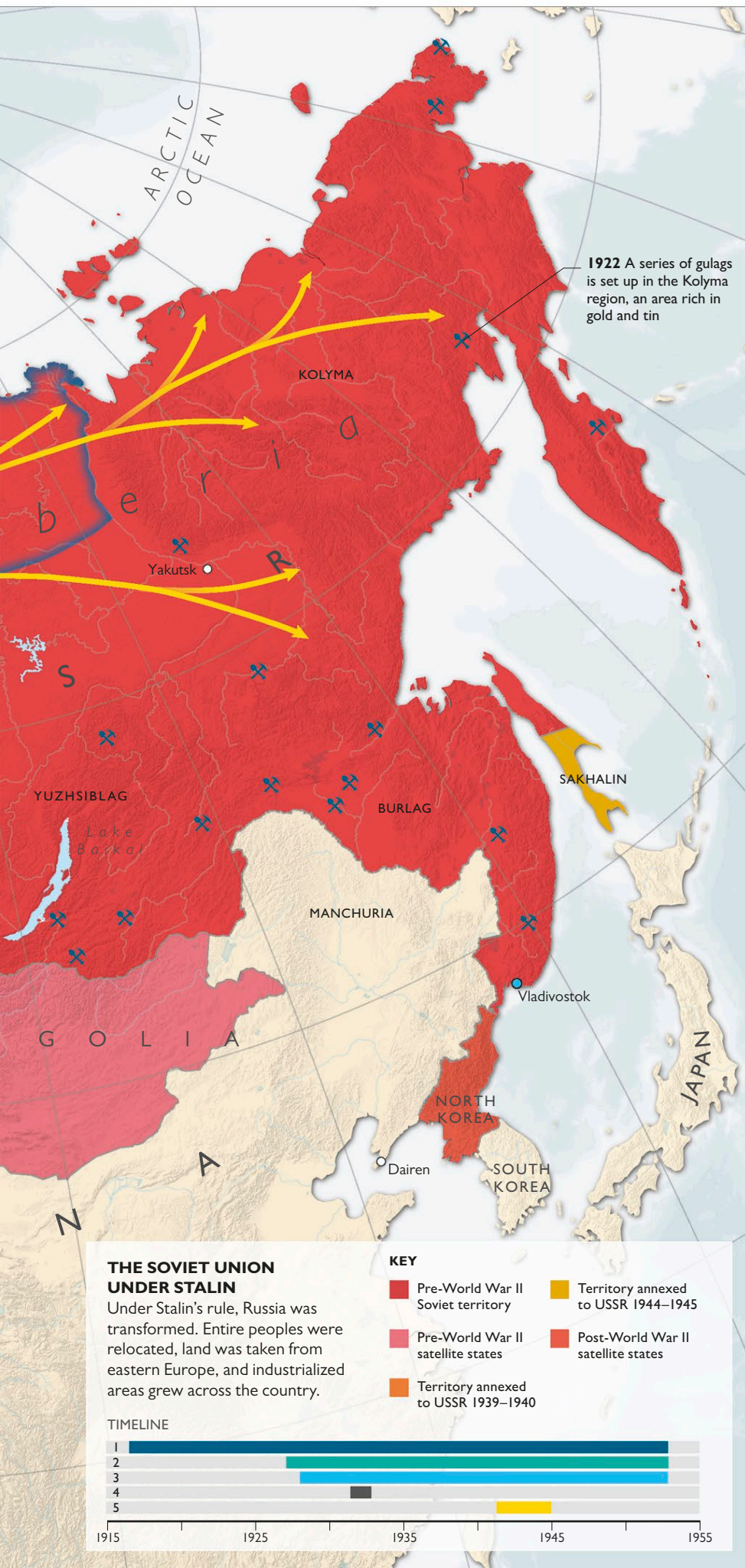
Ever fearful of dissent, Stalin launched a campaign of terror from 1936–1938 to wipe out anyone who might oppose him. During this “Great Terror,” the gulag concentration camp system was expanded, with hundreds of thousands executed after a brief trial. Meanwhile, Stalin promoted himself as the “Father of the People.” He rallied his troops against a German invasion in World War II (see pp.296–297), and after the war, he expanded communism beyond the USSR. By the 1950s, a modern Russia had emerged, but at a terrible cost.

*“The death of one man is a tragedy. The death of a million is a statistic.”*

JOSEPH STALIN, LEADER OF THE USSR

## JOSEPH STALIN 1878–1953

Joseph Stalin began his rise to power in 1905, when he befriended Vladimir Lenin. His political career was quite unpredictable; in 1917, he had been a minor figure in the Bolshevik Revolution, but when he was made General Secretary of the Party in 1922, he used this role to expand his power. Once leader, he set about making the USSR a great industrial power. He used propaganda to build a cult of personality, which reached its peak during World War II, when he led the USSR to victory over Germany. After the war, Stalin led the USSR into a Cold War with its former allies.





# THE SPANISH CIVIL WAR

The Spanish Civil War (1936–1939) epitomized the struggle between the old and new political orders. A prequel to World War II, it ushered in a new and horrific form of warfare that would come to define future conflicts in the 20th century.

Spain in the 1930s was a divided country, split between Church and State, rich and poor, town and countryside. Politics was also polarized. On one side was the left-wing Popular Front (Republicans), made up of socialists, communists, liberals, and anarchists. On the other side was the right-wing National Front (Nationalists), supported by the Falange (a Spanish fascist party), monarchists, and some Catholics.

On February 16, 1936, the Republicans narrowly won a general election. Fearing a communist revolution, General Francisco Franco, a career army officer and one of the Nationalist leaders, launched a military uprising in Spanish Morocco and across southwestern Spain. Pro-government groups rallied against the Nationalist rebels, but Franco received significant

help from Nazi Germany and Fascist Italy, both keen to stop the spread of communism in Europe. By November 1936, Franco's troops had made it to the outskirts of Madrid, where support for the Republicans was strong. Unable to capture the city, the Nationalists laid siege to Madrid for two and a half years.

The Republicans continued to control eastern Spain and much of the southeast. However, Franco's forces were better coordinated, and areas under Republican control gradually shrank. The Nationalist victory at the Battle of Teruel (December 1937–February 1938) was a turning point in the war, and at the Battle of the Ebro (July–November 1938), the Republican troops were all but wiped out. By spring 1939, the bitter conflict was over, and Franco's government was recognized by most of Europe.

*"Better to die on one's feet than to live on one's knees."*

DOLORES IBARRURI, REPUBLICAN, JULY 18, 1936

## GENERAL FRANCO 1892–1975

Born into a military family, General Francisco Franco became the youngest general in the Spanish Army in 1926. Franco led the Nationalist forces to victory in the Spanish Civil War, and then became the head of state in Spain from 1939 until his death in 1975. Although he sympathized with the Axis powers, Franco kept Spain out of World War II, and under his rule, the country became more industrialized and prosperous. However, he was a ruthless military dictator who presided over a totalitarian regime.



## 1 THE START OF THE WAR JULY 1936

The Civil War began on July 17, 1936, when Nationalist forces based in Spanish Morocco launched a coup against the newly elected Republican government. Franco assumed command of the Army of Africa—a Moroccan-based group of professional soldiers—on July 19. From July 27, Franco's army was flown from Morocco to Spain by German and Italian forces, and fighting soon spread through southwest Spain.

→ Nationalist forces  
→ Republican forces  
✕ Major battles

## 2 FOREIGN INTERVENTION SEPTEMBER 1936

A total of 27 countries, including Britain, France, the USSR, Germany, and Italy, signed a nonintervention pact in September 1936. However, the ideological nature of the war gave it an international element. The Nationalists were aided by soldiers and equipment supplied by Fascist Italy and Nazi Germany. The Republicans were supported by the communist governments of Russia and Mexico, as well as by volunteers from International Brigades. These were groups of left-wing fighters who came from all over the world to fight in a war they saw as a struggle against extreme nationalism and tyranny.

German support  
USSR support  
Italian support

Aug 22, 1936 Portugal allows German ships to dock at Lisbon and from there dispatch war supplies into Nationalist territory

## 3 CIVILIAN ATROCITIES 1936–1939

During the course of the war, both sides committed atrocities against civilians. The Republicans targeted anyone believed to be right wing, including teachers, lawyers, mayors, and landowners. Hatred of the Church meant that many churches were ransacked. Meanwhile, in Guernica, Franco's forces undertook a brutal attack on civilians from the air. This extreme violence stunned the international community.

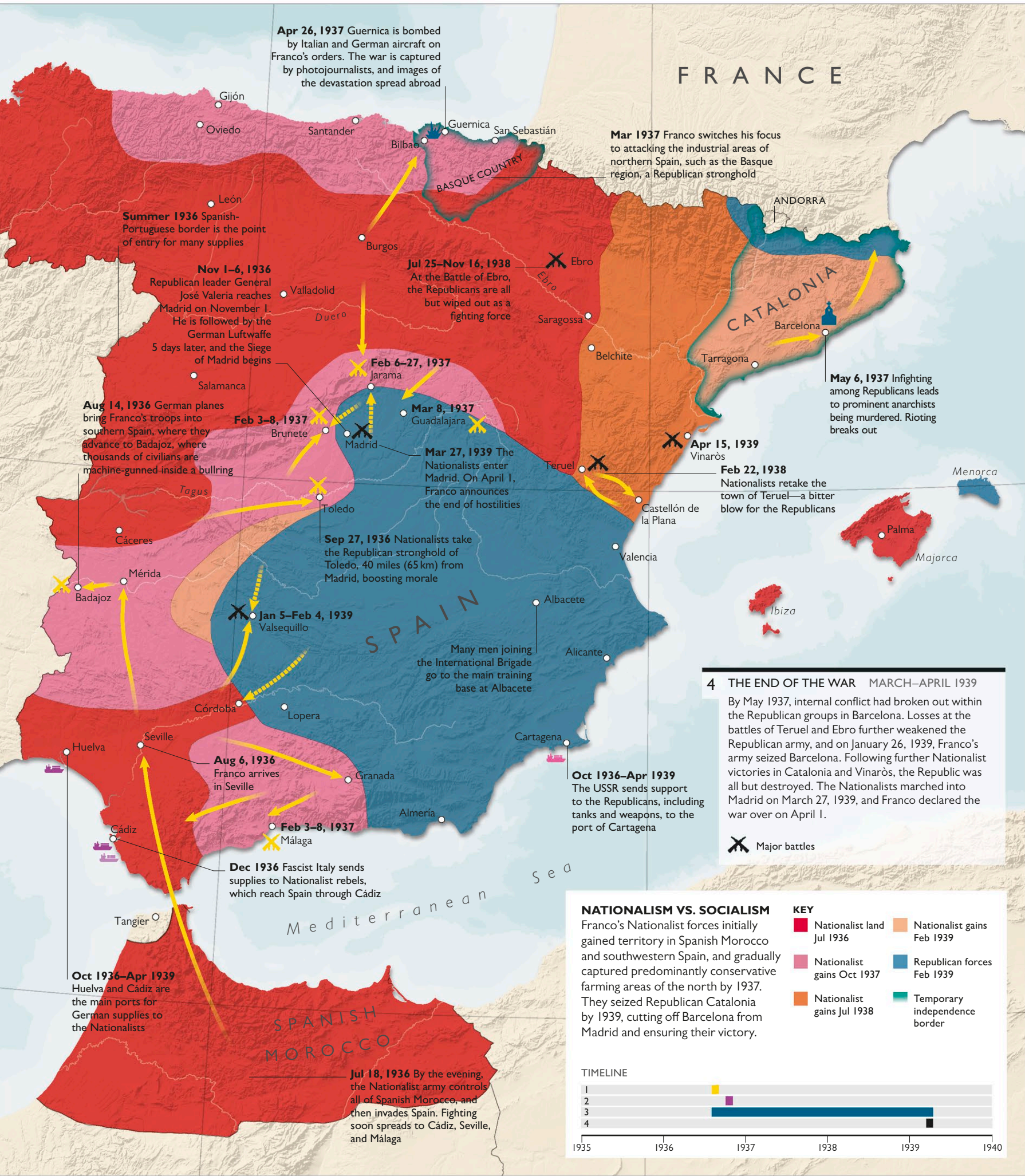
Republican violence  
Nationalist violence

## ▽ Preparing to attack

Republican soldiers prepare mortar shells to fire at the Nationalist army in 1936. The Nationalists were organized and well-armed.









# WORLD WAR II

A European and Asian conflict that became a global war, World War II (1939–1945) was the most brutal conflict in history, engulfing the world in a struggle over ideology and national sovereignty. It was also the costliest war in terms of human life—at least 55 million people were killed in battle, in concentration camps, and in bombed-out cities. The war marked a watershed in world history.



▽ **Paris under siege**  
Seen here in front of the iconic Eiffel Tower, Adolf Hitler, flanked by German officials, takes a tour of conquered Paris in June 1940, marking the end of the French Campaign.

The treaties meant to bring peace after World War I (see pp. 274–275) sowed the seeds for future conflict. Germany was made to pay substantial war reparations. In 1923, the currency collapsed, impoverishing millions, and in 1929–1932, the Great Depression (see pp.286–287) plunged Germany into severe recession. Here, and elsewhere in Europe, people were disenchanted with liberal politics and weak governments that polarized political opinion into the Right and Left. Right-wing politics prevailed in Italy, Germany, and Japan—known collectively as the Axis powers, although each had its own ambitions for territorial expansion.

### The Axis aggression

Japan invaded Manchuria then attacked the rest of China; Italy overran Abyssinia (modern Ethiopia); and in Germany, Adolf Hitler pursued his plans to unite all German-speaking people in one country.

In March 1938, Germany annexed Austria. The German-speaking districts of Czechoslovakia—the Sudetenland—were occupied next. In September 1939, Hitler invaded Poland, convinced that Britain and France would do nothing. To his surprise, both countries declared war.

The invasion of Poland lasted just over a month. Hitler put aside his hatred of communists to work in

cooperation with the Soviets, who attacked Poland from the east. The world watched in shock as Germany attacked Denmark and Norway then France, Belgium, and the Netherlands. Within 6 weeks, France had fallen. Hitler then turned his sights on Britain. His plans to invade were abandoned, however, after the *Luftwaffe*—the German air force—failed to win the Battle of Britain (1940).

### Total war

The European War became a world war. In June 1940, Italy declared war on Britain and France. “Total War” was brought to civilians when bombing raids pulverized European cities. With men joining the army, women were recruited to work on farms and in factories. Europe experienced food shortages, which led to food rationing. Despite having signed strategic pacts with the USSR in the past, Germany invaded Russia in June 1941, and Britain gained a new ally.

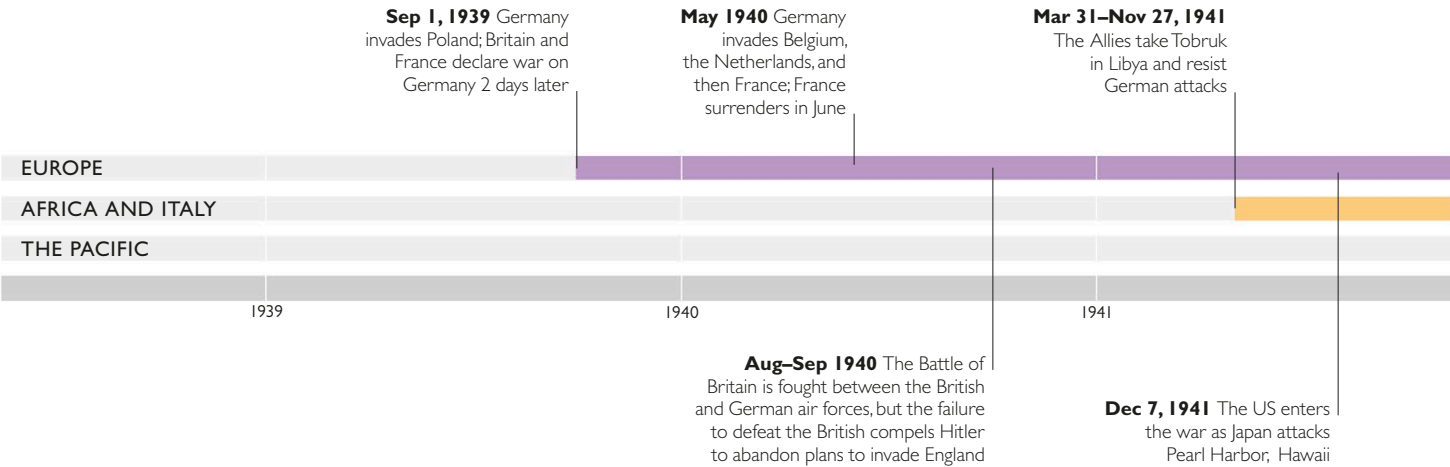
As German troops swept into the USSR, they inflicted a campaign of extermination against communists. Then, in December 1941, the US entered the war after its naval



△ **Japanese ambitions**  
Determined to become a major colonial power, Japan built up the largest navy in the Pacific Ocean. This recruitment poster seeks pilots for its aircraft carriers.

### THEATERS OF CONFLICT

World War II became a global war but had two main theaters—Europe and the Pacific. In Europe, the war started with the Western Front as the German “blitzkrieg” swept through Western Europe into France. The Eastern Front opened when Germany turned on the USSR. The Pacific theater, fought over by the Allies and Japan, stretched throughout eastern China and Southeast Asia, including the Pacific Ocean and its islands. The role of the US in this arena was pivotal.







#### ◁ Gateway of death

Millions of unsuspecting Jews arrived by train at the infamous death camp, Auschwitz-Birkenau, where they were gassed. It became a memorial site after the war.

base at Pearl Harbor in the Hawaiian Islands was attacked by Japan. Japan won quick victories in the Pacific and dominated the region. In North Africa, British troops struggled against German and Italian forces. By the summer of 1942, Hitler was at the height of his power, but in November, the German General Erwin Rommel was stopped at El Alamein in Egypt. Soviet victories at Stalingrad and Kursk in 1943 destroyed the German sixth army, which was forced to surrender. This defeat marked the beginning of a retreat that was to end in Berlin.

#### The tide turns

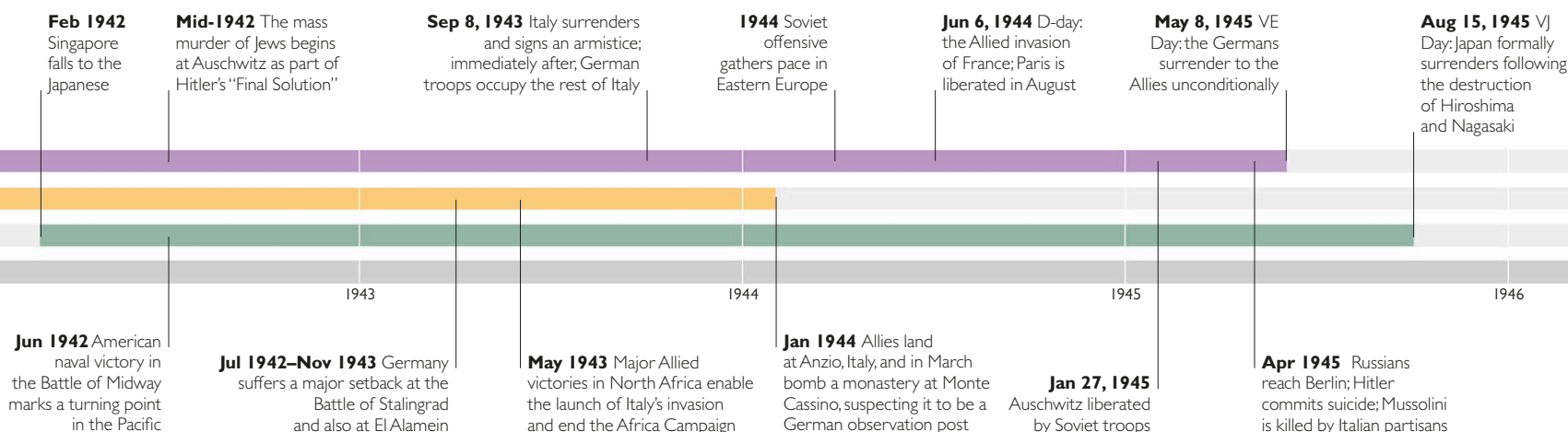
A strategy was devised by the Allies—Britain, France, the US, and the USSR—in 1943 to free Europe. While the USSR drove the Germans back in the east, and the British and Americans advanced through Italy, a huge Allied force landed in Normandy in June 1944. Almost a year later, it reached the River Elbe in northern Germany. As Soviet troops took Berlin, Hitler committed suicide on April 30, 1945. Germany surrendered a week later. The war was over in Europe but not in the Pacific, where Americans fought island by island. Japan finally surrendered soon after Hiroshima and Nagasaki were destroyed by American atomic bombs in August 1945 (see pp.306–307).

World War II changed the world forever. New military technology had shown the capacity for massive destruction, with U-boats, jet aircraft,

and, ultimately, nuclear bombs. Germany's Nazis displayed new, efficient, and horrific methods of mass killing in their genocide of almost 6 million Jews. Countries went bankrupt, major cities were destroyed, and the great European empires were on their last legs. Representatives of 50 nations met in 1945 to form the United Nations in the hope that out of this devastation, a new era of international understanding could begin.

#### ▽ Bombed city

Ferocious bombing raids on major cities defined WWII. This 1945 photograph shows the German city of Dresden, which was among the last to be destroyed in the war.





**8 THE BATTLE OF STALINGRAD**  
AUGUST 1942–FEBRUARY 1943

A new Axis offensive in 1942 brought them to the industrial city of Stalingrad. In one of the largest and bloodiest battles of the war, almost 800,000 civilians and soldiers were killed. It ended with a humiliating German surrender, and this marked a turning point in WWII.

(C) Siege

**7 INVASION OF THE SOVIET UNION**  
JUNE–DECEMBER 1941

Germany, along with its Axis allies, attacked the Soviet Union with 4 million troops, on a front of almost 1,000 miles. In 3 months, the invaders had almost reached Moscow and Leningrad, but here they failed to win complete victories. The advance was halted in December 1941.

(C) Siege

**6 BRITAIN UNDER ATTACK**  
JULY 1940–MAY 1941

Hitler's plans to invade Britain were scuppered when Germany failed to beat Britain in the skies in 1940. Hitler switched to bombing Britain's cities, but he abandoned the campaign in May 1941 in favor of invading the Soviet Union.

German bombing raids

**5 ITALY'S CAMPAIGNS**  
JUNE 1940–FEBRUARY 1942

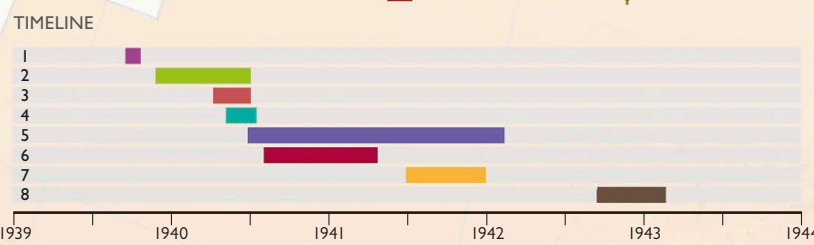
Italy invaded southern France in June 1940, keen to profit from German successes and to give Italy a place at any later peace conference. To gain control of the Mediterranean, Mussolini then attacked British and British Empire forces in north Africa and attempted to invade Greece. The Italians were repelled in both Egypt and Greece, and Hitler had to divert German troops in support of his ally.

Italian advance Allied offensive

**AXIS CONQUESTS 1939–1943**

Germany launched offensives in both eastern and western Europe, while Italy advanced in the Mediterranean. German forces used armor and aircraft to great effect.

KEY	
Axis powers	Axis conquests 1941
Axis satellites	Allied powers
Axis conquests 1939	German advance
Axis conquests 1940	Airborne attacks







# AXIS POWERS ADVANCE

Between 1939 and 1942, the armies of Nazi Germany and its Axis allies conquered most of mainland Europe in a series of lightning campaigns. Germany was denied total victory by the stubborn resistance of Britain and the Soviet Union.

An agreement between two dictators, Germany's Adolf Hitler and Soviet ruler Joseph Stalin, to divide Poland between them was a prelude to World War II in Europe. When the

Germans invaded Poland, Britain and France declared war on Germany but made no practical

effort to aid the Poles. The initiative stayed with Hitler, who again took the offensive in spring 1940. Outclassed by the aggression and professionalism of German forces, the Allied armies were defeated on the Western Front. France surrendered, but Britain fought on under a new prime minister, Winston Churchill, surviving air attack and blockade by German submarines.

Italian dictator Benito Mussolini belatedly entered the war in June 1940, once it seemed clear Germany was winning, but his forces were of

lamentably poor quality. Hitler was drawn into fighting in the Mediterranean zone to save his ally from humiliating defeat by the British.

Hitler's long-term goal, however, had always been to establish the Germans as a master race controlling the Slav lands to the east, so in June 1941, he ordered the invasion of the Soviet Union. He was joined by his allies: Italy, the second Axis power; Finland, which had recently lost land to the Soviets in their conflict of 1939–1940; and Hungary, Romania, and Slovakia, whose right-wing governments became allied to the Axis powers and were pressured into joining the Soviet invasion. Despite further victories that saw his armies occupy vast tracts of Soviet territory, by the end of 1942, it seemed that Hitler had overreached himself. The era of German triumphs came to an end at the Battle of Stalingrad in 1943.

## ADOLF HITLER 1889–1945

Hitler was born in Austria, the son of a minor official. He fought in the German army in World War I and after the war became leader of the small National Socialist (Nazi) Party. The party came to prominence after Hitler attempted a coup in 1923; the coup failed, but the Nazis went on to attract mass support during the Great Depression. Appointed Chancellor of Germany in 1933, Hitler soon assumed dictatorial powers. He re-armed Germany in defiance of the Treaty of Versailles and set out to dominate Europe, but his aggressive policies led to a war that ultimately brought disaster to Germany. He died at his bunker in Berlin in April 1945.





1 GHETTOS 1939–1942

Under Nazi occupation, Jewish people living in small towns and villages were transferred to ghettos set up within the cities. The Nazis established more than 1,000 ghettos in Poland and the Soviet Union alone. Starvation and disease were rife due to food shortages and poor sanitation. In 1942, after the Nazis decided to kill the Jews, the Germans destroyed many of the ghettos and deported the Jews to death camps.

★ Ghettos

2 POLITICAL CONTROL 1939–1945

Nazi Germany persuaded Hungary, Romania, and Bulgaria to accede to the Tripartite Pact as Axis allies. In Slovakia, Norway, and Croatia, puppet regimes were installed—these countries had their own government but with restricted autonomy and Nazi commissioners in residence. In unoccupied France, the Vichy regime was forced to accept the terms of a German-imposed armistice.

🏠 Puppet regimes

3 LABOR CONSCRIPTION 1940–1945

In all the countries occupied, Germany controlled labor and industry for its war effort; the free deployment of labor was prohibited. Laborers were issued with workbooks and either worked in plants in the occupied countries or were sent to Germany. By the end of 1944, about 8.2 million foreign civilians and prisoners of war, as well as 700,000 concentration camp prisoners, were workers in the German Reich.

✂ Forced labor conscription

7 EXTERMINATION CAMPS 1942–1945

Dedicated death camps did not come into operation until 1942, when the Nazis implemented a policy to exterminate the Jews of Europe. Most victims were killed immediately upon their arrival, in the gas chambers, but a minority were kept as slave labor: Roma people, communists, homosexuals, and other “undesirables” were included in the mass murder.

✂ Extermination camps

6 MASS KILLINGS 1941–1943

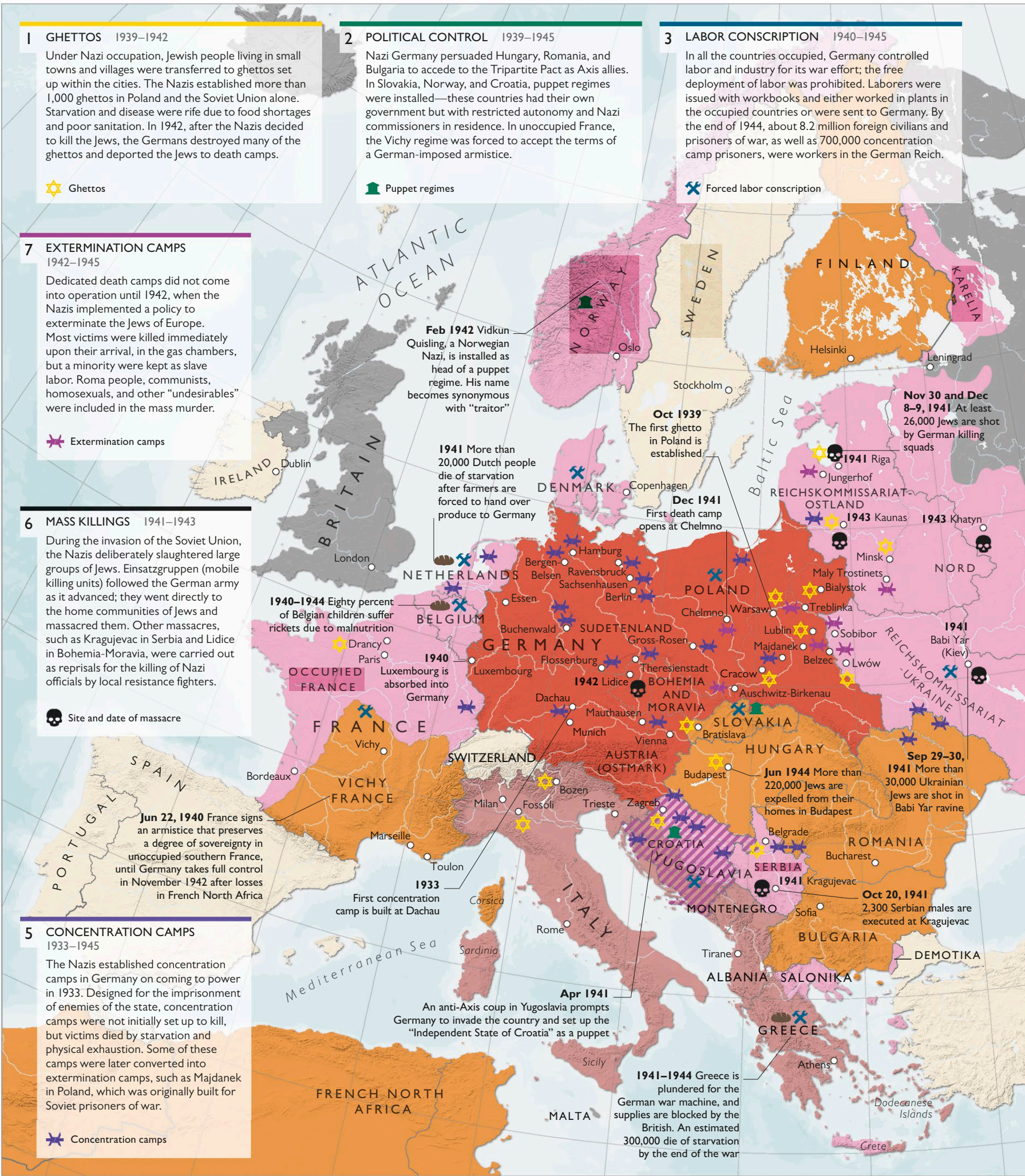
During the invasion of the Soviet Union, the Nazis deliberately slaughtered large groups of Jews. Einsatzgruppen (mobile killing units) followed the German army as it advanced; they went directly to the home communities of Jews and massacred them. Other massacres, such as Kragujevac in Serbia and Lidice in Bohemia-Moravia, were carried out as reprisals for the killing of Nazi officials by local resistance fighters.

💀 Site and date of massacre

5 CONCENTRATION CAMPS 1933–1945

The Nazis established concentration camps in Germany on coming to power in 1933. Designed for the imprisonment of enemies of the state, concentration camps were not initially set up to kill, but victims died by starvation and physical exhaustion. Some of these camps were later converted into extermination camps, such as Majdanek in Poland, which was originally built for Soviet prisoners of war.

✂ Concentration camps





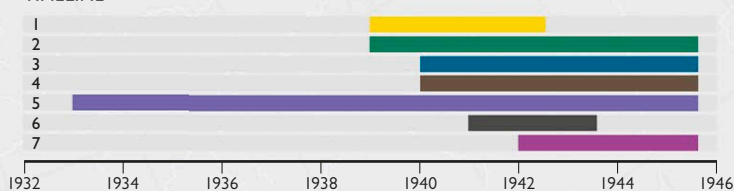
### THE GREATER GERMAN REICH

By 1942, the Axis powers and their satellites dominated Europe. Germany and Italy placed some regions under military occupation, while others were absorbed to create the "Greater German Reich."

#### KEY

- Greater German Reich 1942
- Axis satellites
- Areas occupied by Germany and Finland
- Temporary Axis satellite
- Italy and areas occupied by Italy
- Allied territories

#### TIMELINE



#### △ Holocaust survivors

The Soviet army discovered the Nazi death camps as they advanced through eastern Europe in 1944–1945, including Auschwitz-Birkenau in southern Poland, where the children in this photo were found.

**1941–1944** Approximately 2.6 million Soviet prisoners die of starvation and disease in German captivity. The people of occupied USSR are forced to eat dogs and rats and cook their food in paraffin

### 4 THE BATTLE FOR FOOD 1940–1945

At least 20 million people died of starvation during World War II. Hitler sought to create a Reich that was self-sufficient and independent of world trade. He regarded the whole of Eastern Europe as an industrial site and a food source and was prepared to let its people starve in his pursuit of Lebensraum (living space) for German-speaking peoples. In other parts of Europe, Jews and non-Germans were starved, either by deliberate German policy or by Allied blockades.

Major food shortages

# OCCUPIED EUROPE

The Axis occupation of a large area of Europe in World War II brought hardship or death to many millions of the continent's inhabitants. The brutal experience of Nazi rule, and resistance to it, had profound effects on European politics and society.

The German victories early in the war were met with a mixed response in the defeated nations. In all countries, there were both anti-Nazi resistance fighters and also collaborators—those who accepted defeat and sought a role in the new German-dominated Europe. In some places, such as Croatia, Lithuania, and Ukraine, the Nazis were initially welcomed as liberators. The French government, based at Vichy, was a willing collaborator for the Germans.

Some German officials dreamed of a New Order in which all of Europe would flourish under German leadership, but Nazi leader Adolf Hitler was interested only in domination and exploitation. In practice, the Nazis simply plundered the conquered countries for their resources of food and labor, treating collaborators with contempt and suppressing opposition with terror. The worst suffering was in eastern Europe, where Hitler planned to reduce the Slavic peoples to servile status and colonize the land with German settlers in order to achieve his ultimate goal of gaining more Lebensraum (living space) for German-speaking peoples. Germany's borders were expanded and redrawn to create the Greater German Reich (realm). One-fifth of Poland's people were killed during the war, including most of its Jewish population. The only check to the Nazis' extermination of the Jews of Europe was their need to keep Jewish prisoners alive for use as slave labor.

### ARMED RESISTANCE

#### 1940 ONWARD

The hardships of life under Nazi rule inspired armed resistance movements, backed by the Allies. The largest of these forces fought in Poland, Yugoslavia, the western Soviet Union, and northern Italy after German occupation in 1943. Communists played a leading role, and in some places, notably Yugoslavia, there was bitter conflict between communist and noncommunist resistance fighters. Armed resistance in France was limited in scale but essential to French pride.

#### Russian resistance

Women and girls in the occupied western Soviet Union practice shooting guns in a trench in order to defend themselves.





THE JAPANESE OFFENSIVE 1941–1942

In addition to its military bases on Pacific islands and in occupied China, Japan positioned troops in French Indochina after France's defeat by Nazi Germany in 1940. From these bases, Japan launched a series of offensives across Southeast Asia and the Pacific.

**KEY**

Military bases

US possessions

British possessions

Australia and possessions

China

USSR

Dutch possessions

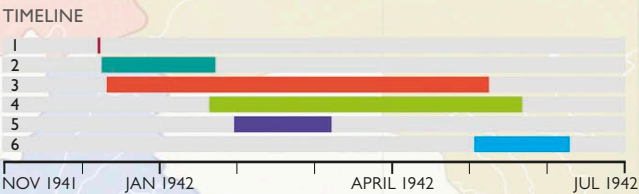
Japan and possessions

Japanese front line, June 1942

Japanese carrier/air raid

Allied carrier/air raid

Under Japanese control 1941



△ Japanese attack Pearl Harbor  
At 8:00 a.m. on December 7, 1941, 366 Japanese bombers and fighters struck the US naval base at Pearl Harbor. The attack killed 2,403 Americans but damaged or destroyed only 18 of 94 warships.

**6 ALLIED VICTORIES MAY 4–JUNE 6, 1942**  
In May, Japan sent a large fleet to capture the Allied base of Port Moresby in New Guinea, a plan that the Allies thwarted in the Coral Sea. The Allies then deciphered Japanese signal codes that warned them of an attack on the US base on Midway Island. The ensuing battle was an important win for the US Navy and marked a turning point in the Pacific war.

**5 CONQUEST OF THE DUTCH EAST INDIES FEBRUARY–MARCH 9, 1942**  
The rubber and oil fields in the Dutch East Indies (Indonesia) made it a prime target. In February, Japan made a series of landings, at the same time bombing Darwin, Australia, to cut off Allied reinforcements. The Allies suffered defeat in a series of naval battles and failed to halt the Japanese advance.

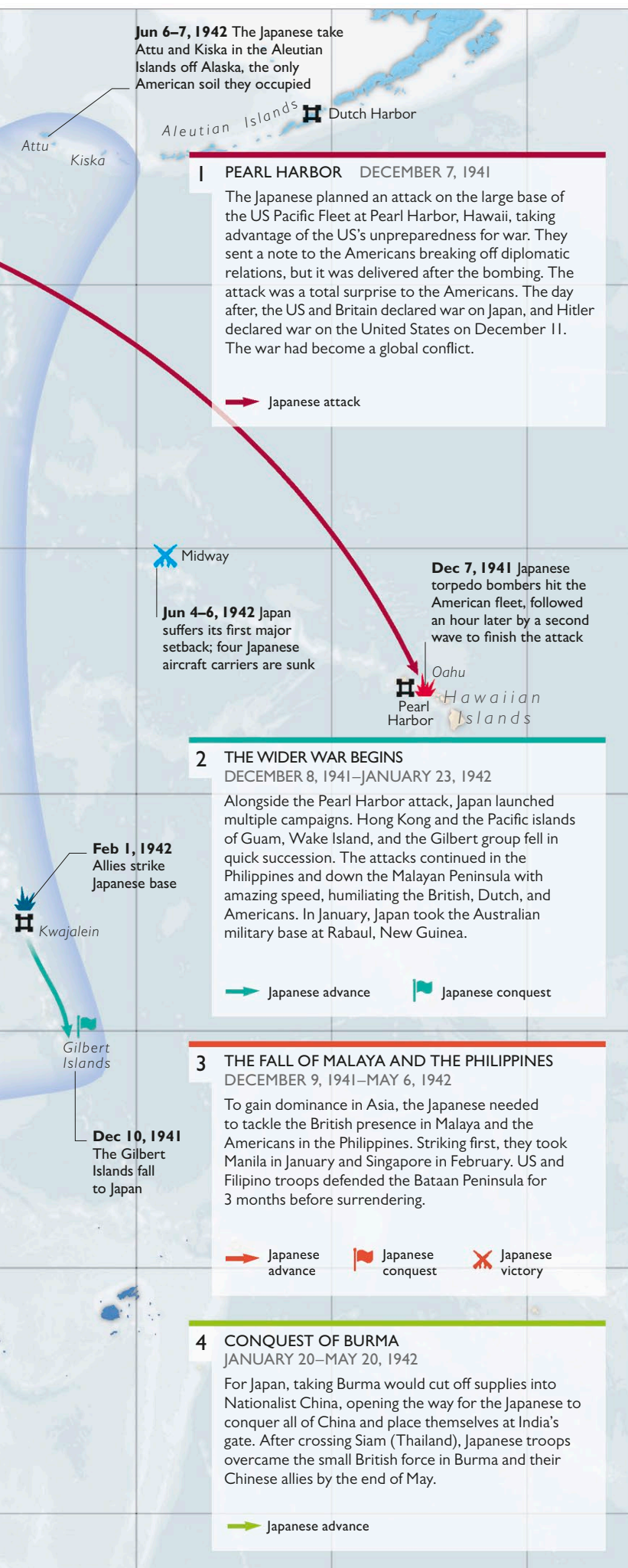
Japanese advance

Allied victory

Japanese advance

Japanese victory





# THE WAR IN THE PACIFIC

In 1931, Japan began a project to establish an extensive empire in Asia by occupying northeast China, then launching a full-scale invasion of the country in 1937. This brought Japan into conflict with the United States and the European colonial powers in the region and, in 1941, the war extended to Southeast Asia and the Pacific.

Throughout 1941, the United States tried to force Japan to abandon its invasion of China (see pp.288–289) using a policy of economic blockade. The Japanese responded with a risky plan for a wider war. Their attack on the American naval base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, was designed to cripple the US Pacific Fleet, leaving the Japanese Imperial Navy in command of the ocean while the Japanese army conquered Southeast Asia, the source of raw materials such as rubber and oil. Initially, the plan worked brilliantly, but the “sneak attack” on Pearl Harbor created such outrage in the US that any future compromise or peace based

on acceptance of Japanese domination of Asia became inconceivable. The US entered World War II as a result.

Although Nazi Germany declared war on the United States in support of Japan, the conflicts in the Pacific and Europe remained essentially separate. Japan's defeat of the European colonial powers in Southeast Asia, especially the fall of British Singapore, was a fatal blow to white racial prestige in Asia. But the Japanese proved exploitative rulers and won little support from other Asian peoples in their “Co-Prosperity Sphere.” American victory in the naval battle of Midway in June 1942 marked the end of the period of rapid Japanese expansion.

*“Before we're through with them, the Japanese language will be spoken only in hell.”*

US VICE ADMIRAL HALSEY ON THE PEARL HARBOR ATTACK, 1941

## GENERAL DOUGLAS MACARTHUR 1880–1964

When he was appointed US Army Commander in Southeast Asia in 1941, Douglas MacArthur already had a distinguished military career behind him, including service in World War I and a spell as US Chief of Staff. Forced to evacuate the Philippines in 1942, he famously promised “I shall return,” a promise he kept in 1944. As Allied supreme commander, he received the Japanese surrender in 1945 (see pp.302–303) and played a leading role in Japan's postwar political reconstruction. Commanding UN forces in the Korean War (see pp.316–317) from 1950, MacArthur quarreled with US government policy and President Truman relieved him of his duties in 1951.





# GERMANY DEFEATED

Confronted by the combined strength of the US, the Soviet Union, and Britain, Germany was overwhelmed in the later stages of World War II. The scale of destruction mounted through the war, leaving Europe a continent of ruins and refugees.

The tide of war turned decisively against Nazi Germany and its Axis allies in the course of 1943. On the Eastern Front, Soviet armies, victorious at Stalingrad (see pp.296–297), began an unstoppable advance westward that would eventually carry them all the way to Berlin. In the Atlantic, the menace of German U-boats was overcome after years of heavy losses of shipping. US troops entered the war against Germany by landing in North Africa. Meeting up with the British in Tunisia, they crossed the Mediterranean to invade Sicily and Italy, bringing about the downfall of Germany’s ally Benito Mussolini. But Nazi leader Adolf Hitler remained defiant even after the Western Allies invaded Normandy, France, in summer 1944. Surviving an attempted assassination, Hitler led a fight to the finish. The alliance between the Western powers and the Soviet Union held firm in pursuit of unconditional surrender. After a hard-fought struggle for command of the air, the US and British air forces devastated German cities. In spring 1945, Allied troops, invading Germany from east and west, took possession of a ruined country as Hitler committed suicide in his Berlin bunker.

*“We have a new experience. We have victory—a remarkable and definite victory.”*  
WINSTON CHURCHILL, ON EL ALAMEIN VICTORY, 1942

**WINSTON CHURCHILL**  
1874–1965



In May 1940, maverick Conservative politician Winston Churchill took power in Britain at the head of a coalition government. His rousing speeches and fighting spirit sustained morale in Britain, and he worked tirelessly to maintain good relations with his fellow Allied powers, the US and the Soviet Union, during World War II. He was voted out of office in an election 2 months after victory in Europe in 1945.

### THE ALLIED INVASION OF EUROPE 1942–1945

Victories in North Africa in 1942 provided the Allies with a base from which to invade Italy in 1943. The following year, the Western Allies began an offensive in western Europe while the Soviet army attacked from the east, closing in on Germany.

**KEY**

**AXIS**

- Under Axis control by 1942
- German offensive from 1942

**ALLIES**

- Allied territory 1942
- Allied offensive 1942–1943

Areas occupied by Germany by Nov 1942

Axis satellites

Allied offensive 1944

Allied offensive 1945

Allied victory

**TIMELINE**



#### 6 GERMANY ON THE ROPES MAR–MAY 1945

In the last months of the war, despite tough resistance, Germany suffered only defeats. US troops crossed the Rhine into Germany in March 1945 and proceeded to capture Hanover and Nuremberg. Meanwhile, Soviet forces launched a huge offensive through Poland and eventually captured Berlin on April 30.

#### 5 INVASION OF NORMANDY JUN–JUL 1944

On June 6, 1944, the Allies invaded northern France in what was the largest amphibious attack in history. Five Allied divisions landed on five French beaches, but progress was slow because of thick hedgerows and a fierce German defense. With this invasion, the Allies forced Hitler to fight on two fronts: in both western and eastern Europe.

→ D-Day landings

#### 4 STRATEGIC BOMBING 1944–1945

During 1944, the bombing of German cities became a significant strategy for the Allies. Attacks on oil supplies and oil fields devastated the German war effort. Some 400,000 German civilians were killed and many cities annihilated. Hitler responded by firing V-1 cruise missiles and V-2 rockets on London.

- Cities severely bombed by Allies
- City severely bombed by Germans

**May 24, 1943** Admiral Dönitz withdraws German U-boats from the North Atlantic after huge losses

**Nov 1942** Allied forces make landings in Morocco and Algeria as part of Operation Torch, a campaign to take control of North Africa

**Lisbon**

**PORTUGAL**

**Gibraltar to Britain**

**Casablanca**

**MOROCCO**

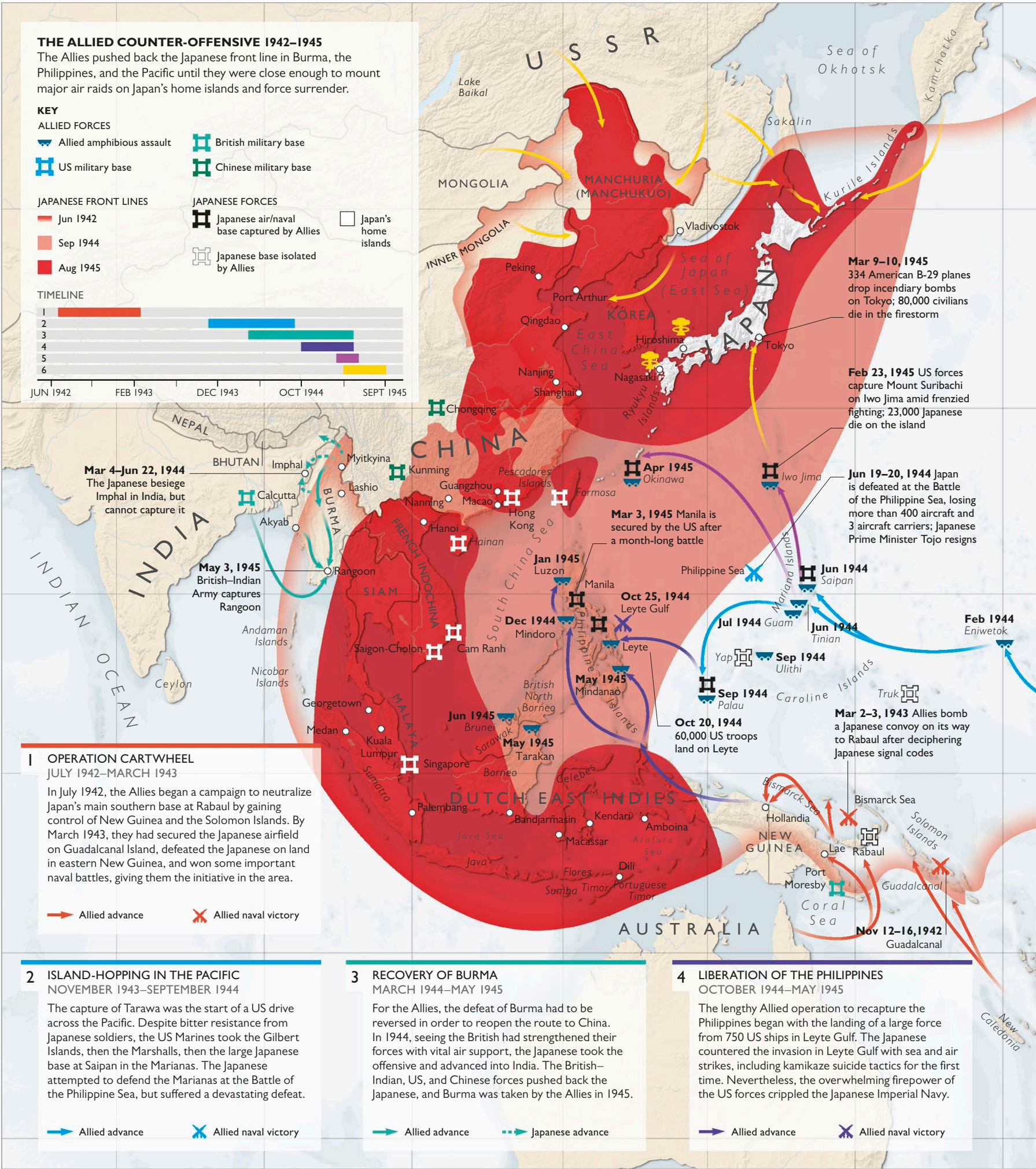
**D-Day landings**  
A US landing craft approaches Omaha Beach in Normandy, France, on June 6, 1944. Although the Allied invasion succeeded, nearly 3,000 US soldiers were killed or injured during the landing.













## 6 JAPAN UNDER ATTACK MARCH–AUGUST 1945

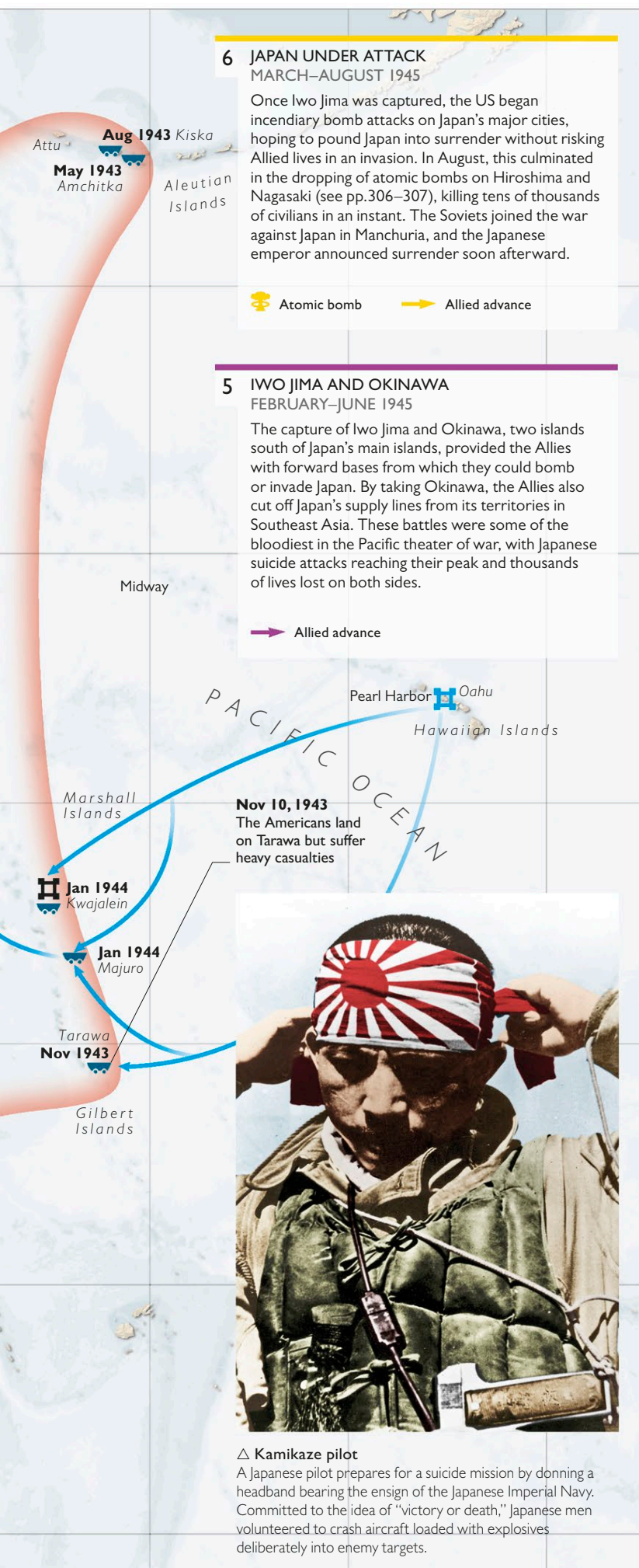
Once Iwo Jima was captured, the US began incendiary bomb attacks on Japan's major cities, hoping to pound Japan into surrender without risking Allied lives in an invasion. In August, this culminated in the dropping of atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki (see pp.306–307), killing tens of thousands of civilians in an instant. The Soviets joined the war against Japan in Manchuria, and the Japanese emperor announced surrender soon afterward.

Atomic bomb Allied advance

## 5 IWO JIMA AND OKINAWA FEBRUARY–JUNE 1945

The capture of Iwo Jima and Okinawa, two islands south of Japan's main islands, provided the Allies with forward bases from which they could bomb or invade Japan. By taking Okinawa, the Allies also cut off Japan's supply lines from its territories in Southeast Asia. These battles were some of the bloodiest in the Pacific theater of war, with Japanese suicide attacks reaching their peak and thousands of lives lost on both sides.

Allied advance



# JAPAN DEFEATED

Mobilizing its superior industrial resources and manpower, the United States overcame extremely determined Japanese resistance in a series of fierce battles in the Pacific from 1942 to 1945. Japan's cities were laid waste by American bombing, and its imperial government was forced to sign a humiliating surrender.

By mid-1942, Japan had established a far-flung defensive perimeter in the Pacific to protect its conquests in Asia. Hard fighting continued in China and Burma, but the outcome of the war was decided by an American thrust "island-hopping" across the Pacific, bringing the US within reach of Japan itself. A massive American shipbuilding program created a powerful fleet of aircraft carriers, while the US Marines developed an unprecedented expertise in seaborne landings. From Tawara to Okinawa, each island was defended by Japanese soldiers to the last man, but the Japanese Imperial Navy was destroyed in a series of large-scale sea battles. Outclassed Japanese aviators

were compelled to use "kamikaze" suicide tactics to attack the American fleet, but with limited effect.

By the summer of 1945, it was clear that Japan had lost the war. The Japanese government was split between those who wanted to fight to the death and those who wished to seek a peace deal that might preserve some element of independence. The Americans, however, demanded unconditional surrender. In August, the United States destroyed the cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki with atom bombs, and the Soviet Union, previously neutral, attacked Japanese forces in Manchuria. The Japanese government finally bowed to the inevitable and surrendered.

*"The war situation has developed not necessarily to Japan's advantage."*

EMPEROR HIROHITO, SURRENDER BROADCAST, AUGUST 15, 1945

## GLOBAL WARFARE

World War II was a truly global conflict, with theaters of war in Europe, Africa, Asia, and the Pacific. The US fought all the Axis Powers simultaneously, sending troops all over the globe. Japan and the other Axis Powers, although allies, fought separate wars, failing to coordinate their strategy.

### KEY

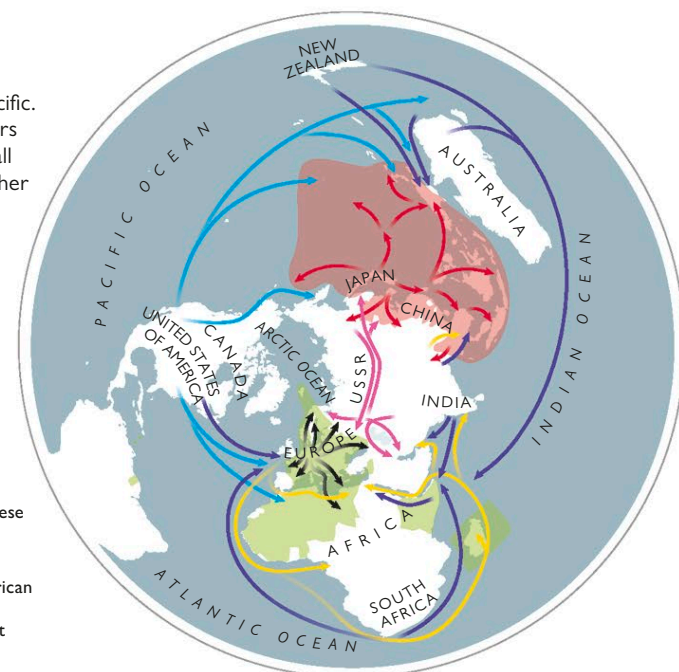
Maximum extent of Japanese expansion in Asia/Pacific  
Maximum extent of Axis Powers in Europe/USSR

### MOVEMENT OF AXIS TROOPS

German Japanese

### MOVEMENT OF ALLIED TROOPS

British American  
British Commonwealth Soviet





**Hiroshima destroyed**

Within seconds of detonation of the first atomic bomb, the city of Hiroshima lay in ruins. Nearly 70,000 people are believed to have died immediately. Here, the shattered Nagarekawa Methodist Church stands out.



# HIROSHIMA AND NAGASAKI

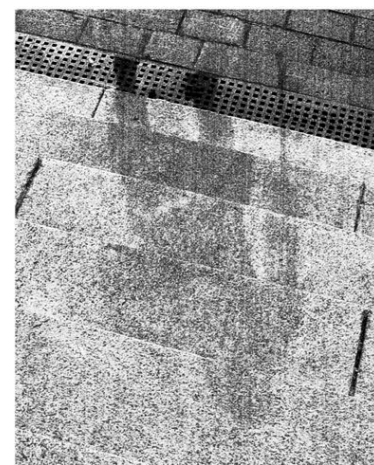
In August 1945, the US dropped the world's first atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in a bid to end World War II. It led the world to a new, and controversial, nuclear age. For Japan, its impact was cataclysmic.

On May 10, 1945, 3 days after Germany had surrendered to the Allies and ended the war in Europe, a group of US scientists and military personnel met in Los Alamos, New Mexico. The top minds within the Manhattan Project—the American effort to build an atomic bomb—focused on how to end Japanese resistance in the Pacific. The island-hopping strategy adopted by the US Navy had brought B-29 bombers within range of the Japanese archipelago, and they carried out massive aerial bombing

attacks. Yet Japan refused to surrender. US president Harry Truman authorized the use of two atomic weapons against Japan, believing it would be a less bloody way to secure surrender than an invasion.

**The final attack**

At the meeting at Los Alamos in May, the experts had deliberated on which Japanese cities to attack. The targets needed to have some military significance. Four cities,

**△ Human shadow**

The intense heat of the detonation in Hiroshima left "shadows" of people and objects exactly as they were at 8:15 a.m. on August 6, 1945.





including Hiroshima and Nagasaki, were chosen. Over the summer of 1945, Japanese attempts to negotiate a formula for surrender were rebuffed by the Allies. Then, on July 28, 1945, a demand from the Allies to surrender unconditionally or face destruction was rejected by the Japanese high command.

On August 6, 1945, the crew of the *Enola Gay*, the B-29 bomber assigned to drop the first bomb on Hiroshima, took off. At 8:15 a.m., “Little Boy” was dropped. Three days later, the US dropped “Fat Man” on Nagasaki. Estimates of people killed in the two bombings range as high as

246,000. On August 15, 1945, Japan surrendered. More atomic bombs were planned, although Japan’s emperor was also influenced by the Soviet invasion of Manchuria and the starvation that was already widespread. The surrender was formalized on board the USS *Missouri* on September 2, 1945.

The bombings had helped to hasten the end of WWII but launched a nuclear arms race between the US and the Soviet Union that lasted until the 1990s.

#### ▽ “Fat Man”

Nicknamed Fat Man, the atomic bomb dropped on Nagasaki on August 9, 1945, created winds of 620 mph (1,000 km/h) and temperatures of 12,700°F (7,050°C).

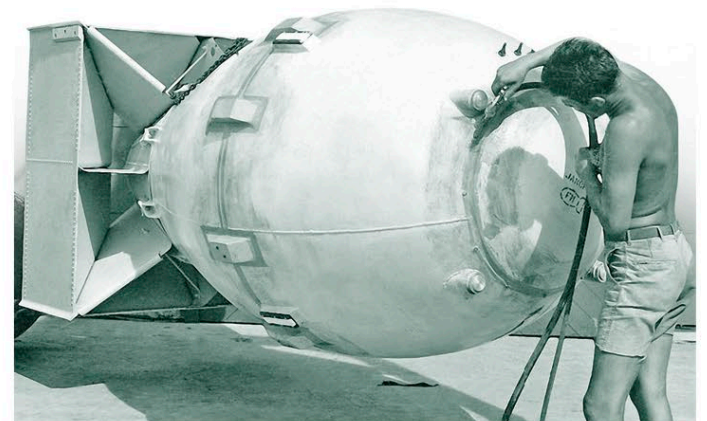
---

*“I realize the tragic significance of the atomic bomb ... We thank God that it has come to us, instead of to our enemies.”*

---

HARRY S. TRUMAN, US PRESIDENT, AUGUST 9, 1945

---





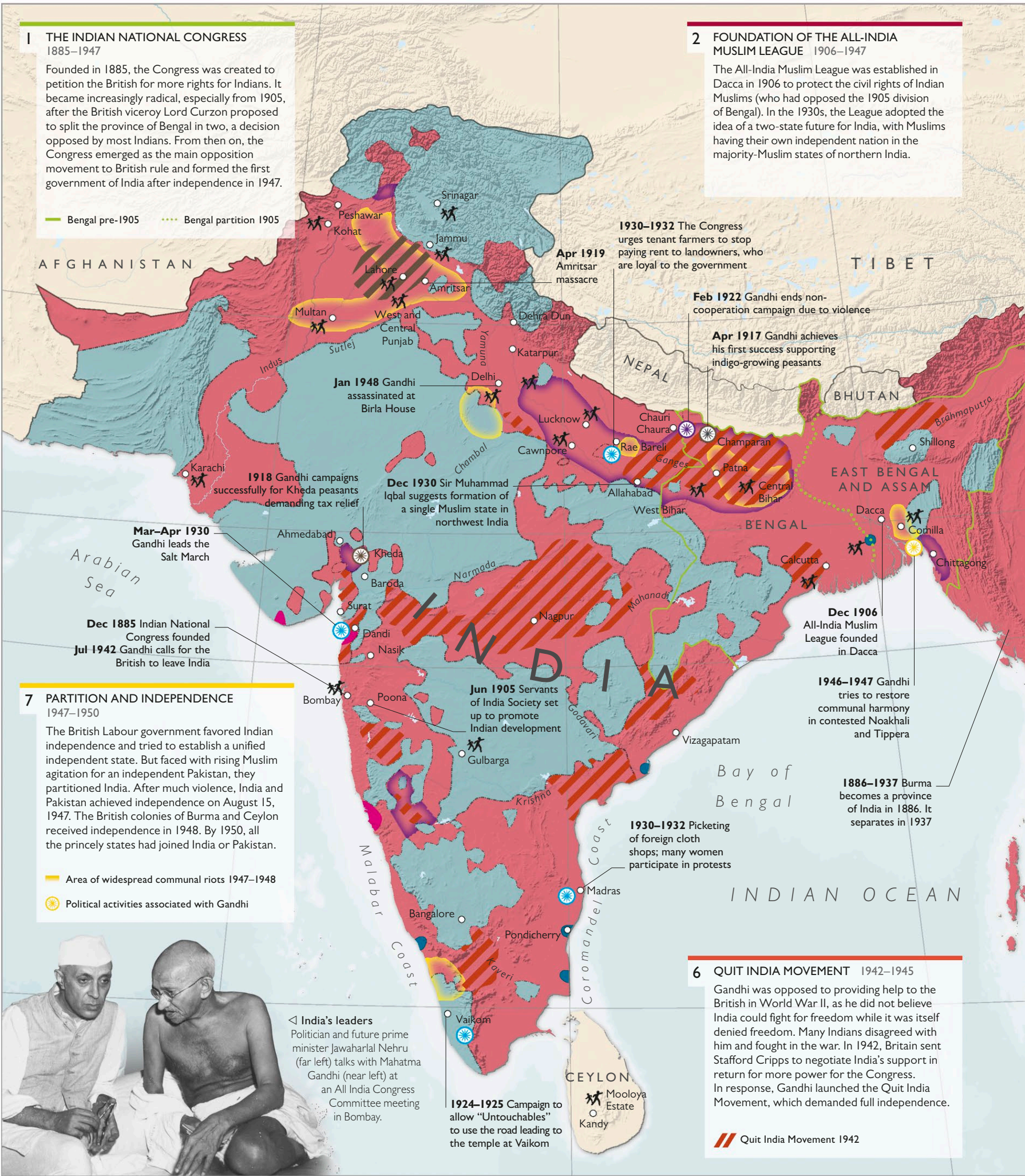
1 THE INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS 1885–1947

Founded in 1885, the Congress was created to petition the British for more rights for Indians. It became increasingly radical, especially from 1905, after the British viceroy Lord Curzon proposed to split the province of Bengal in two, a decision opposed by most Indians. From then on, the Congress emerged as the main opposition movement to British rule and formed the first government of India after independence in 1947.

— Bengal pre-1905    ... Bengal partition 1905

2 FOUNDATION OF THE ALL-INDIA MUSLIM LEAGUE 1906–1947

The All-India Muslim League was established in Dacca in 1906 to protect the civil rights of Indian Muslims (who had opposed the 1905 division of Bengal). In the 1930s, the League adopted the idea of a two-state future for India, with Muslims having their own independent nation in the majority-Muslim states of northern India.





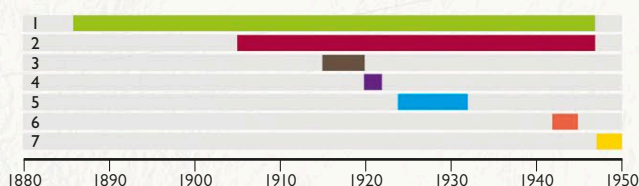
### THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE, 1885–1948

After the foundation of the secular Indian National Congress in 1885 and the All-India Muslim League in 1906, the struggle for Indian independence became increasingly fraught, as campaigns were launched to force the British out of India.

#### KEY

- British India (direct rule)
- Princely states (semiautonomous areas ruled by Indian princes)
- French India
- Portuguese India
- Major riots

#### TIMELINE



### 3 THE FIRST CAMPAIGNS AND THE AMRITSAR MASSACRE 1915–1919

In 1915, Mahatma Gandhi began to campaign for the Congress. In 1919, the British introduced the Rowlatt Act, allowing indefinite detention of political agitators. In response, Gandhi ordered a *hartal* (general strike), shutting down shops and businesses as a form of civil disobedience. When the British opened fire on thousands of Indians in Amritsar, Punjab, Gandhi called off the protest.

- Hartal and Punjab disturbances
- Political activities associated with Gandhi

### 4 NONCOOPERATION MOVEMENT 1919–1922

In response to the Amritsar massacre, Gandhi began to argue for *swaraj* (“self-rule”) for India, to be achieved through *satyagraha* (“truth force”), an idea developed by Gandhi as a form of nonviolent resistance. Despite its peaceful intentions, the campaign turned violent, and Gandhi suspended it in 1922.

- Noncooperation campaign
- Political activities associated with Gandhi

### 5 GANDHI'S CAMPAIGNS 1924–1932

After 2 years in prison for sedition, Gandhi returned to campaign for *swaraj* in 1924. His most successful act was the Salt March of 1930 when, in protest against the British government's monopoly of the salt trade, he led a group of activists to Dandi, on the west coast, where they illegally produced salt—an act that sparked mass civil disobedience across India. Imprisoned again in 1932, Gandhi withdrew from active politics.

- Political activities associated with Gandhi

# PARTITION OF INDIA

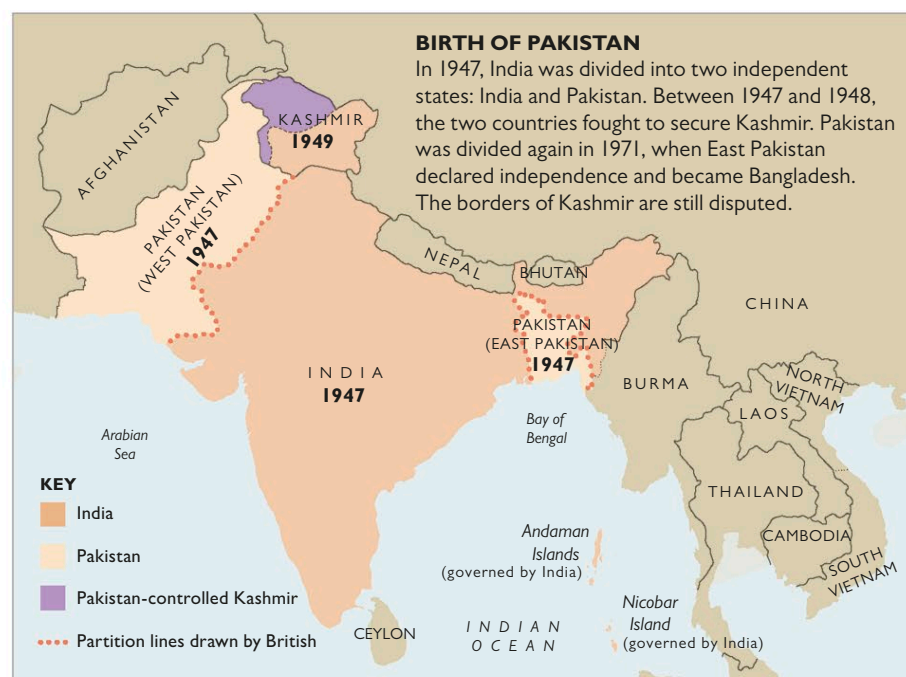
The campaign to end British rule over its Indian empire was one of the most successful such movements in colonial history. Although marked with occasional and often appalling violence, the campaign stressed nonviolent resistance based on the beliefs of one of its most inspirational leaders, politician and activist Mahatma Gandhi.

Britain's efforts to hold on to India were undermined by a massacre of unarmed Indians by British troops in Amritsar, Punjab, in 1919. In response, Gandhi initiated a nonviolent, non-cooperation campaign for independence, which was led mainly by the secular Indian National Congress. However, the religious divide within India, between Hindus and Muslims, complicated matters. The All-India Muslim League began to campaign for an independent Muslim state called Pakistan, which would be created through partition.

After Britain declared war on Germany in 1939 on behalf of India—without consulting Indian leaders—the Congress launched the Quit India Movement, calling for civil disobedience to upset the British war effort. By 1945, Britain was economically drained by the war, and the government began to plan for withdrawal from India. It supported partition reluctantly and, amid a crisis that saw millions of Hindu and Muslim refugees cross the new borders, the divided empire finally achieved its independence on August 15, 1947.

*“At the stroke of the midnight hour, when the world sleeps, India will awake to life and freedom.”*

JAWAHARLAL NEHRU, INDIA'S 1ST PRIME MINISTER, AUGUST 14, 1947





# THE FOUNDING OF COMMUNIST CHINA

Between 1927 and 1949, an ideological divide split China, as Mao Zedong's Communist Party fought China's Nationalist Party for the future of the country. Eventually, after years of civil war, Japanese occupation, and World War II, Mao emerged as ruler of a new communist China.

The Chinese Communist Party (CCP) was set up in Shanghai on July 23, 1921. At first, it collaborated with China's Nationalist Party, the Kuomintang (KMT), but the alliance was severed in 1927, when the KMT, under the rule of a new leader, anti-communist Chiang Kai-shek, turned on their rivals (see pp.288–289). The KMT destroyed the communists in all major cities, and the CCP was forced to retreat to Jiangxi province in southern China, where they established the Soviet Republic of China in 1931. In 1934, they were forced to abandon their base when they were surrounded by KMT forces. Under the guidance of the future Chairman of the Soviet Republic of China, Mao Zedong, the fragments of the Communist Party

undertook the "Long March"—a year-long trek to the northern province of Shaanxi. It was a good strategic base, being both far away from the KMT and close to supply routes from the USSR. Japanese invasion during World War II briefly forced the CCP and KMT to collaborate again to some extent. After the war, US negotiators tried to reconcile the two parties, but civil war broke out. The KMT had early victories, but the CCP gained the support of the rural peasantry, and their army swelled. They quickly gained ground by splitting the KMT forces into isolated pockets. By 1949, the Kuomintang had collapsed. On October 1, 1949, Mao announced the establishment of the People's Republic of China.

MAO ZEDONG  
1893–1976



The ruler of communist China from 1949 until his death in 1976, Mao Zedong trained as a teacher in Hunan before traveling to Peking (Beijing). While working as a librarian at Peking University, he became a communist, and he helped to found the Communist Party in 1921. In 1934, Mao guided 86,000 communists on the Long March. He became chairman of the party in 1943. As leader, he modernized China, but his radical policies were ruthless and ambitious and caused huge loss of life.



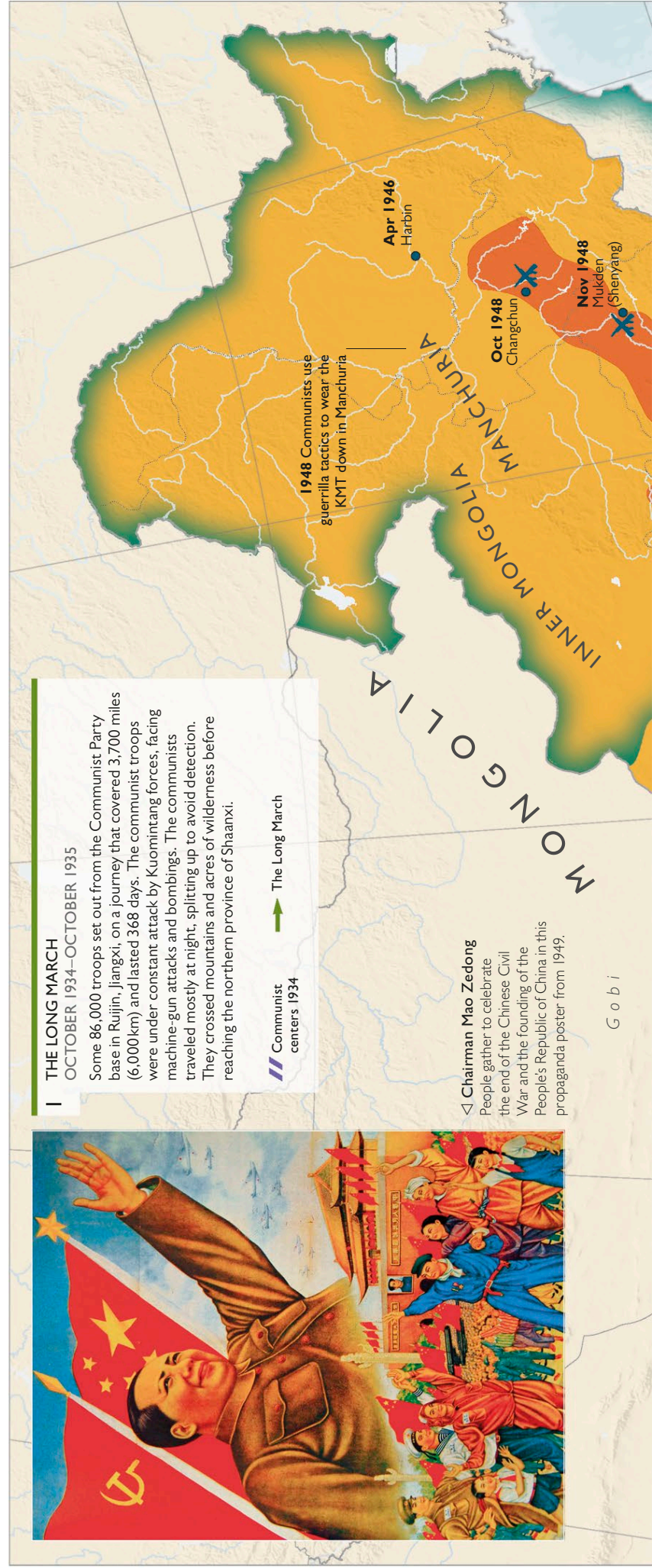
## I THE LONG MARCH OCTOBER 1934–OCTOBER 1935

Some 86,000 troops set out from the Communist Party base in Ruijin, Jiangxi, on a journey that covered 3,700 miles (6,000km) and lasted 368 days. The communist troops were under constant attack by Kuomintang forces, facing machine-gun attacks and bombings. The communists traveled mostly at night, splitting up to avoid detection. They crossed mountains and acres of wilderness before reaching the northern province of Shaanxi.

Communist centers 1934

The Long March

Chairman Mao Zedong  
People gather to celebrate the end of the Chinese Civil War and the founding of the People's Republic of China in this propaganda poster from 1949.











△ **Powerful weapon**  
On November 1, 1952, the US detonated the first hydrogen bomb, code named Ivy Mike. It was 1,000 times more powerful than the atomic bombs dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

# SUPERPOWERS

By the end of World War II, two of the Allies—the US and USSR—had emerged as the world’s dominant powers. Owing to their military might and global political influence, they became known as “superpowers.” The ideological gulf that separated them generated regular conflict in the era of the Cold War.

The USSR had been an unexpected ally in World War II, and Britain and the US made common cause with Stalin’s dictatorship in the overthrow of Hitler’s European “New Order.” As the Red Army advanced into eastern Europe, it became clear that Stalin wanted to dominate the region politically, an ambition that drove a wedge between the wartime allies and opened the way to what was christened the Cold War.

The first major conflict came over the future of Berlin, which was inside the Soviet zone of Germany but was controlled by all four major allies: Britain, the US, France, and the USSR. In 1948, Stalin tried to cut Berlin off from the West in order to incorporate it fully in the Communist bloc, but a Western relief effort that came to be known as the Berlin Airlift brought food and supplies to West Berliners, and after 318 days, Stalin abandoned the blockade. The battle line between the two superpowers was now clear.

### Growing tensions

By the time of the Berlin crisis, both the USSR and the US had come to realize that there was now no possibility of peaceful collaboration. Soviet influence rapidly spread, and with the triumph of

communism in China, North Korea, and North Vietnam, it seemed likely that Soviet power would pose a profound threat to the West. In the US, a wave of anti-communism was unleashed in the early 1950s as the American public came to realize that the Soviet superpower represented a menace to American interests. When communist North Korea invaded the South, the US used its influence in the United Nations to organize an alliance to contain the threat.

The Korean War was only one of a number of proxy wars in which the US and the USSR looked to enhance their global influence as the new superpowers.

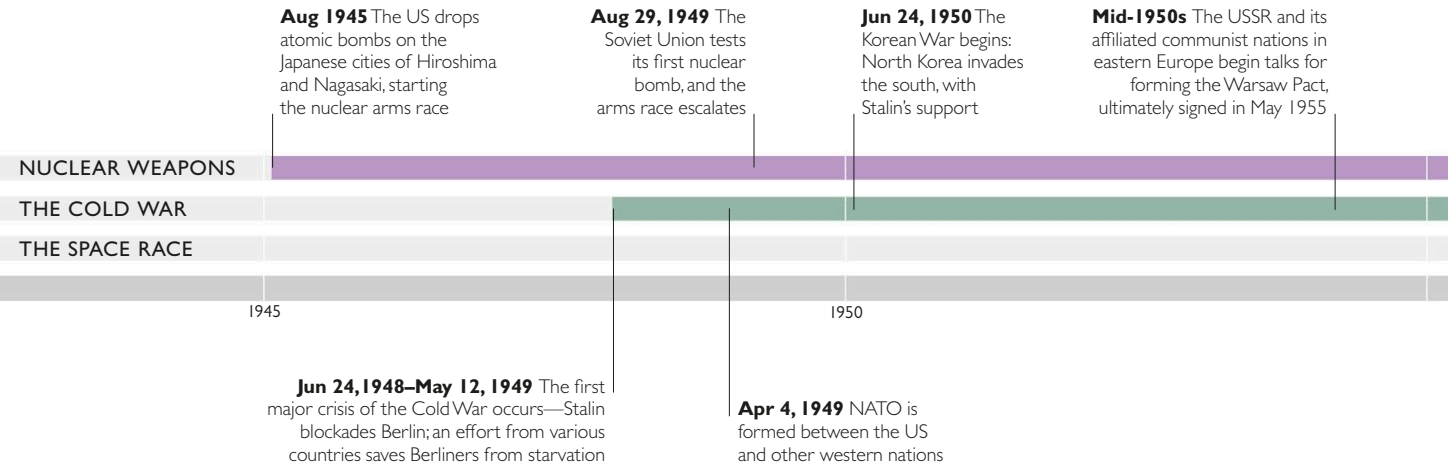
At the core of American and Soviet superpower status was the possession of a large arsenal of nuclear weapons. By 1953, both states had tested the hydrogen bomb, whose destructive power eclipsed the atomic bombs dropped on Japan in 1945. As the stockpiles of bombs built up, no other state could match the military potential of the superpowers. Competition between them was symbolized by the Space Race, in which each side sought to outdo the other. The USSR successfully launched the *Sputnik 1* satellite in 1957 and boasted the first man in space, the first woman in space, and the first spacewalk. Only with the American success in sending a manned mission to the Moon in 1969 did the race



△ **Anti-communist propaganda**  
The outbreak of war in Korea brought the Cold War to east Asia. Propaganda produced during the period was used to antagonize South Koreans against the communists.

### DEADLY RIVALRY

In 1945, the emergence of the US and USSR as superpowers was founded on their capacity to build, test, and accumulate nuclear weapons in massive quantities. The Cold War, so called because no direct military action was taken, led to deep divisions and animosity between the two countries and their respective allies. The threat of nuclear annihilation was constant, but after the Cuban Missile Crisis in 1962, the rivalry between the two nations played out in the Space Race.







◁ **Concrete divide**  
An East German worker makes repairs to the hastily built Berlin Wall—a 28-mile (45-km) scar that cut through the German capital, dividing east from west.

*“Mankind must put an end to war or war will put an end to mankind.”*

JOHN F. KENNEDY, US PRESIDENT, 1961

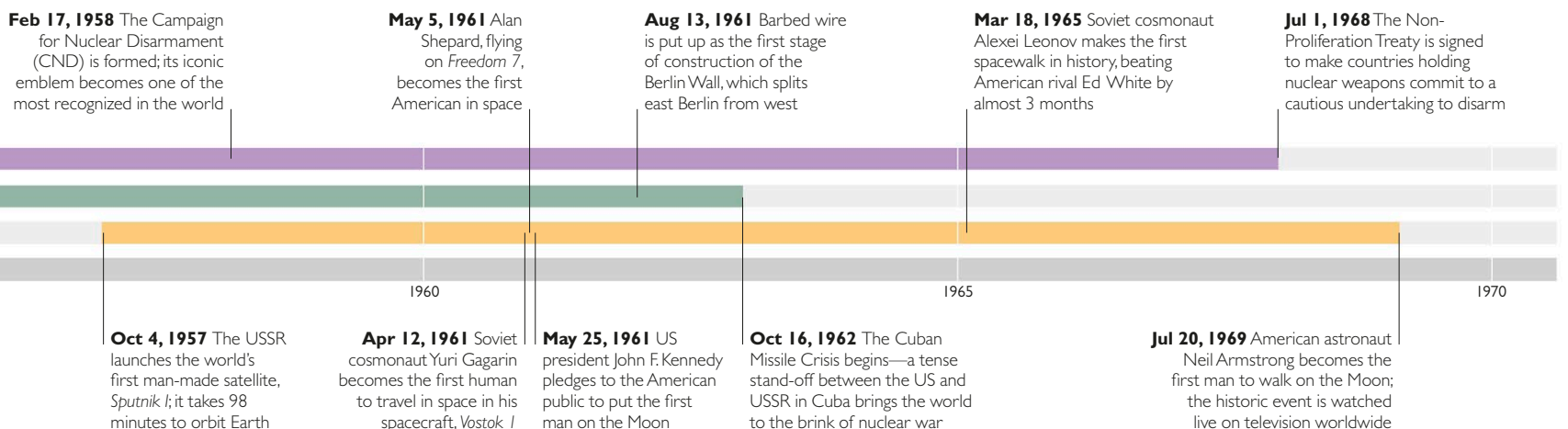
become more equal. The nuclear confrontation in the 1950s did not provoke war between the two superpowers because neither side could risk retaliation. But in 1962, to counter the stationing of American missiles in Turkey, Nikita Khrushchev, the Soviet leader, authorized the establishment of Soviet missile sites in Cuba, the site of Castro’s pro-Soviet revolution. In the end, the USSR backed down from President Kennedy’s ultimatum to end the project, and a more serious crisis was averted.

### The coming of détente

From the Cuban crisis onward, the two superpowers looked for ways to reduce the nuclear risks. A so-called “red telephone” line was installed between leaders in Moscow and Washington so that they could communicate directly during a crisis. In August 1963, the first Test Ban Treaty was signed, and in 1972, talks between the two superpowers produced SALT I, the first serious effort to scale back the nuclear arsenals. Although

both superpowers continued to spend heavily on defense and to play out political battles between them in other parts of the world, there emerged a greater willingness to talk and to avoid the open hostility of the 1940s and 1950s. When the Soviet bloc collapsed in 1989–1991, the USSR’s status as a superpower disappeared. By the 1990s, the US was, for the time being, the sole superpower.

▽ **The American dream**  
This Cadillac convertible epitomizes the growing prosperity of America’s middle class, asserting capitalism as superior to communism.





# THE COLD WAR

After World War II ended in 1945, bitter rivalry between the US and the USSR dominated international affairs and led to many global crises. Known as the Cold War, this period of extreme political tension, which lasted for almost half a century, was as much a conflict of ideology and influence as military action.

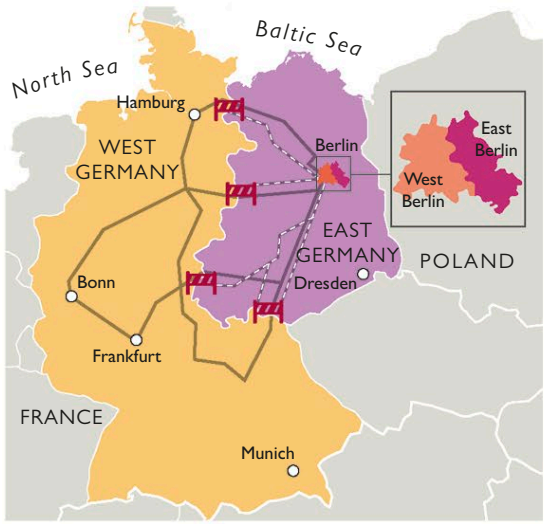
The US and the USSR emerged from World War II as the most powerful victors. Although formerly allies, the two nations had major political and economic disagreements about the world's future, with the US promoting democracy and capitalism and the USSR supporting communism. By 1949, communist regions had emerged throughout eastern Europe, and China had emerged as a communist state, intensifying international division. The Western nations set up the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) military alliance, and the Soviet bloc responded with the Warsaw Pact. Competition escalated as first the US, then the USSR, acquired and tested nuclear weapons, initially to be delivered by aircraft, later by missiles and submarines (see pp.324–325).

The Cold War never developed into a direct war because the threat of nuclear retaliation was too great. However, armed conflicts between proxy countries across the globe became frequent. The USSR would back smaller, non-nuclear communist regimes, while the US would retaliate by supporting anti-communist forces in the same conflict. Few countries avoided taking sides, although some did remain nonaligned. This new style of war was not just a military conflict, however; scientific, technological, cultural, and propaganda wars between the two superpowers were intense. Despite the antagonism between the two major powers, the Cold War did keep a kind of peace in place for almost half a century, although at huge cost to those nations where the conflict became “hot.”

*“Whether you like it or not, history is on our side. We will bury you.”*  
NIKITA KHRUSHCHEV, SOVIET PREMIER, NOVEMBER 18, 1956

**GERMANY DIVIDED**  
After World War II, the four victorious allies divided Germany and its capital, Berlin, between them. In 1949, the US, French, and British merged their sectors to form West Germany, with a new capital in Bonn; East Germany and East Berlin remained under Soviet control. In 1961, the East Germans built a wall to separate the communist East from capitalist West Berlin.

**KEY**  
[Red line with cross-ticks] Control point  
[Dashed line] Railway line  
[Solid line] Major road



**FOUNDATION OF NATO 1949–2017**  
In the wake of World War II, in 1949, the US, Canada, and 10 European nations signed the North Atlantic Treaty, which established NATO. It was a defensive military alliance that promised to provide mutual assistance if one nation were to be attacked. Greece and Turkey joined in 1952, West Germany in 1955, and Spain in 1982. After the end of the Cold War, NATO expanded into eastern Europe to become an alliance of 29 states.



**1962** World comes close to nuclear war during the Cuban Missile Crisis

**1954** The US secretly backs a Guatemalan coup d'état to remove a socialist leader

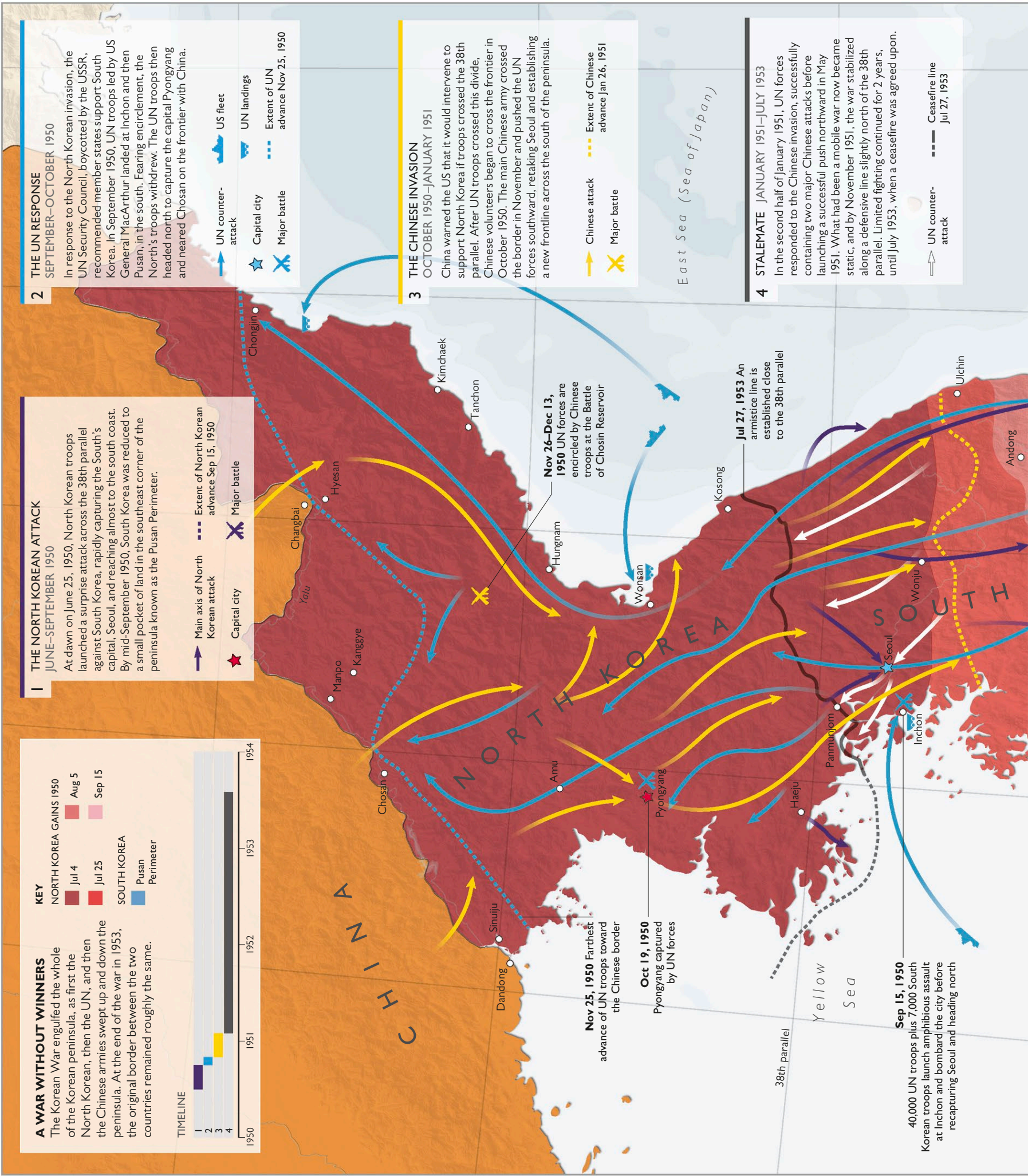
**PACIFIC OCEAN**

**△ SR-71 Blackbird**  
First flown on December 22, 1964, the SR-71 Blackbird was an aircraft designed in secret by the US to outrun enemy missiles.

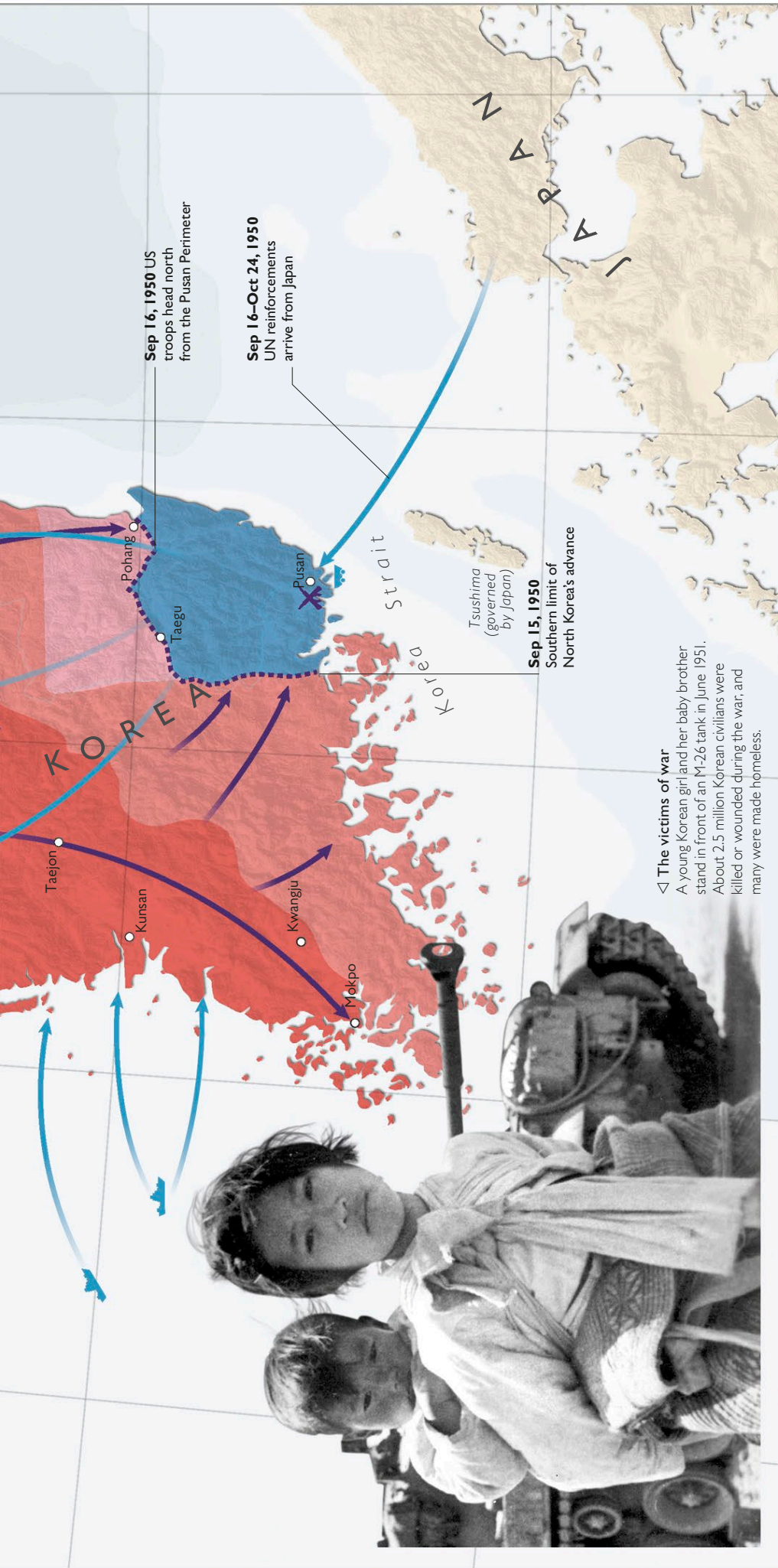












# KOREAN WAR

The Cold War became “hot” in June 1950, when North Korean forces attacked South Korea in an attempt to unite the Korean peninsula under communist control. The war continued for 3 years, with the Chinese supporting the North and the US the South; the expected confrontation between the USSR and the US never happened.

In 1945, at the end of World War II, the US and USSR occupied the Japanese colony of Korea. They divided the country along the 38th parallel, with Soviet forces taking control of the north and the US the south. The intention was to rule jointly for 5 years until Korea became independent, but disagreements between the two countries about Korea's future solidified the division. Both North Korea and South Korea held their own separate elections in 1948, and the USSR and US withdrew their troops the following year. However, North Korea intended to unify the peninsula under communist rule, and with tacit Soviet support, but no promise

of troops, it attacked South Korea in June 1950. The invasion was unexpected, enabling the North Korean troops to occupy almost the entire peninsula. US, South Korean, and Allied troops, endorsed by the UN, responded from July. The frontline then changed as UN troops headed north, only to be met in November by a Chinese invasion. By the middle of 1951, there was a stalemate, which resulted in an agreed armistice in July 1953 to withdraw forces either side of the 38th parallel. That armistice remains in force, as no permanent peace treaty has been signed to end the war.

## KIM IL-SUNG

1912–1994



Born near Pyongyang, Kim Il-Sung was the leader of North Korea from 1948 until his death in 1994. He became involved in communism as a student and in the 1930s joined an anti-Japanese guerrilla group. In 1940, he traveled to the USSR, and later became a major in the Soviet Army. At the end of World War II, he returned to Korea intent on creating a unified communist nation.

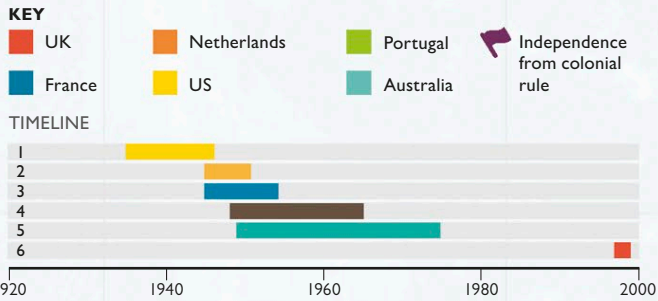






## END OF COLONIAL RULE

The imperial powers that had colonies in Southeast Asia slowly granted their former lands independence after the end of World War II, starting with the US in the Philippines in 1946, and ending with Portugal handing over Macao to China in 1999. The transition was often violent, with fighting particularly intense in Indonesia and French Indochina.



△ **The fight for independence**  
Protesters gather in 1975 to support an East Timor independence party. Having gained independence from Portugal in November 1975, East Timor was then occupied by Indonesia 9 days later.



# DECOLONIZATION OF SOUTHEAST ASIA

In 1945, all of Southeast Asia, except Thailand, was nominally under colonial control. However, it was a time of great change; within 30 years, former empires had disappeared, and what had previously been colonies were replaced by independent states. The final colonial relics were handed over at the end of the 20th century.

During World War II, the Japanese invaded Southeast Asia, driving out the colonial powers. In 1945, at the end of the war, the colonial powers returned. However, their right to rule was now seriously challenged, as they were seen to have been weak in the face of Japanese aggression. Nationalist sentiments, stirred up by the Japanese occupation, were on the rise. Indonesian nationalists proclaimed independence even before the Dutch had time to return to Indonesia, and the Viet Minh, a Vietnamese independence group, surprised the French with their own declaration. One by one, the imperial powers started to leave the region.

The US was the first to go, leaving the Philippines peacefully in 1946, followed by the Dutch from Indonesia in 1949, after much fighting. The French left Indochina in 1954, after losing a major battle in Vietnam, then the British left Malaya between 1957 and 1963, their departure complicated by a communist uprising. The merged state of Papua New Guinea gained its independence from Australia in 1975, while Brunei gained its independence from Britain in 1984. After the British departed from Hong Kong in 1997, Macao—the last European colony in Asia—was handed over by the Portuguese to China in 1999. The colonial era was over.

*“You can kill ten of my men for every one I kill of yours. But even at those odds, you will lose and I will win.”*

HO CHI MINH, VIETNAM'S LEADER, TO FRENCH COLONIALISTS, 1946

## SUKARNO 1901–1970

Sukarno was a charter member of the Indonesian National Party, which was formed in 1927. He was jailed for political activities in 1929, and then spent 13 of the next 15 years in prison or exile. Politically astute during the Japanese occupation of 1942–1945, he emerged as the de facto president of Indonesia in November 1945. Sukarno steered Indonesia to independence in 1949, and gained great prestige as leader of the nonaligned Bandung Conference in 1955. His increasingly authoritarian tendencies and confrontation with Malaya caused him to lose power to the army leader General Muhammad Suharto in 1967.





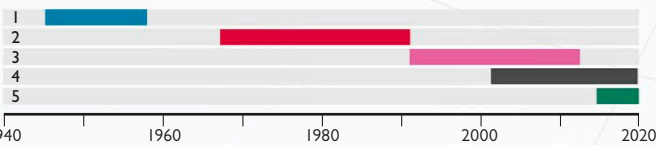
AN EXPANDING UNION

The European Union (EU) has gradually grown from its origins of six founding members in 1957 to 28 states by 2018. Its biggest expansion occurred when eight former communist states, plus Malta and Cyprus, joined in 2004.

KEY

- Founding members, 1957
- Members by 1973
- Members by 1986
- Members by 1995
- Members by 2004
- Members by 2013
- Recognized applicants for EU membership (with date of application)

TIMELINE



THE ORIGINS OF THE UNION 1945–1957

Postwar discussions between six western European nations led to the founding of the ECSC in 1951. It merged the coal and steel industries of France, West Germany, Italy, and the three Benelux countries. The six went further in 1957, and set up the EEC and Euratom. The Soviet bloc equivalent was the Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON).

- Members of ECSC, EEC, and Euratom
- Members and associate members of COMECON

5 UK DEPARTURE 2016–2019

After a referendum in 2016, the UK set out plans to leave the EU in 2019. It is the first member state to leave, although three other countries have withdrawn from the EU following territorial changes: Algeria departed when it ceased to be French territory in 1962, as did the Danish territory of Greenland in 1995, and the French Caribbean island of Saint Barthélemy in 2012.

- Departure from EU 2019

1958 Struggling to agree on a capital city for the EU, members decide to rotate cities, starting with Brussels

1951 Treaty of Paris, signed by six nations, sets up the ECSC

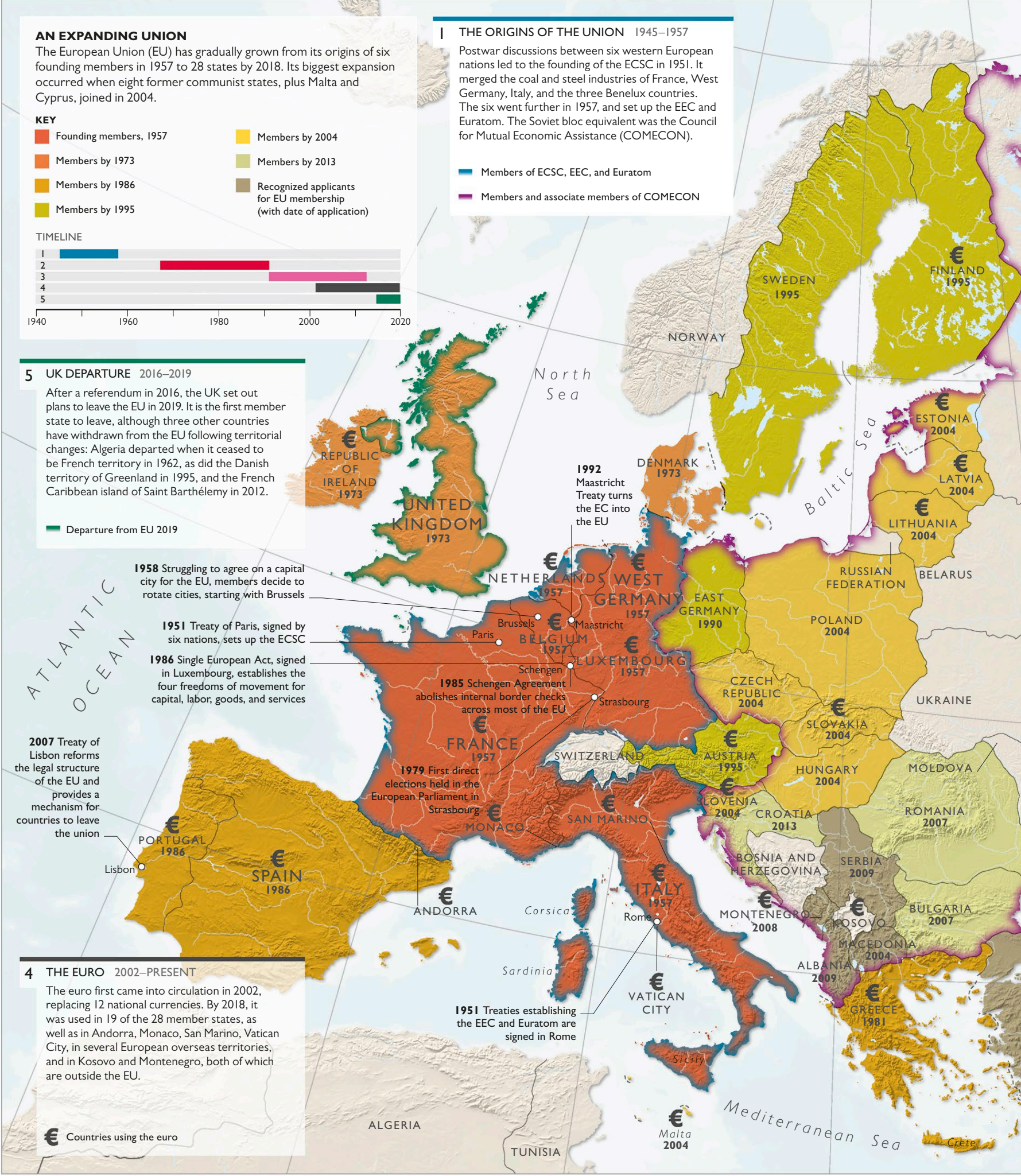
1986 Single European Act, signed in Luxembourg, establishes the four freedoms of movement for capital, labor, goods, and services

2007 Treaty of Lisbon reforms the legal structure of the EU and provides a mechanism for countries to leave the union

4 THE EURO 2002–PRESENT

The euro first came into circulation in 2002, replacing 12 national currencies. By 2018, it was used in 19 of the 28 member states, as well as in Andorra, Monaco, San Marino, Vatican City, in several European overseas territories, and in Kosovo and Montenegro, both of which are outside the EU.

- Countries using the euro







△ "Europe united"

This poster from the Cold War era encourages European countries to unite as protection from the USSR. A key reason the EU was founded was to prevent another outbreak of world war.

**2 EXPANSION OF THE UNION 1967–1992**

In 1967, the ECSC, EEC, and Euratom were merged into the European Communities (EC). The UK, Ireland, and Denmark (including Greenland) joined in 1973, Greece in 1981, and Spain and Portugal in 1986—the latter three being former dictatorships. East Germany joined when it merged with West Germany in 1990. In 1986, the Single European Act set up the single market in goods and services.

**1987** Turkey applies for EC membership; it enters into a customs union with the EU in 1996

**3 GROWTH OF THE EU 1992–2013**

The Maastricht Treaty, signed in 1992, took European integration further. It launched its plans for economic and monetary union, leading to a single currency and the euro. It marked the end of the EC and the start of the EU. Austria, Finland, and Sweden joined in 1993, followed by an influx of 10 new states from eastern Europe and the Mediterranean in 2004. Bulgaria and Romania followed in 2007 and Croatia in 2013, bringing EU membership up to 28 states.



# EUROPEAN UNITY

Since the end of the Roman Empire in 476 CE, the dream of a united Europe has existed in some form or other. In 1951, following the mass devastation of World War II, six western European nations began a process that would ultimately lead to a political and economic union of 28 member states.

World War II was the third time in 70 years that France and Germany had been at war with one another. To end this age-old conflict, and to confront the extreme nationalism that had so recently devastated Europe, French and West German politicians began to plan a new future together. In the 1951 Treaty of Paris, they merged their coal and steel industries with those of Italy and the three Benelux countries (the Netherlands, Luxembourg, and Belgium), forming the European Coal and Steel Community (ECSC). This union was a precursor to the European Economic Community (EEC) and the European Atomic Energy Community (Euratom), which were established by

the same six countries in the Treaty of Rome in 1957. From then on, the competencies and the membership of the EEC grew. In 1967, it was renamed the European Communities (EC), and in 1992 it became the European Union (EU). Waves of new members joined after 1973, and in 2002 a single currency, the euro, was introduced by 12 member states. All EU member states have been at peace with each other since joining the organization, and membership is coveted by former communist states in the Balkans. Only a few European nations are outside the Union. However, 40 years of expansion were dashed in 2016 when the UK announced plans to leave the EU.

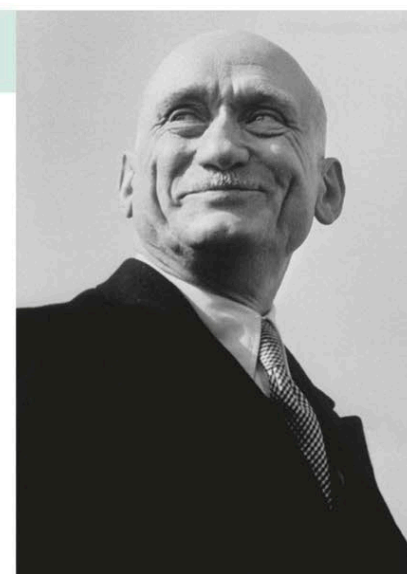
*"The coming together of the nations of Europe requires the elimination of the age-old opposition of France and Germany."*

ROBERT SCHUMAN, FRENCH FOREIGN MINISTER, MAY 9, 1950

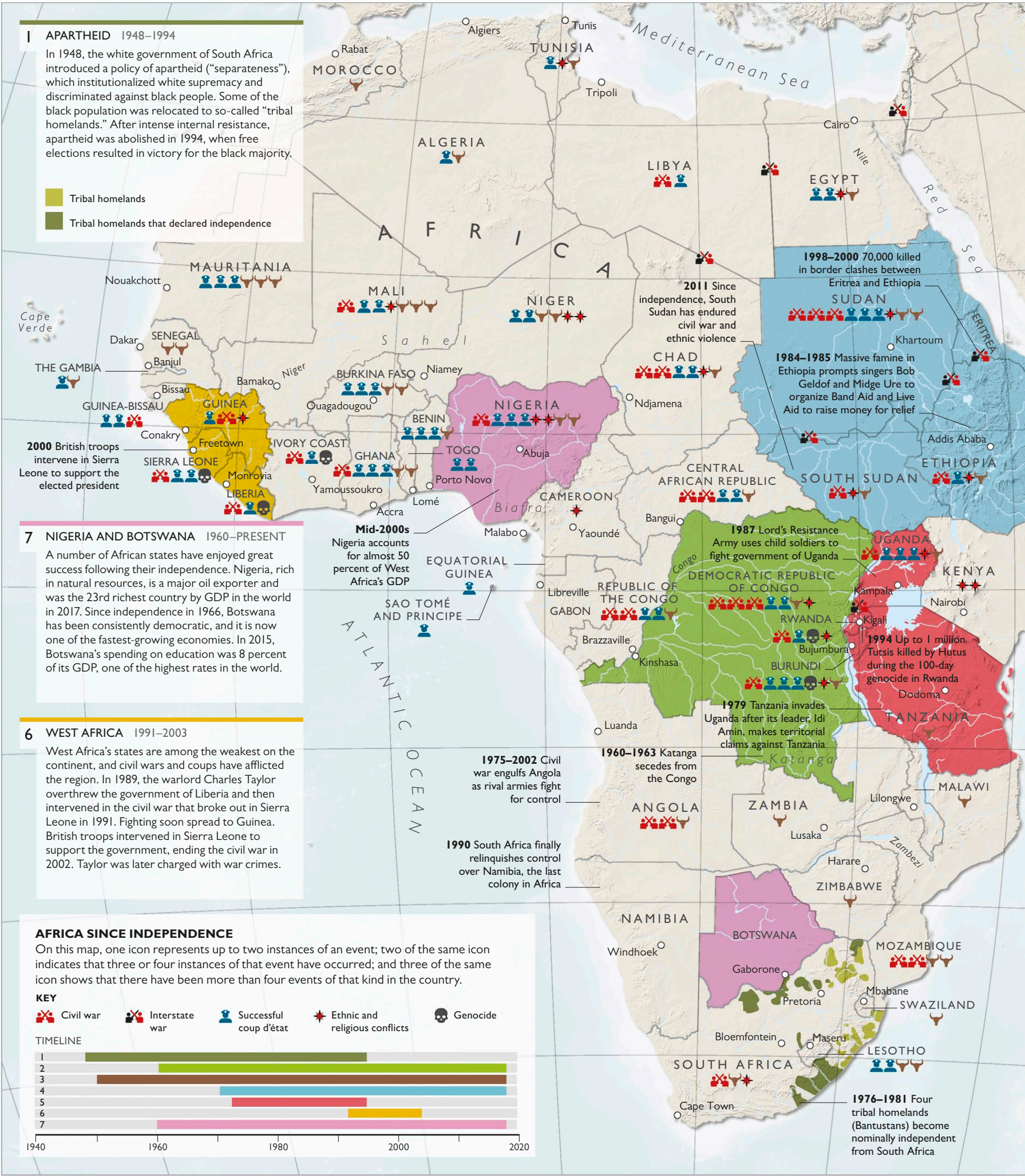
## ROBERT SCHUMAN

1886–1963

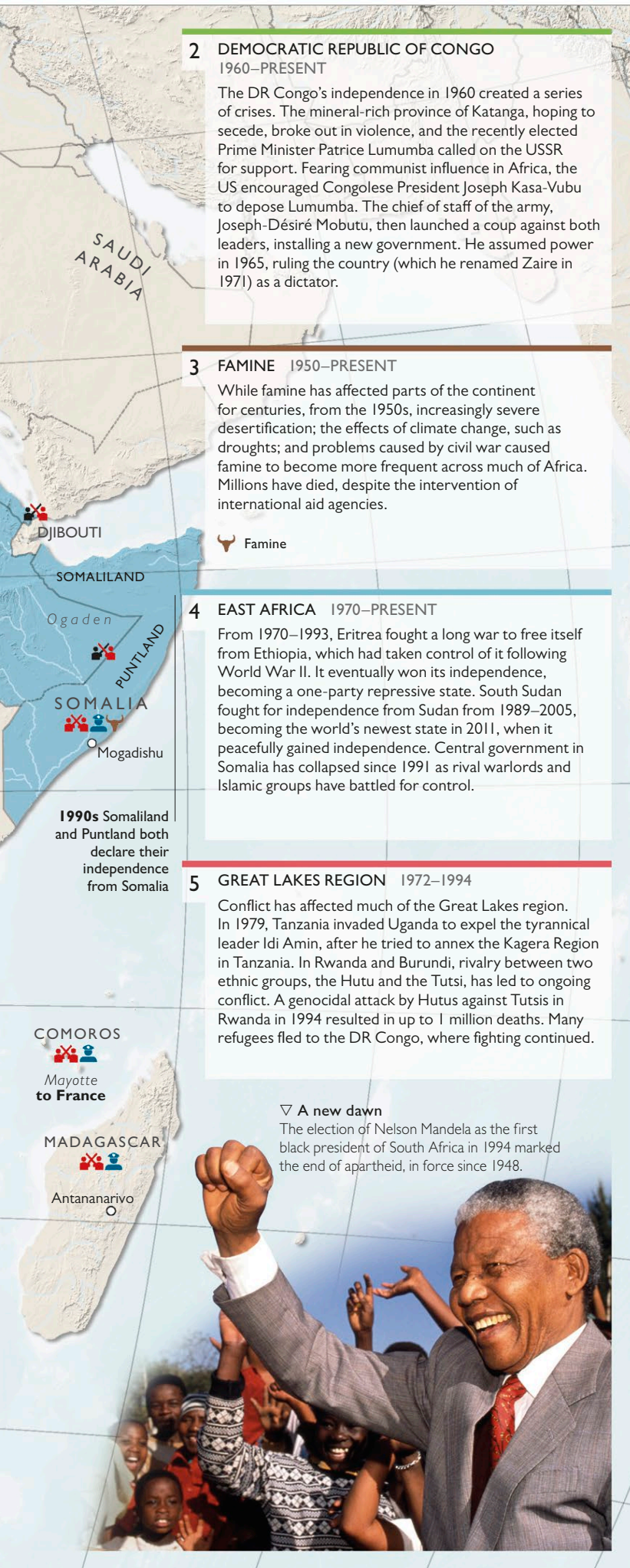
One of the founding fathers of the EU, Robert Schuman was born a German national in Luxembourg. His mother was from Luxembourg, and his father, who came from Alsace, was French at birth but became German when the region was annexed by Germany in 1871. In 1919, when Alsace was reunited with France after World War I, Robert Schuman became a French national. As French foreign minister, he helped to set up the Council of Europe in 1949, to enhance human rights, and, together with French economist Jean Monnet, he was a guiding light in setting up the European Coal and Steel Community (ECSC) in 1951—the forerunner of the EU.











# DECOLONIZATION OF AFRICA

The liberation of Africa from European rulers created 54 independent nations, many of them unprepared for the tasks of government and administration. Their recent history has been varied; while some continue to struggle with war and famine, others have been successful politically, socially, and economically.

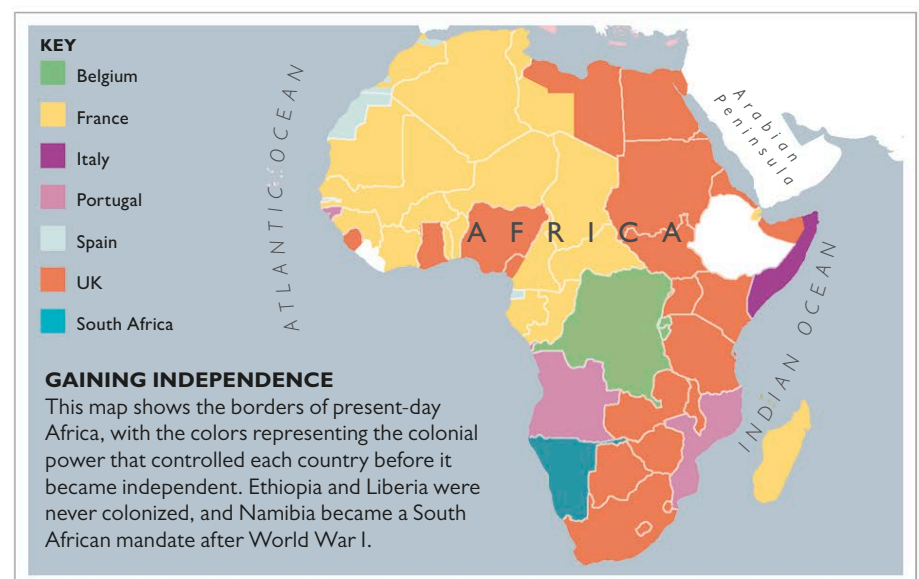
The move toward decolonization and independence from Europe began in the 1950s, when colonies began to demand self-rule. At that time, only Egypt, Ethiopia, Liberia, and South Africa were independent nations. Libya was the first to gain its independence, in 1951 (from France and the UK), followed by Tunisia and Morocco (from France) and Sudan (from the UK) in 1956. From then on, new African countries appeared almost annually. Most gained independence peacefully, although French resistance to Algerian independence led to a brutal civil war from 1954–1962, and Portugal's

refusal to hand over its five African colonies led to wars of revolt until 1974. A white-minority revolt in Rhodesia (which became Zimbabwe) delayed its independence from the UK until 1980.

By 1990, every country in Africa was independent, but many faced problems, including numerous changes of government through civil wars, coups d'état, and military dictatorships, as well as issues such as widespread poverty and famine. However, many countries are now experiencing success, including economic growth, increasing political stability, and social reform.

*"The best way of learning to be an independent sovereign state is to be an independent sovereign state."*

KWAME NKRUMAH, FIRST PRESIDENT OF GHANA, IN A SPEECH TO THE LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY, MAY 18, 1956





# ROCKETS AND THE SPACE RACE

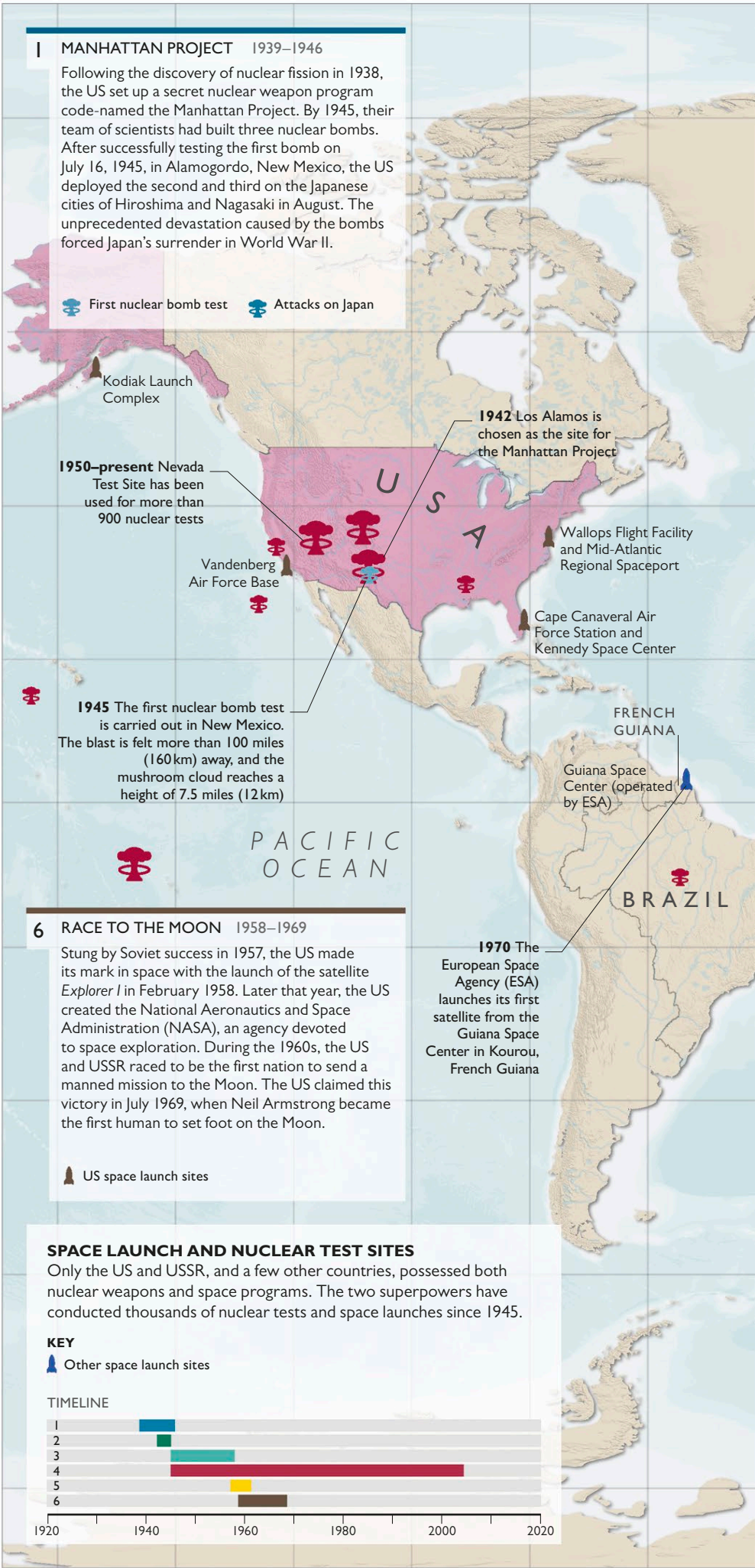
The development of the nuclear bomb and rocket technology during World War II triggered a postwar arms race between the US and the USSR. As the Cold War escalated, this race also headed into space, as each side used its rocket technology to travel to the Moon and beyond.

On September 8, 1944, Germany deployed the world’s first long-range ballistic missile, the V-2 rocket. It was a devastating weapon, capable of traveling up to 200 miles (320km) and reaching a top speed of 3,580mph (5,760kph). A few months earlier, it had also accidentally become the first artificial object to reach outer space when a test launch went wrong, and the rocket headed vertically off its launch site. From this military beginning emerged the technology both to carry intercontinental ballistic nuclear warheads to their distant targets and to power spacecraft and satellites into space.

At the end of World War II, and with the Cold War escalating (see pp.314–315), the US and the USSR scrambled to seize as much of this new German technology as possible. Some of the German scientists who had developed the V-2 rocket were recruited by the US to work on its military and space programs, while the Soviets based their missile program on the German rocket technology they had seized when they took over eastern Germany in 1945. The superpowers now began to fight a war on two fronts. A nuclear arms race started, with the US and the USSR each amassing enough weaponry to destroy the Earth many times over. Only the certainty of mutual destruction prevented all-out war. In a war that was as much about propaganda as weaponry, a race to reach space also began, with each country fighting to earn the international honor of having one of their men become the first person on the Moon.

**PROPAGANDA**  
SOVIET POSTER

The US and the USSR used propaganda to promote their political ideology—capitalism or communism—and to criticize the beliefs of their enemy. Both superpowers were eager to send the first person into space because whoever achieved this victory would be able to use it for propaganda purposes and prove the superiority of their technology. This poster celebrates the USSR’s victory, which came in 1961, when it sent Yuri Gagarin into space.





## 2 BIRTH OF ROCKET POWER 1942–1945

In 1942, a team of German scientists, led by Wernher von Braun, developed the V-2 rocket, the world's first long-range guided ballistic missile. During World War II, the Allies had bombed many German cities, so in retaliation, Germany launched a total of 3,172 V-2 rockets against Allied cities in Britain, Belgium, France, and the Netherlands, killing 9,000 people. The rockets traveled so fast that the Allies were unable to shoot them down.

V-2 targeted countries V-2 test site

1944 V-2 rocket attacks result in about 3,000 fatalities in London and surrounding areas

1966 Many countries claim that Israel has created its first nuclear weapon in December 1966. Israel denies this allegation

1957–1990 More than 220 tests are conducted at Novaya Zemlya

1949 USSR conducts its first nuclear bomb test at the Semipalatinsk Test Site

## 3 ROCKET DEVELOPMENT 1945–1957

More than 100 German scientists, including von Braun, surrendered to the US after Germany's defeat in World War II. Many were hired to work on the US weapons program. The USSR, meanwhile, took over Germany's V-2 production facilities. Both the emerging superpowers then raced to be the first to develop intercontinental ballistic missiles and space rockets. In 1957, the USSR opened the world's first space launch facility, Baikonur Cosmodrome.

First space launch facility

2006 North Korea carries out its first nuclear test

1945 US drops the first nuclear bomb over the Japanese city of Hiroshima on August 6. The blast and its aftereffects claim up to 146,000 lives

1954 US conducts first thermonuclear test at Bikini Atoll

1952 US tests its first thermonuclear bomb on the island of Elugelab

1964 China carries out its first nuclear test at Lop Nor. A total of 48 tests are conducted from 1964–1996

1952 First British nuclear test conducted on the Montebello Islands, Australia

ATLANTIC OCEAN

INDIAN OCEAN

## 5 SOVIETS REACH SPACE 1957–1961

The USSR had early victories in the Space Race. On October 4, 1957, it became the first country to launch an artificial satellite into space. Named *Sputnik 1*, the satellite orbited the Earth for 3 months. In April 1961, the USSR launched its first manned space rocket, *Vostok 1*, which took cosmonaut Yuri Gagarin into space and made him the first human to orbit the Earth. In May 1961, President John F. Kennedy responded by declaring that the US would put the first man on the Moon.

Further USSR space launch sites

## 4 NUCLEAR PROLIFERATION 1945–2006

Determined to match the US's nuclear firepower, the USSR tested its first nuclear bomb in 1949. The two superpowers went on to enlarge their stocks of nuclear weapons and also developed the even more powerful thermonuclear bomb. Several other countries also acquired nuclear weapons. In 1968, many countries signed a treaty to curb the spread of nuclear weapons.

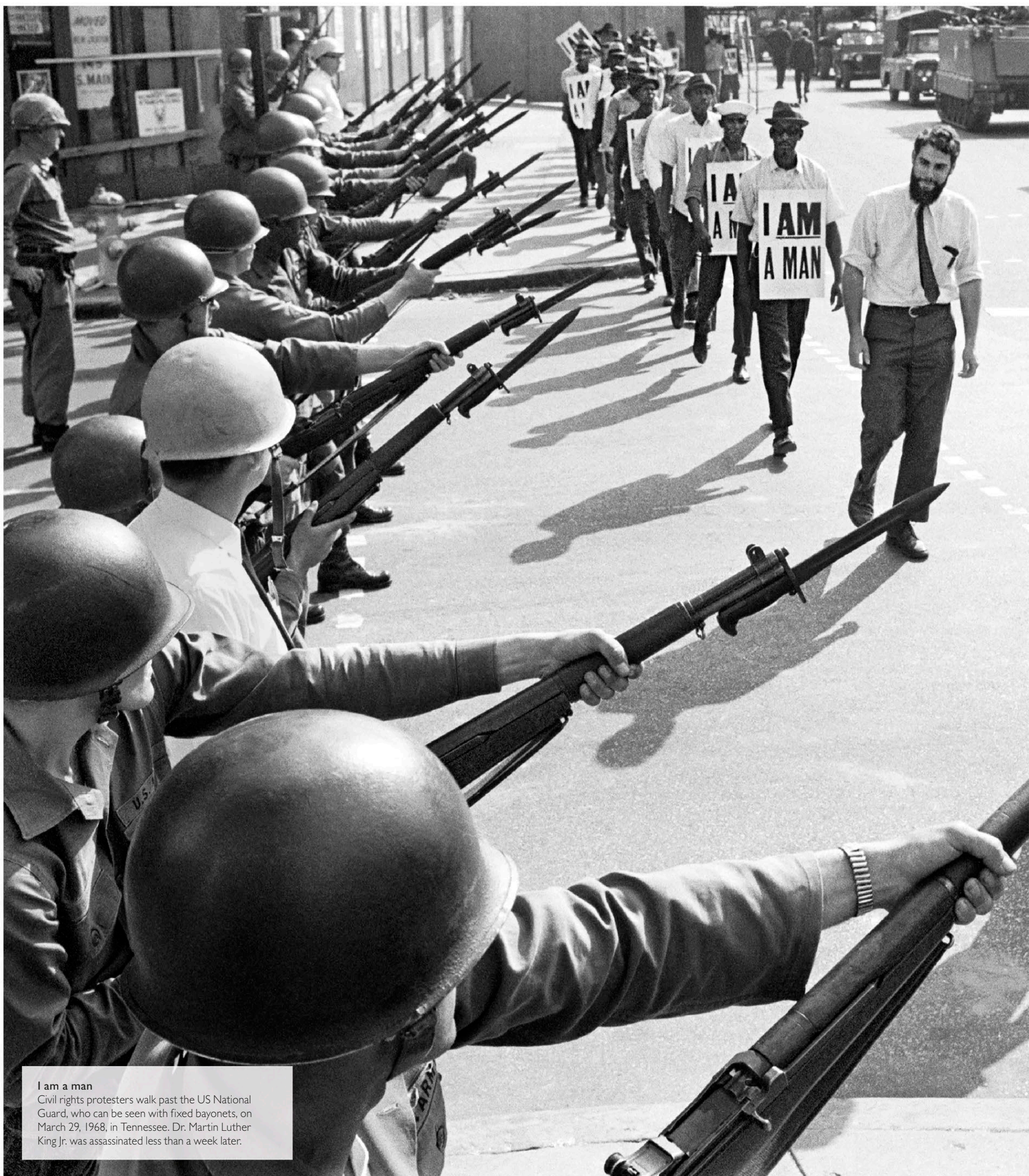
Nuclear test site Nuclear superpower  
Area of multiple sites Nuclear weapon state

### ▷ American V-2 tests

This photograph, taken on July 24, 1950, shows US forces testing the Bumper rocket at Cape Canaveral, a US Air Force missile test center in Florida. The rocket utilized German V-2 technology.

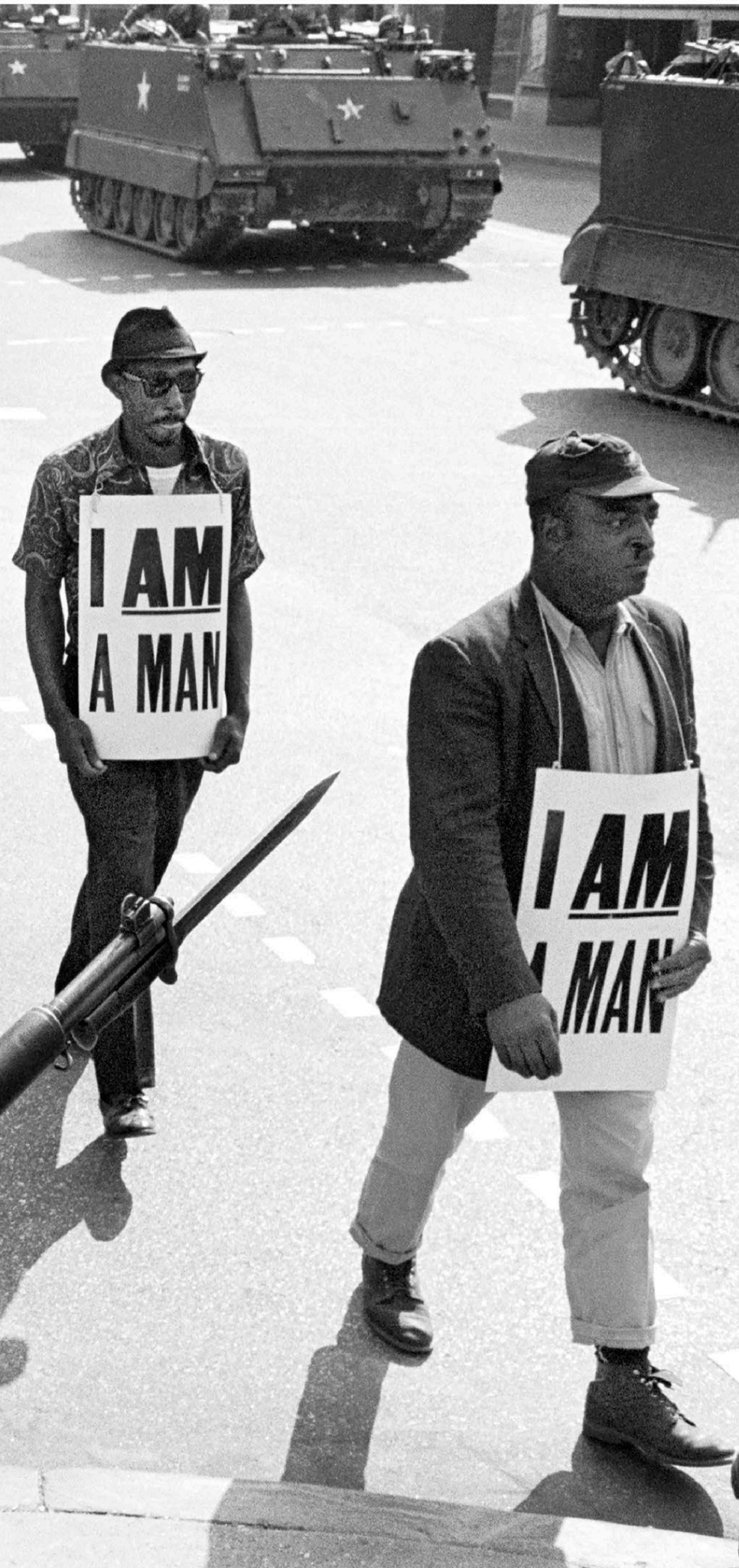




**I am a man**

Civil rights protesters walk past the US National Guard, who can be seen with fixed bayonets, on March 29, 1968, in Tennessee. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr. was assassinated less than a week later.





# CIVIL RIGHTS AND STUDENT REVOLTS

Activists have campaigned for human rights since the turn of the 20th century. In the 1960s, the US and France in particular saw popular pressure for reform.

From the abolition of slavery to voting rights for women, social movements have been an instrument of change across the world. The US in the 1950s was a country riddled with racial inequality. In December 1955, Rosa Parks, a black civil rights activist, refused to give up her seat on a bus to a white passenger in Alabama. Her arrest sparked the modern civil rights movement. In August 1963, Dr. Martin Luther King Jr., a leading proponent of civil rights in the US, gave an inspiring speech to about 250,000 protesters, setting out his vision of a country free of prejudice. Segregation was abolished in 1964; the following year, all black people were given voting rights.

The year 1968 became the year of revolutions. Even as there were massive demonstrations in the US against the Vietnam War, student riots in Paris over poor university campus facilities spread across France. About 8 million workers joined the students and went on strike, calling for change. This was the defining moment of a year that saw young people across the Western world protest against outmoded bureaucracies, oppressive regimes, racial and gender inequality, and prejudice against sexual minorities. Although the protests in France died down, the events of 1968 inspired a generation.



△ **French May**  
A poster proclaims the "beginning of a long struggle" during the civil unrest spearheaded by students in May 1968 in France.

## DESEGREGATION IN THE AMERICAN SOUTH

In the 1950s, many aspects of life were still racially segregated in the southern states of the US. The states identified on this map all enforced segregation until 1957. By 1964, they had begun to desegregate to varying degrees.

**KEY**  
AFRICAN AMERICANS IN  
SCHOOLS WITH WHITES, 1964

- 0–1%
- 1.5–6%
- 28–60%





# THE VIETNAM WARS

The two major wars in Vietnam after World War II were by far the most violent conflicts in Southeast Asia in the 20th century. Between them, they lasted almost 30 years and involved several major global powers. Although Vietnam had declared its independence in 1945, it was not fully achieved until 1975, once all foreign forces had left and the country was unified.

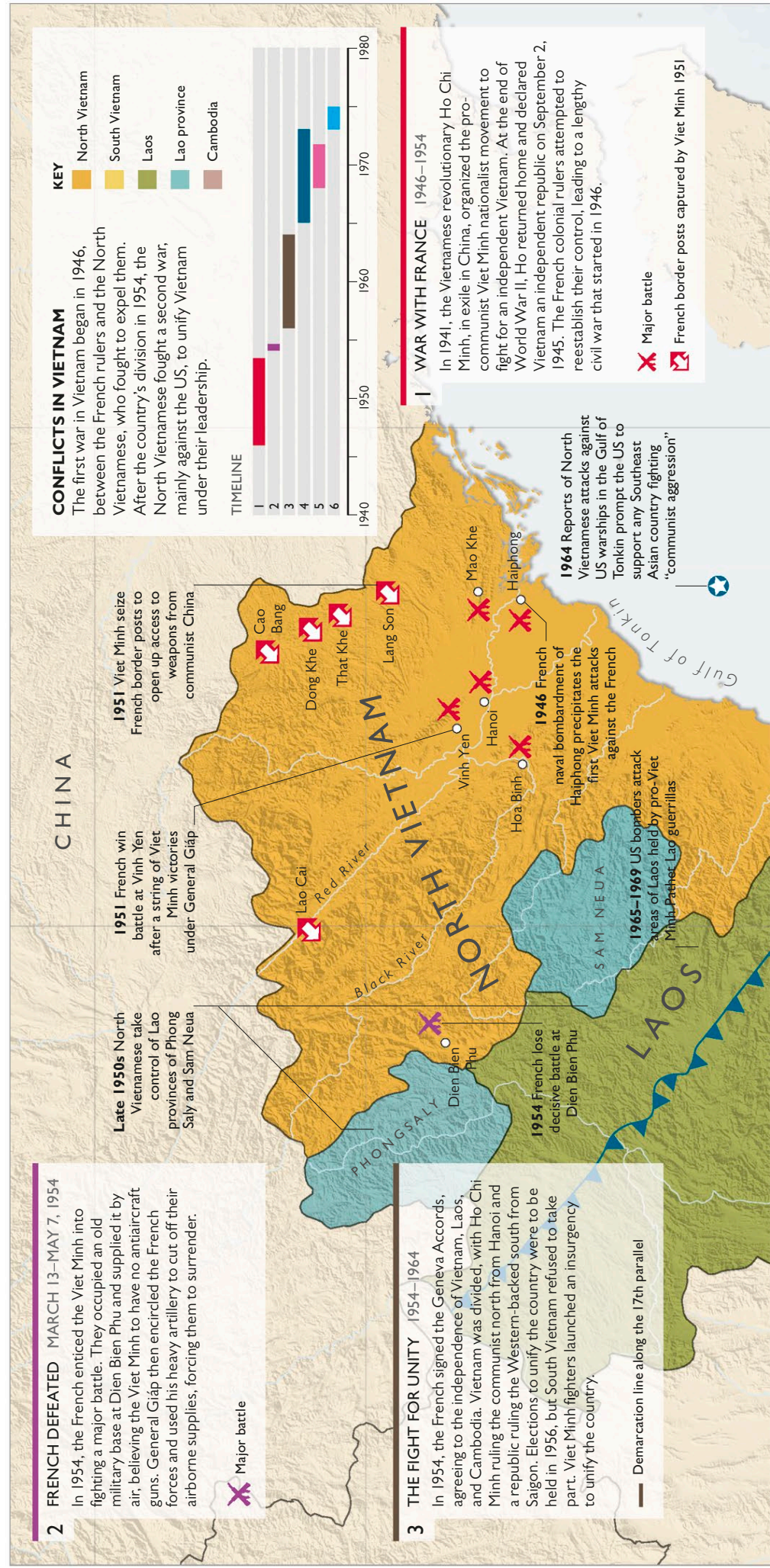
Fighting in Vietnam began when the Japanese occupied the French-ruled colony during World War II. The Viet Minh, a nationalist organization, led the resistance from 1941. After Japan was defeated in 1945, the French returned to Vietnam, and again the Viet Minh took up arms against the foreign forces. The ensuing and protracted war between Vietnam and France—known as the First Indochina War—began in 1946 and ended in the decisive defeat of the French at Dien Bien Phu in 1954. The now-independent Vietnam was then divided into the communist north and republican south. After a

partial lull, fighting broke out again in 1956, as the North Vietnamese fought to unite the country under their leadership. The war that then erupted—called the Second Indochina War, or the Vietnam War—was in many ways a proxy struggle within the global context of the Cold War, with the US supporting South Vietnam, and the USSR and China on the side of North Vietnam. The war also spread into Laos and Cambodia. Eventually, in the face of defeat, the US negotiated its way out of the war in 1973, paving the way for an eventual North Vietnamese victory and reunification of Vietnam in 1975.

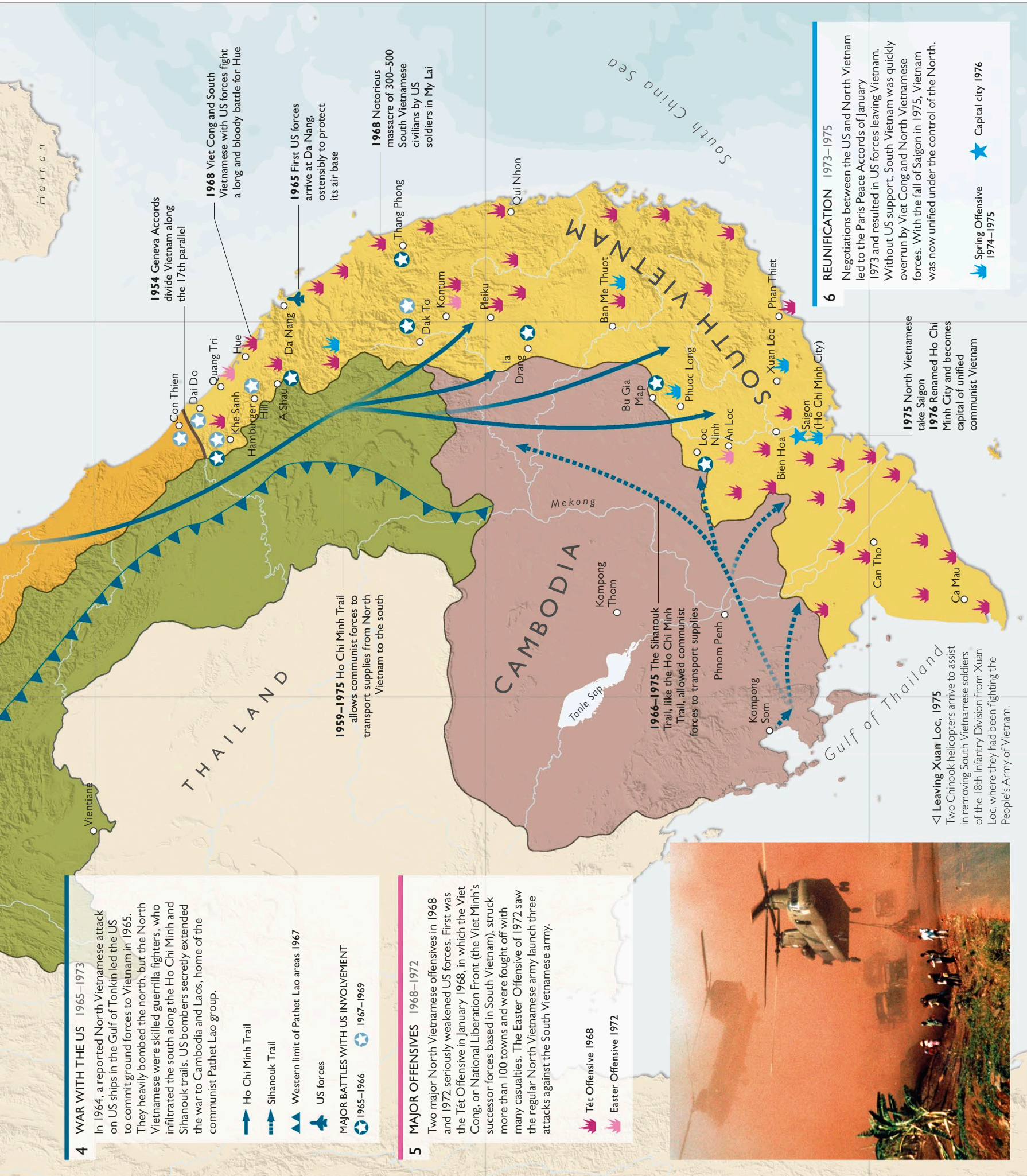
GENERAL GIÁP  
1911–2013



Vo Nguyen Giap is considered to be one of the greatest military strategists of the 20th century, having mastered both conventional and guerrilla war tactics. Leading the Viet Minh resistance against Japanese occupation of Vietnam during World War II, he also led North Vietnamese forces against the French and then the US. His victory at Dien Bien Phu, in March–May 1954, is seen as one of the greatest military victories in modern history.












## | GUATEMALA 1954-1996

Following a coup in 1944, Guatemala was led by the first two democratically elected presidents: Juan José Arévalo and Jacobo Arbenz. Both based many of their policies on US President Franklin Roosevelt's New Deal. The US government believed this new Guatemalan government to be pro-communist, and in 1954 the CIA funded an invasion to overthrow it, installing the dictator Carlos Castillo Armas. Guerrilla activity against the military government increased from the 1960s, leading to a civil war that ended in 1996.

-  Civil war
-  Military coup
-  Guerrilla activity

## 6 PANAMA 1977-1999

US relations with Panama had been difficult due to American ownership of the Panama Canal Zone since 1903. A treaty was eventually signed in 1977 to hand over the zone by 1999, but in 1989, American troops invaded Panama to seize leader General Manuel Noriega after he was indicted by federal grand juries on charges of drug trafficking, racketeering, and money laundering.

 Guerrilla activity

## 7 HAITI 1994-2004

The lengthy Duvalier family dictatorship was toppled in Haiti in 1986. In 1990, the radical priest Jean-Bertrand Aristide won the presidential election, but he was soon forced out by a military coup. The brutality of the military regime, along with the threat of a US invasion, brought Aristide back to power in 1994. His second term, which began in 2000, was ended by a US-backed coup in 2004, leading to Aristide's exile.

US troops	Military coup
	

## 5 NICARAGUA 1979-1990

Installed with US support in 1972, the Somoza family ruled Nicaragua until it was ousted by the socialist Sandinista National Liberation Front (FSLN) in 1979. At first, the US supported the new government, but it suspended aid in 1980 when it came to light that Nicaragua was arming rebels in El Salvador. Under President Ronald Reagan, the CIA supported the Contra rebels who were fighting the Sandinista government. The FSLN were defeated at the polls in 1990.

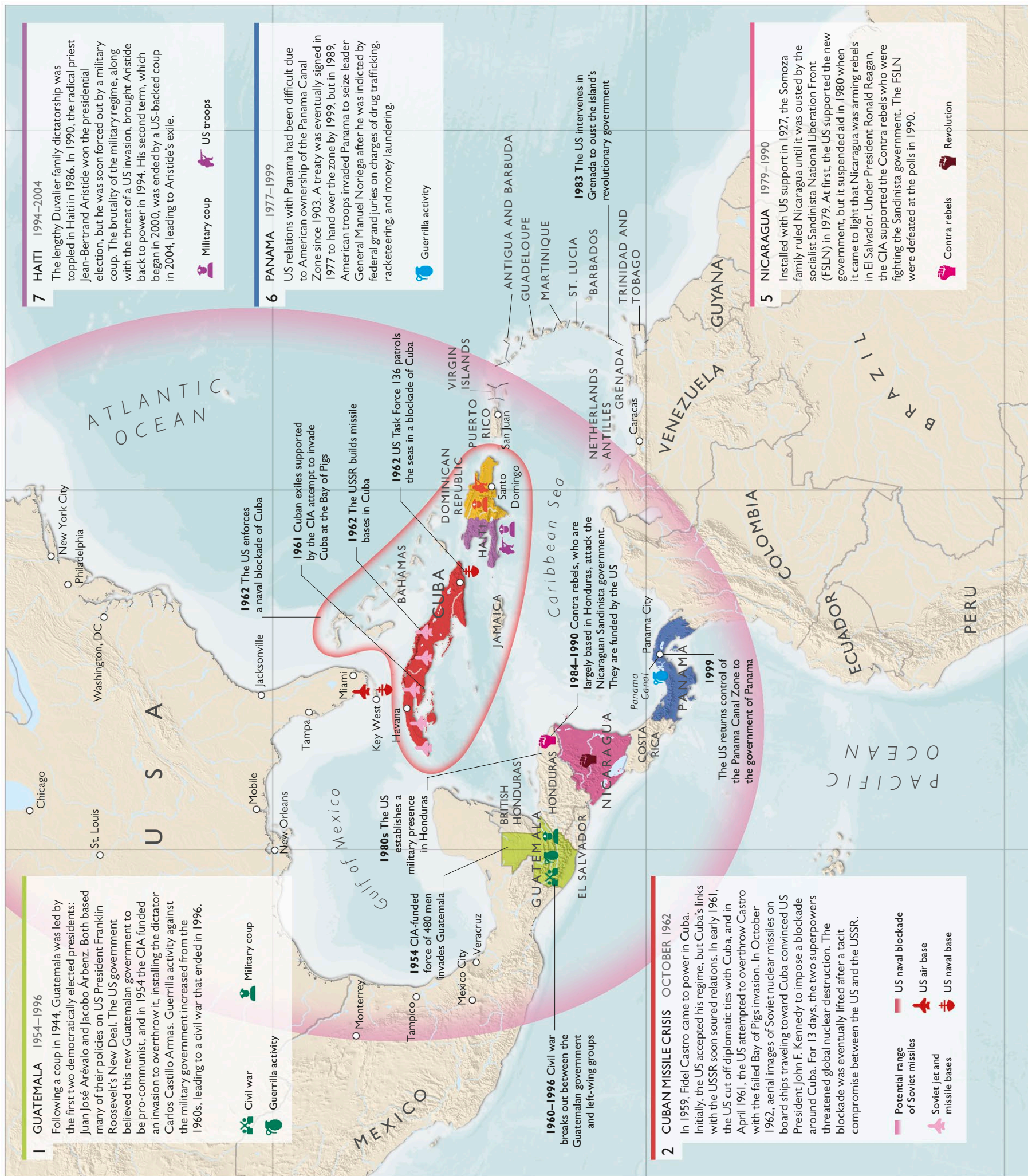
Contra rebels

Revolution

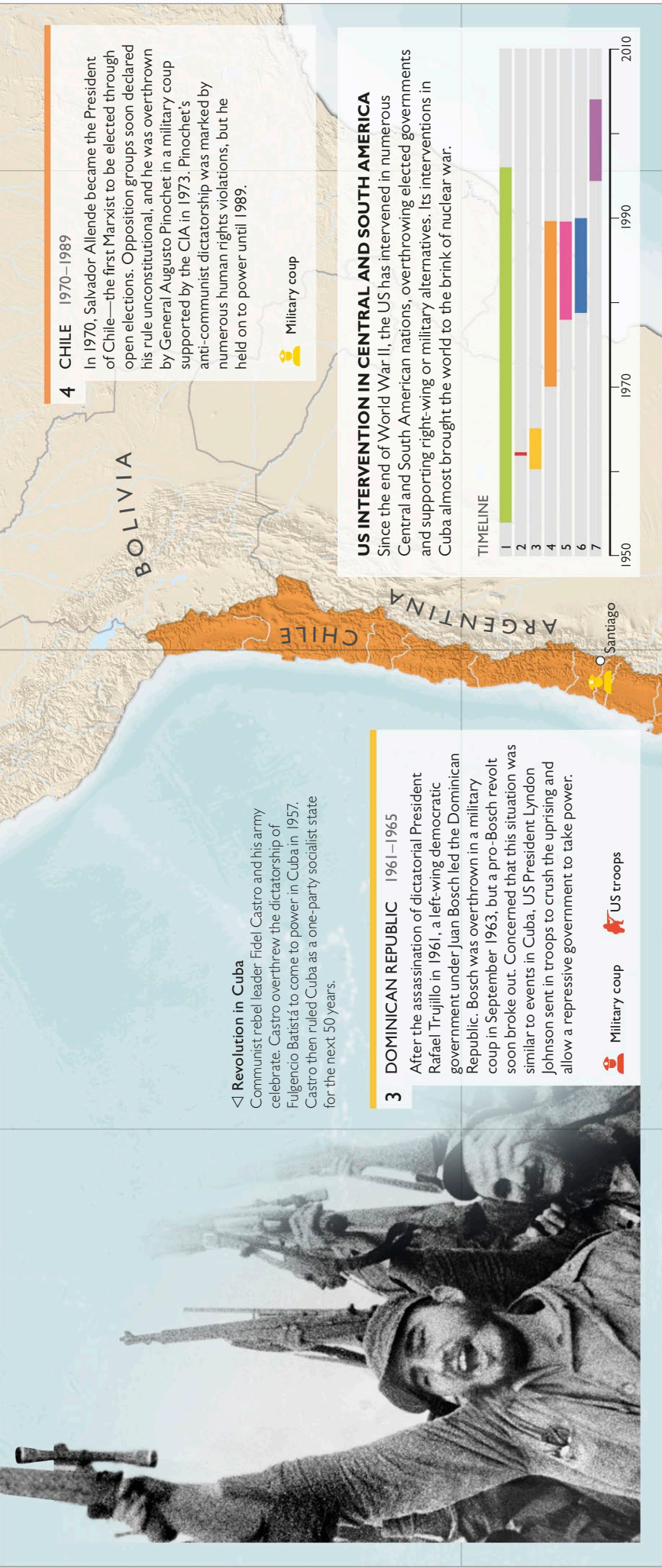
## 2 CUBAN MISSILE CRISIS OCTOBER 1962

In 1959, Fidel Castro came to power in Cuba. Initially, the US accepted his regime, but Cuba's links with the USSR soon soured relations. In early 1961, the US cut off diplomatic ties with Cuba, and in April 1961, the US attempted to overthrow Castro with the failed Bay of Pigs invasion. In October 1962, aerial images of Soviet nuclear missiles on board ships traveling toward Cuba convinced US President John F. Kennedy to impose a blockade around Cuba. For 13 days, the two superpowers threatened global nuclear destruction. The blockade was eventually lifted after a tacit compromise between the US and the USSR.

 Potential range of Soviet missiles  
 Soviet jet and missile bases  
 US naval blockade  
 US air base  
 US naval base







# US INTERVENTIONS IN LATIN AMERICA

Since the 19th century, the US's foreign policies in Central and South America have been geared toward protecting its business interests in the region. Fearful of communist influence, the US has often become involved—covertly and otherwise—in Latin American politics.

In 1823, US President James Monroe announced a formal doctrine that any efforts by nations to take control of independent states in the American continent would be viewed as “the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition toward the United States.” Over a century later, this doctrine enabled the US to exert control over its southern neighbors during the Cold War (see pp.314–315) in order to prevent the spread of communism in the region. As a result, there is barely a country in the region that has remained unaffected in some way by American intervention. Elected governments have been overthrown in Guatemala, Chile, and Haiti; a left-wing government was undermined in Nicaragua; democratic uprisings have been quashed in El Salvador and the Dominican Republic; and authoritarian

governments have been supported in Honduras and elsewhere. US military intervention to overthrow the convicted drug trafficker and leader of Panama General Manuel Noriega, as well as to bring a recently deposed government back to power in Haiti, reinforces the picture of the US engaging actively in Latin American politics. The effect on the countries invaded or influenced by the US has been considerable, with many enduring long periods of military or authoritarian rule. The end of the Cold War in 1991, and the resumption of relations between the US and Cuba in 2015 after 54 years, led to a revival of multiparty democracies. These changes also increased political and economic stability in the region, despite a long-running civil war in Colombia and upheavals in socialist Venezuela.

**CHE GUEVARA**  
1928–1967

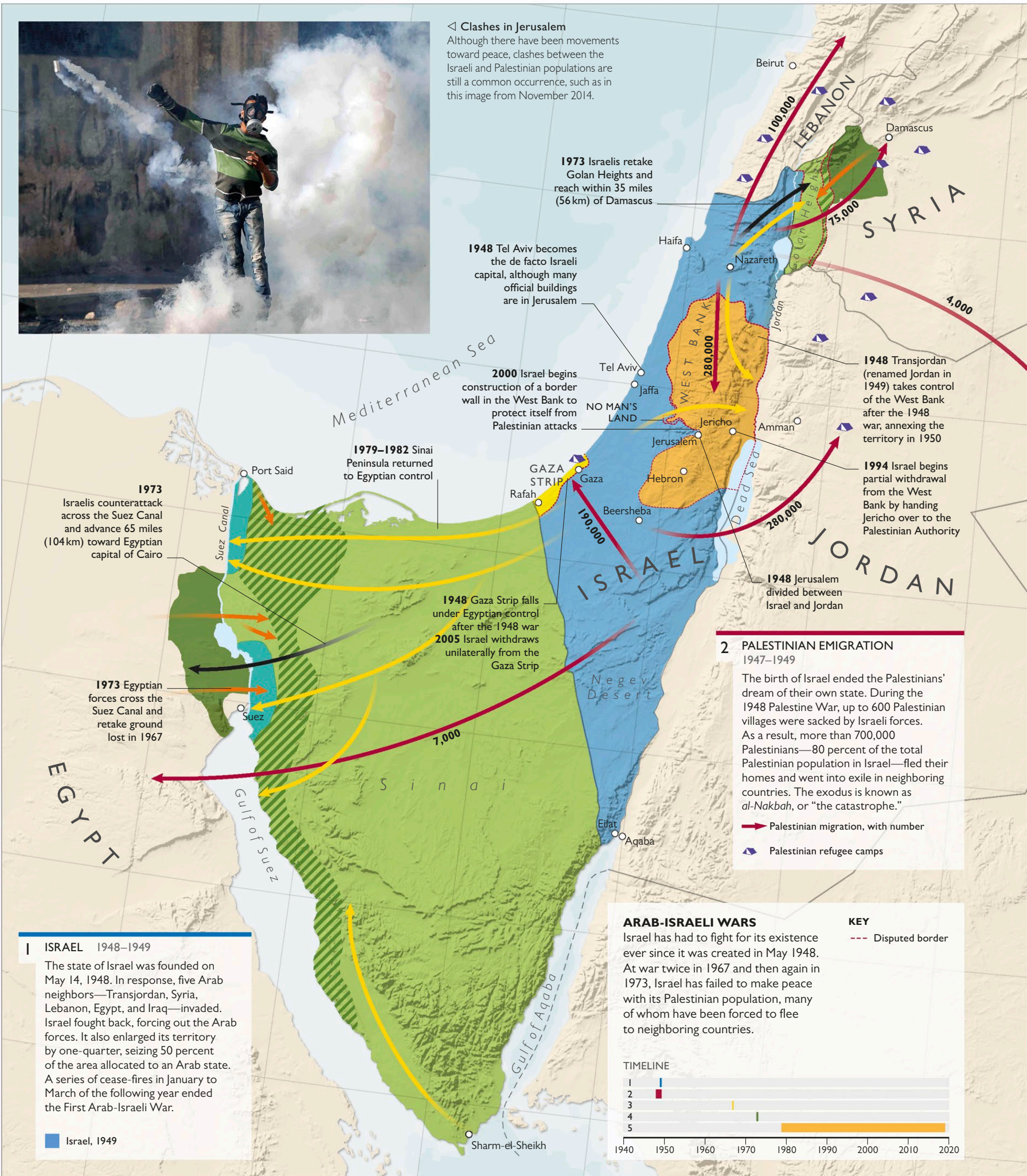


Born in 1928 to a left-wing, middle-class Argentine family, Ernesto Guevara—later known by the nickname Che, meaning “friend”—was a Marxist revolutionary and the leader of the guerrilla army during the Cuban Revolution. As a student, he took two motorcycle journeys around Latin America; the appalling conditions he saw, which he attributed to the capitalist US exploiting Latin America, consolidated his revolutionary ideas.





◁ Clashes in Jerusalem  
Although there have been movements toward peace, clashes between the Israeli and Palestinian populations are still a common occurrence, such as in this image from November 2014.



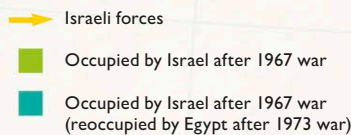


**UN PARTITION PLAN**

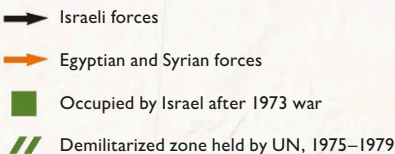
In 1947, the UN drew up a partition plan for what was then the British mandate of Palestine. Independent Jewish and Arab states were to exist side by side, with Jerusalem becoming an international zone.

**3 THE SIX-DAY WAR JUNE 5–10, 1967**

Threatened by increasing pressure from its Arab neighbors, including an Egyptian naval blockade in the south, Israel responded in June 1967 with a surprise attack. It destroyed the entire Arab Air Force on the ground and Egypt's tanks in the Sinai. Israeli troops captured the Sinai Peninsula as well as the West Bank and the Golan Heights.

**4 THE YOM KIPPUR WAR OCTOBER 6–24, 1973**

In retaliation for their defeat in the Six-Day War, Egyptian and Syrian forces launched a surprise attack on Israel on the Jewish holiday of Yom Kippur. Egypt made early gains, crossing the Suez Canal, while Syrian forces advanced over the Golan Heights. Israel counterattacked by crossing the Suez Canal and reaching within 65 miles (104 km) of Cairo. A cease-fire was arranged by the UN, with forces pulling back the next year.

**5 MOVES TOWARD PEACE 1979–PRESENT**

In 1979, Israel signed a peace treaty with Egypt and handed back the Sinai Peninsula. The 1993 Oslo I Accord created a Palestinian government, the Palestinian Authority, which was given some jurisdiction in the Gaza Strip and the West Bank. Israel withdrew from Gaza but has been reluctant to relinquish Jerusalem and the West Bank.



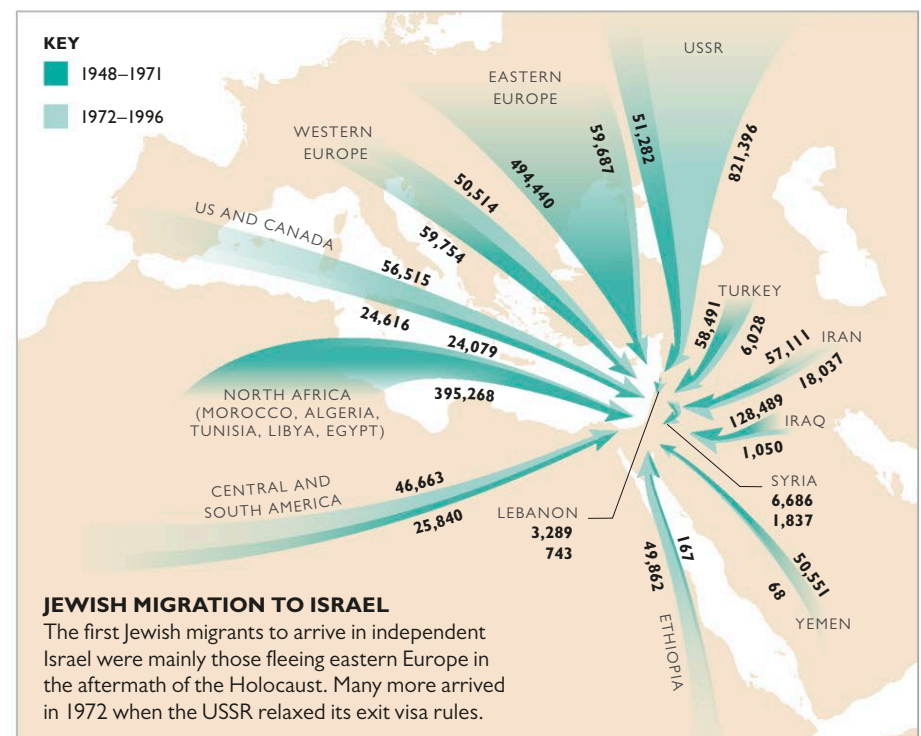
# ISRAEL AND THE MIDDLE EAST

A Jewish population has existed in Palestine for centuries, but the founding of the Zionist Organization in 1897 marked new efforts to create a Jewish homeland in the region. The state of Israel created such a place but sparked a series of wars.

In November 1947, the United Nations, the overseers of the British mandate over Palestine (see pp.284–285), decided to partition the territory into independent Palestinian and Jewish states, in part as a response to Jewish displacement after the Holocaust. As a result of this declaration, violence broke out between the two sides, and British control broke down. The plan was abandoned, and the British ended their mandate over Palestine on May 14, 1948. The head of the Jewish Agency and future prime minister David Ben-Gurion then immediately declared the foundation of the independent state of Israel. Israeli forces promptly captured swathes of Palestinian territory and drove many of its people into exile

in nearby countries. Israel's Arab neighbors became involved in the conflict, while Israel successfully fought back.

After decades of turmoil, both sides began to make steps toward peace. In 1979, Egypt and Israel signed a peace treaty, with Egypt recognizing the state of Israel and Israeli forces withdrawing from occupied Sinai. In 1993, Israel signed an accord with the Palestinian Liberation Organization—which for the first time recognized the existence of Israel—and began to disengage from the Gaza Strip and the West Bank. However, Israel's intention to cede land for peace has proved difficult to put into practice, with the result that relations with Palestinians remain fraught.







**△ Fuel crisis**  
A sign at a service station informs the public of fuel shortage during the 1973 oil crisis, when oil-producing Arab countries placed an embargo on exports.

# ECONOMIC BOOM AND ENVIRONMENTAL COST

The world has seen staggering economic growth during the 20th and 21st centuries, leading to unprecedented wealth. The subsequent environmental damage to the planet, however, has led many experts to call for urgent action to prevent an irreversible global crisis.

In 1944, before World War II had even concluded, delegates from 44 countries met to restructure the world's international finance systems with a focus on introducing a stable system of exchange rates and rebuilding war-

damaged economies in Europe. The International Monetary Fund (IMF) was set up to facilitate international currency exchange, and the World Bank was established to make long-term loans to hard-hit nations. In 1947, the US introduced the Marshall Plan, pumping billions of dollars of investment into western Europe. This helped to restore confidence in the world economy and led to extraordinary growth.

Japan in particular benefited from these initiatives, and the country invested in steel and coal, shipbuilding, and car production, turning to high-tech products in the 1960s. Other Asian countries, such as Taiwan, Singapore, Malaysia, and South Korea, copied the Japanese model. This collective success became known as “Asian tiger economics.”

### Crisis and recovery

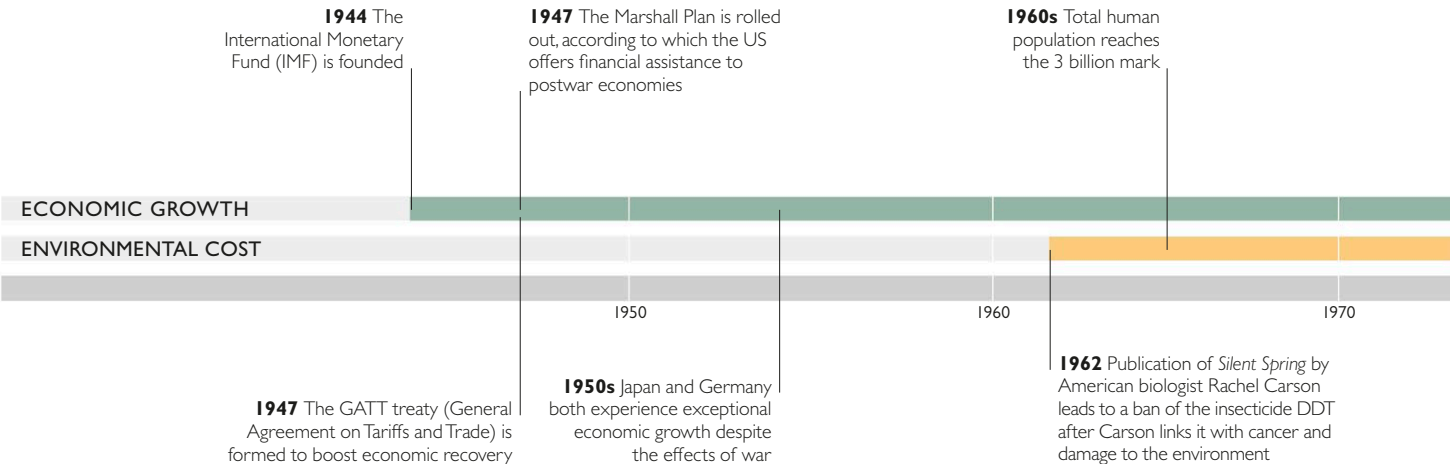
In 1973, Egypt and Syria invaded Israel, and the Organization of Arab Petroleum Exporting Countries (OAPEC) stopped oil being exported to any country supporting Israel. Oil prices tripled, and industrial output



**◁ Booming city**  
The Hong Kong night is illuminated by its many skyscrapers. The city is just one of the outstanding economic success stories in Southeast Asia.

### THE PRICE OF SUCCESS

Changes to the world economy after World War II led to rapid economic growth. Awareness of the environmental cost lagged far behind the boom. Publicity about damaging oil spills, pesticides, and pollution led to the first global climate conference in 1979. By this time, economic growth was bringing lower air quality and industrial waste and depleting natural resources. The continuing rise in population has caused particular concern and intensified efforts to tackle global warming and secure food and water supplies.







#### ◁ Toxic air

A coal-fired power plant in England expels pollutants and greenhouse gases. Stricter air-pollution rules in Europe have sounded the death knell for energy production from coal.

in many countries dropped. The embargo lasted until 1974. The oil crisis led to a worldwide global recession, and in response, many countries changed their economic policies.

Control passed from the state to the private sector, and deregulation became the new driving force, allowing free trade to open up. China moved to allow private enterprise and rapidly developed the trappings of capitalism. Over the coming decades, it would become one of the world's largest and most influential economies. India was influenced by the success of the Asian tiger economies, while Brazil and Mexico also embarked on economic reform, drastically improving living standards. The reunification of West and East Germany in 1990 resulted in a new major force in the world economy. Despite a devastating financial crisis in 2008, the world, it seemed, had never been richer.

### Environmental cost

This economic success came at a price. On October 31, 2011, the United Nations (UN) announced the birth of the 7 billionth person on Earth, heightening concern about the planet's capacity to support so many people. More crops were needed to feed the growing population, and more resources were needed to support the lifestyle of more affluent citizens. Urbanization and population growth strained the environment, and scientists found evidence that human activity is to blame for recent climate change (global warming).

### *"Population growth is straining the Earth's resources to the breaking point."*

AL GORE, FORMER US VICE PRESIDENT

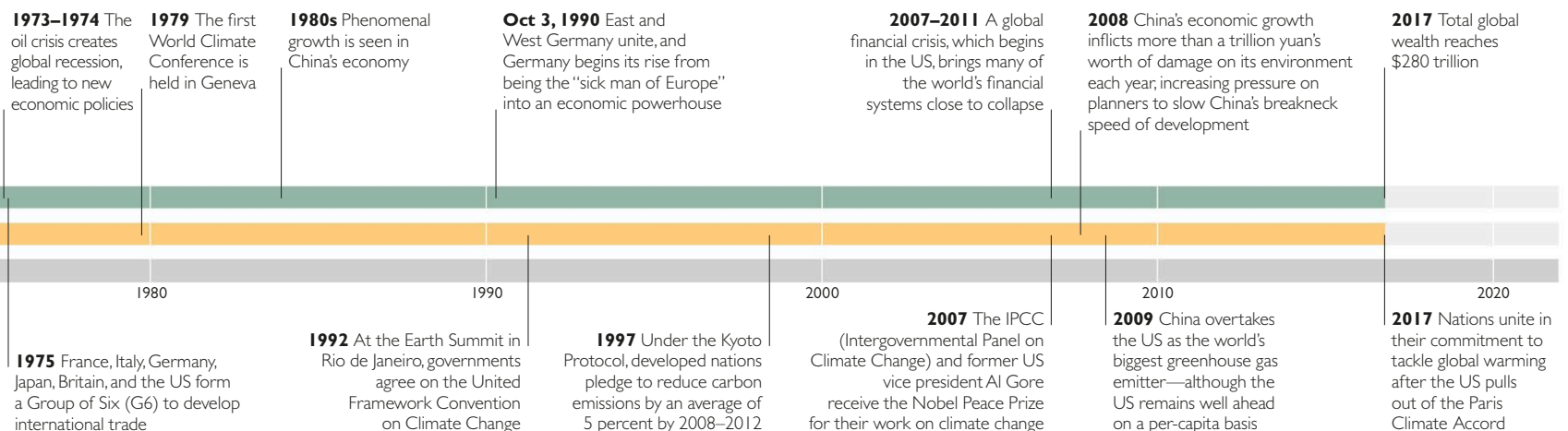
Developing nations were urged to reduce carbon emissions, thought to affect climate change, yet in 2015, India was opening a coal mine a month to lift its 1.3 billion citizens out of poverty. Developing nations objected to being told by developed nations to curb their ambitions for growth. In the 2000s, the world saw record levels of rainfall, as well as severe drought, melting icecaps, and natural disasters. Scientists warned that humans could pass the threshold beyond which climate change would be irreversible.

With 7 billion people on the planet, the drain on natural resources was inevitable. In 2015, world leaders signed the Paris Climate Accord, and 196 nations adopted the first global climate deal, limiting global warming to 3.6°F (2°C).

Today, the UN estimates that by 2050, the global population will reach 9.7 billion. While the last two centuries have brought astonishing opportunities and wealth, challenges from war, pollution, and inequality remain grave.

#### ▽ Catching the sun


Around 70,000 solar panels in the Nevada Desert provide 25 percent of the power used at the Nellis Air Force Base. It is the largest solar power plant in the western hemisphere; such projects are held up as models for renewable energy.






**1 POLAND 1980–1990**

In 1980, after a wave of strikes against economic mismanagement, an independent trade union, called Solidarity, was set up to demand reform. General Jaruzelski's government imposed martial law in 1981 and arrested Solidarity's leaders. Following further strikes, the government was forced to allow partially free elections in 1989, which were won by Solidarity. Lech Wałęsa, Solidarity's leader, then won the first free presidential election in December 1990.

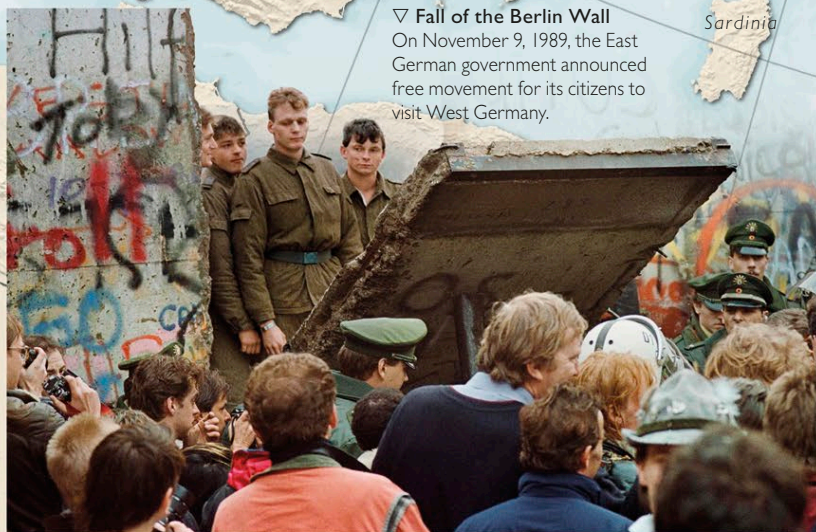
 First free election 1990

**2 HUNGARY 1989–1990**

Hungary had pursued a policy of economic and political liberalization since 1962. In 1989, the government removed restrictions on other political parties, reconstituted the ruling Communist Party as the Hungarian Socialist Party, and renamed the People's Republic of Hungary the Republic of Hungary. In May 1990, it called free elections. These were won by a right-of-center democratic coalition.

 First free election 1990

▽ **Fall of the Berlin Wall**  
On November 9, 1989, the East German government announced free movement for its citizens to visit West Germany.

**3 GERMANY 1989–1990**

After World War II, Germany was split into communist East and democratic West. In 1989, mass demonstrations against communist rule forced the East's government to move toward democracy, while the opening of the Berlin Wall in November that year caused a mass exodus to the West. Free elections in March 1990 were followed by the reunification of Germany in October 1990.

 East Germany 1990

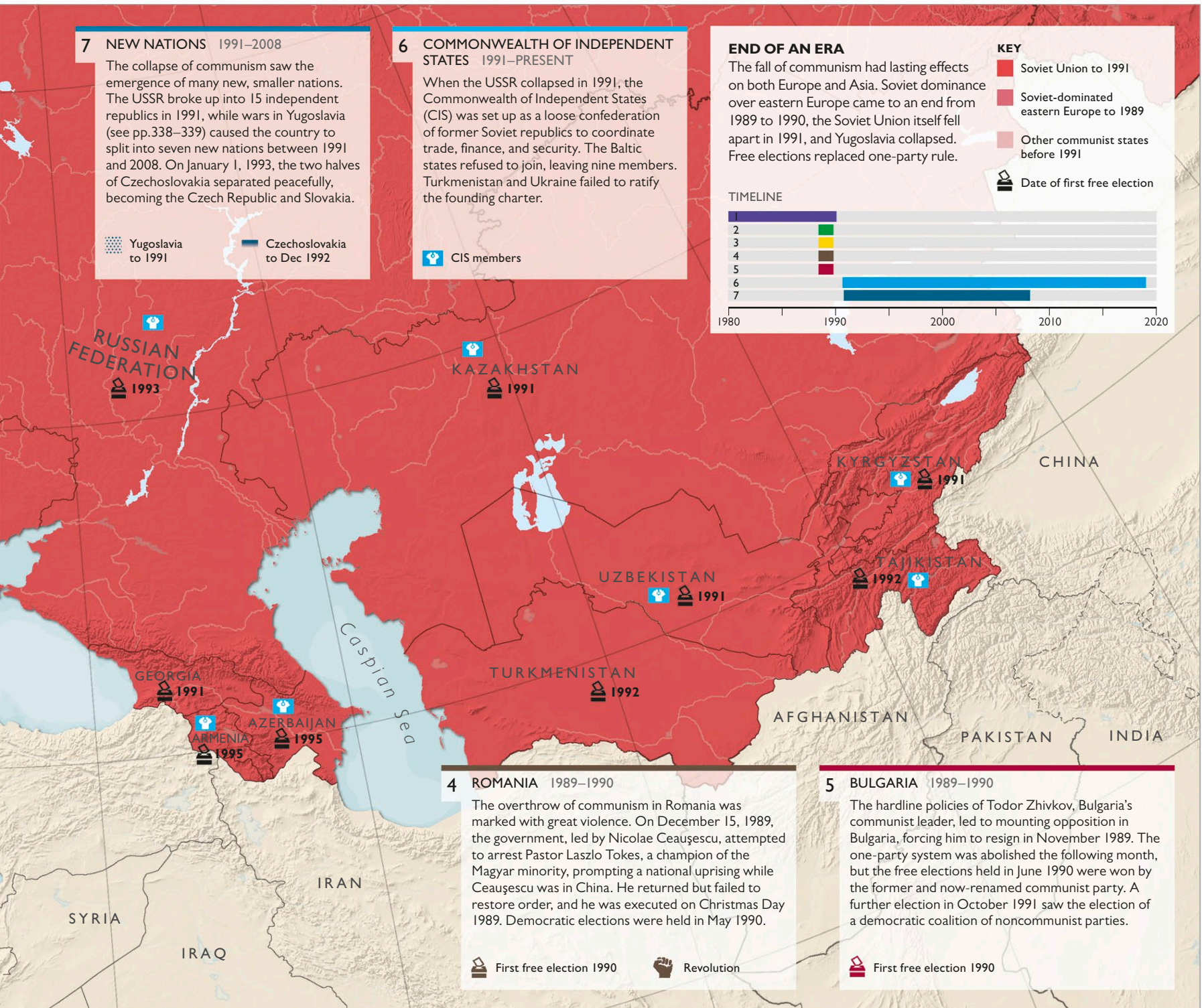
 First free election 1990

# THE COLLAPSE OF COMMUNISM

The fall of communism in Europe and the dissolution of the USSR were among the most momentous events in modern history. Yet they were also among the least predicted, because it was internal weaknesses, rather than external pressures, that brought about their end. Change came quickly, and the effects were long-lasting.

The election of Mikhail Gorbachev as General Secretary of the Soviet Communist Party in March 1985 promised much-needed reforms in the USSR. He began to restructure the state and pledged economic and political change. Dissidents were released from prison, and private enterprise was encouraged. Crucially, in 1988, he declared the abandonment of the Brezhnev Doctrine, formulated in 1968 by Leonid Brezhnev, under which the USSR asserted its right to intervene militarily in the internal affairs of other communist countries in order to maintain strict communist rule. Relinquishing this doctrine gave the green light to eastern European communist nations to begin political reforms, as they now became aware that they could not rely on Soviet help to maintain their oppressive rule if opposition arose. As the eastern European nations, led by Poland and then Hungary, began to liberalize their political structures, the USSR came under pressure from its increasingly rebellious republics.





Gorbachev tried to restructure the Soviet Union as calls grew in the Baltic states and elsewhere for full independence, but he was opposed by demonstrations in Ukraine and by the Russian Federation leader, Boris Yeltsin. Fatally weakened by an attempted communist coup in August 1991 and a decisive vote for Ukrainian independence in December, Gorbachev was forced to resign as president on Christmas Day 1991. The next day, the USSR itself was disbanded, and Soviet communism—founded in 1917—had ended.

*"The threat of world war is no more."*

MIKHAIL GORBACHEV, SOVIET PRESIDENT, MAKING HIS FAREWELL SPEECH ENDING THE USSR, DECEMBER 1991

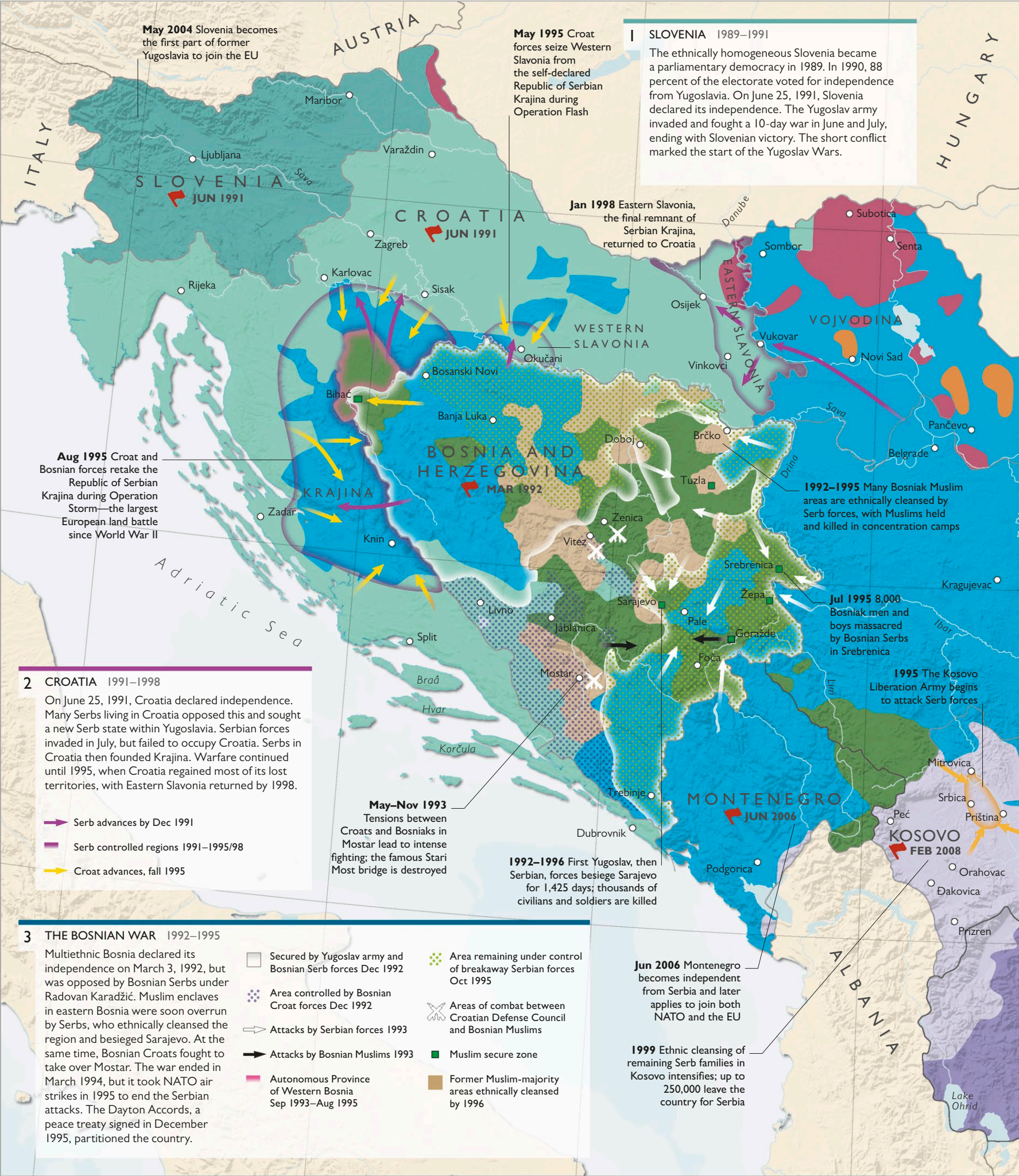
#### PERESTROIKA AND GLASNOST RUSSIAN POLICIES

Mikhail Gorbachev became General Secretary of the Soviet Communist Party in 1985 and President of the USSR in 1990. Aiming to secure warmer relations with the West, he set out two new policies: *perestroika* (liberal economic restructuring) and *glasnost* (political openness).

**West meets East**  
Mikhail Gorbachev (right) met US President Ronald Reagan (left) several times to improve East–West relations.









# WAR IN YUGOSLAVIA

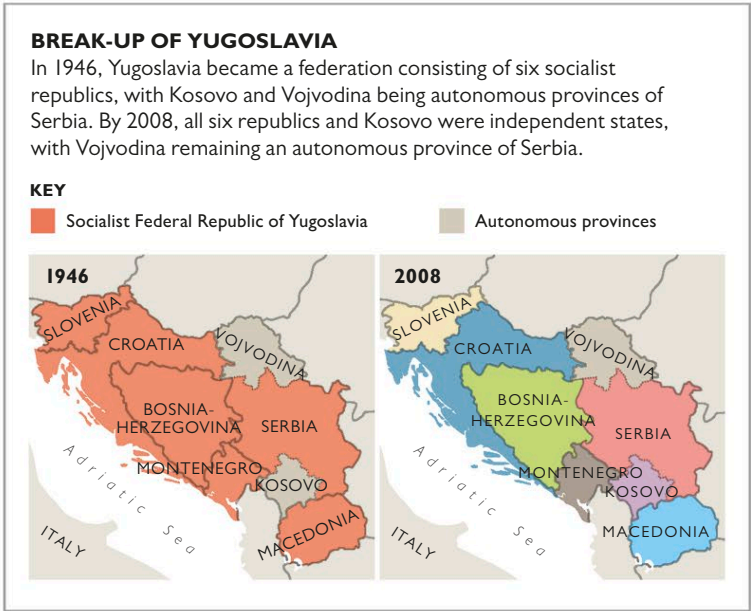
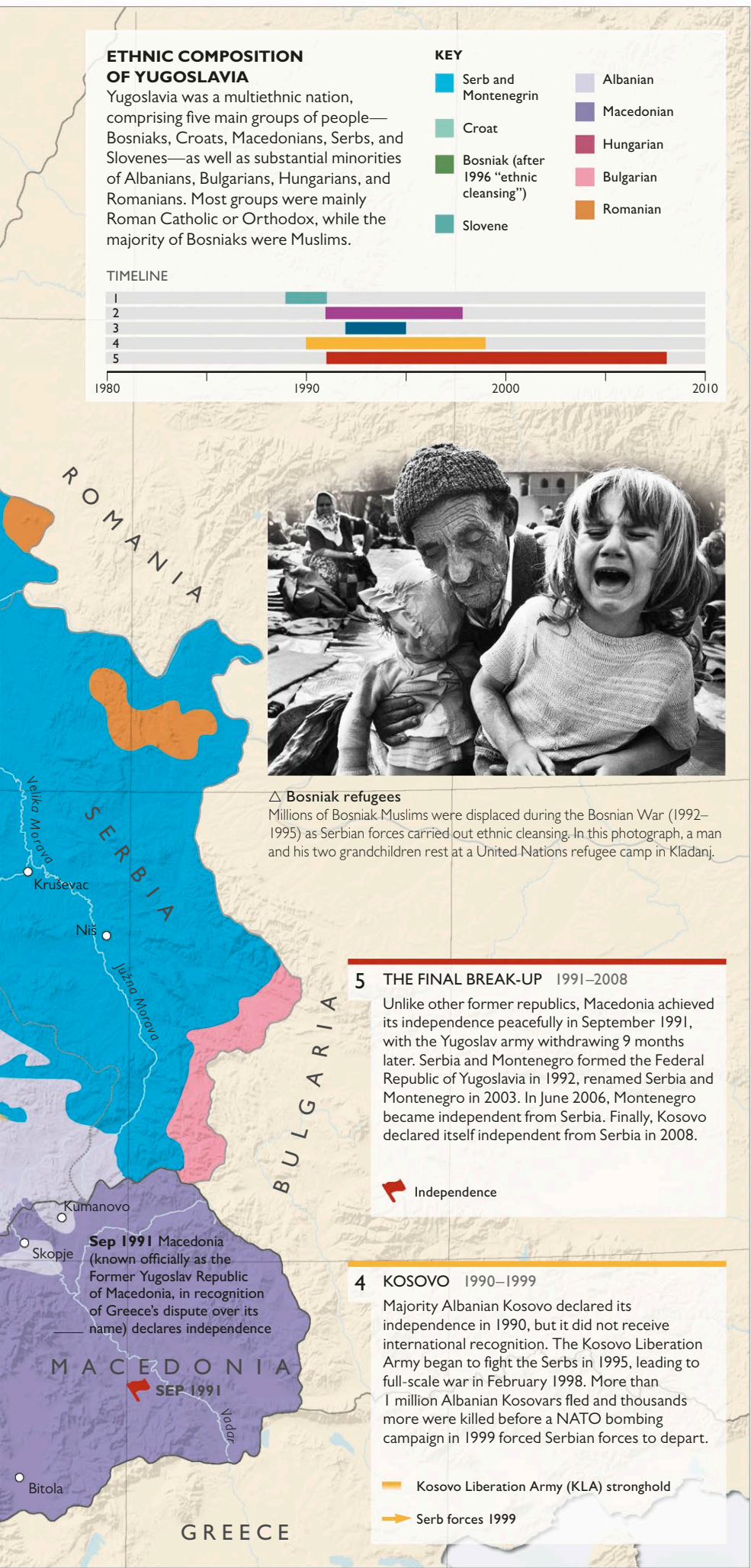
In the 1990s, the multiethnic but unified Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia fell apart in the bloodiest series of wars fought in Europe since World War II.

Under the rule of leader Josip Broz Tito (1892–1980), Yugoslavia was a federation of six socialist republics, with two autonomous provinces inside Serbia. After Tito’s death, a Serbian nationalist revival, led by Slobodan Milošević, started the country’s disintegration by opposing Slovenian and Croatian independence in June 1991. Yugoslav (Serbian) forces moved in, and over the next decade, the nationalist drive to reorganize the territory along ethnic lines led to mass killings of civilians and other atrocities, giving the world a new phrase: “ethnic cleansing.”

The conflict spread to Bosnia in 1992, where Serbs ethnically cleansed large areas of Bosniak Muslims. A fragile peace was eventually reached in 1995 with the signing of the Dayton Accords. The final tragedy was fought out in Kosovo, as Serbs tried to crush an uprising by the Kosovo Liberation Army. NATO stepped in, forcing the Serbs out of Kosovo in 1999. By 2008, seven new states had emerged from the once-unified country. The conflicts cost 140,000 lives and displaced nearly 4 million people.

*“No country of people’s democracy has so many nationalities as this country has.”*

JOSIP BROZ TITO, LEADER OF YUGOSLAVIA, 1948





# GLOBALIZATION

Globalization—the free movement of goods, people, money, knowledge, and culture around the world—was once seen as the answer to worldwide poverty, but inequality and political instability have led to a populist backlash.

Globalization is not a recent phenomenon. Countries have traded with each other for thousands of years; yet after World War II, technological advances, together with the lowering of trade barriers and the communication revolution, transformed the way nations interacted.

Globalization promoted economic growth in developing countries, yet in practice this often meant that industries would move from rich countries, where labor was expensive, to poor countries, where it was cheaper. Multinational corporations became increasingly global, locating production plants overseas in order to take advantage of lower costs and taxes. The growth of the internet allowed people to conduct business across the globe without leaving their office. International trade in goods, services, and financial capital became more widespread than ever before, further driven by China's decision to open its economy to the world in the late 80s and by the collapse of the Soviet bloc in the early 90s.

## Reactions and protests

A backlash against globalization had begun in the early 90s. It intensified in November 1999 as protesters in Seattle, Washington, took to the streets at the World Trade Organization (WTO) conference. Once applauded by economists, globalization was now fiercely contested as widening the gap between the rich and poor. Ordinary people were portrayed as victims of ruthless corporate domination, with large

corporations exploiting the poor in search of new profits. The debate continues today, as political parties advancing protectionist and anti-immigration policies, including a return to local economies, have found wide support across much of the Western world.

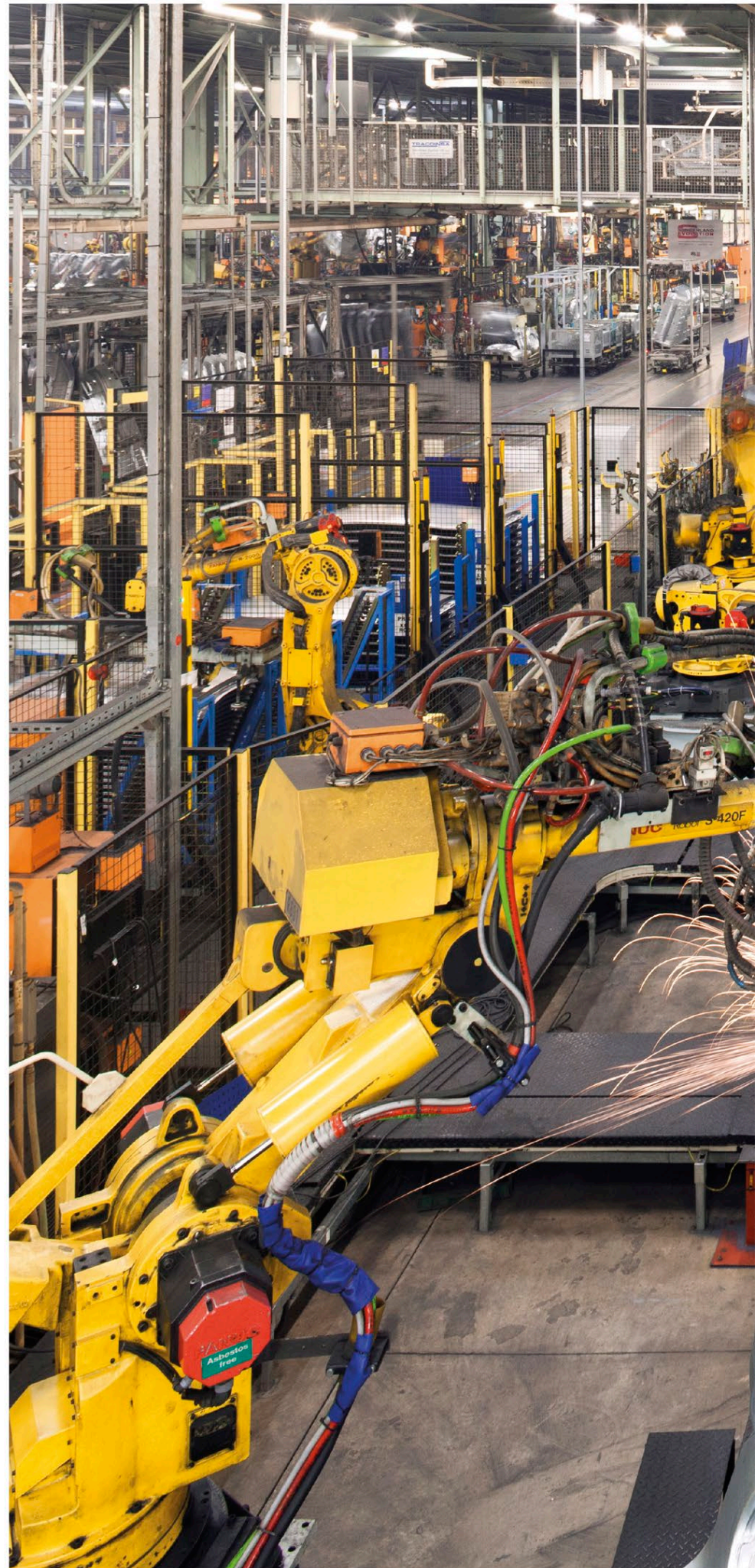
## Advertising in Asia

The logos of global corporations have become ubiquitous, even in countries such as China that were until relatively recently closed to foreign trade.



## Taking to the streets

Following demonstrations in Seattle in 1999, subsequent WTO meetings in cities around the world became a focus for similar protests, sometimes involving confrontations between security forces and demonstrators.

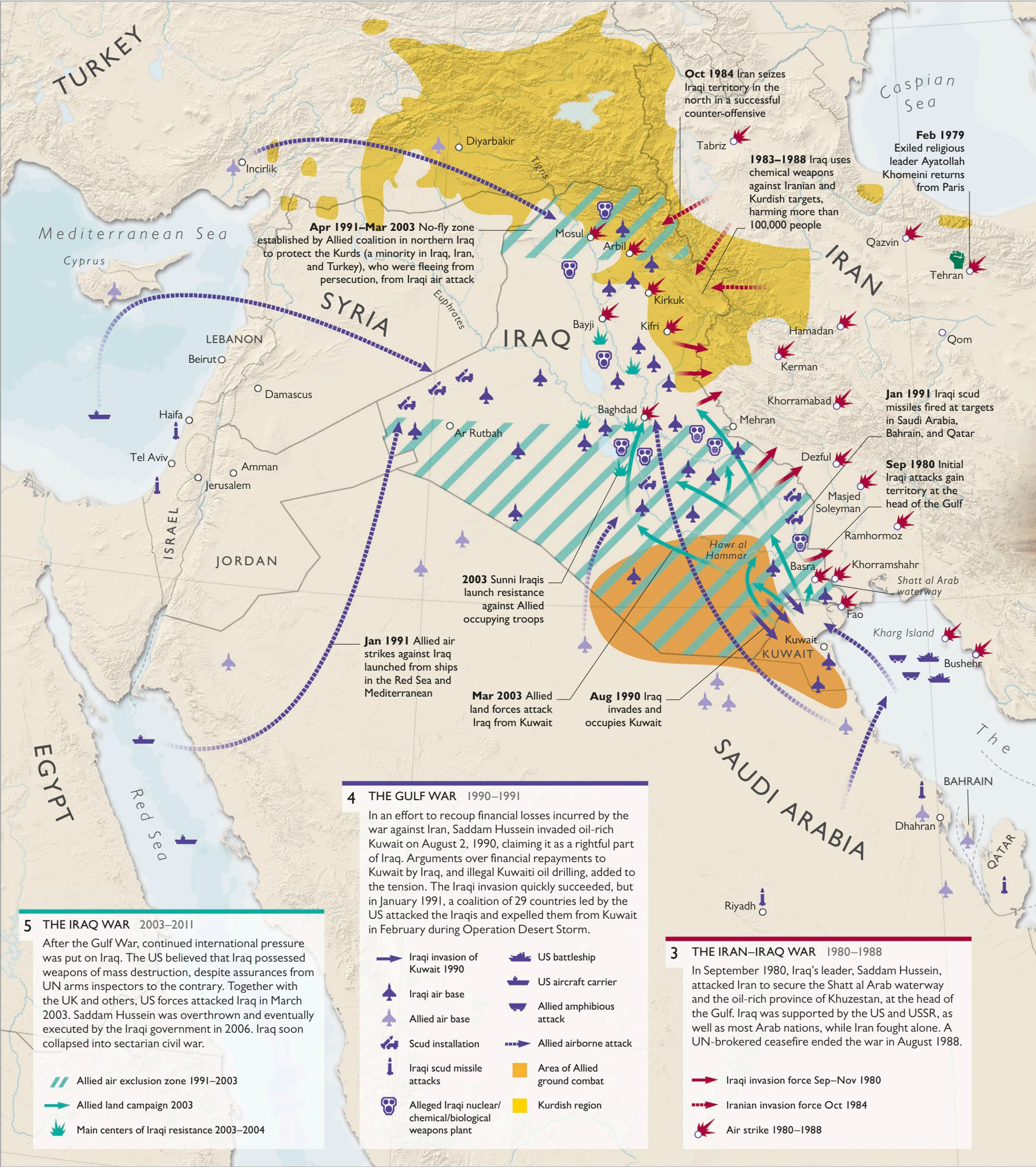






**High-productivity industry**  
With its high-tech production lines, the Japanese car company Nissan's investment in the UK has transformed the UK's car industry. Nissan's factory (seen here) in Sunderland, UK, is regarded as a success story of globalization.







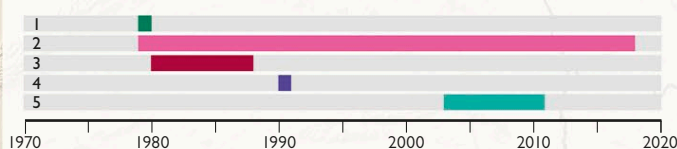
## CONFLICT IN THE GULF

Three major wars have been fought in the Gulf since the Iranian Revolution of 1979. The longest, between 1980 and 1988, was prompted by the Iraqi invasion of Iran. The other two, from 1990 to 1991 and in 2003, were centered on Iraq.

## KEY

— National borders  
- - - Disputed national borders

## TIMELINE



**Apr 1980** A US helicopter, used to rescue 63 hostages held in the US embassy in Tehran, crashes in Tabas

Tabas

Shiraz

## △ On patrol

During Operation Desert Storm (1991), US and Saudi fighter aircraft patrolled the skies over Kuwait as oil wells set alight by Iraqi forces burned freely below them.

## 1 THE IRANIAN REVOLUTION 1979

Resistance against the autocratic rule of the Shah of Iran led to demonstrations in the holy city of Qom in 1977 and 1978. Riots soon spread to the capital, Tehran, with demonstrators calling for the return of the exiled Shia religious leader Ayatollah Khomeini. The Shah eventually fled Iran in January 1979; Khomeini set up a religious government, one of only two theocracies in the world alongside the Vatican City.

Revolution in Tehran

## 2 IRAN AFTER THE REVOLUTION 1979–PRESENT

The new government of Iran, led by Ayatollah Khomeini, became the world's first Shia government. It adopted strong anti-American and anti-Israeli policies and supported radical Shia groups, such as Hezbollah in Lebanon and, more recently, pro-government forces fighting in the Syrian civil war.

# IRAN AND THE GULF WARS

The resurgence of Shia Islam in Iran after the revolution of 1979, and the establishment of a Shia clerical government in Tehran, unsettled the Middle East. Between 1980 and 2003, three major wars took place in the Persian Gulf, all of them involving Iraq.

In 1980, Saddam Hussein, the leader of Iraq (which was dominated by Sunnis, although the majority of Iraqis were Shias), invaded neighboring Iran, still in turmoil after a revolution, to gain land and access to Iranian oil reserves. Thus began a long, bloody, but inconclusive war, which also involved many other countries. This conflict ended when the UN brokered a ceasefire in 1988, which brought to an end the longest conventional war of the 20th century.

Two years later, in what is known as the Gulf War, Saddam invaded Kuwait in order to gain its oil reserves to rebuild his military war machine. A US-led coalition of 29 countries, including many of Iraq's Arab neighbors, evicted the Iraqis from Kuwait in 1991, although Saddam Hussein remained in power. After

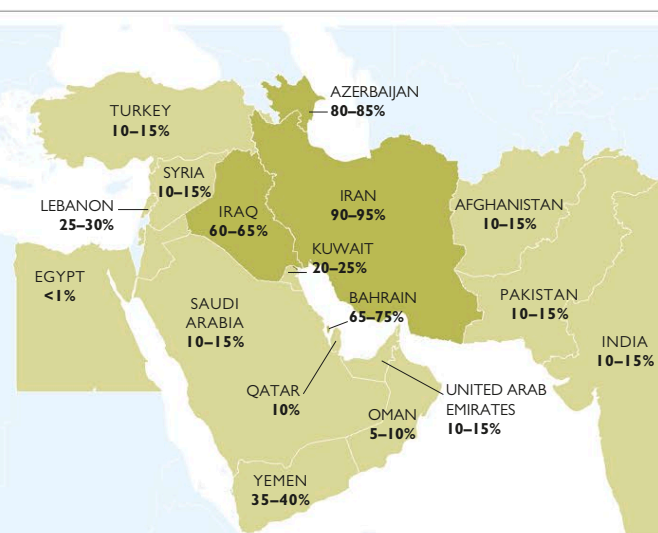
the war, Iraq was subject to economic and military sanctions. It was also suspected of stockpiling weapons of mass destruction. Despite UN weapons inspectors failing to find such weapons, the US and Britain used their possible existence as justification to attack and invade Iraq in 2003, together with Australia, Poland, Spain, Italy, and Denmark. Unlike the Gulf War, the invasion was not supported by the UN. US forces carried out a search for Saddam, who had fled into hiding, and he was captured in December 2003. The coalition handed him over to Iraqi authorities in June 2004, and in 2006, he was tried and executed by an Iraqi Special Tribunal. Iraq then collapsed into sectarian chaos and civil war, further destabilizing an already unstable region. A civil war in Syria, which broke out in 2011, added to the turmoil in the Middle East, as rival Sunni and Shia forces fought it out.

## KEY

■ Shia majority  
■ Sunni majority

## SHIA POPULATIONS

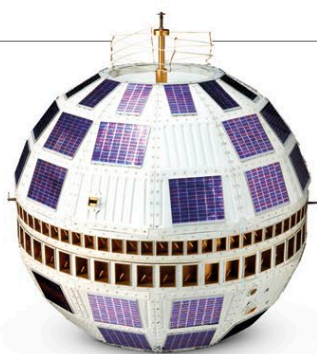
Although most of the world's Muslims are Sunni, about 12 percent are Shias. Shias form a majority in Iran, Iraq, Azerbaijan, and Bahrain, with sizeable minorities elsewhere in the Middle East. This map indicates the percentages of Shia Muslims in each country.





# THE COMMUNICATION REVOLUTION

Advances in technology have brought about profound changes in the social, economic, and political landscape. Nowhere has the impact been felt more than in the field of communications, which is transforming every aspect of our daily lives.



## △ Space Age communication

The world's first active communication satellite, Telstar 1 was jointly built by the US, French, and British broadcasting agencies.

Until World War II, communications had been limited to messages sent by mail or by telegraph and telephone. During World War II, a surge in new thinking resulted in the forerunner of digital computers—the Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator (ENIAC).

The invention of the transistor in 1947 and the microchip in 1958 led to electronic components becoming smaller. Advances in rocket technology allowed satellites to be sent into orbit. In 1962, the Telstar 1 satellite was launched, sending telephone calls, fax messages, and TV signals flying through space.

During the Cold War, the US Defense Department was concerned about how it might communicate during a nuclear attack. This led to the creation of the Advanced Research Projects Agency Network (ARPANET) in 1969, a system of four computers communicating using standard protocols. By the 1980s, greater and more integrated use of computers, adoption of the ARPANET protocols, and advances in communications methods resulted in a widely available and global network of computers: the Internet. The smartphone made the internet a mobile resource. Social networking had an

impact on education, healthcare, and culture. It was also used by protesters during the Arab Spring (2011) and has since become an inherent part of politics.

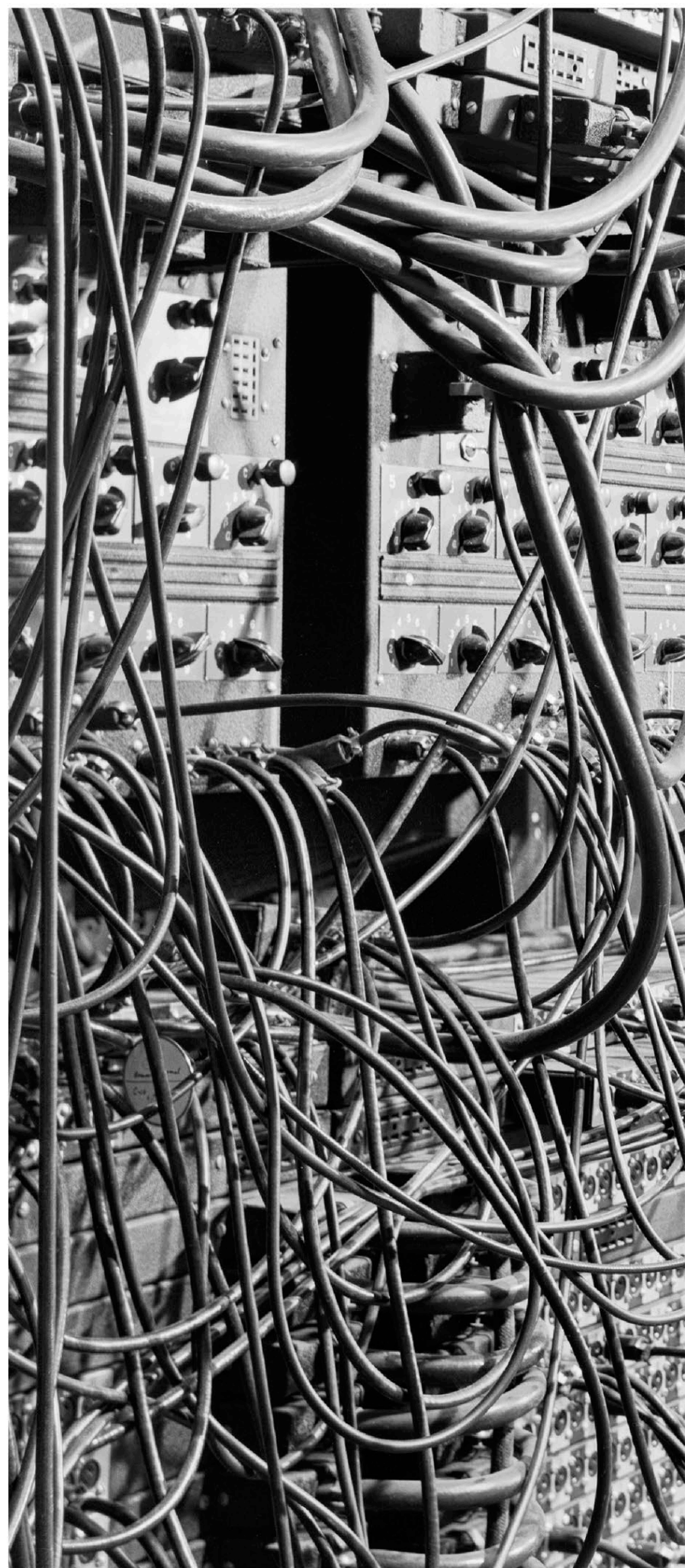


## ◁ A connected world

Smartphones have become an integral part of people's lives. They are not only used to navigate and send messages, but also to record and share moments on social media platforms.

*"The information highway will transform our culture ... as Gutenberg's press did the Middle Ages."*

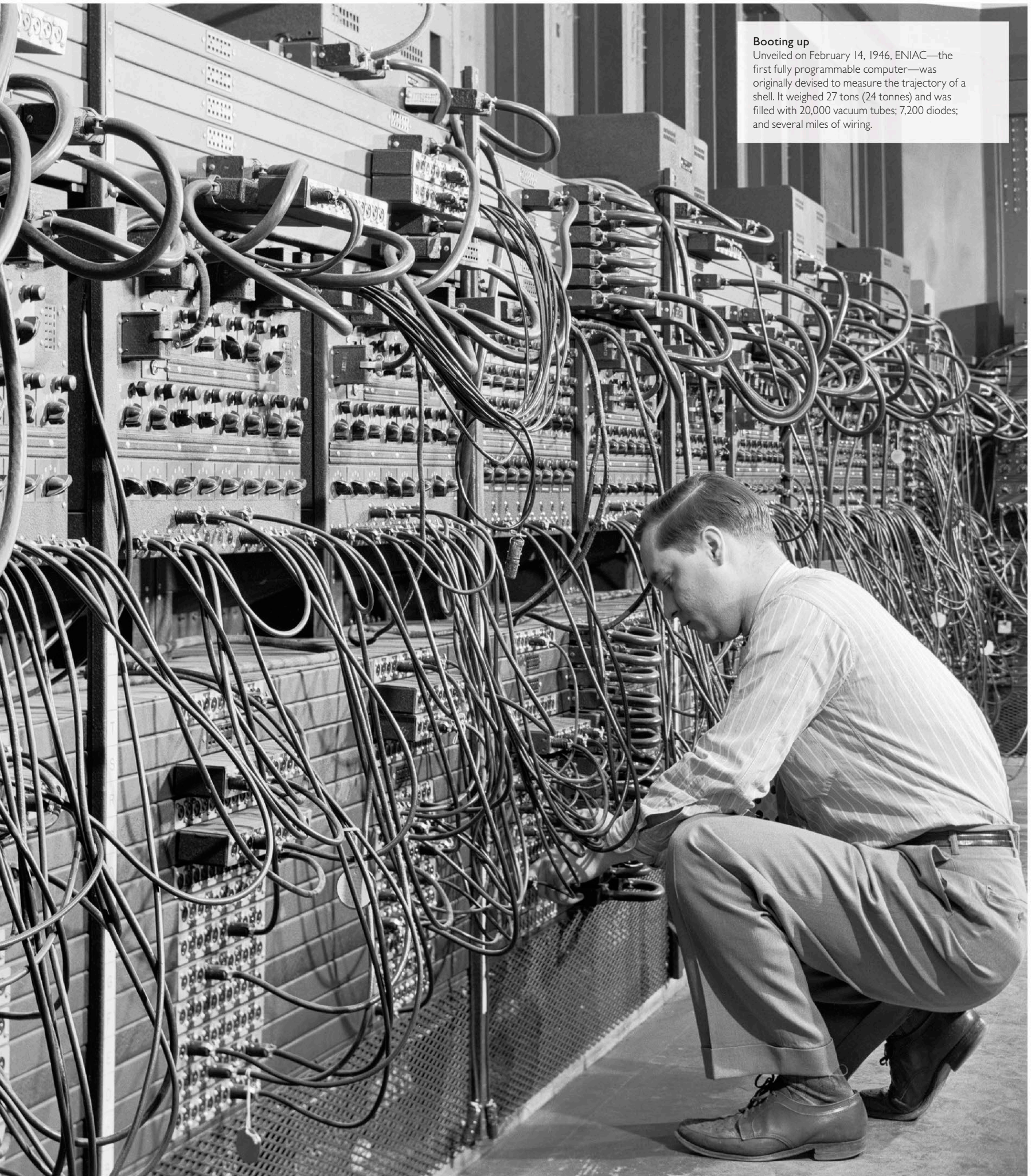
BILL GATES, FROM *THE ROAD AHEAD*, 1995





**Booting up**

Unveiled on February 14, 1946, ENIAC—the first fully programmable computer—was originally devised to measure the trajectory of a shell. It weighed 27 tons (24 tonnes) and was filled with 20,000 vacuum tubes; 7,200 diodes; and several miles of wiring.





# POPULATION AND ENERGY

After 1950, two of the main problems that faced the world were rising population and increasing energy consumption. Although population growth varies across the continents, the world’s total population passed 3 billion in 1960 and then 7 billion in 2011.

China has the largest population in the world, and from 1970–2000, the country’s population increased by 50 percent—an addition of more than 444 million people, more than the total population of the US in the year 2000 (282 million).

In 1950, poor, preindustrialized countries had high birth and death rates, but as they developed, first the death rate declined (particularly in infancy) due to better health care and nutrition, and then the birth rate declined in response to lower infant mortality. In the developed world, where these processes had already happened during industrialization, the population barely increased in the late 20th century, unless it was affected by immigration or inflows of migrant workers. In Africa, rapidly rising populations placed an ever-increasing strain on the countries’ limited resources, including water, grazing land, and energy.

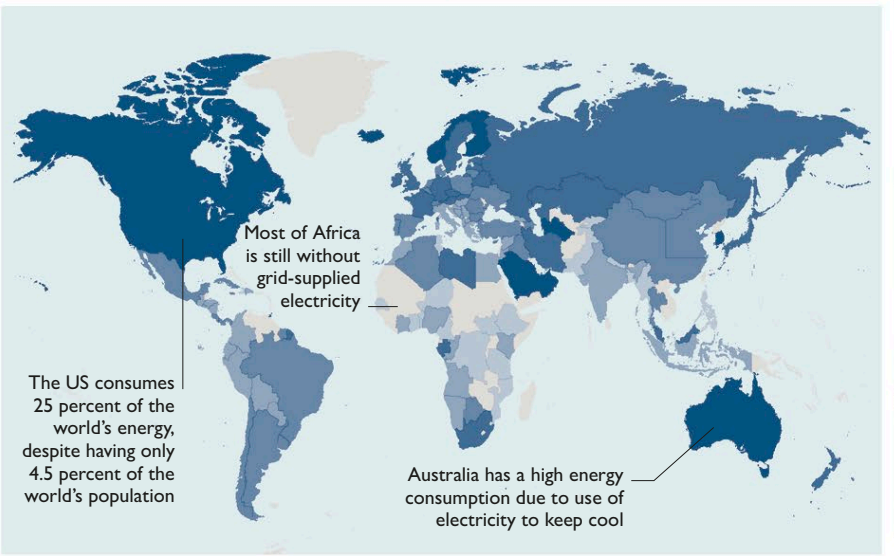
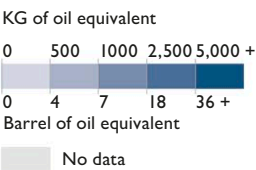
▷ **Abu Dhabi luxury**  
The United Arab Emirates is a prosperous, oil-rich country. It has one of the highest levels of energy use, due to the luxury lifestyle led by its people and use of energy to keep cool in the high temperatures.



## WORLD ENERGY USE

Energy use varies greatly from country to country. In 2014, wealthy, developed, and oil-rich nations used 50 times more energy per capita than the poorest nations. Latitude was also an important factor, with high-latitude countries, such as Canada, using more energy to keep warm.

### ENERGY USE PER CAPITA, 2014





**2 EUROPE 1920–2018**

Europe's population remained fairly static in the late 20th century. In 1920, Europe contained nearly one-quarter of the world's people; a century later, it contained only one-ninth. Populations began to level off and even decline, sparking fears of an aging population becoming dependent on a much smaller working-age population. Mass immigration partly offset the decline in some countries.

**1994** Russia's population begins a 15-year decline due to low birth rates and high death rates

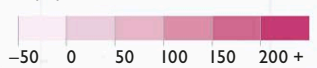
**WORLD POPULATION AND GROWTH**

The world's population rose unevenly from 1970 to 2000. Growth in the richer states slowed or in some cases even declined, while growth in the poorer states of Africa continued to race ahead.

**KEY**

No data

% population increase 1970–2000

**TIMELINE**

**1989** Bulgaria's population begins declining as communism falls and economic migrants start leaving the country

**2005** Japan's birth rate falls below its death rate  
**2014** Japan has the world's most rapidly aging population, with over-65s representing more than one-quarter of the total population

**1978–2016** China implements a one-child policy to reduce its rapid population growth

**1960s** India begins a Green Revolution to overcome poor agricultural productivity, leading to massive population growth

**2010** The United Arab Emirates has the highest net immigration rate in the world

**2011–2016** Syria's population falls by 4 million as refugees flee the civil war

**1990** Eritrea has a rising population of 3.2 million, despite mass emigration due to a repressive government

**1960–2016** Niger's population of 1.7 million rises to 20.67 million due to a fertility rate of more than seven births per woman

**1971–2008** Nigeria's population rises threefold from 55 million to 151 million

**3 AFRICA 1950–2018**

Africa's population increased rapidly from 229 million people in 1950 to 630 million in 1990. As it rose, it overtook the combined population of the Americas and, by 2000, Europe. Africa's countries were among the poorest in the world. Where people subsisted from the land, the population could outstrip land productivity and availability of clean water. Since 2000, Africa has experienced the world's fastest urbanization.

**4 THE MIDDLE EAST 1970–2000**

With small local populations and rapid economic growth, the oil-rich countries of the Middle East, notably the Gulf States, solved their labor shortages by mass immigration. The population of many countries doubled from 1970–2000. The United Arab Emirates' population saw the highest percentage increase in the world, multiplying by more than 12 times from its 1970 level (from just under 250,000 people to over 3 million).

**5 EASTERN ASIA 1978–2016**

East Asia includes the world's two most populous nations: China and India. While India's growth rate remained high, China reduced its growth with its one-child policy, implemented in 1978–1980, which charged a fee to parents having a second child. It abolished the policy in 2016 as it faced the growing problem of a population with too many men (since the policy led to parents favoring male children) and too many elderly people.









# TIMELINE



# PREHISTORY 15 MYA–3000 BCE

## 15 MYA

### c. 15 MYA

The first hominids, or great apes, appear—they are ancestors of gorillas, chimpanzees, orangutans, and humans.

### c. 7.2 MYA

*Sahelanthropus tchadensis* arises; this hominid species, known only from vestigial fossil remains found in Chad in 2001–2002, is the earliest known member of the Hominini subfamily, a small group that includes humans but excludes the other living great apes.

### c. 3.6 MYA

Footprints found in volcanic ash in east Africa indicate that the hominin *Australopithecus afarensis* is walking upright by this time; it has a brain about one-third the size of a modern human's and thumb-opposed hands, potentially enabling the use of tools. Other findings, including that of the partial female skeleton discovered in Ethiopia in 1974 and nicknamed Lucy (dated c.3.2 MYA), indicate that the species lived in family groups.

### c. 3.3 MYA

The date of stone tools found at the Lomekwi archaeological site in Kenya—the oldest yet discovered; they mark the start of the Paleolithic or Old Stone Age (which ends around 15,000–10,000 years ago). At Dikika in Ethiopia, the remains of a 3-year-old *Australopithecus* female confirm that the species is adapted both for bipedalism



# 600

million years ago. The time when multicellular life evolved on Earth.

(walking on two feet) and for tree-climbing. This increased mobility facilitates the move from forests to open savanna, opening up new opportunities for hunting and food gathering.

### c. 2.8 MYA

A mandible fragment from this time is found in the Afar region of Ethiopia in 2013; it is currently the earliest fossil assigned to the genus *Homo*, to which the modern human species belongs.

### 2.4–1.4 MYA

*Paranthropus boisei*, a hominin species distinguished by its large jaws and cheek teeth and powerful jaw muscles, inhabits the Olduvai Gorge region of east Africa. The jaws earn the species its nickname of “Nutcracker Man.”

### c. 1.9 MYA

The date of remains found in the 1950s at Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania by Louis and Mary Leakey, to which they will give the name *Homo habilis* (“Handy man”); some anthropologists have since queried the attribution, putting the fossils in the *Australopithecus* genus instead.

### c. 1.8 MYA

*Homo erectus* evolves, with a bigger brain than *Homo habilis*. Food remains indicate that the species was omnivorous, but with a higher proportion of meat in its diet than other primates. Fossilized remains

of *Homo erectus*, its Asian variant, indicate that the species spread quickly across Eurasia; specimens discovered at Dmanisi in Georgia and dating from this time are currently considered the earliest hominin remains found outside of Africa.

### c. 1.5 MYA–800,000 BCE

Oval and pear-shaped handaxes of the type known as Acheulean spread from Africa to south and west Asia and Europe; the first remains of the axes are identified in St. Acheul, near Amiens, France, in 1859. One of the characteristic tools of Stone Age people, their dispersal is closely associated with the diffusion of *Homo erectus*.

### c. 700,000–200,000 BCE

*Homo heidelbergensis* spreads through Africa, Europe, and western Asia. First described from remains found near Heidelberg in Germany in 1908, the species has a bigger brain than *Homo erectus* and uses more developed tools; it is the first early human species to build shelters. The Neanderthal population is thought to have evolved from this line.

### c. 500,000 BCE

Fire and a wide range of stone tools are in use by human ancestors in China, as evidenced by remains found in a cave at Zhoukoudian, near Beijing, in the 1920s (“Peking Man”).

### c. 400,000 BCE

Neanderthals appear; remains of the group have been found in Europe and western Asia. Shorter and stockier than other hominins, the Neanderthals will in time interbreed with *Homo* species, contributing to the DNA of modern humans.

### ◁ Acheulean handaxe

Dating from around 1.5 MYA–800,000 BCE, this handaxe was made by hammering flakes off a piece of flint.



### c. 300,000 BCE

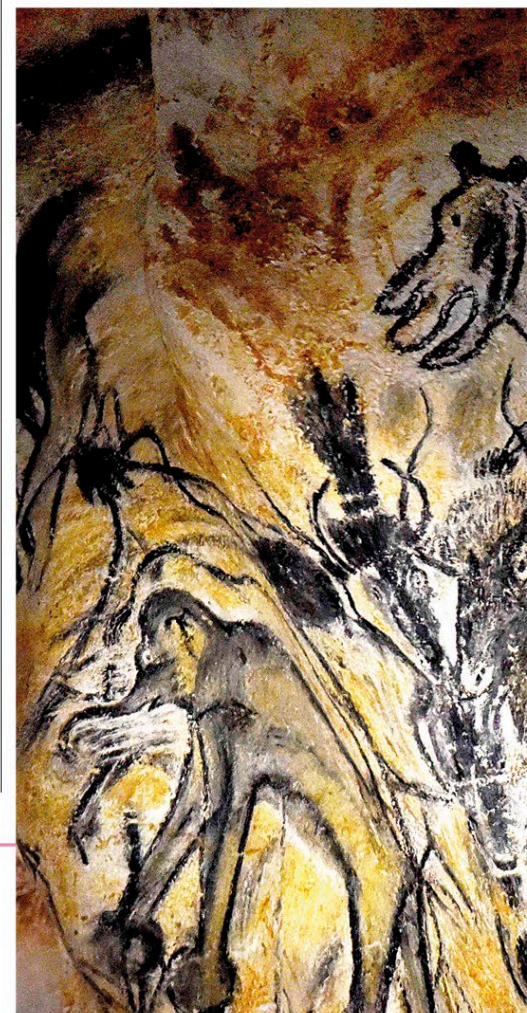
Hominin fossils found at Jebel Irhoud, Morocco, in 2017 that have been dated to this time are the earliest known examples of *Homo sapiens*—anatomically modern humans. The species is distinguished by a high, thin-walled cranium, a steep forehead, and a flat, vertical face with a protruding chin.

### c. 180,000–80,000 BCE

The first dispersals of *Homo sapiens* out of Africa are documented by finds in the Levant from 194,000–177,000 BCE and in China from 120,000–80,000 BCE.

### c. 170,000 BCE

The estimated date for the existence of “Mitochondrial Eve”—the most recent common ancestor of all living humans as traced back through the matrilineal



### ▷ Chauvet Cave art (replica)

Animal images drawn in charcoal on the walls of the Chauvet Cave in southern France date back at least 30,000 years. A replica of the cave has been built to preserve the vulnerable originals.

### ◁ *Homo heidelbergensis* skull

This species prevailed from around 700,000 to 200,000 BCE; its members lived in cooperative groups and hunted large animals using wooden spears set with stone spearheads.



## 15,000 BCE

genetic line (so-called because the DNA used in this analysis is from subcellular mitochondria, which are inherited only from mother to daughter).

### c. 80,000–40,000 BCE

Genetic evidence suggests *Homo sapiens* dispersed through the Middle East and along the southern coast of Asia, possibly after the Toba event.

### c. 75,000 BCE

The estimated date of the Toba supereruption—a volcanic event centered on what is now Lake Toba in Sumatra, Indonesia; the event may have caused a “global winter” affecting hominin populations across the world.

### c. 65,000 BCE

The date of the earliest archaeological sites in Australia—evidence of the ancestors of today’s Aboriginal

population; they are thought to have traveled by island-hopping through Indonesia, suggesting that boats were in use by this time.

### c. 45,000 BCE

The earliest “European early modern human” remains date back to this time. This population of *Homo sapiens* was named Cro-Magnon when it was discovered in a rock shelter of this name in the Dordogne, France, in 1868.

### c. 43,000 BCE

Aurignacian tool-making techniques, characterized by parallel-sided stone blades (rather than the previous flakes) and finely worked bone and antler points, spread across eastern Europe, reaching the west of the continent between 40,000 and 33,000 BCE. The peoples would travel long distances to find suitable tool-making materials.

### c. 40,000 BCE

Hand stencils are painted in caves in Sulawesi, Indonesia; they are thought to be the oldest human markings, predating European cave art. At about this time, the Neanderthals are thought to have died out in Europe.

### c. 35,000 BCE

The Venus of Hohle Fels, an image carved out of mammoth ivory and found in a cave in southern Germany, is the earliest known of the Venus figurines, which are statuettes of (mostly) female figures thought to have been fertility symbols.

### c. 30,000 BCE

The first settlers arrive in Japan and in the Solomon Islands in Oceania. In sites around Europe, the earliest evidence of grindstones being used to mill wild cereal grains dates from this time.

### c. 24,500 BCE

The last glaciation (commonly called the Ice Age) of the current Quaternary geological era is at its peak.

### c. 24,000–14,000 BCE

Estimated date range for the settling of North America by hunter-gatherers crossing from Siberia over the Beringia land bridge that spanned what is now the Bering Strait; since archaeological evidence is sparsely distributed across North America, the date is speculative.

### c. 18,000 BCE

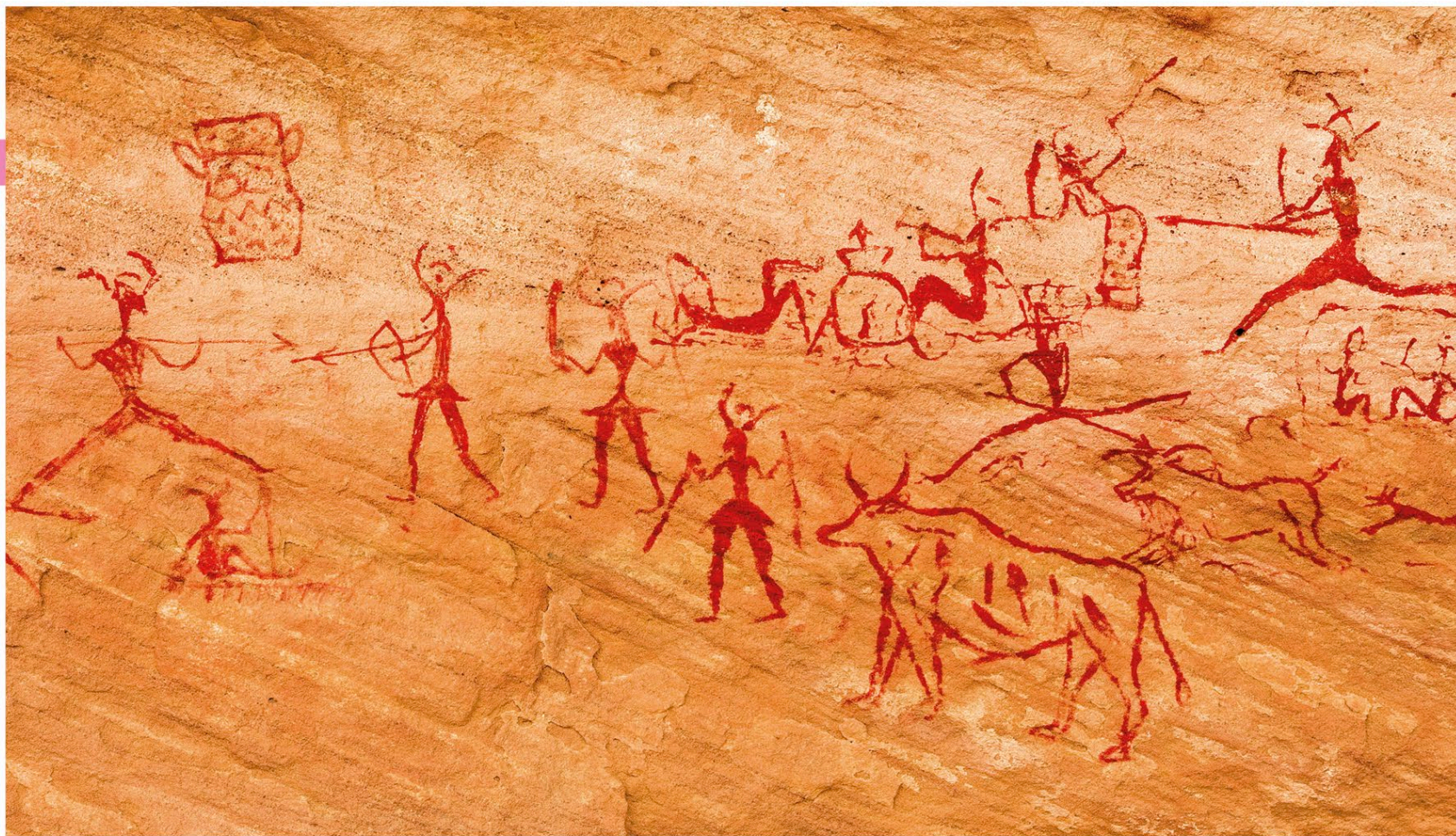
Ceramic fragments found in southern China indicate that pottery is being produced by this time.

### c. 15,000 BCE

The estimated date of the cave paintings found at Lascaux in the Dordogne region of France.





**c. 14,700 BCE**

The first evidence of dog remains buried beside humans (found in a quarry in a suburb of Bonn, Germany) strongly indicates that dogs had been domesticated by this time.

**c. 14,000 BCE**

The Jomon culture, distinguished by cord-marked pottery, is established in Japan.

**c. 13,000 BCE**

The Clovis culture, named for the site in New Mexico where it was first identified and characterized by distinctive bone and ivory tools, makes its appearance. Clovis remains have been found from Oregon down to Chile; they are associated with a hunter-gatherer lifestyle that included hunting mammoths, bison, mastodon, sloths, and tapirs. It was once regarded as the first Native American culture, ancestral to developments throughout North and South America, but earlier, non-Clovis sites have now been found.

**c. 12,000 BCE**

The earliest Saharan rock art depicts rhinos, aurochs (wild cattle), antelopes, and other animals pursued by the region's hunter-gatherers.

**c. 11,000 BCE**

Rock paintings are created in Pedra Furada, Brazil, seemingly representing a tradition that differs from the Clovis culture.

**c. 10,500 BCE**

Cattle are first domesticated in Mesopotamia and in what is now Pakistan. DNA evidence suggests that one evolutionary line of living domestic cattle may have arisen from a herd of aurochs near the village of Çayönü Tepesi, in southeastern Turkey, near the modern border with Iraq.

**c. 10,200 BCE**

The start for the Neolithic, or New Stone Age, according to the ASPRO chronology of the Middle East. The

Neolithic will see the birth of farming and the widespread domestication of animals; it ends with the adoption of metal tools, ushering in the Bronze Age.

**c. 10,000 BCE**

The last glaciation of the present Quaternary Era ends, marking the start of Earth's current warmer interglacial period. By this time, sheep are being domesticated in Mesopotamia. Radio carbon dating of stone tools found near campfire remains indicate that hunter-gatherer communities are by now settled in the Valley of Mexico.

**c. 9500 BCE**

Farming is underway in the Fertile Crescent lands of the Levant and Mesopotamia; evidence shows wheat, barley, peas, and lentils all being cultivated. The ensuing Agricultural Revolution will in time lead to a surge in the world's population as food supplies become more reliable and widespread.

**c. 9000 BCE**

Circles of stone pillars are erected at Göbekli Tepe, a site in eastern Turkey; these are currently the earliest known megaliths. Corn is first domesticated at about this time, in southern Mexico. The land bridge linking Siberia and North America finally disappears beneath the waters of the Bering Strait as sea levels rise following the retreat of the Ice Age glaciers.

**c. 8700 BCE**

The first copper tools are in use, made from naturally occurring deposits of the metal.

# 32

The percentage of land covered by ice in the last glaciation.

### △ Saharan rock art

This painting, made in red iron oxide in the Acacus Mountains, Libya, dates back to 12,000 BCE; it shows a hunt in progress.



### ▷ Cycladic figurines

The Cycladic islands in the Aegean Sea were settled by people from Anatolia from about 3200 BCE; they shaped the marble they found there into clean-lined anthropomorphic figurines.



3100 BCE

### c. 8200 BCE

Rice is being cultivated in the Pearl River region of China and spreads to the Yellow and Yangtze valleys; millet is also being grown in China by this time. Some experts estimate that rice was domesticated as early as 13,500 BCE.

### c. 8000 BCE

Settled since c. 10,000 BCE by hunter-gatherers attracted by its freshwater spring, Jericho (in modern-day Palestine) has by now become a fortified town of at least 300 inhabitants who support themselves by growing emmer wheat, barley, and pulses; the town is surrounded by a wall (which may have afforded some protection against flooding). A defensive tower 28 ft (8.5 m) in height is built within the walls.

### c. 7000 BCE

Çatal Höyük is flourishing in Anatolia as a large settlement with an estimated population of 7,000.

### c. 6500 BCE

Lead beads found at Çatal Höyük represent evidence of metal smelting.

### c. 5500 BCE

The first known smelted copper objects date from this time; the earliest bronze objects, made of a copper–arsenic alloy, also appear. A painted disk found in Kuwait and assigned to this period has the earliest known depiction of a ship under sail. The Tărtăria tablets, discovered at a Neolithic site in Romania, bear symbols considered by some archeologists to be the world's earliest form of writing.

### c. 5050 BCE

The Chinchorro people of northern Chile are the first culture known to mummify their dead.

### c. 5000 BCE

Lower Mesopotamia, between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers, is populated by a west Asian people called the Sumerians; over the next two millennia Sumer will become, along with Egypt, the Indus Valley, and coastal Peru, the seat of one of the world's earliest urban civilizations, developing masonry and pottery and building the towns of Uruk and Eridu.

### c. 4500 BCE

Bones and carved images of horses found in graves in the Volga River region of central Russia suggest that horses have been domesticated there by this time. Finds from Serbia show tin-alloy bronze objects making their first appearance. Obsidian, prized by Neolithic tool-makers for its hardness and sharp edges, is being traded by now in Mesopotamia.

### c. 4000 BCE

At Carnac in Brittany, northern France, the world's largest accumulation of megaliths is growing; eventually (by about 3300 BCE), it will incorporate more than 3,000 separate standing stones. Austronesians from Taiwan or the Philippines begin their Pacific migration.

### c. 3600 BCE

Neolithic farmers in Malta, possibly from Sicily, build the temple complex at Skorba. In Mesopotamia, symbols representing numbers are being impressed on clay tablets as a way of keeping accounts—an early form of writing that will eventually develop into cuneiform.

### c. 3500 BCE

Evidence from Mesopotamia, the North Caucasus region, and eastern Europe shows wheeled vehicles coming into use at about this time; the earliest schematic depiction of a four-wheeled wagon is on the Bronocice Pot, dated to around 3400 BCE and found in Southern Poland. In Crete, the Minoan civilization is starting to take shape.

### c. 3300 BCE

Approximate start of the Bronze Age in the Middle East, when bronze begins supplementing stone for tool-making and other uses. The Indus Valley civilization starts to develop in the

northeast of the Indian subcontinent, as previously scattered populations gather into permanent settlements that will eventually become fortified towns.

### c. 3200 BCE

Newgrange, a circular mound 280 ft (85 m) wide and containing tunnels and chambers, is constructed in Ireland; its exact purpose is unclear, but it probably has a ritual function. The Cycladic culture is spreading across the islands of the Aegean Sea; it is known for its flat female statuettes made out of the local white marble.

### c. 3150 BCE

The Narmer Palette is produced. It is an inscribed tablet depicting the unification of Upper and Lower Egypt under the ruler of that name (also known as Menes), who will establish the nation's First Dynasty. It bears some of the earliest known hieroglyphic writing.

### 3114 BCE

In Mesoamerica, the first date in the Mayan Long Count Calendar.

### c. 3100 BCE

Europe's most complete Neolithic village, Skara Brae, is built, indicating that settled communities have formed in the Orkney Islands to the north of Scotland. The site is revealed after the islands are battered by a storm in 1850.



12 ft (3.6 m). The height of the defensive wall built around the settlement of Jericho by around 8000 BCE.

### ▷ Skara Brae, Orkney

Skara Brae, occupied around 3100 BCE, is a settlement of circular one-room dwellings made from stone slabs. The houses would have been roofed with straw or turf.



# THE ANCIENT WORLD 3000 BCE–500 CE

## 3000 BCE

### c. 3000 BCE

In Sumer (modern Iraq and Kuwait), around a dozen city-states are flourishing, among them Lagash and Uruk (which has a population of more than 50,000 by this time, making it the largest city in the world). The cities trade with Anatolia, Syria, Dilmun (modern Bahrain), and Elam on the eastern coast of the Persian Gulf (now part of modern-day Iran). In southern Siberia, the Afanasevo Culture of cattle-, sheep-, and goat-herders is established. The first phase of the Stonehenge complex in southern England is built—a circular ditch and bank; construction on the site will continue through the next millennium.

### c. 2900 BCE

In China, the Longshan Culture, centered on the lower Yellow River valley, is producing sophisticated, thin-walled black pottery; millet is the main crop and pigs the principal source of meat. In South America, the Norte Chico people build monumental centers on the coast of Peru; Aspero, at the mouth of the Supe Valley, boasts platform mounds endowed with plazas, terraces, and ceremonial buildings.

### c. 2700 BCE

The legendary Gilgamesh rules Uruk; his exploits, richly mythologized, are the basis of one of the world's first literary works, the *Epic of Gilgamesh* (c. 2100 BCE).

### c. 2630 BCE

Djoser, the first pharaoh of Egypt's Old Kingdom, orders the building of the Step Pyramid at Saqqara as his burial place.

### c. 2600 BCE

Objects found in the Royal Cemetery of Ur include the Standard of Ur, a wooden box inlaid with shell, limestone, and lapis lazuli mosaics depicting scenes of feasting and of warfare, including war chariots.

### c. 2575 BCE

Pharaoh Khufu (known to later Greeks as Cheops) builds the Great Pyramid of Giza, the oldest of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.

### c. 2500 BCE

The Indus Valley civilization is at its peak, with the cities of Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro supporting populations of 25,000–40,000 and boasting sophisticated civic facilities and urban planning. In Europe, the Bell Beaker Culture, identified by its distinctive pottery, is flourishing at scattered sites in the west and center of the continent.

### c. 2450 BCE

A conflict between the Sumerian city-state of Lagash and its neighbor, Umma, is the first to be historically documented, on the Stele of the Vultures, fragments of which are now preserved in the Louvre Museum, Paris.







#### ◀ Hero overpowering a lion

This sculpture of a lion-taming spirit, recovered from the throne room of the palace of Assyrian king Sargon II, is believed to depict Gilgamesh (king of Uruk around 2700 BCE).

#### ▽ Stonehenge, Amesbury, England

The neolithic monument of Stonehenge was built in several stages, beginning in 3000 BCE. The stones at its center were erected in about 2500 BCE and then rearranged some 300 years later.

2050 BCE

#### c. 2334–2279 BCE

Sargon of Akkad conquers Sumer, joining it with his own kingdom to create the world's first empire. He will go on to win further territory from the Hurrians and Elamites in what is now eastern Turkey and western Iran.

#### c. 2300 BCE

The Bronze Age Unetice culture—named for an archaeological site northwest of Prague, where its remains were uncovered—starts to spread across central Europe. Its people live in straw-thatched wooden houses with

storage pits used as granaries and produce handsome metal goods that serve as status symbols for the nobility.

#### c. 2205 BCE

According to Chinese tradition, the Xia Dynasty, is established under Yu the Great. He is known in legend for holding back the floodwaters of the Yellow River.

#### c. 2193 BCE

Gutians from the Zagros Mountains overrun Akkad and Sumer, putting an end to the Akkadian Empire.

140 miles (225 km). The distance over which 25-ton stones were hauled to Stonehenge.

#### c. 2180 BCE

Egypt's Old Kingdom comes to an end as central control disintegrates, ushering in the First Intermediate Period, a time of strife when separate power bases emerge in Upper and Lower Egypt.

#### c. 2100 BCE

Semitic-speaking Amorites from northern Syria begin to infiltrate into Mesopotamia, possibly driven by drought.

#### c. 2050 BCE

King Ur-Nammu reunites Sumer, establishing the powerful Third Dynasty of Ur (also called the Sumerian Renaissance); ziggurats (stepped monuments) are built during his reign, and the world's oldest surviving legal code bears his name. In Egypt, Pharaoh Mentuhotep reunites a divided land in 2134 BCE, starting the Middle Kingdom period.





**c. 2000 BCE**

A rich civilization develops on the island of Crete, centered on the palace complex at Knossos. On the Greek mainland, the Achaeans move into the northern Peloponnese. In Britain, the main stages of construction of Stonehenge are by now complete, while people of the Wessex culture, distinguished by their barrow burials and rich grave goods, have spread widely across central and southern England and are trading extensively with continental Europe.

**c. 1960 BCE**

Under Pharaoh Amenemhet I, Middle Kingdom Egypt extends its southern frontier as far as the Second Cataract of the River Nile, which is now submerged by Lake Nasser.

**c. 1940 BCE**

Despite the building of fortifications, the city of Ur falls to Elamites from eastern Iran, who take its last ruler, Ibbi-Sin, into captivity, ending the Third Dynasty; the loss of the city is commemorated in the "Lament for Ur,"

a 438-line Sumerian poem inscribed on a tablet that is found by archaeologists at Nippur. The defeat marks the end of the golden age of Sumer, whose population has shrunk, as the irrigated lands on which it depended have been affected by salinity.

**c. 1900 BCE**

Assyria emerges as a major power, with its capital at Assur in the Upper Tigris Valley of northern Mesopotamia. Under the ruler Shamshi-Adad I, the Great Royal Palace is built, and the temple of Assur is enlarged with a ziggurat.

# 282

The number of laws enshrined in the Code of Hammurabi, king of Babylon.





#### ◁ Minoan fresco

Painted on the east wall of the Minoan palace at Knossos in around 1400 BCE, the fresco depicts bull-leaping, which was possibly a ceremonial practice demonstrating bravery.

## 2000–1450 BCE

Hammurabi transforms his capital, Babylon, from a small city-state into the center of a large state that extends over much of Mesopotamia.

#### c. 1750 BCE

The Erlitou Culture is flourishing in northern China; it is distinguished by the production of elaborate bronze vessels, including two-handled, legged cauldrons known as dings.

#### c. 1700 BCE

The Indus Valley civilization collapses, probably because of the gradual drying up of the Saraswati River; the cities of Harappa and Mohenjo Daro are abandoned.

#### c. 1640 BCE

Speaking a Semitic language and worshipping the storm god Baal, chariot-borne Hyksos move into Egypt. The Middle Kingdom comes to an end and the country enters the Second Intermediate Period, a time of famine and political strife.

#### c. 1600 BCE

A cataclysmic volcanic eruption on the Greek island of Thera (modern Santorini) has profound effects on the neighboring lands; Knossos and other ceremonial centers on Crete are badly damaged, and though they will later be rebuilt, Minoan civilization will never regain its former glory. The Shang Dynasty under King Tang replaces the Xia, establishing its rule over China's northern plains.

#### c. 1595 BCE

Hittite invaders from Anatolia sack Babylon, by then a small city-state; Kassites from the Zagros Mountains take advantage of the situation to establish a dynasty that will rule for the next 375 years.

#### c. 1800 BCE

The truncated defensive towers known as *nuraghi* are built across all of Sardinia.

#### c. 1754 BCE

Hammurabi, the sixth ruler of the Amorite First Babylonian Dynasty, issues a celebrated law code; which covers subjects ranging from wage rates and the legal liability to inheritance, sexual conduct, and divorce. Over the course of his 42-year reign, from 1792 to 1750 BCE,

#### c. 1550 BCE

A Hurrian-speaking people establish the kingdom of Mitanni in northern Syria and southeast Anatolia; in the centuries to come, it will develop into a major regional power.

#### 1532 BCE

Ahmose of Thebes drives the Hyksos out of Lower Egypt, reunifying the country and establishing the New Kingdom. During this period Egyptian power reaches its greatest extent.

#### c. 1500 BCE

Indo-Iranian Aryans begin to migrate in large numbers into the north of the Indian subcontinent; the Vedas, the oldest Hindu scriptures, will take shape under the auspices of these people over the ensuing Vedic Period (to 600 BCE). In the Pacific Ocean, the Lapita culture is flourishing in Vanuatu, Fiji, Samoa, and Tonga, laying the foundations for subsequent Polynesian and Micronesian cultures.

#### 1470 BCE

Hatshepsut, the best-known of Egypt's female pharaohs and the woman who commissioned the celebrated Deir el-Bahari mortuary temple as her last resting place,

#### ◁ Hittite goddess

The large pantheon of the Hittites, who created an empire in Anatolia from c.1600–1180 BCE, included many gods appropriated from neighboring cultures.



sends a major trading expedition to the Land of Punt, somewhere to the south, on the Red Sea.

#### 1456 BCE

Egypt's Pharaoh Thutmose III defeats a coalition of Canaanite states at the Battle of Megiddo, in what is now northern Israel; Thutmose will go on to restore Egyptian dominance in the area and to expand Egyptian imperial control to its greatest extent.

#### c. 1450 BCE

Shaushtatar, the ruler of Mittani, invades Assyria and sacks its capital, Assur. By this time, the Karasuk culture, known only from its burials, has replaced the Andronovo culture in southeastern Siberia; its people are farmers and horse riders who practice metalwork on a large scale.

# 25,000

The population of the Indus Valley city of Harappa at its height in the Bronze Age.



#### ▷ The mortuary temple of Hatshepsut

Located near the Valley of the Kings on the west bank of the Nile, the colonnaded temple (reconstructed in the 20th century) took 15 years to build during Hatshepsut's reign (1478–1458 BCE).



▷ **Tutankhamun with Ankhnesenpaaten**  
Tutankhamun, who reigned in 1332–1323 BCE, is pictured with his wife under the rays of Aten (the radiant disk of the Sun) in this detail on the gilded wooden throne found in his tomb.



## 1400–701 BCE

### c. 1400 BCE

The Olmecs, Mesoamerica's first major civilization, flourish in south-central Mexico. Noted for their monumental sculpted heads, the Olmecs practice such enduring innovations as ritual bloodletting and play an often lethal Mesoamerican game, involving a heavy rubber ball. Around this time, Crete is occupied by Mycenaeans from the Greek mainland, who adopt many Minoan customs and adapt the Minoan Linear A script for their own use.

### 1392 BCE

Assyria breaks free of its subjection to the kingdom of Mitanni, inaugurating the Middle Assyrian state, which endures until 1056 BCE.

### 1353–1336 BCE

Akhenaten, the “heretic pharaoh,” reigns in Egypt. He does away with the worship of the traditional Egyptian gods and instead introduces a short-lived monotheistic cult that is dedicated to Aten, or the radiant disk of the Sun; to further the religious revolution, he eventually moves the nation's capital from Thebes to a new site at el-Amarna called Akhetaten, “Horizon of the Aten.”

### c. 1332–1323 BCE

Under the boy-king Tutankhamun, Akhenaten's controversial religious reforms are reversed, and Egypt soon returns to the worship of its old gods; the dead pharaoh's name is removed from monuments, and attempts are made to erase his memory from the historical record.

### c. 1274 BCE

Hittite forces led by Muwatalli II halt an Egyptian advance under Rameses II at the Battle of Kadesh (fought near the modern Syrian–Lebanese border), ending an attempt by the pharaoh to reassert control over Canaan; it is thought to be one of the largest chariot battles ever fought.

### c. 1220 BCE

Assyrian king Tukulti-Ninurta I captures Babylon, putting an end to the Kassite Dynasty that had ruled the city for more than 350 years.

### c. 1210 BCE

Under the Shutrukid Dynasty, Elam (a civilization based in present-day Iran) is at the height of its power; its armies raid deep into Mesopotamia to carry back trophies to its capital, Susa.

### c. 1200 BCE

By this time, the Phoenician people, based on the eastern coast of the Mediterranean Sea, are using a 22-letter alphabet, made up entirely of consonants. The Middle East enters a period of major change, known as the Bronze Age Collapse, with the Hittite Empire breaking up under attack from Phrygian and Assyrian invaders, while in Greece, the overthrow of the Mycenaean culture ushers in a prolonged dark age; some scholars believe that this time of troubles provided the backdrop for later Homeric legends of the Trojan War. In Mesoamerica, the Olmecs are at their zenith, with major ceremonial centers at San Lorenzo, Tres Zapotes, and La Venta.

### c. 1175 BCE

Egyptian forces under Rameses III repel an attempted invasion by a coalition called (in Egyptian sources) the Sea Peoples—possibly the same assailants who had caused the downfall of the Hittite Empire, though their precise identity remains obscure; subsequent to their defeat, some of the Sea Peoples are thought to have settled in the southern Levant.

### c. 1100 BCE

Hillfort construction is now well advanced at many sites across western Europe. In India, ironworking has reached the Ganges Plain. In Greece, the Dorian people, distinguished by their Doric dialect, are moving east and

south from their original homeland in the mountains of Epirus (near the modern Greek border with Albania) to settle the Peloponnese.

### c. 1056 BCE

The Middle Assyrian state suffers significant reverses on the death of King Ashurbelkala, following an uprising against his rule that allowed Aramean tribes to press in from Syria on its western borders.

### c. 1046 BCE

According to Chinese tradition, King Wu defeats Zhou, the last ruler of the Shang Dynasty, at Muye in east-central China, starting the Zhou Dynasty, the longest-lasting in Chinese history.

**50** tons. The weight of the largest of the Olmec heads found at the La Cobata archaeological site.



## ▷ Prisoners of Sennacherib

This relief from the palace of Sennacherib in Nineveh (in modern-day Iraq) records prisoners taken from Lachish, in Judah; by the Assyrians in 701 BCE.



## c. 1000 BCE

The Phoenician civilization is at its peak, with major centers at Tyre and Sidon on the Levantine coast and a network of trading stations located around the Mediterranean Sea. In the Biblical lands, tradition holds that David is ruler of the joint kingdoms of Israel and Judah, following the death of King Saul at the Battle of Gilboa. In Mesoamerica, the Mayan people are starting to establish themselves in the Yucatán peninsula.

## c. 900 BCE

By this time, the Vedic Aryans are living as settled farmers, forming kingdoms in northern India—first Kuru, then Panchala and Videha. In Greece, the (perhaps legendary) lawgiver Lycurgus gives Sparta the communistic form of military-minded government for which it would become lastingly famous; his laws promote the values of equality, military fitness, and austerity among all members of society.

## 970–931 BCE

The traditional dates given for the reign of Solomon as king of Israel and Judah, after succeeding his father David, who

## 814 BCE

Carthage is founded on the North African coast as a colony of the Phoenician city-state of Tyre.

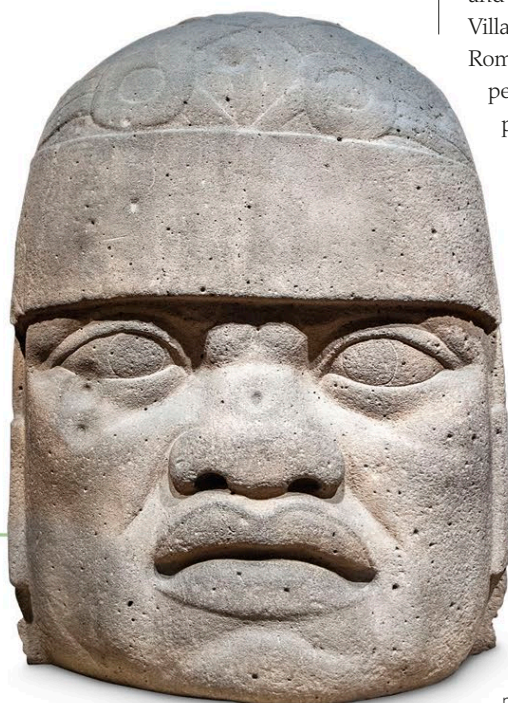
*“Let me not then die ingloriously and without a struggle, but let me first do some great thing that shall be told among men hereafter.”*

HOMER, FROM THE *ILIAD*, c. 750 BCE

dies after reigning for 40 years. Celebrated for his wisdom, Solomon builds Jerusalem’s First Temple and hosts a visit from the Queen of Sheba (thought to be Saba, a nation spanning the southern lands of the Red Sea).

## c. 800 BCE

Following the end of the Greek dark age, the population expands, smaller settlements come together to form influential city-states, and colonies begin to appear on the Mediterranean and Black Sea coasts. In Italy, the Villanovan culture of the area north of Rome introduces iron to the Italian peninsula; it will develop into the powerful and wealthy Etruscan civilization. To the north, the Hallstatt culture has replaced the earlier Urnfield culture in central and western Europe; supported by farming and skilled in metalworking, its tribal societies are increasingly stratified under an elite of warrior chieftains, but also trade widely, both locally and with the Mediterranean lands.



## ◁ Olmec head

The Olmecs, whose civilization began to flourish around 1400 BCE, were accomplished sculptors. They are best known for the colossal male heads that they carved from basalt boulders.

## 776 BCE

The traditional date of the first Olympic Games, held at Olympia, Greece’s wealthiest religious center.

## c. 771 BCE

The capital of the Zhou Dynasty is moved from Zhongzhou to Chengzhou, marking the beginning of the Spring and Autumn period of Chinese history; it takes its name from the *Spring and Autumn Annals*, an ancient chronicle of the official history of the state of Lu over a 250-year period, which is traditionally claimed to have been compiled by Confucius.

## 753 BCE

The traditional date for the foundation of Rome by Romulus.

## c. 750 BCE

In Greece, the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, epic poems traditionally attributed to Homer, are written down; these works provide the basis of Greek education and culture throughout the Classical age and become hugely influential in the Renaissance, when they are rediscovered by 14th-century

scholars in Italy. The mound-building Adena Culture spreads from its center in the Ohio Valley across the eastern woodlands of North America.

## c. 744 BCE

The crown of Assyria is seized by Pul, who takes the name Tiglath-Pileser III. He introduces extensive political, civil, and military reforms throughout his reign. The Nubian ruler Piye conquers Egypt, establishing the 25th or Kushite Dynasty, which will control the country until it is conquered by the Assyrians in 671 BCE.

## 733 BCE

Settlers from Corinth found Syracuse as a Greek colony on the Sicilian coast.

## c. 720 BCE

Sargon II, ruler of Assyria, conquers the kingdom of Israel, forcing large numbers of Israelites into exile and giving rise to legends of the 10 lost tribes.

## c. 701 BCE

Assyrian king Sennacherib invades Judah and besieges Jerusalem to collect a tribute from its ruler Hezekiah.

330 ft (100 m). The diameter of the largest extant earthworks made by the Adena Culture.



## 700 BCE

**c. 700 BCE**

In Assyria, King Sennacherib builds an aqueduct and creates a garden for his palace in Nineveh by cutting irrigation channels from the rock. The screw pump (attributed to Archimedes) is in use for irrigation by this time, as are water clocks. Eastern Europe sees the arrival of nomadic Scythians from Central Asia. In Greece, the first city-states make their appearance. Agricultural villages spread in southeastern North America.

**689 BCE**

Sennacherib destroys Babylon, razing its temples and walls and diverting canals to flood the site.

**671 BCE**

Memphis in Egypt falls to the Assyrian king Esarhaddon, the youngest son of Sennacherib.

**668 BCE**

Assurbanipal, the son of Esarhaddon, comes to the Assyrian throne; the empire reaches its greatest extent during his reign.

**663 BCE**

Assyrian troops sack Thebes after repelling a Nubian invasion of Egypt. Temple treasures that had been collected over the past 14 centuries are looted.

**660 BCE**

According to legend, Jimmu, the first emperor of Japan, ascends to the throne. In mythology, he is a descendant of the sun goddess Amaterasu.

**c. 660 BCE**

Corcyra (on Corfu) defeats Corinth in the earliest recorded naval battle between Greek city-states.

**c. 650 BCE**

The first coins are minted, in the kingdom of Lydia, in Anatolia. The Age of Tyrants—aristocrats who seize absolute power without legal right—begins in many Greek cities, especially in the Peloponnese.

**c. 630 BCE**

Sparta wages war against the Messenians, conquering most of the southern Peloponnese by 600 BCE.

**43** The number of years that Nebuchadnezzar II survived on the throne of the Neo-Babylonian Empire.

Colonists from the island of Thera found Cyrene in Libya, the first of five Greek cities in the region. The poet Sappho is born on the island of Lesbos. Only one of her poems—"Ode to Aphrodite"—survives in complete form.

**626 BCE**

Nabopolassar secures Babylon's independence from Assyria and founds the Neo-Babylonian Empire. He makes Babylon his capital and rules over Babylonia for the next 20 years.

**c. 624 BCE**

Thales of Miletus, a leading philosopher, mathematician, and astronomer, is born. He is among the first great thinkers to use theories and hypotheses to explore the nature of natural phenomena and is celebrated as one of the Seven Sages of Greece.

**621 BCE**

Draco drafts Athens' first written code of law, replacing the previous reliance on oral law; Draconian law will in later times become legendary for the severity of its punishments.

**616 BCE**

Tarquinius Priscus (Tarquin the Elder) becomes the first Etruscan king of Rome. Construction begins on the Cloaca Maxima, one of the world's earliest sewage systems, and on the Circus Maximus, Rome's first stadium for chariot racing.

**612 BCE**

The Assyrian Empire crumbles with the sacking of Nineveh and Nimrud by its former vassals, including the Medes and Babylonians. The city of Nineveh becomes depopulated.

**609 BCE**

King Josiah is killed in battle against Pharaoh Necho II of Egypt, triggering the fall of the Kingdom of Judah.

**c. 605 BCE**

Birth of Nebuchadnezzar II, who will become the greatest and most powerful of the Neo-Babylonian emperors.

**604 BCE**

Traditional date for the birth of Lao Tzu, founder of the Chinese religion Taoism.

**c. 600 BCE**

With the collapse of the Assyrian Empire, much of the Middle East falls to the Medes, whose homeland lies in northwestern Iran. The Neo-Babylonian



◀ **The Palace of King Sennacherib**

The rooms and courtyards of the Assyrian palace at Nineveh (built around 700 BCE) were decorated with carved stone panels showing hunting and other scenes.





#### ▷ Warring States dagger

The Warring States period of Chinese history, which began in 475 BCE, was a time of great cultural richness, producing objects such as this decorated dagger.

479 BCE

Empire retains power in Mesopotamia. The first known map of the world is made in Babylon. Ironworking technology reaches Zhou China. The first Upanishads, central texts of the Hindu religion, are usually assigned to this period. Greek settlers found a colony at Massalia on the Mediterranean coast, which eventually develops into the port of Marseilles.

#### 597 BCE

First conquest of Judah by Nebuchadnezzar II of Babylon.

#### 594 BCE

Solon becomes archon (ruler) of Athens; in reforming its laws, he recasts land ownership, protects the property rights of the poor, and bans debt slavery.

#### 587 BCE

Following a revolt in Judah, Nebuchadnezzar II of Babylon destroys Jerusalem's temple and sends the Israelites into exile, the start of the "Babylonian Captivity."

#### 585 BCE

Death of the Biblical prophet Jeremiah, in exile in Egypt. According to historian Herodotus, the Greek astronomer Thales of Miletus predicts a solar eclipse.

#### 573 BCE

The prosperous Phoenician city of Tyre falls to the army of Nebuchadnezzar II after a 13-year siege.

#### c. 570 BCE

Pythagoras, the Greek philosopher and mathematician, is born on the island of Samos.

#### 563 BCE

Traditional birthdate for Siddhartha Gautama, the Buddha (though some scholars place it at c. 448 BCE). He is born into a royal family in the village of Lumbini in present-day Nepal.

#### 561 BCE

The mental decline and death of Nebuchadnezzar II signals the end of the period of Babylonian greatness.

#### c. 560 BCE

Croesus succeeds to the throne of Lydia (in western Anatolia) and begins its expansion. He reigns for the next 14 years.

#### c. 559 BCE

Cyrus the Great comes to power in Persia. In 550 BCE, he defeats the Medes and founds the Persian Empire—which becomes the largest empire yet created.

#### 551 BCE

Birth of Confucius, whose *Analects* provide the central philosophy of the Chinese way of life. In Persia, Zoroastrianism is the main religion.

#### 547 BCE

Cyrus defeats Croesus, the last king of Lydia. Greek philosopher Anaximander, propounder of an evolutionary theory that life developed from creatures living in the oceans, dies.

#### 539 BCE

Cyrus quashes a rebellion in Babylon; the Babylonian empire is absorbed by Persia. Cyrus allows the Israelites exiled in Babylon to return home.

#### 534 BCE

Tarquinius Superbus becomes Rome's last king; the Etruscans are at their height.

#### 530 BCE

Cyrus the Great dies; his son Cambyses II succeeds him as ruler of Persia.

#### 525 BCE

Cambyses II defeats Pharaoh Psammetichus III at the Battle of Pelusium and annexes Egypt.

#### 522–486 BCE

Darius I (the Great) rules Persia, after succeeding Cambyses; under his sway, the Persian Empire will reach its greatest extent. He is succeeded by Xerxes.

#### c. 520 BCE

Birth of the Greek poet Pindar, whose odes are known for their rich imagery.

#### 509 BCE

The Romans expel Tarquinius Superbus and set up a republic, with Lucius Junius Brutus and Collatinus as the first two annually elected consuls.

#### 507 BCE

Cleisthenes establishes democratic government in Athens.

#### c. 500 BCE

Bronze coins appear in China. Ironworking spreads to Southeast Asia and east Africa. India's caste system is in place, and the *Puranas* and parts of the epic *Mahabharata* are composed. Nok Culture flourishes in west Africa (centered in modern Nigeria). In Mesoamerica, the Zapotecs use hieroglyphic writing.

#### 499–491 BCE

Greek cities in Ionia, western Anatolia, revolt against Persian rule; their uprising is suppressed.

#### 496 BCE

Rome defeats the Etruscan-led Latin League at Lake Regillus and signs its first treaty with Carthage.

#### 491 BCE

Death of Bimbisara of Magadha, patron of the Buddha and founder of a northern Indian empire.

#### 490 BCE

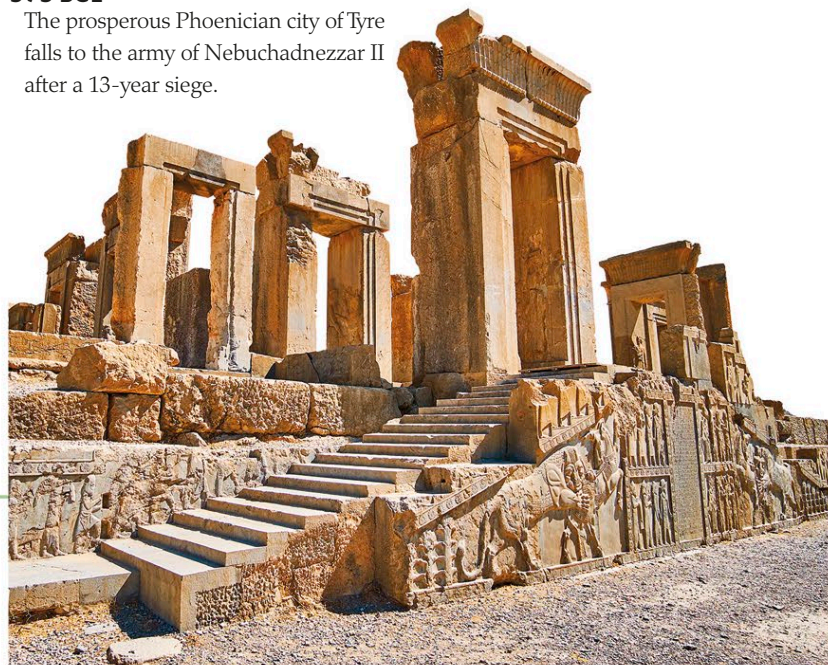
Greeks led by the prominent Athenian Miltiades defeat the Persians at the Battle of Marathon, ending the first Persian invasion of Greece.

#### 480 BCE

Xerxes' invasion marks the end of the Archaic Period in Greece. In the Classical Period (480–323 BCE), Greece will be dominated in turn by Athens, Sparta, and Macedonia, and Greek culture will reach its peak.

#### 480–479 BCE

Persian forces, sent by Xerxes, invade Greece, overcome resistance at the pass of Thermopylae, and take Athens. However, the Persian navy is defeated at Salamis (480 BCE) and Mycale (479 BCE), and the Spartan leader Pausanias routs their army at Plataea (479 BCE).



#### ◁ Persian winter palace

Darius (ruled 522–486 BCE) initiated many building projects in Persia. His winter palace in Persepolis was one of the few buildings at the site to escape destruction by Alexander the Great.



## 478 BCE

**c. 478 BCE**

Athens founds the Delian League of city-states to counter Sparta's Peloponnesian League.

**475 BCE**

China enters the Warring States period (to 221 BCE), in which seven leading states jostle for supremacy.

**c. 450 BCE**

The Celtic La Tène culture emerges in central Europe, eventually supplanting the Halstatt culture; Celts expand their territory east and south and into the British Isles. Steppe nomads are buried with spectacular grave goods at Pazyryk and Noin-Ula in Siberia. In Mexico, the construction of the Zapotec city of Monte Albán begins.

**449 BCE**

Greece's Persian Wars come to an end after 41 years when Artaxerxes I, the king of Persia, recognizes the independence of the Greek city-states in the Peace of Callias.

**447–432 BCE**

The ruler of Athens, Pericles, builds a new Parthenon to replace the temple destroyed by the Persians.

**c. 445 BCE**

Nehemiah rebuilds the walls of Jerusalem, still under Persian rule.

**438 BCE**

The Greek sculptor Phidias supervises the completion of sculptures designed to decorate the Acropolis in Athens; they will later become known as the Elgin Marbles.

**431–404 BCE**

The Peloponnesian War leads to the destruction of the Athenian League by Sparta and its allies.

**Monte Albán**

One of the oldest of Mesoamerican cities, Monte Albán (built c. 450 BCE) was the center of Zapotec Culture, which then dominated much of the territory of the modern state of Oaxaca, Mexico.

**c. 427 BCE**

Birth of the Greek philosopher Plato.

**c. 424 BCE**

Herodotus, the Greek writer known as the "Father of History," dies. He is best known for his work *The Histories*, a critical examination of the origins of the Greco-Persian Wars.

**404 BCE**

Egypt emerges from Persian rule under Amyrtaeus, the sole pharaoh of the 28th Dynasty.

**399 BCE**

In Greece, the philosopher Socrates is sentenced to death for corrupting the minds of Athenian youth.

**c. 390 BCE**

Celtic Gauls settled in northern Italy defeat the Romans at the Battle of the Allia and capture and sack Rome, holding the city for several months.

**c. 385 BCE**

In Greece, Plato writes his seminal philosophical text, the *Symposium*.

*"Wonder is the feeling of a philosopher, and philosophy begins in wonder."*

PLATO, QUOTING SOCRATES IN HIS *THEAETETUS*, c. 369 BCE

**c. 401–399 BCE**

The soldier and philosopher Xenophon of Athens leads an army of 10,000 Greek mercenaries, supporting a Persian rebellion from Babylon to the Black Sea, an exploit chronicled in his *Anabasis*.

**c. 400 BCE**

Celtic Gauls cross the Alps and settle in northern Italy. Carthage dominates in the western Mediterranean. In Mesoamerica, the Olmec civilization is seriously affected by environmental changes and enters its final phase, while the Zapotecs flourish in Monte Albán. The Moche Culture emerges in Peru. Ironworking develops in Korea.

**c. 380 BCE**

The Chu become dominant among China's Warring States.

**371 BCE**

The Theban general Epaminondas wins the Battle of Leuctra against Sparta; Thebes remains the dominant power in Greece until his death in battle in 362 BCE.

**c. 370 BCE**

Mahapadma Nanda founds the Nanda Dynasty in Magadha, north India.

**359–336 BCE**

Philip II rules Macedonia and wins control of most of Greece.

**356 BCE**

Shang Yang, chancellor of the western Chinese state of Qin, makes wide-ranging reforms to create a powerful centralized kingdom.

**343–342 BCE**

A Persian invasion puts an end to Egypt's independence and dethrones the last native line of pharaohs.

**341–338 BCE**

Rome defeats and dissolves the Latin League, moving closer to complete dominance of central Italy.

**336 BCE**

Philip of Macedon is murdered; he is succeeded by his son Alexander III, who forces other Greek states into submission (335), then crosses into Anatolia (334) to confront the Persians.

**332 BCE**

Alexander III (the Great) conquers Egypt and founds Alexandria, one of many new cities across his empire.

**331 BCE**

At Gaugamela, Alexander defeats Darius III, and the Persian Empire falls to him; his army burns its capital, Persepolis.

**326 BCE**

Alexander pushes east into India, extending his realm to the Indus River before his troops force him to turn back.

**323 BCE**

Alexander the Great dies of a fever in Babylon; his vast empire begins to disintegrate as his generals fight for dominance. Egypt falls to Ptolemy Soter, who founds the Ptolemaic Dynasty.

**321–297 BCE**

Chandragupta Maurya founds the Mauryan Dynasty, which goes on to create the largest empire in Indian history.





#### ◁ Lion Capital of Ashoka

This capital topped one of the many columns erected across the Mauryan Empire by Ashoka (268–232 BCE); its design was adopted in 1950 as the official emblem of India.

160 BCE

# 1,200

ft (366 m). The length of the largest geoglyph motifs made by the Nazca.

### 312 BCE

Rome's first aqueduct is built by Appius Claudius; he also begins the Appian Way, the first of Rome's network of roads across Italy.

### 311 BCE

Seleucus establishes control of Babylon, going on to create the Seleucid Empire by conquering the former Median and Persian lands of Alexander's empire.

### c. 300 BCE

Alexander's empire is partitioned between the Seleucid, Antigonid, Attalid, and Ptolemaic Dynasties. Rice farming reaches Japan from China. The Greek mathematician Euclid lays out the basic principles of geometry in his treatise, the *Elements*.

### 298–290 BCE

Rome defeats its Samnite enemies in south-central Italy, extending its territory across Italy to the Adriatic.

### c. 287 BCE

China's northern states build frontier defenses to keep out Eurasian nomads.

### 280–275 BCE

Pyrrhus of Epirus lands in Italy and defeats the forces of Rome. The Romans regroup, and he returns to Greece.

### c. 268–232 BCE

Ashoka, the Mauryan emperor of India, greatly expands his territories and promotes the Buddhist concept of *dharma* across his empire.

### 264–241 BCE

The First Punic War between Rome and Carthage ends after 23 years with Rome in control of almost the entire Italian peninsula and Sicily.

### c. 250 BCE

Arsaces founds the kingdom of Parthia in lands southeast of the Caspian Sea.

### 221–210 BCE

In China, the state of Qin conquers the last of its rivals. Its ruler takes the title of Qin Shi Huang, "First Emperor" of a united China; after his death, he is buried in a vast mausoleum with an army of 8,000 terracotta soldiers.

### 218–203 BCE

In the Second Punic War, Carthaginian general Hannibal crosses the Alps and defeats the Romans at Lake Trasimene and Cannae. Roman forces regroup under Quintus Curtius Maximus, and Hannibal is ultimately defeated at Zama.

### c. 218 BCE

Qin Shi Huang starts construction of what is to become the Great Wall of China, the purpose of which is to keep out invaders from the north. The wall is extended to a length of 1,400 miles (2,250 km) by later dynasties.

### 206 BCE

Liu Bang conquers the Qin to establish the Han Dynasty, whose rule (to 220 CE) is seen as the golden age of China.

### c. 200 BCE

The Middle Yayoi Period (200–100 BCE) in Japan sees a big increase in population. In Ptolemaic Egypt, Alexandria becomes a major center of Greek trade, culture, and learning. In eastern North America,

Ohio's Adena Culture is developing into the Hopewell Culture. To the south in Mesoamerica, the Mayan civilization emerges as small communities on Mexico's Pacific Coast migrate northward to form larger states. The Nazca in Peru create mysterious geoglyphs—long lines in the desert.

### 197 BCE

A Roman army defeats Philip V of Macedon at Cynoscephalae in Thessaly, driving him back to his own kingdom.

### c. 185 BCE

Pushyamitra, Hindu founder of the Shunga Dynasty, takes power in India, assassinating the last Mauryan ruler and persecuting Buddhists.

### 183 BCE

To avoid falling into Roman hands, Hannibal commits suicide in the Bithynian town of Libyssa.

### 171–138 BCE

Mithridates I conquers Greek-ruled kingdoms in Persia, establishing the Parthian Empire.

### 168 BCE

Macedon is defeated by Roman forces at Pydna and is divided by the conquerors into four separate republics.

### 167–160 BCE

Judah Maccabee and his brothers rebel against the growing influence of Greek culture (Hellenization) of Judea under Antiochus IV, reestablishing traditional Judaism and rededicating the Temple in Jerusalem before Judah's death in battle.

#### ◁ Alexander defeats Darius III

This Roman mosaic, made around 100 BCE in the city of Pompeii, depicts the battle in 331 BCE between the armies of Alexander the Great and Darius III.





▷ **Scene with Emperor Wu**

In this silk painting from a history of Chinese emperors, Wu Ti (Han Emperor, 141–87 BCE) welcomes a man of letters.



149 BCE

**150,000** Estimated casualties in the fall of Carthage, which is seen by some historians as the first genocide.

**149–146 BCE**

The Third Punic War between Rome and Carthaginian forces ends in the total destruction of Carthage.

**148–146 BCE**

After a series of defeats by Rome, Macedonia is annexed and becomes a Roman province.

**142 BCE**

Having freed Jerusalem from Seleucid rule, the Maccabees make it the capital of the Hasmonaean kingdom; the dynasty rules Judea until 63 BCE.

**121–91 BCE**

Under Mithridates II, the Parthian Empire reaches its greatest extent.

**107–104 BCE**

The Roman general Marius reforms the army, allowing poor citizens to become soldiers.

**105 BCE**

In Africa, Roman forces defeat Jugurtha, ruler of Numidia. In Gaul, Germanic Cimbri raiders overcome a Roman army at Arausio, causing panic in Rome itself until their ultimate defeat at Vercellae in 101 BCE.

**c. 101 BCE**

China's Han Empire reaches its largest extent under Emperor Wu; the Silk Road carries trade across central Asia to the Mediterranean world, stretching from the Han capital at Chang'an to Antioch (in modern-day Turkey).

**c. 100 BCE**

Celtic hill forts in western Europe are developed into fortified settlements. Trade links grow between China, Southeast Asia, and India. The Buddhist complex at Sanchi in India—commissioned by Emperor Ashoka in the 3rd century BCE, and famous for its Great Stupa—nears its present form.

**91–89 BCE**

The Social War—a conflict between the Roman Republic and several cities in Italy—breaks out, driven by discontent over the failure of Rome to give its allies Roman citizenship; this is finally granted to most Italian communities in 88 BCE.

**88–82 BCE**

Civil war between patricians and populists in Rome ends with the victorious general and statesman Sulla defeating his rivals and having himself declared dictator.

**73–71 BCE**

Spartacus, a former Roman slave and gladiator, originally from Thrace, leads a revolt (later known as the Third Servile War) that is brutally put down by Roman troops under Crassus and Pompey; Spartacus himself is killed in the fighting.

**64–63 BCE**

The Catiline Conspiracy to seize power in Rome ends as the consul, Cicero, has its leader Catilina put to death.

**52 BCE**

Pompey is declared sole consul in Rome after a vote taken in the Centuriate Assembly of the Roman Republic.

**49 BCE**

Ordered by the Roman Senate to disband his army, Caesar instead crosses the River Rubicon, starting a civil war in Italy. In a decisive battle at Pharsalus in the following year, Caesar defeats Pompey's larger army. Pompey flees to Egypt, where he is murdered in 48 BCE.

*“Fortune ... can bring about great changes in a situation through very slight forces.”*

JULIUS CAESAR, FROM *COMMENTARIES ON THE CIVIL WAR*, 68 BCE

**63 BCE**

Defeated in the last of three wars he has fought against Rome since 89 BCE, Mithridates IV, king of Pontus (a state on the coast of the Black Sea, founded by a Persian dynasty), kills himself.

**60 BCE**

Julius Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus form a political alliance, sharing power in Rome as the First Triumvirate. Their union lasts until the death of Crassus in battle against the Parthians in 53 BCE.

**58–50 BCE**

In a series of brilliant campaigns, Julius Caesar conquers Gaul for Rome.

**55–44 BCE**

Julius Caesar invades Britain to carry out an armed reconnaissance.

**44 BCE**

Just 2 months after he is declared “dictator in perpetuity,” Caesar is assassinated on March 15 by republican conspirators led by Brutus, Decimus, and Longinus.

**43 BCE**

Roman politician and general Mark Antony forms the Second Triumvirate with Lepidus and Octavian.

**42 BCE**

At Philippi in Macedonia, Antony and Octavian defeat the forces of Brutus and Cassius, who both commit suicide.

**36 BCE**

Mark Antony marries Cleopatra, ruler of Egypt, although he is already married to Octavian's sister.

◁ **Baths of Antoninus, Carthage**

After the destruction of Punic Carthage in 146 BCE, the Romans built their own city there. It becomes extremely wealthy, supporting the construction of the largest baths in north Africa.



70 CE

**32–30 BCE**

The Roman Senate declares war against Cleopatra. Octavian's navy, commanded by Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa, defeats the combined fleets of Antony and Cleopatra off Actium on the Ionian Sea. The two retreat to Egypt, where both commit suicide in 30 BCE. Egypt becomes a Roman province.

**27 BCE**

Octavian becomes Rome's first emperor, adopting the title Augustus.

**c. 19 BCE**

The poet Virgil completes his epic poem the *Aeneid*.

**4 BCE**

The probable date of the birth of Jesus Christ at Bethlehem.

**c. 1 CE**

By now, the Roman Empire includes around one-seventh of the world's population. Nabateans allied with Rome control trade in the Red Sea. The Buddhist religion spreads across southeast Asia.

**9**

An alliance of Germanic tribes defeats a Roman army in the Teutoburg Forest, frustrating Augustus's attempts to extend his empire to the River Elbe. In China, Emperor Wang Mang introduces radical reforms that provoke revolts; he is killed in one of these revolts in 23.

**14**

Augustus dies after a 40-year reign as emperor and is succeeded by his stepson, Tiberius.

**25**

Guangwu seizes power in China, establishing the Later (or Eastern) Han Dynasty, which will rule the country until 220.

**c. 30**

Jesus Christ is crucified on the orders of Pontius Pilate, procurator of the Roman province of Judea.

**37**

Caligula succeeds Tiberius as emperor, reigning until his assassination in 41.

**43**

Emperor Claudius orders the Roman invasion of Britain.

**c. 50**

The Yuezhi, a formerly nomadic people settled in Bactria, north of the Hindu Kush mountains in present-day Afghanistan, lay the foundations of the Kushan Empire. They will eventually control much of northern India.

**54**

Nero becomes Rome's emperor on Claudius's death.

**64**

Much of Rome is destroyed in a great fire that reportedly burns for more than 1 week. Nero blames the disaster on the city's Christians, starting a general persecution.

**66–70**

A Jewish revolt against Rome culminates in the capture and destruction of Jerusalem in 70.

**▷ Augustus of Prima Porta**

This marble statue, dating from the 1st century CE, shows Augustus, the first Roman Emperor. It was found in the villa occupied by his wife after Augustus's death in 14.

# 125,000

Size of the Roman  
legionary forces under  
Emperor Tiberius.



77

# 20

 ft (6m).

The depth of the ash that fell on Pompeii after the eruption of Vesuvius.

77

The Roman author Pliny the Elder starts work on his *Natural History*, planned as an encyclopedic survey of all areas of knowledge.

79

In southern Italy, Mount Vesuvius erupts, burying the cities of Pompeii and Herculaneum.

91

The Chinese general Ban Chao is given the title Protector of the Western Regions for his work in extending Chinese control over Turkestan and the Tarim Basin; his conquests will later allow increased trade with the West along the Silk Road.

98–116

Under the rule of Emperor Trajan, the Roman Empire



## ▷ Villa of the Mysteries, Pompeii

Though buried by ash in the eruption of Vesuvius in 79, the Villa sustained little damage. This fresco on its wall may depict the ceremony of initiation into the cult of Dionysus.

reaches its greatest extent. Following their victorious campaigns in Dacia, north of the Danube, and Parthia, the Romans annexe Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Assyria.

c. 100

Teotihuacan, in the Valley of Mexico, is the largest urban center in Mesoamerica. In Peru, the Moche Culture is rising to prominence.

105

Chinese sources credit Cai Lun with the invention of the paper-making process.

c. 115

Tacitus writes his *Annals*, recounting the history of Rome from the accession of Tiberius to the death of Nero.

117

Hadrian, a cousin of Emperor Trajan, ascends to the imperial throne in Rome.

122–127

Following a visit to Britain by the emperor, Hadrian's Wall is built to protect the Roman Empire's northernmost frontier.

c. 127–150

Kanishka the Great vastly expands the Kushan Empire through north-central India, facilitating the transmission of his Buddhist beliefs into China.

132–135

Simon bar Kokhba leads a Jewish revolt against Roman rule in Judea; after its suppression, Jews are barred from Jerusalem. In China, in 132, Zhang Heng invents a device for registering Earth tremors—the first seismometer.

c. 150

In Alexandria, a Roman province in Egypt, Ptolemy writes the work that will become known as the *Almagest*. This



astronomical compendium dominates thinking about the structure of the universe for more than a millennium. Ptolemy's other great work, *Geography*, similarly sums up the geographical knowledge of his time.

161–180

Marcus Aurelius reigns as the last of the five "Good Emperors" of late 1st- and 2nd-century Rome. A philosopher as well as a military leader, his *Meditations* reflect his Stoic view of life.

180

Commodus succeeds his father Marcus Aurelius, with whom he had co-reigned since 177. His reign is marked by conspiracies and an increasingly dictatorial approach, culminating in his assassination in 192.

184

The rebellion of the Yellow Turbans—peasants so called for their distinctive headbands—breaks out in China in reaction to famine in the countryside and the corrupt rule of court eunuchs. The rising is largely contained by 185, although pockets of resistance continue to flare up for a further 20 years.

c. 200

Jewish scholars assemble the Mishnah, a collection of Rabbinic oral traditions that will become the first of the two components of the Talmud.

c. 210

Death of Galen, physician to several Roman emperors, whose collected writings will dominate Western medical thinking for the next 1,300 years.

## ◁ Moche vessel

The Moche Culture, which became prominent in Peru from around 100, is known for its portrait vessels, which feature detailed, expressive human heads or figures.



212

Roman Emperor Caracalla issues the Antonine Constitution, granting citizenship to all freemen throughout the Empire.

c. 220

The Han Dynasty comes to an end in China, which then enters the Three Kingdoms period (220–280), in which power is divided between the Wei in the north, the Shu in the west, and the Wu in the south of the country. The Three Kingdoms period is among the bloodiest in Chinese history.

224

Ardashir defeats and kills the last king of Parthia, going on to establish the Sassanid Dynasty in Persia.

c. 225

On the death of Pulumavi IV, the territory of the Andhra (or Satavahana) Dynasty, based in the Deccan region of west-central India, fragments into five separate smaller kingdoms.

235

The murder of Emperor Alexander Severus at the hands of mutinous troops inaugurates a period of decline in Rome, which will see more than 20 emperors over the next 50 years; Germanic tribes threaten Rome's frontiers along the Danube and Rhine, invading Italy itself in 259.

238

The port of Histria near the mouth of the River Danube is ravaged by Goth invaders—their first recorded incursion into the lands of the Roman Empire.

c. 245

Chinese sources report a flourishing state (or collection of city-states) at Funan in the Mekong Delta region of what is now Vietnam.

c. 250

Established in Mesoamerica for at least two millennia, the Maya civilization enters its Classic period (to 900), in which city-states and trade flourish. The lodestone compass comes into use in China.

251

The Roman Emperor Decius is defeated and killed by Goth forces under Cniva at Abritus, south of the Danube (in what is now Bulgaria).

268

A Roman army under Emperor Gallienus (also known as Claudius II) defeats a Goth coalition at the Battle of Naissus (near Nis in present-day Serbia), temporarily removing the threat to the empire from the nomadic tribes.

**2,000,000** Population of the Maya civilization in its Classic period, which begins around 250.

270

Zenobia, queen of Palmyra (a wealthy Syrian city that is a tributary to the Roman Empire), conquers Roman Arabia and annexes Egypt. She adds part of Anatolia to her empire and declares independence from Rome.

272

Emperor Aurelian crushes the Palmyran revolt, capturing Zenobia, who lives out the rest of her life in exile in Rome. After a further rebellion in 273, the city of Palmyra is destroyed.

274

Mani, the founder of the Manichaean sect (which preaches a philosophy of dualism, a belief in the forces of light and darkness), dies in prison in Persia; his followers later maintain that he was crucified.

280

Sima Yan of the kingdom of Wei defeats Eastern Wu forces. He reunites China under the Western Jin Dynasty, which itself soon falls into a crisis of succession.

284

After rising through the ranks of the army, Diocletian becomes Roman emperor. His 21-year reign brings stability to a realm that has experienced a century of relative decline.

286

Diocletian appoints Maximian as co-emperor, with responsibility for the west, while Diocletian himself concentrates his efforts on the empire's troubled eastern frontier.

c. 300

Chinese records mention a kingdom called Yamatai, ruled by a priest-queen named Himiko (meaning "sun-child"), in Japan; the location of the kingdom is unknown. Buddhism continues to spread across southeast Asia. The first Polynesian settlers reach the Hawaiian archipelago.

301

Tiridates III makes Christianity the state religion of Armenia—the first country to accept it as such.



#### ◀ Zenobia and her maid

This relief from Palmyra depicts Queen Zenobia (who invaded Rome's territories in the east in 270) together with her maid, in the guises of the goddesses Ishtar and Tyche.



## 303

**303–313**

Diocletian unleashes a wave of persecution against Christians in the Roman Empire.

**311**

Xiongnu nomads capture Luoyang, capital of China's Jin Dynasty, and take the Chinese emperor prisoner. In the ensuing years, invaders set up 16 separate kingdoms in northern China, confining imperial power to the south.

**312**

Constantine defeats his imperial rival Maxentius at the Battle of the Milvian Bridge, winning undisputed power in Rome. In the following year (313), he issues the Edict of Milan, which orders toleration of the Christian faith and permits the establishment of churches across the empire.

*"We make a ladder of our vices, if we trample those same vices underfoot."*

ST AUGUSTINE OF HIPPO, c.420

**c. 320–335**

Chandragupta I expands his small kingdom by annexing neighboring states and marrying strategically. He creates the Gupta Empire, stretching across northern and western India.

**324**

Emperor Constantine orders the construction of Constantinople on the Bosphorus strait between Europe and Asia, taking over the site of the Greek city of Byzantium. In 330, the city is consecrated as the new capital of the Empire, replacing Rome.

**325**

The Council of Nicaea—the first ecumenical council of the Christian Church—is convened by Emperor Constantine. It codifies Christian beliefs and establishes the Nicene Creed as the hallmark of orthodoxy.

**c. 350**

In Africa, the city of Meroë—capital of Kush, a long-lasting and powerful kingdom in the Sudan—disappears from the historical record. In Ethiopia, Aksum becomes the first African kingdom to officially adopt Christianity.

**361–363**

Emperor Julian seeks to reestablish traditional pagan beliefs in place of Christianity as the Roman Empire's official religion. On his death in battle against the Persian Sassanians, the empire is divided into eastern and western portions, the east under Valens and the west under Valentinian I.

**c. 370**

Hun nomads arrive in Europe in large numbers, migrating from lands north of the Black Sea.

**376**

Driven south by the invading Huns, Visigothic tribes cross the River Danube into the Roman Empire. Initially accepted, they rebel against harsh treatment and defeat and kill the eastern emperor Valens at the Battle of Adrianople in 378.





**380–415**

In India, Chandragupta II conquers the Saka rulers of the Gujarat region of eastern India, expanding the Gupta Empire to its greatest extent. His reign is notable for a flowering of art, literature, and science.

**386**

The Tuoba people establish the Northern Wei Dynasty in north China, around the Yellow River delta.

**389–392**

Theodosius I—the last emperor to rule over both the eastern and western halves of the Roman Empire—proscribes the last elements of paganism and bans the rituals of the Olympics in Ancient Greece, making Christianity (as defined by the Nicene Creed) the official religion of the empire.

**399–412**

The Buddhist monk Faxian travels on foot from China to India, collecting texts and writing an account of his journey.

**c. 400**

Christianity is introduced to Ireland. Hinduism continues its spread through southeast Asia. India's two great epics, the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata*, are taking on their final form.

**402**

Emperor Honorius transfers the capital of the western Roman Empire from Milan to Ravenna, which is considered easier to defend.

**406**

Germanic Vandals cross the River Rhine into Gaul, under pressure from Huns invading from the east. In 409, they move on into Spain.

**407**

Most Roman legions are withdrawn from Britain to participate in Rome's civil wars. Emperor Honorius subsequently tells Britons to look to their own defenses.

**410**

Vandal forces under Alaric sack Rome for 3 days, a pivotal event in the fall of the Roman Empire.

**421–422**

Theodosius II goes to war with the Sassanid emperor over the persecution of Christians in Persia.

**426**

St Augustine of Hippo publishes his philosophical work *The City of God*.

**◀ Tikal sculpture**

This vase, embellished with jadeite, is in the form of a man wearing a Mayan feather headdress. It dates from around 450 in the Classic period of Mayan civilization.

**429**

The Vandals cross from their adopted homeland in Spain to north Africa, where they establish a kingdom that will last for a century, until it succumbs to forces of the Byzantine Empire.

**435**

Under pressure from the Huns, the eastern Roman emperor signs the Treaty of Margus, in which the Romans agree to pay a higher annual tribute to the Huns. There is sporadic warfare for the next 8 years as the Romans fail to keep to its terms.

**439**

The Northern Wei Dynasty succeeds in unifying northern China. During their rule, Buddhism becomes firmly established in the region, and the Yungang Grottoes are constructed.

**c. 450**

Angles and Saxons have started to settle in eastern England following the withdrawal of the Roman legions. Slav peoples are raiding and settling in the Balkans. In Mesoamerica, Tikal (in modern Guatemala) is the dominant Mayan city-state. The mausoleum of Galla Placidia is the earliest example of Christian mosaic in Ravenna (in Italy).

**451**

The Roman general Aetius—in a coalition with the Visigothic forces of Theoderic I—turns back a Hun invasion of Gaul led by Attila at the Battle of the Catalaunian Fields, fought in what is now northern France.

**453**

Constantinople wins ecclesiastical supremacy over its rival Alexandria at the Council of Chalcedon (now within

the city of Istanbul), establishing itself as second only to Rome in the hierarchy of the Christian Church.

**455**

Vandal forces sack Rome for a second time, destroying its aqueducts and looting treasures from the city. Anglo-Saxon encroachment sends the Celtic Britons westward into Wales, to Ireland, and across the English Channel into what is today called Brittany.

**c. 470**

After the death of Attila in 453, the Hun empire begins to disintegrate. In India, the Gupta Empire is in decline following the death of Skandagupta in 467.

**476**

The last Roman emperor, Romulus Augustulus, is deposed. Odoacer, a German commander of Rome's army, replaces him as King of Italy.

**484**

Peroz I, ruler of Sassanian Persia, is killed in battle against the Hephthalite Huns (a Central Asian people based around Bactria), who force the empire to pay them tribute.

**486**

Clovis, founder of the Frankish kingdom, defeats the last Roman ruler in Gaul at Soissons.

**488–493**

An Ostrogothic army invades Italy, taking Ravenna in 493. At a banquet arranged to celebrate the subsequent peace treaty, the Ostrogoth leader Theodoric kills Odoacer, replacing him as King of Italy.

**496**

The Franks extend their rule into northeastern Gaul. Their leader, Clovis, converts to Christianity.

**◀ The Battle of Milvian Bridge (detail)**

Painted in 1517–1524 by Giulio Romano, this work depicts the battle in 312 between the Roman Emperors Constantine I and Maxentius.



# THE MIDDLE AGES 500–1450

## 500

**c. 500**  
In the Americas, the Huari state is on the rise in the Andean highlands, and the city of Teotihuacan is at the peak of its influence in Mesoamerica; the Moche state is in decline following catastrophic floods. In Africa, ironworking is spreading across the southern half of the continent. Hinduism is gaining adherents in Indonesia.

**507**  
The Frankish leader Clovis defeats Visigoth forces at Campus Vogladensis (near modern Tours), driving the invaders south into the Iberian Peninsula.

**511**  
On the death of Clovis, the Frankish kingdom is divided into four parts among his sons.

**517**  
Emperor Wu of the Liang Dynasty converts to Buddhism, introducing the religion to central China.

**527**  
Justinian becomes emperor in Constantinople. In his 38-year reign (which ends in 565), the Byzantine Empire will reach its greatest extent.

**528**  
The Byzantine emperor Justinian orders a revision of existing Roman law, which is set out in the *Codex Justinianus*, published in 534.

**c. 530**  
A coalition of princes succeeds in driving the Ephthalites, or White Huns (tribes originating from the region around Bactria), out of India.

**531**  
Khusrow I ascends the Persian throne. In his 48-year reign (to 579), the Sassanian Empire will reach its peak.

**533–534**  
Justinian’s general Belisarius defeats the Vandals, winning back North Africa for the Byzantine Empire.

**534**  
The Northern Wei kingdom in the north of China splits into eastern and western halves, neither of which survives beyond the year 557.

**c. 535**  
Benedict of Nursia draws up his guidance for monastic life, *The Rule of St. Benedict*, which will influence Western monasticism to the present day. Extreme weather, probably triggered by a volcanic eruption in the tropics, affects large areas of the Northern Hemisphere, causing drought in Mesoamerica and perhaps triggering the decline of the city of Teotihuacan.

**535**  
Sent by Justinian, Byzantine general Belisarius invades the Ostrogoth kingdom of Italy, capturing their capital of Ravenna in 540; however, resistance continues until 553.

**c. 552**  
Monks smuggle silkworms out of China to Byzantine lands, enabling the beginning of silk production in the West. Buddhism is introduced to Japan by Korean monks.



**553**  
Silla, one of the three ancient kingdoms of Korea, defeats a neighboring realm to become the dominant power in the Korean peninsula.

**554**  
Forces dispatched by Justinian establish a Byzantine presence in southern Spain.

**562**  
The Avars, a Mongol people who have migrated westward into Europe, establish a kingdom in the lower Danube Basin region. In Mesoamerica, the city-state of Tikal is defeated by forces from Caracol (now in Belize).

**568**  
Germanic Lombards under their ruler Alboin invade and conquer northern Italy, establishing their own kingdom there by 572.

**c. 570**  
Birth of the Prophet Muhammad at Mecca in Arabia.

*“The principal division of the law of persons is as follows, namely, that all men are either free or slaves.”*

EMPEROR JUSTINIAN, FROM *CODEX JUSTINIANUS*, 534

**581**  
General Yang Jian seizes power over the Northern Zhou lands, governing as Emperor Wen of the new Sui Dynasty; he goes on to restore Chinese rule over the northern part of the country after 400 years of division.

**592–602**  
Maurice (Byzantine emperor in 582–602) launches a series of campaigns against the Avars and Slavs, aiming to

**1,104** miles  
(1,776 km). The length of China’s Grand Canal; it is the world’s longest artificial waterway.

retain a Byzantine presence in the Balkans. He succeeds, but Roman rule over the Balkans collapses soon after his overthrow in 602.

**593**  
Appointed as regent by his aunt, the Empress Suiko, the ardently Buddhist Prince Shotoku sets out to establish centralized government in Japan.

**597**  
Dispatched from Rome by Pope Gregory the Great, the monk Augustine reaches England, taking on the task of

converting the Anglo-Saxon settlers in the south. He is received by King Ethelbert of Kent and establishes an archbishopric at Canterbury.

**c. 600**  
Tibet emerges as a unified state under the rule of Songtsen Gampo, who is traditionally credited with introducing Buddhism to his kingdom. In America, the Plains hunters are adopting the bow and arrow.

◁ **Emperor Justinian**  
This 6th-century relief panel is believed to show a triumphant Justinian. The woman holding his foot symbolizes nature submitting to the great emperor, who reigned from 528.





#### ◁ Prince Shotoku

A wooden sculpture from the Kamakura Period (1185–1333) depicts a young Prince Shotoku, regent of Japan from 593.

656

#### 601–609

China's Grand Canal, begun in the previous century, is greatly extended, reaching Beijing in the north and Huangzhou in the south.

#### 602

China's Emperor Wen takes advantage of civil war to crush the native Early Lý Dynasty and restore Chinese rule.

#### 606–647

Harsha of the Pushyabhuti Dynasty builds an empire in northern India, uniting the states of the Gangetic Plain from his capital, Kanauj.

#### 607–627

Hostilities break out again between the Byzantine Empire and Sassanian Persia, which extends its territory in Syria, Mesopotamia, Palestine, and Egypt. The prolonged campaigns will weaken both powers, reducing their ability to resist the coming Arab onslaught.

#### 610

Heraclius accedes to the Byzantine throne and sets about rebuilding its administration; Greek replaces Latin as the language of the empire.

#### 616

The Vandals expel the Byzantines from southern Spain.

#### 618

Following the murder of its last emperor, the Sui Dynasty in China is replaced by the Tang, who will rule the country for the next three centuries.

#### 622

Muhammad and his followers leave his hometown of Mecca for Medina. Known as the Hegira, the migration marks the start of the Muslim calendar.

#### 624

Muhammad defeats the Meccans at the Battle of Badr, a turning point in the establishment of the Muslim faith.

#### 626

A combined attack by Avars, Slavs, and Sassanian Persians fails to take Constantinople, the Byzantine capital.

#### 628

The Indian mathematician Brahmagupta introduces the concept of zero as a number in its own right.

#### 630

The city of Mecca surrenders to the forces of Muhammad.

#### 632

On the death of Muhammad, the new Muslim caliphate starts under Abu Bakr.

#### 633

The Chalukya rulers of an empire in south-central India defeat Harsha's forces at the Narmada River, frustrating his attempts to annex the Deccan.

#### 634

Umar, a senior companion of the Prophet Muhammad, succeeds Abu Bakr as Muslim caliph.

#### 635

Nestorian missionaries (those following the doctrine of the patriarch Nestorius) bring Christianity to China.

#### 636

Fired up by their new Islamic faith, Arab forces erupt out of Arabia into Byzantine Syria, taking Damascus. They also confront the Sassanian Empire, defeating a Persian army at the Battle of al-Qadisiya and winning control of all Mesopotamia (modern Iraq).

#### 639

The Frankish kingdom fractures, with power increasingly passing—in the following decades—from short-lived kings to the mayors of the palace.

#### 642

Alexandria falls to the Arabs, completing their conquest of Byzantine Egypt. That year, they also decisively defeat the Sassanian emperor at the Battle of Nehavend in southern Iran.

#### 651

Yazdegerd III, the deposed last Sassanian emperor, is killed, ending the dynasty.

#### 656–661

The Caliphate of Ali is marked by civil war in the Muslim community; Ali is defeated and assassinated in 661. The split between Ali's followers and opponents lives on to the present day in the division between Shia and Sunni.



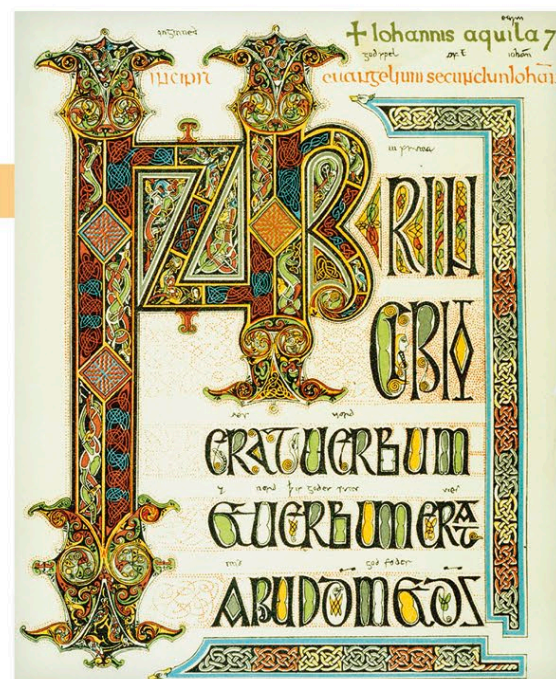
#### ▷ The Death of King Dagobert I

A manuscript illustration presents a deathbed scene in which the Frankish king, Dagobert, divides his empire between his sons Sigebert and Clovis in 639.



## ▷ The Lindisfarne Gospels

The title page of St. John's Gospel displays the meticulous design of the Lindisfarne Gospels, which are believed to be the work of just one artist—monk, Eadfrith, in the period around 715.



661

661

On the death of Ali, Muawiyah—the victor of the Muslim civil war—establishes the Umayyad Caliphate. The dynasty, based in Damascus, will rule the Muslim world until 750 and become one of the largest empires in history.

664

British churches accept the Roman, rather than the Celtic, form of Christianity at the Synod of Whitby.

668

The kingdom of Silla establishes control over the entire Korean peninsula after Chinese forces are expelled.

679

Bulgars conquer territory around the mouth of the River Danube from the Byzantines, establishing the first Bulgarian Empire.

687

Pepin II unites the Frankish lands under his rule, going on to expand their control into Germanic territories to the north and east.

695

In the Mayan lands of Mesoamerica, Tikal reestablishes its preeminence with a decisive victory over the rival city-state of Calakmul.



698

Islamic forces take Carthage, the last Byzantine stronghold in Africa.

700

In Mesoamerica, Monte Alban is in decline, while Teotihuacan has by now been sacked and abandoned. In Peru, the Moche state is also on the wane. In west Africa, the kingdom of Ghana is established about this time.

702

A Berber uprising against the new Arab rulers of North Africa is put down savagely; the Berbers accept Islam.

708

Empress Genmei of Japan establishes Japan's first official currency; 2 years later, she moves her official residence to Nara, which becomes the new capital of Japan.

711

Under a Berber commander, Arab forces invade southern Spain; within 2 years, the lands of the former Visigothic kingdom are almost entirely under Muslim control.

713

Xuanzong becomes emperor of China, starting a 43-year reign that will start as a golden age but eventually deteriorate into corruption and civil war.

714

In India, Arab forces complete the conquest of Sindh and the lower Indus Valley, pushing the expansion of Islam almost to its furthest extent.

c. 715

The Lindisfarne Gospels are created in Anglo-Saxon Northumbria, part of a cultural flourishing of the northern kingdom.

716–717

Byzantine Emperor Leo III the Isaurian (so-called for his Syrian birth) repels a third Arab siege of Constantinople with the help of the recently developed incendiary weapon known as Greek fire.

718

Christian forces defeat a Muslim army at Covadonga in the Asturias region of northern Spain—a victory cited in Spanish sources as the start of the 700-year struggle to reconquer the peninsula for the Christian faith.

724–749

The reign of Emperor Shomu, a devout Buddhist, marks the high point of Japan's Nara period (710–794).

726

Emperor Leo III issues the first of a series of edicts against the veneration of images, launching the Iconoclastic ("image-breaking") movement that will divide the Byzantine Empire for the next 117 years.

732

The Franks under Charles Martel defeat Arab forces at the Battle of Tours, halting their northward expansion into Europe.

740

Leo III defeats Arab forces besieging Akroinon, halting further Islamic expansion into Anatolia. He renames Akroinon Nikopolis ("City of Victory").

750

After their victory at the Battle of the Zab (in present-day Iraq), the Abbasids displace the Umayyads as rulers of the greater part of the Arab world. Lombard forces capture Ravenna, ending the Byzantine presence in northern Italy.

c. 750

On the American continent, the Toltecs begin to move into the Valley of Mexico, while the power of the city-state of Tiwanaku (in what is now Bolivia) is at its peak. In Africa, trade across the Sahara Desert is on the rise.

751

Arab forces halt Chinese expansion westward with a victory at the Battle of the Talas River, near Samarkand.

755

A rebellion breaks out against Tang rule in China; it is led by An Lushan, a general who declares himself Emperor of a new Yan Dynasty. An Lushan is assassinated by his own son in 757, and the Yan state is finally extinguished in 763.

29 Percentage of the world's population under the Umayyad Caliphate at its height—a total of 62 million people.

## ◁ Emperor Xuanzong

This 13th-century painting shows Xuanzong, the ninth ruler of the Tang Dynasty, who reigned from 713 to 756.



756

Abd al-Rahman establishes the Caliphate of Córdoba in southern Spain; as a member of the deposed Umayyad Dynasty, he refuses to acknowledge the suzerainty of the Abbasids in Syria, creating an independent, breakaway state on the Iberian Peninsula.

757

Krishna I of the rising Rashtrakuta Dynasty wins control of much of west-central India from the declining Chalukyas. In England, Offa becomes king of the central kingdom of Mercia, ruling until 796; during his reign, he gives his name to Offa's Dyke, a defensive earthwork protecting his western border against the Welsh.

762

The Abbasid ruler al-Mansur orders the construction of Baghdad on the banks of the River Tigris as the new capital of the Caliphate.

771

Charlemagne becomes sole ruler of the Frankish kingdom.

774

Charlemagne conquers the Lombard kingdom in north Italy.

780

Hyegong, king of Silla, is assassinated at the end of a lengthy civil war, plunging the Korean kingdom into a period of prolonged upheaval.

782

Charlemagne imposes a law code on the Germanic West Saxons, prescribing death for anyone refusing to abandon paganism. Despite frequent rebellions, Frankish rule will subsequently be confirmed.

786–809

Harun al-Rashid reigns as Abbasid Caliph. He brings the Abbasid Caliphate to its peak of power and influence.

789

The Idrisids establish an Arab-Berber dynasty in the lands that will become Morocco. They embrace the Shia branch of Islam.

c. 790

The Tibetan Empire reaches its greatest extent, ruling a realm stretching from modern Afghanistan to western China.

793

Scandinavian Vikings launch their first shipborne raids, crossing the North Sea to sack the monastery of Lindisfarne off the Northumbrian coast of England.

794

In Japan, Emperor Kanmu moves his capital to Kyoto, starting the Heian Period that will see the imperial court at its peak.

c. 800

In Mesoamerica, the Mayan city-states of the southern lowlands are in decline. The cultivation of corn is widespread in North America, and the first farming cultures are developing in the southwest; the mound-building Mississippian Culture is in a formative stage. In Africa, Kilwa Kisiwani is becoming a significant trading center on an archipelago off the Somali coast.

800

On Christmas Day, Charlemagne is crowned Holy Roman Emperor by Pope Leo III in Rome, in recognition of his services in spreading the Christian faith. His reign is marked by a flourishing of culture—the Carolingian Renaissance.

802

In Cambodia, Jayavarman II stages a consecration ceremony to celebrate the independence of his kingdom of Kambuja from Java—an event traditionally seen as marking the birth of the Khmer Empire.

813

Baghdad is besieged and sacked in the course of an Abbasid civil war.

814

Death of Charlemagne; he is succeeded by his son Louis the Pious.

**150** miles  
(240 km). The length of Offa's Dyke on the English–Welsh border.

817

Louis the Pious divides his empire between his three sons, who are expected to serve as co-rulers with him during his lifetime. The lion's share of the empire goes to his eldest, Lothair.

c. 820

The Buddhist temple complex at Borobodur in Java is completed.

827

An Arab army invades Sicily from North Africa, setting in train the Islamic conquest of the island.

831

Louis the Pious charges the monk Ansgar, Archbishop of Hamburg, with the mission of bringing Christianity to the Scandinavian lands.

836

The Abbasid ruler al-Mutasim orders the construction of a new capital for the Caliphate at Samarra, north of Baghdad.

840

The Uighur Khanate, which has ruled over a large part of eastern Asia for almost a century, falls apart in famine and civil war. The Kirghiz, another Turkic people, take control of its lands.

841

A Viking fleet sails up the River Liffey in Ireland, establishing a settlement where the city of Dublin will eventually grow.

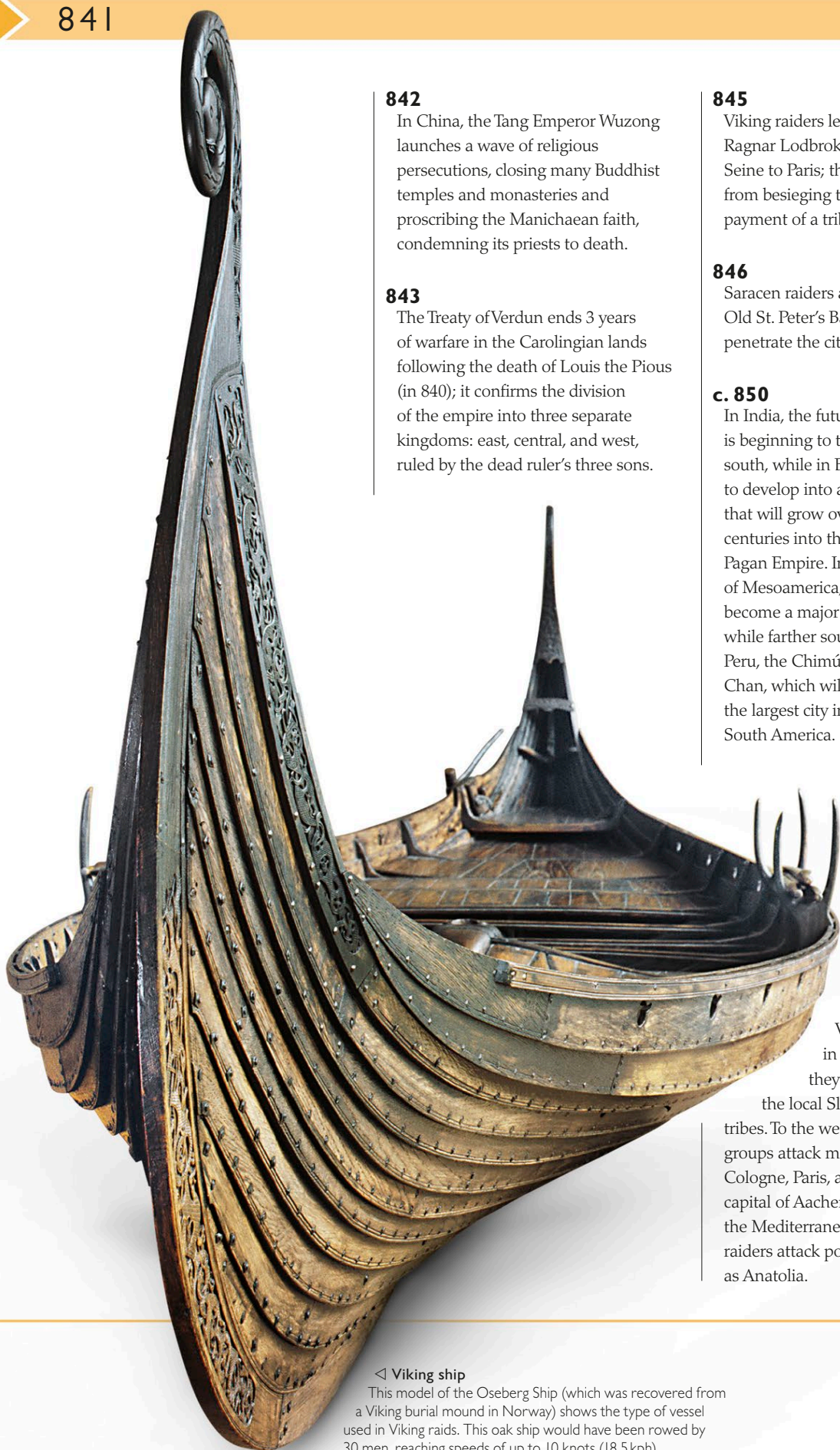


◀ **Bust of Emperor Charlemagne**

This 14th-century gilt and silver bust is a reliquary that includes part of the skull of Charlemagne, who was crowned Emperor in 800.



841



#### ◁ Viking ship

This model of the Oseberg Ship (which was recovered from a Viking burial mound in Norway) shows the type of vessel used in Viking raids. This oak ship would have been rowed by 30 men, reaching speeds of up to 10 knots (18.5 kph).

#### 842

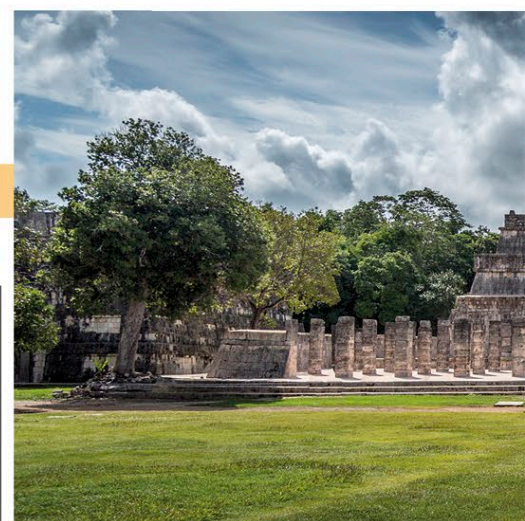
In China, the Tang Emperor Wuzong launches a wave of religious persecutions, closing many Buddhist temples and monasteries and proscribing the Manichaean faith, condemning its priests to death.

#### 843

The Treaty of Verdun ends 3 years of warfare in the Carolingian lands following the death of Louis the Pious (in 840); it confirms the division of the empire into three separate kingdoms: east, central, and west, ruled by the dead ruler's three sons.

#### ▷ The ruins of Chichen Itza

Chichen Itza, in the eastern portion of the Yucatán state in Mexico, was an important Mayan city. The site was developed from around 750, and it became a regional capital in the 10th century.



#### 845

Viking raiders led by the chieftain Ragnar Lodbrok sail up the River Seine to Paris; they are prevented from besieging the city by the payment of a tribute.

#### 846

Saracen raiders attack Rome, sacking Old St. Peter's Basilica but failing to penetrate the city walls.

#### c. 850

In India, the future Chola kingdom is beginning to take shape in the south, while in Burma, Pagan starts to develop into as a small city-state that will grow over the next two centuries into the capital of the Pagan Empire. In the Mayan lands of Mesoamerica, Chichen Itza has become a major regional capital, while farther south, in what is now Peru, the Chimú people found Chan Chan, which will in time become the largest city in pre-Columbian South America.

#### 858

Kenneth I MacAlpin, who is traditionally held to be the first king of the Scots, dies from a tumor.

#### 859

A chronicle reports the presence of Varangians (Vikings) in northern Russia; they demand tribute from the local Slavic and Finnish tribes. To the west, other Viking groups attack major cities, including Cologne, Paris, and the Carolingian capital of Aachen. Meanwhile in the Mediterranean, shipborne raiders attack ports as far east as Anatolia.

#### 862

Rurik emerges as the leader of the Varangians, establishing a dynasty that will rule over much of western Russia.

#### 865–866

Danish invaders occupy the kingdom of Northumbria in northern England, establishing their capital at York.

#### 867

Basil I usurps the Byzantine throne, establishing the Macedonian Dynasty that will rule until 1056; he will expand the empire to its greatest extent since the Muslim conquests.

#### 868

Sent as Abbasid governor to Egypt, Ahmad ibn Tulun sets up his own independent Tulunid Dynasty, which will govern Egypt and the Levant until the Abbasids reassert control in 905.

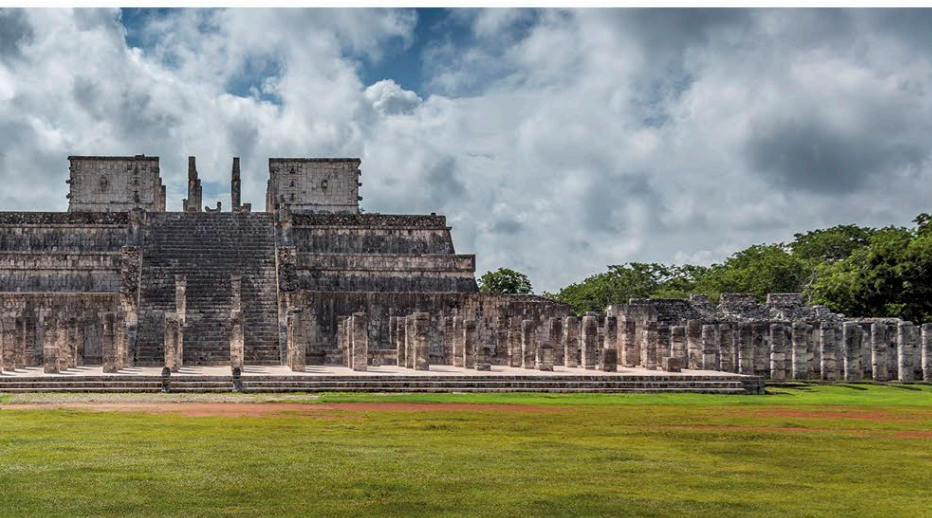
#### 869

A Danish force conquers the English kingdom of East Anglia, killing its ruler Edmund the Martyr (who is later venerated as St. Edmund).

#### 873

Norse settlers arrive in Iceland, establishing a base at Reykjavik. In China, Huang Chao leads a rebellion that will severely weaken the ruling Tang Dynasty; before his eventual defeat and death in 884, the rebel leader's forces will temporarily control the southern port of Guangzhou and the imperial capital Chang'an (modern Xi'an).



**878**

At the Battle of Edington, Alfred, ruler of the southern kingdom of Wessex, defeats the Danish army ravaging southern England; in the ensuing peace negotiations, the Danish leader Guthrum agrees to convert to Christianity. Danish power in England will subsequently be restricted to the Danelaw, a swathe of land stretching southeast from the Scottish border to the Thames estuary.

**882**

Rurik's successor, Oleg, founds the Rus' state in the lands along the Dnieper River, establishing Kiev as its capital.

**885–886**

Paris resists a prolonged siege by tens of thousands of Vikings.

**887**

Charles the Fat, who had briefly brought the three parts of Charlemagne's empire back together under his control, is deposed; the Frankish Empire will never again be reunited.

**895**

Under their leader Arpad, Magyar (Hungarian) tribes cross the Carpathian Mountains to settle in the lands of present-day Hungary.

**897**

The last king of the Pallava Dynasty dies in battle against the Cholas, who will rule a kingdom in southern India for the next four centuries.

**899**

The Qarmatians, a religious group with Shia affiliations, establish a republic in eastern Arabia, breaking away from Abbasid control. Death of Alfred the Great, king of Wessex; he is succeeded by his son, Edward, who repels a challenge from his cousin Æthelwold.

**c. 900**

In Korea, the kingdom of Silla is in steep decline. In North America, farming villages are beginning to appear in the Great Plains region, while in the southwest the Hohokam Culture farmers are digging irrigation channels for their crops. In Mesoamerica, in the wake of the collapse of Teotihuacan, the Toltec people found a state with its capital at Tula in the Valley of Mexico. In South America, the Sican state, centered on the Lambayeque Valley, comes to dominate northern Peru; it maintains its position until its conquest by the Chimú people in the 14th century.

**907**

The last emperor of the declining Tang Dynasty is deposed and China splits into the interregnum of the Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms period.

**909**

Taking advantage of Berber discontent with Abbasid rule, the Shia Fatimids establish control over a kingdom on the central North African coast.

**910**

The abbey of Cluny is founded in the Burgundy region of eastern France. Following a strict interpretation of Benedictine rule, it becomes the focus of a monastic reform movement.

**911**

Charles the Simple cedes land in Normandy to the Vikings, who have settled there, in exchange for their

**930**

The Althing, the world's first parliament, is established in Iceland; it begins as an outdoor assembly where the country's leaders meet to decide on new laws and to dispense justice.

**934**

The Shia Buwayhids capture Shiraz, which will become the capital of an empire stretching across Iran and Iraq.

**937**

Athelstan defeats a combined force of Ireland-based Vikings, Welsh, and Scots at the Battle of Brunanburh, fought in northern England; his victory is sometimes seen as marking the birth of a united English nation.

**938**

The Vietnamese win independence from Chinese control.

*"Remember what punishments befell us ... when we did not cherish learning ..."*

ALFRED THE GREAT, KING OF WESSEX, c. 890

promise to accept the Christian faith and to protect France from further Norse raids. Their leader Rollo becomes the first Duke of Normandy.

**918**

Taejo founds the Goryeo Dynasty, which will unify Korea by 936 and rule the country for the next four centuries.

**919**

Henry the Fowler, previously Duke of Saxony, becomes King of East Francia, uniting the two realms and replacing the previous Frankish line of rulers with his own Ottonian Dynasty; his accession is generally held to mark the start of the medieval German state.

**939–967**

Reign of Krishna III, the last great ruler of the Rashtrakuta Dynasty, who will preside over a realm covering much of India and patronize poetry.

**945**

The Buwayhids take Baghdad, making the Abbasid caliphs their vassals.

**c. 950**

In Mesoamerica, the Mixtecs sack the Zapotec capital of Monte Albán.

**954**

Eric Bloodaxe, the last Viking king of York, is driven out of the city by the Anglo-Saxon King Eadred.

◁ **Charles III (the Fat)**

This 13th-century statue in Aachen shows Charles, the great-great-grandson of Charlemagne. He was crowned Holy Roman Emperor in 881; his fall in 887 marked the end of Charlemagne's empire.





#### ◀ Emperor Taizu

This silk hanging scroll depicts Zhao Kuangyin, who around 960 became the first ruler of the Song Dynasty.

## 955–1056

through his many military successes. His reign is generally considered to mark the start of the Polish state.

**955**

Otto I of East Francia defeats the Magyars at Lechfeld, halting their westward expansion.

**c. 960**

Following an army mutiny, general Zhao Kuangyin becomes ruler of the Later Zhou territories in China. In the course of a 19-year reign, he will win control of the whole of China, ending the Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms period and uniting the whole nation under his Song Dynasty.

**962**

Otto I, “The Great,” is crowned Holy Roman Emperor by the pope in Rome, reviving the empire in the west.

**963**

In Greece, the monk Athanasios founds the monastery of Great Lavra on Mount Athos; it remains the largest of several communities on the holy mountain.

**c. 965**

Harald Bluetooth, king of Denmark, becomes the first Scandinavian ruler to convert to Christianity.

**966**

King Mieszko I of Poland is baptized as a Christian. During his long reign (960–992), he greatly expands Poland’s frontiers, both through diplomacy and

recapture the city of Antioch from its Muslim rulers.

**973**

Birth of al-Biruni in the Khwarezm region of central Asia; of Iranian descent, he will prove to be one of the great scholars and polymaths of the age,

*“Such is the passing that you must leave,  
All men must die, and it is vain to grieve.”*

FERDOWSI, FROM *SHANAMA*, 1010

doing important work in astronomy, mathematics, physics, geography, and history before his death in 1048.

**980**

Birth of the scholar Avicenna (ibn-Sina) in the Bukhara region of central Asia; he is best remembered for his medical works, the *Book of Healing* and the *Canon of Medicine*.

**986**

Norse settlers led by Erik the Red arrive in Greenland, founding two colonies on its southwest coast.

**987**

Hugues Capet is elected King of the Franks, starting the Capetian line of French kings.

**66,000** lb (30,000 kg). The amount of silver paid by King Cnut as Danegeld to ward off further Viking raids.

**988**

Vladimir, ruler of Kiev, accepts Eastern Orthodox Christianity as the religion of his people. Following his baptism, he will marry the sister of the Byzantine Emperor Basil II, sealing an alliance between the two realms.

**993**

Rajaraja I, ruler of the Chola kingdom in southern India, invades Sri Lanka, capturing the northern part of the island from a native dynasty; he builds a giant Hindu Temple in Thanjavur.

of the continent and also around Kilwa Kisiwani on the east coast. In South America, the cities of Tiwanaku and Huari are abandoned by this time. In North America, Norse colonists from Greenland establish a settlement on the coast of Newfoundland that will survive for only about 20 years.

**1001**

Stephen I, later canonized as St. Stephen, becomes the first committedly Christian king of Hungary, doing much to establish the faith in the course of his 38-year reign. In Poland, Giezno has become the seat of the country’s first archbishopric. In India, Mahmud of Ghazni wins a victory over a Hindu army at the Battle of Peshawar, opening up northern India to Muslim expansion.

**1001**

The Persian poet Ferdowsi completes the *Shanama* (*Book of Kings*), a work that will become Iran’s national epic.

**1011**

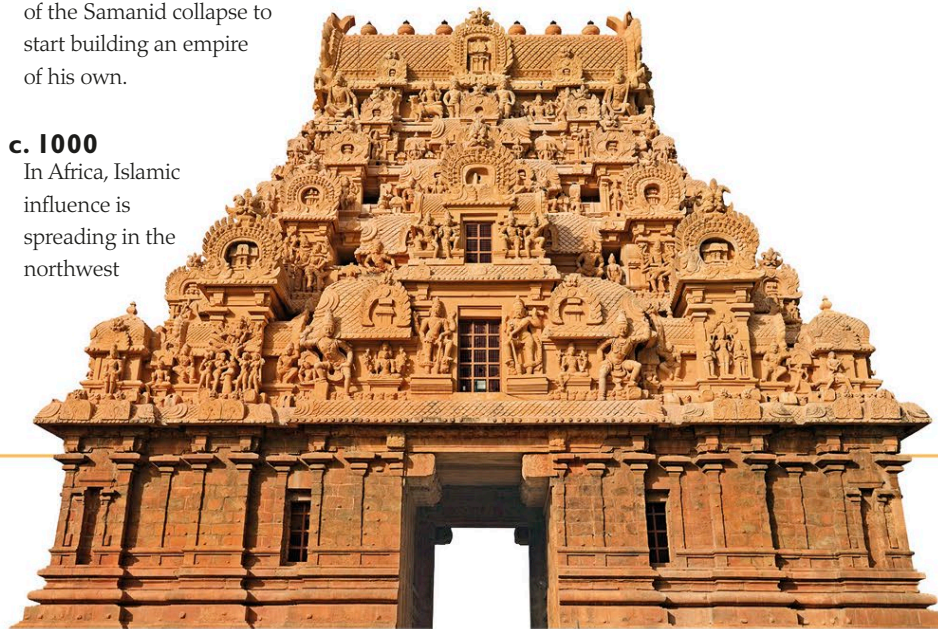
The Cathedral of St. Sophia is founded in Kiev.

**999**

Bukhara, capital of the Samanid Dynasty (which had ruled Iran and much of central Asia for more than a century), falls to the Turkic Qarakhanids. Mahmud of Ghazni, newly crowned emir of that Afghan city, takes advantage of the Samanid collapse to start building an empire of his own.

**c. 1000**

In Africa, Islamic influence is spreading in the northwest



#### ▷ Brihadishwara Temple, Thanjavur

This huge temple in Tamil Nadu was built under king Rajaraja I of the Chola Empire. It was classified as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2016.



▷ **King Cnut**

A 15th-century stained-glass panel at Canterbury Cathedral shows Cnut, the Danish warrior-king who ruled England in 1016–1035; he became a generous patron of the church.

**1013**

Sveyn Forkbeard, king of Denmark, conquers England.

**1014**

Byzantine Emperor Basil II completes his subjugation of the Bulgarian people on the empire's western frontier; he will become known as "the Bulgar-slayer" for the brutality of the conquest.

**1016**

Sveyn's son, Cnut, becomes king of England. He will also come to rule Denmark and Norway, creating a short-lived North Sea Empire.

**1017**

Rajaraja's son Rajendra I sacks Sri Lanka's capital Anuradhapura, extending Chola control over the island.

**c. 1020**

In Japan, Lady Murasaki Shikibu completes *The Tale of Genji*, sometimes described as the world's first novel.

**1025**

The Chola ruler Rajendra I launches naval raids on Srivijaya, on the island of Sumatra, and on Pegu in Burma.

**1028**

Empress Zoe ascends the Byzantine throne, starting a reign that will last for 22 years.

**1031**

After years of infighting and civil strife, the Umayyad Caliphate of Córdoba disintegrates into a number of separate states when its last ruler is overthrown.

**1032–1034**

The Holy Roman Emperor Conrad II annexes Provence and the kingdom of Burgundy. He founds the Salian Dynasty that rules over the empire for the next century.

**1033–1044**

Korea builds the "Thousand Li Wall" to defend the kingdom's northern frontier against the Khitans.

**1038**

Tibetan-speaking Tanguts launch an attack on northwest China, establishing their own Western Xia kingdom, which will survive until 1227.

**1040**

The Seljuk Turks defeat a Ghaznavid army at the Battle of Dandanaqan, establishing an independent central Asian empire under their leader Tughril Beg.

**1044**

Anawrahta becomes ruler of Pagan in what is now Myanmar. In the course of his 32-year reign, he will lay the foundations of the Pagan Empire and come to be considered the founder of the Burmese nation.

**1045**

The Byzantines take control of Armenia.

**1046**

Holy Roman Emperor Henry III summons a church council at Sutri in Italy to end faction-fighting in the Catholic Church.

**1048**

Birth of Omar Khayyam, Persian mathematician, astronomer, and poet.

**c. 1050**

In North America, the Mound Builder Mississippian Culture is now firmly entrenched in the lands around the central Mississippi River valley. In the southwest, the Ancestral Puebloans are creating complex settlements at sites including Mesa Verde and Chaco Canyon, featuring ceremonial sites known as *kivas*.

**1053**

Having entered southern Italy as mercenaries over the preceding decades, the Normans defeat the combined forces of the papacy and the Holy Roman Emperor at Civitate, taking Pope Leo IX prisoner. At the Treaty of Melfi 6 years later, the papacy finally recognizes Norman rule in the region.

**1054**

The schism between the Roman Catholic and Eastern Orthodox branches of Christianity becomes permanent after the Pope and the Patriarch of Constantinople mutually excommunicate each other.

Yaroslav the Wise, the Grand Prince of Rus', dies, leading to a division of the Kievan kingdom.

**1055**

The Seljuks conquer Baghdad, driving out the Buwayhid rulers; their leader Tughril Beg is made Sultan by the Caliph.

**1056**

Abu Bakr ibn Umar becomes leader of the Almoravids, creating a Berber Muslim dynasty based in Morocco that will rule much of western North Africa and southern Spain for the next 90 years from its capital of Marrakech, which is founded in 1062.



◀ **Anawrahta, King of Burma**

A statue at Mandalay Fort shows Anawrahta, who founded an empire centered on Pagan, an ancient settlement in the Mandalay Region of modern Myanmar. The empire lasted until 1287.

## 1057

**1057**

Anawrahta conquers the Mon people of what is now Myanmar, absorbing them into the Pagan Empire.

**c. 1063**

Construction starts on St. Mark's Basilica, Venice; the church is consecrated in 1093.

**1064**

The Seljuk ruler Alp Arslan invades Byzantine Armenia, sacking its capital Ani and massacring the inhabitants.

**1066**

William the Conqueror invades England, defeating and killing the English leader Harold Godwinson at the Battle of Hastings. Harold, England's last Anglo-Saxon king, had defeated a Norwegian invasion force at Stamford Bridge just 19 days before.

**1069**

Wang Anshi becomes chancellor of Song China, initiating a program of reforms that will divide the nation. His New Policies will be largely abandoned

after the death of his patron, Emperor Shenzong, in 1086.

**c. 1070**

The influence of Islam spreads in sub-Saharan Africa, carried by traders from the Maghreb; the Kanem rulers of Chad convert to the Islamic faith at about this time.

**1071**

The Seljuks defeat the Byzantines at Manzikert, and their victory gives them control over much of Anatolia; in 1077, Sultan Suleyman will establish the

Sultanate of Rum (so-called because the territory was originally "Roman") in the conquered lands.

**1075–1122**

The Investiture Controversy sets the papacy and the Holy Roman Emperor at odds over who should have the right to appoint bishops.

**c. 1076**

The Almoravids of Morocco secure control of the Empire of Ghana.

**1077**

Excommunicated by Pope Gregory VII in the bitter opening years of the Investiture Controversy, Holy Roman Emperor Henry IV goes to the castle of Canossa in northern Italy to do penance, standing in the snow in a hair shirt for 3 days before Gregory finally agrees to lift the excommunication.

**1081**

Robert Guiscard, ruler of Norman southern Italy and Sicily, invades the Balkans, defeating the Byzantine Emperor Alexius I outside Durazzo.

**1086**

William the Conqueror commissions the Domesday Book, a detailed survey of landholdings across much of England and Wales that will be used to assess tax liabilities.

**1088–1094**

The Chinese inventor Su Song creates a celebrated 40 ft (12 m) astronomical clock in Kaifeng, north-central China.

**1091**

The Normans complete the conquest of Sicily, first attempted 30 years earlier.

230 ft (70 m).

The length of the Bayeux tapestry—a record of events leading up to the Norman conquest of England.

**c. 1094**

Hassan-i-Sabbah founds the Assassins sect of Shia extremists, known for their violent, stealthy tactics; with a number of hilltop strongholds, adherents of the martial sect later become feared by Christian Crusaders, who name Hassan-i-Sabbah "Old Man of the Mountains."

**1095**

At the Council of Clermont, Pope Urban II launches the First Crusade to retake the Holy Land from Islamic control.

**1098**

Crusader forces take Antioch in Syria, which the Sicilian Norman Bohemond I later claims as his own principality.





▷ **Southern Song ceramics**

The Song tradition of producing exquisite ceramics continued under the Southern Song (1127). Some items were so valued that they were used to pay taxes to the imperial court.



1150

**1099**

The Crusaders capture Jerusalem, establishing a Christian presence in the lands of the Levant.

**c. 1100**

In Europe, towns are expanding and guilds of artisans and craftsmen are springing up to represent the interests of their members. In France, the *Song of Roland* is taking final shape as the first major work of French literature and one of the earliest epics of chivalry.

**1115**

Abbot (later Saint) Bernard founds the monastery of Citeaux in northeastern France, which will become the mother-house of the Cistercian Order. In northern China, the Jurchen chieftain Aguda proclaims the Jin Dynasty, declaring war against the neighboring Khitan-led Liao state.

**1119**

Crusaders in Jerusalem found the military Order of the Knights Templar.

condemns simony (the sale of church offices) and promotes clerical celibacy.

**1126–1127**

Jurchen forces capture the Song capital Kaifeng, and with it the Northern Song emperor; Song rule continues in the south from the Southern Song capital of Hangzhou. In Syria, Imad ad-Din Zengi becomes *atabeg* (governor) of Mosul, launching conquests that will bring him into conflict with the crusader states.

**1135**

On the death of Henry I, civil war breaks out in England between rival claimants to the throne, Henry's nephew Stephen of Blois and the king's daughter Matilda.

**c. 1136**

Geoffrey of Monmouth writes his *History of the Kings of Britain*, which will do much to popularize the legend of King Arthur.

**1139**

Afonso I wrests Portugal from fealty to the kingdom of León, establishing it as an independent kingdom.

**c. 1140**

Anna Comnena writes the *Alexiad*, a history of the life and reign of her father, the Byzantine Emperor Alexius I Comnenus (who reigned 1081–1118 BCE).

**1144**

Zengi conquers the Crusader state of Edessa, triggering the Second Crusade. In France, the Basilica of St. Denis, near Paris, is the first to be built in the Gothic style of architecture.

**1147**

Afonso I takes Lisbon from Muslim control with the help of a Christian fleet en route for the Second Crusade. Another Crusade is proclaimed in north Germany against the pagan Wends, a Slavic people. In Morocco, the Almohads overthrow the Almoravids, taking their capital of Marrakech; over the next 12 years, they will extend their rule over most of North Africa.

**1150**

Forces of the eastern Iranian Ghurid Dynasty sack Ghazni, capital of the Ghaznavid Empire. In Mesoamerica, the Toltec city of Tula, long in decline, is destroyed. In Europe, universities are developing in Oxford and Paris. Magnetic compasses are being used for navigation in Song China.

*“My father's deeds ... do not deserve to be consigned to Forgetfulness ...”*

ANNA COMNENA, FROM THE *ALEXIAD*, c.1140

**1113**

A papal bull (decree) recognizes the foundation of the crusading Order of the Hospital of St. John in Jerusalem, known as the Hospitallers; the order is charged with the care and defense of the Holy Land. In Cambodia, Suryavarman II ascends the Khmer throne; in his long reign (to 1150), he will oversee the construction of the Hindu temple complex of Angkor Wat.

**1122**

The Investiture Controversy ends at the Concordat of Worms in a compromise that divides the right to appoint bishops and high ecclesiastical functionaries between the Church and lay rulers.

**1123**

Pope Callixtus II convokes the First Lateran Council to counter lay influence in ecclesiastical matters; the Council



37

The number of years it took 300,000 workers and 6,000 elephants to build Angkor Wat.

◁ **Angkor Wat**

The construction of this monumental moated temple in northern Cambodia was initiated by Suryavarman II, Khmer king from 1113 to 1150.



## 1152

**1152**

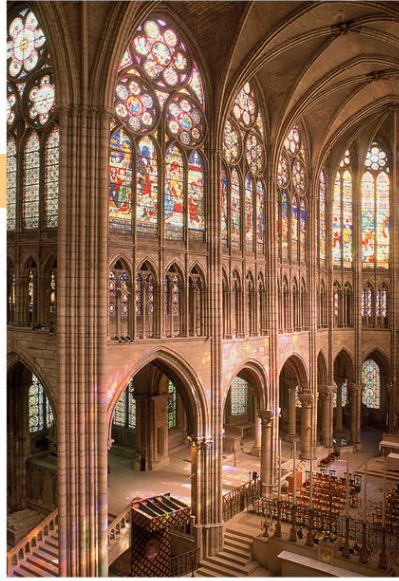
Frederick Barbarossa is elected King of Germany at Aachen. Three years later, in 1155, he will become King of Italy and Holy Roman Emperor.

**1154**

The son of Geoffrey of Anjou and Matilda (daughter of Henry I of England)—and already one of the greatest landholders in France—Henry II becomes the first Angevin king of England, sparking centuries of strife between the English and French crowns. In the Middle East, Nur ad-Din, son of the *atabeg* Zengi, annexes Damascus, uniting all Syria north of the crusader states under his control.

**1156**

Frederick Barbarossa creates the Duchy of Austria as a counterweight to its neighbor Bavaria.

◀ **Basilica of St. Denis**

Completed in 1144, this church in the city of St. Denis (now a suburb of Paris) was the resting place of Louis VII—who died in 1180—and all but three French kings.

**1167**

Sixteen cities in the Lombardy region of north Italy form the Lombard League to resist attempts by Frederick Barbarossa to restrict their freedoms.

**1170**

In England, Thomas Becket, the Archbishop of Canterbury, is murdered in his cathedral following a drawn-out dispute with King Henry II over ecclesiastical independence.

**1180**

The death of Louis VII of France, who oversaw the foundation of the University of Paris and the Second Crusade.

**1181**

Jayavarman VII becomes Khmer king, rallying his people against the Cham (Vietnamese) and founding the new capital of Angkor Thom.

**1185**

The Minamoto fleet defeats Taira forces in the naval Battle of Dannoura, fought off the southern tip of Honshu in Japan; in the wake of the battle, the Minamoto leader Yoritomo will establish the shogun system of military rule.

**1186**

Muhammad of Ghur's forces take Lahore, the last remaining stronghold of the former Ghaznavid Empire, executing its ruler and so ending the Ghaznavid Dynasty.

**1187**

Saladin routs a crusader army at Hattin, going on to recapture Jerusalem from the Christians.

**1189–1192**

The forces of the Third Crusade attempt to win back Jerusalem. One of its leaders, Frederick Barbarossa, drowns in Turkey on his way to the Holy Land (1190). The other, England's Richard the Lionheart, takes Cyprus and Acre and wins the Battle of Arsuf (1191) before signing a peace treaty with Saladin that leaves Jerusalem in Muslim hands but guarantees Christians access to the city.

**1190**

Jayavarman VII's Khmers conquer the Vietnamese kingdom of Champa.

**1191**

A Japanese monk introduces Zen Buddhism (derived from Chan, a Chinese variant of Mahayana Buddhism) to Japan. The intuitive, fearless path of Zen appeals to the powerful Japanese samurai class.

**1192**

The Ghurid general Qutb al-Din conquers Delhi and starts the construction of the Qutb Minar minaret.

**1194**

The Holy Roman Emperor Henry VI conquers Norman-ruled Sicily.

**1198**

Ibn Rushd (often westernized to Averroes) dies in Marrakesh. He was an Andalusian Muslim philosopher and polymath who did much to preserve the heritage of Plato and Aristotle.

**c. 1200**

The Chimú people establish themselves in the northern coastal valleys of Peru, while farther inland the Inca, under Manco Capac, are a growing presence around Cuzco, which will become their capital. The Icelandic sagas—stories exploring history, genealogy, and conflict—inspired by the history of Norse settlers in Iceland, are taking shape. Great Zimbabwe is a powerful presence in southern Africa. The Buddhist faith is dying out in northern India, its original heartland.

*“The Law teaches that the universe was invented and created by God, and that it did not come into being by chance or by itself.”*

IBN RUSHD, FROM *THE DECISIVE TREATISE*, c.1190

**1156–1159**

The Hogen (1156) and Heiji (1159) rebellions over issues of succession and the transfer of political power shake imperial Japan; they boost the influence of the samurai (warrior) class and set the rival military clans—the Minamoto and the Taira—against one another. The result is the downfall of the Taira and the establishment of a Minamoto shogunate in 1192.

**1162**

Frederick Barbarossa destroys Milan after subduing it in successive campaigns stretching over two decades.

**1171**

Saladin, vizir of Egypt, seizes power on the death of the last Fatimid sultan, renouncing its former Shia allegiance; he will later realign Egypt with the Abbasid caliphs in Baghdad.

**1173**

Muhammad of Ghur captures the former Ghaznavid capital of Ghazni; he will use it as a base from which to build a central Asian empire.

**1176**

The Lombard League's forces defeat Frederick Barbarossa at Legnano.

**30,000** The number of soldiers in Saladin's victorious army at the Battle of Hattin on July 4, 1187.





#### ◀ Coin of Henry VI

This 12th-century German coin is struck with an image of Henry VI, the son of Emperor Frederick Barbarossa. Henry became Holy Roman Emperor in 1191, and King of Sicily in 1194.

1241

#### 1204

The army of the Fourth Crusade diverts from its original target of Jerusalem to besiege and sack Christian Constantinople, replacing the emperor with the crusaders' own Latin dynasty.

#### 1206

Having united the Mongol tribes, Temujin is acknowledged as their leader, assuming the title of Genghis Khan. In India, the former slave Qutb ud-Din Aibak founds the Delhi Sultanate; his dynasty (the Mamluk Dynasty) will rule until 1290, while the Sultanate itself will last until 1526. Under the Mamluks, the Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque in Delhi is built.

#### 1208

Pope Innocent III proclaims the Albigensian Crusade against Cathar heretics in southern France.

#### 1209

Founded by St. Francis of Assisi, the Franciscan Order of mendicant monks receives papal approval.

#### 1210

Military victories give the Turkic rulers of the Khwarazm Dynasty a short-lived empire that stretches from the Persian Gulf deep into central Asia; it will fall to Genghis Khan's Mongols by 1220.

#### 1211–1234

Mongol forces conquer the Jin Empire of northern China, capturing their capital Zhongdu (Beijing) in 1215.

#### 1212

Christian forces under Alfonso VIII of Castile defeat the Almohad Muslims at Las Navas de Tolosa, a major step in the Christian Reconquista (reconquest) of Spain.

#### 1215

In England, King John signs the Magna Carta to appease rebellious barons, accepting limitations on royal power.

#### 1217–1221

The Fifth Crusade targets Muslim Egypt but fails to make lasting gains.

#### 1220

Frederick II is Holy Roman Emperor.

#### 1226

Frederick II commissions the Teutonic Knights to forcibly convert the pagan Prussians to Christianity.

## 780

The length in years of the Reconquista—the recapture of Iberia from Moorish occupation.

#### 1227

Genghis Khan dies while campaigning against rebel Tanguts in China.

#### 1228–1229

Leading the Sixth Crusade, Frederick II regains Jerusalem for the crusader states by peaceful diplomacy.

#### 1232

The papacy sets up the Inquisition as a tool to combat heresy.

#### 1237

Frederick II defeats forces of the Lombard League at Cortenuova in northern Italy.

#### 1240

Alexander Nevsky's victory at the Battle of the River Neva halts Swedish expansion eastward into Russia. Two years later, he will defeat the Teutonic Knights at Lake Peipus.

#### 1241

The north German ports of Hamburg and Lübeck form an alliance, presaging the development of the Hanseatic League, which will dominate Baltic trade for the next three centuries. Mongol forces strike deep into Europe, annexing Russian principalities, winning decisive victories in Poland and Hungary, and only turning back on news of the death of the Great Khan Ögedei, Genghis Khan's son and successor.

#### ◀ The capture of Jerusalem by Saladin

A 15th-century miniature shows the surrender of Jerusalem to Saladin after a short siege in 1187. The loss of the city triggered the launch of the Third Crusade in 1189.







#### ◁ The Battle of the Neva

This illustration from a 16th-century chronicle of Russian history shows a scene from The Battle of the Neva in 1240, which occurred during the invasion of Russia by Swedish forces.

1243

**24** The number of years spent by Marco Polo traveling to and around Asia, where he befriended Kublai Khan.

**1243**

The Seljuk sultanate of Rum in Anatolia becomes a Mongol vassal state.

**1248–1254**

In the Seventh Crusade, King Louis IX (later canonized as St. Louis) of France invades Egypt but is defeated, captured, and ransomed.

**1250**

On the death of Egypt's last Ayubbid ruler, the sultan's Mamluk slave-soldiers seize power in their own name, founding the Mamluk Sultanate.

**1256**

Hostilities break out between the Italian trading ports of Venice and Genoa, signaling the start of a struggle for commercial dominance that will last for more than a century. Hulegu founds the Mongol Ilkhanate Empire in Persia.

**1257**

Mongol forces under Möngke invade the Song lands of southern China.

**1258**

Hulegu's Ilkhans sack Baghdad and put an end to the Abbasid Caliphate, executing the last caliph.

**1259**

On the death of the Great Khan Möngke, the Mongol domains across Europe and Asia start to divide into four separate khanates: the Ilkhans in Persia and adjoining lands; the Golden Horde in Russia; the Chaghatai Khanate in central Asia; and the Chinese lands where, in 1271, Kublai Khan will establish the Yuan Dynasty.

**1260**

The Mamluks defeat a Mongol army at Ain Jalut in Palestine.

**1261**

The Byzantines reconquer Constantinople from the Latin Dynasty that had ruled it since the time of the Fourth Crusade. In Egypt, the Mamluk Sultan Baybars reestablishes the Caliphate, now based in Cairo.

**1265–1274**

The philosopher Thomas Aquinas writes his *Summa Theologiae*, attempting to reconcile Christian belief with Aristotelian philosophy.

**1266**

Norway gives up the Outer Hebrides and the Isle of Man to the kingdom of Scotland in the Treaty of Perth.

**1269**

Italian Marco Polo, just 6 years old, embarks on an epic expedition to Asia with his father and uncle. He later records his adventures in *The Travels of Marco Polo* (c. 1300).

**1270**

Yekuno Amlak establishes the Solomonic Dynasty, which will rule Ethiopia until the deposition of Emperor Haile Selassie in 1974. In Egypt, Louis IX dies of dysentery while besieging Tunis on the Eighth Crusade.

**1272**

Kublai Khan moves the capital of his newly established Yuan Empire to Beijing, which he calls Dadu.

**1278–1279**

Kublai Khan completes the conquest of the Song realm, becoming the first non-native ruler of a united China. In India, the Chola kingdom finally comes to an end following a string of military defeats.

**1281**

The second of two attempted invasions of Japan by Kublai Khan (the first was in 1274) is thwarted in part by a typhoon, known to later Japanese as the kamikaze or "divine wind."

**1287**

Mongol forces invade Myanmar, putting an end to the Pagan Empire.

**1290**

The Teutonic Knights finally subjugate the last southern Baltic pagan tribes.

**1291**

Acre, the only remaining Christian stronghold in the Holy Land, falls to the Mamluks, extinguishing the Crusader presence in the Levant.

**1295**

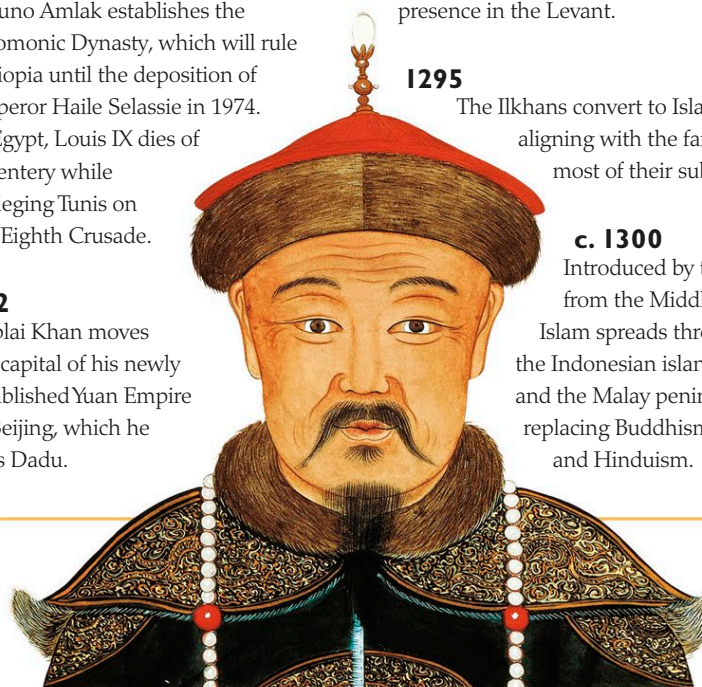
The Ilkhans convert to Islam, aligning with the faith of most of their subjects.

**c. 1300**

Introduced by traders from the Middle East, Islam spreads through the Indonesian islands and the Malay peninsula, replacing Buddhism and Hinduism.

#### ▷ Kublai Khan

This 13th-century portrait depicts the leader of the Mongol Empire and founder of Yuan Dynasty that governed China from 1261 to 1368.





1356

**c. 1308**

Italian poet Dante Alighieri begins work on the *Divine Comedy*, completing it a year before his death in 1321. It is considered one of the most significant literary works of the Middle Ages.

**1309**

After his election in 1305, French Pope Clement V moves the seat of the papacy to Avignon in France, where it will remain until 1377.

**1312**

The Knights Templar are brutally suppressed by Philip IV of France; following the loss of the Holy Land, their fellow military order the Hospitallers have, 2 years earlier, established a new base on the Greek island of Rhodes. In Africa, Mansa Musa ascends to the throne of Mali; he becomes legendarily rich in gold and uses this wealth to strengthen the country's cultural centers, particularly Timbuktu, which he annexes in 1324. Egyptian Mamluks occupy the Christian kingdom of Makuria in Nubia and try to impose Islam, inaugurating a period of civil strife.

**1313**

Ozbeg Khan ascends to the throne of the Golden Horde (a Mongol Khanate) and accepts Islam as the state religion, banning shamanism and other non-Islamic religious practices.

**1314**

A Scots army led by Robert the Bruce defeats a much larger English force led by Edward II at Bannockburn, guaranteeing Scotland's status as an independent nation.

**1324**

Osman I, ruler of a small enclave in Anatolia, dies. His realm will be the first home of the Ottoman Dynasty, named for him.

**1325**

The Aztecs found their capital city, Tenochtitlán, on an island in Lake Texcoco, where modern Mexico City now stands. In India, Muhammad bin Tughluq becomes ruler of the Delhi Sultanate; during his 26-year reign, he suppresses multiple rebellions and the sultanate reaches its greatest extent.

**1326**

The Ottomans, under Osman I's son, Orhan, capture Bursa in Anatolia from the Byzantines.

**1331**

Stephen Dushan becomes King of Serbia; before his death in 1355, he will build an empire in southeastern Europe.

**1333**

In the Kemmu Restoration, Emperor Go-Daigo of Japan overthrows the Kamakura shogunate, temporarily restoring imperial power

**1336**

Harihara I establishes the Hindu Vijayanagara Empire, which will dominate the Deccan Plateau region in southern India for the next two centuries.

**1337**

The Hundred Years' War breaks out when Edward III of England refuses to do feudal homage for his continental

*"I came into a place void of all light, which bellows like the sea in tempest, when it is combated by warring winds."*

DANTE ALIGHIERI, FROM THE *DIVINE COMEDY*, c.1308

possessions to Philip VI of France; sporadic fighting between the two nations will continue until 1453.

**1347**

First recorded in Asia in 1331, the plague known as the Black Death reaches Europe.

**1348–1353**

In Italy, Boccaccio writes the *Decameron*, which frames 100 tales told by a group of people escaping the Black Death.

**1350**

Hayam Wuruk becomes raja of Majapahit, based on the Indonesian island of Java; in his 39-year reign, the empire will reach its greatest extent, stretching from the Malay Peninsula through the Philippines.

**1351**

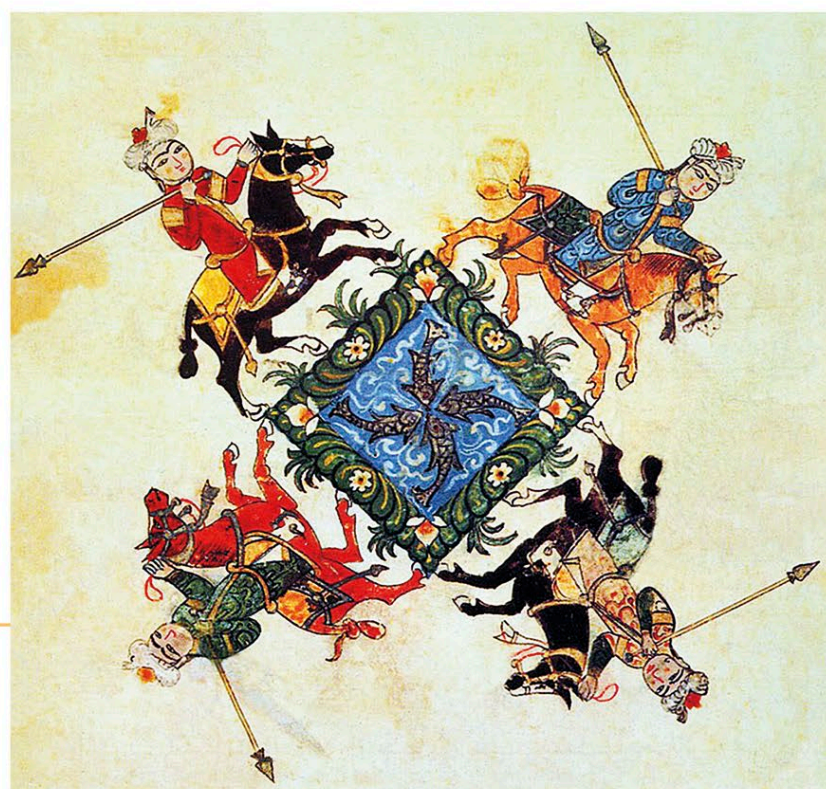
The Red Turban revolt breaks out in the Yangtze River region of China, directed against the Mongol Yuan Dynasty. The Ayutthaya kingdom is founded; the Thai nation will eventually develop from this kingdom.

**1354**

Ottoman forces capture the Gallipoli peninsula in Thrace from the Byzantine Empire, giving the Turkish dynasty its first foothold in Europe.

**1356**

A decree called the Golden Bull fixes the procedure for the election of Holy Roman Emperors, omitting any mention of a papal role—a significant step in the centuries-old power struggle between Church and State.



▷ **Mamluk cavalry**

An illustration from the 14th-century *Complete Instructions in the Practices of Military Art* shows the cavalry of the Mamluks—the dynasty that ruled over Egypt and Syria from 1250 to 1517.

67

The number of years that the papacy was based in the French city of Avignon.





1368

**1368**  
The Black Death has, by now, killed more than one-third of Europe's population. In China, rebel leader Zhu Yuanzhang captures Beijing from the collapsing Mongol Yuan Dynasty, forcing them to retreat to the central Asian steppe; he takes power as Hongwu, first emperor of the new Ming Dynasty.

**1370**  
Timur the Lame (Tamberlane) wins control of the Chagatai Khanate; in the 35 years until his death in 1405, he will defeat forces of the Mamluk Dynasty in Egypt, the Delhi Sultanate in India, and the emergent Ottoman Empire, building a short-lived central Asian empire from his capital of Samarkand; the empire splits into warring factions after his death. Construction of the Bastille, a fortress in Paris, is begun; its function is to defend Paris from the approach of English forces during the Hundred Years' War.

**1371**  
An Ottoman army under the Sultan Murad I defeats Byzantine forces at the Battle of Maritsa and conquers most of the Balkans.

**1375**  
The Chimú take control of the Lambayeque Valley of northern Peru from their Late Sican neighbors.

**1378**  
The Catholic Church's Western Schism gets underway, with rival popes established in Rome and Avignon; it will not be healed until 1417.

**1380**  
Russia's Prince Dmitri defeats the forces of the Golden Horde at Kulikovo; although not decisive (Moscow will be sacked 2 years later), the battle marks a turning point in the struggle to free the country from Mongol rule.

◁ **The Basel Dance of Death**  
This 19th-century watercolor is a copy of a fresco in a Basel church that records death dancing with victims of the Black Death, the plague that ravaged Europe in the mid-14th century.



▷ **Aztec vase**

This polychrome ceramic vase depicting Tlaloc, god of rain, is from the Main Temple of Tenochtitlán—a settlement that grew into the largest and most powerful city in Mesoamerica in the 15th century.



1440

**1381**

In England, the Peasants' Revolt against serfdom and high taxes is suppressed. Theologian John Wycliffe translates the Bible into English.

**1382**

In Egypt, the ruling Bahri Mamluks are succeeded by the Burji Dynasty, another group of Mamluks.

**1386**

Foundation of the University of Heidelberg, the oldest such institution in Germany. Construction begins on Milan's cathedral; it is not completed for another 500 years.

**1386–1400**

Geoffrey Chaucer writes the *Canterbury Tales*, a long poem in Middle English that follows the journey of a group of pilgrims from London to St. Thomas Becket's shrine at Canterbury Cathedral. The story becomes very popular in its time.

**1387**

After resisting attempts at forcible conversion for more than a century, Lithuania, Europe's last pagan realm, voluntarily accepts Christianity.

**1389**

Invading Ottoman forces defeat a Serbian army at Kosovo, reducing Serbia to vassal status in the following years.

**1396**

The Ottomans defeat a crusader army raised from across Europe at Nicopolis in Bulgaria, putting an end to the Second Bulgarian Empire.

**1397**

The Kalmar Union unites the Swedish, Norwegian, and Danish crowns in an attempt to counter the growing power of the Germanic Hanseatic League. In Italy, the Medici Bank is founded in Florence; over the next century, it will become the largest financial institution in all of Europe.

**1398**

Timur defeats the army of the Delhi Sultanate and sacks Delhi, leaving it in ruins.

**c. 1400**

On the Malay Peninsula, Malacca is founded by Parameswara, the last Raja of Temasek (Singapore); over the ensuing century, it becomes a major port for east-west trade.

**1402**

Timur takes Ankara, capturing the Ottoman Sultan Bayezid I, who dies in captivity the following year.

**1405**

The Ming Yongle Emperor dispatches the first of seven "treasure voyages" launched over the next 28 years; these maritime expeditions extend Chinese influence as far as east Africa and the Persian Gulf.

**1407–1424**

Chinese forces occupy Dai Ngu (modern-day Vietnam) and attempt to integrate it into their empire, but they are eventually beaten back by Le Loi, founder of the Le Dynasty.

**1415**

King John I captures Ceuta on the North African coast, making it Portugal's first African possession. In central Europe, the religious reformer Jan Hus is burned at the stake as a heretic, sparking the rebel Hussite movement. In France, English forces under Henry V win the Battle of Agincourt, gaining the initiative in the Hundred Years' War.

**1417**

The Council of Constance ends the Western Schism, in which two men simultaneously claimed to be pope.

**1419**

In the Defenestration of Prague, Hussite demonstrators throw seven city council members to their death out of a window of the city's New Town Hall, sparking the Hussite Wars.

**c. 1425**

Under the rule of Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy from 1419 to 1467, the Low Countries in general, and Bruges in particular, become centers of the arts; Bruges is home to Jan van Eyck, who paints the *Arnolfini Portrait* in 1434.

**1428**

In the Valley of Mexico, the Aztecs enter the Triple Alliance with the city-states of Texcoco and Tlacopan; they will come to dominate the coalition, which in time will form the basis of the Aztec Empire.

**1429**

In France, Joan of Arc, aged just 19, relieves the siege of Orleans; even though she is captured and burned at

the stake in 1431, her intervention proves a turning point for the French forces in the Hundred Years' War.

**1431**

Long in decline, Angkor is sacked by Ayutthaya raiders; by the end of the century, the former Khmer capital will be largely abandoned.

**1434**

Gil Eanes sails past Cape Bojador, opening up the coast of west Africa to exploration by Portuguese sailors; they benefit from the development of three-masted ships, as well as from the patronage of Prince Henry the Navigator.

**1436**

Completion of the dome of Florence Cathedral, engineered by Filippo Brunelleschi, concludes 140 years of construction.

**1438**

Pachacuti becomes ruler of the Incas; in his 34-year reign, he transforms a small kingdom in the valley of Cuzco into a major regional presence.

**1440**

Frederick III is the first Habsburg to be crowned Holy Roman Emperor; the title remains in the family thereafter until its abolition in 1806.

▷ **Joan of Arc**

This illustration shows the "Maid of Orléans," sword in hand. A hero to the French, she was canonized in 1920 by Pope Benedict XV.

**50,000,000** The estimated number of people killed by the Black Death in the 14th century.



# THE EARLY MODERN WORLD 1450–1700

## 1450

### c. 1450–1629

The Mwene Mutapa Empire dominates southeast Africa from its capital in Zimbabwe. Rich in gold, copper, and ivory, it controls the lucrative trade routes from the interior to the Arab kingdoms on the east coast, attracting Portuguese traders who settle in Mozambique from 1505.

### 1453

The Byzantine Empire falls when the Ottoman Turks capture Constantinople and expand their territory into the Balkans and Greece. The Hundred Years' War (1337–1453) ends when France recaptures Bordeaux, leaving Calais as England's only possession in France; the French retake it in 1558.

### 1454–1455

The Gutenberg Bible is printed in Mainz, Germany; it is the world's first mass-produced book and the first major book to be produced on a printing press with movable metal type.

### 1455–1485

The Wars of the Roses: civil war ensues as the rival Plantagenet houses of Lancaster and York (symbolized respectively by a red and a white rose) vie for the English throne; the dynastic struggle ends when Henry Tudor seizes the throne as Henry VII, founding the Tudor Dynasty.

### 1462–1505

Ivan III (the Great), Grand Prince of Muscovy, consolidates and triples the extent of his domain; he breaks the power of the Golden Horde, which had dominated eastern Europe for 200 years.

### 1467–1477

The Onin War leads to a century of civil strife—the Warring States period—as Japan's regional magnates (daimyo) seek to destroy their rivals.

### 1468

The Songhai Empire under Sonni Ali annexes the city of Timbuktu and the remnants of the Mali Empire, creating a vast empire and becoming the leading power in west Africa.

### 1469

Isabella of Castile marries Ferdinand of Aragon, creating a Christian Spain that dominates 16th-century Europe. Birth of Niccolò Machiavelli, Italian diplomat and philosopher, who argues in *The Prince* (1532) that the state should promote the common good, irrespective of any moral evaluation of its acts.

### c. 1470

The Chimor kingdom of Peru's Chimú people, famous for its metalwork, textiles, and pottery, is conquered by the Inca king Pachacuti; the Inca Empire extends about 2,500 miles (c. 4,000 km).



#### ▷ Chimor ceremonial knife

This gold knife is adorned with an image of Naymlap, legendary founder of the Sican civilization that preceded the Chimor kingdom in coastal Peru; the Chimor fell to the Inca from around 1470.

## 180

The print run of the Gutenberg Bible. Only 21 complete copies are known to exist today.

### 1473

The Aztec emperor Axayacatl conquers the city-state of Tlatelolco; he expands and consolidates the Aztec Empire.

### 1477

Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, dies; his territories are split between the Austrian Habsburg Empire and the Kingdom of France, but disputes over them continue for centuries.

### 1482

Portugal builds São Jorge da Mina (Elmina Castle) on the Gold Coast, giving Europe its first settlement in sub-Saharan Africa and allowing Portugal to monopolize west Africa's gold trade. Sandro Botticelli paints *Primavera* (Spring), a masterpiece of the Italian Renaissance.

### 1487

The Aztec Great Temple in Tenochtitlán is rebuilt for the sixth time; it opens with the ritual sacrifice of up to 5,000 people.

### 1488

Portuguese navigator Bartolomeu Dias becomes the first European to round the Cape of Good Hope at the tip of southern Africa; his expedition opens the sea route to India via the Atlantic and Indian Oceans.

### 1492

The Reconquista of Spain is completed by the capture of Granada, the last Moorish territory in Spain; Muslims and Jews are expelled from Spain. Supported by the Spanish crown, Genoese explorer Christopher

Columbus crosses the Atlantic, believing he can reach China and the East Indies; instead, he lands in the West Indies and "discovers" the New World. Martin of Bohemia creates the oldest surviving globe, the *Erdapfel* ("Earth apple"); the Americas are not shown.

### 1494

The Treaty of Tordesillas settles a dispute between Spain and Portugal over New World discoveries. Charles VIII of France claims Naples, sparking the Italian Wars (1494–1559) between France and Spain over control of Italy.

### 1497

Under the commission of Henry VII of England, Venetian navigator John Cabot sails from Bristol in search of Asia; instead, he discovers the mainland of North America, paving the way for the English exploration and settlement of the continent.

### 1497–1498

Portugal's Vasco da Gama is the first European to reach India via the Cape of Good Hope; his route transforms trade between Europe and Asia.

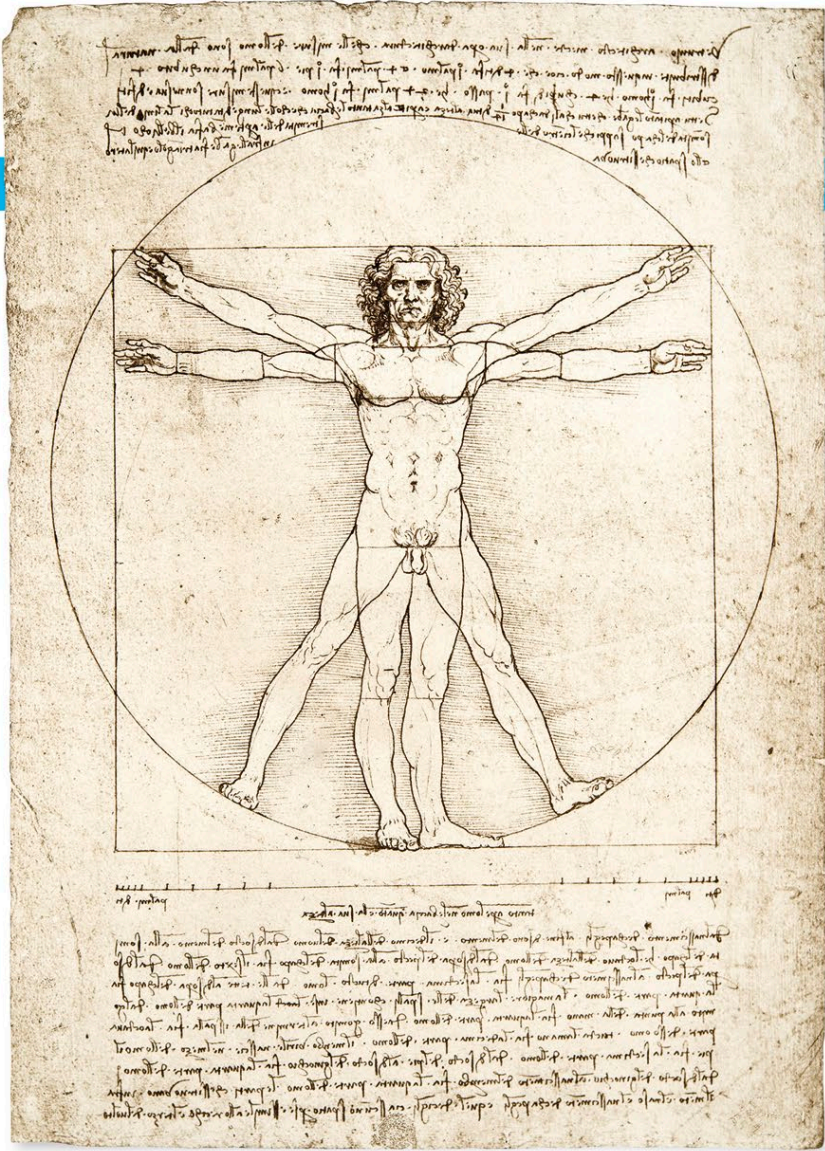
### 1498

Columbus reaches South America on his third voyage to the New World, thereby discovering a new continent.

### 1500

Leading a fleet of 13 ships into the western Atlantic Ocean, Pedro Álvares Cabral sights Brazil and claims it for Portugal. Spanish navigator Vicente Yáñez Pinzón discovers the mouth of





◁ **Vitruvian Man**

This ink drawing was made around 1490 by Leonardo da Vinci to illustrate the perfect geometry of human proportions. The artist went on to create the *Mona Lisa* in 1503–1506.

1529

the Amazon River. New Zealand's Maori Culture enters its classic period, characterized by finely made bone tools and weapons, elaborate wood carvings, textiles, tattoos, some of the biggest war canoes ever built, and a move away from nomadism toward settlement in large hilltop forts and earthworks; this society is only disrupted by the introduction of metal technologies by Europeans arriving in 1642.

**1501**

Ismail I becomes Shah of Persia and founds the Safavid Dynasty, which rules Iran for over 200 years; he seizes Baghdad, makes Isfahan his capital, and extends the eastern frontier of the empire to Afghanistan and the edge of the Mughal Empire.

**1501–1502**

Florentine explorer Amerigo Vespucci reaches the coast of Brazil and continues southward to discover that Columbus had not reached the eastern edge of Asia, but a separate continent. In 1507, cartographer Martin Waldseemüller names it America, after Vespucci.

**1502**

The slave trade between Europe, west Africa, and the Americas begins with a shipment of African slaves sent to Cuba to work in the Spanish settlements.

**1503–1506**

Leonardo da Vinci paints the *Mona Lisa*, one of the most famous works of the Renaissance; Michelangelo finishes his statue of David.

**1510–1511**

Afonso de Albuquerque conquers Goa and captures Malacca, laying the foundations of Portuguese hegemony in maritime Southeast Asia.

**1513**

Spain makes first contact with mainland North America when Juan Ponce de León reaches Florida. He is the first to encounter and describe the Gulf Stream, a powerful current important for ships navigating the Atlantic.

**1514**

Ottoman forces crush the Safavid Persians at the Battle of Chaldiran, northwest Iran; Sultan Selim I then annexes eastern Anatolia and northern Mesopotamia and conquers large territories in Syria and Egypt, securing almost all the Muslim holy places in southwest Asia.

**1517**

The Reformation begins when the German monk and theologian Martin Luther publishes his *Ninety-five Theses* in Wittenberg. These challenge the authority of the pope, sparking a revolt that leads to a permanent split between Catholics and Protestants.

**1519**

Spanish explorer Hernán Cortés lands in Mexico; he captures the Aztec capital Tenochtitlán with the help of Indian allies in 1521; Spain begins its domination of Central America. Charles I, the Habsburg king of Spain, is elected Holy Roman Emperor as Charles V.

**1520**

Aztec populations crash when Europeans bring smallpox to the Americas; in the next 100 years, around 20 million people, or 90 percent of the population of the New World, are killed by diseases from Europe.

**1522**

Financed by King Charles I of Spain to find a navigable route around the tip of South America to the Spice Islands (Maluku Islands), Portuguese explorer Ferdinand Magellan completes the first circumnavigation of the globe, though he dies during the voyage.

**1526**

Babur, a descendent of Mongol warlord Timur, founds the Mughal Empire in northern India; he defeats the Afghan sultan of Delhi, Ibrahim Lodi, and ushers in a new era of order, prosperity, and artistic achievement.

**1527**

Charles V's imperial troops sack Rome, crushing the papal Holy League and bringing Italy under Spanish rule. In South America, a smallpox epidemic devastates the Inca people of Cuzco.

**1529**

The Peace of Cambrai provides a break in the Italian Wars; France relinquishes its rights in Italy, Flanders, and Artois; the Holy Roman Emperor, Charles V, renounces his claims to Burgundy. In the Adal Sultanate (present-day Somalia), the imam and general Ahmad ibn Ghazi leads a rebellion against the Ethiopian Christian Empire.



▷ **Emperor Babur**

This detail from an illustration in *Baburnama* (the autobiography of Babur) shows the great Mughal emperor in his camp on his way to conquer Kabul around 1526.



## 1529–1593

## 1529–1566

The failed siege of Vienna by the Ottoman sultan Suleiman the Magnificent in 1529 stops the advance of the Ottoman Empire in central Europe. The reign of the sultan is marked by an artistic and cultural revival, advances in the law, and the expansion of Ottoman sovereignty in the Middle East and North Africa.

## 1531–1533

Spanish conquistador Francisco Pizarro sails from Panama to conquer Peru; in 1533, he captures, ransoms, and executes the Inca emperor Atahualpa, then conquers the Inca capital, Cuzco.

## 1534

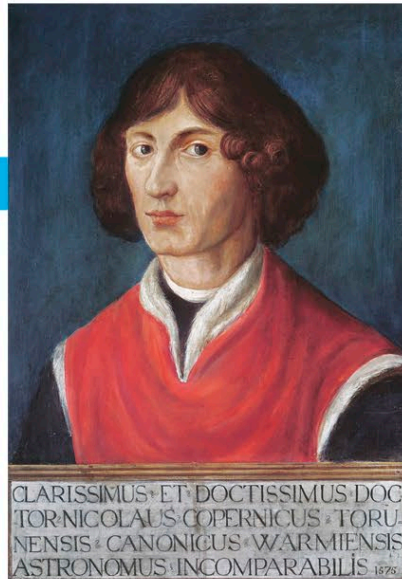
Ignatius Loyola founds the Jesuits, a Catholic missionary order. Henry VIII of England puts himself at the head of the Church of England, after the pope refuses to allow him to divorce his first wife, Katherine of Aragon. Jacques Cartier explores Newfoundland and the Gulf of St. Lawrence, preparing the way for the French colonization of Canada.

## 1536

The Act of Union formally unites Wales and England. Henry VIII executes his second wife, Anne Boleyn; he starts the dissolution of the monasteries in order to seize their wealth and suppress opposition to the Church of England.

60

The percentage of world silver production coming from Potosí, Bolivia, in the late 16th century.



## 1537

Jane Seymour gives birth to Henry VIII's long-awaited male heir (the future Edward VI).

## 1541

Francis Xavier leads a Jesuit mission to Southeast Asia that reaches Goa, the Spice Islands, China, and Japan. The Protestant reformer John Calvin settles in Geneva and steers the city toward a strict Christian rule.

## 1543

Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus publishes *On the Revolutions of the Heavenly Spheres*, outlining his theory that Earth revolves around the Sun. Andreas Vesalius's *On the Fabric of the Human Body* provides the foundation of modern medicine through its use of evidence provided by human dissection.

## 1545–1563

The Council of Trent instigates the Counter-Reformation in response to the threat from Protestantism, agreeing to reform and remodel the Catholic Church. The Spanish discover huge silver deposits in Potosí, Bolivia, much of which is minted into coins known as “pieces of eight.”

## 1547

Ivan IV, Grand Prince of Moscow, is proclaimed czar of Russia. Under his rule, Russia expands east into Siberia and south and takes control of

## ◁ Nicolaus Copernicus

This 16th-century oil portrait shows the Polish astronomer, whose work in 1543 suggested that Earth revolved around the Sun rather than vice-versa, as under the previous Ptolemaic system.

the trade routes to Central Asia; he destroys the Russian *boyars* (hereditary nobility) in his attempt to centralize Russia, earning himself the epithet “the Terrible.”

## 1550

Jesuits reach Brazil and go on to create a network of mission villages, known as *reducciones*, which act as a buffer between Spanish and Portuguese territories in South America.

## 1552–1555

The Holy Roman Emperor, Charles V, is driven out of Germany by Henri II of France and Maurice of Saxony; he only just evades capture, but is forced to agree to the Peace of Augsburg, which allows German princes to adopt either Lutheranism or Catholicism as the official faith of their state.

## 1556

Akbar succeeds his father Humayun as Mughal emperor in India at age 14; he rules for

nearly 50 years, expanding Mughal power and presiding over a time of cordial Hindu–Muslim relations.

## 1558

Elizabeth I, the daughter of Henry VIII and Anne Boleyn, becomes Queen of England; she rules until 1603.

## 1561

St. Basil's Cathedral in Moscow's Red Square is consecrated. It is the city's tallest building.

## 1565

Spain founds its first colony in the Philippines on Cebu Island.

## 1568–1648

In the Dutch Revolt, seven northern, predominantly Protestant provinces of the Low Countries rebel against the rule of the Catholic King Philip II of Spain. The United Provinces assert their independence, becoming the Dutch Republic in 1588; the southern provinces remain under Spanish rule.



## ▷ St. Basil's Cathedral, Moscow

This iconic church in Red Square was consecrated in 1561. It was confiscated by the Soviet State in 1923 and converted into a museum.



▷ **Toyotomi Hideyoshi**

Hideyoshi, pictured here around 1600, rose through the ranks of the army and eventually took control of the military, unifying Japan in 1591 after centuries of civil strife.

**1569**

Flemish cartographer Gerardus Mercator creates the first world map to reflect the true compass bearing of every landmass; his projection remains widely used.

**1570**

The Vijayanagar Empire in southern India goes into decline after the Battle of Talikota; it finally collapses in 1646.

**1571**

Fought in the waters off southwestern Greece, the naval Battle of Lepanto is the last major battle between galley ships; it gives the forces of the Christian Holy League their first victory against the Ottoman Turks, halting Ottoman expansion in the Mediterranean.

**1572**

More than 3,000 Protestant Huguenots are massacred in Paris on August 24, and up to 20,000 are killed across France

**1580**

A Spanish force claims the Portuguese crown for Philip II of Spain following the death of the young king Sebastian of Portugal in battle against Morocco; Spain becomes a formidable power.

**1585**

Spain receives the first commercial shipment of cacao beans from the New World; Europe soon acquires a taste for chocolate. England's first colony in North America is founded by Sir Walter Raleigh on Roanoke Island; colonists arrive in 1587 but it is abandoned in 1590. It is known as the Lost Colony.

**1587**

Elizabeth I sends Francis Drake to raid Portuguese and Spanish ships and ports; his fleet enters Cadiz harbor, southern Spain, and destroys 30 Spanish ships and thousands of tons of supplies.

Portuguese, and Mughals; creates a beautiful new capital in Isfahan; and encourages trade with Dutch and English merchants, while carpet weaving becomes a national industry.

**1591**

The Songhai Empire in the western Sahel enters a period of decline after the death of Askia Daud. Toyotomi Hideyoshi unifies all of Japan under his authority; he moves his power base to Edo (Tokyo) and bans Christianity.

**1589**

The world's first industrial machine is designed and built by English clergyman William Lee; its function is to knit stockings.

**1590**

The Treaty of Constantinople ends the Ottoman-Safavid War; Persia accepts the Ottoman frontiers, which extend to the Caucasus and the Caspian Sea.

**c. 1590**

Dutch eyewear-maker Zacharias Janssen creates the first compound optical microscope.

**1592**

Japan invades Korea but is kept at bay by the Korean fleet and intervention by China; Japan makes several more attempts over the following years.

**1593–1606**

Habsburgs and Ottomans clash in Hungary and the Balkans. A 13-year-long conflict is fought over territories in Transylvania, Moldavia, and Wallachia; the war—often called The Long Turkish War—costs numerous lives but is ultimately indecisive.

*"The advantage of time and place in all practical actions is half a victory ..."*

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, 1588

in the following weeks. It is the worst atrocity in the French Wars of Religion, a 36-year-long conflict between Roman Catholics and Huguenots, which claims an estimated 3 million lives.

**1573**

Oda Nobunaga overthrows the Ashikaga shogunate (1338–1573) and unites half of Japan under his rule.

**1576**

At the Battle of Rajmahal, Mughal forces defeat the Sultanate of Bengal in north India and annex the region. The last Sultan of Bengal, Daud Khan Karrani, is captured and executed.

**1588**

The Spanish Armada, under the command of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, sets out to conquer England for Philip II and the Roman church. It is defeated by terrible weather and the superior tactics and technology of the English fleet, led by Lord Charles Howard and Sir Francis Drake.

**1588–1629**

Shah Abbas I ("the Great") rules Safavid Persia. The kingdom he inherits is riven by internal disputes and beset by foreign enemies. Abbas, however, restores Persia to formidable power; regains territory from the Ottomans,

**130** The number of ships in the Spanish Armada. They carried more than 30,000 men.



## ▷ Japanese gold koban

Oval coins made from gold and silver were used under the Tokugawa shogunate, which began around 1603 and lasted until the Boshin War of 1868–1888.



## 1597–1631

## c. 1597

The first edition of Shakespeare's tragic romance *Romeo and Juliet* is published in two quarto editions. It is likely that the play was written in 1590–1595.

## 1598

The Edict of Nantes marks the end of the French Wars of Religion (1562–1598); it allows the Calvinist Protestants (Huguenots) to practice their religion freely and awards them substantial rights. Henri IV seeks to heal the religious divisions in France by uniting the country in a war against Spain.

## 1600

Tokugawa Ieyasu wins the Battle of Sekigahara to gain control of Japan; the Tokugawa shogunate rules Japan in the Edo Period (1603–1868), an isolationist era in which European missions are violently suppressed. The English East India Company is granted a Royal Charter for trade in the East Indies; it goes on to gain control of substantial areas in India and China and becomes a formidable force in the British Empire. The Yoruba kingdom of Oyo in southern Nigeria develops into one of the most powerful empires in the region.

## 1602

The Dutch East India Company is founded and granted a tax-free monopoly of Asian trade; it forces the Portuguese out of the Spice Islands in 1605 and creates a powerful trading empire that dominates world trade for the next two centuries.

## 1603

James VI of Scotland succeeds Elizabeth I as James I, uniting the crowns of England and Scotland.

## 1604

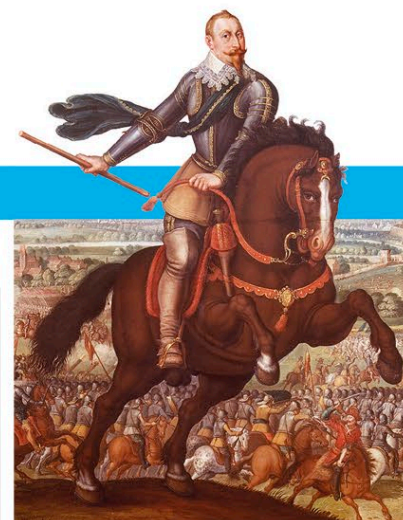
James VI of Scotland (also James I of England) commissions the Authorized Version of the Bible, which remains one of the world's most used translations of the work. Italian scientist Galileo Galilei observes a supernova and concludes that the universe is able to change.





▷ **King Gustavus Adolphus**

This 17th-century painting by Strasbourg-born painter Johann Walter shows Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden at the battle of Breitenfeld in 1631. The king died in battle the following year.

**1606**

Portuguese (or Galician) navigator Luís Vaez de Torres is the first European to sight Australia. While searching for new trading islands in the east (particularly for the “great land of New Guinea”) the Dutch navigator Willem Janszoon lands on the north Australian coast, near what is now the town of Weipa.

**1607**

The Virginia Company of London establishes the first permanent English settlement in North America in Jamestown, Virginia.

**1608**

Dutch eyewear-makers invent the telescope, which is used by Galileo Galilei in systematic observations of the night sky; he observes the Milky Way, the Moon, and Jupiter’s moons orbiting the planet—findings that later challenge the model of the Universe. Quebec is founded in New France, Canada, by French explorer and cartographer Samuel de Champlain; European demand for beaver and other exotic animal pelts drives French, Dutch, and British expeditions across North America.

**1609–1619**

German astronomer Johannes Kepler publishes his laws of planetary motion, describing the planets’ elliptical orbits around the Sun.

**1612**

Russia repulses Polish invaders in the Battle of Moscow. The first Romanov czar, Mikhail, is elected in 1613, ending the 15-year interregnum known as the Time of Troubles.

**1616**

Prominent Manchu chieftain Nurhaci claims the title Great Jin (Khan) of China and declares war on Ming rule in 1618; his descendants found the Qing Dynasty in 1644.

**1618**

Bohemia’s Protestants revolt against Habsburg rule, igniting the Thirty Years’ War, which develops from a religious war into a destructive conflict between the major powers of Europe and claims the lives of 8 million people. Jamestown in Virginia receives its first shipment of African slaves.

**1620**

The Pilgrim Fathers—a group of Puritan colonists—sail from Plymouth, England, aboard the *Mayflower*. They arrive near Boston in November; after Native Americans help them survive the winter, they found the Plymouth Colony.

**1621**

The settlers from the *Mayflower* celebrate their first harvest in America by eating turkey with the local natives.

**1622**

Algonquian-speaking Native Americans of the Powhatan Confederacy attack the English colony at Jamestown; more than 300 settlers die.

**1624**

Cardinal Richelieu becomes King Louis XIII of France’s chief minister; he is set on destroying the Huguenots, the power of the French nobles, and the military might of the Habsburgs.

**1625**

The Dutch found the colony of New Amsterdam (modern New York); they pay the Lenape tribe just 60 guilders (around \$1,000) for Manhattan Island.

**1628–1629**

The English parliament’s Petition of Right gives English citizens the right to be protected from overreaches in royal authority; it is one of several measures designed to curb royal power. King Charles dismisses the English parliament in 1629 and rules without it for 11 years.

**1631**

Sweden’s king, Gustavus Adolphus, enters the Thirty Years’ War and crushes the army of the Holy Roman Emperor.



**102** The number of passengers aboard the *Mayflower* on its voyage across the Atlantic.

◁ **Return to Amsterdam**

This 1599 painting by Hendrick Cornelisz Vroom depicts the second of several Dutch voyages made to the east in search of trade before the formation of the Dutch East India Company in 1602.





◁ **English Civil War helmet**  
Lobster-tailed helmets were worn by soldiers on both sides during the English Civil War (1642–1651).

1632

19

The number of years taken to complete the construction of the Taj Mahal in Agra.

**1632**

Two of the 17th century's greatest thinkers are born: the Dutch philosopher Baruch Spinoza (1632–1677), whose rationalist approach lays the foundations for the Enlightenment; and Englishman John Locke (1632–1704), whose political liberalism influences both the Enlightenment and the Constitution of the United States.

**1633**

In Japan, the Shogun Tokugawa Iemitsu pursues isolationist policies. He forbids all travel abroad, except for highly restricted voyages by ships to China and Korea; books from abroad are banned; and overseas traders are expelled from the country (except for the Dutch, who are allowed to retain a base near Nagasaki). This period of Japanese isolation will last until 1853. In the Mughal Empire, Shah Jahan ends the tradition of religious tolerance by ordering the destruction of all recently built Hindu temples.

**1633–1637**

Tulip mania in Holland provides the first example of an economic bubble; prices for tulip bulbs rise dramatically before collapsing, bankrupting many investors.

**1634**

Work begins on the Taj Mahal, a huge marble mausoleum on the bank of the river Yamuna in Agra. It is commissioned by Shah Jahan in memory of his wife Mumtaz Mahal and is completed in 1653.

**1635**

France enters the Thirty Years' War against Habsburg Spain in 1635 and the Holy Roman Empire in 1636.

**1636**

The first institute for advanced learning in North America is founded in Cambridge, Massachusetts. Two years later it is given the name Harvard College in honor of the Reverend John Harvard, a prominent benefactor.

**1638**

The Ottomans under sultan Murad IV retake Baghdad from the Safavids and are granted Mesopotamia by the Treaty of Qasr-i-Shirin in 1639, ending the Ottoman-Safavid conflict. Galileo formulates the law of falling bodies, which states that bodies of the same material falling through the same medium go at the same speed, regardless of mass.

**1642**

Dutchman Abel Tasman claims Tasmania for the Dutch, but Maori warriors prevent him from claiming New Zealand. Dutch artist Rembrandt van Rijn paints *The Night Watch*.

**1644–1651**

Charles I of England's insistence on the "Divine Right" of kings to rule without consulting Parliament triggers the British Civil Wars; Parliamentarians (Roundheads) are set against Royalists

(Cavaliers); Charles is convicted of treason for fighting a war against Parliament and beheaded in 1649; Oliver Cromwell heads the new English Commonwealth, and in 1651 his New Model Army defeats Charles's son (Charles II) at Worcester, ending the wars.

**1644**

China's Ming Dynasty falls to the Manchus, who install the first Qing emperor in Beijing and gain control of all China by 1681.

▷ **Louis XIV**

This 1701 painting shows France's "Sun King," who was crowned in 1654 and took direct rule over France in 1661 after the death of his Chief Minister.



▷ **Emperor Aurangzeb**

This 17th-century painting depicts the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb, who ruled from 1658, being carried on a palanquin, accompanied by a royal hunting party.



1673

**1644–1647**

Witchfinder General Matthew Hopkins zealously examines, tortures, and executes hundreds of people accused of witchcraft in the east of England.

**1647–1648**

The French physicist Blaise Pascal demonstrates the existence of atmospheric pressure and shows that it decreases at higher altitudes.

**1648**

The Peace of Westphalia brings an end to the Thirty Years' War—a turbulent period of European history—but fatally undermines the authority of the Holy Roman Emperor.

**1648–1653**

Civil war (the Fronde rebellion) breaks out in France after years of war and peasant uprisings; the monarchy survives, but the protests against royal power are a sign of things to come.

**1652**

The Dutch East India Company founds Cape Town, South Africa, as a resupply port for company ships trading with Asia. The first of three Anglo-Dutch naval wars (1652–1654, 1665–1667, and 1672–1674) breaks out over control of the seas and shipborne trade.

**1656**

Oliver Cromwell petitions for Jews to be allowed to return to England; they had been expelled more than 350 years earlier under King Edward I following their demonization as anti-Christian murderers and moneylenders.

**1658**

Cromwell's reconquest of Ireland and the subsequent "Plantation" (the confiscation of territory and its granting to "Planters") sees two-thirds of Irish land in English or Scottish hands; it creates a long-lasting hatred of the English in Ireland.

**1658–1707**

The Mughal Empire reaches its greatest extent during the reign of Aurangzeb; he rules over approximately 160 million subjects and controls all but the tip of India's subcontinent.

**1659**

The Franco-Spanish War ends with the Peace of the Pyrenees; France takes Spain's place as Europe's major power, a position embodied by Louis XIV ("the Sun King") and his lavish court.

**1660**

The English Restoration returns Charles II to the throne following the collapse of the Commonwealth. The Royal Society is founded in London by royal charter in 1662; dedicated to advancing the understanding of science, it is the oldest scientific society in the world still in existence.

**1661**

Louis XIV assumes personal rule of France on the death of Cardinal Mazarin, declaring he will rule without a chief minister. Italian physician Marcello Malpighi's rese into the tissues of the human body provides the foundation for the science of microscopic anatomy, paving the way for advances in physiology, embryology, and practical medicine.

**1664**

The Second Anglo-Dutch War begins; the following year, the Dutch director-general of New Amsterdam peacefully yields the colony to the British.

**1668**

Spain finally recognizes Portuguese independence. The War of Devolution (1667–1668) ends with the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle; a triple alliance of England, Sweden, and the Dutch forces France to abandon its claims to the Spanish Netherlands. Charles II receives Bombay from his Portuguese bride and leases it to the English East India Company. The Bank of Sweden is founded; it is the world's oldest central bank.

**c. 1670**

The Empire of Mali collapses, after dominating west Africa for 400 years.

**1672**

English physicist Isaac Newton publishes the results of his experiments into the nature of light.

**1672–1678**

The Franco-Dutch War begins as Louis XIV invades the Dutch Republic with the support of England and Sweden;

*"The State, in choosing men to serve it, takes no notice of their opinions. If they be willing faithfully to serve it, that satisfies."*

OLIVER CROMWELL, 1644

**1665**

The Kingdom of Kongo in central Africa is plunged into 40 years of civil war. English physicist Robert Hooke provides a name for the smallest units of life that he observes through his compound microscope, calling them "cells."

**1666**

The Great Fire of London ravages the city for 4 days, destroying more than 13,000 houses and 87 churches.

the war ends with the Dutch losing New Amsterdam (New York) to England (for a second time) and France gaining territories in the Spanish Netherlands.

**1673**

Louis Joliet and Jacques Marquette confirm that the Mississippi reaches the Gulf of Mexico, not the Pacific. Gabriel Arthur crosses the Appalachians via the Cumberland Gap—the main route west in the 18th century.

**72** The number of years that Louis XIV occupied the French throne—the longest reign of any European monarch.



## 1674–1699

**6'8"** (200 cm). The exceptional height of Peter I (the Great), Czar of All Russia.

**c. 1674**

Dutch scientist and businessman Antonie van Leeuwenhoek is the first to observe and describe microbes—including protists and bacteria—through a microscope. He calls these tiny organisms “animalcules.”

**1675–1676**

In North America, Metacomb (“King Philip”), chief of the Wampanoag, together with Mohawks of the Iroquois Confederacy, attacks English settlements in New England; the Treaty of Casco agrees to provide tribes with an annual measure of corn for each family settled on Native American lands.

**1675–1711**

St. Paul’s Cathedral in London is rebuilt to a design by architect Christopher Wren, following the Great Fire of 1666.

**1678**

John Bunyan writes his Christian allegory, *The Pilgrim’s Progress*.

**1680**

The Pueblo people in the colony of New Mexico rebel against the Spanish after the colonizers attempt to crush local religious practices and force Catholicism on them. The Spanish retreat but, led by Pedro de Vargas, return to reconquer the Pueblos in 1692.

**1682**

English Quaker and philosopher William Penn founds Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. Robert de La Salle reaches the mouth of the Mississippi River and claims Louisiana for France. Louis XIV moves the French court from Paris to the palace at Versailles, which he enlarges into one of the largest residences in the world, as a symbol of his absolute power as French monarch. Peter I (“the Great”) becomes Czar of All Russia; determined to modernize and reshape Russia as a western European power, he builds a new capital at St. Petersburg, abolishes the titles of *boyars* (nobles), centralizes government, reforms Russian society, restructures the army, builds a navy, and vastly expands the empire.

**1683**

The Polish king Jan III Sobieski lifts the Ottoman siege of Vienna at the Battle of Kahlenberg; Ottoman power in the Balkans collapses, and Sobieski is hailed as the savior of Christendom. The Qing Empire conquers Taiwan, bringing it under Chinese rule.

**1685**

After almost a century of tolerance, the Edict of Fontainebleau—issued by Louis XIV—makes Protestantism illegal in France; thousands of Huguenots flee to England, the Dutch Republic, and Prussia.

**1686**

The League of Augsburg (or Grand Alliance) is formed by England, the United Provinces of the Netherlands, and the Austrian Habsburgs to block Louis XIV’s expansion plans in the Nine Years’ War (1688–1697).

**1687**

English physicist Isaac Newton publishes his three-volume work *Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica*, a cornerstone of scientific thought. In it, he states his universal law of gravity and his three laws of motion.

Bohne in 1690. Aphra Behn, one of England’s first professional writers, makes an early protest against slavery in her novel, *Oroonoko*. Explorer and navigator William Dampier is the first Englishman to visit Australia.

**1689**

The Treaty of Nerchinsk settles the border between China and Russia.

*“To explain all nature is too difficult a task for any one man or even for any one age. ‘Tis much better to do a little with certainty ...”*

ISAAC NEWTON, 1704

**1688**

In the Glorious Revolution, James II, the last Catholic king of England, Scotland, and Ireland, is overthrown by a union of English Parliamentarians and his own son-in-law, the Dutch prince William of Orange; William is then crowned William III and rules as joint monarch with his wife, Mary; James flees to France, lands in Ireland in 1689, and is defeated at the Battle of the

**1690**

The Qing Dynasty begins its conquest of Outer Mongolia (modern Mongolia); by the end of the 18th century, the Chinese empire has almost doubled in size.

**1692**

The city of Salem, Massachusetts is gripped by witchfinding hysteria; 20 people are convicted and executed for witchcraft.

▷ **Peter the Great**

This portrait was made in 1715 by the French artist Jean-Marc Nattier, while the Russian leader was staying in Amsterdam.

◁ **Newton's telescope**

This is a replica of the first reflecting telescope made by Sir Isaac Newton and shown to the Royal Society in 1668. It uses a concave mirror, rather than a lens, to gather light.



**1693**

A massive earthquake devastates Sicily, southern Italy, and Malta; as many as 60,000 people are killed. The first women's magazine in English, "The Ladies' Mercury," is published in London; it runs for only 4 weeks.

**1694**

The Bank of England is established; it becomes the central banker for England's private banks, transforming the country's ability to finance wars and imperial expansion.

**1696**

Having moved its main Bengal trading station to Calcutta in 1690, the English East India Company starts building a large base, Fort William, on the bank of the River Hooghly.

**1698**

English engineer Thomas Savery patents the first steam-powered engine, which he designs to pump water from mine workings and to towns and cities. He demonstrates the machine to the Royal Society in London the following year.

**1699**

In response to religious repression under the Mughals, Guru Gobind Singh introduces the five Ks, the five outward signs of Sikhism, and charges his followers with the mission to secure Sikh rule in the Punjab.

# 60,000

The number of people killed in the 1693 earthquake in southern Italy.

**▷ Emperor Kangxi**

Painted on silk, this portrait shows the Qing leader Kangxi, who greatly enlarged the empire from 1600 and encouraged the spread of Western education in China.





# REVOLUTION AND INDUSTRY 1700–1850

## 1700

### 1700–1721

A coalition led by Russia and including Poland and Denmark launches an attack on Sweden (the dominant power in the Baltic), beginning the Great Northern War; after 21 years of conflict, Sweden cedes the Baltic ports to Russia in the Treaty of Nystad and Russia emerges as a major power in the region.

as king of England, Scotland, and Ireland in place of William III and his wife Mary. This leads to the War of the Spanish Succession (1701–1714).

### 1704

The first edition of *The Boston News-Letter*, North America's oldest continuously published newspaper, is

*“Generally speaking, the errors in religion are dangerous; those in philosophy only ridiculous.”*

DAVID HUME, FROM A TREATISE OF HUMAN NATURE, 1738–1740

### 1700

The Spanish king, Charles II, bequeaths his territories to Philip of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV, the reigning French king; the rest of Europe is alarmed by the increase in French power.

### 1701

Jethro Tull invents the horse-drawn seed drill, an innovation in the Agricultural Revolution that raises British agricultural productivity in the 17th–19th centuries. Osei Tutu, ruler of Kumasi (in modern Ghana) leads the Asante confederation in west Africa to independence from the Denkyira nation; he takes the name Asantehene and uses his people's military prowess and the Atlantic coastal trade to triple the new state's territories and build a powerful empire.

### 1701

The English and Dutch ally to support Austria's claim to the Spanish throne and prevent unification of the French and Spanish thrones under the Bourbons Louis XIV and Philip of Anjou; Louis XIV sends an army to the Spanish Netherlands to defend them from the English and Dutch and recognizes James Francis Edward Stuart (the “Old Pretender”), son of the exiled James II,

published; it is subsidized and approved by the British governor. Boston emerges as the principal port for the Atlantic slave trade in the New World.

### 1705

British astronomer Edmond Halley is the first to predict a comet's return; when the comet returns exactly when he said it would, in 1758, it is named after him. The Husaynid Dynasty comes to power in Tunis, north Africa; it rules until 1957.

### 1707

Mughal India begins to decline following the death of the emperor Aurangzeb. The Acts of Union unite Scotland and England in the United Kingdom of Great Britain.

### 1709

Shipwrecked sailor Alexander Selkirk is discovered after 5 years alone on an island in the south Pacific; his story is probably one of the inspirations for Daniel Defoe's novel, *Robinson Crusoe*.

### 1712

British inventor Thomas Newcomen's improved version of Savery's steam engine is installed in a tin mine; Newcomen's engine was only bettered in 1775 by Thomas Watt's steam engine. Japan publishes its first encyclopedia, *Waka Sansai Zue*.

### 1713–1714

The Treaties of Utrecht (1713) and Rastatt (1714) end the War of the Spanish Succession and seek to balance power in Europe by separating the French and Spanish crowns; the Spanish Netherlands are ceded to Austria, and Britain receives Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, and Gibraltar.

### 1714

The Dutch-Polish scientific instrument maker Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit invents the mercury thermometer; he sets the interval between the freezing and boiling points of water as 180 degrees, with 0 degrees being the temperature of a mixture of ice, water, and ammonium chloride.

### 1715

Following the death of Queen Anne (r. 1702–1714), the British crown passes to the elector of Hannover, George I. The Jacobite Rebellion, a Scottish Catholic attempt to restore the Stuarts to the throne, fails; Prince James Francis Edward Stuart flees to France. Louis XIV dies after ruling France for 72 years.

### 1715–1717

The Spanish in Texas encourage the Yamasee and other tribes of Native Americans to attack the British colonists in South Carolina.

### 1717

Handel's *Water Music*, a masterpiece of the Baroque period, is performed for the first time, on the River Thames in London. English pirate Edward Teach, known as Blackbeard, begins plundering ships in the Caribbean; in 1718, his alliance of pirates blockades Charleston, South Carolina, and takes the crew and passengers of the *Crowley* hostage, demanding the payment of a ransom.

### 1720

The War of the Quadruple Alliance ends. Austria, Britain, the Dutch Republic (United Provinces), and France succeed in forcing Philip V of Spain to abandon his claim to Sicily and Sardinia; however, Spain regains territory in Pensacola, Florida, and in the north of Spain (from France), and Texas is confirmed as a Spanish possession. It becomes fashionable among young English noblemen to visit Italy on the Grand Tour. In Venice, the artist Canaletto finds customers for his views of the canals among the English tourists.

### 1720–1721

Qing warriors oust the Zunghar Mongols from Tibet; they install Kelzang Gyatso as the 7th Dalai Lama, and Tibet remains under Chinese protection until 1912.

### 1721

The Russian Senate and Synod proclaim Peter the Great Emperor of All the Russias; many of Europe's rulers fear he will assert his authority over them.

# 200,000

The number of slaves carried by British ships in the 1710s and 1720s.



#### ▷ Fahrenheit's thermometer

This 18th-century mercury thermometer is engraved with the Fahrenheit scale. On the reverse side is the signature of its inventor.





#### ◁ Piazza San Marco, Venice

This view, painted around 1730 by Antonio Canal, better known as Canaletto, was a favorite of young gentlemen taking the Grand Tour from the 1720s.

1740

Dutch explorer Jakob Roggeveen discovers Easter Island and explores some of the Samoan islands.

#### 1722

Ghilzai Afghans rout Persian forces outside Isfahan, take the city, and assume control of the Persian Empire; in 1729, the Safavid Shah Tahmasp II recovers Isfahan with the help of the Afsharid Persians led by Nader Shah.

#### 1724

The Kingdom of Dahomey in west Africa (now southern Benin) becomes the main supplier of slaves to European traders. Louis XIV's Code Noir, created for France's Caribbean territories, is introduced in Louisiana: it stipulates basic rights for slaves, but also legitimizes cruel punishments.

#### 1725

Italian composer Antonio Vivaldi publishes *The Four Seasons*. In China, the *Imperial Encyclopedia*—10,000 volumes in length—is completed.

#### 1727

Coffee begins to be cultivated in the Caribbean and South America. The Portuguese create the first coffee plantation in Brazil.

#### 1728

Hindu Marathas defeat the Nizam of Hyderabad in the Palkhed Campaign; the campaign establishes Maratha supremacy over the Deccan plateau in southern India. Russia commissions the Danish-born cartographer Vitus Bering to explore the Siberian coast; he navigates the strait (now called the Bering Strait) that separates Siberia from Alaska.

#### 1729

A rise in opium addiction prompts China to ban the sale and smoking of opium, which Britain is bringing from India to trade for Chinese goods; opium smugglers continue to cause problems for China into the 19th century.

#### 1730

The Arabian state of Oman drives the Portuguese from the Kenyan and Tanzanian coasts and expands its dominions in east Africa by gaining control of Zanzibar.

#### 1733

The last of the Thirteen Colonies established by Britain on North America's Atlantic coast is founded and named Georgia. In England, John Kay patents the flying shuttle for looms,

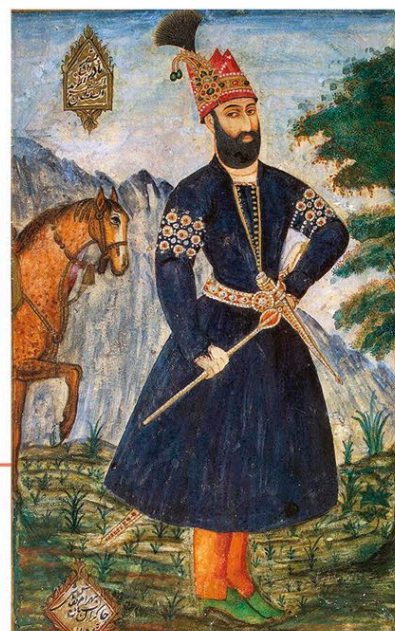
which revolutionizes the textile industry. Prussia's army becomes the fourth largest in Europe after King Frederick William I introduces military service.

#### 1735

English carpenter and clockmaker John Harrison creates the marine chronometer, a portable clock capable of keeping time at sea; it enables navigators to work out longitude at sea, considerably improving the safety of long-distance voyages.

#### 1735–1738

Swedish botanist Carl Linnaeus publishes *Systema Naturae* on taxonomy—the science of identifying, naming, and classifying organisms. In



#### ▷ Nader Shah

This contemporary painting depicts Nader Shah, the powerful Persian ruler whose military successes included the capture of Delhi in 1739.

1749, he outlines his system of binomial classification, which uses two Latin names to identify an organism uniquely.

#### 1736

Nader Shah deposes the last Safavid rulers in Persia and takes power himself; he founds the Afsharid Dynasty. French explorer and scientist Charles Marie de La Condamine sends samples of the flexible material, rubber, long-used by the Maya, to Paris.

#### 1737

The Marathas extend their control over northern India at the expense of the Mughal Empire.

#### 1738

David Hume, Scottish economist and empiricist, argues that there can be no knowledge beyond experience in his *Treatise on Human Nature*.

#### 1739

Nader Shah's Persian force occupies Delhi and carries off the riches of the Mughal Empire, including the Koh-i-Noor diamond; Persia now controls all land north and west of the Indus River. The Treaty of Belgrade ends the Austro-Turkish War (1737–1739) and stabilizes the Ottomans' position in the Balkans. French-Canadian brothers Pierre and Paul Mallet open up a route from the Mississippi River to Santa Fe (New Mexico) in the first known crossing by a European of North America's Great Plains. The Viceroyalty of New Granada is created from territory now occupied by Panama, Venezuela, Colombia, and Ecuador.

#### 1740

The rabbi Baal Shem Tov develops Hasidism in Poland; it is a mystical, revivalist Jewish movement that remains as an influential subgrouping within ultra-orthodox Judaism.



### ◀ *Messiah*, original score

Handel reportedly wrote the 259-page score of his great work in about 4 weeks in 1741; it was first performed in the following year.



## 1742

### 1742

German composer George Frederic Handel's Baroque masterpiece *Messiah* is performed for the first time, in Dublin; it has its London premiere almost a year later. George II personally commands a British army in battle (against the French, in the War of the Austrian Succession); he is the last British monarch ever to do so.

### 1743

In an attempt to reach the Pacific coast, French brothers Louis Joseph and Francois de La Vérendrye become the first Europeans to see the Rocky Mountains, in Wyoming.

### 1744

Muslim theologian Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab founds the Salafi movement, a conservative strand of Sunni Islam that advocates a return to fundamentals; he forms an alliance with the family of Muhammad ibn Saud that has lasted over 250 years in Saudi Arabia.

### 1745–1746

A second Jacobite rebellion again fails in its attempt to return the Stuarts to power in

Britain; the Scottish highlanders supporting the "Young Pretender" (Prince Charles Edward Stuart, or "Bonnie Prince Charlie") are massacred by British troops at Culloden.

### 1747

The murder of Nader Shah, weakens the Persian Empire; Ahmad Shah Durrani breaks with Persia and creates the Durrani Empire, the last Afghan empire, which is the precursor of the modern state of Afghanistan. In west Africa, the kingdom of Dahomey (within present-day Benin) is invaded by the Yoruba of the Oyo Empire and forced to pay tribute.

### 1748

The Afghans invade Punjab. The Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle ends the War of the Austrian Succession (1740–1748); Maria Theresa, daughter of Holy Roman Emperor Charles VI, is finally confirmed as heir to the Habsburg lands.

### 1749

The kingdom of Mysore rises to prominence in south India. British Lieutenant General Edward Cornwallis founds the town of Halifax in Nova Scotia.



### ▷ Benjamin Franklin

An engraving of the American inventor playfully references his 1752 experiments with lightning, suggesting a conductor in an umbrella.

### 1750

The Treaty of Madrid defines the boundary between Spanish and Portuguese colonies in the New World; it recognizes the extent of Portuguese settlement in Brazil.

### 1751–1772

French philosopher Denis Diderot publishes his *Encyclopédie*—a catalog of human knowledge, including science, philosophy, politics, and religion—with the intention of helping people to think for themselves; it is a defining work of the Enlightenment.

### 1752

Diplomat, writer, publisher, and scientist Benjamin Franklin invents the lightning rod; it is one of his many innovations, which also include the Franklin stove, bifocal glasses, swimming fins, and the urinary catheter.

### 1755

The Great Lisbon Earthquake—and the accompanying tsunami—almost destroy the Portuguese city. The earthquake kills 60,000–100,000 people, making it one of the deadliest in history.

### 1756–1763

Frederick the Great of Prussia marches into Saxony, beginning the Seven Years' War, in which Hanover, Britain, and Prussia clash with France, Austria, Russia, Saxony, Spain, and Sweden.

## 8.5

Estimated strength of the Great Lisbon Earthquake on the Richter Scale.

### 1757

Robert Clive ("Clive of India") wins Bengal for the British East India Company at the Battle of Plassey. Prussia wins control of Silesia from Austria at the Battle of Leuthen.

### 1757–1759

William Pitt (later called "the Elder" to distinguish him from his son, who was also a notable politician) becomes Secretary of State in Britain and is the architect of the conquest of French possessions around the world; Britain



### ▷ *An Incident in the Rebellion of 1745*

This painting by Anglo-Swiss artist David Morier depicts the charge of the highlanders against the British infantry at the Battle of Culloden.



1764

takes Fort Duquesne in Pennsylvania, Senegal in west Africa, and the French Caribbean island of Guadeloupe from France. In 1759, General Wolfe captures Quebec and much of French Canada for Britain.

### 1759

The French are defeated by an Anglo-Prussian force at Minden, north Germany; the succession of British victories over the French in the Seven Years' War is described as the *Annus Mirabilis* (year of miracles).

### 1760

Rebellion spreads after a group of slaves led by Takyi, an enslaved Fante chief from west Africa, overruns plantations in the British colony of Jamaica; it is months before the revolt is suppressed. China's Qing Empire extends into Mongolia after a series of campaigns launched by the Qianlong Emperor.

### 1761

In India, the Maratha Empire is defeated by Afghans. The British seize Pondicherry, destroying French power in India.

### 1762

Catherine the Great is proclaimed Empress of Russia; her reign is characterized by wide-ranging reform and territorial expansion. In his book, *The Social Contract*, the French political philosopher Jean-Jacques Rousseau questions the relationship between governments and the governed, attesting that "Man is born free, and everywhere he is in chains"; his writing exerts great influence on the Enlightenment, the French Revolution, and the Romantic movement.

### 1763

The Seven Years' War ends with British naval supremacy asserted over France and Spain; taxes are raised to pay the national debt incurred in the war, fueling discontent in Britain and in its colonies. Rio de Janeiro becomes the capital of the State of Brazil, part of the Portuguese Empire.

### 1764

English weaver James Hargreaves invents the "Spinning Jenny," which increases cloth production eightfold.





## 1768

## 1768

Russia wins the right to free navigation in the Black Sea in the Russo–Turkish War. English explorer and navigator James Cook sails from Plymouth aboard the vessel *HMS Endeavour* in his first voyage to the Pacific; he reaches New Zealand in 1769 and charts its entire coastline; he reaches mainland Australia in 1770, names Botany Bay, and begins charting the east coast. In Egypt, Ali Bey al-Kabir deposes the Ottoman governor and invades Syria, briefly securing the independence of what had previously been the Mamluk sultanate; the Ottomans regain control by 1773. Spanish Franciscan friars begin building a chain of missions along the Californian coast, founding the main west coast cities in North America, including San Francisco and Los Angeles.

## 1769–1771

The Industrial Revolution begins when Scottish inventor James Watt patents his version of the steam engine and British industrialist and inventor Richard Arkwright opens the first factory—a water-powered textile mill. The Industrial Revolution transforms the



## ◀ Independence Hall

The Assembly Room in this building in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, is where the Declaration of Independence was adopted on July 4, 1776.

## 1775–1783

The Revolutionary War (also called the American War of Independence) begins with a skirmish at Lexington between British troops (known as “redcoats”) and local militiamen; George Washington is appointed commander-in-chief of the colonial forces. Britain’s George III rejects the colonies’ Olive Branch Petition and declares that the colonies are in revolt.

## 1776

The Declaration of Independence of the United States is signed on July 4; drafted by Thomas Jefferson, it asserts that all men are equal and have the right to “life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness,” but enslaved Africans are excluded.

global economy, replacing the rural agricultural economies that exist in many countries with ones based on manufactured goods made in factories clustered in cities.

## 1772

Austria, Prussia, and Russia partition Poland, taking around one-third of its land and half its population.

## 1773

Captain Cook, aboard *HMS Resolution*, circumnavigates the continent of Antarctica during his second voyage to the southern hemisphere. In America, merchants dump a valuable cargo of tea into Boston Harbor as a protest against British taxes and governance; the incident becomes known as the Boston Tea Party. Britain responds by issuing the “Intolerable Acts” (1774), authorizing punitive measures against the 13 colonies; the colonies respond by boycotting British goods and trade.

the Atlantic. Spain and the Dutch Republic support the American cause. Captain Cook is the first European to make contact with the Hawaiian Islands; he is killed there in a dispute over a boat. French chemist Antoine Lavoisier names oxygen and identifies its role in combustion.

## 1779

Boer (Dutch-speaking) settlers in South Africa clash with Xhosa tribes; it is the start of around 100 years of conflict between settlers and the indigenous peoples of the Eastern Cape.

## 1780–1782

Tupac Amaru II, a descendent of the last Inca ruler, leads around 75,000 Peruvian Indians and Creoles in an unsuccessful rebellion against Spanish colonial rule.

*“The God who gave us life gave us liberty at the same time; the hand of force may destroy, but cannot disjoin them.”*

THOMAS JEFFERSON, 1774

## 1777

In the Treaty of San Ildefonso, Spain retains Uruguay but cedes the Amazon basin to the Portuguese.

## 1778

France formally recognizes the United States and enters the Revolutionary War against the British, sending a fleet across

## 1780

In the US, Pennsylvania secures the freedom of children born to slaves in the state in the future; the model is slowly adopted in other northern states.

## 1781

George Washington and his French allies defeat the British at Yorktown, and British General Charles Cornwallis surrenders after this last major battle in the Revolutionary War. German philosopher Immanuel Kant publishes



## ▷ Shark-tooth knife

This ceremonial Maori knife was collected in New Zealand during one of Captain Cook’s voyages.



▷ *Dream of the Red Chamber*

This painting presents a scene from *Dream of the Red Chamber* (1791), one of China's Four Great Classical Novels.



# 17,000

The number of enemies of the French Revolution executed during the Reign of Terror.

his *Critique of Pure Reason*, a hugely influential attempt to answer the question, "What can we know?"

## 1782

The Treaty of Salbai ends the first of the three wars fought between the British East India Company and the Maratha Empire, ushering in a period of peace.

## 1783

Crimea is annexed by the Russian Empire under Catherine the Great. The first manned flight of a hot air balloon, designed by the Montgolfier brothers, is made in Paris. Britain recognizes American independence in the Treaty of Paris.

## 1784

The India Act allows the British East India Company to retain control of trade in India, but political matters are handled by three directors directly responsible to the British government.

## 1787

Sierra Leone, west Africa, is colonized by settlers who have freed themselves from slavery in America; the Society for the Abolition of the Slave Trade is founded in Britain. The US Constitution is drafted; it is ratified the following year. American inventor John Fitch runs trials of his steamboat on the Delaware River; he goes on to operate the first steamboat service in the US.

## 1788

The first convicts are transported to the British penal colony in Botany Bay, Australia; nearly 60,000 people settle in Australia over the next 50 years.

## 1789

George Washington becomes the first president of the United States. The French Revolution begins: the newly formed revolutionary National Assembly vows to produce a constitution; a Parisian mob storms the Bastille prison on July 14. Smallpox brought to Australia by the Europeans decimates the aboriginal population of Port Jackson, Botany Bay, and Broken Bay. Fletcher Christian leads a mutiny on HMS *Bounty*; Captain Bligh is cast adrift.

## 1790

Pemulwuy and his son Tedbury lead Aboriginal resistance around the Sydney area in Australia in a guerrilla campaign that lasts several years.

## 1791

Louis XVI attempts to flee Paris but is caught at Varennes; he is returned to the city and imprisoned in Tuileries Palace.

Amendments to the US Constitution included in the Bill of Rights include the freedom of religion. Cao Xueqin publishes his semiautobiographical work, *Dream of the Red Chamber*, which is considered one of China's Four Great Classical Novels (the others being *Romance of the Three Kingdoms*, *Journey to the West*, and *Water Margin*). Austrian composer Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart conducts the orchestra at the premiere of his opera *The Magic Flute* in Vienna.

## 1792

The French monarchy is abolished and the First French Republic declared. France declares war on Austria, Prussia, and Piedmont; fearful of the spread of revolution, the Netherlands, Spain, Austria, Prussia, Portugal, Sardinia, and Naples, and later Britain, form the First Coalition to fight France in a war that lasts until 1797.

## 1793

Louis XVI and his wife Marie Antoinette are executed in Paris; the Committee of Public Safety launches a "Reign of Terror" to eliminate enemies of the Revolution. American inventor Eli Whitney patents the cotton gin, which speeds up cotton processing and increases production in the American south. The Fugitive Slave Laws are passed in the United States; they allow southern slave owners to recover escaped slaves from northern states.

## 1794

France abolishes slavery in its colonies following the Haiti Revolution led by Toussaint Louverture.

## 1795

Following an unsuccessful uprising against Imperial Russia and the Kingdom of Prussia led by Tadeusz Kościuszko, Poland ceases to exist; its remaining territories are partitioned between Russia, Austria, and Prussia. The British seize the Cape Colony from the Dutch in South Africa.

## 1796

Edward Jenner pioneers the use of vaccines, inoculating a boy against smallpox by infecting him with the milder cowpox.

## 1796–1804

The White Lotus Rebellion in central China contributes to the decline of the Qing Dynasty. The White Lotus is a secretive political and religious movement with its roots in ancient Buddhist traditions.

# 10

The duration in minutes of the first flight ever made in a hot air balloon; it took place on September 19, 1783.



▷ **The Naked Maja**  
Painted by Goya in 1797–1800, *The Naked Maja* (and a clothed companion piece) were commissioned by Manuel Godoy, a royal minister.

1797

200

Years that Jane Austen's *Pride and Prejudice* has remained in print.

**1797–1800**

Spain's Francisco de Goya paints *The Naked Maja*; he is later brought before the Spanish Inquisition on a charge of moral depravity but escapes prosecution.

**1798**

In the Wexford uprising, the Society of United Irishmen challenges British rule in Ireland and seeks political reform. An alliance, led by Britain, Austria, and Russia, forms to fight against France; it leads to the War of the Second Coalition (1799–1802). The British navy under Horatio Nelson defeats the French fleet at the Battle of the Nile after a French army commanded by Napoleon Bonaparte invades Egypt.

**1799**

Napoleon overthrows the French Revolutionary Directory government

and makes himself First Consul. Britain defeats and partitions Mysore in southern India.

The Rosetta Stone is discovered by Napoleon's troops in Egypt; it holds the key to understanding Egyptian hieroglyphics.

**c. 1800**

Romanticism—which emphasizes inspiration, subjectivity, and the individual—emerges in Europe as an artistic, literary, and philosophical form in reaction to the rationalism of the 18th-century Enlightenment; German Romantic composer Ludwig van Beethoven finishes the *Moonlight Sonata* in 1801.

**1801**

The Act of Union links Britain and Ireland in a United Kingdom.

**1801–1804**

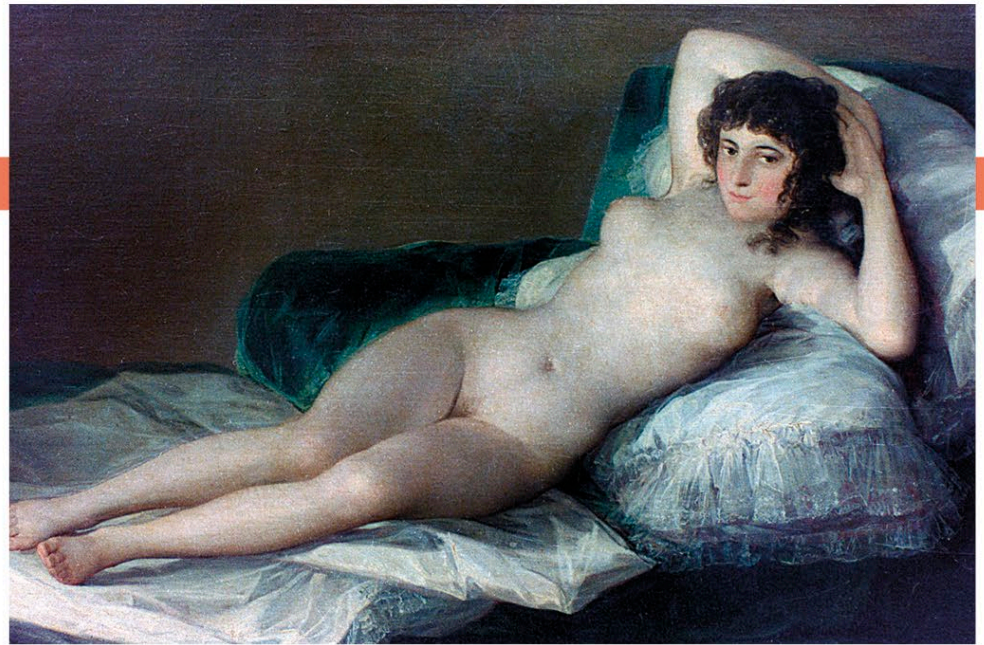
British mining engineer Richard Trevithick develops the first steam railway locomotive. His engine pulls a train in February 1804.

**1803–1805**

France sells its territories between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains to the US in the Louisiana Purchase; the territory is extended south to New Orleans in 1804. The Lewis and Clark expedition crosses the western US and reaches the Pacific coast in 1805.

**1804**

Napoleon assumes the title Emperor of France; the Napoleonic Code declares all men equal and ends hereditary nobility. Uthman dan



Fodio creates the Sokoto Caliphate in west Africa after conquering the Hausa kingdoms; the caliphate is one of the largest states in Africa until defeated by the British in 1903 and abolished.

**1805**

Admiral Nelson and the British fleet defeat the Franco-Spanish fleet at the Battle of Trafalgar; France is victorious against Russia and Austria at the Battle of Austerlitz.

**1805–1807**

Britain, Sweden, Russia, Austria, and Prussia counter Napoleon's ambitions in the War of the Third Coalition.

**1806**

Napoleon abolishes the Holy Roman Empire and defeats Prussia; he attempts to deny the British trade through blockades called the Continental System.

**1807**

The Third Coalition ends when Russia switches sides and allies with France. The Slave Trade Act abolishes the slave trade in the British Empire.

**1808**

Napoleon declares his brother, Joseph Bonaparte, the new king of Spain, triggering the Peninsular War (to 1814) with the allied powers of Britain, Spain, and Portugal.

**1810**

The Mexican War of Independence (to 1821) begins a series of revolts against Spanish rule. Russia withdraws from Napoleon's Continental System and recommences trade with Britain.

**1812**

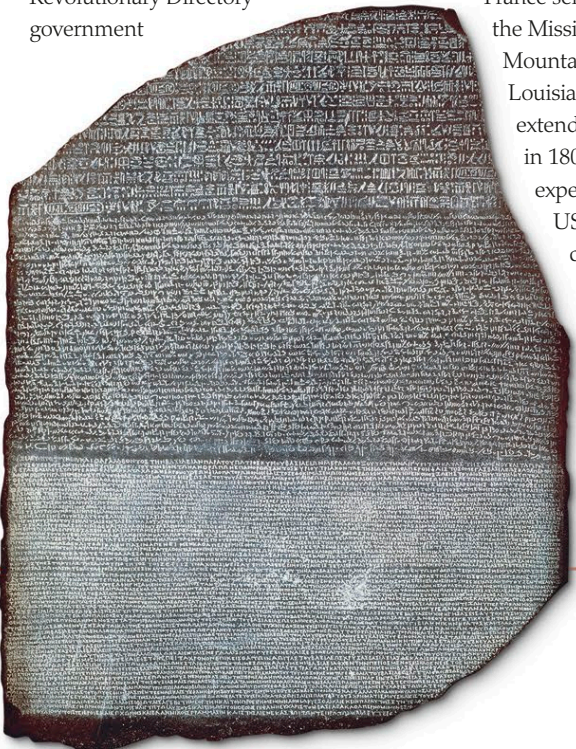
Napoleon invades Russia and goes on, after several victories over the Russian army, to occupy Moscow; his troops, however, are forced into a brutal retreat during the winter. Britain and the United States clash in the War of 1812; British troops set fire to the White House in Washington, D. C.

**1812–1813**

Egyptian forces retake Medina, Jeddah, and Mecca from the Wahhabi; Ottoman rule is reinstated in the area. The English paleontologist Mary Anning discovers the first complete ichthyosaur skeleton in Lyme Regis; her observations of fossils deeply influence scientific understanding of prehistoric life.

**1813**

In a turning point in the Napoleonic Wars, France is defeated at the Battle of the Nations (Leipzig) by an allied force of Britain, Prussia, and Russia. Simón Bolívar invades Venezuela and captures Caracas; he is proclaimed Libertador (Liberator). English novelist Jane Austen publishes *Pride and Prejudice*.

◁ **The Rosetta Stone**

Originating in Egypt in the 2nd century BCE, the Rosetta Stone was rediscovered in 1799. It is inscribed with Egyptian hieroglyphs, Egyptian demotic script, and Greek (top to bottom).

▷ **Napoleon's retreat**

This contemporary painting records the disastrous retreat of Napoleon's forces from Moscow in 1812, during which the starving troops were relentlessly harried by the Russian army.



## 1821

**1814**

Paris is occupied by Anti-French allies who force Napoleon to abdicate and exile him to Elba; Louis XVI's brother, Louis XVIII, is placed on the French throne. After years of war, the balance of power in Europe is settled by the Congress of Vienna (1814–1815).

**1815**

Napoleon escapes from Elba, gathers an army, and marches to Paris at the start of the "Hundred Days" of his return to power. He is defeated at the Battle of Waterloo by British and Prussian forces under the Duke of Wellington and

Gebhard Leberecht von Blücher.

Napoleon is exiled to St. Helena, where he dies in 1821; the French monarchy is again restored under Louis XVIII.

**1816**

The United Provinces of South America (modern-day Argentina) declares its independence from Spain. Shaka becomes chief of the Zulu nation and builds a powerful state in southern Africa.

**1818**

Spanish rebels defeat Spanish royalists at the Battle of Maipu and secure Chile's independence from Spain.

**1819**

Spain cedes Florida to the United States and settles the boundary between the Viceroyalty of New Spain and the US; Spain is soon forced to accept the loss of its colonies in Central and South America. Simón Bolívar becomes the first president of the new Republic of Gran Colombia, following independence from Spain. British colonial administrator Stamford Raffles founds the city of Singapore; it gives the British East India Company a base in the Malay peninsula from which to challenge Dutch dominance of the trading routes between China and India.

**1820**

The Khedive of Egypt, Muhammad Ali, orders an invasion of Sudan; the campaign brings him a vast empire.

**1821–1822**

Spain acknowledges Mexico's independence. Simón Bolívar secures Venezuela's independence in 1821, and Panama, Colombia, and Ecuador join it to form Gran Colombia, while José de San Martín proclaims an independent Peru. British scientist Michael Faraday creates the first electric motor; 10 years later, he discovers electromagnetic induction and builds the first electric generator.





## 1822

**1822**

British mathematician Charles Babbage designs the first programmable computer, a calculator he calls a "difference engine." The Empire of Brazil becomes independent of Portugal.

**1823**

Joseph Smith starts to record revelations he claims were given to him in a vision by the Angel Moroni, creating what becomes the *Book of Mormon*; he founds the Church of Christ (later the Church of the Latter-Day Saints) in 1831. Costa Rica, Guatemala, El Salvador, Nicaragua, and Honduras declare their independence as a federal republic, the United Provinces of Central America.

**1824–1825**

José de Sucre wins Bolivia's independence from Spain at the Battle of Ayacucho in 1824. The following year,

George Stephenson and his son Robert open the first railway line to use a steam locomotive to pull passenger trains; it runs between Stockton and Darlington in northeast England.

**1825–1832**

Alexander Pushkin publishes *Eugene Onegin* in serial form; this novel in verse form becomes a classic of Russian literature.

**1826**

French inventor Joseph-Nicéphore Niépce makes the earliest surviving photographic prints.

**1827**

At the Battle of Navarino off the Peloponnese, Britain, France, and Russia sink three-quarters of the Ottoman fleet when the Ottomans refuse to give Greece its independence.

*"Devoured by all crimes and extinguished by ferocity, the Europeans will not deign to conquer us."*

SIMÓN BOLÍVAR, 1830

**1828**

Brazil and Argentina recognize Uruguay's independence. Russia acquires Armenia and declares war on the Ottomans.

**1830**

The French take control of Algeria. The French Bourbon monarch, Charles X, is replaced with his cousin Louis-Philippe, Duke of Orléans, in the July Revolution in Paris. Belgium demands independence from the Netherlands. Calls for political reform throughout Europe follow amid a wave of rebellion and social unrest. Native Americans are forcibly expelled from the southeast of the US after the Indian Removal Act strips them of rights; they head west along the "Trail of Tears" to Oklahoma. Simón Bolívar dies of tuberculosis.

**1830–1832**

Japanese artist Katsushika Hokusai produces his masterful woodblock print *Under the Wave off Kanagawa*.

**1831**

Belgium becomes independent and elects Leopold I as king.

**1832**

The Great Powers formally recognize Greek independence from the Ottoman Empire; the London Conference creates

the Greek monarchy, and in May, Prince Otto of Bavaria becomes the first modern king of Greece as Otto I.

**1833**

The Slave Emancipation Act bans slavery throughout the British Empire. The British Parliament passes the Factory Act, prohibiting the employment of children under the age of 9. Britain pushes the Argentinians out of the Falkland Islands (Las Malvinas) and begins settling British farmers there.

**1835–1840**

Around 12,000 Boers from Cape Colony make the "Great Trek" into the South African interior; the majority settle in what becomes Orange Free State, Transvaal, and Natal.

**1836**

At the Battle of the Alamo, around 200 Texan rebels attempt to hold off a Mexican army of several thousand; they are defeated, but soon Mexico has to recognize the independent Republic of Texas. The first wagon train taking settlers west heads out along the Oregon Trail; in 1841, wagon trains reach California.

**1837**

Queen Victoria ascends the throne of the United Kingdom, beginning a reign that lasts over 60 years.



**2,500** Tons of opium imported into China in the year 1838.

◀ **Simón Bolívar**

This painting puts Bolívar, the "Liberator" of South America, into the famous pose in which Napoleon was pictured by French artist Jacques-Louis David in 1801. Bolívar died in 1830.





◁ *Under the Wave off Kanagawa*  
Hokusai's most famous print, made in 1830–1832, is part of a series entitled *Thirty-Six Views of Mount Fuji*. The mountain is visible in the hollow of the wave.

1850

4

The number of words in the first telegraph message: “What hath God wrought?”

leader Abd al-Qadir, bringing an end to the Algerian war of independence.

### 1848

Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels publish *The Communist Manifesto*. Europe is wracked by political upheaval in the “Year of Revolution”; France overthrows the monarchy to form the Second Republic with Louis-Napoleon Bonaparte, as president. The California Gold Rush (1848–1855) begins when gold is found at Sutter’s Mill.

### 1850

The Taiping Rebellion begins in China; it lasts 14 years, claims 20 million lives, and irrevocably damages the authority of the Qing Dynasty.

### 1838

Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua become independent states. The slaughter of around 3,000 Zulus at the Battle of Blood River in southern Africa allows the Dutch Voortrekkers to establish the Republic of Natal.

### 1839

British artist J. M. W. Turner exhibits *The Fighting Téméraire*, in which he uses the scrapping of a ship that fought at the Battle of Trafalgar as an allegory of the decline of British naval power.

### 1839–1840

The First British colonists arrive in New Zealand.

### 1839–1842

Britain seeks to curb Russia’s growing influence over Afghanistan in the First Anglo-Afghan War. China and Britain clash over trade and the British import of opium into China; Britain’s superior navy wins this First Opium War; China opens five “treaty ports” to foreign trade and cedes Hong Kong.

### 1840

American artist and inventor Samuel Morse patents the electric telegraph in the US; he sends the first message in 1844. The formation of the Magnetic Telegraph Company in 1845 sees the technology spread quickly across the US; the first transatlantic telegraph cable is laid in 1858.

### 1841

The first operation using diethyl ether as an anesthetic is performed; its efficacy is later publicly demonstrated by William Morton at the Massachusetts General Hospital. In 1846, chloroform is first used as a medical anesthetic.

### 1842

Disputes surrounding the US–Canadian border are finally settled by the Webster–Ashburton Treaty.

### 1843

The British annex Natal; many Boers do not recognize British rule and trek over the mountains into the Orange Free State and Transvaal provinces.

### 1845–1854

The Irish potato crop fails due to blight and poor weather, causing the Great Famine. More than a million people die from starvation and associated diseases, but many more emigrate over the years that follow, leaving Ireland severely depopulated.

### 1846

US commodore James Biddle moors two warships in Edo Bay in an attempt to open up trade with Japan; however, Japan refuses to open its ports to foreign merchants. The US–Mexican War begins after the US annexes Texas (1845); Mexico surrenders in 1847 and cedes a vast swathe of territory to the United States. Danish philosopher Søren Kierkegaard (1813–1855) publishes *Concluding Unscientific Postscript to Philosophical Fragments*, a work that stresses the individual’s unique position as self-determining agent and is a forerunner of existentialism. The French capture resistance



### ▷ Queen Victoria’s crown

The Imperial State Crown, encrusted with precious stones, was made for the coronation of Queen Victoria in London in 1838.



# PROGRESS AND EMPIRE 1850–1914

## 1851

### 1851

The Great Exhibition, held in London's Crystal Palace, showcases goods and manufacturers from around the world to over 6 million visitors. Gold is discovered in Australia; in the next 10 years, 500,000 immigrants arrive.

### 1852

The British recognize the independent Boer republic of Transvaal in South Africa; the Orange Free State is recognized in 1854.

### 1853–1856

In the Crimean War, Britain, France, and the Ottomans curb Russia's ambitions in the Balkans; Sevastopol is besieged for a year; terrible losses among the French and British prompt Florence Nightingale to organize military nursing services.

### 1855–1856

Innovations by Britain's Henry Bessemer and Robert Mushet make the mass production of steel possible.

### 1856–1858

A mutiny by native troops against their British officers develops into an Indian Revolt; it is crushed by the British, who exile the last Mughal emperor and place India under the direct control of the British crown, ushering in the period known as the Raj (to 1947).

### 1856–1860

In the Second Opium War, Britain and France invade China and force it to open more ports to trade and to legalize opium imports.

### 1858–1870

The unification of Italy develops out of the Risorgimento movement: France and Piedmont-Sardinia join to end Austrian rule in northern Italy, and Garibaldi secures the south; Victor Emmanuel II is declared king in 1861.

### 1861

Russia abolishes serfdom. Abraham Lincoln, an abolitionist, becomes president of the United States; states in the south assert their right to own slaves in defiance of the federal government; seven secede from the Union to form a Confederacy. The Civil War begins with a Confederate attack at Fort Sumter. French chemist Louis Pasteur's experiments demonstrate that airborne microbes cause decay and disease.

*"All happy families resemble one another, but each unhappy family is unhappy in its own way."*

LEO TOLSTOY, FROM *ANNA KARENINA*, 1877

### 1859

Charles Darwin publishes *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection*, outlining his theory of evolution.

### 1859–1867

France captures Saigon (1859) and establishes protectorates in Cambodia (1863) and Cochinchina (1867).

### 1860–1900

Thousands of Pacific Islanders are coerced or tricked into working as laborers in Peru, Australia, and Fiji.

### 1862

In the Civil War, there are Union victories at Shiloh and Antietam and a Confederate victory at the second Battle of Bull Run. Otto von Bismarck becomes prime minister of Prussia; he reforms the army and masterminds the unification of Germany in 1871.

### 1863

President Lincoln abolishes slavery in the south with the Emancipation Proclamation; the Union takes Vicksburg; Confederate general Robert E. Lee pushes into Pennsylvania, but is defeated at Gettysburg. Having been forced to open Japan to trade with the West, Emperor Komei orders the expulsion of "barbarians" from Japan.

### 1864

General Ulysses S. Grant becomes commander-in-chief of the Union forces; in the "March to the Sea," Union troops under the command of General William T. Sherman destroy railway lines and towns from Atlanta to Savannah, Georgia. The Paraguayan

president Francisco Solano López starts the War of the Triple Alliance, or Paraguayan War, against Brazil, Argentina, and Uruguay that will kill more than half of Paraguay's population.

### 1865

The Civil War ends, and General Lee surrenders on 9 April: at the end of the war, 625,000 men are dead and 500,000 are injured. Confederate supporter John Wilkes Booth assassinates President Lincoln on April 14 at Ford's Theatre in Washington, D.C. British surgeon Joseph Lister pioneers modern antiseptics.

### 1865–1869

Russian novelist Leo Tolstoy publishes *War and Peace*, which draws on his own experiences in the Crimean War (1853–1856).

### 1866

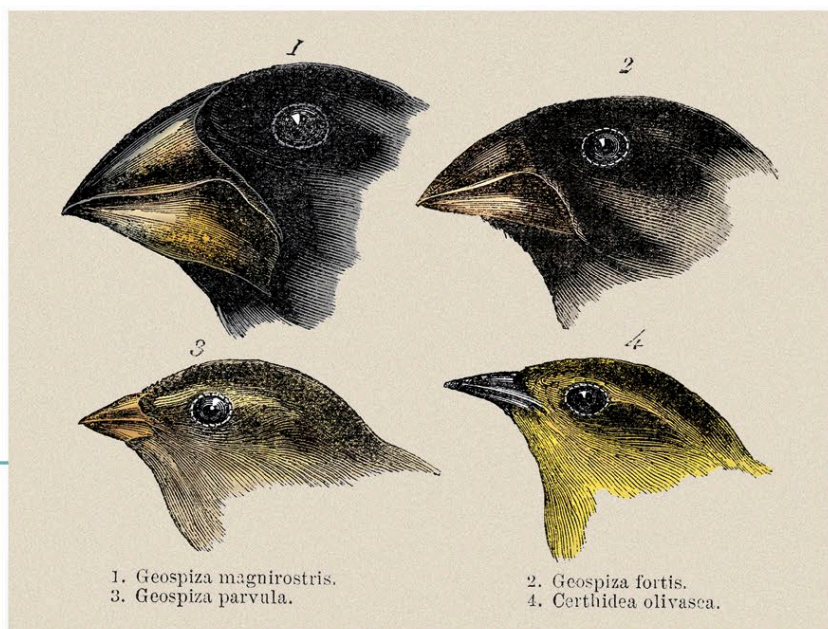
Prussia crushes Austria in the Seven Weeks War; Austria is excluded from Germany. Austrian monk Gregor Mendel's study of plant hybrids lays the foundations for the science of genetics.

### 1867

Prussia leads a North German Confederation of 22 states. Franz Josef I is crowned king of Hungary and rules the "dual monarchy" of Austria-Hungary. German social theorist and founder of modern communism Karl Marx publishes *Das Kapital*, outlining his theory of class struggle. The US buys the territory of Alaska from Russia for the sum of \$7.2 million.

### 1868

The Tokugawa shogunate in Japan ends with the restoration of imperial power under Emperor Meiji; his reign (to 1912) sees Japan end its isolationism, implement constitutional government, and modernize.



#### ◁ Darwin's finches

Comparative studies of the beak shape and size of different species of finch on the Galápagos Islands contributed to Darwin's theory of evolution, which was set out in his treatise of 1859.





#### ◁ Karl Marx

Pictured here in 1875, Marx was a philosopher, economist, and author of *Das Kapital* (1867). He did not live to see his ideas enacted in his lifetime.

1885

#### 1869

In Australia, the Act for "Protection and Management of Aboriginal Natives" gives the government extensive powers over the lives of aboriginals.

#### 1870

Freed slaves in the US are given the right to vote by the Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution.

#### 1870–1871

The Franco-Prussian War precipitates the collapse of the French monarchy and the creation of the Third Republic; Wilhelm I of Prussia becomes Emperor of Germany, Bismarck its chancellor. The revolutionary Paris Commune demands independence; Paris is blockaded for 6 weeks before government forces violently suppress the commune.

#### 1872

Denmark's Hans Christian Andersen publishes the last installment of his *Fairy Tales*. Cetshwayo succeeds Mpande as Zulu paramount chief; he leads his warriors against the British in 1879, but is captured at Ulundi and exiled to England.

#### 1874

French impressionists, including Claude Monet and Paul Cézanne, hold their first exhibition in Paris. Alexander Graham Bell patents the telephone.

#### 1875–1876

Russian composer Pyotr Ilyich Tchaikovsky writes *Swan Lake*; German composer Richard Wagner's four-opera *Ring Cycle* is first staged in Bayreuth.

#### 1876

Lt. Colonel George Custer and his troops are killed by Sioux and Cheyenne warriors at the Battle of Little Bighorn in the Indian Wars. Britain's Queen Victoria is proclaimed Empress of India.

#### 1877

The British annex Transvaal in South Africa when gold is found there.

#### 1877–1878

The Balkans are reshaped when a Russian-led coalition wins the Russo-Turkish War; Bulgaria, Serbia, Romania, and Montenegro all gain independence from the Ottoman Empire.

#### 1878

Joseph Swan patents the electric bulb in Britain; Thomas Edison soon develops electric lighting for public use.

#### 1880–1881

In the First Anglo-Boer War, Boers in Transvaal rebel against British rule and succeed in establishing the South African Republic.

#### 1881

Mohammed Ahmed proclaims himself the Mahdi in Sudan and begins an 18-year war against the Khedivate of Egypt and later the British in Egypt. The French occupy Tunisia. The "Czar Liberator" Alexander II is assassinated; an anti-Jewish pogrom in Russia follows, forcing many Jews to flee to western Europe, the US, and Palestine.

#### 1882

Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy form the Triple Alliance against France. The British occupy Egypt after the Anglo-Egyptian War between Britain and Egyptian and Sudanese forces.

#### 1884

General Gordon begins to evacuate the British from Sudan; he dies when Mahdist forces break their 10-month-

# 20,000

People killed when the French army suppressed the Paris Commune.

long siege of Khartoum and massacre the Egyptian garrison and 4,000 Sudanese civilians in January 1885.

#### 1884–1885

European powers meet at the Berlin Conference to agree on the rules of colonization in Africa.

#### 1885

German engineers Gottlieb Daimler and Karl Benz independently build the first automobiles powered by an internal combustion engine. The Indian National Congress is the first modern nationalist movement to emerge in the British Empire in Africa and Asia.



#### ▷ Custer's last stand

General Custer makes a brave stand, with guns in both hands, as his soldiers go down in defeat, in this romanticized 1889 lithograph of the Battle of the Little Bighorn in Montana, June 25, 1876.



## 1888

**1888–1889**

Emperor Pedro II frees Brazil's remaining slaves but refuses to compensate their owners; in 1889, he is overthrown in a coup, and Brazil becomes a republic.

**1889**

The Eiffel Tower opens in Paris on the centenary of the French Revolution. Dutch artist Vincent van Gogh paints *The Starry Night*, a landmark of the Post-Impressionist movement.

**1890**

The Battle of Wounded Knee brings an end to the Indian Wars between the Great Plains Native American tribes and the US Army (1854–1890). In West Kimberley, Australia, the aboriginal resistance fighter Jandamarra declares war on European invaders and prevents them settling for 6 years.

**1891**

German philosopher Friedrich Nietzsche declares “God is dead” in *Thus Spake Zarathustra*. Work begins on the Trans-Siberian Railway connecting Moscow and Vladivostok.

**1893**

New Zealand is the first country to grant voting rights to women. Sigmund Freud and Joseph Breuer publish *On the*

*Physical Mechanism of Hysterical Phenomena*, a founding work in the emerging field of psychoanalysis.

**1894–1895**

Japan gains Formosa (Taiwan) and China recognizes Korean independence after the First Sino-Japanese War.

**1894–1897**

In the Hamidian massacres, around 250,000 are killed in anti-Christian pogroms, directed primarily against Armenians, in the Ottoman Empire.

**1895**

French brothers Auguste and Nicolas Lumière show the first motion picture, lasting 46 seconds, in Paris. Italian inventor Guglielmo Marconi builds the first wireless, paving the way for the development of radio technology. German physicist Wilhelm Röntgen discovers X-rays.

**1896**

Emperor Menelik II secures Ethiopia's independence by defeating an invading Italian army at the Battle of Adowa.

**1896–1898**

The Yukon and Klondike gold rushes fuel a short-lived boom around Dawson City, Canada.

*“All our scientific and philosophic ideals are altars to unknown gods.”*

WILLIAM JAMES, LECTURE AT HARVARD UNIVERSITY, 1884

**1898**

In the Spanish–American War, Spain cedes Puerto Rico, Guam, and the Philippines to the US and grants Cuba independence; the US annexes Hawaii.

**1899**

In Colombia, 100,000 die in the War of a Thousand Days.

**1899–1902**

In the Second Anglo–Boer War, thousands of Boer women and children die in British camps; British “scorched earth” attacks force the Boers to recognize British sovereignty in South Africa.

**1900**

Waves of immigrants swell the population of the US to around 75 million. Southern Nigeria becomes a British protectorate when French rivals begin to threaten British traders in the Niger Delta. In China, Qing power weakens: Chinese nationalists known as “Boxers” besiege European and US legations in Beijing until an international relief force captures the city in 1901; Russia occupies southern Manchuria. German physicist Max Planck outlines his quantum theory, that radiation comes in discrete packets (quanta) of energy.

**1901**

Oil is struck at Spindletop in Texas; the US becomes the world's leading oil producer and benefits from the first modern consumer boom. Six colonies in Australian federate to form the Commonwealth of Australia; the Immigration Restriction Act bars people of non-European descent from settling

in the country; the policy remains in place until 1950. The death of Britain's Queen Victoria ends a 63-year reign. Italian composer Giuseppe Verdi dies, and thousands line the streets of Milan for his funeral.

**1902**

US philosopher William James publishes *The Varieties of Religious Experience*, exploring the nature of religion.

**1903**

In the US, Brothers Wilbur and Orville Wright make the first controlled, sustained flight of a powered aircraft. In Britain, suffragettes Emmeline and Christabel Pankhurst found the Women's Social and Political Union, which advocates the use of civil disobedience to secure the vote for women. Marie Curie wins the Nobel Prize for her work on radioactivity and the discovery of radium.

**1904**

Britain and France sign a series of agreements, known as the Entente Cordiale; Russia joins them in the Triple Entente in 1907.

**1904–1905**

Japan and Russia clash over Manchuria in the Russo–Japanese War; Russia is forced to leave Manchuria.

**1905**

Political and social unrest in the Russian Empire forces Czar Nicholas II to sign the October Manifesto, authorizing the creation of an elected legislature (the Duma). Norway secures independence



◀ *The Starry Night*

In 1889, Vincent van Gogh painted this view from the window of his room at the Saint-Paul asylum in Saint-Rémy. The turbulence in his mind is reflected in the expressive color and form of the work.





#### ◀ English suffragettes

This 1908 photograph shows the suffragettes Emmeline Pankhurst and her daughter Christabel after leaving Bow Street police station in London, where they had been imprisoned.

1913

when the union between the kingdoms of Norway and Sweden (of 1814) is dissolved. The German physicist Albert Einstein describes the relationship between space and time in his special theory of relativity; his general theory of relativity in (1915) explains the effect of gravity on spacetime.

#### 1905–1907

The Maji-Maji rebellion threatens German settlers in East Africa.

#### 1906

Britain launches HMS *Dreadnought*, a new class of battleship and a major development in the arms race with Germany. Mahatma Gandhi develops *satyagraha*, his policy of civil disobedience and passive resistance to be used against British rule in India.

#### 1907

The self-governing colonies of Australia, Canada, and New Zealand are given the status of dominions of the British Empire. Belgian-American Leo Baekeland invents Bakelite, an early plastic. The rebuilt Great Mosque at Djenné in Mali is the world's largest clay building.

#### 1908

The Young Turks—a Turkish nationalist party—demand reform in the Ottoman Empire; Austria-Hungary annexes Bosnia-Herzegovina, and Bulgaria wins recognition of its independence. The first Model T cars are produced at Ford's factory in Michigan.

#### 1909

US Navy engineer Robert Peary claims to have reached the North Pole.

#### 1910

In Portugal, revolutionaries depose King Manuel II and declare a republic. China invades Tibet and deposes the 13th Dalai Lama; it is a short occupation, and Tibet is independent by 1912. Japan annexes Korea. The Union of South Africa is founded as a dominion of the British Empire; it becomes a sovereign republic in 1961. The first Hollywood film is made: D. W. Griffith's *Old California*.

#### 1910–1915

American geneticist Thomas Hunt Morgan's study of *Drosophila melanogaster* fruit flies confirms the link between the inheritance of a specific trait with a particular chromosome.

#### 1910–1920

The Mexican Revolution leads to a new constitution (1917), presidential elections (1920), and agrarian, educational, and political reform.

#### 1911–1912

A revolutionary alliance overthrows the Qing in China; the last emperor Puyi abdicates; Sun Yat-sen becomes the first president of the new Chinese Republic and forms the Kuomintang (Nationalist Party). Italy invades the Turkish province of Libya; it retains control there until 1947. US marines are sent to Honduras to protect American interests. In December, Norwegian explorer Roald Amundsen becomes the first man to reach the South Pole; a month later, British explorer Robert Falcon Scott's expedition reaches the pole, but none of the team survive the return journey. New Zealand-born Ernest Rutherford discovers the atomic nucleus. Later, in 1919, he successfully splits the atom in the world's first artificially created nuclear reaction. US archaeologist Hiram Bingham reaches the lost Inca city of Machu Picchu.

#### 1912

The luxury liner RMS *Titanic* sinks on her maiden voyage after hitting an iceberg; 1,513 passengers and crew perish. German geophysicist Alfred Wegener uses fossil evidence and rock formations as the basis for his theory of continental drift, paving the way for the understanding of plate tectonics. Indian polymath Rabindranath Tagore publishes *Gitanjali*; it earns him a Nobel Prize.

#### 1912–1913

The Balkan League, backed by Russia and comprising Serbia, Bulgaria, Greece, and Montenegro, defeats the Ottoman Empire in the First Balkan War; the Ottomans lose their remaining territory in Europe. In the Second Balkan War (1913), Greece and Serbia defeat Bulgaria to gain Macedonia; Serbia's increasing power and alliance with Russia alarm Austria-Hungary and Germany.

#### 1913

Russian composer Igor Stravinsky's avant-garde ballet *The Rite of Spring* causes a sensation and near riot at its premiere in Paris. Danish physicist Niels Bohr describes the structure of the atom. The Ford Motor Company in the US installs the world's first moving assembly line; by 1927, there is one car for every six Americans. British suffragette Emily Davison dies when she throws herself under the king's horse at the Epsom Derby. Unionists in Ulster create the Ulster Volunteer Force to block Ireland gaining more autonomy (Home Rule) from the British; in response, the Irish Volunteers are formed in Dublin.



#### ▷ Model T Ford

Mass production of Henry Ford's vehicle made driving affordable. More than 15 million of the cars were produced between 1908 and 1927.



# THE MODERN WORLD 1914–PRESENT

## 1914

### 1914

The Panama Canal opens, connecting the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans. Austrian Archduke Franz Ferdinand is assassinated in Sarajevo on June 28, 1914, by a Bosnian-Serb revolutionary hoping to end Austro-Hungarian rule in Bosnia and Herzegovina; his death ignites World War I. Austria-Hungary declares war on Serbia on July 28; Russia mobilizes in Serbia's defense. Germany declares war on Russia and France on August 1 and implements the Schlieffen Plan, invading France in the hope of swiftly shutting down the war on the Western Front. Britain declares war on Germany and sends the British Expeditionary Force to France; it drives the Germans back in the Battle of the Marne; the Germans begin digging trenches that eventually total 25,000 miles (40,000 km) in length. Russia invades Austria and East Prussia but is defeated at Tannenberg. The Ottoman Empire enters the war in October. British troops invade Turkish-ruled Iraq and German East Africa. Japan joins the war, attacking German holdings in China and the Pacific.

# 1,197

Number who died in the sinking of the ocean liner RMS *Lusitania* in 1915.

### 1915

The US occupies Haiti (to 1934) and the Dominican Republic (1916–1924), securing American influence in the region. Germany begins unrestricted submarine warfare, sinking all ships on sight, but temporarily halts the operation after the sinking of the liner RMS *Lusitania* threatens to bring the US into the war. Germany makes the first use of poison gas at the Second Battle of Ypres. Allied troops land at Gallipoli and attempt to end the Turkish blockade in the Dardanelles; they suffer almost 250,000 casualties and begin to evacuate in December. Italy revokes the Triple Alliance, abandons neutrality, and declares war on Austria-Hungary. Countries across Europe abandon the Gold Standard; currency is no longer convertible into gold. The Armenian genocide begins when the Ottoman Empire rounds up Armenians suspected

of harboring sympathy for the Russians; by 1923, 1.5 million Armenians have been killed or left to die in concentration camps.

### 1916

The British crush the nationalist Easter Rising in Ireland. Great Britain introduces conscription for all men aged 18–41. Huge offensives result in mass casualties (400,000 at Verdun, more than a million at the Somme), with little territory gained on the Western Front. The British Grand Fleet and the German High Sea Fleet clash off the coast of Denmark in the Battle of Jutland, the only major naval battle in World War I. Arab nationalists revolt against the Ottoman Empire when Hussein bin Ali, Sharif of Mecca, proclaims himself leader of the Muslim

world with the intention of creating a unified Arab state. The Sykes–Picot agreement between Britain and France agrees on how the Middle East will be divided in the event of the Ottoman Empire's defeat. Jeannette Rankin is the first woman elected to the US Congress.

### 1917

The Russian Revolution erupts in food riots, strikes, and a military mutiny; Czar Nicholas II abdicates, and a provisional government is formed. Bolsheviks under Vladimir Ilyich Lenin and Leon Trotsky seize power; civil war breaks out. In March, the US enters World War I after discovering German foreign minister Arthur Zimmerman's telegram urging Mexico to reclaim Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona. The British







◁ **The last emperor of Russia**  
Czar Nicholas II of Russia, pictured here with his family in 1913, was forced to abdicate in 1917. The family was imprisoned and executed on the orders of Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin.

Germany becomes a republic. Charles I abdicates, ending the Habsburg monarchy in Austria–Hungary. Female suffrage is granted to British women over 30. Constance Markievicz becomes Britain's first female member of parliament.

begin a new push at Ypres; fought in a sea of mud, the campaign ends in slaughter at Passchendaele in Flanders, but at the Battle of Cambrai, the British use of massed tanks provides a way to break the stalemate of trench warfare. The Balfour Declaration, made without consulting Britain's Arab allies, signals Britain's support for a Jewish homeland in Palestine. The first Pulitzer Prizes are awarded in the US.

## 1918

Czar Nicholas II and his family are shot near Yekaterinburg. Russia exits World War I, losing Poland, Ukraine, Belarus, Finland, and the Baltic states in the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk with the Central Powers. The Allies check Germany's Spring Offensive and launch a counter-offensive, which breaches the defenses of the Hindenburg Line. The war ends as the Ottoman Empire signs an armistice on October 30, Austria on November 3, and Germany on November 11; total casualties number around 37 million, including 15 million dead. Kaiser Wilhelm II abdicates;

# 585,000

The number of Allied and German troops killed at Passchendaele.

## 1918–1919

More than 50 million die during the Spanish influenza global pandemic.

## 1919

The Paris Peace Conference dismantles the German, Austrian, and Ottoman Empires; the Treaty of Versailles imposes war reparations on Germany, set at 132 billion Deutsche Marks in 1921, and restricts its military power. The Weimar Republic is established in Germany. Lenin establishes the Communist International (known as Comintern) to promote communism worldwide. Benito Mussolini founds the Fascist party in Italy to combat socialism. British aviators John Alcock and Arthur Whitten Brown make the first nonstop transatlantic flight. In the Irish War of Independence (to 1922), the Irish Republican Army mounts a campaign against the British government's forces, who are known from the color of their uniforms as "Black and Tans."

## 1920

The US begins Prohibition (a ban on the production and sale of alcohol). Russia's Red Army is driven back outside Warsaw after its invasion of Poland. The League of Nations is established to prevent conflicts by committing members to collective security and disarmament. Women in the US are enfranchised through the 19th amendment to the Constitution, adopted on August 18.

# 1923

*"Politics begin where the masses are, not where there are thousands, but where there are millions; that is where serious politics begins."*

VLADIMIR ILYICH LENIN, 1918

## 1921

Six million perish in Russia's famine; victorious in the civil war, Lenin begins to rebuild Russia's economy with the New Economic Policy, allowing a return to private enterprise. The Communist Party of China (CPC) is founded.

## 1922

The former Russian Empire becomes the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR). Britain declares Egypt an independent kingdom but retains a military presence to protect the Suez Canal. In Italy, Mussolini and his Blackshirts threaten to march on Rome and seize power; to avoid conflict, King Victor Emmanuel III makes Mussolini prime minister and head of a Fascist government. The British Empire, the largest empire in history, reaches its greatest extent; it covers one-quarter of the world's land. The African National

Congress is formed to combat discrimination against blacks in South Africa. Writer James Joyce publishes his experimental novel *Ulysses* in Paris. British archaeologist Howard Carter uncovers the tomb of Tutankhamun in Egypt. The British Broadcasting Company (BBC) is founded. The Anglo-Irish treaty (signed 1921) ends the Irish War of Independence; it divides Ireland into the Irish Free State and Northern Ireland, with separate parliaments in Dublin and Belfast; William Cosgrave becomes the Irish Free State's first prime minister. Ireland erupts in civil war (to 1923) over the Anglo-Irish Treaty.

## 1923

After securing Turkish independence in the Turkish War of Liberation (from 1919), President Mustafa Kemal (Ataturk) begins reforming the Turkish republic into a modern secular state. The Treaty of Lausanne settles the long conflict between the Ottoman Empire and France, Britain, Italy, Japan, Greece, and Romania and sets the borders of the Turkish Republic. Germany is crippled by war reparations payments and hyperinflation; the German currency reaches 242 million marks to the dollar; Adolf Hitler, leader of the National Socialist (Nazi) Party, is imprisoned after attempting to grab power in the Munich Beer Hall putsch; while in jail, he writes *Mein Kampf*. Miguel Primo de Rivera leads a military coup in Spain and becomes dictator.



◁ **Funerary mask of Tutankhamun**

The discovery by Howard Carter in 1922 of Tutankhamun's intact tomb caused a worldwide sensation. Tutankhamun was an Egyptian pharaoh who ruled from around 1332 to 1323 BCE.

## ◁ The Battle of Cambrai

A British tank is overturned and trapped in an enemy trench in France in 1917. The battle was an early example of tank warfare, although the machines proved unreliable.





#### ◀ The first televised images

This photograph shows an image on the screen of John Logie Baird's pioneering television system in 1926. The face is that of Baird's business partner, Oliver Hutchinson.

## 1924–1936

### 1924

Vladimir Lenin dies and Joseph Stalin becomes leader of the Soviet Union after an intense power struggle with Leon Trotsky, Lev Kamenev, and Grigory Zinoviev (who were all members of the first Politburo, founded in 1917). Mahatma ("Great Soul") Gandhi becomes leader of India's National Congress and drives the campaign for an end to the British Raj.

### 1925

Mussolini becomes dictator in Italy and takes the title *Il Duce* (The Leader). Nationalists in Syria and Lebanon revolt against the French mandate to prepare the countries for self-rule. The Locarno Pact (signed in Switzerland) guarantees peace between Germany, France, Belgium, Britain, and Italy; it restores relations with Germany as a precursor to Germany joining the League of Nations in 1926. The Geneva Protocol prohibits the use of chemical and biological weapons; the US and Japan reject the agreement.

### 1926

In China, Chiang Kai-shek succeeds Sun Yat-sen as leader of the Chinese

Nationalist Party (Kuomintang). Scottish inventor John Logie Baird gives the first public demonstration of television. Reza Khan Pahlavi becomes shah of Iran and begins to modernize the country; his dynasty rules until 1979. Military coups overthrow the governments in Poland and Portugal.

### 1927

Chiang Kai-shek purges Chinese communists in the Shanghai massacre. In the Soviet Union, Leon Trotsky is expelled from the Communist Party on Stalin's orders and exiled (1929); he is assassinated in Mexico in 1940 by a Spanish-born agent of the NKVD (the organization that what would later become the Soviet Secret Police). American aviator Charles Lindbergh makes the first solo flight across the Atlantic. *The Jazz Singer*, starring Al Jolson and directed by Alan Crosland, is the first talking motion picture. Oil is discovered in Iraq.

### 1928

Stalin's Five Year Plan (the first of many Soviet plans) aims to transform the Soviet Union through rapid industrialization and the collectivization of farms. Kuomintang forces take Beijing and declare the Nationalist Government of China with Chiang Kai-shek as Chairman; Mao Zedong leads communist resistance in remote rural areas. Penicillin, the first antibiotic, is discovered by Scottish biologist and pharmacologist Alexander Fleming.

### 1929

Riots in Palestine see Arabs attack Jewish immigrants. The Kenyan politician Jomo Kenyatta travels to London to press the Kikuyu Central Association's demands for equality in Kenya. The Stock Market Crash bursts the American stock market bubble, plunging the world into the Great Depression, which lasts until the late 1930s. American astronomer Edwin

monopolies and British rule in India; Gandhi and around 60,000 others are arrested.

### 1930

Mass unemployment and political extremism follow the collapse of the world economy: Hitler's Nazi party becomes the second largest political party in Germany; an army revolt brings autocrat Getúlio Vargas to power in

*"Nonviolence is the first article of my faith. It is the last article of my faith."*

MAHATMA GANDHI, 1922

Hubble calculates that the Universe is expanding and has more than 100 billion galaxies. Belgian cartoonist Hergé publishes the first Tintin comic strip, *Tintin in the Land of the Soviets*. The BBC runs trials on its first TV broadcasts.

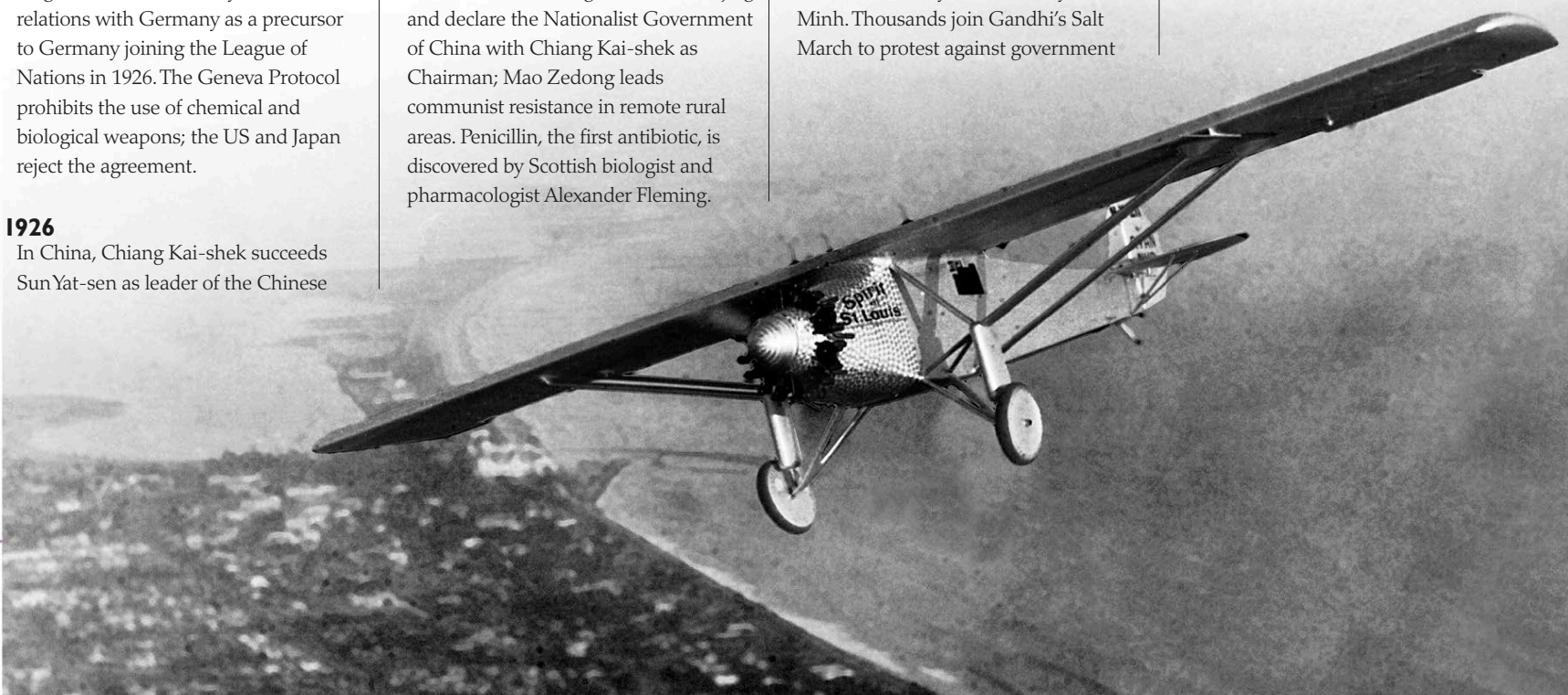
Brazil. Ras Tafari becomes Emperor of Ethiopia, taking the name Haile Selassie; in Jamaica, the cult of Rastafarianism views Ras Tafari as the Black Messiah.

### 1930

Hundreds of thousands of peasants are sent to gulags (forced labor camps) for resisting the Soviet Union's mass collectivization of farms. The Vietnamese Communist Party is founded by Ho Chi Minh. Thousands join Gandhi's Salt March to protest against government

### 1931

In Spain, King Alfonso abdicates after elections return a Republican government. Japan occupies Manchuria; in 1934 it installs Puyi (China's last emperor) as emperor of the new state, which is known as Manchukuo. The





### ► Hitler's Brownshirts

Hitler is pictured surrounded by members of the "Storm Detachment," or Brownshirts, who provided him with close protection and disrupted the campaigns of his opponents.

British Commonwealth is formalized by the Statute of Westminster. Belgian astronomer Georges Lemaître argues that quantum theory supports the idea that the universe came into being from the explosion of a "primeval atom" holding all mass and energy; his ideas are later developed into the Big Bang Theory. The Empire State Building opens in New York.

### 1932

Britain terminates its mandate in Iraq, and the kingdom becomes independent; Ibn Sa'ūd unifies the dual kingdoms of Hejaz and Najd in the new Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. Paraguay and Bolivia go to war over control of the Gran Chaco lowland plain; Paraguay wins, but by 1935, more than 85,000 have died. With more than 12 million people unemployed in the US, newly elected president Franklin D. Roosevelt promises "a new deal" to salvage the economy. In Germany, the Nazis become the largest party in fresh elections to the Reichstag but continue to be excluded from government. American aviator Amelia Earhart becomes the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic; she disappears over the Pacific in 1937 while attempting to fly around the world.

### 1932–1933

Soviet collectivization results in the "Great Famine"; 6–8 million peasants die over the winter, including 4–5 million in Ukraine.

# 2,500,000

The number of people who fled the Great Plains during the years of the US Dust Bowl.



### 1933

Adolf Hitler is appointed Chancellor of Germany and soon creates a one-party state in which opposition is brutally suppressed by the SS and Gestapo. A nationwide boycott of Jewish shops and businesses begins; the first Nazi concentration camp opens at Dachau; in a crackdown on "un-German" culture, students burn books and Germany's famous school of modern art and architecture, the Bauhaus, is closed. Germany quits the League of Nations. The World Economic Conference fails to agree to global measures to alleviate the Depression. Japan leaves the League of Nations after it declares the occupation of Manchuria illegal.

### 1934

Hitler authorizes the execution of members of the Nazi Party's paramilitary wing, the Storm Detachment (or Brownshirts), in the Night of the Long Knives; President Hindenburg dies and Hitler becomes *Führer* (leader). The Nazis are banned in Austria by its dictatorial chancellor Engelbert Dollfuss; he is assassinated by Nazis. The Soviet Union joins the League of Nations.

### 1934–1935

In the Long March, Mao Zedong and his communist forces retreat around 6,000 miles (10,000 km) from the Jiangxi Soviet (a communist base formed in 1931) to Yan'an, evading Chiang Kai-shek's nationalist forces.

### 1934–1937

Thousands of destitute farmers migrate west to California from the Great Plains after drought, intensive farming, and giant dust storms strip the land of topsoil in the 1932 Dust Bowl disaster.

### 1935–1939

The US passes several Neutrality Acts that seek to maintain American isolationism and prevent the country from being drawn into foreign conflicts.

### 1935

Hitler builds Germany's army through conscription (banned by the Treaty of Versailles); the Nuremberg Laws deprive Jews of German citizenship and ban marriage between Jews and non-Jews. Emperor Haile Selassie leads resistance to Italian invasion of Ethiopia; economic sanctions are imposed on Italy.

### 1936

Germany moves troops unopposed into the demilitarized Rhineland; Britain and France begin expanding their armed forces. Italy annexes Ethiopia; Haile Selassie warns "It is us today; it will be you tomorrow." With the Anti-Comintern Pact, Germany and Japan declare their hostility to communism and agree that neither country will make any treaties with the USSR; Spain and Italy join the pact in 1937, forming the basis of the Axis Powers. Stalin begins the Great Purge of the Communist party, government officials, army leaders, intellectuals, and peasants with a series of show trials of "Old Bolsheviks;" between 680,000 and 2 million people are killed over the next 2 years. Spain is thrown into Civil War when General Francisco Franco leads a nationalist revolt against the newly elected left-wing Popular Front government. The Nationalists are backed by Germany and Italy, while the Republicans are backed by the Soviet Union and supported by International Brigades of volunteers from Europe and North America; the Nationalists prevail in 1939, and Franco becomes dictator.

### ◁ Spirit of St. Louis

Charles Lindbergh piloted this single-engined aircraft on his flight from New York to Paris in 1927. He was the first to cross the Atlantic from west to east. It took 33 hours and 30 minutes.



## 1936–1943

**1936–1939**

Arabs in Palestine revolt against the British administration of the Palestine Mandate; they demand an end to unrestricted Jewish immigration; plans to resolve the crisis by partitioning Palestine between Arabs and Jews have to be abandoned, and the British agree to restrict Jewish immigration.

**1937**

Japan invades northern China, sparking the Second Sino-Japanese War, which continues throughout World War II; by 1938, Japanese troops have captured Nanjing, Shanghai, Hankou, and

Guangzhou, massacring more than 1,000,000 civilians and using rape as an instrument of war in the “Rape of Nanjing”; resistance comes from both the Kuomintang and the communist 8th Route Army. Brazil’s President Vargas uses the threat of a communist coup to create a new constitution, the Estado Novo (New State), giving himself dictatorial powers. Pablo Picasso paints the gigantic *Guernica*, a response to the German bombing of the town of Guernica in northern Spain during the Spanish Civil War. The German-built *Hindenburg*, then the world’s largest airship, explodes on arrival in the US.

The British engineer Frank Whittle successfully runs trials on his turbojet engine; it is used in Britain’s first jet aircraft, tested in 1941.

**1938**

In the *Anschluss* (unification), German troops march on Vienna and annex Austria in direct contravention of the

peace terms of 1919. Hoping to avoid war, Britain and France continue their policy of appeasement and allow Germany to annex Sudetenland from Czechoslovakia. On November 9, *Kristallnacht* (the Night of Broken Glass), the Nazis orchestrate attacks on Jewish homes, businesses, and schools in Germany and Austria.

*“Never in the field of human conflict was so much owed by so many to so few.”*

WINSTON CHURCHILL, 1940





Japan declares its intention to create a New Order in East Asia, essentially acknowledging its imperial ambitions; the US begins to finance Chiang Kai-shek's resistance to Japan.

### 1939

World War II begins: Germany invades Czechoslovakia; Britain and France guarantee Polish independence; Hitler and Mussolini sign the Pact of Steel military alliance; the Soviet Union and Germany sign the Molotov-Ribbentrop nonaggression pact (named after the foreign ministers of the two nations); Germany invades Poland on

September 1; Britain and France declare war 2 days later. Poland is partitioned by the Soviet Union and Germany. The Soviet Union attacks Finland. Merchant ships crossing the Atlantic begin to sail in convoy; 114 Allied ships are sunk in the first year of war.

### 1940

Germany unleashes the *Blitzkrieg* (lightning war) on Europe: Denmark, Norway, the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg, and France are invaded. Britain evacuates 338,000 men from the beaches of Dunkirk, France. France surrenders; the French government

### ▷ Star of David badge

Following a decree issued by the German Reich in 1941, all Jews over the age of 6 were forced to wear this badge, inscribed with the word "Jude" (German for "Jew").



under Marshal Pétain relocates to Vichy; Charles de Gaulle positions himself as the figurehead of the French Resistance. Italy declares war on Britain and France. Britain's Royal Air Force (RAF) blocks the German *Luftwaffe's* attack in the Battle of Britain, forcing Hitler to abandon plans to invade Britain. Germany begins the mass transportation of prisoners to the Auschwitz concentration camp in southern Poland. The *Luftwaffe* begin mass bombing raids on British cities; the Blitz lasts until 1941; Allied bombers retaliate with raids on Germany. The US restricts sales of iron and oil to Japan in an attempt to curb Japanese aggression; the US Pacific Fleet is moved to Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. The British hold off the Italian invasion of Egypt. Japan, Germany, and Italy form an alliance in the Tripartite Pact.

### 1941

Germany begins Operation Barbarossa: 3 million troops invade the USSR and advance on Leningrad, besieging the city; by December, the Germans are exhausted and forced to retreat from Moscow. Japan annexes Indochina. Japan bombs the US fleet in Pearl Harbor on December 7 and invades the Philippines and European colonies in Southeast Asia, securing control of the Pacific; the US enters the war.

### 1942

At the Wannsee Conference in Berlin, senior Nazi officials are briefed on the systematic deportation and extermination of Jews across Europe; by 1945, 6 million Jews have been killed.

A US victory against the Imperial Japanese Navy at the Battle of Midway in the Pacific proves a turning point in the war in the Pacific. Japan begins construction of the Burma–Thailand railway using British, Australian, and Dutch prisoners of war and native laborers; within 3 years, more than 100,000 of them die under appalling conditions. In the Battle of Stalingrad (to 1943), Germans capture the city but are encircled by Soviet troops; few survive the freezing conditions during the siege, and the German defeat is a turning point in the war; more than 1.7 million soldiers are killed, wounded, or captured in the battle. In North Africa, German troops under Erwin Rommel reach the borders of Egypt; defeated by the British at El Alamein, and under pressure from advancing Allied troops, the Axis Powers in Africa surrender (1943). The Quit India campaign sees leaders of the Indian National Congress imprisoned.

### 1943

Jews in the Warsaw Ghetto resist German efforts to transport them; 13,000 die in the uprising, and most of the remaining 50,000 Jews are shipped to Nazi death camps. At Kursk, the Soviets win the largest tank battle in history. US and British troops invade Sicily; Mussolini is removed from power, and Italy surrenders.



**1,000** The number of Jewish synagogues burned on *Kristallnacht*.

### ◁ *Guernica*, 1937

Pablo Picasso painted this violent, mural-sized masterpiece in response to the deliberate bombing by Nazi aircraft of civilians in the Basque village of Guernica.



▷ **The Potsdam Conference**

Clement Attlee of Great Britain, President Harry S. Truman of the US, and Soviet Premier Joseph Stalin (seated from left to right) pose at the Potsdam Conference in Germany in 1945.



## 1944

**1944**

The 900-day siege of Leningrad is lifted. Polish troops break the German defensive line in Italy at Monte Cassino; the Allies take Rome. The Allies launch an invasion of occupied France, landing more than 130,000 troops in Normandy on D-Day (June 6); over the coming weeks, more than 3 million Allied troops land in France. Hitler survives an assassination attempt by officers and high officials. General Charles de Gaulle's Free French forces and resistance fighters liberate Paris on August 25. Japanese naval pilots start to mount *kamikaze* suicide attacks on US naval forces in the Pacific. At the Battle of the Bulge in the Ardennes, Hitler launches Germany's final offensive;

German tanks break through the American front line but are defeated in a counterattack; the German troops retreat to Germany.

**1945**

British Prime Minister Winston Churchill, US president Franklin D. Roosevelt, and Soviet premier Joseph Stalin meet at Yalta to discuss Europe's postwar reorganization. The Red Army takes Poland and marches on Berlin. Hitler commits suicide, and the war in Europe ends when Germany surrenders on May 8. At the Potsdam Conference, Germany, Austria, Berlin, and Vienna are divided into four occupation zones, and parts of Poland, Finland, Romania, Germany, and the Balkans are assigned

to Soviet control. Rather than invade Japan, the US drops the world's first atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima on August 6 and Nagasaki on August 9; Japan surrenders on August 15, ending the war in the Pacific. The Nuremberg trials of leading Nazi war criminals begin. Vietnam is declared an independent republic by Ho Chi Minh ("He Who Enlightens"), leader of the Viet Minh nationalist coalition. The president of the Indian National Congress, Jawaharlal Nehru, demands full independence from Britain. Fifty-one countries sign the newly created United Nations (UN) Charter for the promotion of peace, security, cooperation, and self-determination of nations.

**1946**

Churchill refers to an "iron curtain" falling across Europe as communist governments are set up in Yugoslavia (1945), Bulgaria and Albania (1946), Poland and Romania (1947), Czechoslovakia (1948), and Hungary (1949). China's communists and nationalists resume civil war. France recognizes Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos as autonomous states, but resistance to colonial authority soon triggers the First Indochina War (1946–1954).

**1947**

India becomes independent; to avoid civil war between Hindus and Muslims, a new state (Pakistan) is created in the Muslim-majority areas in the northwest

and northeast of India, 1,000 miles (1,600 km) apart; widespread violence nonetheless follows partition as Muslims flee India and Hindus leave Pakistan. The United States' European Recovery Plan, or Marshall Plan, aims to help Europe's shattered economies recover, thus ensuring a market for American exports and making the spread of communism in western Europe less likely. The UN proposes to divide Palestine into separate Jewish and Arab states. The sound barrier is broken for the first time by American test pilot Chuck Yeager in a Bell X-1 aircraft.

**1948**

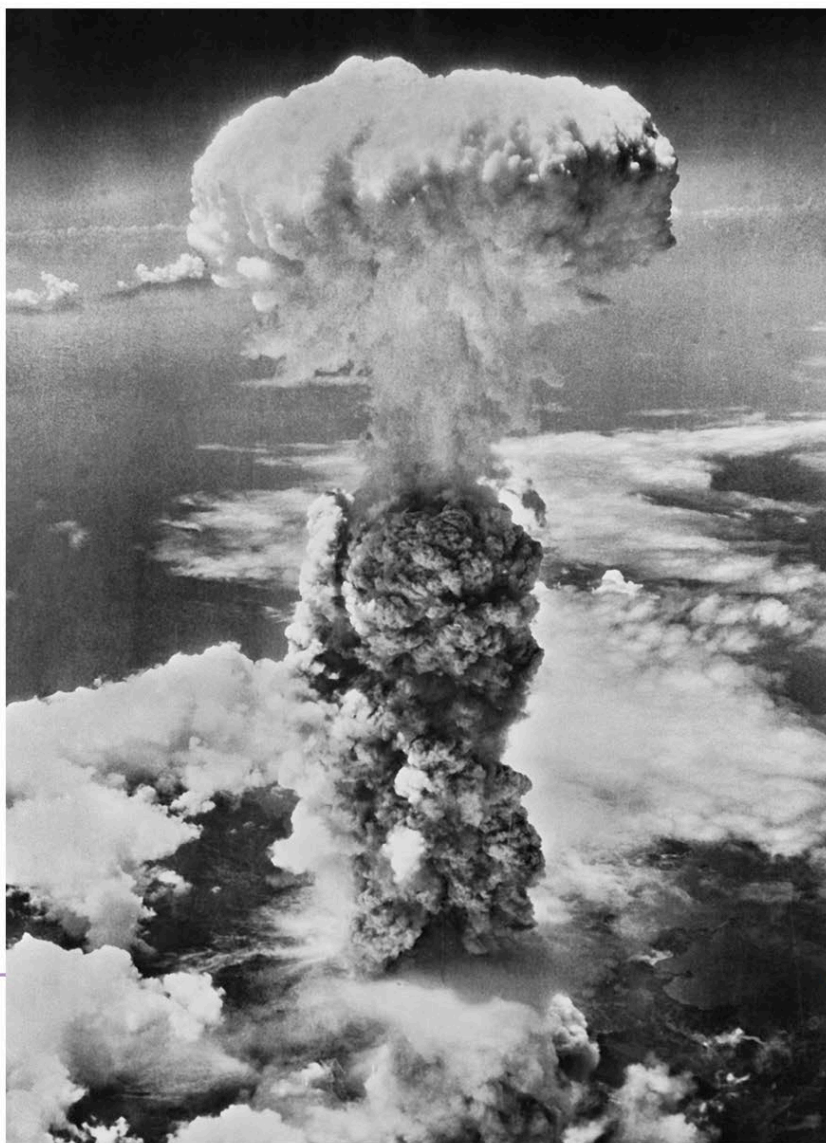
Gandhi is shot and killed by a Hindu fanatic. The South African government begins to increase the amount of legislation that supports its policy of apartheid; the Population Registration Act (1950) makes it compulsory for people to carry a pass identifying their racial group. The state of Israel is proclaimed; soon after, it repulses an invasion by five Arab states (Egypt, Iraq, Lebanon, Syria, and Transjordan) in the First Arab–Israeli War (to 1949). In the first crisis of the Cold War, the Soviet Union blockades Berlin, hoping to force the West to withdraw from West Berlin. Burma and Ceylon become independent. Korea is partitioned into

*"The seeds of totalitarian regimes are nurtured by misery and want."*

PRESIDENT HARRY S. TRUMAN, 1947

◁ **The bombing of Hiroshima**

On August 6, 1945, an American B-29 bomber dropped an atomic bomb over the city of Hiroshima; approximately 80,000 people were killed in the initial blast alone.





1956

the Republic of Korea in the south and the Democratic People's Republic in the north. Communists in Malaya begin a guerrilla war against British colonial rule; the Malayan Emergency (1948–1960) continues for 3 years after Malaya gains independence (1957). The Universal Declaration of Human Rights is adopted by the United Nations. The World Health Organization (WHO) is set up in Geneva, Switzerland.

### 1949

Germany is divided into East and West; East Germany is part of the Communist Bloc. Twelve nations join in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), a military alliance for mutual defense. Eire becomes the Republic of Ireland. The Soviet Union tests its first atomic bomb. After 4 years of war, the Dutch are forced to accept the independence of the East Indies (Indonesia). The Communists emerge victorious in China's civil war; Mao Zedong declares the People's Republic of China; Chiang Kai-shek and the remnants of the nationalist Republic of China government flee to Taiwan. Following the Arab–Israeli War, the Gaza Strip is controlled by Egypt and the West Bank of the River Jordan by Jordan.

### 1950

Senator Joseph McCarthy begins his investigation into alleged Communist activity in the US; over the next 4 years, many people—including prominent Hollywood actors and writers—are accused and blacklisted. The Korean War (to 1953) begins when North Korea invades South Korea; in the first major armed confrontation of the Cold War, US and UN troops support the South, while the Soviet Union and China back the North. Tibet is incorporated into the People's Republic of China, but formally remains autonomous under the Dalai Lama.

### 1951

Mohammad Mosaddegh is appointed prime minister of Iran and nationalizes the oil industry; 2 years later, a US-sponsored coup to replace Mosaddegh fails.

### 1952

East Germany tightens control of its border with West Germany in an attempt to stop the flow of its citizens to the West. Gamal Abdel Nasser seizes power in a military coup in Egypt. Britain drafts troops into Kenya to deal with the anti-colonial Mau Mau Rebellion (to 1960). At Bikini Atoll in the Pacific, the US tests the first hydrogen bomb.

### 1953

Stalin dies; under his successor, Nikita Khrushchev, there is a thaw in relations between Russia and the West. The shah returns to Iran after Mosaddegh is ejected in a coup; US and UK support strengthens the shah's position as he reprivatizes the oil industry. In the UK, Francis Crick and

10 megatons of TNT. The yield of the first hydrogen bomb. It is 100 times more powerful than the Hiroshima bomb.

James Watson build on the work of Rosalind Franklin and Maurice Wilkins and discover the double helix structure of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), the molecule that governs heredity. New Zealand explorer Edmund Hillary and Sherpa Tenzing Norgay scale Mount Everest, the world's highest mountain.

### 1954

French rule in Indochina collapses: Vietnam is partitioned into Ho Chi Minh's Democratic Republic of Vietnam in the north and the State of Vietnam in the south; Laos and Cambodia also become independent. The first nuclear-powered submarine, USS *Nautilus*, is

launched. CERN, the European Organization for Nuclear Research, is established in Geneva, Switzerland, to examine the fundamental structure of the universe.

### 1955

The Eastern Bloc counters NATO with its own military alliance, the Warsaw Pact. Juan Perón is ousted as president in Argentina. Rosa Parks becomes an inspirational figure in the US Civil Rights movement when she breaks Alabama's race laws by refusing to give up her seat on a bus to a white man. The Vietnam War (to 1975) begins: South Vietnam rejects reunification with communist North Vietnam; Viet Minh sympathizers, or "Viet Cong" (Vietnamese Communists), in the South begin an insurgency; the US offers support to Ngo Dinh Diem's government in South Vietnam.

### 1956

Soviet troops invade Hungary when Prime Minister Imre Nagy withdraws from the Warsaw Pact and asks the UN to recognize Hungary as a neutral state. Egypt's President Nasser nationalizes the Suez Canal; British and French forces occupy the canal but are forced to withdraw, a sign of their declining power. Decolonization continues as France withdraws from Morocco and Tunisia and Britain withdraws from Sudan.



#### ▷ The conquest of Everest

Sir Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay are photographed on Mount Everest on May 28, 1953; they reach the summit the next day.





◁ **The beginning of the jet age**  
Entering service with Pan American Airlines in 1958, the Boeing 707 replaced an earlier generation of piston-engined airliners, making international air travel safer and more affordable.

1957

**1957**

Six countries join the European Economic Community (EEC), created by the Treaty of Rome. The USSR launches the *Sputnik 1* satellite and begins the Space Age. President Sukarno of Indonesia nationalizes Dutch businesses, expels all Dutch nationals, and imposes martial law. Sudan and Ghana are the first British colonies in Africa to gain independence.

**1958**

Forced industrialization in Mao's "Great Leap Forward" plunges China into one of history's worst famines; over 35 million are worked, starved, or beaten to death. General de Gaulle is elected president of the Fifth Republic in France. NASA (North American Space Agency) is established. The Boeing 707 begins commercial flights across the Atlantic, revolutionizing air travel.

**1959**

The Cuban Revolution makes Fidel Castro the first communist head of state in the Americas. The Dalai Lama and 80,000 Tibetans flee to India when China takes full control of Tibet. North Vietnamese guerrillas invade South Vietnam; two US soldiers are killed. The US gains its 49th and 50th states: Alaska and Hawaii.

**1960**

In Africa, 12 French colonies, Congo (Belgian), and Nigeria and Somalia (British) gain independence. The Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) is founded to coordinate policy and provide members with economic and technical aid. John F. Kennedy becomes US president.

Civil war (to 1964) breaks out in the Congo; the UN is nearly bankrupt by its attempts to restore order there. The South African government begins the forced resettlement of black South Africans to so-called "black homelands." The US physicist Theodore H. Maiman builds the first laser.

**1961**

The Soviet rocket *Vostok 1* carries Yuri Gagarin into space. American troops begin to arrive in South Korea. South Africa withdraws from the British Commonwealth and becomes a republic. In the Bay of Pigs invasion, US-trained Cuban exiles invade Cuba, aiming to overthrow Castro's government; they are soon defeated. East German troops build the Berlin Wall; it eventually extends over 100 miles (160km), dividing the city and encircling West Berlin.

**1962**

Algeria, Uganda, Jamaica, and Trinidad and Tobago become independent. The first communication satellite, *Telstar 1*, relays international telephone calls and transmits its first television signals from

Europe to the US. Nuclear war between the US and the Soviet Union is narrowly avoided during the Cuban Missile Crisis.

**1963**

The Test Ban Treaty, signed by the US, USSR, and UK, ends nuclear testing in the atmosphere. At the March on Washington, civil rights leader Martin Luther King Jr. addresses 250,000

between the Greek and Turkish populations; Turkish Cypriots are confined to small enclaves of the island. US President Lyndon B. Johnson signs the Civil Rights Act into law, creating equal rights for all, regardless of race, religion, or color. Nelson Mandela, leader of the anti-apartheid Spear of the Nation movement, is sentenced to life imprisonment in South Africa for conspiring to overthrow the state.

*"Palestine is the cement that holds the Arab world together, or it is the explosive that blows it apart."*

YASSER ARAFAT, 1974

protesters. President Kennedy is assassinated in Dallas; Lee Harvey Oswald is arrested, but is shot soon after. Singapore, Sarawak, and Sabah join the 11 states of the Federation of Malaya to create Malaysia. Jomo Kenyatta becomes prime minister, then president, of a fully independent Kenya.

**1964**

The UN sends troops to Cyprus (which has been independent from Britain since 1960) after civil war breaks out

**1965**

The US begins bombing North Vietnam in the hope that Ho Chi Minh will stop Viet Cong operations in South Vietnam; 500,000 US troops land in South Vietnam. Pakistani troops invade the Indian zone in Kashmir; the UN intervenes to secure a ceasefire.

**1966**

Mao's Cultural Revolution aims to rid China of "impure elements;" by 1976, much of China's cultural heritage is destroyed in the process.

**1967**

Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, and Thailand form the Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN). Martial law is imposed in Greece after a military coup. Israel seizes Sinai, the Gaza Strip, West Bank, Golan Heights, and Jerusalem in the Six-Day (or Arab-Israeli) War. One million Igbo people flee Hausa violence for eastern Nigeria, which secedes as Biafra; civil war ensues, and Biafra is reincorporated into Nigeria in 1970. Australian Aborigines are finally given full citizenship rights.

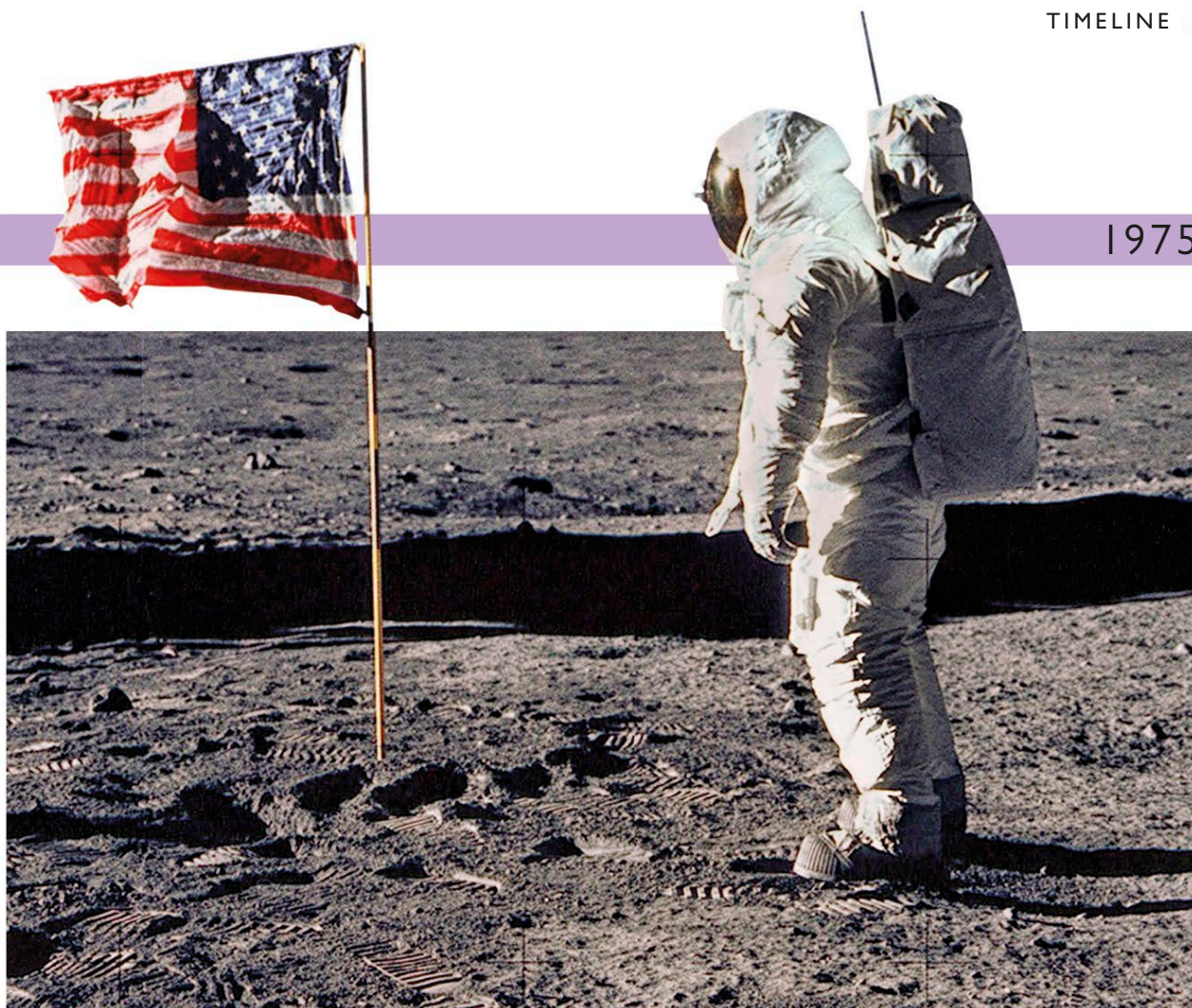
▷ **The assassination of JFK**

President Kennedy and his wife smile at the crowds lining their motorcade route in Dallas, Texas, on November 22, 1963, just minutes before the president is assassinated.



▷ **Moon landings**

*Apollo 11* Lunar Module pilot Buzz Aldrin walks on the surface of the Moon on July 20, 1969. Aldrin and Armstrong spent less than 22 hours on the lunar surface.



1975

**1968**

The Viet Cong capture the majority of South Vietnam's towns and villages in the Tet Offensive; the US public is convinced that the Vietnam War is unwinnable. Martin Luther King Jr. is assassinated in Memphis; his death sparks race riots across the US. Warsaw Pact troops invade Czechoslovakia and crush the Prague Spring reform movement. Saddam Hussein plays a prominent role in helping the socialist Ba'ath party seize power in Iraq.

**1969**

Yasser Arafat becomes leader of the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO). Mu'ammar al-Gaddafi deposes King Idris and forms the Libyan Arab Republic. Sectarian violence escalates in Northern Ireland; the Troubles continue until 1998. American astronauts Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin are the first men on the Moon.

**1970**

The Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, ratified by the US, the Soviet Union, Britain, and 40 other countries, aims to prevent the spread of nuclear weapons.

**1971**

Idi Amin seizes power in Uganda. India supports the Mukti Bahini in the War of Liberation in East Pakistan; East Pakistan becomes the independent state of Bangladesh. Qatar becomes independent from Britain. The People's Republic of China joins the UN.

**1972**

On Bloody Sunday, British troops open fire on Catholic demonstrators in Londonderry, Northern Ireland; support for the Irish Republican Army grows. Palestinian terrorists kill members of Israel's team at the Munich Olympics. In the Philippines, President Ferdinand Marcos imposes martial law.

**1973**

US troops finally withdraw from Vietnam. The IRA begins bombing targets in mainland Britain. In the US-backed military coup led by General Augusto Pinochet, Chile's Marxist president Salvador Allende commits suicide (or is murdered) after delivering a farewell speech over the radio. In the Yom Kippur (or October) War, Israel repulses Arab attacks led by Egypt and Syria; OPEC embargoes oil exports to the US and the Netherlands, Israel's main supporters, causing oil shortages and spiraling inflation; oil-importing countries begin to find other sources of oil and invest in coal, gas, and nuclear power. Denmark, Ireland, and the UK join the EEC. Mohammad Daoud Khan seizes power and establishes the Republic of Afghanistan. Companies IBM and Xerox develop prototype personal computers, and the first telephone call from a handheld cellphone is made in the US.

**1974**

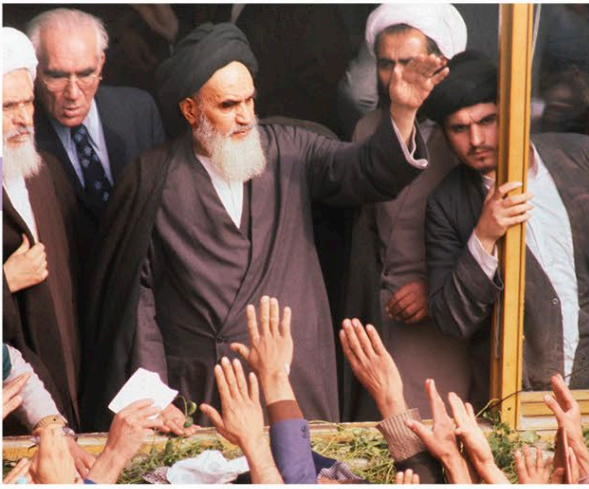
Democracy is restored in Portugal when a bloodless coup brings an end to the dictatorial Estado Novo regime. Portugal's African colonies gain independence: Guinea Bissau in 1974; Cape Verde, Angola, Mozambique, and São Tomé and Príncipe in 1975. Turkish troops occupy northeast Cyprus; Greek Cypriots flee to the south, and the country is partitioned. US President Richard Nixon resigns after being implicated in the Watergate bugging scandal. English scientist Stephen Hawking outlines his theory on black hole radiation, known as "Hawking radiation." Isabel Péron succeeds her husband in Argentina and is Latin America's first female president.

**1975**

The fall of Saigon to North Vietnamese troops ends the Vietnamese War; North and South Vietnam are reunified in 1976. Civil war breaks out in Lebanon (to 1990). Pol Pot's Khmer Rouge seizes power in Cambodia and begins a reign of terror in which, by 1979, over 1 million people are killed. Civil war (to 2002) erupts in Angola between US-funded guerrillas and South African troops and communist guerrillas funded by the USSR and supported by Cuban troops. Indonesia invades East Timor; decades of guerrilla resistance and brutal suppression follow. The monarchy is restored in Spain when General Franco dies; Juan Carlos I is king.

**10** The number of people to have landed on the surface of the Moon since the *Apollo 11* mission of 1969.





#### ◀ Khomeini in Iran

Ayatollah Khomeini waves to supporters after his return to Tehran in February 1979. He declares an Islamic republic and is appointed Iran's political and religious leader for life.

## 1976

left-wing Sandinistas; their opponents, backed by the CIA, form a militia known as the Contras. In Iran, an Islamic revolution sees Ayatollah Khomeini

### 1976

Chairman Mao dies; the Gang of Four (who controlled the government in line with Mao's wishes) are arrested, two are sentenced to death, the others are imprisoned. Syrian peacekeeping troops enter Lebanon. In Soweto, South Africa, 176 people are killed in clashes with the police during anti-apartheid protests.

### 1977

Prominent black rights activist Steve Biko is tortured to death in prison in South Africa. Pakistan's Prime Minister Zulfikar al Bhutto is overthrown in a military coup; accused of conspiracy, he is executed in 1978. Mengistu Haile Mariam takes control of the Dergue (ruling body) in Ethiopia and begins to build a communist state.

### 1978

Israeli troops enter Lebanon; the Camp David Accords pave the way for the Egypt–Israel Treaty in 1979. In Afghanistan, Daoud is assassinated and an unstable regime takes over. Vietnamese troops invade Cambodia; in 1979, the Khmer Rouge is overthrown; civil war in Cambodia continues until 1991, when Vietnam withdraws. The first “test-tube baby” is born following conception by *in vitro* fertilization (IVF). Numerous strikes by public sector workers in Britain create the “winter of discontent.”

### 1979

Idi Amin's brutal regime in Uganda is overthrown; he dies in exile in Saudi Arabia in 2003. The US-backed Somoza regime in Nicaragua is overthrown by

return to Iran when the shah is ousted; he leads the Islamic Republic of Iran until his death in 1989; Iranian militants seize 63 hostages from Tehran's US embassy. Soviet troops invade Afghanistan to suppress an Islamist revolt (to 1989) by US-armed guerrilla Mujaheddin forces; 6 million refugees flee to Iran and Pakistan. Panama regains control of the Panama Canal Zone; it gains control of the canal itself in 1999. Saddam Hussein becomes President of Iraq with absolute power.

### 1980

Rhodesia becomes independent as Zimbabwe; Robert Mugabe becomes Prime Minister. Saddam Hussein's Iraq invades Iran; the Iran–Iraq war (to 1988) results in huge casualties on both sides. The US ends aid to Nicaragua and funds the Contras in Honduras. Polish dockyard strikers form Solidarność, a trade union independent of Communist Party control that swiftly develops, under Lech Wałęsa, into a political movement. The WHO ensures smallpox is the first infectious disease to be eradicated.

**1,000,000** The estimated number of people on both sides killed during the Iran–Iraq War of 1980–1988.

### 1981

President Anwar Sadat of Egypt is assassinated by Muslim terrorists angry at the peace agreement with Israel. Pope John Paul II and US president Ronald Reagan are both shot, but survive. The US hostage crisis in Tehran ends after 444 days, when Iran releases 52 hostages. King Juan Carlos survives a military coup, in which rebels hold members of the Spanish parliament hostage. AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome) is first identified in the US; scientists identify the HIV virus responsible for AIDS in 1984. The first “keyhole” surgery is performed. Polish government imposes martial law.

### 1982

Argentinian troops invade the Falkland Islands; a British task force brings the war to an end after 10 weeks; Argentine dictator Leopold Galtieri resigns. Israel invades Lebanon and besieges Beirut, forcing the PLO to move its

headquarters to Tunis; militant group Hezbollah emerges in Lebanon and aims to establish an Islamic state there. In Poland, the trade union Solidarność is banned and its leaders arrested.

### 1983

Tamil Tigers seeking an independent state begin a war in Sri Lanka; they are defeated in 2009. Sudan imposes Sharia law, prompting civil war between the Christian south and Muslim north; South Sudan becomes independent when the war ends in 2005. Terrorists in Lebanon bomb the US embassy in Beirut and the French and US peacekeeping headquarters. The USSR shoots down a Korean airliner it mistakes for a US spy plane. US troops invade Grenada after a Marxist coup raises concerns about the spread of communism; constitutional government is restored in 1984. General Noriega becomes dictator in Panama.



#### ▷ Polish Solidarity

Polish police block demonstrators supporting the trade union Solidarność (Solidarity), which has become a national movement of resistance backed by the Roman Catholic Church.





◀ **Tamil Tigers**  
Many young men and boys joined the Tamil Tigers fighting for an independent Tamil homeland in the north of Sri Lanka.

1990

9 billion light-years.  
The distance of the farthest star detected by the Hubble Space Telescope.

Solidarność is legalized and Lech Wałęsa becomes Poland's first postcommunist president in 1990; communist regimes fall in Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Bulgaria, Romania, and East Germany; citizens breach the Berlin Wall, symbolically ending the Cold War. Democracy is restored in Chile with the collapse of Pinochet's military regime and election of Patricio Aylwin. British engineer Sir Tim Berners-Lee outlines his concept for a World Wide Web. US troops invade Panama City and capture General Noriega after blasting rock music at the Vatican embassy where he was taking shelter; in the US, he is jailed for drug trafficking and money laundering.

**1990**  
In South Africa, President F. W. de Klerk lifts the ban on the African National Congress (ANC), frees Nelson Mandela, and repeals the remaining apartheid laws (1991). Namibia gains independence from South Africa. UN forces are sent to the Persian Gulf after Iraq invades Kuwait. East and West Germany are reunited as the Federal Republic of Germany. The Hubble Space Telescope (HST) goes into orbit 340 miles (547km) above Earth's atmosphere. Aung San Suu Kyi's party wins the election in Myanmar, but she is kept under house arrest. The Sandinistas are defeated in free elections in Nicaragua; Daniel Ortega is replaced by Violeta Barrios de Chamorro.

**1984–1985**  
The Ethiopian famine is one of the 20th century's deadliest disasters, as more than 400,000 people die and millions are left destitute; civil war hampers international relief efforts.

**1984**  
India's prime minister Indira Gandhi orders troops to oust Sikh extremists occupying a complex at Amritsar that includes the Golden Temple (the center of the Sikh religion); she is assassinated by her own Sikh bodyguards soon after. Toxic methyl isocyanate gas leaks from the Union Carbide pesticide plant in Bhopal, India; 500,000 people are exposed and 2,000 die as a result.

**1985**  
In the USSR, Mikhail Gorbachev is elected Executive President; his policies of *glasnost* (openness) and *perestroika* (restructuring) bring Russia closer to the US and Europe. In the UK, a miners' strike ends after 11 months; prime minister Margaret Thatcher succeeds in breaking the power of the industrial unions. A hole in the ozone layer over Antarctica is discovered.

**1986**  
Ferdinand Marcos, dictator of the Philippines, flees after being defeated in the election. The US responds to a terrorist attack on US soldiers in Berlin believed to have been ordered by Libya by bombing Tripoli. Radioactive contamination spreads across Europe after an explosion at the Chernobyl

**1988**  
A bomb aboard PanAm flight 103 explodes over Lockerbie, Scotland, killing 270 people; Libya accepts responsibility in 2003. Osama bin Laden founds the terrorist organization al-Qaeda. Cuban and South African troops withdraw from Angola and Namibia. Martial law is imposed in

*"The essence of perestroika lies in the fact that it unites socialism with democracy ..."*

MIKHAIL GORBACHEV, FROM PERESTROIKA, 1987

nuclear power plant in Ukraine. The US and Commonwealth impose limited economic sanctions on South Africa in protest against apartheid.

Burma, which is renamed Myanmar; opposition leaders, including Aung San Suu Kyi, are imprisoned.

**1987**  
The US and USSR sign the INF (Intermediate-range Nuclear Forces) Treaty. Palestinians fight against Israeli occupation of the West Bank and Gaza in the First Intifada (to 1993). On Black Monday, the US stock market experiences its worst crash since 1929.

**1989**  
More than 1 million protesters gather in Tiananmen Square, Beijing, to call for economic and political reform; over 3,000 are killed and 10,000 injured when Chinese troops and tanks open fire. Soviet troops withdraw from Afghanistan. A series of revolutions tears down the Iron Curtain: in Poland,



**1991**

UN forces expel Iraqi troops from Kuwait in the First Gulf War. The Paris Peace Accords end the Cambodian–Vietnamese War. The USSR is dissolved, breaking into 15 countries; Russia, Ukraine, and Belarus form the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS). Boris Yeltsin is elected first president of the Russian Federation. Yugoslavia disintegrates, and the region descends into a series of civil wars: Slovenia and Croatia declare their independence; Slovenia repels the Serb-dominated Yugoslav People's Army in the Ten-Day War; fighting in Croatia ends in 1995. Mengistu flees Ethiopia when the Ethiopian People's Revolutionary Democratic Front takes control; he is later sentenced to death for crimes against humanity. Civil war (to 2002) breaks out in Algeria between the government and various Islamic militant groups.

**1992**

The Maastricht Treaty creates the European Union (EU) and commits its 12 signatory states to common citizenship and common economic and defense policies. Bosnia and Herzegovina seek independence from the remnant of Yugoslavia, sparking the Bosnian War (to 1995); Radovan Karadžić's policy of ethnic cleansing results in the systematic destruction of 296 Bosnian Muslim villages and the

◁ **Flag of the European Union**

The Maastricht Treaty, signed in February 1992, laid the foundations for a single European currency and expanded cooperation between countries in a number of areas.

**1991–2004**

execution of at least 3,000 Muslims around Srebrenica; in 2016, Karadžić is found guilty of genocide. Mujaheddin rebels oust president Najibullah in Afghanistan; the fundamentalist Muslim Taliban are strengthened. Sectarian violence in India sees Hindus destroy the Babri mosque in Ayodhya; 12 bombs are detonated in Mumbai in response in 1993.

Ireland, a ceasefire is declared by the IRA and Protestant paramilitaries; it is broken in 1995, when the IRA bombs Canary Wharf, London. The Channel Tunnel linking Britain and France opens.

**1995**

A Gulf War veteran plants a bomb in Oklahoma City that kills 168 people. Israeli prime minister Yitzhak Rabin is

*"Never, never, and never again shall it be that this beautiful land will again experience the oppression of one by another ..."*

NELSON MANDELA, 1994

**1993**

Czechoslovakia splits peacefully into the Czech Republic and Slovakia. Israel and the PLO sign the Oslo Accords; they agree to mutual recognition and set out the principles for Palestinian autonomy. Prince Sihanouk is elected head of state in Cambodia.

**1994**

In Rwanda, civil war leads to genocide: Hutu extremists massacre 800,000 Tutsis; 2 million Hutus flee to neighboring countries. Nelson Mandela becomes the country's first black president in South Africa's first democratic elections. Russian troops enter the Muslim-dominated region of Chechnya; after a disastrous war, Russia is forced to offer Chechnya almost complete autonomy (1996). The US invades Haiti to restore Jean-Bertrand Aristide to power. In

assassinated shortly after winning the Nobel Peace Prize with Yasser Arafat and Shimon Perez. UN peacekeepers pull out of Somalia, having failed to secure the end of the civil war. The US Department of Defense completes the first operational satellite-based GPS (Global Positioning System).

**1996**

Taliban rebels capture Kabul and declare Afghanistan a fundamentalist Islamic state; Osama bin Laden returns to Afghanistan. Israeli shells kill over 100 civilians in Lebanon; Hezbollah is accused of using civilians as human shields. Created in Scotland, Dolly the sheep is the first mammal to be cloned from an adult cell.

**1997**

Tutsi rebels attack Hutu refugee camps in Zaire; Laurent Kabila ends dictator Mobutu Sese Seko's 32-year rule, and Zaire is renamed the Democratic Republic of Congo.

Hong Kong returns to China when Britain's 99-year lease expires. A major financial crisis in Asia leads to an economic slump in many developing countries and the wider world. Industrialized nations agree to cut carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gas emissions to combat global warming in the Kyoto Protocol. Kofi Annan is the first black African to be appointed secretary-general of the UN.

**1998**

The Good Friday agreement ends the Troubles in Northern Ireland and provides the region with devolved government. India and Pakistan begin tests of nuclear weapons. Serbs and ethnic Albanians clash in Kosovo. The financial crisis deepens: Indonesia's economy collapses, and President Suharto resigns; the price of oil drops, contributing to Russia's economic difficulties. In Africa, war breaks out between Eritrea and Ethiopia (to 2000), and the Democratic Republic of Congo descends into civil war again. US missiles hit al-Qaeda targets in Afghanistan and Sudan. US and Britain bomb Iraq after it ceases to cooperate with UN inspectors looking for weapons of mass destruction.

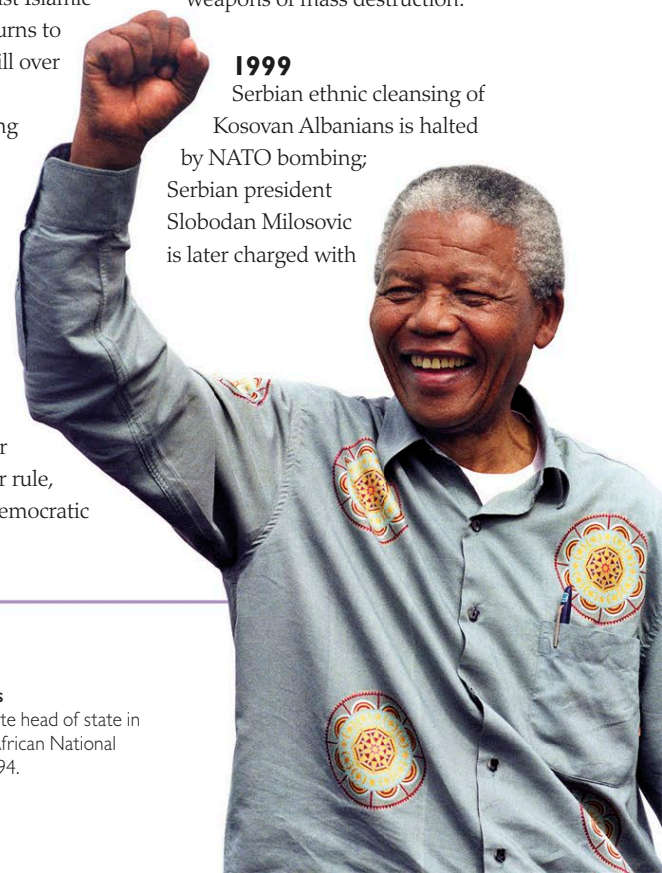
**1999**

Serbian ethnic cleansing of Kosovan Albanians is halted by NATO bombing; Serbian president Slobodan Milosovic is later charged with

**31.4** miles (50.5 km). The length of the Channel Tunnel linking England and France.

▷ **Nelson Mandela victorious**

Mandela became the first nonwhite head of state in South Africa after his party, the African National Congress, won the election of 1994.





## ▷ 9/11

Hijacked United Airlines Flight 175 from Boston crashes into the south tower of the World Trade Center and explodes at 9:03 a.m. on September 11, 2001, in New York City.

**500** mph  
(800 kph). The speed  
of the devastating  
tsunami in the Indian  
Ocean in 2004.

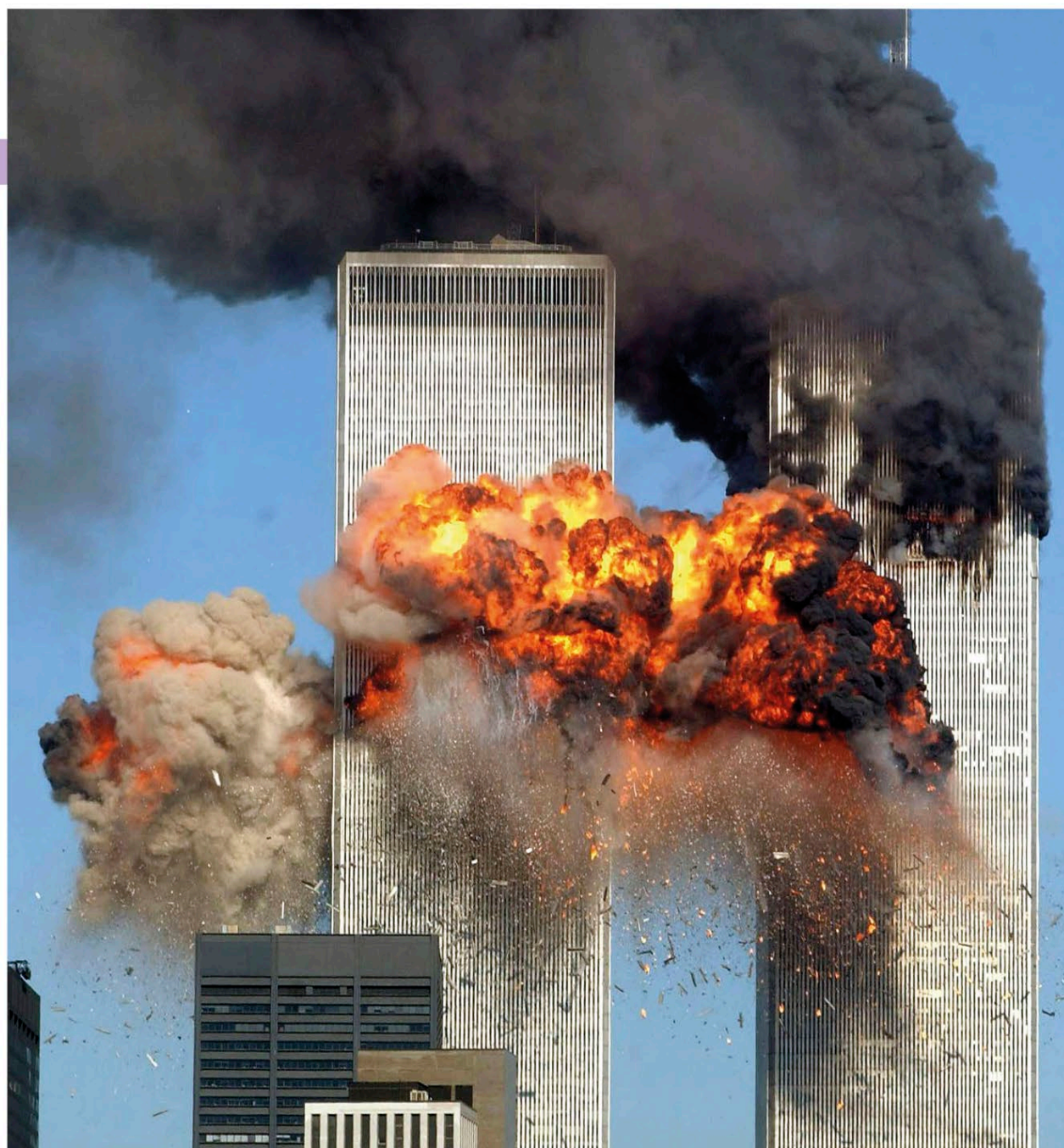
war crimes, but dies in prison in 2006. East Timor votes to secede from Indonesia; anti-independence rebels supported by the Indonesian military attack civilians; independence is granted in 2002. General Pervez Musharraf seizes control in Pakistan. Russian forces reassert Russian control over Chechnya after Chechen rebels begin to attack Russian targets. President Yeltsin resigns, leaving former KGB agent Vladimir Putin as acting president. Portugal returns Macau to Chinese control more than 430 years after Portugal first leased the territory (1557).

**2000**

Vladimir Putin wins the presidential election in Russia. Israel pulls out of South Lebanon after 22 years of occupation. More than 3,000 Israelis and Palestinians are killed in the Second Intifada. Bashar al-Assad becomes president of Syria. The first crew arrives at the International Space Station (ISS).

**2001**

On September 11, 2,996 people are killed in four al-Qaeda terror attacks in the US. The US declares a “war on terrorism” and, with the UK, attacks targets in Afghanistan thought to be harboring Osama bin Laden; the war in Afghanistan ends in 2014. China has the fastest-growing economy in the world and is admitted to the World Trade Organization.

**2002**

US President George W. Bush describes the countries of Iraq, Iran, and North Korea as the “axis of evil.” The Euro is introduced in 12 European countries. Civil war in Sierra Leone and Angola ends. In the US-led invasion of Afghanistan, the Taliban are swept from power. In Bali, 200 are killed when Islamist terrorists bomb a club. Over 100 die when Chechen militants besiege a Moscow theater. US troops return to the Gulf when Iraq denies that it has weapons of mass destruction.

**2003**

Civil war erupts in Darfur, west Sudan. The State Union of Serbia and Montenegro emerges as Yugoslavia ceases to exist. The Iraq War begins as a US-led coalition invades Iraq and topples Saddam Hussein’s government; it struggles to stabilize the country and contain insurgency. Scientists publish the results of the Human Genome Project, identifying the DNA sequence of a full set of human chromosomes. The SARS virus, a new form of pneumonia, spreads globally.

**2004**

In Madrid, Islamic terrorists place bombs on commuter trains, killing 191. Ten countries join the EU, most of them former communist states in eastern Europe. An earthquake of magnitude 9.1–9.3 off Sumatra triggers the most destructive tsunami in history; more than 200,000 people in 11 countries across the Indian Ocean and Southeast Asia lose their lives; millions are made homeless. Chechen rebels take a school hostage in Beslan, southern Russia; more than 300 people are killed.



▷ **Obama campaign button**  
Democrat Barack Obama was elected as the 44th President of the United States in 2008, winning 59.2 percent of the popular vote.



## 2005–2018

**6.9** trillion dollars. The value wiped off global stock markets in the 2008 crash; it is the largest fall in history.

### 2005

Mahmoud Abbas becomes president of the Palestinian Authority after the death of Yasser Arafat. Syria withdraws from Lebanon, and Israel withdraws from Gaza. In London, 52 people die when Islamist suicide bombers target public transportation. In Ireland, the Provisional IRA announces that it will cease its armed campaign and pursue its goals through peaceful political means. In the US, the city of New Orleans is devastated by Hurricane Katrina; in Pakistan, an earthquake kills more than 70,000 people in Kashmir.

### 2006

In Palestine, Hamas—the Sunni-Islamist fundamentalist organization—wins the parliamentary elections. In the month-long Lebanon War, Hezbollah captures

two Israeli soldiers; Israel responds with air and rocket strikes on south Lebanon; the UN brokers a ceasefire, and an international force occupies south Lebanon. North Korea begins its testing of nuclear weapons. Serbia and Montenegro split into separate nations. Basque separatist organization ETA announces a ceasefire, ending 40 years of terrorist activity.

### 2007

In occupied Iran, sectarian violence between Sunni and Shia militias escalates. Political enemies the DUP and Sinn Féin agree to share power in the Northern Ireland Assembly. Pratibha Patil becomes the first female President of India. Russia cuts oil supplies to Poland, Germany, and Ukraine during a dispute with Belarus.

### 2007–2011

A global recession follows the collapse of the Lehman Brothers investment bank; banks worldwide face insolvency and throttle lending. Bulgaria and Romania join the EU, which now has 27 member states.

### 2008

Barack Obama becomes the United States' first African-American president. Kosovo declares independence from Serbia. Nepal becomes a republic after abolishing the monarchy. Russia invades the Russian enclaves of South Ossetia and Abkhazia in Georgia. Australia's prime minister apologizes to the "Stolen Generations" of indigenous children removed from their families.

### 2009

Israel invades Gaza to halt rocket attacks by Hamas; it withdraws 3 weeks later. Russia ends military operations in Chechnya; jihadists remain active in the region. A global pandemic of swine flu kills 17,000.

### 2010

In Haiti, around 230,000 people die in a devastating earthquake. The International Monetary Fund (IMF) and EU bail out the Greek and Irish economies with huge loans, but insist on the introduction of severe austerity measures. Myanmar's military regime releases pro-democracy leader Aung San Suu Kyi. Argentina's economic crisis sees the country go through five presidents in 1 month. The nonprofit WikiLeaks organization publishes more than 90,000 classified reports about US involvement in the war in Afghanistan. An explosion at the Deepwater Horizon oil rig spills 200 million gallons of oil into the Gulf of Mexico.





▷ **The fall of President Mugabe**

People in Zimbabwe take to the streets in 2017, demanding that Robert Mugabe resign as President—a post he had held for 37 years.



## 2011

In the Arab Spring, pro-democracy rebellions erupt across North Africa and the Middle East: in Egypt, President Hosni Mubarak hands power to the army after mass protests; in Libya, Mu'ammar al-Gaddafi's regime is toppled, but civil war follows; in Syria, civil war begins with a violent crackdown on civilian dissenters. South Sudan becomes independent of Sudan, but ethnic tensions fuel civil war in 2013. Osama bin Laden is killed by US special forces in Pakistan. The war in Iraq ends, and US troops withdraw. Three fission reactors at Fukushima Nuclear Power Plant in Japan melt down after being damaged by a tsunami that kills 20,000.

## 2012

Mohammed Morsi of the Muslim Brotherhood wins Egypt's presidential elections. Schoolgirl, blogger, and human rights activist Malala Yousafzai is shot and wounded by the Taliban in Pakistan; she survives and becomes the youngest Nobel laureate in 2014. In Africa, civil war breaks out in the Central African Republic; there are coups in Mali and Guinea-Bissau. Austrian skydiver Felix Baumgartner, diving from a helium balloon 24 miles (39 km) above Earth, is the first person to break the sound barrier without any machine assistance.

## 2013

French forces intervene against Islamist insurgents fighting the government in northern Mali. Syria's government pledges to hand over its chemical weapons for destruction after denying responsibility for a chemical attack on Ghouta. Violence breaks out in Egypt after President Morsi is ousted in a military coup. A shopping mall in Nairobi, Kenya, is attacked by fundamentalist Islamist militants belonging to the al-Shabaab group.

## 2014

The Ebola virus kills 11,000 people in west Africa by 2016. In Ukraine, the pro-Russian president is ousted; Russia invades eastern Ukraine and annexes Crimea; the US imposes sanctions on Russia. Israel launches air strikes on Gaza; a ground offensive follows. In Nigeria, Islamic extremist group Boko Haram kidnaps 276 schoolgirls. Civil war resumes in Libya: the democratically elected government in Tobruk faces Islamist factions in Tripoli and Benghazi. The terrorist group Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant (ISIL, also known as ISIS or Daesh) occupies territory in northern Iraq and Syria; more than 3 million refugees flee to neighboring countries.

## 2015

Egypt begins air strikes targeting ISIL in Libya. A Saudi-led Arab coalition begins military intervention in Yemen, attacking

## 2016

The United Kingdom votes to leave the European Union. Barack Obama is the first US president to visit Cuba since 1928. In November, Donald Trump becomes US President; within months, he is embroiled in an investigation into alleged collusion with Russia. Islamist terror continues, with multiple attacks in France, Germany, and Belgium. Fifty-two years of conflict in Colombia

North Korea fires a ballistic missile across Japan and continues its nuclear testing; international condemnation is followed by increased sanctions. More than 20 million people face starvation and famine in Yemen, Somalia, South Sudan, and Nigeria. Reports emerge that the Syrian government has dropped toxic gas on a rebel-held town; the US launches a missile strike on the Syrian air base at Sharyat. The autonomous region of Catalonia declares independence, but Spain refuses to recognize it; Catalan leaders are arrested. Thousands of Rohingya Muslims flee Myanmar after experiencing systematic violence, amounting to ethnic cleansing.

*"A girl has the power to go forward in her life. And she's not only a mother, she's not only a sister, she's not only a wife."*

MALALA YOUSAFZAI, 2014

Iranian-backed Houthi rebels in the south. Al-Shabaab shoots 148 people, mainly students, at Garissa University in Kenya. Iran agrees to limit its nuclear program if sanctions are eased. Russia begins air strikes against ISIL and anti-government forces in Syria. ISIL destroys ancient sites in Syria and is responsible for multiple attacks across the world. The Paris Accord commits nearly 200 countries to reducing carbon emissions. The Zika fever epidemic begins in Brazil and rapidly spreads throughout the Americas, causing worldwide alarm. Surgeons in New York perform the first full facial transplant.

ends when the government and the Revolutionary Armed Forces of Colombia—People's Army (FARC) agree a peace deal.

## 2017

President Trump's decision to pull out of the Paris Accord to combat climate change makes the US the only country in the world not to be part of the agreement. A military coup forces Robert Mugabe to resign after 37 years as President of Zimbabwe. Islamist terror attacks continue in Europe in Manchester, London, Barcelona, Turkey, France, Germany, Russia, and Belgium.

## 2018

In China, the government brings in a change to the constitution that lifts term limits for its leaders; the sitting president Xi Jinping effectively becomes "President for Life." In Russia, Vladimir Putin is elected as president for a fourth term. North Korean leader Kim Jong-un crosses into South Korea to meet with President Moon Jae-in; he is the first North Korean leader to cross the Demilitarized Zone since its creation in 1953. The United States, together with the UK and France, bombs Syrian military bases in response to a chemical attack launched by Bashar al-Assad on civilians in Ghouta. Social media company Facebook is rocked by scandal relating to its sharing of personal data.

◁ **Tragedy in Japan**

A magnitude-9 earthquake shakes northeastern Japan, unleashing a savage tsunami that destroys 250,000 buildings. It is thought to be the costliest natural disaster in history.



# INDEX

Page numbers in **bold** refer to main entries.

9/11 attack 423

## A

Abbas, Mahmoud 424  
 Abbas I, Shah 389  
 Abbasid Caliphate 90, 95, 96, 97, 372, 373, 374, 375, 380, 382  
 Abd al-Malik, Caliph 94  
 Abd al-Rahman 373  
 Aboriginal peoples 18–19, 188, 221, 351, 401, 407, 408, 418, 424  
 Abu Bakr, Caliph 371  
 Abu Dhabi 346  
 Abu Simbel 35  
 Abydos 32  
 Abyssinia 248, 249, 294  
 Acadia 190, 192  
 Achaea 66  
 Achaemenid Empire 59, 61  
 Acre 107, 380  
 Acropolis (Athens) 38, 62, 173, 361, 362  
 Actium, Battle of 68, 365  
 Acts of Union 396, 402  
 Ada of Caria, Queen 61  
 Adena culture 52, 53, 359, 363  
 Adowa, Battle of 248  
 Adrianople (Edirne) 120, 267  
 Adriatic Sea 112  
 adzes 22  
 Aegean Sea 38, 59, 112  
 Aeschylus 62  
 Afghanistan 176, 177, 224, 246, 247, 398, 405, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423  
 Afonso I of Portugal 379  
 Africa  
   agriculture 25  
   Atlantic slave trade **196–97**  
   colonization 242–43, **248–49**  
   decolonization **322–23**  
   Dutch in 185  
   exploration of 151, 243  
   first humans 12–13, **14–15**, 16–17  
   Iron Age 47  
   Mansa Musa **138–39**  
   peoples and empires **136–37**  
   population 346, 347  
   scramble for 230, 240, 241, 242–43, **248–49**  
   spice trade **162–63**  
   *see also* countries by name; North Africa  
 African National Congress 411, 421, 422

Afsharid Dynasty 397  
 Age of Reason 202  
 Age of Revolution **188–89**  
 Aghlabid Dynasty 96  
 Agilulf, King of the Lombards 109  
 Agincourt, Battle of 111, 385  
 Agnolo di Tura 91  
 Agricola, Rudolph 161  
 agriculture  
   age of exchange **158–59**  
   Agricultural Revolution 188, **194–95**, 212, 214, 396  
   collectivization 290, 412, 413  
   first farmers 13, **22–23**  
   origins of **24–25**, 158, 352  
   and settlements 26–27, 30  
 Agrigentum, Battle of 67  
 Ahmose of Thebes, Pharaoh 35, 357  
 AIDS 420  
 Ain Ghazal 27  
 Ain Jalut, Battle of 130, 131, 382  
 Akbar, Emperor 176, 177, 388  
 Akhenaten, Pharaoh 35, 358  
 Akkadian Empire 33, 355  
 Aksum 87, 136, 137, 368  
 al-Andalus 122  
 al-Ma'mun 96  
 al-Qaeda 421, 422, 423  
 al-Shabaab 425  
 Alabama 327  
 Alamo, Battle of the 404  
 Alans 81, 108  
 Alarcos, Battle of 122  
 Alaska 20, 21, 246, 247, 397, 406, 418  
 Albania 266, 296, 416, 422  
 Albuquerque, Afonso de 162, 387  
 d'Alembert, Jean Le Rond 203  
 Aleppo 106, 172, 279  
 Aleutian Islands 301  
 Alexander the Great 45, 51, 56, **60–61**, 73, 362, 363  
 Alexander II, Czar 238, 407  
 Alexander VI, Pope 152  
 Alexander Severus, Emperor 367  
 Alexandria 60, 68, 86, 362, 363, 366  
 Alexius I, Emperor 106  
 Alfonso VI of León-Castile 122, 123  
 Alfonso VIII of Castile 122, 123  
 Alfonso XIII of Spain 412  
 Alfonso Henriques, Count 122, 123  
 Alfred the Great 105, 375  
 Algeciras Conference 268  
 Algeria 242, 302, 320, 323, 404, 405, 418, 422  
 Algiers 172  
 Alhambra Palace (Granada) 90

Ali, Caliph 94, 95, 371, 372  
 All-India Muslim League 308, 309  
 Allenby, General Sir Edmund 279  
 Allende, Salvador 419  
 Allied Powers  
   World War I 269, 274–79, 285  
   World War II 294–307, 312  
 Almagro, Diego de 153  
 Almohad Caliphate 122, 123, 379  
 Almoravid Dynasty 97, 122, 377, 378, 379  
 alphabets 36, 37, 54, 358  
 Alps 66  
 Alsace-Lorraine 264  
 Amarna 35  
 Amboina Massacre **162**  
 Amenemhet I, Pharaoh 356  
 Amenhotep IV, Pharaoh *see* Akhenaten  
 American Dream 238, 313  
 American Revolution 189, **198–99**, 257, 400  
 Americas  
   age of exchange 158–59  
   ancient civilizations **78–79**  
   Atlantic slave trade **196–97**  
   early agriculture 22, 23, 24  
   first civilizations **52–53**  
   first humans 17  
   peopling **20–21**  
   population 346  
   voyages of exploration 148, 150, 151, 386–87  
   *see also* Central America; countries by name; North America; South America  
 Amin, Idi 323, 419, 420  
 Amritsar Massacre 309, 421  
 Amsterdam 185  
 An Lushan 126, 127, 372  
 Anan, Kofi 422  
 Anarchism **234–35**  
 Anasazi people 143  
 Anatolia 27, 42, 46, 50, 57, 58, 60, 86, 120, 121, 173, 278, 279, 353, 382, 383  
 Anawrahta of Burma 378  
 Ancien Régime 206, 207  
 Andes 24, 78, 79, 144  
 Andhra Dynasty 367  
 Andorra 320  
 Andronovo culture 357  
 Angelos, Alexios 107  
 Angkor kingdom 91, 125, 134, 135, 385  
 Angkor Wat (Cambodia) 378–79  
 Angles 81  
 Anglo-Afghan Wars 405  
 Anglo-Boer Wars 243, 407, 408  
 Anglo-Burmese Wars 243

Anglo-Dutch Wars 393  
 Anglo-Egyptian War 407  
 Anglo-Norman Dynasty 100  
 Anglo-Powhatan War, First 157  
 Anglo-Saxons 80, 81, 98, 99, 108, 109, 369, 372, 378  
 Anglo-Spanish War 192  
 Anglo-Zulu War 243  
 Angola 162, 185, 197, 315, 322, 419, 421, 423  
 Ankara 284, 385  
 Anne, Queen of Great Britain 396  
 Anqing 253  
*Anschluss* 414  
 Antietam, Battle of 406  
 Antigonid Dynasty 61  
 Antioch 69, 86, 107, 378  
 Antiochus IV 363  
 Anyang 40, 41  
 apartheid 322, 418, 420, 421  
 ape-men 12, 14, 15  
 Appalachian Mountains 191, 204, 205, 393  
 Appalachian people 143  
 Arab Empire 90  
 Arab Revolt 279, 284  
 Arab scholarship 96, 104, 105  
 Arab Spring 344, 425  
 Arab-Israeli Wars 332–33, 416, 417, 418  
 Arab-Norman culture 100  
 Arabia, Islam in 94–95  
 Arabian Peninsula 16, 279  
 Arabic script 36  
 Arafat, Yasser 418, 419, 422, 424  
 Aragon 122  
 Aramaic 37  
 Archimedes 360  
 architecture  
   Gothic **105**  
   Ottoman **173**  
   Renaissance **160–61**  
 Arctic Ocean 246, 247  
*Ardipithecus kadabba* 14  
 Argentina 236, 239, 240, 262, 263, 286, 346, 403, 404, 406, 420, 424  
 Aristagoras 59  
 Aristide, Jean-Bertrand 330, 422  
 Aristophanes 62  
 Aristotle 62, 105, 160, 380  
 Arkwright, Richard 215  
 Armagnac faction 110  
 Armenia 86, 87, 279, 280, 285, 367, 377, 378, 404, 408, 410  
 arms race 312  
 Armstrong, Neil 324, 419  
 ARPANET 344  
 Arrow War 227



- art
- Dutch Golden Age **184**
  - Etruscan 64
  - moai* statues 141
  - prehistoric 13, 17, 350–51, 352
  - Renaissance **160–61**
  - rock art 18–19
  - Romanized Greek 63
  - Romanticism and Nationalism 216–17
- Artaphernes 59
- artificial selection 24
- Aryans 31, 70, 357, 359
- Asante 197, 396
- ASEAN 418
- Ashikaga Yoshimasa 180
- Ashoka, Emperor 72, 73, 84, 85, 363, 364
- Ashur 48, 49
- Ashurbanipal of Assyria 48, 49
- Asia
- agriculture 25
  - Buddhism **84–85**
  - Christianity 87
  - development of writing 37
  - early modern 149
  - first humans 14, 16, 17, 22
  - imperial dominions 242–43
  - medieval east Asia **124–25**
  - migration from 20, 21, 81
  - Mongol conquests **130–31**
  - population 347
  - Silk Road **102–03**
  - spice trade **162–63**
  - westerners in **174–75**
  - see also* countries by name; Southeast Asia
- Assad, Bashar al- 423, 425
- Assassins 378
- Assur 356, 357
- Assurbanipal of Assyria 49, 360
- Assurnasirpal II of Assyria 49
- Assyria 44, **48–49**, 50, 51, 54, 55, 69, 356, 358, 359, 360
- astronomy 183
- Asturias 122, 123
- Astyages, King of the Medes 50
- Atacama Desert 262, 263
- Atahualpa 154
- Atatürk, Mustafa Kemal 279, 284, 411
- Athens 38, 50, 56, 57, 58, 59, 62, 66, 361
- Atlanta 257, 406
- Atlantic Ocean
- slave trade **196–97**
  - steamships 236, 237
  - Vikings 98–99
  - voyages of exploration 148
  - World War II 302, 303
- atomic bombs 295, 305, **306–7**, 312, 324, 325, 416, 417
- Attila 80, 81, 369
- Augsburg Agreement 166, 167, 169, 388
- Augustine of Canterbury, St. 109, 370
- Augustine of Hippo, St. 368, 369
- Augustus, Emperor 63, 69, 365
- Aung San Suu Kyi 421, 424
- Aurangzeb, Emperor 176, 177, 393
- Aurelian, Emperor 367
- Auschwitz-Birkenau 295, 415
- Austerlitz, Battle of 208, 402
- Australia 185, 188, 230, 237, 287, 318, 391, 400, 406, 407, 408, 409, 418, 424
- colonization **220–21**, 242, 401
  - first people 13, 16, **18–19**, 22, 23, 351
  - immigration 238, 239
  - sheep 195
  - World War I 279
  - World War II 300
- Australopithecus* 12, 14, 15, 350
- Austria 169, 192, 193, 206, 265, 284, 294, 321, 414, 416
- Napoleonic Wars 208, 209, 210, 211
  - revolutions of 1848 218, 219
- Austria-Hungary 216, 264, 265, 406, 409
- Balkan Wars 266, 267
  - collapse and division 273, 284, 285, 411
  - World War I 268–69, 275, 278, 410
- Austro-Turkish War 397
- Avars 93, 370
- Axis Powers (World War II) 294–307, 413, 415–16
- Ayacucho, Battle of 200, 201, 404
- Ayutthaya 125, 383
- Ayyubid Sultanate 107, 382
- Azerbaijan 99, 280, 343
- Aztec Empire 90, **144–45**, 148, 150, 152, 154, 159, 385, 386, 387
- B**
- Babur, Emperor 176, 177, 387
- Babylon/Babylonians **48–49**, 50, 51, 357, 358, 360
- Bactria 50
- Badajoz 293
- Baghdad 96, 97, 130, 373, 375, 377, 380, 382, 392
- Bahadur Shah, Emperor 244
- Bahrain 342, 343
- Baku 173, 279
- Balfour Declaration 411
- Balkans 247, 394, 407
- Balkan Wars **266–67**, 409
  - Byzantine Empire 92, 93, 120
  - Ottomans and 172, 173, 389, 397
  - World War I 269, 278
- Baltic Sea 113, 247
- Baltic States *see* Estonia; Latvia; Lithuania
- Ban Chao 366
- Bangladesh 309, 419
- Bank of England 395
- banking 112, 113
- Bantu-speaking peoples 137
- Bar Kokhba Revolt 44, 45
- Barbados 157
- Barcelona 123, 293
- Basil II, Emperor 93, 376, 377
- Basque separatists 424
- Bastille, storming of the 207
- Batavia 209
- Bavaria 169
- Bay of Pigs 313, 330, 418
- Bayeux Tapestry 100–01, 378
- Bayezid I, Sultan 120, 121, 385
- Bayezid II, Sultan 173
- Becket, Thomas 380
- Beijing 132, 133, 174, 178, 179, 226, 227, 250–51, 253, 288, 311, 382, 412
- Beirut 420
- Belarus 99, 411, 422, 424
- Belfast 411
- Belgium 184, 194, 206, 207, 211, 268, 274, 275, 284, 294, 297, 320, 321, 325, 404, 415
- Belgrade 172
- Belisarius 370
- Bell Beaker Culture 354
- Ben-Gurion, David 333
- Benedict of Nursia 370
- Bengal 163, 177, 224, 244, 308, 389
- Benin 136, 137, 197, 397, 398
- Berbers 136, 137, 372, 375, 377
- Bering, Vitus 247, 397
- Bering Strait 247, 351, 352, 397
- Beringia/Ancient Beringians 20, 21
- Berke Khan 130
- Berlin 219, 295, 302, 303, 314, 315
- Berlin Airlift 312
- Berlin Blockade 315, 416
- Berlin Conference (1884–1885) 248, 249, 407
- Berlin Wall 313, 336, 418, 421
- Bessemer, Henry 213, 215
- Bhutto, Zulfikar al 420
- Bi Sheng 164
- Biafra 418
- Biddle, James 405
- Biko, Steven 420
- Bimbisara 73, 361
- bin Laden, Osama 421, 422, 423, 425
- Bindusara 73
- biological exchange **158–59**
- biological weapons 412
- Bishop's War 170
- Bismarck, Otto von 264, 265, **269**, 406
- Black Death 91, 112, **114–15**, 133, 383, 384, 385
- Black Hole of Calcutta 225
- Black Monday 421
- Black Sea 56, 246, 400
- Blake, William 216
- Blood River, Battle of 405
- Bloody Sunday 419
- Boabdil 123
- Boers 249, 400, 404, 405, 407, 408
- Bohemia 169, 391
- Boko Haram 425
- Bolívar, Simón 200, **201**, 402, 403, 404
- Bolivia 262, 263, 388, 404, 413
- Bologna 104, 105
- Bolsheviks 280, 281, 410
- Bonaparte, Napoleon *see* Napoleon I
- Booth, John Wilkes 406
- Bordeaux 110, 111
- Borneo 134
- Bornu 136, 137
- Borodino, Battle of 211
- Boshin War 254
- Bosnia 121, 172, 266, 267, 272, 275, 422
- Bosnia-Herzegovina 266, 409, 410
- Bosnian War 338, 339, 422
- Boston 188, 199, 392, 396
- Boston Tea Party 190, 191, 198, 400
- Botswana 322
- Botticelli, Sandro 160, 161, 386
- Bourbon, House of 265, 404
- Boxer Rebellion 250–51, 252, 253, 408
- Boyacá, Battle of 200
- Bracciolini, Poggio 160
- Braddock Down, Battle of 171
- Brahmi script 36, 37, 73
- Brazil 239, 240, 262, 263, 286, 335, 346, 398, 399, 404, 406, 408, 412, 414, 425
- exploration and conquest 150, 151, 152–53, 386–87, 388
  - independence 200, 201
  - slavery 196, 197
- Brest-Litovsk, Treaty of 280, 285, 411
- Brétigny, Treaty of 110
- Brezhnev, Leonid 336
- Brindisi 65
- Britain
- Acts of Union 388, 396, 402
  - Agricultural Revolution 194, 195, 214
  - American Revolution **198–99**, 400
  - Balkan Wars 266, 267
  - Black Death 114
  - Christianity 86, 109, 370, 372
  - civil wars 148–49, **170–71**, 392
  - European Union 320, 321
  - Great Depression 287
  - imperialism 149, 189, 220–21, 240–41, 242, 246, 249, 250, 318, 319, 323
  - and India 226, **244–45**, 308–9
  - Industrial Revolution 212–13, **214–15**
  - industrialization 230, 231, 232, 233
  - and Latin America 262, 263
  - migrations to 81
  - Napoleonic Wars 208–11
  - and North America 156–57, 190–91, 399
  - Opium Wars 226, 227
  - Romans 68, 364, 369
  - Seven Years' War **192–93**, 399
  - slave trade 196, 197
  - spice trade 162–63
  - Vikings 99, 373, 376, 377
  - voyages of exploration 150, 151
  - World War I 268–69, 284, 285, 296, 297, 410–11
  - World War II 294–99, 302–3, 415–16
  - see also* England; Northern Ireland; Scotland; Wales
- Britain, Battle of 294, 296, 415
- British East India Company 151, 162, 175, 190, 224, 225, 226, 242, 244, 390, 395, 401



Bronze Age 38, 39, 44, 46, 47, 353, 355  
     in China **40–41**  
     collapse of **42–43**, 358  
 Brunei 318, 319  
 Brunelleschi, Filippo 161  
 Brusilov, General Alexei 275  
 Brussels 320  
 Budapest 236  
 Buddhism 72, 73, **84–85**, 102, 103, 124,  
     128, 129, 134, 135, 361, 369, 370, 380  
 Buenos Aires 236, 241  
 Bukhara 246, 376  
 Bulgaria 120, 266, 267, 272, 278, 321, 337,  
     347, 385, 407, 409, 416, 421, 424  
 Bulgars 93, 372, 377  
 Bull Run, Battles of 406  
 Bunker Hill, Battle of 199  
 Burgoyne, General John 199  
 Burgundians 108, 110, 111, 385, 386  
 Burma 91, 132, 133, 134, 240, 242, 243,  
     308, 416, 421  
     World War II 300, 301, 304, 415  
     *see also* Myanmar  
 Bursa 121, 383  
 Burundi 323  
 Bush, George W. 423  
 Buwayhids 96, 97, 375, 377  
 Byblos 33, 42, 54  
 Byzantine Empire **92–93**, 94, 95, 99, 106,  
     107, 109, 112, 118, 120, 121, 172, 173,  
     369, 370, 371, 372, 376, 377, 378, 383

**C**  
 Cabot, John 150, 386  
 Cabral, Pedro Álvarez 150, 153, 386  
 Caddoan Mississippian culture 142, 143  
 Cadiz 57, 293  
 Caesar, Julius 63, 68, 69, 364  
 Caffa 114  
 Cahokia 142, 143  
 Cairo 114, 139, 172, 279  
 Calais 110, 111, 386  
 Calcutta 163, 225  
 Calicut 148, 174, 177  
 California 205, 239, 246, 261, 400, 404,  
     405, 413  
 Caligula, Emperor 365  
 Callicrates 62  
 Calvin, John 166, 388  
 Cambodia 85, 91, 125, 134, 240, 315, 318,  
     328, 329, 373, 379, 406, 416, 419, 422  
 Cambodian-Vietnamese War 420, 422  
 Cambrai, Battle of 410–11  
 Cambyes I of Persia 51  
 Cambyes II of Persia 50–51, 361  
 Camp David Accords 420  
 Canaan 33, 35, 39, 42, 43, 44, 357  
 Canada 391, 399, 408, 409  
     American Revolution **198–99**  
     colonization of 156, 242  
     emigration 230, 238, 239, 261  
     exploration of 150

Canada *continued*  
     peopling 20  
     Seven Years' War 192  
 canals 212, 213, 214, 215, 236  
 Cão, Diego 162  
 Cape St. Vincent 208  
 Cape Town 184, 185, 393  
 Cape Verde 196, 419  
 Capes, Battle of the 199  
 Capetian Dynasty 376  
 capitalism 312, 313  
 Cappadocia 69  
 car industry 340–41  
 Caracalla, Emperor 367  
 Caral **52**  
 carbon emissions 425  
 Carchemish 42  
 Caribbean 20, 148, 150, 157, 192, 196, 262  
 Carnatic Wars 225  
 carnelians 33  
 Carranza, Venustiano 262, 263  
 Carthage/Carthaginians 47, 54, 57, 63, 64,  
     **66–67**, 68, 86, 95, 359, 363, 364, 372  
 Cartier, Jacques 150, 388  
 cartography 183  
 Cartwheel, Operation 304  
 Caspian Sea 51  
 Cassiodorus 108  
 Castile 122, 123  
 Castillon, Battle of 111  
 Castro, Fidel 313, 330, 331, 418  
 catacombs 86  
 Çatal Höyük 27, 353  
 Catalonia 293, 425  
 Catherine the Great, Empress 202, 246,  
     399, 401  
 cattle 260, 261  
 Caucasus Front 278–79  
*caudillos* 200  
 Cavour, Count Camillo 265  
 Ceaușescu, Nicolae 337  
 Celts 46–47, 80, 81, 362, 364, 369  
 CENTO 315  
 Central African Republic 425  
 Central America 20, 21  
     ancient civilizations 24, **78–79**, 142, 143  
     Aztec Empire **144–45**  
     early writing 37, 52  
     first civilizations 30–31, **52**  
     Great Depression 286  
     independence **262–63**  
     Maya 37, 52, 78–79, 90, 144, 152, 154  
     Middle Ages 90  
     Spanish conquests **152–55**  
     US interventions **330–31**  
 Central Powers (World War I) 269, 274–79,  
     280  
 Cetshwayo kaMpande 240, 407  
 Ceylon 184, 308, 416  
 Chabacuo, Battle of 201  
 Chad 14  
 Chagatai Khanate 130, 131, 384  
 Chalcedon, Council of 87  
 Chamorro, Violeta Barrios de 421

Champa kingdom 125, 134, 135, 380  
 Champlain, Samuel de 150, 391  
 Chan Chan 145  
 Chancas 144, 145  
 Chandernagore 163  
 Chandra Gupta I 135, 368  
 Chandragupta II 369  
 Chandragupta Maurya 72, 73, 362  
 Chang'an 83, 103  
 Charlemagne, Emperor 90, 99, 104, 105,  
     118, 122, 373  
 Charles I of England 148, 170, 171, 391, 392  
 Charles II of England 170, 171, 393  
 Charles II of Spain 396  
 Charles III the Fat 375  
 Charles IV of France 110  
 Charles V, Emperor 166, 387, 388  
 Charles V of France 110  
 Charles VI, Emperor 398  
 Charles VII of France 111  
 Charles IX of France 166  
 Charles X of France 404  
 Charles Albert of Piedmont 219  
 Charles Martel 94, 372  
 Charles the Simple 99, 100, 375  
 Charleston, Battle of 198, 199  
 Chauvet Cave (France) 13  
 Chechnya 422, 423, 424  
 chemical weapons 412, 425  
 Chernobyl 421  
 Cherokee nation 205  
 Chiang Kai-shek 288, 289, 310, 311, 412,  
     413, 415, 417  
 Chicago 261  
 Chichen Itza 374  
 Chile 145, 201, 262, 263, 286, 331, 403, 419,  
     421  
 Chimú civilization 145, 375, 380, 384, 386  
 China 14, 149, 164, 230, 272, 325, 425  
     ancient 31  
     Black Death 115  
     Bronze Age **40–41**  
     civil war 273, 310–11, 416, 417  
     Communist 273, 288, 289, **310–11**, 312,  
     411, 418  
     decline of Qing China **252–53**, 409  
     early writing 37  
     economic growth 335  
     emigration 238, 260  
     first emperor **74–75**  
     foreign powers in 174, 242, 243,  
     **250–51**, 252, 253  
     Han Dynasty **82–83**  
     Hong Kong and Macau 318, 319  
     influence in Southeast Asia 134–35  
     Korean War 316, 317  
     medieval 90, 91, 124, 125  
     Ming to Qing **178–79**  
     Mongol conquests 130–31, 381  
     and nationalism **288–89**, 412, 413  
     open economy 340  
     Opium Wars **226–27**  
     population 346, 347  
     Silk Road **102–3**

China *continued*  
     spread of Buddhism 85  
     Tang and Song **126–27**  
     Terracotta Army **76–77**  
     Vietnam Wars 328  
     World War II 301, 310  
     Yuan and early Ming **132–33**  
 Chinchorro people 353  
 Chioggia, War of 112  
 Chokwe 197  
 Chola Empire 125, 374, 375, 376, 377, 382  
 Chongqing 289  
 Chongzhen, Emperor 179  
 Choson Dynasty 125  
 Christian VIII of Denmark 219  
 Christianity  
     abolition of slavery 222  
     the Crusades **106–07**  
     and imperialism 240  
     missionaries 152, 155, 174, 175, 250  
     rise of **86–87**  
     in Roman Empire 63, 368  
     *see also* Protestant Church, Roman  
         Catholic Church  
 Churchill, Winston 297, **302**, 307, 414, 416  
 Cicero 160  
 Ciompi Uprising 113  
 circumnavigation of the globe 151  
 Cistercians 104, 105, 379  
 cities  
     African city-states 137  
     ancient American 78–79  
     fall of Bronze Age **42**  
     first 26, **32–33**  
     Greek city-states **56–57**, 58–59, 359  
     industrialization 230–31, 232  
     Italian city-states 112, 113, 161  
     transportation 236, 237  
     urbanization 23, 27, 188, 213, 214, 261,  
     335  
 Civil Rights Movement **326–27**, 417  
 Civil War (American) **256–57**, 406  
 civilizations, first **30–31**  
 Cixi, Dowager Empress 252, 253  
 Clark, William 189, 402  
 classical age **62–63**, 361  
 Claudius, Emperor 68, 365  
 Cleisthenes 361  
 Cleopatra VII of Egypt 68, 364, 365  
 Clermont, Council of 106  
 climate change 24, 42, 79, 213, 334, 335,  
     425  
 Clive, Robert **224**, 398  
 cloth trade 113  
 Clovis 369, 370  
 Clovis people 20, 21, 352  
 Cnut, King 376, 377  
 coal mining 212, 214, 215, 230, 232, 233  
 Cochin 404  
 coffee 196, 262, 397  
 Cold War 291, 312–13, **314–15**, 317, 321,  
     324, 328, 331, 344, 416–21  
 Coligny, Gaspard de 166  
 collectivization 290, 291, 412, 413



Colombia 152, 200, 201, 331, 397, 408, 425  
colonialism 148, 188, **240–43**  
in Africa **248–49**  
end of 318–19  
Greek 39, 57, 62–63, 64, 65  
and industrialization 233  
Roman 65  
Columbian Exchange **158–59**  
Columbus, Christopher 148, 150, 151, 152,  
158, 174, 386  
COMECON 320  
Commodus, Emperor 366  
Commonwealth 413  
Commonwealth of Independent States  
(CIS) 336, 337, 422  
communications 213, 231, 233, **236–37**,  
340, **344–45**  
communism 234, 273, 285, 287, 294, 312,  
328, 329  
China 273, 288, 289, **310–11**, 312  
collapse of **336–37**, 421  
North Korea 317  
Russian Revolution **280–81**  
Soviet Union 291, 314  
compasses 91, 126, 379  
computers 344–45  
concentration camps 298, 299, 410, 413,  
415  
Confederate states 256–57, 406  
Confederation of the Rhine 209  
Confucius/Confucianism 40, 85, 178, 359,  
361  
Congo  
Belgian 249, 418  
Democratic Republic of 197, 323, 422  
conquistadors **152–55**  
Conrad II, Emperor 377  
Conrad III, Emperor 119  
Constantine the Great, Emperor 63, 86,  
87, 92, 368  
Constantine XI, Emperor 121  
Constantinople 63, 92, 93, 95, 99, 107, 120,  
121, 172, 173, 266, 279, 368, 369, 381,  
386  
Continental Congress 198  
Continental System 209, 210, 211, 402  
Cook, Captain James 221, 400  
Copernicus, Nicolaus 149, 183, 388  
Copper Age 27, 352, 353  
Copts 87  
Coral Sea, Battle of the 300  
Córdoba 123, 373, 377  
Córdoba, Francisco Hernández 150  
Corinth 56, 66, 359  
Cornwallis, General Charles 198, 199, 400  
Corsica 66  
Cort, Henry 215  
Cortés, Hernán 150, 152, 154, 387  
Corunna 210  
Cossacks 280  
Costa Rica 404  
cotton 196  
Council of Trent 166, 167, 388  
Counter-Reformation 167, 388

Covadonga, Battle of 372  
Cowpens, Battle of 199  
Crassus 364  
Crazy Horse 205  
Crécy, Battle of 110  
Creek War 205  
Creoles 201, 400  
Crete 31, 36, 38, 39, 353, 356, 358  
Crimea 172, 246, 280, 401  
Crimean War 246, 406  
Cripps, Stafford 308  
Cro-Magnons 351  
Croatia 298, 299, 321, 338, 339, 422  
Croesus of Lydia 50, 58, 361  
Cromwell, Oliver **170**, 171, 392, 393  
Cromwell, Richard 170  
crops  
Columbian Exchange 158–59  
crop rotation 194, 195  
domestication **24**, 25, 26, 27, 158, 352  
early farming 22–23  
Crusades 90, 92, 93, **106–7**, 112, 113, 123,  
378–82  
Ctesiphon 69, 93  
Cuba 192, 196, 263, 286, 315, 331, 408,  
418, 425  
Cuban Missile Crisis 312, 313, 314, 330, 418  
Cultural Revolution 418  
cuneiform 30, 36, 37  
Curie, Marie 258–59, 408  
Curzon, Lord 308  
Custer, Lt. Colonel George 407  
Custoza, Battle of 219  
Cuzco 78, 79, 144, 145, 153, 380, 385, 388  
Cyprus 57, 172, 320, 380, 418, 419  
Cyrus II the Great 44, 49, 50–51, 361  
Cythera 38, 39, 56  
Czech Republic 337, 422  
Czechoslovakia 284, 294, 315, 337, 414,  
415, 416, 419, 421, 422

## D

D-Day landings 295, 302, 416  
da Gama, Vasco 148, 151, 162, 174, 386  
Dacca 308  
Dagobert I 371  
Dahomey 197, 397, 398  
Dai Viet kingdom 125, 134, 135  
Dakota, North and South 286  
Dalmatia 173  
Damascus 94, 95, 106, 114, 172, 279, 371,  
380  
Damiatta 107, 113  
Dante Alighieri 160–61, 383  
Danton, Georges 206  
Daoism 85, 178  
Daoud Khan, Mohammad 419, 420  
Darby, Abraham 215  
Dardanelles 279  
Darfur 423  
Darius I of Persia 50–51, 58, **59**, 361  
Darius III of Persia 61, 362, 363

Darwin, Charles 240, 406  
Datis 59  
David, King 44, 359  
Dayton Accords 338, 339  
de Gaulle, Charles 415, 416, 418  
Deccan 177  
Declaration of Independence 198, 400  
Declaration of the Rights of Man **206**  
decolonization **318–19**, **322–23**, 417,  
418, 419  
Delacroix, Eugène 216–17  
Delagoa Bay 162  
Delaware River 199  
Delhi 149, 176, 177, 380  
Delhi Sultanate 90, 125, 381, 383, 384, 385  
Delian League 56, 57, 362  
Delos 56, 57  
Delphi 56  
Denisovans 17  
Denmark 169, 197, 208, 284, 294, 297, 321,  
415  
Vikings 98, 99  
deportations 290  
Derbent 173  
Descartes, René 202  
Desert Storm, Operation 342, 343  
Devanampiya Tissa, King 84  
Diadochi 61  
Dias, Bartolomeu 151, 386  
Diderot, Denis 203, 398  
Dien Bien Phu, Battle of 318, 328  
Diocletian, Emperor 63, 81, 367, 368  
Directory 206, 207, 402  
disease 154, 158, 159, 191, 220, 230, 231,  
240, 273, 276, 387, 401, 411, 420, 423,  
425  
Djingareyber Mosque (Timbuktu) 139  
Djoser, King 30, 354  
DNA 17, 24, 417, 423  
Dome of the Rock (Jerusalem) 94  
domestication 22, **24**, 25, 26, 27, 158, 159, 352  
Dominican Republic 263, 410  
Don Juan of Austria 172  
Dönitz, Admiral Karl 302  
Dorian people 358  
Draco 360  
Drake, Francis 151, 389  
HMS *Dreadnought* 268, 269  
Dresden 303  
Dublin 99, 273, 373, 409, 411  
Dunhuang 102, 126  
Dunkirk 296, 415  
Dur-Sharrukin (Khorsabad) 49  
Dust Bowl **286**  
Dutch East India Company (VOC) 151,  
162, 184, 185, 390–91, 393

## E

East Anglia 109  
East Germany 312, 314, 320, 321, 336,  
417, 418, 421  
East Timor 318, 319, 419, 423

Easter Island 141, 397  
Eastern Front 275  
Eastern Roman Empire 81, 92–93  
Ebola virus 425  
Ebro, Battle of the 292, 293  
Ecnomus, Battle of 67  
economic boom **334–35**  
Ecuador 145, 200, 201, 397  
Edessa 106, 107, 379  
Edirne (Adrianople) 120, 267  
education  
Enlightenment 202  
Renaissance **160–61**  
Edward, the Black Prince 110  
Edward III of England 110  
Egypt 96, 323, 332, 333, 334, 403, 407, 416,  
419, 420, 425  
ancient 30, 32, 33, **34–35**, 42–43, 44, 48,  
49, 54, 60, 353–62  
Christianity 87  
the Crusades 107  
early farmers 23, 25  
early writing 34, 37  
independence 284, 285, 411  
Mamluks 90, 381–85, 400  
Napoleon's campaign in 208–9, 402  
and Ottomans 172, 173  
Persian conquests 50, 51  
rise of Islam 94, 95  
World War I 278  
World War II 295, 296, 303, 415  
El Alamein, Battle of 295, 303, 415  
El Cid 123  
El Mirador 52  
El Salvador 331, 404  
Elam 49, 354, 356, 358  
Elba 210, 211, 403  
elephants, Hannibal's 66  
Elizabeth I, Queen of England 388, 389, 390  
Ellis Island 260  
enclosure 194, 195  
energy consumption **346**  
Engels, Friedrich 232, 234, 405  
England  
Anglo-Saxons 105, 108, 109  
Hundred Years' War **110–11**  
Norman conquest 99, **100**, 378  
Reformation 167  
Renaissance 161  
see also Britain  
English Republic 170  
ENIAC 344–45  
Enlightenment 188, 189, **202–03**, 216, 398,  
399, 402  
Entente Cordiale 268, 408  
environmental damage **334–35**  
Ephesus 57, 68  
Epirus 66  
Erasmus, Desiderius 160, 161  
Eretria 58, 59  
Eridu 30  
Erie Canal 236  
Erik the Red 376  
Erikson, Leif 98



Eritrea 322, 347, 422

Erlitou culture 357

Esarhaddon of Assyria 48, 49, 360

Estates-General 206, 207

Estonia 285, 297, 336, 337, 411

Ethiopia 15, 47, 87, 268, 294, 315, 323, 350, 382, 387, 408, 412, 413, 420, 421, 422

ethnic cleansing 339, 422, 425

Etruscans 36, 62, **64–65**, 359, 360, 361

Euclid 105, 363

Eugenius III, Pope 106

Euphrates River 25, 30, 33, 69, 353

Euripides 62

the Euro 320, 423

Europe

- 12th-century renaissance **104–05**
- aftermath of World War I **284–85**
- age of migrations **80–81**
- agriculture 25
- Black Death 114, 115
- contact with Asia **174–75**
- the Crusades **106–07**
- early modern 148–49
- European Union **320–21**
- eve of World War I **268–69**
- first humans 13, 14, 16, 17
- Germanic barbarians **108–09**
- imperialism 148, 240–41, 248, 249
- industrialization 230, 231, **232–33**
- Middle Ages 90, 91, **112–13**
- Napoleon **208–11**
- population 347
- the Reformation **166–67**
- Revolutions of 1848 **218–19**
- slavery 196, 197, 222
- Viking invasions **98–99**
- World War I 274–79
- World War II 294–99, 304–05, 321
- see also* countries by name

European Economic Community 418, 419

European Space Agency (ESA) 324

European Union 422, 423, 424

European Wars of Religion 169

Evans, Sir Arthur 31

Everest, Mount 417

evolution 12, 14, 240

Ewuare the Great 137

Eyck, Jan van 161

Ezana of Aksum 87

**F**

Fahrenheit, Daniel Gabriel 396

fairs 112

Falkland Islands 404, 420

Fallen Timbers, Battle of 205

famine 239, 290, 323, 405, 413, 418, 421

farming *see* agriculture

Faroe Islands 99

fascism 273, 282, 292, 411

Fatimid Caliphate 96, 97, 118, 375, 376

Federation of Malaya 418

Ferdinand I of Austria 219

Ferdinand I, Emperor 169, 172

Ferdinand II of Aragon 122, 123, 386

Ferdinand II of the Two Sicilies 219

Ferdinand III of Castile 123

Fertile Crescent 25, 352

fertilizers 23, 194–95, 230

feudalism 90, 206, 218, 255

financial crisis 335

Finland 246, 280, 284, 297, 321, 411, 415

Finnish War 246

firearms 175, 221

First Continental Congress 190, 191

Five-Year Plans 290, 291, 412

Flanders 113

Florence 113, 160, 161, 385

Florida 152, 156, 205, 396, 403

Fontainebleau, Treaty of 191

forced labor 298

Formosa 243, 254, 311, 408

Fort Sumter 256, 406

fortifications 26, 30, 42

fossils 12, 14, 15, 16, 17

France 148, 149, 169, 321

- American Revolution 198–99
- Charlemagne 104, 105
- and China 226, 227
- Christianity 86
- French Revolution 189, 202, **205–06**, 218, 222, 401
- French Revolutionary Wars 206, 208
- Germanic barbarians 108, 109
- Hundred Years’ War **110–11**
- imperialism 149, 240, 242, 243, 249, 250, 323
- and India 224, 225
- and Indochina 242, 243, 300, 318, 319, 328, 406, 417
- industrialization 232
- Napoleon **208–11**, 402–3
- the Normans **100–01**
- and North America 156, 190–91, 242
- religious wars 166
- Renaissance 161
- Romans in 68
- Seven Years’ War **192–93**, 399
- slave trade 197
- student revolts 327
- Vikings 99
- voyages of exploration 150, 151
- Wars of Religion 389, 390
- World War I 268–69, 274–77, 284, 285, 410–11
- World War II 294, 297, 298, 299, 302, 325, 415–16

Francis I of France 166

Francis II, Emperor 118

Franco, General Francisco 273, 282, **292**, 293, 413, 419

Franco-Prussian War 264, 407

Frankfurt 219

Franks 80, 81, 90, 94, 99, 100, 106, 108, 109, 118, 122, 123, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373

Franz Ferdinand, Archduke 234, 272, 410

Frederick I Barbarossa, Emperor 119, 380

Frederick II, Emperor 116–17, 118, 119, 381

Frederick II the Great of Prussia 159, 193, 398

Frederick III, Emperor 385

Frederick William I of Prussia 397

Fredericksburg, Battle of 256

French and Indian War 190, 191, 192

French East India Company 163

French Revolution 189, 202, **205–06**, 218, 222, 401

Frobisher, Martin 150

Fukushima disaster 425

Funan kingdom 134, 135, 367

**G**

Gaddafi, Mu’ammar al- 419, 425

Gaegyeong 128, 129

Gagarin, Yuri 324, 325, 418

Gaixia, Battle of 82

Galilee 45

Galilei, Galileo 182–83, 391, 392

Gallipoli Campaign 279, 410

Galtieri, Leopold 420

Gandhi, Indira 421

Gandhi, Mahatma 308, 309, 409, 412, 416

Gang of Four 420

Ganges River 46, 70, 72, 73, 85

Gao 136, 137, 139

Gaozu, Emperor 82, 127

Garibaldi, Giuseppe 219, 265

Gascony 110, 111

Gates, Bill 344

Gaul 68, 80, 86, 108, 362, 364, 369

Gautama, Siddhartha 85, 361

Gaya Confederacy 129

Gaza Strip 279, 333, 417, 418, 421, 424

genes 17

Geneva 166

Geneva Accords 328, 329

Geneva Protocol 412

Genghis Khan 124, 130, 131, 132, 133, 381

Genoa 91, 112, 113, 114, 382

genocide 188, 189, 212, 241, 279, 295, 298, 323, 339, 422, 425

Genpei War 124, 128, 129

George I of Great Britain 396

George II of Great Britain 398

Georgia 280, 285, 337, 397

Germanic barbarians 92, **108–09**, 365, 367, 368, 370

Germany 164, 320, 321

- division of 314, 416, 417
- Holy Roman Empire 105, **116–19**
- imperialism 240, 242, 249, 250
- industrialization 231, 232, 233
- nationalism 218, 219
- Nazism 216, 273, 282–83, 286, 287, 292, 294–99, 413, 414
- Reformation 166
- reunification of 321, 335, 336, 421

Germany *continued*

- rocket technology 324, 325
- unification of 213, 219, **264–65**, 269, 406
- World War I 268–69, 273, 274–79, 282, 284–85, 410–11
- World War II 294–99, 300, 301, 304–05, 306, 324, 325, 415–16

Gettysburg, Battle of 256, 257, 406

Ghana 47, 162, 323, 372, 378, 396, 418

- ancient 136, 137

Ghaznavid Dynasty 96, 97

ghettos 298

Ghurid Dynasty 379, 380

Giáp, General Vo Nguyen 318, 328

Gilbert Islands 300, 301, 304

Gilboa, Battle of 359

Gilgamesh 354

Giotto di Bondone 160

Girondists 206

*glasnost* 337, 421

global recession 424

global warming 334, 335

globalization **340–41**

Glorious First of June, Battle of 208

Glorious Revolution 394

Go-Daigo, Emperor 124, 383

Goa 162, 163, 174, 387, 388

Göbekli Tepe (Turkey) 352

Gobi Desert 83

Godfrey of Bouillon 107

Golan Heights 332, 333, 418

gold 137, 230, 231, 239, 407, 408

- Australian gold rush 221, 239, 406
- Californian gold rush 204, 205, 405

Good Friday agreement 422

Gorbachev, Mikhail 336–37, 421

Goryeo 125, 128, 129, 375

Goths 80, 81, 367

Gran Colombia 200, 403

Granada 90, 122, 123

Grand Canal (China) 133, 370, 371

Granicus River 60

Grant, General Ulysses S. 257, 406

Great Depression 273, 282, **286–87**, 294, 297, 412, 413

Great Exhibition (London, 1851) 233, 406

Great Game 246

Great Jewish Revolt 44, 45

Great Lakes Region 323

Great Leap Forward 418

Great Northern Expedition 247

Great Northern War 396

Great Plains 204, 413

Great Pyramid of Giza 30, 34, 354

Great Terror 291

Great Wall of China 74, 75, 82, 83, 178, 179, 363

Great War *see* World War I

Great Zimbabwe 137, 380

Greece 25, 272, 278, 284, 321, 361, 404

- Balkan Wars 218, 266, 267, 409
- Romans in 66, 68
- World War II 296, 298



Greek Orthodox Church 92  
 Greeks, ancient 31, 46, 62, 63, 356, 358–62  
   city-states **56–57**, 62  
   early writing 36  
   Minoans and Mycenaeans **38–39**, 42, 353, 356, 358  
   Persian Wars 50, **58–59**  
   translation of manuscripts 105  
 Greenland 98, 320, 321, 376  
 Gregory I the Great, Pope 370  
 Gregory VII, Pope 117, 378  
 Gregory IX, Pope 117  
 Grenada 420  
 Guadalcanal 304  
 Guam 300, 301, 408  
 Guangwu 365  
 Guangzhou 179, 226, 227, 288, 289, 311, 374, 414  
 guano 195, 238  
 Guatemala 263, 330, 404, 405  
 Guernica 282, 292  
 guerrilla warfare 242  
 Guevara, Ernesto “Che” **331**  
 guilds 113  
 guillotine 207  
 Guinea 322  
 Guinea Bissau 418, 425  
 Guiscard, Robert and Roger 100, 378  
 Gujarat 177  
 gulags 290, 291  
 Gulf Wars **342–43**, 421–22  
 gunboat diplomacy 226, 405  
 gunpowder 91, 126, 148  
 Gupta Empire 124, 125, 134, 135, 369  
 Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden 169, 391  
 Gustavus Vasa of Sweden 167  
 Gutenberg, Johannes 164–65, 344, 386

# H

H-bomb 312  
 Habsburg Dynasty/Empire 117, 118, 119, 120, 148, 172, 173, 184, 385, 386, 389, 398, 411  
 Hadrian, Emperor 45, 69, 366  
 Hadrian’s Wall 68, 366  
 Hagia Sophia (Istanbul) 173  
 Haile Selassie, Emperor 412, 413  
 Haiti 200, 201, 330, 331, 410, 422, 424  
 Haitian slave revolt 201, 222–23, 401  
 Halicarnassus 60  
 Hallstatt culture 46, 47, 359  
 Hals, Frans 184  
 Hamas 424  
 Hamidan massacres 408  
 Hammurabi of Babylon 48, 49, 356, 357  
 Han Dynasty 37, 72, 74, 75, 76, **82–83**, 102, 103, 124, 126, 127, 364, 365, 367  
 Hangzhou 126, 133, 311, 379  
 Hannibal 66, 67, 363  
 Hanoi 318, 328  
 Hanover 192, 302  
 Hanseatic League 112, 113, 381, 385

Harald Bluetooth 376  
 Harappa 31, 33, 357  
 Harsha Vardhen 125, 371  
 Harun al-Rashid 96, 373  
 Harvey, William 183  
 Hasdrubal 67  
 Hassan-i-Sabbah 378  
 Hastings, Battle of 378  
 Hatshepsut, Pharaoh 357  
 Hattin, Battle of 380  
 Hattusa 42, 46  
 Havana 192  
 Hawaii 141, 301, 400, 408, 418  
 Heian period 129, 373  
 heliocentrism 149, 388  
 Heliopolis 32  
 Hellenism 56, 61  
 Hellespont 56, 59  
 Henri IV of France 390  
 Henry I of England 379  
 Henry II, Emperor 117  
 Henry II of England 110, 380  
 Henry III, Emperor 377  
 Henry IV, Emperor 117, 118, 119, 378, 380  
 Henry V of England 110, 111  
 Henry VI, Emperor 119, 381  
 Henry VII of England 386  
 Henry VIII of England 167, 388  
 Henry the Navigator 385  
 Heracleopolis 34  
 Heraclius, Emperor 93, 371  
 Herod the Great 45  
 Herodotus 62, 361, 362  
 Herzegovina 422  
 Hezbollah 343, 420, 422, 424  
 Hierakonpolis 32  
 hieroglyphs 36, 37, 353  
 Hillary, Edmund 417  
 Hindenburg, Paul 287, 413  
 Hindenburg Line 274, 411  
 Hinduism **134**, 135, 309, 369, 370  
 Hippocrates 62  
 Hirohito, Emperor 305  
 Hiroshima 255, 295, 305, **306–07**, 312, 324, 325, 416  
 Hispaniola 196  
 Hitler, Adolf 273, 282–83, 286, 287, 294, 295, 296, **297**, 299, 301, 302–03, 411, 413, 415, 416  
 Hittites 35, 36, 42, 44, 46, 357, 358  
 Ho Chi Minh 318, 319, 328, 412, 416, 418  
 Ho Chi Minh City 329  
 Hohenstaufen Dynasty/Empire 100, 118, 119  
 Hohokam culture 142, 143, 375  
 Holocaust 298–99, 333, 415  
 Holy Land **106–07**, 173, 238, 378–83  
 Holy League 172, 387, 389  
 Holy Roman Empire **116–19**, 169, 402  
 Homer 38, 359  
 hominids 12, 350  
 hominins 12, **14**, 15, 350  
*Homo erectus* 13, 14, 15, 350  
*Homo ergaster* 14, 15

*Homo habilis* 12, 13, 14, 15, 350  
*Homo heidelbergensis* 15, 350  
*Homo naledi* 15  
*Homo sapiens* 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 22, 350, 351  
 Honduras 263, 404, 405, 420  
 Hong Kong 227, 242, 250, 301, 318, 334, 405, 422  
 Hong Xiuquan 252  
 Hongwe Emperor 133  
 Honorius, Emperor 81, 108  
 Honorius III, Pope 116–17  
 Hooke, Robert 183, 393  
 Hopewell culture 52, 53, 363  
 Hopton, Sir Ralph 171  
 Hormuz 162  
 Horn of Africa 17  
 Horns of Hattin 107  
 horses 158, 159  
 Hosokawa clan 180  
 Huang He (Yellow River) 31  
 Huari Empire 79, 370  
 Huayna Capac 145  
 Hudson, Henry 150  
 Hudson Bay 190  
 Huelva 293  
 Huerta, Victoriano 262  
 Huguenots 166, 389, 394  
 Hulegu 130, 382  
 Humai ibn Salamna 136  
 humans, first 12–13, **14–15**  
   migration of **16–17**  
 Humayun, Emperor 176, 177, 388  
 Hume, David 202, 397  
 Hundred Years’ War **110–11**, 383, 384, 385, 386  
 Hungary 24, 120, 172, 173, 219, 284, 297, 315, 336, 389, 416, 417, 421  
 Huns 80, 81, 368, 369, 370  
 hunter-gatherers 13, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 26  
 Hus, Jan 385  
 Husaynid Dynasty 396  
 Hussein bin Ali, Sharif 410  
 Hussein, Saddam 342, 343, 419, 420, 423  
 Hutu 323, 422  
 Hydaspes, Battle at the River 61  
 Hyder Ali 225  
 Hyderabad 46  
 Hyksos 357  
 Hyksos people 34, 35

# I

Ice Ages 13, 17, 20, 21, 24, 351, 352  
 Iceland 374, 380  
 Ictinus 62  
 Ieyasu, Tokugawa **180–81**, 390  
 Ilkhanate Empire 130, 382  
 Illyria 60  
 immigration 230  
 imperialism 189, 233, **240–43**, 294  
 Incas 47, 90, **144–45**, 148, 152, 153, 154, 380, 385, 386, 388, 409

indentured labor 239  
 India  
   Alexander the Great 61  
   ancient 31, 46  
   British in 163, 174, 175, 192, **224–25**, 226, 240, 242, **244–45**, 407, 409, 412, 415  
   Buddhism 84–85  
   early writing 36, 37  
   economic development 335  
   Mauryan **72–73**  
   medieval 90, 125  
   migration 238, 239  
   Mughal 148, 149, **176–77**  
   partition and independence **308–09**, 416  
   population 347  
   religious ideas 134  
   roots of Indian history **70–71**  
   spice trade 148, 162–63  
   voyages of exploration 151, 174  
   World War II 304  
 Indian National Congress 308, 309, 407, 415, 416  
 Indian Ocean 174  
 Indian Revolt (1857–1858) 224, 240, 242, **244**, 406  
 Indian Wars 408  
 Indochina Wars 328, 416  
 Indonesia 134, 184, 318, 319, 418, 419  
 Indus River 50, 61  
 Indus Valley 23, 31, 32, 33, 36, 37, 70, 353, 354, 357  
 Industrial Revolution 188, 195, **212–15**, 236, 238, 240, 242, 400  
 industrialization **230–33**, 238, 261, 290  
 inequality 230–31, 335  
 Innocent III, Pope 107, 381  
 The Inquisition **122**  
 International Brigades 293, 413  
 Internet 340, 344, 421  
 Inuit 20  
 Inupiat 20  
 Ionia 57, 58, 267  
 Ionian Revolt 59, 361  
 Iran **342–43**, 412, 417, 423, 424, 425  
 Iran–Iraq War 342, 420  
 Iranian Revolution 315, 343, 420  
 Iraq 25, 332, 413, 416, 419, 420, 423, 425  
   Gulf Wars **342–43**, 421–22  
 Iraq War 342, 423, 425  
 Ireland 321, 402, 411, 417  
   Christianity 86, 87, 369  
   civil wars 171, 393, 411  
   emigration 238, 239, 405  
   Home Rule movement 284, 409, 410  
   independence 273, 411  
   Vikings 99, 373  
   *see also* Northern Ireland  
 Irian Jaya 318  
 iron 212, 214, 215, 232, 233  
 Iron Age **46–47**, 48, 358, 361, 362, 370  
 Iroquois Confederacy 190, 394



irrigation 23, 79  
 Isabella I of Castile 122, 123, 386  
 Isfahan 389, 397  
 Islam  
   and Byzantine Empire 93  
   the Crusades **106–07**  
   Golden Age **96**  
   Mughal India 176–77  
   Partition of India 308, 309  
   the Reconquista **122–23**  
   rise of 90, **94–95**, 370, 371  
   rule of the caliphs **96–97**, 371, 372, 375  
   Shia in Iran 343  
   Sunni and Shia **94**, 343, 371  
   in west Africa 139  
 Islamic State (ISIL/ISIS/Daesh) 425  
 Israel 16, 325  
   ancient Levant **44–45**, 359  
   and the Middle East **332–33**, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 423, 424, 425  
 Issus, Battle of 61  
 Italy 320, 321  
   banking 112  
   Black Death 114  
   city-states 112, 113  
   emigration 239  
   Etruscans and the rise of Rome **64–65**  
   fascism 273, 282, 292, 293, 411, 412  
   Greek colonies 39, 57, 62–63, 64, 65  
   imperialism 240, 242, 249, 294, 408, 413  
   Lombards 109  
   Napoleon's campaigns in 208, 209  
   Renaissance 91, **160–61**  
   revolutions of 1848 218, 219  
   unification of **264–65**, 406  
   World War I 268–69, 278, 285, 410  
   World War II 294, 296, 297, 299, 302, 303, 415–16  
   *see also* Romans; Rome  
 Itzcoatl 144  
 Ivan III the Great, Czar 386  
 Ivan IV Vasilyevich (the Terrible), Czar 246, **247**, 388  
 Iwo Jima, Battle of 305

**J**  
 Jacobins 206, 207  
 Jacobite Rebellions 396, 398–99  
 Jahangir, Emperor 177  
 Jainism 73  
 Jamaica 200, 201, 399, 412, 418  
 James, St. 123  
 James I of England (James VI of Scotland) 390  
 James II of England 394  
 Jamestown 156, 157, 391  
 Jan III Sobieski of Poland 173, 394  
 Janszoon, Willem 185, 391  
 Japan 149, 185, 272, 273, 347, 389, 424  
   and China 246, 289, 310, 311  
   early writing 37

Japan *continued*  
   European missionaries and merchants 174, 175  
   imperialism 240, 241, 242, 243, 246, 250, 254, 287, 294, 301, 328, 409, 412, 413, 414, 415  
   industrialization 230, 289  
   isolationism 175, 406  
   medieval 124, **128–29**  
   Mongol invasions 91, 132, 133, 382  
   transformation of **254–55**  
   unification under Tokugawa **180–81**  
   World War II 294, 295, **300–01**, **304–07**, 311, 319, 324, 328, 415–16  
 Jarrow March 287  
 Jaruzelski, General 336  
 Jaume I of Aragon 123  
 Java 135, 383  
 Jawoyn people 18–19  
 Jayavarman II 373  
 Jayavarman VII 125, 134, 135, 380  
 Jefferson, Thomas **198**, 400  
 Jericho 353  
 Jerusalem 44, 45, 48, 50, 69, 90, 94, 95, 106, 107, 279, 332, 333, 359, 361, 362, 365, 366, 379, 380, 381, 418  
 Jesuits 174, 175, 388  
 Jesus Christ 44, 86, 87, 365  
 jet age 418  
 Jews  
   ancient Levant **44–45**, 361  
   Hasidism 397  
   Israel and the Middle East **332–33**, 411, 414, 416  
   in medieval Europe 112, 113, 115  
   migration 238, 407  
   Nazi persecution 413, 414  
   in Spain 122  
   World War II 294–95, 298, 299, 415  
 Ji Chang 40  
 Jianjing, Emperor 178  
 Jimmu, Emperor 360  
 Jin Empire 131, 367, 368, 379, 381  
 Jinzhou, Battle of 311  
 Joan of Arc 110, 111, 385  
 John, St. 87  
 John of England 381  
 John I of Portugal 385  
 John Paul II, Pope 420  
 John VI of Portugal 200  
 Johnson, Lyndon B. 418  
 Jomon culture 352  
 Jordan 417  
 Juan Carlos I of Spain 419, 420  
 Judah 44, 360, 361  
 Judah Maccabee 363  
 Judea 45, 363, 364, 366  
 Jurchen 124, 126, 379  
 Justinian I, Emperor 92, 93, 103, 109, 370  
 Jutes 108  
 Jutland, Battle of 410

**K**  
 Kabila, Laurent 422  
 Kabul 176  
 Kadesh, Battle of 35, 358  
 Kaifeng 126, 379  
 Kalhu (Nimrud) 49, 360  
 Kalinga 72  
 Kalmar Union 385  
 Kamakura Shogunate 124, 128  
 kamikaze pilots 304, 305, 416  
 Kanem 136, 137, 378  
 Kangzi, Emperor 178, 395  
 Kanishka, Emperor 85, 366  
 Kansas 261  
 Kara Khitai Empire 131  
 Kara Mustafa Pasha 173  
 Karadžić, Radovan 338, 422  
 Karasuk culture 357  
 Karlowitz, Treaty of 173  
 Karnak 35  
 Kasa-Vubu, Joseph 323  
 Kashmir 84, 85, 176, 177, 309, 418, 424  
 Kassite Dynasty 357, 358  
 Katherine of Aragon 167, 388  
 Katsui, Shibata 181  
 Kennedy, John F. 313, 325, 330, 418  
 Kenneth I MacAlpin of Scotland 374  
 Kent 109  
 Kenya 12, 14, 350, 412, 417, 425  
 Kenyatta, Jomo 412  
 Kepler, Johannes 183, 391  
 Kerensky, Alexander 281  
 Kerk, F. W. de 421  
 Kettler, Baron Clemens von 250  
 Khafre, Pharaoh 30  
 Khartoum, Siege of 407  
 Khiva 246  
 Khmer Empire 379, 380, 385  
 Khmer Rouge 419  
 Khomeini, Ayatollah 342, 343, 420  
 Khorasan 95, 97  
 Khrushchev, Nikita 313, 314, 417  
 Khufu, Pharaoh 30, 354  
 Khusrow I of Persia 370  
 Khwarazm Dynasty 381  
 Khwarazm Shah 131  
 Kiel Canal 236  
 Kiev 99, 376  
 Kievan Rus' 99, 376, 377  
 Kilwa 137, 162, 373, 376  
 Kim Il-Sung **317**  
 Kim Jong-un 425  
 King, Martin Luther, Jr. 327, 418, 419  
 King George's War 190  
 King Philip's War 157  
 Kipling, Rudyard 240  
 Kirchner, Athanasius 174, 175  
 Kish 30, 32, 33  
 Klondike 239, 408  
 Knights of St. John 172  
 Knights Templar 383  
 Knossos 31, 39, 356–57

Knox, John 167  
 Kobe 255  
 Koguryo 128, 129  
 Kongmin, King 125  
 Korea 82, 85, 132, 181, 254, 272, 389, 408, 409, 416–17  
   early writing 37  
   medieval 124–25, 127, **128–29**, 370, 372, 373, 375, 377  
 Korean War 301, 312, 315, **316–17**, 417  
 Koryo Dynasty *see* Goryeo  
 Kosala 70  
 Kosovo 320, 339, 422, 424  
 Kosovo, Battle of 120, 121, 385  
 Krishna I 373  
 Krishna III 375  
 Kublai Khan 130, 132–33, 382  
 Kulaks 290, 291  
 Kuomintang (KMT) 288, 289, 310, 311, 409, 412, 414  
 Kurds 342  
 Kursk, Battle of 303, 415  
 Kuru kingdom 70, 71  
 Kushan Empire 365, 366  
 Kushite Dynasty 359  
 Kuwait 342, 343, 421  
 Kyoto 129, 180, 181, 254, 255  
 Kyoto Protocol 422

**L**  
 La Rochelle, Siege of 110  
 La Tène culture 47, 362  
 labor supply 196, 197, 240, 340  
 Lacus Trasimenus, Battle of 66, 67, 363  
 Lagash 30, 354  
 Lahore 176  
 land reclamation 194, 195  
 L'Anse aux Meadows 98  
 Lao Tzu 360  
 Laos 85, 318, 329, 416  
 Laozi 40  
 Lapita culture 140, 357  
 Las Navas de Tolosa, Battle of 122, 123  
 Lascaux Caves (Dordogne) 351  
 Latium 65  
 Latvia 280, 284, 297, 336, 337, 411  
 Lausanne, Treaty of 284, 411  
 Lawrence, T. E. **278**, 279  
 League of Nations **285**, 412, 413  
 Leahey, Louis and Mary 350  
 Leahey, Richard 17  
 Lebanon 54, 60, 297, 332, 343, 412, 416, 419, 420, 422, 423, 424  
 Lebanon War 424  
 Lebensraum 299  
 Lee, General Robert E. 256, 257, 406  
 Leipzig, Battle of 211  
 Lenin, Vladimir 234, 273, 280, 281, 291, 410, 411, 412  
 Leningrad 296  
   Siege of 415, 416  
 Leo III, Emperor 372



Leo III, Pope 118, 373  
 Leo IX, Pope 377  
 León 122, 123  
 Leonardo da Vinci 161, 387  
 Leonidas, King 58  
 Leopold I of Belgium 404  
 Leopold II of Belgium 243, 249  
 Lepanto, Battle of 172, 389  
 Lepidus 69  
 Levant, ancient 25, 27, 33, 42, **44–45**  
 Levellers 170, 171  
 Lewis and Clark Expedition 189  
 Lexington, Massachusetts 198  
 Leyte Gulf, Battle of 304  
 Li Jiang River 75  
 Li Shimin 126, 127  
 Li Yuan 126  
 Li Zhicheng 179  
 Liang Dynasty 127, 370  
 Liberia 248, 249, 322, 323  
 Libya 15, 303, 323, 419, 421, 425  
 Lima 153, 263  
 Limoges 219  
 Lin Zexu 227  
 Lincoln, Abraham 256, 257, 406  
 Lindbergh, Charles 412  
 Lindisfarne 99, 109, 372, 373  
 Linear B 36, 39, 42  
 Lisbon 106, 122, 123, 196, 293, 379, 398  
 Lisbon, Treaty of 320  
 Lister, Joseph 259, 406  
 literature  
     12th-century 105  
     Renaissance 160–61  
     Romanticism and Nationalism 216  
 Lithuania 246, 280, 297, 299, 336, 337, 385, 411  
 Lithuanian War of Independence 284  
 Little Bighorn, Battle of 407  
 Liu Bang 75, 82, 363  
 Liverpool 196  
 livestock 158–59, 194, 195, 221  
     domestication 22, 23, **24**, 25, 26, 27, 352  
 Livingstone, David 243, 249  
 Lobengula, King 242  
 Locarno Pact 412  
 Locke, John 202, 392  
 Lodi Dynasty 176, 177  
 Lombards 92, 99, 109, 370, 373  
 Lombardy 265  
 London 233, 236, 303, 325, 393, 394  
 Long March 310, 311, 413  
 Lord's Resistance Army 322  
 Longshan Culture 354  
 Los Alamos, New Mexico 306, 307  
 Los Angeles 400  
 Louis IX of France 107, 382  
 Louis XIV of France 149, 393, 394, 396  
 Louis XVI of France 206, 207, 401  
 Louis XVIII of France 403  
 Louis Napoleon *see* Napoleon III  
 Louis the Pious 373, 374  
 Louis-Philippe of France 218, 219, 404  
 Louisbourg 190, 191, 192

Louisiana 190  
 Louisiana Purchase 260, 402  
 Luanda 162  
 Lucknow, Siege of 244–45  
 Lucy (australopithecine fossil) 12  
 Luding Bridge, Battle of 311  
*Luftwaffe* 292, 294  
 Lui Sheng, Emperor 82  
 Lumumba, Patrice 323  
 RMS *Lusitania* 410  
 Luther, Martin 148, 149, 166, 167, 387  
 Luxembourg 184, 297, 320, 321, 415  
 Luxembourg Dynasty 118  
 Lycurgus 359  
 Lydia, kingdom of 50, 51, 58, 360, 361  
  
**M**  
 Maastricht Treaty 320, 321, 422  
 MacArthur, General Douglas 301, **316**  
 Macau 174, 227, 318, 319, 423  
 McCarthy, Joseph 417  
 Macchiavelli, Niccolò 161, 386  
 Macedonia 56, 58, 59, 60–61, 66, 266, 339, 361, 363, 364, 409  
 Macedonian Dynasty 92, 93, 374  
 McKinley, William 231, 234  
 Madeira 196  
 Madero, Francisco 262, 263  
 Madras 224, 225  
 Madrid 210, 292, 293, 423  
 Madrid, Treaty of 398  
 Magadha 73, 361  
 Magellan, Ferdinand 151, 387  
 Maginot Line 297  
 Magna Carta 381  
 Magna Graecia 64  
 Magyars 90, 375, 376  
*Mahabharata* 71, 369  
 Mahdi (Muhammed Ahmed) 407  
 Mahmud of Ghazni 376  
 Mainz 164  
 Maipu, Battle of 403  
 Maji-Maji rebellion 409  
 Makran Desert 61  
 Malacca 151, 162, 174, 242, 385, 387  
 Málaga 123, 293  
 Malay peninsula 125, 174, 300, 301, 383, 385, 403  
 Malaya 243, 301, 319, 417  
 Malaysia 319, 334, 418  
 Mali 47, 137, 138–39, 386, 409, 425  
 Mallorca 123  
 Malta 172, 303, 320, 353, 383, 395  
 Mamluks 90, 107, 130, 131, 172, 173, 208, 381–85, 400  
 Manassas, Battle of 256  
 Manchester Ship Canal 236  
 Manchuria/Manchurians 178–79, 246, 247, 254, 287, 288, 289, 294, 305, 352, 391, 392, 408, 412, 413  
 Mandela, Nelson 323, 418, 422  
 Manhattan Project 306–07, 324

Manichaeans 367, 374  
 “Manifest Destiny” **204**  
 Manila 163, 192, 300, 301  
 Mansa Musa 137, **138–39**  
 al-Mansourah, Siege of 107  
 Al-Mansur 96, 373  
 Manuel II of Portugal 409  
 Manzikert, Battle of 93, 120, 378  
 Mao Zedong 273, **310**, 311, 315, 412, 413, 417, 418, 420  
 Maoris 140, 189, 220, 387  
 Marat, Jean Paul 206  
 Marathas 176, 177, 224, 225, 397, 399, 401  
 Marathon, Battle of 50, 58, 59, 62  
 Marcos, Ferdinand 419, 421  
 Marcus Aurelius 366  
 Mardonius, General 58, 59  
 Marie Antoinette, Queen of France 401  
 Marie Louise, Empress 209  
 Mark Antony 68, 69, 364, 365  
 Marne, Battles of 274, 410  
 Marquesas Islands 140, 141, 242  
 Marrakech 377  
 Marseille 57, 361  
 Marshall Plan 334, 416  
 Marx, Karl 234, 405, 406, 407  
 Mary II, Queen of England 394, 396  
 Masaccio 161  
 Masada **44**, 45  
 Matabeleland 242  
 Matilda, Queen 379  
 Matthias, Emperor 119  
 Mau Mau Rebellion 417  
 Mauryan Empire **72–73**, 84, 85  
 Maximian, Emperor 81, 367  
 May Fourth Movement 289  
 Maya 37, **52**, **78–79**, 90, 144, 152, 154, 353, 363, 367, 369, 372, 373, 374  
*Mayflower* 156, 391  
 Mazzini, Giuseppe 265  
 Mecca 94, 95, 139, 172, 173, 370, 371  
 mechanization 194  
 Medes 49, 50, 51, 360, 363  
 Medici, Lorenzo de 160  
 Medici Dynasty 112, 113, 385  
 medicine 161, 183, 240, 258–59  
 Medina 94, 95, 172, 371  
 Mediterranean Sea  
     ancient Greeks 56–57  
     Byzantine Empire 92–93  
     Egyptians 35  
     medieval European trade **112–13**  
     Minoans and Mycenaeans 38–39  
     Ottomans 172  
     Persian Wars 58–59  
     Phoenicians 36, 54–55  
     rise of Christianity 86–87  
     Romans 66–69  
     World War II 303  
 Meerut 244  
 megaliths 352, 353  
 Megiddo, Battle of 357  
 Mehmed II, Sultan 120, 121, 172, 173  
 Mehmed IV, Sultan 173

Meiji restoration 254–55, 406  
 Mekong Delta 134, 135  
 Melanesians 141  
 Melos 38, 39, 56  
 Memphis 30, 32, 34, 35, 360  
 Mendeleev, Dmitri 259  
 Menelik II of Abyssinia 248, 408  
 Mengistu Haile Mariam 420, 422  
 Menkaure, Pharaoh 30  
 Mentuhotep, Pharaoh 355  
 Mercator, Gerardus 183, 389  
 Mercia 109  
 Mesa Verde **142**, 143, 377  
 Mesoamerica *see* Central America  
 Mesopotamia 22, 23, 25, 27, 30, 32, 33, 44, 45, 48, 69, 95, 96, 278, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 358, 361, 392  
     early writing 36, 37  
 Messina 66, 67  
 Metternich, Klemens von 219  
 Mexican Revolution 262, 263, 409  
 Mexico 52, 260, 292, 346, 402, 403, 404, 410  
     Spanish conquest 152–53, 154–55  
 Mexico City 153, 157, 383  
 Michelangelo 161, 387  
 Middle Ages **90–91**  
 Middle East  
     ancient Levant **44–45**  
     ascent of Islam 94–95  
     Assyria and Babylonia **48–49**  
     Black Death 114  
     Byzantine Empire 92, 93  
     Iran and the Gulf Wars **342–43**  
     Israel and **332–33**, 416, 418, 419, 420  
     population 347  
     settlements 26–27  
     World War I 279, 285, 410, 411  
     *see also* countries by name  
 Middle Kingdom (Egypt) 34, 36  
 Midway, Battle of 300, 301, 415  
 Mieszko I of Poland 376  
 migrations  
     age of exchange **158–59**  
     ancient world **80–81**  
     Bantu 137  
     first humans **16–17**  
     Jewish to Israel 333  
     mass **238–39**, 347  
     Palestinian emigration 332  
     pioneer trails 204  
     Polynesians **140–41**  
     rural-urban 230  
 Milan 112, 113, 380  
 Milan, Edict of 87  
 Miletus 38, 50, 58, 59  
 militarism 269  
 Milošević, Slobodan 339, 422  
 Milvian Bridge, Battle of the 368–69  
 Minamoto, Yoritomo 128  
 Minamoto, Yoshitsune 128  
 Minamoto clan 124, 128, 380  
 Ming Dynasty 124, 125, **132–33**, 149, 174, **178–79**, 385, 391, 392



Minoans 31, 36, **38–39**, 353, 356–57, 358

missionaries 240

- in Africa 243, 249
- in Asia 174, 175, 227, 250

Buddhist 73

- in Spanish America 152, 388

Mississippi River/Valley 52, 53, 260, 393, 394

Mississippian Mound Builder cultures 142, 143, 377

Mitanni kingdom 357, 358

Mithridates I 363

Mithridates II 364

Mithridates IV of Pontus 364

Mitochondrial Eve 351

Mixtecs 375

Mobuto Sese Seko 422

Mobutu, Joseph-Désiré 323

Moche civilization 79, 362, 366, 370, 372

Montezuma I 144

Montezuma II 154

Mogollon culture 143

Mohacs, Battle of 172

Mohenjo-Daro 31, 33, 354, 357

Moldavia 121, 172, 389

Moluccas 151, 162, 163, 174, 184, 185, 224

Mon kingdom 134, 135, 378

Monaco 320

monasticism 104, 105, 379, 381

Möngke 130, 132, 382

Mongols 90–91, 102, 103, 114, 115, 120, 121, 124, 125, 126, 128, **130–31**, 132–33, 134, 151, 174, 178, 179, 381–84

Monnet, Jean 321

Monroe, James 331

Mons, Battle of 274

Montaigne, Michel de 161

Monte Albán 52, 78, 362, 372, 375

Montejo, Francisco de 152

Montenegro 266, 267, 269, 272, 320, 339, 407, 409, 423, 424

Montreal 150, 190

the Moon 324, 325, 419

Morea 121, 172, 173

Mormons 204

Morocco 14, 97, 268, 292, 293, 302, 323, 377, 378, 379, 389, 417

Morse, Samuel **237**, 405

Morsi, Mohammed 425

Mosaddegh, Mohammad 417

Moscow 211, 232, 233, 280, 296, 388, 402–3, 415

Mound Builder cultures 52, 53, 142, 359

Mount Athos 58, 59

Mount Olympus 56

Mozambique 162, 386, 419

Muawiyah 372

Mubarak, Hosni 425

Mugabe, Robert 420, 425

Mughal Empire 125, 148, 149, 174, 175, **176–77**, 224, 244, 387, 388, 389, 395, 396, 397, 406

Muhammad, the Prophet **94–95**, 370, 371

Muhammad of Ghur 125, 380

Muhammad Ali, Khedive 403

Muhammad V, Sultan 90

Mujahadeen 420, 422

Mumtaz Mahal 177, 392

Murad I, Sultan 120, 384

Murad IV, Sultan 173, 392

Muromachi 124

Musharraf, General Pervez 423

music

- 12th-century song 105
- Romanticism and Nationalism 216

Mussolini, Benito 273, 282, 296, 297, 302, 411, 412, 415

Mutually Assured Destruction (MAD) 313

Mwene Mutapa Empire 386

My Lai massacre 329

Myanmar 85, 125, 421, 424, 425

- see also* Burma

Mycale, Battle of 58, 361

Mycenae/Mycenaeans 31, 36, **38–39**, 42, 358

Mysore 398, 402

Mysore Wars 224, 225

N

Nabateans 36, 365

Nabonidus of Babylon 49

Nabopolassar of Babylon 49, 360

Nader Shah 397

Nagasaki 149, 175, 255, 295, 305, **306–07**, 312, 324, 416

Najibullah, Muhammad 422

Namibia 322, 323, 421

Nanda Empire 72, 73

Nanjing 124, 133, 252, 253, 289, 311, 414

Nanjing, Treaty of 227

Naples 64, 65, 113, 219, 386

- Kingdom of 209, 265

Napoleon I, Emperor 200, 201, 206, 207, **208–11**, 402–3

Napoleon III, Emperor 218, 219, 264

Napoleonic Wars 188–89, **208–11**, 218, 246, 265, 269, 402–3

Nara period 128, 129, 372

Narmer, King 30

Narmer Palette 353

NASA 324, 418

Nasser, Gamal Abdel 417

Natal 242, 404, 405

National Assembly 206, 207, 401

nationalism 188, 189, **216–17**, 272, 285, 407

- Balkan Wars 266–67
- China and **288–89**
- Middle East 285
- South America 153, 189
- Southeast Asia 319
- unification of Germany and Italy **264–65**

Nations, Battle of the 211, 402

Native Americans 20, 21, 156, 157, 158, 159, 190, 191, 192, 238, 391, 394, 396, 404

- fate of **204–05**

NATO 312, 314, 315, 417

Navarino, Battle of 404

Navarre 122

Nazca 363

Nazism 216, 273, 282–83, 284, 286, 287, 292, 294–99, 302–03, 411, 413, 414

Neanderthals 13, 15, 16, 17, 350

Nearchus 61

Nebraska 261

Nebuchadnezzar II of Babylon 44, 48, 49, 360, 361

Nefertiti, Queen 35

Nehru, Jawaharlal 308, 416

Nelson, Admiral Horatio 208, 402

Neo-Babylonian Empire 360–61

Neolithic period 352–53

Nepal 85, 424

Nerchinsk, Treaty of 246, 247, 394

Nero, Emperor 86, 365

Netherlands 157, 161, 181, 209, 274, 318, 319, 320, 321, 417

- Dutch Empire 184
- Dutch Golden Age **184–85**
- Dutch Republic 149, 161, 184, 388, 392, 393
- Dutch Revolt 184, 388
- and India 224, 225
- and Japan 175
- reclaimed land 194
- slave trade 197
- spice trade 162–63, 174
- voyages of exploration 151
- World War II 294, 297, 325, 415

Neva, Battle of the 381, 382

Nevsky, Alexander 381

New Amsterdam 157, 391, 393

New Deal 286, 330, 413

New France 156, 190, 391

New Granada 201, 397

New Guinea 18, 22, 25, 300, 301, 304, 318, 391

New Kingdom (Egypt) 34, 35

New Mexico 20, 324

New Model Army 170, 171, 392

New Orleans 156, 256, 402, 424

New Sarai 113

New South Wales 221

New Spain 157, 403

New World expeditions 148, **152–53**, 386

New York 199, 260, 286

New Zealand 185, 189, 237, 239, 387, 400, 408, 409

- colonization **220–21**, 405
- Polynesians 140, 141
- World War I 279

Newfoundland 150, 190, 376, 396

Newgrange (Ireland) 353

Newton, Isaac 149, 183, 394

Ngo Dinh Diem 417

Ngo Quyen 135

Nicaea 92

Nicaea, Council of 87, 368

Nicaragua 263, 331, 404, 405, 420, 421

Nicholas II, Czar 272, 281, 408, 410, 411

Niger 347

Nigeria 47, 287, 322, 347, 418, 425

Nile, Battle of the 209

Nile River/Valley 23, 30, 33, 34–35

Nineveh 49, 51, 359, 360

Nippur 30, 356

Nixon, Richard M. 419

Nkrumah, Kwame 323

Nobunaga, Oda 180, 181, 389

Nok culture 47

nomads 22, 23, 27, 81, 93

Non-Aligned Movement 315

Norgay, Tenzing 417

Noriega, General Manuel 330, 331, 420, 421

Normandy 99

Normandy landings 295, 302, 416

Normans 99, **100–01**, 377, 378

Norte Chico civilization 52

North Africa

- Black Death 114
- Byzantine Empire 92–93
- Christianity in 86
- rise of Islam 94–95
- Romans 66, 67, 68
- Vandals 80, 92, 93, 108, 109
- World War I 278, 279
- World War II 295, 298, 302–03, 415
- see also* countries by name

North America

- American Revolution **198–99**
- battle for **190–91**
- colonization of **156–57**, 242
- cultures of **142–43**
- fate of Native Americans **204–05**
- first civilizations 52, **53**
- peopling **20–21**
- Seven Years’ War 188, 189, 192, 193
- Vikings 98
- see also* Canada; United States

North Korea 312, 316–17, 325, 417, 423, 424, 425

North Pole 409

North Sea 113

Northern Expedition 288

Northern Ireland 419, 422, 424

Northumbria 99, 109

Northwest Passage 150, 151

Norway 296, 298, 321, 408–9, 415

- Vikings 98, 99

Nova Scotia 156, 190, 396, 398

Novgorod 99

Nubia 136, 360, 383

nuclear arms race 307, 314, 324–25, 417, 418, 419, 421

Numidia 67, 364

Nur ad-Din 380

Nuremberg 302

Nurhaci 179, 391





Oaxaca 78  
 Obama, Barack 424, 425  
 Octavian 63, 68, 69, 364, 365  
 October Revolution 275, 281  
 Odoacer 108, 369  
 Offa of Mercia 373  
 Ögedei Khan 130, 131  
 O'Higgins, Bernardo 201  
 Ohio River Valley 52, 53, 192  
 oil 232, 334–35, 342, 408, 417, 418, 419, 424  
 Okinawa, Battle of 305  
 Oklahoma 261  
 Old Kingdom (Egypt) 34  
 Olduvai Gorge (Tanzania) 350  
 Olmecs 31, 37, **52**, 358, 359, 362  
 Olympic Games 359, 369  
 Oman 397  
 Ōnin War 180, 386  
 Opium Wars **226–27**, 250, 252, 405, 406  
 Oregon Trail 204, 404  
 Oregon Treaty 260  
 Orhan, Sultan 120, 121, 383  
 Orkney Islands 99, 353  
 Orléans 111, 385  
 Orozco, Pascual 263  
*Orronin* 12, 14  
 Ortega, Daniel 421  
 Osaka 181, 255  
 Osceola, Chief 205  
 Oslo Accords 422  
 Osman, Sultan 121, 383  
 Ostia 65  
 Ostrogoths 80, 108, 109, 369, 370  
 Oswald, Lee Harvey 418  
 Otranto 173  
 Otto I, Emperor 105, 118, 119, 376  
 Otto I of Greece 404  
 Ottoman Empire 118, 149, 151, **172–73**, 174, 175, 208, 209, 238, 246, 247, 249, 272, 383–89, 392, 394, 397, 404, 406, 407, 408  
 Balkan Wars 218, 266, 267, 409  
 end of 273  
 rise of the Ottomans **120–21**  
 World War I 278, 279, 284, 285, 410, 411  
 Oudh 244  
 Ourique, Battle of 123  
 Oxus treasure 50  
 Oyo 197  
 Ozbeg Khan 383

## P

Pachacuti 145, 385, 386  
 Pacific, War of the 262, 263  
 Pacific Ocean 246  
 Polynesians **140–41**  
 World War II 295, **300–01**, 304–05, 415  
 Paekche 125, 129

Paestum 65  
 Páez, José Antonio 262  
 Pagan 85, 91, 125, 133, 134, 135, 377, 378, 382  
 Paine, Thomas 202  
 Pakistan 22, 308, 309, 416, 418, 419, 420, 423, 424, 425  
 Palermo 113, 219  
 Palestine 86, 90, 93, 94, 106, 284, 371, 407  
 Israel and the Middle East **332–33**, 411, 412, 416, 419, 421, 424  
 Palestine Mandate 414  
 Palestine War 332  
 Pallava Dynasty 375  
 Panhellenism 56  
 Panama 263, 330, 331, 388, 397, 403, 420, 421  
 Panama Canal 236, 238, 262, 331, 410, 420  
 Panchala 70  
 Pankhurst, Emmeline and Christabel 408, 409  
 Panmunjom 317  
 Papacy  
 Crusades 106, 378  
 and Holy Roman Empire **117**, 118, 119, 378, 379, 383  
 Reformation **166–67**  
 Papua New Guinea 318, 319  
 Paraguay 201, 413  
 Paraguayan War 240, **263**, 406  
*Paranthropus* 14, 15  
 Paris 105, 111, 113, 206, 207, 210, 219, 236, 264, 327, 375, 384, 403, 404  
 Paris, Treaty of (1763) 193  
 Paris, Treaty of (1783) 198, 401  
 Paris, Treaty of (1951) 320, 321  
 Paris Accord (2015) 425  
 Paris Commune 234–35, 407  
 Paris Peace Accords (1973) 329  
 Paris Peace Conference (1919–20) 285, 289, 411  
 Parks, Rosa 327, 417  
 Parliament, British 170, 171  
 Parma 219  
 Parthenon (Athens) 56, 62, 173, 362  
 Parthians 69, 102, 363, 364, 367  
 Pasargadae 50, 51  
 Passchendaele, Battle of 274, 276, 411  
 Pasteur, Louis 259  
 Patagonia 20, 21, 262  
 Patil, Pratibha 424  
 Patna 176  
 Patrick, St. 86, 87  
 Paul, St. 86, 87  
 Pearl Harbor 295, 301, 415  
 Peasants' Revolt 385  
 Pedro I of Brazil 200  
 Pedro II of Brazil 408  
 Peking 250–51  
 Peking Man 350  
 Pelayo 122, 123  
 Peleset 43  
 Peloponnesian War 56, 57, 362  
 Pelusium, Battle of 50  
 penal colonies 220, 221  
 Peninsular War 210, 211, 402  
 Penn, William 394  
 Pepin II 372  
*perestroika* 337, 421  
 Perez, Shimon 422  
 Pericles 56, 57, 62, 63, 362  
 Péron, Isabel 419  
 Persepolis 50, 51, 59, 61, 361  
 Persian Empire 44, 48, 49, 57, 361  
 Afsharid 397  
 Alexander the Great **60–61**  
 ascent of Islam 94–95  
 Persian Royal Road 102  
 Persian Wars **58–59**, 62  
 rise of **50–51**  
 Safavid 389, 397  
 Sassanian 93, 94, 95, 370, 371  
 Persian Gulf 51, 343  
 Peru 52, 79, 90, 144, 262, 263  
 independence 200, 201  
 Spanish conquest 152–53, 154, 388  
 Peruzzi 112, 113  
 Pétain, Philippe 297, 298, 415  
 Peter, St. 86  
 Peter the Great, Czar 246, 247, 394, 396  
 Petri, Olavus 167  
 Petrograd 280, 281  
 pharaohs **34–35**  
 Phidias 62  
 Philadelphia 190, 191, 400  
 Philip II of Macedon 56, 60, 62, 362  
 Philip II of Spain 388, 389  
 Philip V of Spain 396  
 Philip Augustus of France 107  
 Philippine Sea, Battle of the 304  
 Philippines 141, 162, 163, 192, 240, 318, 319, 383, 388, 408, 418, 419, 421  
 World War II 300, 301, 304, 415  
 Philistines 43, 44  
 Phoenicians 36, 37, 42, 44, 47, **54–55**, 57, 64, 66, 358, 359, 361  
 Picasso, Pablo 414–15  
 Pichincha, Battle of 200, 201  
 pictographs 36  
 Picts 80, 81  
 Piedmont 219  
 Pilgrim Fathers 156, 157, 391  
 pilgrimages  
 Buddhist 102, 103  
 Mecca 138–39  
 Pinochet, Augusto 419, 421  
 Pippin II of the Franks 99  
 Pitt, William (the Elder) 398  
 Pizarro, Francisco 152, 153, 388  
 plague 91, **114–15**  
 Plains of Abraham, Battle of the 192  
 Plains Indian Wars 205  
 plantations 156, 157, 158, 196, 201  
 Plassey, Battle of 224, 225, 398  
 Plataea, Battle of 58, 59, 361  
 Plato 62, 362, 380  
 PLO (Palestinian Liberation Organization) 419, 422

Plymouth Colony 156, 157, 391  
 Pol Pot 419  
 Poland 173, 209, 218, 219, 246, 280, 284, 336, 376, 411, 412, 420, 421  
 partitions of 400  
 World War II 294, 297, 298, 299, 302, 303, 415, 416  
 Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth 246, 247  
 Pollio, Marcus Vitruvius 160  
 pollution 335  
 Polo, Marco 102, 103, **133**, 174, 382  
 Polynesians **140–41**, 220, 367  
 Pompeii 363, 366  
 Pompey 69, 364  
 Ponce de León, Juan 150, 387  
 Pondicherry 163, 225, 399  
 population  
 Americas 20–21  
 Black Death 114–15  
 Europe 218  
 growth 188, 195, 212, 335, **346–47**  
 Port Arthur 246  
 Portugal 181, 242, 249, 293, 318, 319, 321, 379, 393, 409, 412, 419, 423  
 conquests in the Americas 152–53, 200, 201, 398  
 and India 174, 177  
 and Japan 175  
 Peninsular War 210, 211, 402  
 Reconquista **122–23**  
 slave trade 196, 197  
 spice trade 162–63, 185  
 voyages of exploration 150–51, 385, 386–87  
 potatoes 158, 159  
 Potosí 153, 388  
 Potsdam Conference 307, 416  
 pottery  
 Chinese porcelain 178  
 Stone Age 26, 351  
 poverty 230, 231, 286–87, 323, 335, 340  
 Prague 219  
 Prague Spring 315, 419  
 Pre-Columbian cultures **78–79**  
 Presbyterians 171  
 primates 12, 14  
 Primo de Rivera, Miguel 411  
 Princip, Gavriilo 272  
 Príncipe 419  
 printing 91, **164–65**, 344  
 Prohibition 411  
 propaganda **324**  
 Protestant Church 148, 166–67  
 Proto-Canaanite 36  
 Proto-Sinaitic 36  
 Prussia 206, 218, 219, 264, 265, 381, 397, 406, 407  
 Napoleonic Wars 208, 209, 210, 211  
 Seven Years' War 192, 193  
 Ptolemaic Dynasty 362, 363  
 Ptolemy 105, 183, 366  
 public health 230, 231, 259  
 Puebloan cultures 142, 143, 377



Puerto Rico 263, 408  
 Punic Wars **66–67**, 68, 363, 364  
 puppet regimes 298  
 Puritanism 170, 171  
 Pusan Perimeter 316, 317  
 Pushyabhuti Dynasty 125, 371  
 Pushyamitra 363  
 Putin, Vladimir 423, 425  
 Puyi, Emperor **252**, 253, 409, 412  
 Pylos 38, 42  
 Pyongyang 129  
 pyramids  
   Egypt 30, 34  
   Mesoamerica 30–31, 52, 78, 79  
 Pyramids, Battle of the 208  
 Pyrrhus of Epirus 363  
 Pythagoras 361

## Q

Qatar 342, 419  
 Qin Dynasty **74–77**, 82, 178, 362, 363  
 Qin Shi Huang **74–77**, 82, 363  
 Qing Dynasty/Empire 149, 175, **178–79**,  
   226, 240, 242, 243, 246, 247, 250, 272,  
   289, 391, 394, 395, 396, 399  
   decline of **252–53**, 401, 405, 409  
 Qom 343  
 Quakers 222  
 Quanzhou 132  
 Quaternary era 351, 352  
 Quebec 156, 188, 191, 192, 391, 399  
 Queen Anne's War 190  
 Queensland 221  
 Quiberon Bay, Battle of 193  
 Quisling, Vidkun 298  
 Quit India Movement 308, 309  
 Quito 144

## R

Rabaul 301, 304  
 Rabin, Yitzak 422  
 Radetzky, Marshal 219  
 Ragusa, Republic of 172  
 railways 212, 214, 215, 237, 240, 404, 408  
 Rajaraja I 376  
 Rajarendra I 377  
 Raleigh, Walter 156, 157, 159, 389  
 Ramesses II, Pharaoh 34, 35  
 Ramesses III, Pharaoh 43, 358  
 Rankin, Jeanette 410  
 Raphael 161  
 Rashtrakuta Dynasty 373, 375  
 rationalism **202**  
 raw materials 212, 213, 240  
 Reagan, Ronald 331, 337, 420  
 Red Turban Rebellion 133, 383  
 the Reformation 117, 148, 161, **166–67**,  
   387, 388  
 refrigeration 236, 237  
 religion  
   ascent of Islam **94–95**

religion *continued*  
   Reconquista **122–23**  
   Reformation 148, **166–67**  
   rise of Christianity **86–87**  
   spread of Buddhism **84–85**  
   temple states of Southeast Asia  
     **134–35**  
   Thirty Years' War 169  
   Yugoslav War 339  
 Rembrandt van Rijn 184, 392  
 Renaissance 91, **160–61**, 164, 386, 387  
   12th-century **104–05**  
 reservations, Native American 204, 205  
 resistance movements 299, 415  
 Revolutionary War (American) 189,  
   **198–99**, 257, 400  
 revolutions of 1848 **218–19**  
 Reza Khan Pahlavi 412  
 Rheims 110  
 Rhine River 68, 209  
 Rhodes 39, 172, 383  
 Rhodes, Cecil 242, 249  
 Rhodesia 323  
 Ricci, Matteo 174  
 rice 158, 159, 353  
 Richard the Lionheart 107, 380  
 Richmond 256, 257  
 Rio de Janeiro 399  
 Rivera, Diego de 154–55  
 Robert Curthose 100  
 Robespierre, Maximilien de 206, 207  
 Rochambeau, General Jean-Baptiste 198  
 rockets **324–25**  
 Rocky Mountains 398  
 Roderick, King of the Visigoths 122  
 Roe, Thomas 175  
 Rohingya Muslims 425  
 Rollo 99, 100, 375  
 Roman Catholic Church 92, 148, 161,  
   166–67  
 Roman Republic 63, 65, 66–67, 69, 364  
 Romania 16, 266, 267, 268, 278, 284, 297,  
   321, 337, 407, 416, 421, 424  
 Romans 36, 57, 62–63, 102, 103, 359–69  
   ancient Levant 44–45  
   and Christianity 86, 87  
   collapse of Western Empire 81, 90, 92,  
     105, 108–9  
   Eastern and Western Empires 63, **81**,  
     92–93  
   and Etruscans **64–65**  
   expansion **66–67**  
   height of Empire **68–69**, 366  
 Romanticism 188, **216–17**, 402  
 Romanus Diogenes, Emperor 93  
 Rome 62–63, 265, 359–69, 387  
   Byzantine Empire 92  
   Christian Church 86–87  
   Etruscans and rise of **64–65**  
 Rome, Treaty of (1957) 320, 321  
 Rommel, Field Marshal Erwin 295, 303,  
   415  
 Romulus and Remus 65, 359  
 Roosevelt, Franklin D. 286, 330, 413, 416

Rosas, Juan Manuel de **262**  
 Rothari, King of the Lombards 109  
 Rousseau, Jean-Jacques 202, 399  
 Ruisdael, Jacob van 184  
 Rum, Sultanate of 120, 382  
 runes 36  
 Russia 192, 193, 218, 272  
   Balkan Wars 266, 267  
   civil war 280, 411  
   emigration 238, 239  
   imperialism 240, 241, 242, 243, **246–47**,  
     250, 394, 406  
   industrialization 230, 232, 233  
   Napoleonic Wars 208, 209, 210, 211,  
     402–3  
   population 347  
   Russian Revolution 273, 275, **280–81**,  
     291, 410  
   socialism 234  
   Vikings 99  
   World War I 268–69, 274, 275, 278–79,  
     285, 410–11  
   *see also* Soviet Union  
 Russian Federation 321, 337, 422, 423, 425  
 Russo-Japanese Wars 246, 254, 272, 408, 414  
 Russo-Turkish Wars 246, 266, 267, 400, 407  
 Rwanda 323, 422

## S

Sabah 319, 418  
 Sabini 65  
 sabertooth cats 21  
 Sadat, Anwar 420  
 Safavid Empire 120, 149, 173, 387, 389,  
   392, 397  
 Sahara Desert 25  
*Sahelanthropus* 14  
 Saigo Takamori 254, 255  
 Saigon 328, 329, 406, 419  
 Sailendra Empire 134  
 St. Bartholomew's Day Massacre **166**, 167  
 St. Helena 210, 403  
 St. Kitt's 157  
 St. Lawrence River 156, 192  
 St. Petersburg 232, 394  
 Saladin 107, 380, 381  
 Salamis, Battle of 50, 58, 59, 62, 361  
 Salian Dynasty 118  
 Salonika 121, 278  
 Samanid Dynasty 96, 97, 376  
 Samaria 44, 45  
 Samarkand 130, 246, 384  
 Samoa 140, 141, 397  
 samurai 128, 149, 254, 380  
 San Francisco 260, 286, 400  
 San Lorenzo Tenochtitlán 52  
 San Marino 320  
 San Martín, José de 200, 201  
 Sanchi 73  
 Sanskrit 70  
 Santorini 31, 38, 39  
 São Tomé 419  
 São Vicente 153  
 Saqqara 30, 354  
 Saracens 374  
 Sarajevo 272, 275, 338, 410  
 Saratoga, Battle of 199  
 Sarawak 319, 418  
 Sardinia 39, 66, 209, 265, 357  
 Sardinia-Piedmont 265  
 Sardis 59  
 Sargon of Akkad 32, 33, 355  
 Sargon II of Assyria 44, 49, 55  
 Sarnath 84  
 SARS virus 423  
 Sassanian/Sassanid Dynasty 87, 93, 94, 95,  
   367, 369, 370, 371  
 satellites 324–25, 344, 418  
 Satsuma Rebellion 254, 255  
 Saudi Arabia 16, 342, 398, 413, 420, 425  
 Saul, King 359  
 Savoy 265  
 Saxons 81  
 Saxony 192  
 Scandinavia, Vikings **98–99**  
 Schleswig-Holstein 219, 264  
 Schlieffen, Alfred von/Schlieffen Plan 274,  
   410  
 Schuman, Robert **321**  
 Scientific Revolution 149, **182–83**, 189  
 Scipio Aemilianus 67  
 Scipio Africanus 67  
 Scotland 382, 383, 390, 396, 398–99  
   Covenanters 170  
   Nova Scotia 156  
   Reformation 167  
   Vikings 99  
 Scythia 50, 72  
 "Sea People" 42, 44, 358  
 Seattle 340  
 Second Great Awakening 222  
 segregation 322, 327  
 selective breeding 194  
 Seleucids 45, 48, 61, 66, 363, 364  
 Selim I, Sultan 172, 173, 387  
 Seljuk Turks 90, 93, 97, 107, 120, 121, 377,  
   378, 382  
 Seminole Wars 205  
 Sennacherib of Assyria 49, 359, 360  
 Seoul 316  
 Serbia 120, 218, 266, 267, 268, 272, 275,  
   278, 284, 337, 338, 385, 407, 409, 410,  
   422, 423, 424  
 serfs, emancipation of 218, 232, 406  
 Serrão, Francisco 163  
 settlements **26–27**  
   *see also* cities; towns; villages  
 Sevastopol, Siege of 246  
 Seven Weeks' War 264  
 Seven Years' War 188, 189, 191, **192–93**, 399  
 Seville 123, 293  
 Sèvres, Treaty of 273, 284  
 Shah Jahan, Emperor **177**, 392  
 Shaka Zulu 403  
 Shakespeare, William 161, 390  
 Shamshi-Adad 48, 356



Shang Dynasty 37, **40–41**, 357  
Shangdu 132  
Shanghai 252, 288, 289, 310, 311, 412, 414  
Sheba, Queen of 359  
Sher Shah Suri 176  
Sherman, General William 257, 406  
Shias 94, 371, 378  
Shiloh, Battle of 256, 406  
Shimabara Revolt 175  
shipbuilding 213  
Shivaji Bhonsle 176  
Shona kingdom 137  
Shotoku, Prince 370, 371  
Shunzhi, Emperor 178  
Shutrukid Dynasty 358  
Siberia 17, 21, 246, 247, 281, 290, 357, 397  
Sicily 62, 100, 105, 118, 119, 219, 265, 302, 303, 353, 373, 395, 415  
Greek colonies 39, 56, 57  
Normans 99, 378, 380  
Romans 66  
Sidon 54, 60, 359  
Sierra Leone 322, 401, 423  
Sihanouk, Prince 422  
Sikh kingdom 224, 395  
silk, Chinese **103**  
Silk Road 82, 83, 84, 85, **102–03**, 115, 132, 151, 364  
Silla 125, 127, 128, 129, 370, 372, 373, 375  
silver 152, 153, 154, 388  
Sima Qian 76  
Simon bar Kokhba 366  
Sinai Peninsula 17, 27, 332, 333  
Sinan 173  
Sind 177, 372  
Singapore 242, 300, 301, 318, 319, 334, 385, 403, 418  
Sino-Japanese Wars 241, 254, 289, 408  
Siraj-ud-Daula 225  
Sitting Bull 205  
Six-Day War 333, 418  
Sixtus IV, Pope 122  
Skara Brae (Orkney) 353  
slavery 152, 156, 157, 159, 189, 212, 387, 391, 397, 400  
abolition of 196, 197, 200, **222–23**, 238, 402, 404, 406  
Civil War (American) 256, 257  
Atlantic slave trade **196–97**, 396  
Slavic peoples 99, 299  
Slavs 92, 93, 370, 371  
Slovakia 297, 298, 337, 422  
Slovenia 338, 339, 422  
smallpox 158, 159, 401, 420  
smartphones 344  
Smith, Adam 202  
Smolensk, Battle of 211  
Smyrna 284, 285  
social change 218, 231, 233, 327  
social networking 344  
Socialism **234–35**  
Socrates 62, 362  
Sokoto Caliphate 402  
Solidarity 336

Solomon, King 359  
Solomon Islands 304, 351  
Solomonic Dynasty 382  
Solon 361  
Somalia 315, 323, 418, 422, 425  
Somme, Battle of the 276–77, 410  
Song Dynasty 124, **126–27**, 130, 132, 376, 378, 379, 382  
Songhai Empire 137, 139, 386, 389  
Songsten Gampo 370  
South Africa 15, 16, 230, 238, 240, 243, 249, 322, 323, 400, 404, 405, 407, 408, 409, 418, 420, 421, 422  
South America  
early humans 13  
Empires of the Andean Coast **79**  
first civilizations **52**  
Great Depression 286  
immigration 238, 239  
Inca Empire **144–45**  
independence **200–01**, **262–63**  
medieval 90  
peopling **20–21**  
Spanish conquests **152–55**  
US interventions **330–31**  
*see also* countries by name  
South Australia 221  
South Korea 312, 316–17, 334, 417, 425  
South Pole 409  
South Sudan 323, 420, 425  
Southeast Asia  
decolonization **318–19**  
early humans 14, 16, 17  
imperial dominions 243  
medieval 91  
temple states **134–35**  
World War II **300–01**  
*see also* countries by name  
Soviet Union 234, 282, 292  
and China 288, 310  
Cold War **314–15**, 416–21  
collapse of 234, **336–37**, 340, 422  
Cuban Missile Crisis 313, 330  
foundation of 280, 281  
isolationist economy 286, 287  
Korean War 316, 317  
Space Race **324–25**, 418  
Stalin era **290–91**, 412, 413  
as superpower **312–13**  
Vietnam Wars 328  
World War II 290, 291, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 302–03, 415–16  
*see also* Russia  
Soweto 420  
Space Age technology 344  
Space Race 312–13, **324–25**, 418, 419  
Spain 14, 249, 318, 321, 386, 411, 412, 419, 420, 425  
Christianity 86  
conquests in the Americas **152–55**, 200, 201, 398  
Islamic invasions 90, 94, 95, 372  
and North America 156, 157, 191, 192, 242

Spain *continued*  
Peninsular War 210, 211, 402  
Reconquista **122–23**, 386  
Romans 66, 67, 68  
slave trade 197  
Spanish Civil War 273, 282, **292–93**, 413–14  
spice trade 162–63  
Visigoths 94, 95, 108–09, 122, 370  
voyages of exploration 150–51, 386  
Spanish Armada 389  
Spanish influenza 411  
Spanish–American War 242, 263, 318, 408  
Sparta 56, 57, 59, 62, 359, 360, 361  
Spartacus 364  
spice trade 151, **162–63**, 174, 184, 224, 390  
Spiro 142, 143  
*Sputnik 1* 325, 418  
Sri Lanka 16, 84, 85, 125, 376, 377, 416, 420  
Srivijaya 134, 135  
Stalin, Joseph 281, 287, **290–91**, 297, 303, 312, 412, 413, 416  
Stalingrad, Battle of 295, 296, 297, 302, 303  
Standard of Ur **33**, 354  
standing armies 148  
Stanley, Henry 249  
Staraya Lagoda 99  
steam power 212, 214, 385, 396, 400  
steamships 236, 237  
steel-making 212, 213, 215, 230, 232, 233, 260  
Stephen of England 379  
Stephen I of Hungary 376  
Stephenson, George 214, 404  
Steppe tribes 82, 83  
Stilicho 108  
Stock Market Crash 273, 286, 287, 412  
Stone Age 12, 14, 20, 21, 26, 27, 350–53  
Stonehenge 354–55  
strategic bombing 303  
Stuart, James Francis Edward (the Old Pretender) 396  
Stuart, Prince Charles Edward (Bonnie Prince Charlie) 398  
student revolts **327**  
Sucre, Antonio José de 200, 201, 404  
Sudan 323, 403, 407, 417, 422, 425  
Sueves 81, 108  
Suez Canal 236, 238, 248, 279, 332, 333, 411, 417  
suffrage 231, 273, 408, 409, 411  
sugar 158, 196  
Suharto, General 319, 418, 422  
Sui Dynasty 124, 126, 371  
Sukarno, Achmed **319**  
Suleyman I (the Magnificent), Sultan 172, 173, 388  
Sumatra 134, 135  
Sumer 30, 33, 36, 37, 353, 354, 355  
Sumitada, Omura 175  
Sun Yixian (Sun Yat-sen) 253, 288, 409, 412  
Sundjata Kingdom 135

Sunnis 94, 371, 398  
superpowers **312–13**  
Surat 163, 174  
Surinam 184  
Suryavarman II 125, 379  
Susa 50, 51, 358  
Sutton Hoo 109  
Sveyn Forkbeard of Denmark 377  
Swan River 18  
Sweden 148, 169, 246, 321, 409  
Napoleonic Wars 208, 209, 211  
Reformation 166, 167  
Switzerland 321  
Sydney 221, 287, 401  
Syracuse 56, 64, 359  
Syria 60, 69, 93, 94, 95, 106, 172, 173, 279, 297, 332, 333, 334, 347, 355, 371, 378, 379, 380, 412, 416, 419, 423  
civil war 343, 425  
Syria Palaestina 44, 45

**T**  
Tahiti 141, 242  
Taiku Reforms 128  
Taiping Empire 252, 253  
Taiping Rebellion 252, 253, 405  
Taira clan 124, 380  
Taiwan 140, 243, 311, 315, 334, 408, 417  
*see also* Formosa  
Taiyun, Battle of 289  
Taizong, Emperor 126, 127  
Taizu, Emperor 126, 376  
Taj Mahal (Agra) 176, 177, 392  
Talas River, Battle of the 127, 372  
Talavera, Battle of 210  
Taliban 422, 425  
Tamil Tigers 420  
Tang Dynasty 90, 95, 102, 103, 124, **126–27**, 128, 129, 134, 374, 375  
tank warfare 274  
Tannenberg, Battle of 275, 410  
Tanzania 47, 323  
Tarawa 304, 305  
Tariq ibn Ziyad 122  
Tarquinia 64  
Tarquinius Priscus 360  
Tarquinius Superbus, Lucius 62  
Tartars 114  
Tasman, Abel 185, 220, 392  
Tasmania 18, 221, 392  
Taylor, Charles 322  
technology  
Agricultural Revolution **194–95**  
communication revolution **344–45**  
farming 22, 23, 24  
globalization 340  
Industrial Revolution **212–15**  
transportation and communications 231, **236–37**  
Tehran 343, 420  
telecommunications 231  
telegraph 213, 236, 240, 405



television 412  
 Temujin 131  
 Tenochtitlán 144, 154, 385, 386  
 Teotihuacán 78, 366, 370, 372  
 Terracotta Army **76–77**  
 The Terror 206, 207, 401  
 terrorism 421, 422, 423, 424, 425  
 Tertullian 86  
 Teruel, Battle of 292, 293  
 Tet Offensive 419  
 Teutonic Knights 381, 382  
 Texas 260, 261, 286, 396, 404, 405, 408, 410  
 textiles 212, 214, 215, 224, 233, 400  
 Thailand 85, 301, 319, 418  
 Thales of Miletus 360  
 Thatcher, Margaret 421  
 Thebes (Egypt) 34, 360  
 Thebes (Greece) 38, 56  
 Themistocles 58  
 Theoderic the Great 80, 108, 369  
 Theodosius I, Emperor 369  
 Thera 31, 38, 39, 357  
 Thermidor coup 206, 207  
 Thermopylae, Battle of 50, 58, 361  
 Thessaly 56, 60, 267  
 Thirteen Colonies 156, 204, 397  
 Thirty Years' War 112, 118, 148, 166, **168–69**, 391, 392, 393  
 Thrace 56, 58, 59, 60, 120  
 Three Feudatories, Revolt of the 179  
 Thucydides 57, 62  
 Thutmose III, Pharaoh 35, 357  
 Tiahuanaco 79  
 Tiananmen Square (Beijing) 421  
 Tianjin, Battle of 311  
 Tianjin, Treaty of 226, 227  
 Tiberius, Emperor 69, 365  
 Tibet 84, 103, 132, 373, 374, 396, 409, 417, 418  
 Tigris River 25, 30, 33, 48, 353, 356  
 Tikal 369, 372  
 Tilsit, Treaty of 246  
 Timbuktu 135, 136  
 Timur 121, 131, 177, 384, 385  
 Tippecanoe, Battle of 205  
 Tipu Sultan 225  
 Tiryns 38  
 Tito, Josip Broz 339  
 Titus, Emperor 45  
 Tlatilco 52  
 Toba supereruption 351  
 tobacco 158, 159  
 Tokugawa shogunate 149, 175, 181, 254, 390, 392, 406  
 Tokyo 254, 255, 304  
 Toledo 105, 122, 123  
 Toltecs 144, 145, 372, 379  
 Tonga 140, 141  
 Tonkin, Gulf of 329  
 Tordesillas, Treaty of **152**, 386  
 Torres Strait 18  
 total war 294–95  
 totalitarianism 273, 282  
 Toulouse 108

towns **26–27**, 113  
 Toyotomi, Hideyoshi 180, 181, 389  
 Toyotomi, Hideyori 181  
 trade  
   African empires 137  
   age of exchange **158–59**  
   agriculture and 23  
   ancient Egypt 34, 35  
   and colonization of Africa 249  
   Dutch Golden Age **184–85**  
   first American civilizations 52–53  
   first cities 32, 33  
   global 212–13, 214, 236–37, 340–41  
   India 134, 175, 224  
   Japan 175, 181  
   Latin America 263  
   medieval European **112–13**  
   Minoan and Mycenaean 38–39  
   North American colonies 157  
   Phoenician 36, 54  
   Roman 68–69  
   and settlements 26–27  
   Silk Road 82, 83, **102–03**, 132  
   slave trade 152, 189, **196–97**, 212, **222–23**  
   spice trade **162–63**, 174  
   Vikings 98, 99  
   voyages of exploration 150–51  
 Trafalgar, Battle of 208, 402  
 Trail of Tears 205, 404  
 Trajan, Emperor 63, 68, 69, 366  
 Trans-Siberian Railway 232, 408  
 Transjordan 285, 332, 416  
 Transoxiana 95, 131  
 transportation 212, 213, 230, 231, 233, **236–37**, 238  
 trench warfare 274, 275, **276–77**  
 Trenton, Battle of 199  
 Trinidad and Tobago 418  
 Triple Entente 268, 408  
 Tripoli 107  
 Trojan War 38, 358  
 Trotsky, Leon 280, **281**, 410, 412  
 troubadours 105  
 Troy 38  
 Troyes 112  
 Troyes, Treaty of 111  
 Truman, Harry S. 306, 307, 416  
 Trump, Donald 425  
 tsunami (2004) 423  
 Tsushima, Battle of 241  
 Tukulti-Ninurta I 358  
 Tulunid Dynasty 96, 374  
 Tunis 173, 420  
 Tunisia 66, 95, 96, 97, 302, 303, 323, 407, 417  
 Tupa Yupanqui 145  
 Tupac Amaru II 400  
 Turkana, Lake 14, 15  
 Turkestan 126–27  
 Turkey 272, 315, 321  
   Turkish War of Independence 284, 411  
   *see also* Anatolia; Ottoman Empire  
 Turkmenistan 337  
 Tuscany 219

Tutankhamun, Pharaoh 358, 411  
 Tutsi 323, 422  
 Twain, Mark 241  
 Tyre 42, 48, 54, 60, 359, 361  
 U  
 U-boats 302, 303  
 Ubaid culture 27  
 Uganda 323, 418, 419, 420  
 Uighurs 103, 373  
 Ukraine 99, 280, 285, 290, 299, 321, 337, 411, 413, 421, 422, 425  
 Umar, Caliph 95, 371  
 Umayyad Caliphate 90, 94, 95, 96, 122, 123, 372, 373, 377  
 Umbri 65  
 Umma 354  
 underground railways 236  
 unemployment 286–87  
 unequal treaties 226  
 Unetice culture 355  
 Union states 256–57, 406  
 United Arab Emirates 347  
 United Nations 333, 343, 416, 417  
 United Provinces (Dutch) 184, 388  
 United Provinces of Central America 404  
 United States  
   Agricultural Revolution 194, 195  
   American Revolution **198–99**, 257, 400  
   civil rights and student revolts 327, 417  
   Civil War 222, **256–57**, 406  
   Cold War **314–15**, 416–21  
   expansion of 188, **204–05**, **260–61**  
   Great Depression **286–87**  
   Gulf Wars 342, 343, 421–22, 423  
   immigration 230, 238, 239, 260, 261, 408  
   imperialism 240, 241, 242, 250, 262, 263  
   Industrial Revolution 212–13  
   industrialization 230, 233, 260, 261  
   interventions in Latin America **330–31**  
   isolationism 413  
   Korean War 316, 317  
   and Native Americans **204–05**  
   population 346  
   slavery 222  
   Space Race **324–25**, 418  
   as superpower **312–13**  
   Vietnam Wars 328–29, 417–19  
   World War I 273, 275, 286, 410–11  
   World War II 294–95, 301, 302–07, 415–16  
 Universal Declaration of Human Rights 417  
 universities 105  
 Ur 30, 32, 33, 49, 354, 355, 356  
 Ur-Nammu, King 32, 355  
 Urban II, Pope 106, 378  
 Uruguay 201, 239, 240, 263, 400, 404, 406  
 Uruk 27, 32, 36, 49, 354  
 US-Mexican War 405  
 USSR *see* Soviet Union  
 Utrecht, Treaty of 190, 396

V  
 V-2 rockets 303, 324, 325  
 vaccines 259  
 Vandals 80, 81, 92, 93, 108, 109, 369, 370, 371  
 Varangian Guard 99, 374  
 Vargas, Getúlio 412, 414  
 Vatican City 320  
 Vedic Age 70, 357, 359  
 Vendée uprisings 206  
 Venezuela 152, 262, 286, 331, 397, 402, 403  
   independence 200, 201  
 Venice 91, 92, 112, 113, 121, 160, 173, 219, 265, 378, 382, 396, 397  
 Venus of Hohle Fels 351  
 Vera Cruz 154  
 Verdun, Battle of 274, 410  
 Verdun, Treaty of 118, 374  
 Vermeer, Johannes 184  
 Versailles, Treaty of 273, 284, 285, 411  
 Vesalius, Andreas 161, 388  
 Vespasian, Emperor 45  
 Vespucci, Amerigo 387  
 Vichy regime 297, 298, 299, 415  
 Vicksburg, Battle of 256, 257  
 Victor Emmanuel II of Italy 265  
 Victor Emmanuel III of Italy 411  
 Victoria (Australia) 221, 239  
 Victoria, Queen of Great Britain 242, 244, 404, 405, 407, 408  
 Vienna 209, 219, 303  
 Vienna, Congress of 218  
 Vienna, Sieges of 172, 173, 388, 394  
 Viet Cong 329, 417, 418  
 Viet Minh 318, 319, 328, 416, 417  
 Vietnam 125, 134, 135, 243, 318, 319, 385, 412, 416, 420  
   Vietnam Wars 312, 315, 327, **328–29**, 417–19  
 Vijaya 125  
 Vijayanagara Kingdom 125, 383, 389  
 Vikings 90, **98–99**, 100, 109, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377  
 Villa, Pancho 262, 263  
 villages **26–27**  
 Villanovans 65  
 Vinland 98  
 Visby, Treaty of 112  
 Visconti family 112  
 Visigoths 80, 81, 90, 108, 122, 368, 369, 370  
 Vladimir, Prince of Kiev 99  
 Vladivostok 246, 408  
 Vojvodina 339  
 Voltaire 202–03  
 voyages of exploration 148, **150–51**, 152–53  
 W  
 Wagner, Richard 216  
 Wagram, Battle of 210  
 Wahhabis 398, 402



Waitangi, Treaty of 220, 239  
Wake Island 300, 301  
Wales 388  
Wałęsa, Lech 336, 420, 421  
Wallachia 121, 389  
Wang Kon 125  
Wang Mang, Emperor 83, 365  
Wanli, Emperor 178  
Wannsee Conference 415  
War of the Austrian Succession 398  
War of Jenkins' Ear 190  
War of the Spanish Succession 396  
Warring States Period 74, **75**, 362, 386  
Wars of the Roses 386  
Warsaw 209, 211, 303, 415  
Warsaw Pact 314, 315, 417  
Washington, George 192, 198, 199, 400, 401  
water 30  
Watergate Scandal 419  
Waterloo, Battle of 210, 211, 403  
Watt, James 214, 400  
weapons of mass destruction 342, 343, 412, 422, 423  
Webster-Ashburton Treaty 405  
Wei Kingdom 82, 367, 369, 370  
Weimar Republic 411  
welfare systems 231  
Wellesley, Arthur, Duke of Wellington 210, **211**, 403  
Wellington 220  
Wells Cathedral 105  
Wessex 109  
Wessex culture 356  
West Bank 332, 333, 417, 418, 421  
West Germany 312, 314, 315, 320, 321, 336, 417  
Western Australia 221  
Western Front 274, 275, 276, 297  
Western Roman Empire 81, 92  
Westphalia, Treaty of 393  
whaling 220  
wheel, invention of the 30  
White Lotus Rebellion 401  
White Mountain, Battle of 169  
Wilderness, Battle of the 256  
Wilhelm I of Germany 407  
Wilhelm II of Germany 268, 269  
William the Conqueror 100, 101, 378  
William III of England 394, 396  
William Longsword 100  
William Rufus 100  
Williamsburg, Battle of 256  
Wilson, Woodrow 285  
Wittenberg 166  
Wolfe, General James 192, 399  
Wollstonecraft, Mary 202  
women's suffrage 231, 273, 408, 409, 411  
World Trade Organization 340  
World War I 234, 240, 272–73, 273, **274–79**, 289, 410–11  
    aftermath of 282, **284–85**, 294, 312, 334  
    eve of **268–69**  
World War II 286, 292, **294–307**, 415–16  
    Axis Powers advance **296–97**  
    Germany defeated **302–03**  
    Japan defeated **304–05**  
    occupied Europe **298–99**  
    rocket technology 324, 325  
    War in the Pacific **300–01**  
World's Fair 233  
Wounded Knee, Battle of 408  
writing, early 30, 36, **36–37**, 39, 353, 358  
Wu, Emperor 364, 370  
Wu, King 358  
Wu Di, Emperor 83  
Wu Kingdom 41, 82  
Wuhan, Battle of 289



X-rays 259, 408  
Xavier, Francis 175, 388  
Xenophon 362

Xerxes I of Persia 50, 58, 59, 361  
Xi Jinping 425  
Xia Dynasty 40, 355, 377  
Xi'an incident 289  
Xianfeng, Emperor 226  
Xiang River 75  
Xiangjiang River, Battle of 311  
Xianyang 74  
Xianzong, Emperor 127  
Xin Dynasty 83  
Xinhai Revolution 253  
Xinjiang 103  
Xiongnu 82, 83  
Xuan Loc 329  
Xuande, Emperor 178  
Xuanzong, Emperor 372  
  
Y  
Yalta Conference 416  
Yamana clan 180  
Yan Dynasty 372  
Yangtze River/Valley 353  
Yarmuk, Battle of 93  
Yashan, Battle of 132  
Yazdegerd III, Shah 95, 371  
Yehuling, Battle of 130  
Yellow River/Valley 31, 40, 41, 353, 369  
Yellow Turban Rebellion 83, 366  
Yeltsin, Boris 337, 422, 423  
Yemen 425  
Ying Zheng 74, 75  
Yokohama 255  
Yom Kippur War 333, 419  
Yongle, Emperor 178, 179, 385  
York 99, 375  
Yorktown, Battle of 198, 400  
Yoshinobu, Tokugawa 254  
Young Turks 266, 272, 409  
Yousafzai, Malala 425  
Ypres, Battles of 274, 410, 411

Yuan Dynasty/Empire 124, 128, 130, **132–33**, 382  
Yucatán peninsula 144, 359  
Yüeshi culture 40  
Yugoslavia 284, 296, 298, 299, 337, 416  
    war in **338–39**, 422, 423  
Yükon 239, 408  
Yüpanqui 145  
Yüpiik 20  
Yusuf, Emir 122



Zaire 323, 422  
Zakros 39  
Zama, Battle of 67, 363  
Zambezi River 243  
Zambia 15  
Zapata, Emiliano 262, 263  
Zapotecs 37, **78**, 361, 362, 375  
Zaragoza, Treaty of 152, 163  
Zeng Guofan 253  
Zengi 106, 379, 380  
Zenobia, Queen of Palmyra 367  
Zhang Heng 366  
Zhang Qian 102  
Zheng He, Admiral **178**  
Zhengtong, Emperor 178, 179  
Zhikov, Todor 337  
Zhou Dynasty **40**, 75, 358, 359, 361, 376  
Zhu Wen 127  
Zhu Yuanzhang 124, 133, 384  
Zika virus 425  
Zimbabwe 137, 323, 386, 420, 425  
Zimmerman, Arthur 410  
Zionism 333  
Zoe, Empress 377  
Zoroastrianism 87, 361  
Zulus 243, 249, 403, 405, 407

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

**Dorling Kindersley** would like to thank the following people for their help in the preparation of this book: Ann Baggaley, Carron Brown, Thomas Booth, Chris Hawkes, Cecile Landau, and Justine Willis for editorial assistance; Chrissy Barnard, Amy Child, Phil Gamble, and Renata Latipova for design assistance; Steve Crozier for image retouching; Katie John for proofreading; and Helen Peters for indexing.

**DK India** would like to thank Arpita Dasgupta, Tina Jindal, Rupa Rao, and Isha Sharma for editorial assistance; Simar Dhamija and Meenal Goel for design assistance; Ashutosh Ranjan Bharti, Deshpal Dabas, Mohammad Hassan, Zafar Ul Islam Khan, and Lokamata Sahu for cartographic assistance; Shanker Prasad and Mohd Rizwan for DTP assistance.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs: (Key: a-above; b-below/bottom; c-center; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top)

**2 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images. **4 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library (tr). **Robert Gunn:** Courtesy of Jawoyn Association (tl). **5 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Granger Collection (tr). **Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage (tl). **6 Alamy Stock Photo:** Paul Fearn (tr). **The Metropolitan Museum of Art:** Gift of John Stewart Kennedy, 1897 (tl). **7 Getty Images:** Galerie Bilderwelt (tl). **8–9 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History. **10–11 Robert Gunn:** Courtesy of Jawoyn Association. **12 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Natural History Museum (tl). **Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (c). **13 Bridgeman Images:** Caves of Lascaux, Dordogne, France (cr). **Science Photo Library:** ER Degginger (tl). **14 Alamy Stock Photo:** Puwadol Jaturawutthichai (crb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Oxford Museum of Natural History (ca). **15 akg-images:** CDA / Guillemot (cr). **Science Photo Library:** John Reader (tr). **17 Alamy Stock Photo:** Chronicle (br); Paul Fearn (c). **18 Getty Images:** Kerry Lorimer (cl). **18–19 Robert Gunn:**

Courtesy of Jawoyn Association. **21 Alamy Stock Photo:** Phil Degginger (cl). **22 © CNRS Photothèque:** © C. Jarrige (cb). **Dorling Kindersley:** The Museum of London (cla). **23 akg-images:** Bible Land Pictures / Jerusalem Photo by: Z.Radovan (t). **Alamy Stock Photo:** blickwinkel (cr). **24 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (c). **26 Getty Images:** DEA / A. De Gregorio / De Agostini (bl). **27 Alamy Stock Photo:** www.BibleLandPictures.com (bl). **28–29 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library. **30 Dorling Kindersley:** University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology (cla). **Getty Images:** Kittl Boonitrod (cra). **31 Alamy Stock Photo:** World History Archive (tc). **Getty Images:** Leemage (crb). **32 Bridgeman Images:** Iraq Museum, Baghdad (br). **33 Dreamstime.com:** Kmiragaya (br). **35 Getty Images:** Art Media / Print Collector (bl). **36 Alamy Stock Photo:** Heritage Image Partnership Ltd (br). **Dorling Kindersley:** The University of Aberdeen (bl). **37 Alamy Stock Photo:** Kylie Ellway (br). **39 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Nimatallah / De Agostini (tc, br). **40 Alamy Stock Photo:** World History Archive (c). **42 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (cl). **42–43 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library. **44 Getty Images:** Nathan Benn (bl). **45 Getty Images:** Dea / A. Dagli Orti / DeAgostini (cla). **46 Alamy Stock Photo:** imageBROKER (cl). **Bridgeman Images:** Musée des Antiquités Nationales, St. Germain-en-Laye, France (cr). **47 Alamy Stock Photo:** robertharding (crb); The Print Collector (tl). **48 Getty Images:** Dea / G. Dagli Orti / DeAgostini (bl). **49 Alamy Stock Photo:** MuseoPics - Paul Williams (bl). **50 akg-images:** Erich Lessing (bc). **51 Bridgeman Images:** (br). **52 Getty Images:** Ernesto Benavides / AFP (tr). **53 Getty Images:** Werner Forman / Universal Images Group (br). **54–55 Alamy Stock Photo:** Lanmas. **54 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Horree (bc); North Wind Picture Archives (cla). **57 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (c). **58 Getty Images:** CM Dixon / Print Collector (clb). **59 Bridgeman Images:** Werner Forman Archive (br). **60 Getty Images:** Leemage (bl). **62 Alamy Stock Photo:** Konstantinos Tsakalidis (cla). **Dorling Kindersley:** The University of Aberdeen (c). **63 Getty Images:** Michael Dunning (tl). **Photo Scala, Florence:** courtesy of the Ministero Beni e Att. Culturali e del Turismo (cr). **64 Alamy**



**Stock Photo:** ART Collection (bc). **65 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Nimatallah / De Agostini (cr). **66 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (crb). **68 Getty Images:** Dea / A. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (bc). **69 Getty Images:** Chris Hellier / Corbis (br). **70 Alamy Stock Photo:** Angelo Hornak (cl). **70–71 Alamy Stock Photo:** MCLA Collection. **73 Alamy Stock Photo:** Dinodia Photos (bl); Robert Preston Photography (tr). **74 Getty Images:** UniversalImagesGroup (bl). **76 Alamy Stock Photo:** David Davis Photoproductions (cl); Yong nian Gui (bl). **76–77 Alamy Stock Photo:** Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography. **78 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (cl). **81 Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library (ca, br). **82 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (crb). **84 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History / David Henley (bl). **86 akg-images:** André Held (bc). **97 123RF.com:** Lefteris Papoulakis (bc). **88–89 Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage. **90 Alamy Stock Photo:** Ian Dagnall (c). **Dreamstime.com:** Sean Pavone / Sepavo (cl). **91 Alamy Stock Photo:** ART Collection (tl). **Bridgeman Images:** Ancient Art and Architecture Collection Ltd. (cr). **93 Getty Images:** Werner Forman / Universal Images Group (bl); Universal History Archive (br). **94 123RF.com:** Mikhail Markovskiy (br). **Bridgeman Images:** Private Collection / Archives Charmet (bl). **96 akg-images:** Pictures From History (bc). **97 The Metropolitan Museum of Art:** Theodore M. Davis Collection, Bequest of Theodore M. Davis, 1915 (tr). **98 Getty Images:** Kristin Piljay (bc). **Michael Czytko, www.finemodelships.com:** (crb). **100 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pere Sanz (cl). **100–101 Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library. **103 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (br). **Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage (tl). **105 Alamy Stock Photo:** Kumar Sriskandan (br). **Getty Images:** Leemage (tl). **107 Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage (br). **108 Bridgeman Images:** Basilica di San Giovanni Battista, Monza, Italy / Alinari (cla). **Getty Images:** CM Dixon / Print Collector (cb). **109 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (r); Chris Pancewicz (tl). **111 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Picture Art Collection (br). **113 Getty Images:** Ann Ronan Pictures / Print Collector (br). **RMN: RMN-Grand Palais** (Cluny Museum - National Museum of the Middle Ages) / Jean-Gilles Berizzi (c). **115 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pictorial Press Ltd (tl). **116–117 Bridgeman Images:** Musee Conde, Chantilly, France. **117 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (bc). **Getty Images:** Imagno (cr). **119 Alamy Stock Photo:** Everett Collection Inc (tl). **120 akg-images:** (c). **122 Alamy Stock Photo:** MCLA Collection (bc). **123 Alamy Stock Photo:** Jon Bower Spain (crb). **124 Bridgeman Images:** De Agostini Picture Library / G. Dagli Orti (cl, cra). **125 Alamy Stock Photo:** Ariadne Van Zandbergen (tl); ephotocorp (crb). **127 Alamy Stock Photo:** Images & Stories (br). **128 akg-images:** Pansegrau (tl). **129 Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library (br). **130 Getty Images:** Heritage Images (bl). **132 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pictorial Press Ltd (br). **134 Getty Images:** photographer (br); photo by Pam Susemihl (bl). **136 Getty Images:** Werner Forman / Universal Images Group (bc). **138–139 Getty Images:** Print Collector. **139 Bridgeman Images:** Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France (br). **Getty Images:** Werner Forman / Universal Images Group (cra). **141 Alamy Stock Photo:** Regula Heeb-Zweifel (br). **Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa:** (c). **142 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (tr). **Getty Images:** Mladen Antonov (bc). **145 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Horree (bl). **146–147 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Granger Collection. **148 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Horree (tl). **149 Dorling Kindersley:** Maidstone Museum and Bentliff Art Gallery (tl); Whipple Museum of History of Science, Cambridge (cr). **151 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Granger Collection (br). **153 Alamy Stock Photo:** INTERFOTO (tr). **154 Getty Images:** Fine Art Images / Heritage Images (cl). **154–155 Photo Scala, Florence:** Photo Schalkwijk / Art Resource / © Banco de México Diego Rivera Frida Kahlo Museums Trust, Mexico, D.F. / © DACS 2018. **157 Getty Images:** adoc-photos (br). **158 Bridgeman Images:** Granger (bc). **159 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Granger Collection (bl). **160 Alamy Stock Photo:** World Photo Collection (c). **Bridgeman Images:** British Library, London, UK / © British Library Board. All Rights Reserved (cla). **161 Bridgeman Images:** (cr). **Wellcome Images** <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/>: (tl). **162 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (bc). **163 Getty Images:** PHAS / UIG (crb). **164–165 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images. **164 Alamy Stock Photo:** Falkensteinfoto (bl). **Bridgeman Images:** British Library, London, UK (cl). **166 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (bc). **167 Alamy Stock Photo:** FineArt (br). **168–169 Bridgeman Images:** Deutsches Historisches Museum, Berlin, Germany / © DHM. **169 Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library (br). **170 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Nimatallah / De Agostini (cla). **171 Getty Images:** The Print Collector (br). **172 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library (br). **173 Bridgeman Images:** Private Collection / Archives Charmet (br). **174 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Horree (tl). **Bridgeman Images:** Private Collection (c). **175 Alamy Stock Photo:** Heritage Image Partnership Ltd (cr). **Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / Deagostini (tl). **177 akg-images:** (bl). **Alamy Stock Photo:** Dinodia Photos (tr). **178 Bridgeman Images:** (tl). **Getty Images:** DEA / A. C. Cooper (br). **180 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library (tl). **181 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (bl). **182–183 Getty Images:** Fine Art Images / Heritage Images. **183 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pictorial Press Ltd (ca). **Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.:** map55000728 (br). **184 Rijksmuseum, Amsterdam:** Purchased with the support of the Rembrandt Association (bc). **185 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Horree (bl). **186–187 The Metropolitan Museum of Art:** Gift of John Stewart Kennedy, 1897. **188 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (cl). **Boston Tea Pary Ships & Museum, Historic Tours of America, Inc:** (cra). **189 Alamy Stock Photo:** Art Collection 2 (cr); Science History Images (tl). **190 Getty Images:** Edward Gooch (tr). **193 akg-images:** (br). **194 Dorling Kindersley:** Museum of English Rural Life, The University of Reading (clb). **Rijksmuseum, Amsterdam:** (tl). **195 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Protected Art Archive (cr). **Getty Images:** Photo12 / UIG (tl). **196 Getty Images:** Universal History Archive (bl). **197 Alamy Stock Photo:** North Wind Picture Archives (br). **198 Yale University Art Gallery:** (bc). **199 The Metropolitan Museum of Art:** Gift of John Stewart Kennedy, 1897 (tr). **201 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library (tc); UniversalImagesGroup (tr). **202 Bridgeman Images:** Museum of Art, Serpukhov, Russia (cl). **202–203 Bridgeman Images:** Musee National du Chateau de Malmaison, Rueil-Malmaison, France. **204 Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.:** LC-DIG-ppmsca-09855 (bl). **205 Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage (tr). **206 Bridgeman Images:** Private Collection (bc). **207 Bridgeman Images:** Galerie Dijol, Paris, France (tr). **209 Getty Images:** John Parrot / Stocktrek Images (br); Peter Willi (clb). **211 Getty Images:** Ann Ronan Pictures / Print Collector (crb); Fine Art Images / Heritage Images (br). **212 Alamy Stock Photo:** North Wind Picture Archives (tl). **Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (clb). **213 Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (tl); ullstein bild Dtl. (cr). **214 Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (tl). **215 Alamy Stock Photo:** Heritage Image Partnership Ltd (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** National Railway Museum, York / Science Museum Group (crb). **216 Alamy Stock Photo:** AF archive (bl); Granger Historical Picture Archive (cl). **216–217 Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage. **218 Bridgeman Images:** Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France / Archives Charmet (tr). **Getty Images:** Fine Art Images / Heritage Images (bc). **220 Getty Images:** Universal History Archive (clb). **222–223 Provenance, Galerie Nader Pétion Ville Haiti:** Collection Of Mr. Jean Walnard Dorneval, Archaie Haiti. **222 Rex by Shutterstock:** The Art Archive (cl). **224 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Horree (bc). **225 akg-images:** Pictures From History (br). **226 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (tc). **227 Getty Images:** PHAS / UIG (tr). **228–229 Alamy Stock Photo:** Paul Fearn. **230 Alamy Stock Photo:** Everett Collection Historical (c). **Rex by Shutterstock:** Roger-Viollet (cla). **231 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pictorial Press Ltd (cr). **Getty Images:** W. Brown / Otto Herschan (tl). **233 akg-images:** (c). **234 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (bl). **Getty Images:** Schöning / ullstein bild (cl). **234–235 Bridgeman Images:** Musee de la Ville de Paris, Musee Carnavalet, Paris, France. **236 Getty Images:** Stefano Bianchetti (cl). **237 Getty Images:** Stock Montage / Hulton Archive (br). **238 Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library / DeAgostini (cb). **240 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pictorial Press Ltd (cb); The Granger Collection (cla). **241 Alamy Stock Photo:** INTERFOTO (c). **Getty Images:** Sean Sexton (tr). **242 Bridgeman Images:** © Look and Learn (bc). **243 Getty Images:** Hulton Archive (br). **244 Dorling Kindersley:** © The Board of Trustees of the Armouries (cl). **244–245 Getty Images:** Popperfoto. **246 Getty Images:** UniversalImagesGroup (tl). **247 Getty Images:** Sovfoto / UIG (br). **248 akg-images:** Pictures From History (tl). **250 Alamy Stock Photo:** Photo 12 (bl). **Rex by Shutterstock:** Universal History Archive (c). **250–251 Rex by Shutterstock:** Granger. **252 Alamy Stock Photo:** Everett Collection Historical (bc); Paul Fearn (tr). **255 Alamy Stock Photo:** Artokoloro Quint Lox Limited (br). **256 Getty Images:** Buyenlarge (bl). **258–259 Getty Images:** Bettmann. **259 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Granger Collection (c). **Getty Images:** Bettmann (br). **260 Getty Images:** Bettmann (cr). **262 Alamy Stock Photo:** Paul Fearn (tl). **Getty Images:** Leemage (tr). **264 akg-**

**images:** (tl). **267 Alamy Stock Photo:** Chronicle (br); Paul Fearn (bc). **269 Getty Images:** Culture Club (br); ullstein bild Dtl. (bl). **270–271 Getty Images:** Galerie Bilderwelt. **272 Alamy Stock Photo:** Paul Fearn (cla); Pictorial Press Ltd (cl). **273 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (tl). **Getty Images:** Sovfoto / UIG (cb); Universal History Archive (cr). **274 Alamy Stock Photo:** Universal Art Archive (br). **276 Dorling Kindersley:** Imperial War Museum, London (cla). **Getty Images:** Buyenlarge (bl). **276–277 Getty Images:** UniversalImagesGroup. **278 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (bc). **279 Getty Images:** Time Life Pictures (crb). **281 Alamy Stock Photo:** Paul Fearn (br). **282 Getty Images:** Keystone (cl); Universal History Archive (bl). **282–283 Mary Evans Picture Library.** **285 Alamy Stock Photo:** Photo 12 (br). **Getty Images:** Keystone-France (cla). **287 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (bl). **288 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (bl). **290 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History / Woodbury & Page (bl). **291 Getty Images:** Print Collector (br). **292 Alamy Stock Photo:** Pictorial Press Ltd (bc). **Getty Images:** Keystone-France (br). **294 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (cr). **Getty Images:** Bettmann (cl). **295 Alamy Stock Photo:** dpa picture alliance (crb). **Getty Images:** Bettmann (tl). **297 Alamy Stock Photo:** 502 collection (cl). **Getty Images:** Hulton Archive (br). **299 akg-images:** (br). **Getty Images:** Galerie Bilderwelt (cla). **300 Getty Images:** Universal History Archive / UIG (bl). **301 Getty Images:** Bettmann (br). **302 Alamy Stock Photo:** Prisma by Dukas Presseagentur GmbH (br). **Getty Images:** Central Press (bl). **305 Getty Images:** Apic / Retired (bl). **306–307 Hiroshima Peace Memorial Museum:** Shigeo Hayashi. **306 Getty Images:** Universal History Archive / UIG (br). **307 Getty Images:** Prisma by Dukas (br). **308 Getty Images:** Central Press (bl). **310 Alamy Stock Photo:** age fotostock (br). **Getty Images:** Print Collector (tl). **312 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (cla). **Bridgeman Images:** Peter Newark Military Pictures (c). **313 akg-images:** (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Stewart Howman / Dream Cars (crb). **314 Getty Images:** jondpatton (br). **317 Alamy Stock Photo:** robertharding (tr). **Getty Images:** KV Spencer / Interim Archives (bl). **319 Alamy Stock Photo:** World History Archive (br); Penny Tweedie (cl). **321 Alamy Stock Photo:** Shawshots (tl). **Getty Images:** Jon Feingersh (br). **323 Getty Images:** Louise Gubb (bl). **324 Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (bc). **325 Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (br). **326–327 Getty Images:** Bettmann. **327 Getty Images:** Fototeca Storica Nazionale (cr). **328 Alamy Stock Photo:** World History Archive (tl). **329 Getty Images:** Dirck Halstead (br). **331 Getty Images:** Bettmann (tr, bl). **332 Getty Images:** Muammar Awad / Anadolu Agency (tl). **334 123RF.com:** danielvfung (cl). **Alamy Stock Photo:** ClassicStock (cla). **335 Alamy Stock Photo:** eye35.pix (tc); PJF Military Collection (crb). **336 Getty Images:** Gerard Malie (clb). **337 Getty Images:** Wally McNamee (br). **339 Getty Images:** David Turnley / Corbis / VCG (cl). **340–341 Getty Images:** James Sebright. **340 Getty Images:** Ulrich Baumgarten (bl). **Rex by Shutterstock:** Dennis M. Sabangan / EPA (ca). **343 U.S. Air Force:** (cl). **344 Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (cl); Stefan Wermuth / AFP (bl). **344–345 Getty Images:** Jerry Cooke. **346 Getty Images:** Allan Baxter (cb). **348–349 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images. **350 Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Oxford Museum of Natural History (bl). **Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (tr). **350–351 Alamy Stock Photo:** Andia (br). **352 Alamy Stock Photo:** blickwinkel (t). **353 Alamy Stock Photo:** Constantinos Iliopoulos (tl); Florian Neukirchen (br). **354–355 Getty Images:** Frans Sellies (b). **355 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (tl). **356 Getty Images:** Leemage / UIG (bl). **357 Alamy Stock Photo:** RF Company (tr). **Getty Images:** DEA / Ara Guler / De Agostini (bc). **358 Getty Images:** Apic / Retired / Hulton Archive (tr). **359 Alamy Stock Photo:** Konstantin Kalishko (bl). **Getty Images:** Werner Forman / Universal Images Group (tr). **360 Alamy Stock Photo:** Lanmas (bl). **361 Alamy Stock Photo:** eFesenko (bl). **Bridgeman Images:** Christie's Images (tr). **362 Alamy Stock Photo:** Ariadne Van Zandbergen (tc). **363 123RF.com:** wrangel (tc). **Getty Images:** David Lees / Corbis/VCG (bl). **364 Alamy Stock Photo:** Nataliya Hora (bl). **Bridgeman Images:** Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France (tr). **365 Bridgeman Images:** Vatican Museums and Galleries, Vatican City (r). **366 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave Rudkin / Birmingham Museum and Art Galleries (bl). **Getty Images:** DEA / A. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (tr). **367 Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (bc). **368–369 Bridgeman Images:** Vatican Museums, Vatican City / Pictures from History (bl). **369 Getty Images:** Leemage / Corbis (tc). **370 Alamy Stock Photo:** MusePic - Paul Williams (bl). **371 Bridgeman Images:** Asian Art Museum, San Francisco / Pictures from History (tl); Brabant School, (15th century) / Bibliotheque de L'Arsenal, Paris, France / Archives Charmet (br). **372 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (bl). **Getty Images:** Bettmann (tr). **373 Getty Images:** DEA / A. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (bl). **374 Alamy Stock Photo:** Heritage Image Partnership Ltd (bl). **374–375 Sam Nixon:** (t). **375 Bridgeman Images:** German School, (13th century) / Aachen Cathedral Treasury, Aachen, Germany / De Agostini Picture Library / A. Dagli Orti (bc). **376 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (tl). **Getty Images:** Frédéric Soltan / Corbis (br). **377 Getty Images:** Print Collector (tr). **378 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History / David Henley (tl). **378–379 Alamy Stock Photo:** Peter Sumner (b). **379 Getty Images:** Heritage Images / Museum of East Asian Art (tr). **380 akg-images:** Hervé Champollion (tl). **381 Bridgeman Images:** German School, (12th century) / Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, Germany (tl). **Getty Images:** Photo Josse / Leemage / Corbis (bl). **382 Getty Images:** Heritage Images / Fine Art Images (tl, br). **383 akg-images:** Pictures From History (br). **384 akg-images:** (l). **385 Bridgeman Images:** De Agostini Picture Library / A. De Gregorio (tl). **Getty Images:** Kean Collection / Staff (br). **386 Bridgeman Images:** Museo del Oro, Lima, Peru (bl). **387 akg-images:** Roland and Sabrina Michaud (br). **Bridgeman Images:** The Stapleton Collection (tl). **388 Getty Images:** DEA / W. Buss / De Agostini (br); Leemage / Corbis (tl). **389 Alamy Stock Photo:** Paul Fearn (tr). **390 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (tr). **390–391 Getty Images:** Heritage Images / Fine Art Images (bl). **391 Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library / De Agostini (tr). **392 Dorling Kindersley:** Richard Leeney / Maidstone Museum and Bentliff Art Gallery (tl). **Getty Images:** UniversalImagesGroup / Universal History Archive (br). **393 Alamy Stock Photo:** MCLA Collection (tc). **394 Bridgeman Images:** State Hermitage Museum, St. Petersburg, Russia (tr). **Getty Images:** Science & Society Picture Library (bl). **395 Getty Images:** Fine Art / VCG Wilson / Corbis (r). **396 Bridgeman Images:** Christie's Images (bc). **397 Getty Images:** Heritage Images / Fine Art Images (br); Photo Josse / Leemage / Corbis (tl). **398 Bridgeman Images:** Coram in the care of the Founding Museum, London (tl). **Getty Images:** Apic / Retired / Hulton Archive (bl). **398–399 Alamy Stock Photo:** GL Archive (br). **400 Alamy Stock Photo:** Diego Grandi (tl). **Getty Images:** Werner Forman / UIG (b). **401 Bridgeman Images:** Pictures from History (tc). **402 Alamy Stock Photo:** The Print Collector (tr). **Getty Images:** DEA Picture Library / De Agostini (bl). **403 Alamy Stock Photo:** Falkensteinfoto (b). **404 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (bl). **405 Alamy Stock Photo:** World History Archive (br). **Getty Images:** Historical Picture Archive / Corbis (tl). **406 Getty Images:** Print Collector (bl). **407 Getty Images:** Bettmann (tl); Historical / Corbis (br). **408 Getty Images:** Fine Art / VCG Wilson/Corbis (bl). **409 Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / R. Florio (br). **Getty Images:** Hulton Archive / Stringer (tl). **410 Getty Images:** Universal History Archive / UIG (b). **411 Alamy Stock Photo:** IanDagnall Computing (tl). **Getty Images:** UniversalImagesGroup (br). **412 Getty Images:** Keystone-France / Gamma-Keystone (b); Print Collector / Ann Ronan Pictures (tl). **413 Getty Images:** Universal History Archive / UIG (tr). **414–415 Bridgeman Images:** Museo Nacional Centro de Arte Reina Sofia, Madrid, Spain / © Succession Picasso / © DACS 2018 (bl). **415 Getty Images:** Galerie Bilderwelt (tr). **416 Getty Images:** Bettmann (tr); SuperStock (bl). **417 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (b). **418 Getty Images:** Bettmann (bc); Museum of Flight Foundation / Corbis (tl). **419 Alamy Stock Photo:** Science History Images (tr). **420 Getty Images:** Bettmann (tl); Peter Turnley / Corbis/VCG (br). **421 Getty Images:** Roger Hutchings / Corbis (tl). **422 123RF.com:** paolo77 (tl). **Getty Images:** Per-Anders Pettersson (br). **423 Getty Images:** Spencer Platt / Staff (tr). **424 Alamy Stock Photo:** Granger Historical Picture Archive (tr). **Getty Images:** Mike Clarke / Staff (b). **425 Alamy Stock Photo:** Newscom (tr)

All other images © Dorling Kindersley

For further information see: [www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)